STATISTICAL SPECTRAL ANALYSIS

A Nonprobabilistic Theory

PRENTICE HALL INFORMATION AND SYSTEM SCIENCES SERIES

Thomas Kailath, Editor

ANDERSON & MOORE	*Optimal Filtering*
ÅSTRÖM & WITTENMARK	*Computer-Controlled Systems: Theory and Design*
GARDNER	*Statistical Spectral Analysis: A Nonprobabilistic Theory*
GOODWIN & SIN	*Adaptive Filtering, Prediction, and Control*
GRAY & DAVISSON	*Random Processes: A Mathematical Approach for Engineers*
HAYKIN	*Adaptive Filter Theory*
JAIN	*Fundamentals of Digital Image Processing*
JOHNSON	*Lectures on Adaptive Parameter Estimation*
KAILATH	*Linear Systems*
KUNG	*VLSI Array Processors*
KUNG, WHITEHOUSE, & KAILATH, EDS.	*VLSI and Modern Signal Processing*
MACOVSKI	*Medical Imaging Systems*
MELSA & SAGE	*An Introduction to Probability and Stochastic Processes*
SPILKER	*Digital Communications by Satellite*
WILLIAMS	*Designing Digital Filters*

STATISTICAL SPECTRAL ANALYSIS

A Nonprobabilistic Theory

Dr. William A. Gardner

Professor, Electrical Engineering and Computer Science
University of California, Davis
Davis, California 95616

President, Statistical Signal Processing, Inc.
Yountville, California 94599

PRENTICE HALL
Englewood Cliffs, New Jersey 07632

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

GARDNER, WILLIAM A.
Statistical spectral analysis.

Includes bibliographies and index.
1. Time-series analysis. 2. Signal processing.
3. Spectral theory (Mathematics) I. Title.
QA280.G37 1987 519.5'5 86-30566
ISBN 0-13-844572-9

Printed in the United States of America

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

ISBN 0-13-844572-9

PRENTICE-HALL INTERNATIONAL (UK) LIMITED, *London*
PRENTICE-HALL OF AUSTRALIA PTY. LIMITED, *Sydney*
PRENTICE-HALL CANADA INC., *Toronto*
PRENTICE-HALL HISPANOAMERICANA, S.A., *Mexico*
PRENTICE-HALL OF INDIA PRIVATE LIMITED, *New Delhi*
PRENTICE-HALL OF JAPAN, INC., *Tokyo*
SIMON & SCHUSTER ASIA PTE. LTD., *Singapore*
EDITORA PRENTICE-HALL DO BRASIL, LTDA., *Rio de Janeiro*

To Nancy

In lieu of time
we might have spent together

CONTENTS

FOREWORD

A good deal of our statistical theory, although it is mathematical in nature, originated not in mathematics but in problems of astronomy, geomagnetism and meteorology: examples of fruitful problems in these subjects have included the clustering of stars, also galaxies, on the celestial sphere, tidal analysis, the correlation of fluctuations of the Earth's magnetic field with other solar-terrestrial effects, and the determination of seasonal variations and climatic trends from weather data. All three of these fields are observational. Great figures of the past, such as C. F. Gauss (1777–1855) (who worked with both astronomical and geomagnetic data, and discovered the method of least square fitting of data, the normal error distribution, and the Fast Fourier Transform algorithm), have worked on observational data analysis and have contributed much to our body of knowledge on time series and randomness.

Much other theory has come from gambling, gunnery, and agricultural research, fields that are experimental. Measurements of the fall of shot on a firing range will reveal a pattern that can be regarded as a sample from a normal distribution in two dimensions, together with whatever bias is imposed by pointing and aiming, the wind, air temperature, atmospheric pressure and Earth rotation. The deterministic part of any one of these influences may be characterized with further precision by further firing tests. In the experimental sciences, as well as in the observational, great names associated with the foundations of statistics and probability also come to mind.

Experimental subjects are traditionally distinguished from observational ones by the property that conditions are under the control of the experimenter. The design of experiments leads the experimenter to the idea of an ensemble, or random process, an abstract probabilistic creation illustrated by the bottomless

barrel of well-mixed marbles that is introduced in elementary probability courses. A characteristic feature of the contents of such a barrel is that we know in advance how many marbles there are of each color, because it is we who put them in; thus, a sample set that is withdrawn after stirring must be compatible with the known mix.

The observational situation is quite unlike this. Our knowledge of what is in the barrel, or of what Nature has in store for us, is to be deduced from what has been observed to come out of the barrel, to date. The probability distribution, rather than being a given, is in fact to be intuited from experience. The vital stage of connecting the world of experience to the different world of conventional probability theory may be glossed over when foreknowledge of the barrel and its contents—a probabilistic model—are posited as a point of departure. Many experimental situations are like this observational one.

The theory of signal processing, as it has developed in electrical and electronics engineering, leans heavily toward the random process, defined in terms of probability distributions applicable to ensembles of sample signal waveforms. But many students who are adept at the useful mathematical techniques of the probabilistic approach and quite at home with joint probability distributions are unable to make even a rough drawing of the underlying sample waveforms. The idea that the sample waveforms are the deterministic quantities being modeled somehow seems to get lost.

When we examine the pattern of fall of shot from a gun, or the pattern of bullet holes in a target made by firing from a rifle clamped in a vise, the distribution can be characterized by its measurable centroid and second moments or other spread parameters. While such a pattern is necessarily discrete, and never much like a normal distribution, we have been taught to picture the pattern as a sample from an infinite ensemble of such patterns; from this point of view the pattern will of course be compatible with the adopted parent population, as with the marbles. In this probabilistic approach, to simplify mathematical discussion, one begins with a model, or specification of the continuous probability distribution from which each sample is supposed to be drawn. Although this probability distribution is not known, one is comforted by the assurance that it is potentially approachable by expenditure of more ammunition. But in fact it is not.

The assumption of randomness is an expression of ignorance. Progress means the identification of systematic effects which, taken as a whole, may initially give the appearance of randomness or unpredictability. Continuing to fire at the target on a rifle range will not refine the probability distribution currently in use but will reveal, to a sufficiently astute planner of experiments, that air temperature, for example, has a determinate effect which was always present but was previously accepted as stochastic. After measurement, to appropriate precision, temperature may be allowed for. Then a new probability model may be constructed to cover the effects that remain unpredictable.

Many authors have been troubled by the standard information theory approach via the random process or probability distribution because it seems to put the cart before the horse. Some sample parameters such as mean amplitudes or powers, mean durations and variances may be known, to precision of measurement,

but if we are to go beyond pure mathematical deduction and make advances in the realm of phenomena, theory should start from the data. To do otherwise risks failure to discover that which is not built into the model. Estimating the magnitude of an earthquake from seismograms, assessing a stress-test cardiogram, or the pollutant in a stormwater drain, are typical exercises where noise, systematic or random, is to be fought against. Problems on the forefront of development are often ones where the probability distributions of neither signal nor noise is known; and such distributions may be essentially unknowable because repetition is impossible. Thus, any account of measurement, data processing, and interpretation of data that is restricted to probabilistic models leaves something to be desired.

The techniques used in actual research with real data do not loom large in courses in probability. Professor Gardner's book demonstrates a consistent approach from data, those things which in fact are given, and shows that analysis need not proceed from assumed probability distributions or random processes. This is a healthy approach and one that can be recommended to any reader.

Ronald N. Bracewell
Stanford, California

PREFACE

This book grew out of an enlightening discovery I made a few years ago, as a result of a long-term attempt to strengthen the tenuous conceptual link between the abstract probabilistic theory of cyclostationary stochastic processes and empirical methods of signal processing that accommodate or exploit periodicity in random data. After a period of unsatisfactory progress toward using the concept of *ergodicity*[1] to strengthen this link, it occurred to me (perhaps wishfully) that the abstraction of the probabilistic framework of the theory might not be necessary. As a first step in pursuing this idea, I set out to clarify for myself the extent to which the probabilistic framework is needed to explain various well-known concepts and methods in the theory of stationary stochastic processes, especially spectral analysis theory. To my surprise, I discovered that all the concepts and methods of empirical spectral analysis can be explained in a more straightforward fashion in terms of a deterministic theory, that is, a theory based on time-averages of a single time-series rather than ensemble-averages of hypothetical random samples from an abstract probabilistic model. To be more specific, I found that the fundamental concepts and methods of empirical spectral analysis can be explained without use of probability calculus or the concept of probability and that probability calculus, which is indeed useful for quantification of the notion of *degree of randomness* or *variability,* can be based on time-averages of a single time-series without any use of the concept or theory of a stochastic process defined on an abstract probability space. This seemed to be of such fundamental importance for practicing engineers and scientists and so intuitively satisfying that I felt it must already be in the literature.

To put my discovery in perspective, I became a student of the history of the subject. I found that the apparent present-day complacence with the abstraction of the probabilistic theory of stochastic processes, introduced by A. N. Kolmogorov in 1941, has been the trend for about 40 years. Nevertheless, I found also that

[1] *Ergodicity* is the property of a mathematical model for an infinite set of time-series that guarantees that an ensemble average over the infinite set will equal an infinite time average over one member of the set.

many probabilists throughout this period, including Kolmogorov himself, have felt that the concept of *randomness* should be defined as directly as possible, and that from this standpoint it seems artificial to conceive of a time-series as a sample of a stochastic process. (The first notable attempt to set up the probability calculus more directly was the theory of *Collectives* introduced by Von Mises in 1919; the mathematical development of such alternative approaches is traced by P. R. Masani [Masani 1979].) In the engineering literature, I found that in the early 1960s two writers, D. G. Brennan [Brennan 1961] and E. M. Hofstetter [Hofstetter 1964], had made notable efforts to explain that much of the theory of stationary time-series need not be based on the abstract probabilistic theory of stochastic processes and then linked with empirical method only through the abstract concept of ergodicity, but rather that a probabilistic theory based directly on time-averages will suffice; however, they did not pursue the idea that a theory of empirical spectral analysis can be developed without any use of probability. Similarly, the more recent book by D. R. Brillinger on time-series [Brillinger 1975] briefly explains precisely how the probabilistic theory of stationary time-series can be based on time-averages, but it develops the theory of empirical spectral analysis entirely within the probabilistic framework. Likewise, the early engineering book by R. B. Blackman and J. W. Tukey [Blackman and Tukey 1958] on spectral analysis defines an idealized spectrum in terms of time-averages but then carries out all analysis of measurement techniques within the probabilistic framework of stochastic processes. In the face of this 40-year trend, I was perplexed to find that the one most profound and influential work in the entire history of the subject of empirical spectral analysis, Norbert Wiener's *Generalized Harmonic Analysis*, written in 1930 [Wiener 1930], was entirely devoid of probability theory; and yet I found only one book written since then for engineers or scientists that provides more than a brief mention of Wiener's deterministic theory. All other such books that I found emphasize the probabilistic theory of A. N. Kolmogorov usually to the complete exclusion of Wiener's deterministic theory. This one book was written by a close friend and colleague of Wiener's, Y. W. Lee, in 1960 [Lee 1960]. Some explanation of this apparent historical anomaly is given by P. R. Masani in his recent commentary on Wiener's *Generalized Harmonic Analysis* [Masani 1979]: "The quick appearance of the Birkhoff ergodic theorem and the Kolmogorov theory of stochastic processes after the publication of Wiener's *Generalized Harmonic Analysis* created an intellectual climate favoring stochastic analysis rather than generalized harmonic analysis." But Masani goes on to explain that the current opinion, that Wiener's 1930 memoir [Wiener 1930] marks the culmination of generalized harmonic analysis and its supercession by the more advanced theories of stochastic processes, is questionable on several counts, and he states that the "integrity and wisdom" in the attitude expressed in the early 1960s by Kolmogorov suggesting a possible return to the ideas of Von Mises ". . . should point the way toward the future. Side by side with the vigorous pursuit of the theory of stochastic processes, must coexist a more direct process-free [deterministic] inquiry of randomness of different classes of functions." In an even stronger stance, T. L. Fine in the concluding section of his book *Theories of Probability* [Fine, 1973] states "Judging from the present confused

status of probability theory, the time is at hand for those concerned about the characterization of chance and uncertainty and the design of inference and decision-making systems to reconsider their long-standing dependence on the traditional statistical and probabilistic methodology. . . . Why not ignore the complicated and hard to justify probability-statistics structure and proceed 'directly' to those, perhaps qualitative, assumptions that characterize our source of random phenomena, the means at our disposal, and our task?''

As a result of my discovery and my newly gained historical perspective, I felt compelled to write a book that would have the same goals, in principle, as many existing books on spectral analysis—to present a general theory and methodology for empirical spectral analysis—but that would present a more relevant and palatable (for many applications) deterministic theory following Wiener's original approach rather than the conventional probabilistic theory. As the book developed, I continued to wonder about the apparent fact that no one in the 50 years since Wiener's memoir had considered such a project worthy enough to pursue. However, as I continued to search the literature, I found that one writer, J. Kampé de Fériet, did make some progress along these lines in a tutorial paper [Kampé de Fériet 1954], and other authors have contributed to development of deterministic theories of related subjects in time-series analysis, such as linear prediction and extrapolation [Wold 1948], [Finch 1969], [Fine 1970]. Furthermore, as the book progressed and I observed the favorable reactions of my students and colleagues, my conviction grew to the point that I am now convinced that it is generally beneficial for students of the subject of empirical spectral analysis to study the deterministic theory *before* studying the more abstract probabilistic theory.

When I had completed most of the development for a book on a deterministic theory of empirical spectral analysis of stationary time-series, I was then able to return to the original project of presenting the results of my research work on cyclostationary time-series but within a nonprobabilistic framework. Once I started, it quickly became apparent that I was able to conceptualize intuitions, hunches, conjectures, and so forth far more clearly than before when I was laboring within the probabilistic framework. The original relatively fragmented research results on cyclostationary stochastic processes rapidly grew into a comprehensive theory of random time-series from periodic phenomena that is every bit as satisfying as the theory of random time-series from constant phenomena (stationary time-series). This theory, which brings to light the fundamental role played by spectral correlation in the study of periodic phenomena, is presented in Part II.

Part I of this book is intended to serve as both a graduate-level textbook and a technical reference. The only prerequisite is an introductory course on Fourier analysis. However, some prior exposure to probability would be helpful for Section B in Chapter 5 and Section A in Chapter 15. The body of the text in Part I presents a thorough development of fundamental concepts and results in the theory of statistical spectral analysis of empirical time-series from *constant phenomena,* and a brief overview is given at the end of Chapter 1. Various supplements that expand on topics that are in themselves important or at least

illustrative but that are not essential to the foundation and framework of the theory, are included in appendices and exercises at the ends of chapters.

Part II of this book, like Part I, is intended to serve as both textbook and reference, and the same unifying philosophical framework developed in Part I is used in Part II. However, unlike Part I, the majority of concepts and results presented in Part II are new. Because of the novelty of this material, a brief preview is given in the Introduction to Part II. The only prerequisite for Part II is Part I.

The focus in this book is on fundamental concepts, analytical techniques, and basic empirical methods. In order to maintain a smooth flow of thought in the development and presentation of concepts that steadily build on one another, various derivations and proofs are omitted from the text proper, and are put into the exercises, which include detailed hints and outlines of solution approaches. Depending on the students' background, the instructor can either assign these as homework exercises, or present them in the lectures. Because the treatment of experimental design and applications is brief and is also relegated to the exercises and concise appendices, some readers might desire supplements on these topics.

REFERENCES

BLACKMAN, R. B. and J. W. TUKEY. 1958. *The Measurement of Power Spectra*. New York: American Telephone and Telegraph Co.

BRENNAN, D. G. 1961. Probability theory in communication system engineering. Chapter 2 in *Communication System Theory*. Ed. E. J. Baghdady, New York: McGraw-Hill.

BRILLINGER, D. R. 1975. *Time Series*. New York: Holt, Rinehart and Winston.

FINCH, P. D. 1969. Linear least squares prediction in non-stochastic time-series. *Advances in Applied Prob.* 1:111–22.

FINE, T. L. 1970. Extrapolation when very little is known about the source. *Information and Control*. 16:331–359.

FINE, T. L. 1973. *Theories of Probability: An Examination of Foundations*. New York: Academic Press.

HOFSTETTER, E. M. 1964. Random processes. Chapter 3 in *The Mathematics of Physics and Chemistry*, vol. II. Ed. H. Margenau and G. M. Murphy. Princeton, N.J.: D. Van Nostrand Co.

KAMPÉ DE FÉRIET, J. 1954. Introduction to the statistical theory of turbulence, I and II. *J. Soc. Indust. Appl. Math.* 2, Nos. 1 and 3:1–9 and 143–74.

LEE, Y. W. 1960. *Statistical Theory of Communication*. New York: John Wiley & Sons.

MASANI, P. R. 1979. "Commentary on the memoir on generalized harmonic analysis." pp. 333–379 in *Norbert Wiener: Collected Works, Volume II*. Cambridge, Mass.: Massachusetts Institute of Technology.

WIENER, N. 1930. Generalized harmonic analysis. *Acta Mathematika*. 55:117–258.

WOLD, H. O. A. 1948. On prediction in stationary time-series. *Annals of Math Stat.* 19:558–67.

William A. Gardner

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

I would like to express my gratitude to Mr. William A. Brown for his important technical and moral support in the early stages of this project, and to Professors Enders A. Robinson, Ronald N. Bracewell, and James L. Massey for their enthusiastic encouragement. I also would like to express my appreciation to Professor Thomas Kailath for bringing to my attention several early fundamental papers on nonprobabilistic statistical theory. In addition, I would like to thank Professor Herschel H. Loomis and Dr. Crawford W. Scott for their interest in applications of the theory in Part II, and the resultant financial support, and Messrs. Brian G. Agee, William A. Brown, and Chihkang Chen for their participation in applying the theory of Part II. Credit is due Messrs. Brown and Chen for their contributions to some of the technical material in Chapter 12, and also special credit is due Mr. Brown for his major contribution to Chapter 15, especially section B. Further credit is due Messrs. Chen and Brown for their substantial joint effort to produce the many excellent computer-generated graphs. It is a pleasure to express my appreciation to Mrs. Patty A. Gemulla and Mrs. Marion T. Franke for their excellent job of typing the manuscript, Dr. Sheldon N. Salinger for critically reading the manuscript, Mr. Randy S. Roberts and Messrs. Brown and Chen for their substantial proofreading efforts, and many other past and present students for their feedback and assistance. My deepest gratitude is expressed to my wife, Nancy, for her patience, understanding, and support throughout this demanding project and the years of work leading up to it.

William A. Gardner

GLOSSARIES

GLOSSARY OF NOTATIONS AND TERMINOLOGY FOR WINDOW FUNCTIONS

$a_T(t)$	General data-tapering window of unity height and approximate width T.
$A_{1/T}(f)$	Fourier transform of $a_T(t)$.
$E(f)$	Effective spectral smoothing window.
$g_{\Delta t}(t)$	General time-smoothing window of unity area and approximate width Δt.
$G_{1/\Delta t}(f)$	Fourier transform of $g_{\Delta t}(t)$.
$h_{1/\Delta f}(\tau)$	General autocorrelation-tapering window of unity height and approximate width $1/\Delta f$.
$H_{\Delta f}(f)$	General spectral smoothing window of unity area and approximate width Δf; Fourier transform of $h_{1/\Delta f}(\tau)$.
$u_T(t)$	Rectangle window of unity area and width T.
$v_T(t)$	Triangle window of unity area and base width $2T$.
$w_T(t)$	Sinc window of unity area and null-to-null width $2T$.
$z_T(t)$	Squared sinc window of unity area and null-to-null width $2T$.

GLOSSARY OF NOTATIONS AND TERMINOLOGY FOR CORRELATIONS AND SPECTRA IN PART I[1]

$r_h(\tau)$	*Finite autocorrelation of* h: (36), Chapter 2.
$\tilde{r}_h(\tau)$	*Finite autocorrelation* of discrete-time h: (86), Chapter 3.

[1] Some notation that is used only within a single chapter is not included in this glossary.

$R_{x_T}(t, \tau)$	*Time-variant correlogram* (*time-variant finite-time autocorrelation*) of segment of x of duration T: (19), Chapter 2; for tapered data, (20), Chapter 2.
$\tilde{R}_{x_T}(t, \tau)$	*Time-variant correlogram* (*time-variant finite-time autocorrelation*) of segment of discrete-time x of duration T: (67), Chapter 2, (44), Chapter 6.
$R_x(t, \tau)_T$	*Time-variant finite-average autocorrelation* of x: (21), Chapter 2.
$\hat{R}_x(\tau)$	*Limit autocorrelation* of x: (6), Chapter 1; see also (31), Chapter 2.
$\tilde{R}_x(\tau)$	*Limit autocorrelation* of discrete-time x: (79), Chapter 3.
$\mathscr{R}_x(t, \tau)$	*Probabilistic instantaneous autocorrelation* of x: (7), Chapter 8.
$S_{x_T}(t, f)$	*Time-variant periodogram* (*time-variant finite-time spectrum*) of segment of x of duration T: (1), (2), Chapter 2; for tapered data, (1), (11), Chapter 2; Fourier transform of $R_{x_T}(t, \tau)$.
$\tilde{S}_{x_T}(t, f)$	*Time-variant periodogram* (*time-variant finite-time spectrum*) of segment of discrete-time x of duration T: (69b), Chapter 3, (30), Chapter 6; Fourier series transform of $\tilde{R}_{x_T}(t, \tau)$.
$\mathscr{S}_{x_T}(t, f)$	*Expected time-variant periodogram* (*expected time-variant finite-time spectrum*) of segment of x of duration T: (3), Chapter 8.
$S_x(t, f)_T$	*Time-variant pseudospectrum* of x: (22), Chapter 2; Fourier transform of $R_x(t, \tau)_T$.
$S_{x_{1/\Delta f}}(t, f)_{\Delta t}$	*Temporally smoothed spectrum* of tapered x: (11), Chapter 3, (1), Chapter 4.
$\tilde{S}_{x_{1/\Delta f}}(t, f)_{\Delta t}$	*Temporally smoothed spectrum* of tapered discrete-time x: (29), Chapter 6.
$S_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, f)_{\Delta f}$	*Spectrally smoothed spectrum* of x: (16)–(17), Chapter 3, (2) and (21), Chapter 4.
$\tilde{S}_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, f)_{\Delta f}$	*Spectrally smoothed spectrum* of discrete-time x: (36) and (43), Chapter 6.
$S_x(t, f)_{1/\Delta f,\, \Delta t}$	*Temporally smoothed pseudospectrum* of x: (3), Chapter 4.
$S_x(t, f)_{\Delta t,\, \Delta f}$	*Spectrally smoothed pseudospectrum* of x: (4) and (22), Chapter 4.
$\hat{S}_x(f)$	*Limit spectrum* of x: (26), Chapter 3; Fourier transform of $\hat{R}_x(\tau)$.
$\tilde{S}_x(f)$	*Limit spectrum* of discrete-time x: (69a), Chapter 3.
$\mathscr{S}_x(t, f)$	*Probabilistic instantaneous spectrum* of x: (6), Chapter 8.
$X_T(t, f)$	*Time-variant finite-time complex spectrum* of segment of x of duration T: (2), (11), Chapter 2; *complex demodulate,* (44)–(45), Chapter 4.
$\overline{X}_T(t, f)$	*Normalized time-variant finite-time complex spectrum* of segment of x of duration T: (27), Chapter 5.

$\vec{X}_T(t, f)$	*Time-variant finite-time complex spectrum* of segment of discrete-time x of length $N = 1 + T/T_s$: (53), Chapter 2, (28), Chapter 6.
$x_T(t, f)$	*Local sine wave component* of x: (44), Chapter 4.
$\tilde{x}_T(t, f)$	*Local sine wave component* of discrete-time x: (26), Chapter 6; for tapered data, (31), Chapter 6.

GLOSSARY OF NOTATIONS AND TERMINOLOGY FOR CROSS CORRELATIONS AND CROSS SPECTRA IN PART I

$\hat{C}_{xy}(f)$	*Complex coherence function* of x and y: (32), Chapter 7.
$R_{xy_T}(t, \tau)$	*Time-variant cross correlogram* (*time-variant finite-time cross correlation*) of segments of x and y of duration T: (5), Chapter 7.
$R_{xy}(t, \tau)_T$	*Time-variant finite-average cross correlation* of x and y: (13), Chapter 7.
$\hat{R}_{xy}(\tau)$	*Limit cross correlation* of x and y: (18), (20), Chapter 7.
$S_{xy_T}(t, f)$	*Time-variant cross periodogram* (*time-variant finite-time cross spectrum*) of segments of x and y of duration T: (3), Chapter 7; Fourier transform of $R_{xy_T}(t, \tau)$.
$S_{xy}(t, f)_T$	*Time-variant pseudo–cross spectrum* of x and y: (12), Chapter 7; Fourier transform of $R_{xy}(t, \tau)_T$.
$S_{xy_{1/\Delta f}}(t, f)_{\Delta t}$	*Temporally smoothed cross spectrum* of x and y: (9), Chapter 7.
$S_{xy_{\Delta t}}(t, f)_{\Delta f}$	*Spectrally smoothed cross spectrum* of x and y: (8), Chapter 7.
$S_{xy}(t, f)_{1/\Delta f,\, \Delta t}$	*Temporally smoothed pseudo–cross spectrum* of x and y: (11), Chapter 7.
$S_{xy}(t, f)_{\Delta t,\, \Delta f}$	*Spectrally smoothed pseudo–cross spectrum* of x and y: (10), Chapter 7.
$\hat{S}_{xy}(f)$	*Limit cross spectrum* of x and y: (17), Chapter 7; Fourier transform of $\hat{R}_{xy}(\tau)$.

GLOSSARY OF NOTATIONS AND TERMINOLOGY FOR CYCLIC CORRELATIONS AND CYCLIC SPECTRA IN PART II

$\hat{C}_x^{\alpha}(f)$	*Spectral autocoherence* of x: (35), Chapter 10.
$\hat{C}_{xy}^{\alpha}(f)$	*Cyclic cross coherence* of x and y, (45b), Chapter 14.
$r_h^{\alpha}(\tau)$	*Finite cyclic autocorrelation* of h: (137b), Chapter 11.
$R_{x_T}^{\alpha}(t, \tau)$	*Time-variant cyclic cross correlogram* of segment of x of duration T: (12), Chapter 11.

$R_x^\alpha(t, \tau)_T$	*Time-variant finite-average cyclic autocorrelation* of x: (14), Chapter 11.
$R_{xy_T}^\alpha(t, \tau)$	*Time-variant cyclic cross correlogram* of segments of x and y of duration T: (67), Chapter 11.
$\hat{R}_x^\alpha(\tau)$	*Limit cyclic autocorrelation* of x: (25), Chapter 10; (13), (15), Chapter 11.
$\bar{R}_x^\alpha(\tau)$	*Limit cyclic autocorrelation* of discrete-time x: (109), (111), Chapter 11.
$\hat{R}_{xy}^\alpha(\tau)$	*Limit cyclic cross correlation* of x and y: (69), Chapter 11.
$\hat{R}_x(t, \tau; T_0)$	*Limit periodic autocorrelation* of x (period $= T_0$): (99), (102), Chapter 10.
$\hat{R}_x(t, \tau)$	*Limit almost periodic autocorrelation* of x with multiple periodicity: (100), (103), Chapter 10; or *limit periodic autocorrelation* of x with single periodicity: (23), (24), Chapter 10.
$S_{x_T}^\alpha(t, f)$	*Time-variant cyclic periodogram* of segment of x of duration T: (8), (11), Chapter 11.
$S_{xy_T}^\alpha(t, f)$	*Time-variant cyclic cross periodogram* of segments of x and y of duration T: (65), (66), Chapter 11.
$S_{x_{1/\Delta f}}^\alpha(t, f)_{\Delta t}$	*Temporally smoothed cyclic spectrum* of x: (1), Chapter 11, (4a), Chapter 13.
$\bar{S}_{x_{1/\Delta f}}^\alpha(t, f)_{\Delta t}$	*Temporally smoothed cyclic spectrum* of discrete-time x: (6), Chapter 13.
$S_{x_{\Delta t}}^\alpha(t, f)_{\Delta f}$	*Spectrally smoothed cyclic spectrum* of x: (4b), Chapter 13.
$\bar{S}_{x_{\Delta t}}^\alpha(t, f)_{\Delta f}$	*Spectrally smoothed cyclic spectrum* of discrete-time x: (5), Chapter 13.
$\hat{S}_x^\alpha(f)$	*Limit cyclic spectrum* of x: (30), Chapter 10, (43), Chapter 11.
$\bar{S}_x^\alpha(f)$	*Limit cyclic spectrum* of discrete-time x: (110), (112), Chapter 11.
$\hat{S}_{xy}^\alpha(f)$	*Limit cyclic cross spectrum* of x and y: (63), (68), Chapter 11.
$\hat{S}_x(t, f; T_0)$	*Limit periodic spectrum* of x (period $= T_0$); Fourier transform of $\hat{R}_x(t, \tau; T_0)$.
$\hat{S}_x(t, f)$	*Limit almost periodic spectrum* of x with multiple periodicity: (106), (107), Chapter 10; or *limit periodic spectrum* of x with single periodicity: (58), Chapter 10.

Part I

CONSTANT PHENOMENA

INTRODUCTION

The subject of Part I is the statistical spectral analysis of empirical time-series. The term *empirical* indicates that the time-series represents data from a physical phenomenon; the term *spectral analysis* denotes decomposition of the time-series into sine wave components; and the term *statistical* indicates that the squared magnitude of each measured or computed sine wave component, or the product of pairs of such components, is averaged to reduce random effects in the data that mask the spectral characteristics of the phenomenon under study. The purpose of Part I is to present a comprehensive *deterministic* theory of statistical spectral analysis and thereby to show that contrary to popular belief, the theoretical foundations of this subject need not be based on *probabilistic* concepts. The motivation for Part I is that for many applications the conceptual gap between practice and the deterministic theory presented herein is narrower and thus easier to bridge than is the conceptual gap between practice and the more abstract probabilistic theory. Nevertheless, probabilistic concepts are not ignored. A means for obtaining probabilistic interpretations of the deterministic theory is developed in terms of fraction-of-time distributions, and ensemble averages are occasionally discussed.

A few words about the terminology used are in order. Although the terms *statistical* and *probabilistic* are used by many as if they were synonymous, their meanings are quite distinct. According to the *Oxford English Dictionary, statistical* means nothing more than "consisting of or founded on collections of numerical facts". Therefore, an average of a collection of spectra is a *statistical spectrum*.

And this has nothing to do with probability. Thus, there is nothing contradictory in the notion of a deterministic or nonprobabilistic theory of statistical spectral analysis. (An interesting discussion of variations in usage of the term *statistical* is given in *Comparative Statistical Inference* by V. Barnett [Barnett 1973]). The term *deterministic* is used here as it is commonly used, as a synonym for nonprobabilistic. Nevertheless, the reader should be forewarned that the elements of the nonprobabilistic theory presented herein are defined by infinite limits of time averages and are therefore no more deterministic in practice than are the elements of the probabilistic theory. (In mathematics, the deterministic and probabilistic theories referred to herein are sometimes called the *functional* and *stochastic* theories, respectively.) The term *random* is often taken as an implication of an underlying probabilistic model. But in this book, the term is used in its broader sense to denote nothing more than the vague notion of erratic unpredictable behavior.

1

INTRODUCTION TO SPECTRAL ANALYSIS

This introductory chapter sets the stage for the in-depth study of spectral analysis taken up in the following chapters by explaining objectives and motives, answering some basic questions about the nature and uses of spectral analysis, and establishing a historical perspective on the subject.

A. OBJECTIVES AND MOTIVES

A premise of this book is that the way engineers and scientists are commonly taught to think about empirical statistical spectral analysis of time-series data is fundamentally inappropriate for many applications. The subject is not really as abstruse as it appears to be from the conventional point of view. The problem is that the subject has been imbedded in the abstract probabilistic framework of stochastic processes, and this abstraction impedes conceptualization of the fundamental principles of empirical statistical spectral analysis. Hence, the probabilistic theory of statistical spectral analysis should be taught to engineers and scientists only after they have learned the fundamental deterministic principles—both qualitative and quantitative. For example, one should first learn 1) when and why sine wave analysis of time-series is appropriate, 2) how and why temporal and spectral resolution interact, 3) why statistical (averaged) spectra are of interest, and 4) what the various methods for measuring and computing statistical spectra are and how they are related. One should also learn how simultaneously to control the spectral and temporal resolution and the degree of randomness (reliability) of a statistical spectrum. All this can be accomplished in a nonsuperficial way without reference to the probabilistic theory of stochastic processes.

The concept of a deterministic theory of statistical spectral analysis is not new. Much deterministic theory was developed prior to and after the infusion, beginning in the 1930s, of probabilistic concepts into the field of time-series analysis. The most fundamental concept underlying present-day theory of statistical spectral analysis is the concept of an *ideal spectrum,* and the primary objective of statistical spectral analysis is to estimate the ideal spectrum using a finite amount of data. The first theory to introduce the concept of an ideal spectrum is Norbert Wiener's theory of *generalized harmonic analysis* [Wiener 1930], and this theory is deterministic. Later, Joseph Kampé de Fériet presented a deterministic theory of statistical spectral analysis that ties Wiener's theory more closely to the empirical reality of finite-length time-series [Kampé de Fériet 1954]. But the very great majority of treatments in the ensuing 30 years consider only a probabilistic theory of statistical spectral analysis, although a few authors do briefly mention the dual deterministic theory (e.g., [Koopmans 1974; Brillinger 1976]).

The primary objective of Part I of this book is to adopt the deterministic viewpoint of Wiener and Kampé de Fériet and show that a *comprehensive* deterministic theory of statistical spectral analysis, which for many applications relates more directly to empirical reality than does its more popular probabilistic counterpart, can be developed. A secondary objective of Part I is to adopt the empirical viewpoint of Donald G. Brennan [Brennan 1961] and Edward M. Hofstetter [Hofstetter 1964], from which they develop an objective probabilistic theory of stationary random processes based on fraction-of-time distributions and show that probability theory can be applied to the deterministic theory of statistical spectral analysis without introducing a more abstract mathematical model of empirical reality based on the axiomatic or subjective probabilistic theory of stochastic processes. This can be interpreted as an exploitation of Herman O. A. Wold's isomorphism between an empirical time-series and a probabilistic model of a stationary stochastic process. This isomorphism is responsible for the duality between probabilistic (ensemble-average) and deterministic (time-average) theories of time-series [Wold 1948] [Gardner 1985].

There are two motives for Part I of this book. The first is to stimulate a reassessment of the way engineers and scientists are often taught to think about statistical spectral analysis by showing that probability theory need not play a primary role. The second motive is to pave the way for introducing a new theory and methodology for statistical spectral analysis of random data from periodically time-variant phenomena, which is presented in Part II. The fact that this new theory and methodology, which unifies various emerging—as well as long-established—time-series analysis concepts and techniques, is most transparent when built on the foundation of the deterministic theory developed in Part I is additional testimony that probability theory need not play a primary role in statistical spectral analysis.

The book, although concise, is tutorial and is intended to be comprehensible by graduate students and professionals in engineering, science, mathematics, and statistics. The accomplishments of the book should be appreciated most by

those who have studied statistical spectral analysis in terms of the popular probabilistic theory and have struggled to bridge the conceptual gaps between this abstract theory and empirical reality.

B. ORIENTATION

1. What Is Spectral Analysis?

Spectral analysis of functions is used for solving a wide variety of practical problems encountered by engineers and scientists in nearly every field of engineering and science. The functions of primary interest in most fields are temporal or spatial waveforms or discrete data. The most basic purpose of spectral analysis is to represent a function by a sum of weighted sinusoidal functions called *spectral components;* that is, the purpose is to decompose (analyze) a function into these spectral components. The weighting function in the decomposition is a density of spectral components. This *spectral density* is also called a *spectrum.*[1] The reason for representing a function by its spectrum is that the spectrum can be an efficient, convenient, and often revealing description of the function.

As an example of the use of spectral representation of temporal waveforms in the field of signal processing, consider the *signal extraction* problem of extracting an information-bearing signal from corrupted (noisy) measurements. In many situations, the spectrum of the signal differs substantially from the spectrum of the noise. For example, the noise might have more high-frequency content; hence, the technique of *spectral filtering* can be used to attenuate the noise while leaving the signal intact. Another example is the *data-compression* problem of using *coding* to compress the amount of data used to represent information for the purpose of efficient storage or transmission. In many situations, the information contained in a complex temporal waveform (e.g., a speech segment) can be coded more efficiently in terms of the spectrum.

There are two types of spectral representations. The more elementary of the two shall be referred to as simply the *spectrum,* and the other shall be referred to as the *statistical spectrum.* The term *statistical* indicates that averaging or smoothing is used to reduce random effects in the data that mask the spectral characteristics of the phenomenon under study. For time-functions, the spectrum is obtained from an *invertible* transformation from a time-domain description of a function, $x(t)$, to a frequency-domain description, or more generally to a joint time- and frequency-domain description. The (complex) spectrum of a segment of data of length T centered at time t and evaluated at frequency f is

$$X_T(t,f) \triangleq \int_{t-T/2}^{t+T/2} x(u)e^{-i2\pi fu}\,du, \tag{1}$$

for which $i = \sqrt{-1}$. Because of the invertibility of this transformation, a

[1] The term *spectrum,* which derives from the Latin for image, was originally introduced by Sir Isaac Newton (see [Robinson 1982]).

function can be recovered from its spectrum,

$$x(u) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} X_T(t, f) e^{i2\pi f u}\, df, \qquad u \in [t - T/2, t + T/2]. \tag{2}$$

In contrast to this, a statistical spectrum involves an averaging or smoothing operation that is not invertible. For example, the statistical spectrum

$$S_{x_T}(t, f)_{\Delta t} \triangleq \frac{1}{\Delta t} \int_{t-\Delta t/2}^{t+\Delta t/2} S_{x_T}(v, f)\, dv, \tag{3}$$

for which $S_{x_T}(t, f)$ is the normalized squared magnitude spectrum

$$S_{x_T}(t, f) \triangleq \frac{1}{T} |\, X_T(t, f)|^2, \tag{4}$$

is obtained from a temporal smoothing operation. Thus, a statistical spectrum is a summary description of a function from which the function $x(t)$ cannot be recovered. Therefore, although the spectrum is useful for both signal extraction and data compression, the statistical spectrum is not *directly* useful for either. It is, however, quite useful *indirectly* for analysis, design, and adaptation of schemes for *signal extraction* and *data compression*. It is also useful for *forecasting* or *prediction* and more directly for other signal-processing tasks such as 1) the *modeling* and *system-identification* problems of determining the characteristics of a system from measurements on it, such as its response to excitation, and 2) *decision* problems, such as the *signal-detection problem* of detecting the presence of a signal buried in noise. As a matter of fact, the problem of detecting hidden periodicities in random data motivated the earliest work in the development of spectral analysis, as discussed in Section D.

Statistical spectral analysis has diverse applications in areas such as mechanical vibrations, acoustics, speech, communications, radar, sonar, ultrasonics, optics, astronomy, meteorology, oceanography, geophysics, economics, biomedicine, and many other areas. To be more specific, let us briefly consider a few applications. Spectral analysis is used to characterize various signal sources. For example, the spectral purity of a sine wave source (oscillator) is determined by measuring the amounts of harmonics from distortion due, for example, to nonlinear effects in the oscillator and also by measuring the spectral content close in to the fundamental frequency of the oscillator, which is due to random phase noise. Also, the study of modulation and coding of sine wave carrier signals and pulse-train signals for communications, telemetry, radar, and sonar employs spectral analysis as a fundamental tool, as do surveillance systems that must detect and identify modulated and coded signals in a noisy environment. Spectral analysis of the response of electrical networks and components such as amplifiers to both sine wave and random-noise excitation is used to measure various properties such as nonlinear distortion, rejection of unwanted components, such as power-supply components and common-mode components at the inputs of differential amplifiers, and the characteristics of filters, such as center frequencies, bandwidths, pass-band ripple, and stop-band rejection. Similarly, spectral analysis is used to study the magnitude and phase characteristics of the transfer functions as well as nonlinear distortion of various electrical, mechanical, and other systems,

including loudspeakers, communication channels and modems (modulator-demodulators), and magnetic tape recorders in which variations in tape motion introduce signal distortions. In the monitoring and diagnosis of rotating machinery, spectral analysis is used to characterize random vibration patterns that result from wear and damage that cause imbalances. Also, structural analysis of physical systems such as aircraft and other vehicles employs spectral analysis of vibrational response to random excitation to identify natural modes of vibration (resonances). In the study of natural phenomena such as weather and the behavior of wildlife and fisheries populations, the problem of identifying cause-effect relationships is attacked using techniques of spectral analysis. Various physical theories are developed with the assistance of spectral analysis, for example, in studies of atmospheric turbulence and undersea acoustical propagation. In various fields of endeavor involving large, complex systems such as economics, spectral analysis is used in fitting models to time-series for several purposes, such as simulation and forecasting. As might be surmised from this sampling of applications, the techniques of spectral analysis permeate nearly every field of science and engineering.

Spectral analysis applies to both continuous-time functions, called *waveforms,* and discrete-time functions, called *sampled data.* Other terms are commonly used also; for example, the terms *data* and *time-series* are each used for both continuous-time and discrete-time functions. Since the great majority of data sources are continuous-time phenomena, continuous-time data are focused on in this book, because an important objective is to maintain a close tie between theory and empirical reality. Furthermore, since optical technology has emerged as a new frontier in signal processing and optical quantities vary continuously in time and space, this focus on continuous time data is well suited to upcoming technological developments. Nevertheless, since some of the most economical implementations of spectrum analyzers and many of the newly emerging parametric methods of spectral analysis operate with discrete time and discrete frequency and since some data are available only in discrete form, discrete-time and discrete-frequency methods also are described.

2. Why Analyze Waveforms Into Sine Wave Components?[2]

The primary reason why sine waves are especially appropriate components with which to analyze waveforms is our preoccupation with *linear time-invariant* (LTI) *transformations,* which we often call *filters.* A secondary reason why statistical (time-averaged) analysis into sine wave components is especially appropriate is our preoccupation with *time-invariant phenomena* (data sources). To be specific, a transformation of a waveform $x(t)$ into another waveform, say $y(t)$, is an LTI transformation if and only if there exists a weighting function $h(t)$ (here assumed

[2] Readers in need of a brief remedial review of the prerequisite topic of linear time-invariant transformations and the Fourier transform should consult Appendix I.

to be absolutely integrable in the generalized sense, which accommodates Dirac deltas) such that $y(t)$ is the *convolution* (denoted by $\otimes$) of x with h:

$$y(t) = x(t) \otimes h(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} h(t - u)x(u)\, du \tag{5a}$$

$$= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} h(v)x(t - v)\, dv. \tag{5b}$$

The *time-invariance property* of a transformation is, more precisely, a *translation-invariance property* that guarantees that a translation, by w, of $x(t)$ to $x(t + w)$ has no effect on $y(t)$ other than a corresponding translation to $y(t + w)$ (exercise 1). A phenomenon is said to be *time-invariant* only if it is *persistent* in the sense that it is appropriate to conceive of a mathematical model of $x(t)$ for which the following limit time-average exists for each value of τ and is not identically zero,[3]

$$\hat{R}_x(\tau) \triangleq \lim_{T \to \infty} \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right) x\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right) dt. \tag{6}$$

This function is called the *limit autocorrelation function*[4] for $x(t)$. For $\tau = 0$, (6) is simply the time-averaged value of the instantaneous power.[5]

Sine wave analysis is especially appropriate for studying a convolution because the *principal components* (*eigenfunctions*) of the convolution operator are the complex sine wave functions, $e^{i2\pi ft}$ for all real values of f. This follows from the facts that (1) the convolution operation produces a *continuous linear combination* of time-translates, that is, $y(t)$ is a weighted sum (over v) of $x(t - v)$, and (2) the complex sine wave is the only bounded function whose form is invariant (except for a scale factor) to time-translation, that is, a bounded function $x(t)$ satisfies

$$x(t - v) = cx(t) \tag{7}$$

for all t if and only if

$$x(t) = Xe^{i2\pi ft} \tag{8}$$

for some real values of X and f (exercise 3). As a consequence, the form of a bounded function $x(t)$ is invariant to convolution if and only if $x(t) = Xe^{i2\pi ft}$, in

[3] In Part II, it is explained that periodic and almost periodic phenomena as well as constant (time-invariant) phenomena satisfy (6). For $x(t)$ to be from a constant phenomenon, it must satisfy not only (6) but also $\lim_{T\to\infty} \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x(t + \tau/2)x(t - \tau/2)e^{-i2\pi\alpha t}\, dt \equiv 0$ for all $\alpha \neq 0$.

[4] In some treatments of time-series analysis (see [Jenkins and Watts 1968]), the function (6) modified by subtraction of the mean

$$\hat{m}_x \triangleq \lim_{T\to\infty} \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x(t)\, dt$$

from $x(t)$, is called the *autocovariance function,* and when normalized by $\hat{R}_x(0)$ it is called the *autocorrelation function.*

[5] If $x(t)$ is the voltage (in *volts*) across a one-*ohm* resistance, then $x^2(t)$ is the power dissipation (in *watts*).

which case (5) yields

$$y(t) = H(f)x(t), \tag{9}$$

for which

$$H(f) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} h(t)e^{-i2\pi ft}\, dt. \tag{10}$$

This fact can be exploited in the study of convolution by decomposing a waveform $x(t)$ into a continuous linear combination of sine waves,[6]

$$x(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} X(f)e^{i2\pi ft}\, df, \tag{11}$$

with weighting function

$$X(f) \triangleq \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t)e^{-i2\pi ft}\, dt, \tag{12}$$

because then substitution of (11) into (5) yields

$$y(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} Y(f)e^{i2\pi ft}\, df, \tag{13}$$

for which

$$Y(f) = H(f)X(f). \tag{14}$$

Thus, any particular sine wave component in $y(t)$, say

$$y_f(t) \triangleq Y(f)e^{i2\pi ft}, \tag{15}$$

can be determined solely from the corresponding sine wave component in $x(t)$, since (14) and (15) yield

$$y_f(t) = H(f)x_f(t). \tag{16}$$

The scale factor $H(f)$ is the *eigenvalue* associated with the eigenfunction $e^{i2\pi ft}$ of the convolution operator. Transformations (11) and (12) are the *Fourier transform* and its *inverse,* abbreviated by

$$X(\cdot) = F\{x(\cdot)\}$$
$$x(\cdot) = F^{-1}\{X(\cdot)\}.$$

Statistical (time-averaged) analysis of waveforms into sine wave components is especially appropriate for time-invariant phenomena because an ideal statistical spectrum, in which all random effects have been averaged out, exists if and only if the limit autocorrelation (6) exists. Specifically, it is shown in Chapter 3 that the ideal statistical spectrum obtained from (3) by smoothing over *all* time,

$$\lim_{\Delta t \to \infty} S_{x_T}(t, f)_{\Delta t},$$

exists if and only if the limit autocorrelation $\hat{R}_x(\tau)$ exists. Moreover, this ideal

[6] If $x(t)$ is absolutely integrable, then (11) and (12) are the usual *Fourier transform* pair, but if $x(t)$ is a persistent waveform (which does not die out as $|t| \to \infty$) from a time-invariant phenomenon, then (11) and (12) must be replaced with the *generalized* (integrated) *Fourier transform* [Wiener 1930], in which case (14) becomes the Stieltjes integral $Y(f) = \int_{-\infty}^{f} H(\nu)\, dX(\nu)$ [Gardner 1985].

statistical spectrum can be characterized in terms of the Fourier transform of $\hat{R}_x(\tau)$, denoted by

$$\hat{S}_x(f) \triangleq \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \hat{R}_x(\tau) e^{-i2\pi f\tau}\, d\tau. \tag{17}$$

Specifically,

$$\lim_{\Delta t\to\infty} S_{x_T}(t, f)_{\Delta t} = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \hat{S}_x(f - \nu) z_{1/T}(\nu)\, d\nu = \hat{S}_x(f) \otimes z_{1/T}(f), \tag{18}$$

for which $z_{1/T}(f)$ is the unit-area sinc-squared function with width parameter $1/T$,

$$z_{1/T}(f) = \frac{1}{T}\left[\frac{\sin(\pi f T)}{\pi f}\right]^2. \tag{19}$$

As the time-interval of spectral analysis is made large, we obtain (in the limit)

$$\lim_{T\to\infty} \lim_{\Delta t\to\infty} S_{x_T}(t, f)_{\Delta t} = \hat{S}_x(f), \tag{20}$$

because the limit of $z_{1/T}(f)$ is the *Dirac delta*

$$\lim_{T\to\infty} z_{1/T}(f) = \delta(f), \tag{21}$$

and convolution of a function with the Dirac delta as in (18) leaves the function unaltered (exercise 2). The ideal statistical spectrum $\hat{S}_x(f)$ defined by (20) is called the *limit spectrum.*

Before leaving this topic of justifying the focus on sine wave components for time-series analysis, it is instructive (especially for the reader with a background in stochastic processes) to consider how the justification must be modified if we are interested in probabilistic (ensemble-averaged) statistical spectra rather than deterministic (time-averaged) statistical spectra. Let us therefore consider an ensemble of *random samples* of waveforms $\{x(t, s)\}$, indexed by s; for convenience in the ensuing heuristic argument, let us assume that the ensemble is a continuous ordered set for which the ensemble index, s, can be any real number. For each member $x(t, s)$ of the ensemble, we can obtain an analysis into principal components (sine wave components). A characteristic property of a set of principal components is that they are mutually *uncorrelated*[7] in the sense that

$$\langle x_f, x_\nu \rangle_t \triangleq \lim_{T\to\infty} \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x_f(t, s) x_\nu^*(t, s)\, dt = 0, \qquad f \neq \nu, \tag{22}$$

where * denotes complex conjugation (exercise 5). But in the probabilistic theory,

[7] For a persistent waveform (which does not die out as $|t| \to \infty$) from a time-invariant phenomenon, the property of sine wave components being mutually uncorrelated is deeper than suggested by (22). In particular, the envelopes (from (1)), $X_T(t, f)$ and $X_T(t, \nu)$, of the *local sine wave components* (cf. Chapter 4, Section E) become uncorrelated in the limit $T \to \infty$ for all $f \neq \nu$ as explained in Chapter 7, Section C.

it is required that the principal components be uncorrelated over the ensemble[8]

$$\langle x_f, x_\nu \rangle_s \triangleq \lim_{S\to\infty} \frac{1}{S} \int_{-S/2}^{S/2} x_f(t, s) x_\nu^*(t, s)\, ds = 0, \qquad f \neq \nu \tag{23}$$

as well as uncorrelated over time in order to obtain the desired simplicity in the study of time-series subjected to LTI transformations. If we proceed formally by substitution of the principal component,

$$x_f(t, s) \triangleq X(f, s) e^{i2\pi ft} = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(u, s) e^{-i2\pi fu}\, du\, e^{i2\pi ft}, \tag{24}$$

into (23), we obtain[9] (after reversing the order of the limit operation and the two integration operations)

$$|\langle x_f, x_\nu \rangle_s| = \left| \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \mathcal{R}_x(t, v) e^{-i2\pi(ft - \nu v)}\, dt\, dv \right|, \tag{25}$$

for which the function $\mathcal{R}_x$ is the *probabilistic autocorrelation* defined by

$$\mathcal{R}_x(t, v) \triangleq \lim_{S\to\infty} \frac{1}{S} \int_{-S/2}^{S/2} x(t, s) x(v, s)\, ds. \tag{26}$$

It can be shown (exercise 6) that (23) vanishes for all $f \neq \nu$, as desired, if and only if

$$\mathcal{R}_x(t, v) = \mathcal{R}_x(t + w, v + w) \tag{27}$$

for all translations w, in which case $\mathcal{R}_x$ depends on only the difference of its two arguments,

$$\mathcal{R}_x(t, v) = \mathcal{R}_x(t - v). \tag{28}$$

Consequently principal-component methods of study of an LTI transformation of an ensemble of waveforms are applicable if and only if the correlation of the ensemble is translation invariant. Such an ensemble of random samples of waveforms is commonly said to have arisen from a *wide-sense stationary stochastic process*.[10] But we must ask if ensembles with translation-invariant correlations are of interest in practice. As a matter of fact, they are for precisely the same reason that translation-invariant linear transformations are of practical interest. The reason is a preoccupation with *time-invariance*. That is, the ensemble of waveforms generated by some phenomenon will exhibit a translation-invariant correlation if and only if the data-generating mechanism of the phenomenon exhibits appropriate time-invariance. Such time-invariance typically results from a *stable* system being in a *steady-state* mode of operation—a *statistical equilibrium*.

[8] The limit averaging operation in (23) can be interpreted (via the *law of large numbers*) as the probabilistic *expectation operation*.

[9] To make the formal manipulation used to obtain (25) rigorous, $X(f, s)$ must be replaced with the envelope of the local sine wave component, which is obtained from (1) with $x(u)$ replaced by $x(u, s)$; then the limit, $T \to \infty$, must be taken. An in-depth treatment of this topic of spectral correlation is introduced in Chapter 7, Section C, and is the major focus of Part II.

[10] The term *stochastic* comes from the Greek *to aim* (*guess*) *at*.

The ultimate in time-invariance of a data-generating mechanism is characterized by a *translation-invariant ensemble,* which is an ensemble $\{x(t, s)\}$ for which the identity

$$x(t + w, s) = x(t, s') \tag{29}$$

holds for all s and all real w; that is, each translation by, for instance, w of each ensemble member, such as $x(t, s)$, yields another ensemble member, for example, $x(t, s')$. This time-invariance property (29) is more than sufficient for the desired time-invariance property (27). An ensemble that exhibits property (29) shall be said to have arisen from a *strict-sense stationary stochastic process.* For many applications, a natural way in which a translation-invariant ensemble would arise as a mathematical model is if the ensemble actually generated by the physical phenomenon is artificially supplemented with all translated versions of the members of the actual ensemble. In many situations, the most intuitively pleasing actual ensemble consists of one and only one waveform, $x(t)$, which shall be called the *ensemble generator.* In this case, the supplemented ensemble is defined by

$$x(t, s) = x(t + s). \tag{30}$$

The way in which a probabilistic model can, in principle, be derived from this ensemble is explained in Chapter 5, Section B. This most intuitively pleasing translation-invariant ensemble shall be said to have arisen from an *ergodic*[11] stationary stochastic process. *Ergodicity* is the property that guarantees equality between time-averages, such as (22), and ensemble-averages, such as (23). The ergodic relation (30) is known as *Herman O. A. Wold's isomorphism* between an individual time-series and a stationary stochastic process [Wold 1948].

In summary, statistical sine wave analysis—spectral analysis as we shall call it—is especially appropriate in principle if we are interested in studying linear *time-invariant* transformations of data and data from *time-invariant* phenomena. Nevertheless, in practice, statistical spectral analysis can be used to advantage for slowly time-variant linear transformations and for data from slowly time-variant phenomena (as explained in Chapter 8) and in other special cases, such as periodic time-variation (as explained in Part II) and the study of the departure of transformations from linearity (as explained in Chapter 7).

C. ORIGINS OF SPECTRAL ANALYSIS

The Fourier theory of sine wave analysis of functions has its origins in two fields of investigation into the nature of the physical world: acoustical/optical wave phenomena and astronomical and geophysical periodicities.[12] These two fields

[11] The term *ergodic* comes from the Greek for *work path,* which—in the originating field of statistical mechanics—relates to the path, in one dimension, described by $x(\cdot, s)$, of an energetic particle in a gas.

[12] The historical survey given here has been synthesized from various other more brief historical sketches found in the literature as well as from inspection of many (but not all) of the references cited here.

have furnished the primary stimuli from the natural sciences to the classical study—which extends into the first half of the twentieth century—of spectral analysis. The motions of the planets, the tides, and irregular recurrences of weather, with their hidden periodicities and disturbed harmonics, form a counterpart of the vibrating string in acoustics and the phenomena of light in optics. Although the concept of sine wave analysis has very early origins, the first bona fide uses of sine wave analysis apparently did not occur until the eighteenth century, with the work of Leonhard Euler (1707–1783) and Joseph Louis Lagrange (1736–1813) in astronomy [Lagrange 1772].[13]

The concept of *statistical* spectral analysis germinated in early studies of light, beginning with Isaac Newton's prism experiment in 1664 which led to the notion that white light is simply an additive combination of homogeneous monochromatic vibrations. The developing wave optics ideas, together with developing ideas from meteorology and astronomy, led Sir Arthur Schuster (1851–1934), around the turn of the nineteenth century, to the invention of the *periodogram* for application to the problem of detection of hidden periodicities in random data [Schuster 1894, 1897, 1898, 1900, 1904, 1906, 1911]. The periodogram, denoted by $S_{x_T}(f)$ (originally defined for discrete-time data), is simply the squared magnitude of the Fourier transform of a finite segment of data, x_T, normalized by the length, T, of the data segment (graphed versus the frequency variable, f):

$$S_{x_T}(f) \triangleq \frac{1}{T}|X_T(f)|^2 \tag{31}$$

$$X_T(f) \triangleq \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x_T(t)e^{-i2\pi ft}\,dt, \tag{32}$$

where $x_T(t)$ is taken to be zero for $|t| > T/2$. If a substantial peak occurred in the periodogram, it was believed that an underlying periodicity of the frequency at which the peak occurred had been detected. As a matter of fact, this idea preceded Schuster in the work of George Gabriel Stokes (1819–1903) [Stokes 1879]; and a related approach to periodicity detection developed for meteorology by Christoph Hendrik Diederik Buys-Ballot (1817–1890) preceded Stokes [Buys-Ballot 1847]. The first general development of the periodogram is attributed to Evgency Evgenievich Slutsky (1880–1948) [Slutsky 1929, 1934].

Another approach to detection of periodicities that was being used in meteorology in the early part of the twentieth century was based on the *correlogram* [Clayton 1917; Alter 1927; Taylor 1920, 1938], whose earliest known use [Hooker 1901] was motivated by the studies in economics of John Henry Poynting (1852–1914) [Poynting 1884]. The correlogram, denoted by $R_{x_T}(\tau)$ (originally defined for discrete-time data), is simply the time-average of products of time-shifted versions of a finite segment of data (graphed versus the time-difference variable, τ),

$$R_{x_T}(\tau) \triangleq \frac{1}{T}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x_T\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right) x_T\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right)dt. \tag{33}$$

[13] See [Wiener 1938; Davis 1941; Robinson 1982] for the early history of spectral analysis, and [Chapman and Bartels 1940, Chapter XVI] for an account of early methods.

But since $x_T(t \pm \tau/2)$ is zero for $t \pm \tau/2$ outside $[-T/2, T/2]$, we obtain

$$R_{x_T}(\tau) = \frac{1}{T}\int_{-(T-|\tau|)/2}^{(T-|\tau|)/2} x_T\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right) x_T\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right)dt. \tag{34}$$

If an oscillation with τ occurred in the correlogram, it was believed that an underlying periodicity had been detected.[14]

The discovery of the *periodogram-correlogram relation* (e.g., [Stumpff 1927; Wiener 1930]) revealed that these two methods for periodicity detection were, in essence, the same. The *relation*, which is a direct consequence of the *convolution theorem* (Appendix 1-1) is that $S_{x_T}(\cdot)$ and $R_{x_T}(\cdot)$ are a Fourier transform pair (exercise 10):

$$S_{x_T}(\cdot) = F\{R_{x_T}(\cdot)\}. \tag{35}$$

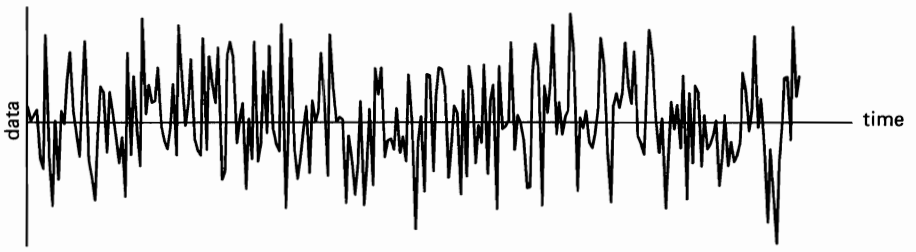
This relation was apparently understood and used by some before the turn of the century, as evidenced by the spectroscopy work of Albert Abraham Michelson (1852–1931), who in 1891 used a mechanical harmonic analyzer to compute the Fourier transform of a type of correlogram obtained from an interferometer for the purpose of examining the fine structure of the spectral lines of lightwaves.

A *completely random time-series* is defined to be one for which the discrete-time correlogram is asymptotically ($T \to \infty$) zero for all nonzero time-shifts, $\tau \neq 0$, indicating there is no correlation in the time-series. A segment of a simulated completely random time-series is shown in Figure 1-1(a), and its periodogram and correlogram are shown in Figures 1-1(b) and 1-1(c). This concept arose (originally for discrete-time data) around the turn of the century [Goutereau 1906], and a systematic theory of such completely random time-series was developed in the second decade by George Udny Yule (1871–1951) [Yule 1926]. Yule apparently first discovered the fact that an LTI transformation (a convolution) can introduce correlation into a completely random time series. It is suggested by the periodogram-correlogram relation that a completely random time series has a flat periodogram (asymptotically). By analogy with the idea of white light containing equal amounts of all spectral components (in the optical band), a completely random time series came to be called *white noise*. As a consequence of the discoveries of the correlation-inducing effect of an LTI transformation, and the periodogram-correlogram relation, it was discovered that a completely random time series, subjected to a narrow-band LTI transformation, can exhibit a periodogram with sharp dominant peaks, when in fact there is no underlying periodicity in the data. This is illustrated in Figure 1-2. This revelation, together with several decades of experience with the erratic and unreliable behavior of periodograms, first established as an *inherent* property by Slutsky [Slutsky 1927], led during the mid–twentieth century to the development of various averaging or smoothing (statistical) methods for modifying the periodogram to improve its utility. A smoothed version of the periodogram in Figure 1-1(b) is shown in Figure 1-1(d). Such averaging techniques were apparently first proposed by Albert Einstein (1879–1955) [Einstein 1914], Norbert Wiener (1894–1964) [Wiener 1930] and later by Percy John Daniell (1889–1946) [Daniell 1946], Maurice Stevenson

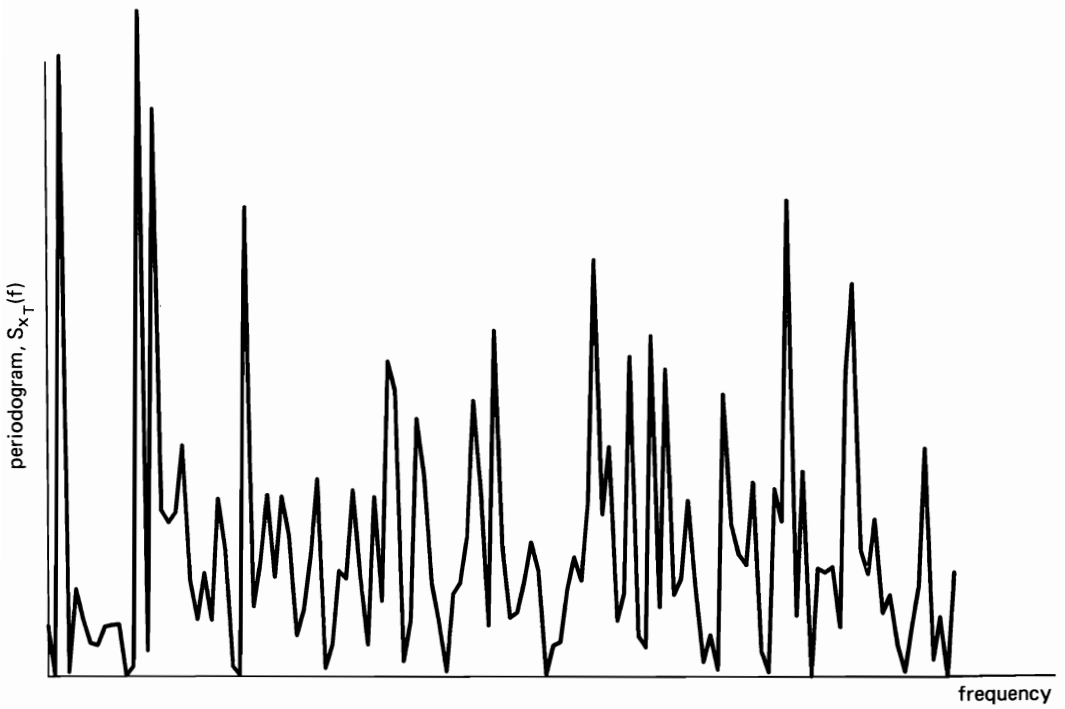
[14] The early history of correlation studies is reported in [Davis 1941].

Bartlett (1910–) [Bartlett 1948, 1950], John Wilder Tukey (1915–) [Tukey 1949], Richard Wesley Hamming (1915–), and Ralph Beebe Blackman (1904–) [Blackman and Tukey 1958]. In addition, these circumstances surrounding the periodogram led to the alternative *time-series-modeling approach to spectral analysis,* which includes various methods such as the *autoregressive-modeling method* introduced by Yule [Yule 1927] and developed by Herman O. A. Wold (1908–) [Wold 1938] and others.

Apparently independent of and prior to the introduction (by others) of empirical averaging techniques to obtain less random measurements of spectral

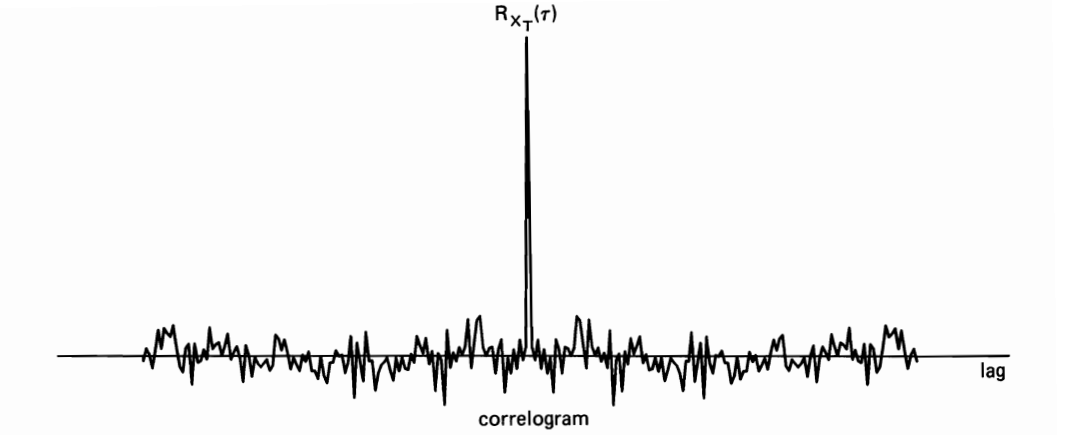


(a)

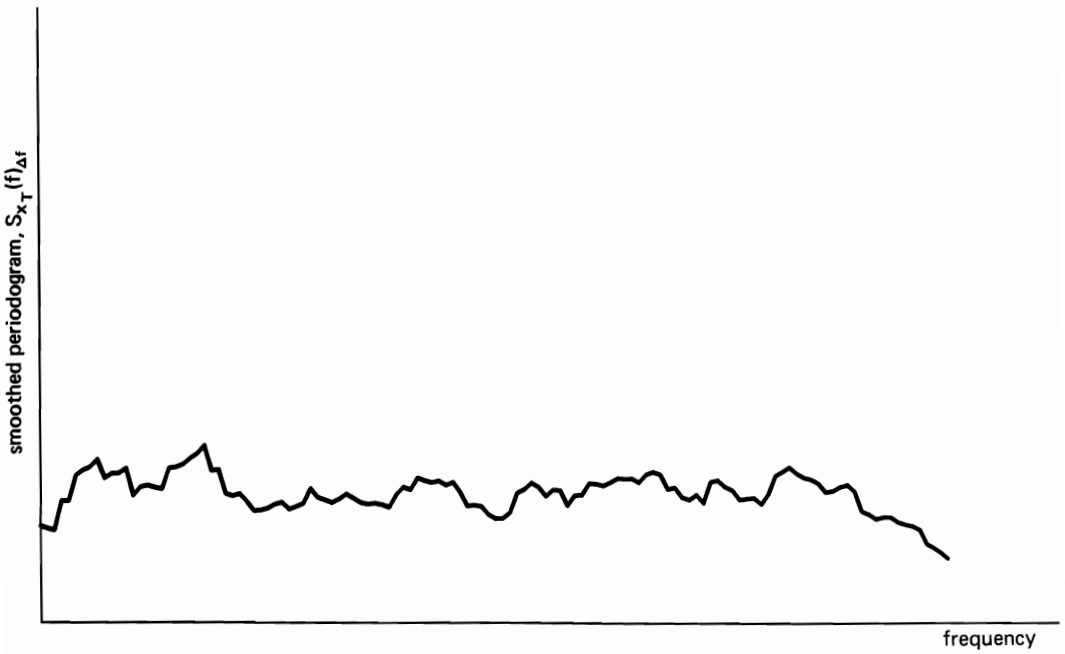


(b)

Figure 1-1 (a) Completely random data (white noise), $T = 256T_s$. (b) Periodogram of white noise, $T = 256T_s$.



(c)



(d)

Figure 1-1 (continued) (c) Correlogram of white noise, $T = 256T_s$. (d) Smoothed periodogram of white noise, $T = 256T_s$, $\Delta f = 21/256T_s$.

content of random time-series, Wiener developed his theory of *generalized harmonic analysis* [Wiener 1930], in which he introduced a completely nonrandom measure of spectral content. Wiener's spectrum can be characterized as a limiting form of an averaged periodogram. In terms of this limiting form of periodogram and the corresponding limiting form of correlogram, Wiener developed what might be called a calculus of averages for LTI transformations of time-series. Although

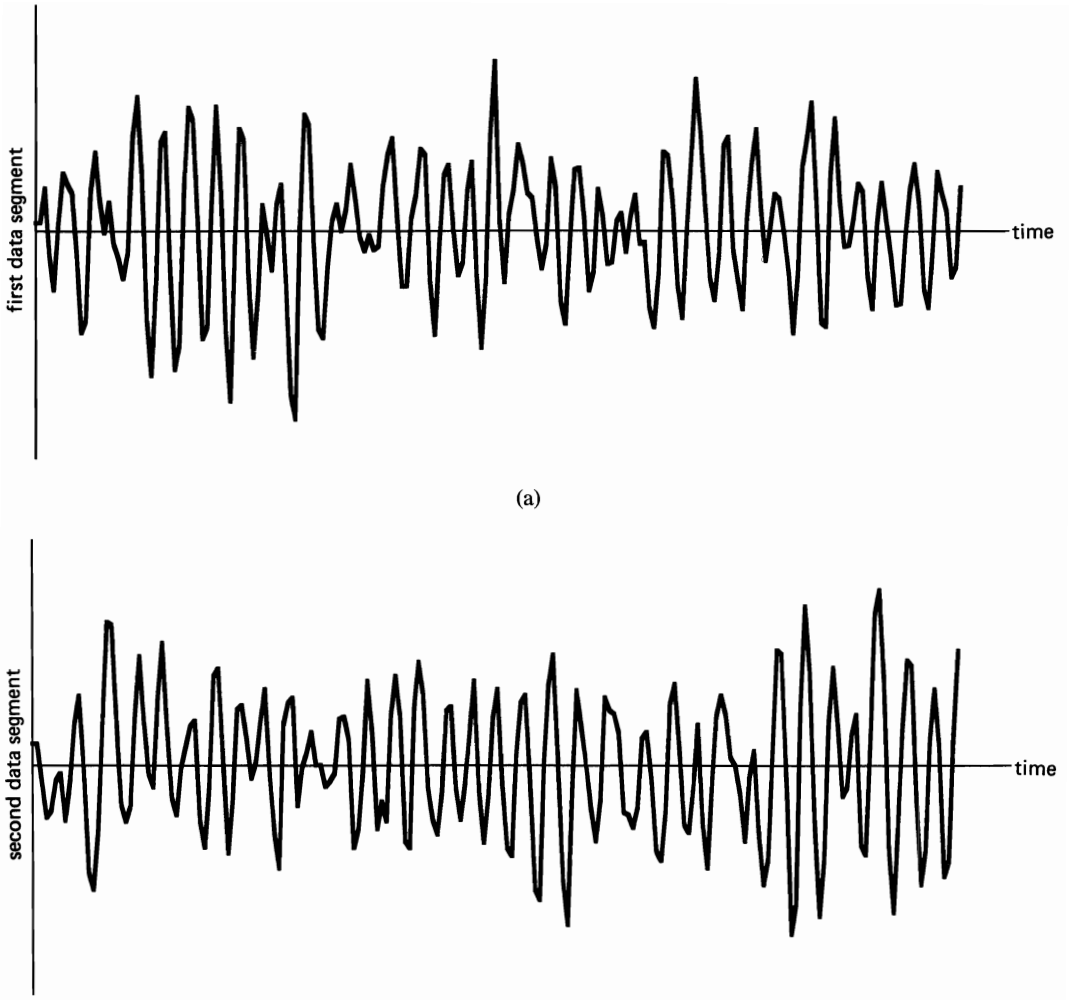
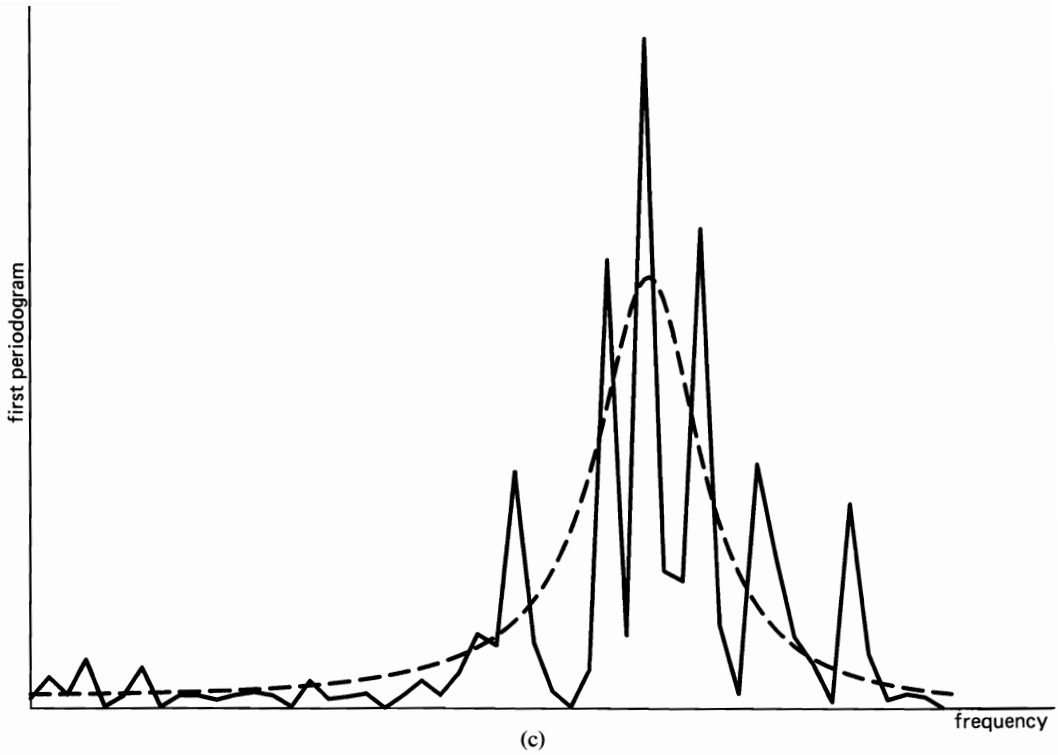


Figure 1-2 (a), (b) Two segments of narrow-band data, $T = 256T_s$.

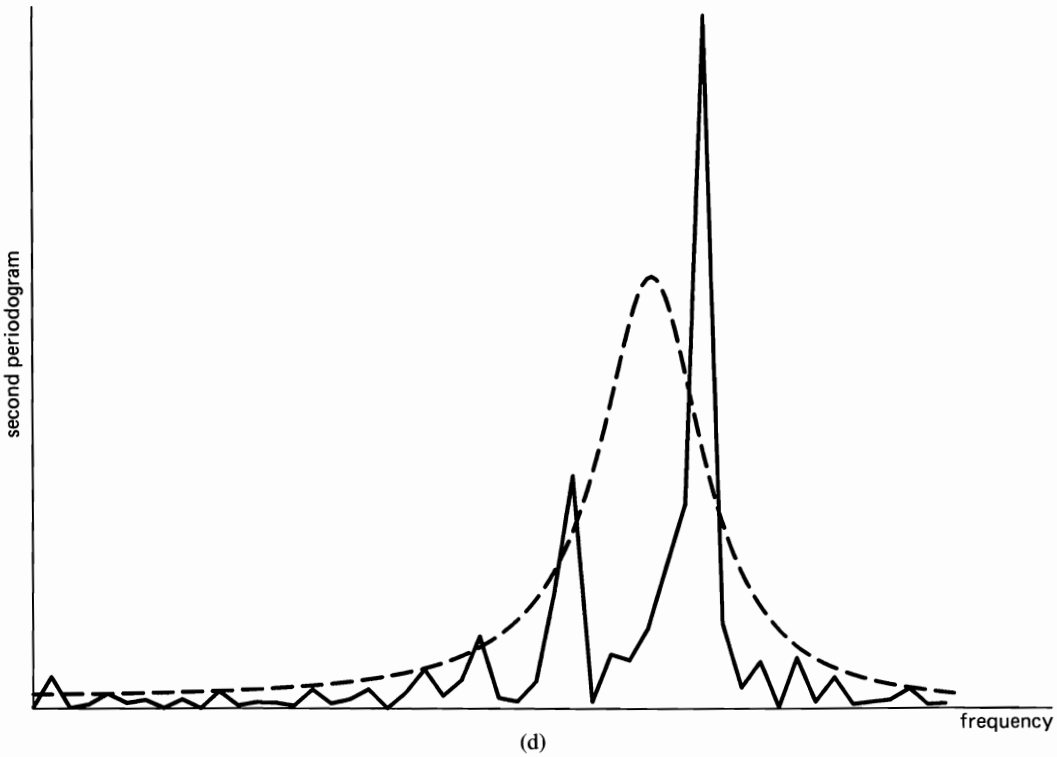
it is not well known,[15] Wiener's limit spectrum and its characterization as the Fourier transform of a limit correlogram had been previously presented (in rather terse form) by Einstein [Einstein 1914].

The autonomous development of statistical mechanics, with Josiah Willard Gibbs' (1839–1903) concept of an *ensemble average,* and the study of Brownian motion, by Maryan von Smoluchowski [von Smoluchski 1914], Einstein [Einstein 1906], and Wiener [Wiener 1923], together with the mathematical development

[15] This little-known fact was brought to the author's attention by Professor Thomas Kailath, who learned of it from Akiva Moisevich Yaglom.

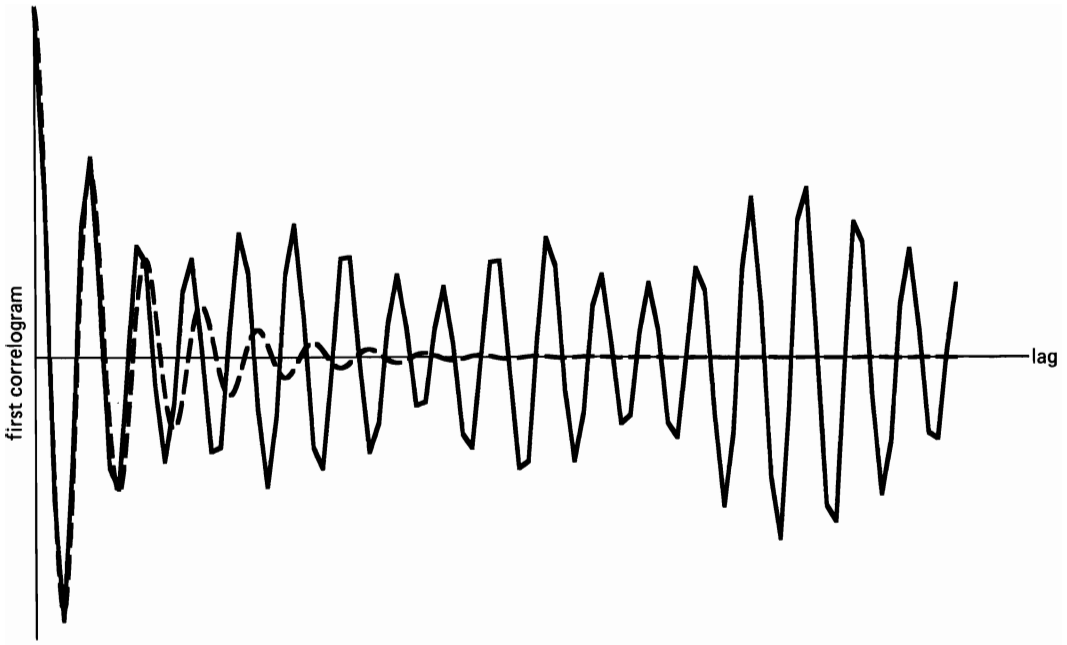


(c)

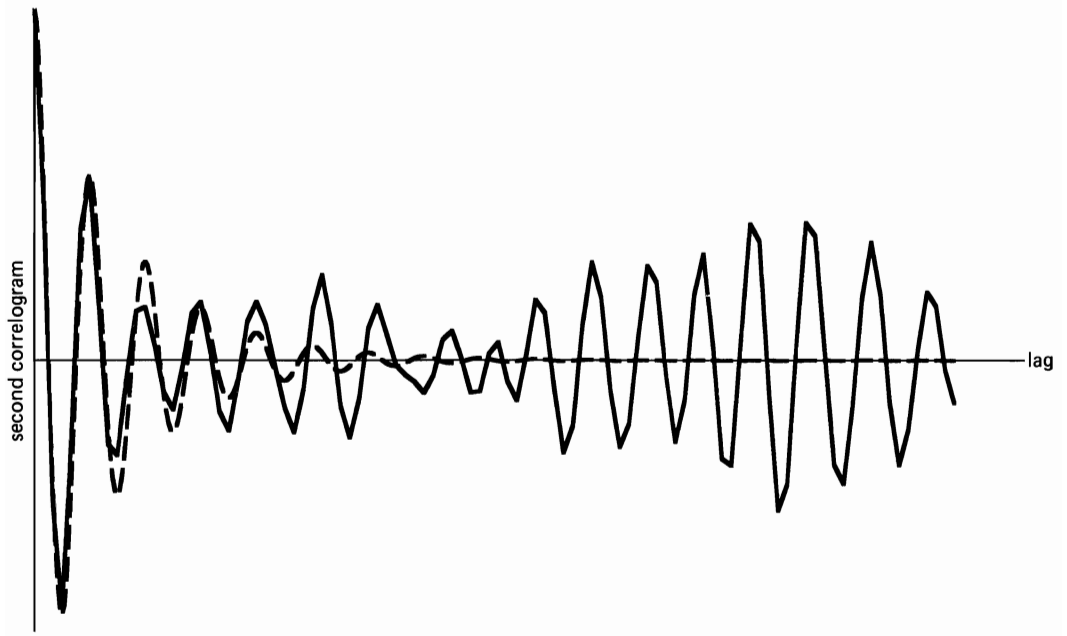


(d)

Figure 1-2 (continued) (c), (d) Periodograms of the two data segments shown in (a) and (b). (Broken curve is the limit spectrum.)



(e)



(f)

Figure 1-2 (continued) (e), (f) Correlograms of the two data segments shown in (a) and (b). (Broken curve is the limit autocorrelation.)

of probability theory based on the measure and integration theory of Henri León Lebesgue (1875–1941) around the turn of the century, led ultimately to the probabilistic theory of stochastic processes. This theory includes a probabilistic counterpart to Wiener's theory of generalized harmonic analysis, in which infinite time-averages are replaced with infinite ensemble averages. It greatly enhanced the conceptualization and mathematical modeling of erratic-data sources and the design and analysis of statistical data-processing techniques such as spectral analysis. The theory (for discrete-time processes) originated in the work of Aleksandr Jakovlevich Khinchin (1894–1959) during the early 1930s [Khinchin 1934] and was further developed in the early stages by Wold [Wold 1938], Andrei Nikolaevich Kolmogorov (1903–) [Kolmogorov 1941a,b], and Harald Cramér (1893–) [Cramér 1940, 1942].[16] Major contributions to the early development of the probabilistic theory and methodology of statistical spectral analysis were made by Ulf Grenander and Murray Rosenblatt [Grenander and Rosenblatt 1953, 1984], Emanuel Parzen [1957a, b], and Blackman and Tukey [Blackman and Tukey 1958].

The probabilistic theory of stochastic processes is currently the popular approach to time-series analysis. However, from time to time, the alternative deterministic approach, which is taken in this book, is promoted for its closer ties with empirical reality for many applications; see [Kampé de Fériet 1954; Brennan 1961; Bass 1962; Hofstetter 1964; Finch 1969; Brillinger 1975, Sec. 2.11; Masani 1979].

D. SPECTRAL ANALYSIS AND PERIODICITY

The problem of studying hidden periodicity in random data motivated the earliest work in spectral analysis and provided much of the impetus for developing spectral analysis concepts and methods during the first few decades following Schuster's pioneering work. However, the fact that most of the phenomena being studied did not exhibit periodicity but rather gave rise to data consisting of what came to be called *disturbed harmonics* (which result from subjecting a completely random time-series to a narrow-band-pass filter) resulted in a major shift in focus away from hidden periodicity and toward the time-invariance discussed in Section B. It is curious that some branch of work in the field did not retain a substantial focus on phenomena that do indeed give rise to random data with hidden periodicity and thereby did not continue the initial development of statistical theory and method for such time-series. Although existing theory and method are usually adequate for additive periodic components in random data, there is no generally appropriate theory and method for other types of hidden periodicity,

[16] The most extensive bibliography on time-series and random processes, ranging from the earliest period of contribution (mid–nineteenth century) to the recent past (1960) is the international team project bibliography edited by Wold [Wold 1965]. Starting with 1960, a running bibliography, including abstracts, is available in the *Journal of Abstracts: Statistical Theory and Method.*

such as multiplicative periodicity, that arise either from natural rhythms or from transformations intentionally designed to be periodic, as in various techniques of sampling, modulating, multiplexing, and coding employed in signal-processing systems. The lack of development of theory and method for spectral analysis of such time-series was recognized explicitly by Blackman and Tukey [Blackman and Tukey 1958, p. vi], who in effect condoned it by arguing pragmatically that no phenomenon is precisely periodic and that existing theory and method appear to be adequate. In contrast to this point of view, it is shown in Part II of this book that some phenomena can, to great advantage, be modeled as precisely periodic; also, not only is existing theory and method for spectral analysis generally inadequate in such cases, but an adequate generalization in terms of spectral correlation can be developed. This more general theory and methodology of statistical spectral analysis presented in Part II includes the theory and methodology presented in Part I as the special case for which periodicity degenerates into constancy (time-invariance). A brief introduction to the spectral correlation theory of random data from periodic phenomena is given in Chapter 7 of Part I.

E. SUMMARY

Section A explains that the objective of Part I of this book is to show that a comprehensive deterministic theory of statistical spectral analysis, which for many applications relates more directly to empirical reality than does its more popular probabilistic counterpart, can be developed—the motivation being to stimulate a reassessment of the way engineers and scientists are often taught to think about statistical spectral analysis by showing that probability theory need not play a primary role. In Section B it is explained that the most basic purpose of spectral analysis is to represent a function by a sum of weighted sinusoidal functions called *spectral components* and that procedures for statistical spectral analysis average the strengths of such components to reduce random effects. It is further explained that sine wave components, in comparison with other possible types of components, are especially appropriate for analyzing data from time-invariant phenomena, because sine waves are the principal components of time-invariant linear transformations and because an ideal sine wave spectrum exists if and only if the data source is time-invariant (in an appropriate sense). The conceptual link between this point of view and that of the probabilistic framework of ergodic stationary stochastic processes on which statistical spectral analysis is typically based is then explained in terms of Wold's isomorphism. In Section C, a historical sketch of the origins of spectral analysis is presented, and finally in Section D the need for a generalization of the theory of spectral analysis of random data, from constant phenomena to periodic phenomena, is commented upon.

Appendix 1-1 is a brief review of prerequisite material on linear time-invariant transformations and the Fourier transform.

F. OVERVIEW OF PART I

This first chapter is concluded with a brief overview of the remainder of Part I. In Chapter 2, the basic elements of empirical spectral analysis are introduced. The time-variant periodogram for nonstatistical spectral analysis is defined and characterized as the Fourier transform of the time-variant correlogram, and its temporal and spectral resolution properties are derived. The effects of linear time-invariant filtering and periodic time sampling are described. Then in Chapter 3, the fundamentals of statistical spectral analysis are introduced. The equivalence between statistical spectra obtained from temporal smoothing and statistical spectra obtained from spectral smoothing is established, and the relationship between these statistical spectra and the abstract limit spectrum is derived. The limit spectrum is characterized as the Fourier transform of the limit autocorrelation, and the effects of linear time-invariant filtering and periodic time-sampling on the limit spectrum are described. Various continuous-time and discrete-time models for time-series are introduced, and their limit spectra are calculated. Chapter 4 presents a wide variety of analog (continuous-time) methods for empirical statistical spectral analysis, and it is shown that all these methods are either exactly or approximately equivalent when a substantial amount of smoothing is done. The spectral leakage phenomenon is explained, and the concept of an effective spectral smoothing window is introduced. Then a general representation for the wide variety of statistical spectra obtained from these methods is introduced and shown to provide a means for a unified study of statistical spectral analysis. In Chapter 5, it is explained that the notion of the degree of randomness or variability of a statistical spectrum can be quantified in terms of time-averages by exploiting the concept of fraction-of-time probability. This approach is then used mathematically to characterize the temporal bias and temporal variability of statistical spectra. These characterizations form the basis for an in-depth discussion of design trade-offs involving the resolution, leakage, and reliability properties of a statistical spectrum. The general representation introduced in Chapter 4 is used here to obtain a unified treatment for the wide variety of spectral analysis methods described in Chapter 4. Chapter 6 complements Chapter 4 by presenting a variety of digital (discrete-time) methods for statistical spectral analysis. Chapter 7 generalizes the concept of spectral analysis of a single real-valued time-series to that of cross-spectral analysis of two or more complex-valued time-series. It is established that the cross spectrum, which is a measure of spectral correlation, plays a fundamental role in characterizing the degree to which two or more time-series are related by a linear time-invariant transformation. Methods for measurement of statistical cross spectra that are generalizations of the methods described in earlier chapters are presented, and the temporal bias and temporal variability of statistical cross spectra are mathematically characterized in a unified way based on a general representation. In Chapter 8, the application of statistical spectral analysis to time-variant phenomena is studied. Fundamental limitations on temporal and spectral resolution are discussed, and the roles of ensemble averaging and probabilistic models are described. Finally, in Chapter 9, an introduction to the theory of autoregressive modeling of time-series is

presented and used as the basis for describing a variety of autoregressive parametric methods of statistical spectral analysis. The chapter concludes with an extensive experimental study and comparison of various parametric and nonparametric methods of statistical spectral analysis.

EXERCISES

1. Substitute $x(t + w)$ in place of $x(t)$ in the convolution (5), and use a change of variable of integration to verify that this substitution produces $y(t + w)$ in place of $y(t)$.
2. The *impulse function,* denoted by $\delta(t)$, (also called the *Dirac delta*) is formally defined to be an idealized pulse with infinitesimal width, infinite height, and unity area; thus,

$$\delta(t) = 0, \qquad t \neq 0$$

$$\int_{-\epsilon}^{\epsilon} \delta(t)\, dt = 1, \qquad \epsilon > 0. \tag{36}$$

Consequently, the impulse function exhibits the *sampling property*

$$\delta(t - t_0)x(t) = x(t_0)\delta(t - t_0) \tag{37}$$

for every function $x(t)$ that is continuous at $t = t_0$.

(a) Verify that the Fourier transform of the impulse function

$$x(t) = \delta(t - t_0) \tag{38a}$$

is

$$X(f) = e^{-i2\pi f t_0}. \tag{38b}$$

(b) Show that $h(t) \otimes \delta(t) = h(t)$ for any continuous function $h(t)$. Then use the convolution (5) to verify that the response of an LTI transformation to an impulse excitation at $t = 0$ is $y(t) = h(t)$. Thus, the *weighting function* $h(t)$ of an LTI transformation is identical to its *impulse response.*

(c) Verify that the Fourier transform of a periodic function with Fourier series representation

$$x(t) = \Delta f \sum_{m=-\infty}^{\infty} X_m e^{i2\pi m \Delta f t} \tag{39a}$$

is

$$X(f) = \Delta f \sum_{m=-\infty}^{\infty} X_m \delta(f - m\Delta f). \tag{39b}$$

3. **(a)** To gain some insight into the fact that the only bounded waveform whose form is invariant to translation is a complex sine wave, subtract $x(t)$ from both sides of (7), divide by v, and take the limit as $v \to 0$, to obtain the following condition for (7),

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = \alpha x(t)$$

$$\alpha \triangleq \lim_{v \to 0} \frac{1 - c}{v}$$

(notice that c depends on v). Then solve this differential equation by integration to obtain

$$x(t) = \beta e^{\alpha t}$$

for arbitrary α and β. This function $x(t)$ is bounded if and only if α is imaginary

or zero. Substitute this $x(t)$ into (7) and solve for c. Then substitute this solution into the definition of α to verify consistency.

(b) As another approach, Fourier transform both sides of (7) to obtain

$$X(f)e^{i2\pi fv} = cX(f),$$

and argue that this equation is valid for all values of f if and only if $X(f)$ is nonzero for at most one value of f, say γ, to conclude that

$$X(f) = \beta\delta(f - \gamma)$$

for arbitrary β and γ. Then perform an inverse Fourier transformation of both sides of this equation to obtain the desired result.

(c) As a third approach, consider an integer t and iterate (7) for $v = 1, 2, 3, \ldots, t$, letting c_1 denote the value of c for $v = 1$:

$$x(t) = \frac{1}{c_1}x(t - 1) = \frac{1}{c_1}\left[\frac{1}{c_1}x(t - 2)\right] = \cdots = \left(\frac{1}{c_1}\right)^t x(0).$$

Show that this result can be put into the form of (8).

4. Prove the convolution theorem; that is, if

$$z(t) = x(t) \otimes y(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t - v)y(v)\, dv, \tag{40a}$$

then

$$Z(f) \triangleq \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} z(t)e^{-i2\pi ft}\, dt = X(f)Y(f). \tag{40b}$$

Hint: One method is to Fourier transform both sides of (40a) and then use the change of variables $t - v = u$. Another method is to perform an inverse transformation of both sides of (40b) and then use the transform pair (38).

5. Substitute the sine waves (24) with frequencies f and ν into (22), and verify that the correlation is zero for $f \neq \nu$.

6. Show that the double Fourier transform

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \mathcal{R}_x(t, v)e^{-i2\pi(ft - \nu v)}\, dt\, dv$$

vanishes for all $f \neq \nu$ if and only if

$$\mathcal{R}_x(t, v) = \mathcal{R}_x(t - v).$$

Hint: Let the above double integral be denoted by $\mathcal{S}_x(f, \nu)$; then $\mathcal{R}_x(t, v)$ is given by the inverse double Fourier transform

$$\mathcal{R}_x(t, v) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \mathcal{S}_x(f, \nu)e^{i2\pi(ft - \nu v)}\, df\, dv.$$

Now, in order for $\mathcal{S}_x(f, \nu)$ to vanish for all $f \neq \nu$ without $\mathcal{R}_x(t, v)$ being identically zero (or otherwise pathological), it is required that

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{S}_x(f, \nu) &= S_x(f)\delta(f - \nu) \\ &= S_x(\nu)\delta(f - \nu)\end{aligned}$$

for some function $S_x(f)$.

7. The Fourier transform representation (11)–(12) can be formally verified by substituting (12) into (11) and using the transform

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-i2\pi f(t - s)}\, df = \delta(t - s).$$

Do this by assuming that the required interchange of integrals is justified.

8. To illustrate that negative frequencies $f < 0$ for a real waveform $x(t)$ are simply mathematical artifacts with no physical significance, show that they can be dispensed with, while preserving the Fourier transform relation. Specifically, define the *one-sided Fourier transform*, denoted by

$$F_+\{x(\cdot)\} = X_+(\cdot),$$

by

$$X_+(f) \triangleq \begin{cases} 2X(f), & f > 0 \\ 0, & f < 0. \end{cases}$$

Then show that $x(t)$ can be recovered from $X_+(f)$ by the *inverse one-sided Fourier transform,* denoted by

$$x(\cdot) = F_+^{-1}\{X_+(\cdot)\},$$

and defined by

$$x(t) = \text{Re}\left\{\int_0^\infty X_+(f)e^{i2\pi ft}\, df\right\},$$

where Re{·} denotes the real part of the complex quantity in the braces.
Hint: First prove that for a real waveform $x(t)$, $X(f)$ exhibits the Hermitian symmetry

$$X(-f) = X^*(f).$$

Then use the result of exercise 7:

$$F^{-1}\{F[x(\cdot)]\} = x(\cdot).$$

9. Verify *Parseval's relation* for Fourier transforms:

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t)[y(t)]^*\, dt = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} X(f)[Y(f)]^*\, df. \tag{41}$$

Hint: Substitute the Fourier transform integrals for $X(f)$ and $Y(f)$ into the right member of (41) and then use the transform (from exercise 2)

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-i2\pi ft} df = \delta(t). \tag{42}$$

10. Verify that a double convolution is given by the double integral

$$x(t) \otimes y(t) \otimes z(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t - u)y(u - v)z(v)\, du\, dv. \tag{43}$$

11. Show that the periodogram-correlogram relation is simply an application of the convolution theorem (exercise 4). *Hint:* Use the change of variables $t = t' + \tau/2$ in (33).

12. Verify the Fourier transform pairs given in Table 1-1 on page 26. The waveforms in this table are defined by (12)–(15) in Chapter II. *Hint:* For $v_T(t)$, use the convolution theorem together with $v_T(t) = u_T(t) \otimes u_T(t)$. For $w_T(t)$, start with $\frac{1}{T}u_{1/T}(f)$, and evaluate the inverse transform.

13. Verify the transform pairs

$$F\{\cos(2\pi f_0 t)\} = \frac{1}{2}\delta(f - f_0) + \frac{1}{2}\delta(f + f_0)$$

$$F\{\sin(2\pi f_0 t)\} = \frac{1}{2i}\delta(f - f_0) - \frac{1}{2i}\delta(f + f_0).$$

Hint: Use Euler's identity, $e^{i\theta} = \cos\theta + i\sin\theta$.

TABLE 1-1 Windows and Transforms

Time-function	Fourier transform
Rectangle $= u_T(t)$	$\frac{1}{T}w_{1/T}(f) = \text{Sinc}$
Triangle $= v_T(t)$	$\frac{1}{T}z_{1/T}(f) = \text{Sinc}^2$
$\frac{1}{T}\,\text{Sinc} = w_T(t)$	$\frac{1}{T}u_{1/T}(f) = \text{Rectangle}$
$\frac{1}{T}\,\text{Sinc}^2 = z_T(t)$	$\frac{1}{T}v_{1/T}(f) = \text{Triangle}$

14. Use the results of exercises 12 and 13 to determine the response of an LTI transformation with impulse-response function $h(t)$ to an excitation $x(t)$ for the following cases.
(a) $x(t) = \cos(2\pi f_0 t)$, $h(t) = u_T(t)$
(b) $x(t) = \sin(2\pi f_0 t)$, $h(t) = v_T(t)$
(c) $x(t) = u_T(t)$, $h(t) = u_T(t)$

15. Use Parseval's relation (exercise 9) to evaluate the integrals

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty}\left(\frac{\sin \pi t/T}{\pi t}\right)^2 dt$$

and

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty}\left(\frac{\sin \pi t/T}{\pi t}\right)^3 dt.$$

16. The time-frequency dual of the convolution theorem (exercise 4) establishes that the Fourier transform of a product of time functions is the convolution of their Fourier transforms, that is, if

$$z(t) = x(t)y(t)$$

then

$$Z(f) = X(f) \otimes Y(f).$$

Use this theorem and the result of exercise 13 to determine the Fourier transforms of the waveforms $z(t) = x(t)\cos(2\pi f_0 t)$ and $z(t) = x(t)\sin(2\pi f_0 t)$.

APPENDIX 1-1
Linear Time-Invariant Transformations and the Fourier Transform: A Review

Let us begin with a problem that illustrates the utility of sine wave analysis. We consider the problem of determining the current flow through a series connection of a voltage source, resistor, capacitor, and inductor, as depicted in

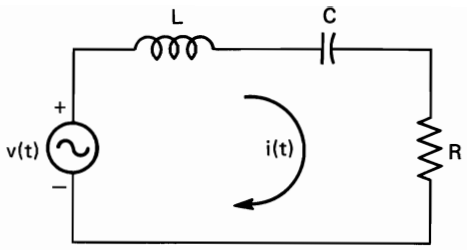


Figure 1-1-1 Electrical circuit.

Figure 1-1-1. By equating the sum of voltages around the circuit to zero, we obtain the integro-differential equation

$$L\frac{di(t)}{dt} + \frac{1}{C}\int i(t)\,dt + Ri(t) - v(t) = 0. \tag{1}$$

We first consider a sine wave excitation

$$v(t) = A\cos(2\pi ft + \theta), \tag{2}$$

and we assume that the response current is a sine wave of the same frequency, f,

$$i(t) = B\cos(2\pi ft + \phi). \tag{3}$$

Substitution of expressions (2) and (3) into (1), the equation relating $i(t)$ to $v(t)$, yields (after some algebraic and trigonometric manipulation)

$$\begin{aligned} B &= A|H(f)| \\ \phi &= \theta + \arg\{H(f)\}, \end{aligned} \tag{4}$$

where

$$H(f) = \frac{i2\pi fC}{1-(2\pi f)^2LC + i2\pi fRC} = |H(f)|e^{i\arg\{H(f)\}}. \tag{5}$$

In (5), i denotes the imaginary number, $i = \sqrt{-1}$, and $|\cdot|$ and $\arg\{\cdot\}$ denote the magnitude and angle, respectively, of a complex number. Thus, (3) and (4) yield the solution

$$i(t) = |H(f)|A\cos(2\pi ft + \theta + \arg\{H(f)\}). \tag{6}$$

Hence, the generally complicated problem of solving an integro-differential equation reduces, in this case of sine wave excitation, to relatively simple algebraic and trigonometric manipulation. The simplicity of the solution is most evident for a *complex sine wave* excitation

$$v(t) = Ae^{i(2\pi ft+\theta)} = A\cos(2\pi ft + \theta) + iA\sin(2\pi ft + \theta). \tag{7}$$

Following the same procedure, we obtain

$$i(t) = H(f)v(t). \tag{8}$$

The solution (6) for a real sine wave excitation is simply the real part of the complex solution (8).

Now, let us inquire if this same simplicity of solution is possible for excitations other than sine waves. To show that it is, in essence, still possible, the *Fourier*

transforms

$$V(\cdot) = F\{v(\cdot)\}, \qquad I(\cdot) = F\{i(\cdot)\}$$

of the waveforms v and i are introduced:

$$V(f) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} v(t)e^{-i2\pi ft}\, dt$$

$$I(f) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} i(t)e^{-i2\pi ft}\, dt. \tag{9}$$

By Fourier transforming both sides of the integro-differential equation (1) and using the properties summarized by

$$F\left\{L\frac{di}{dt} + \frac{1}{C}\int i\, dt\right\} = L(i2\pi f)F\{i\} + \frac{1}{C}\left(\frac{1}{i2\pi f}\right)F\{i\},$$

we obtain the solution for I in terms of V,

$$I(f) = H(f)V(f), \tag{10}$$

which looks much like the solution (8) for the complex sine wave excitation. However, now we must inverse Fourier transform this result,

$$i(\cdot) = F^{-1}\{I(\cdot)\}, \qquad i(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} I(f)e^{i2\pi ft}\, df, \tag{11}$$

to obtain

$$i(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} H(f)V(f)e^{i2\pi ft}\, df. \tag{12}$$

The reason we obtain essentially the same simplicity of solution to the potentially complicated equation (1) by using the Fourier transform is that this transform decomposes the waveforms i and v into continuous sums (integrals) of weighted sine waves (11). Thus, we are using sine wave analysis of waveforms. Let us now consider in more general terms the precise situation for which it is especially useful to analyze (decompose) a waveform into sine wave components.

Sine waves are especially appropriate components with which to analyze waveforms when we are studying *linear time-invariant* (LTI) transformations of waveforms (such as the transformation relating $v(t)$ to $i(t)$ in the preceding circuit problem). An LTI transformation can be characterized by the *convolution operation* that transforms a waveform, say $x(t)$, into another waveform, say $y(t)$, according to the formula

$$\boxed{\begin{aligned} y(t) &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} h(t-u)x(u)\, du = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} h(v)x(t-v)\, dv \\ &= h(t) \otimes x(t), \end{aligned}} \tag{13}$$

for some weighting function $h(t)$. The *time-invariance* property is, more precisely, a *translation invariance* property that guarantees that a translation by w of $x(t)$ to $x(t + w)$ has no effect on $y(t)$ other than a corresponding translation to $y(t + w)$ (exercise 1). The linearity property guarantees that the transformation of a linear combination of component waveforms, say $x(t) = a_1x_1(t) + a_2x_2(t)$, is simply

the same linear combination of the transformations of the component waveforms, $y(t) = a_1y_1(t) + a_2y_2(t)$, where $y_1(t) = h(t) \otimes x_1(t)$ is the transformation of $x_1(t)$ and $y_2(t) = h(t) \otimes x_2(t)$ is the transformation of $x_2(t)$ and a_1 and a_2 are arbitrary real or complex numbers. To understand better the nature of the convolution operation that characterizes all LTI transformations, we consider a discrete-time approximation to the integral in (13),

$$y(t) \cong \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} h(n\Delta t)x(t - n\Delta t)\Delta t = \cdots + h(-\Delta t)x(t + \Delta t)\Delta t + h(0)x(t)\Delta t$$
$$+ h(\Delta t)x(t - \Delta t)\Delta t + h(2\Delta t)x(t - 2\Delta t)\Delta t + \cdots, \tag{14}$$

in which Δt is a fixed increment of the variable t. We see from (14) that convolution is approximately a *linear combination* of time-translates, $x(t - n\Delta t)$, of a waveform $x(t)$; that is, it is approximately a sum of weighted versions of the translates $x(t - n\Delta t)$. In fact, (13) reveals directly that convolution is precisely a *continuous linear combination* of time-translates. In order to discover the consequences of this, we observe (exercise 3) that the only type of bounded waveform whose form is invariant to translation—in the sense that

$$x(t + w) = cx(t) \tag{15}$$

for all t and w and for some scalar, c, whose value can depend on w but not on t—is the complex sine wave

$$x(t) = e^{i2\pi ft} \tag{16}$$

for arbitrary real f. The invariance of (15) holds for (16) with

$$c = e^{i2\pi fw}. \tag{17}$$

As a consequence of this unique translation-invariance property, *the complex sinewave is the only bounded waveform whose form is invariant to LTI transformation*. To illustrate, we substitute (16) into (13) to obtain

$$\begin{aligned} y(t) &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} h(v)e^{i2\pi f(t-v)}\, dv \\ &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} h(v)e^{-i2\pi fv}\, dv\, e^{i2\pi ft} \\ &= H(f)e^{i2\pi ft} = H(f)x(t), \end{aligned}$$

where

$$H(f) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} h(v)e^{i2\pi fv}\, dv. \tag{18}$$

Thus, with $x(t)$ given by (16), we obtain

$$y(t) = H(f)x(t). \tag{19}$$

In common terminology, the weighting function $h(\cdot)$ is the *impulse-response function* of the LTI transformation (exercise 2), and $H(\cdot)$ is the *transfer function*. Moreover, (18) reveals that these two functions are related by the *Fourier transformation*

$$H(\cdot) = F\{h(\cdot)\}. \tag{20}$$

As a result of this invariance property of complex sine waves with respect to LTI transformations, the study of LTI transformations is greatly simplified by *analysis* (decomposition) of the waveforms subjected to the transformation into sine wave components. To explain, we first observe that a real waveform with finite *energy,*[17] denoted by $\mathscr{E}_x$,

$$0 < \mathscr{E}_x \triangleq \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x^2(t)\, dt < \infty\,, \tag{21}$$

can be exactly represented[18] on any finite time-interval, say $[-T/2, T/2]$, by a denumerable linear combination of sine waves, namely, the *Fourier series,*

$$\begin{aligned} x(t) &= \sum_{m=-\infty}^{\infty} X_m e^{i2\pi m\Delta f t}\, \Delta f \\ &= \cdots [X_{-1}\Delta f] e^{-i2\pi\Delta f t} + [X_0\Delta f] + [X_1\Delta f] e^{i2\pi\Delta f t} \\ &\qquad + [X_2\Delta f] e^{i2\pi 2\Delta f t} + \cdots, \qquad t \in [-T/2, T/2], \end{aligned} \tag{22a}$$

for which $\Delta f = 1/T$. The amount of the sine wave component $e^{i2\pi m\Delta f t}$ in the representation is the *Fourier coefficient* $X_m\Delta f$ for which

$$X_m \triangleq \int_{-1/2\Delta f}^{1/2\Delta f} x(t) e^{-i2\pi m\Delta f t}\, dt. \tag{22b}$$

Since X_m and X_{-m} are a complex conjugate pair (for real $x(t)$), then

$$X_{-m} e^{-i2\pi m\Delta f t} + X_m e^{i2\pi m\Delta f t} = 2|X_m|\cos(2\pi m\Delta f t + \arg\{X_m\}). \tag{23}$$

To illustrate, we consider as an example the specific waveform

$$x(t) = \begin{cases} e^{-at}, & t \geqslant 0 \\ 0, & t < 0. \end{cases} \tag{24}$$

Substitution of (24) into (22b) yields

$$\begin{aligned} X_m &= \frac{1}{a + i2\pi m\Delta f}(1 - e^{-aT/2} e^{-i\pi m\Delta f T}) \\ &\cong \frac{1}{a + i2\pi m\Delta f} \qquad \text{for } T \gg \frac{1}{a}. \end{aligned} \tag{25}$$

The magnitude of the mth sine wave coefficient is therefore

$$|X_m| \cong \frac{1}{[a^2 + (2\pi m/T)^2]^{1/2}}. \tag{26}$$

A graph of these magnitudes versus the discrete frequency variable $f = m\Delta f = m/T$ is shown in Figure 1-1-2 for increasing values of T. The envelope of the coefficient magnitudes, which is described by the function

$$|X(f)| = \frac{1}{[a^2 + (2\pi f)^2]^{1/2}}, \tag{27}$$

[17] If $x(t)$ is a voltage (measured in *volts*) developed across a resistance of 1 *ohm*, then $\mathscr{E}_x$ is the energy in *joules* dissipated in the resistance.

[18] More precisely, the energy in the error between $x(t)$ and a finite term approximation (truncated version of the infinite series (22a)) approaches zero as the number of terms approaches infinity.

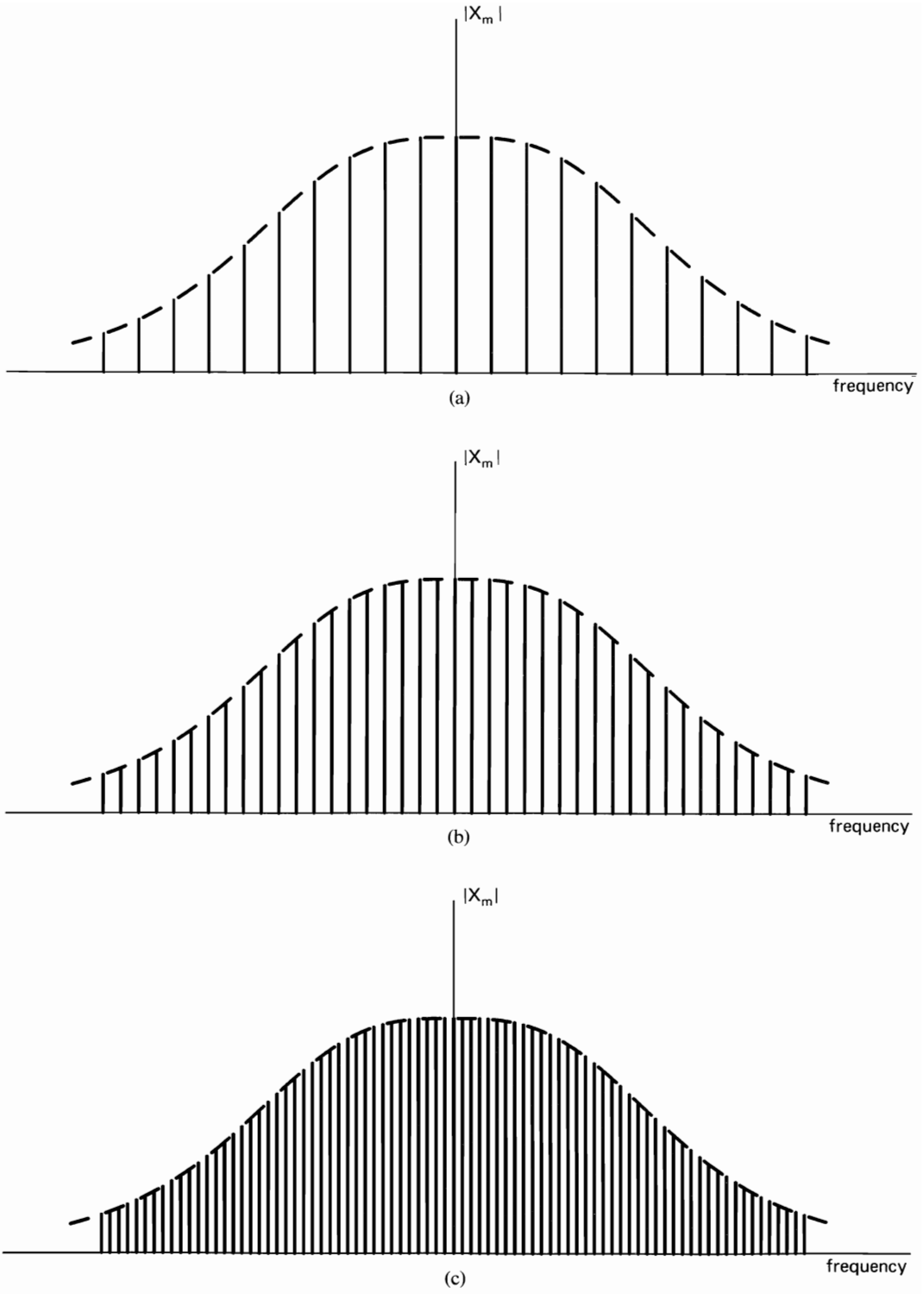


Figure 1-1-2 Magnitudes of sine wave components (26) of decaying exponential waveform (24) on an interval of increasing length T: (a) $T = T_0$, (b) $T = 2T_0$, (c) $T = 4T_0$.

remains fixed as T increases, but the individual sine wave coefficients become increasingly more dense.

By letting $T \to \infty$ ($\Delta f \to 0$) in (22a), we heuristically see that $x(t)$ can be exactly represented for all time t by a nondenumerable linear combination (i.e., a continuous weighted sum) of sine waves,

$$\boxed{x(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} X(f)e^{i2\pi ft}\, df,} \tag{28a}$$

for which $X(f)$ is heuristically obtained from

$$X(f) = \lim_{\Delta f \to 0} X_m$$

with $f = m\Delta f$, which yields the definition

$$\boxed{X(f) \triangleq \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t)e^{-i2\pi ft}\, dt.} \tag{28b}$$

Equations (28a) and (28b) are the *inverse Fourier transform* and *Fourier transform,* respectively:

$$x(\cdot) = F^{-1}\{X(\cdot)\}, \qquad X(\cdot) = F\{x(\cdot)\}. \tag{29}$$

The decomposition (28a) of $x(t)$ into *sine wave components* indexed by f,

$$\lim_{\Delta f \to 0} X_m e^{i2\pi m\Delta ft} = X(f)e^{i2\pi ft} \triangleq x_f(t), \tag{30}$$

when substituted into the LTI transformation (13), yields the desired result:

$$\begin{aligned} y(t) &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} h(u) \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} X(f)e^{i2\pi f(t-u)}\, df\, du \\ &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} h(u)e^{-i2\pi fu}\, du\, X(f)e^{i2\pi ft}\, df \\ &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} H(f)X(f)e^{i2\pi ft}\, df. \end{aligned} \tag{31}$$

That is,

$$y = F^{-1}\{Y\}$$

$$\boxed{Y(f) = H(f)X(f).} \tag{32}$$

In conclusion, *the effect of an LTI transformation on a waveform is simply to scale its sine wave components.* The scaling function is the transfer function, and therefore

$$y_f(t) \triangleq Y(f)e^{i2\pi ft} = H(f)X(f)e^{i2\pi ft} \triangleq H(f)x_f(t). \tag{33}$$

There is no interaction among these sine wave components when x is transformed into y. This is due in part to the fact that *the sinewave components are uncorrelated with each other,* in the sense that

$$\langle x_{f_1}, x_{f_2} \rangle_t \triangleq \lim_{T \to \infty} \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x_{f_1}(t)x_{f_2}^*(t)\, dt = 0, \qquad f_1 \neq f_2 \tag{34}$$

and

$$\langle y_{f_1}, y_{f_2} \rangle_t = 0, \qquad f_1 \neq f_2 \tag{35}$$

(the asterisk denotes complex conjugation). Property (34) can be verified (exercise 5) by substitution of (30) into (34). Because of these properties, (33)–(35), of sine wave components with respect to LTI transformations, the components $y_f(t)$ are called the *principal components* of $y(t)$ with respect to the LTI transformation of $x(t)$. The values of $H(f)$ are called the *principal values,* or the *eigenvalues,* and the functions $e^{i2\pi ft}$ are called the *eigenfunctions* of the LTI transformation. (The prefix *eigen* means *characteristic.*)

It follows from (28a) that $X(f)$ is the *density of sine wave components* contained in $x(t)$. Moreover, the Fourier transformation (28b) and its inverse (28a) can be expressed explicitly in terms of sine wave components as

$$x(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x_f(t)\, df \tag{28a}'$$

$$x_f(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(u) e^{i2\pi f(t-u)}\, du. \tag{28b}'$$

Since (28b)′ is a convolution, we see that $x_f(t)$ is the response to $x(t)$ of an LTI transformation with impulse-response function

$$g(t) = e^{i2\pi ft} \tag{36}$$

and corresponding transfer function (exercise 2)

$$G(\nu) = \delta(f - \nu), \tag{37}$$

which is an *ideal filter* (with infinite gain) that passes only the single sine wave of frequency f and transforms this infinitesimal sine wave component into a finite sine wave component.

As a final item in this brief review it is pointed out that inspection of (13) and (32) reveals that if a function, say y, is given by the convolution of two other functionsd, say x and h, then the Fourier transform of y, Y, is given by the *product* of Fourier transforms of x and H: $Y = XH$. This result is known as the *convolution theorem.* Additional review material is incorporated in exercises 2, 4, 7, 8, 9, 10, 12, 13, 14, and 16.

2

NONSTATISTICAL SPECTRAL ANALYSIS

This chapter introduces the basic elements of empirical spectral analysis, namely, the *time-variant periodogram* and *time-variant correlogram*, and establishes the fact that these two functions are a Fourier transform pair. The temporal and spectral resolution capability of the time-variant periodogram is determined, and a fundamental *time-frequency uncertainty principle* is established. This principle is illustrated by application to instantaneous frequency measurement in Appendix 2-1. The relationships between the time-variant periodograms of the excitation and response and between the time-variant correlograms of the excitation and response of a linear time-invariant transformation are derived. These relationships are illustrated by application to instantaneous frequency demodulation in Appendix 2-1. They are also employed to derive a time-variant local-average power spectral density function. Finally, the spectral-aliasing phenomenon associated with periodic time-sampling is explained in terms of the time-variant complex spectrum.

Throughout this chapter and the rest of the book, it is assumed that the mathematical model for each time-series of interest, say $x(t)$, unless otherwise specified is sufficiently well behaved to be lag-product integrable as well as Fourier transformable on every finite interval; that is, the integral

$$\int_a^b x\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right)x\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right)dt$$

exists for every finite a and b. Then all of the finite-interval correlations and spectra defined in this chapter exist. It is also assumed that the limit

$$\lim_{T\to\infty} \frac{1}{T}\int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right)x\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right) dt$$

exists for every finite τ and unless otherwise specified is continuous at $\tau = 0$ (and therefore is continuous at every τ [Gardner 1985].) Then all limit correlations defined in this and following chapters exist.

Motivating Example:

We consider the situation in which a physical system possesses several modes of resonance. This could be an electrical circuit, a mechanical system, or some other type of physical system. Let us assume that the system is repeatedly (aperiodically) subjected to impulse excitations and the system response (e.g., voltage or displacement) is recorded. In order to determine the natural frequencies of resonance and their associated damping factors, or bandwidths, it is desired to Fourier transform the recorded data in an attempt to estimate the transfer function of the system, which exhibits a peak for each resonant mode of the system. If the impulse excitations occur irregularly and the corresponding responses overlap each other in time, then it is not clear how long a segment of the recorded composite response should be Fourier analyzed. To complicate matters further, suppose that the physical system is changing with time, so that the resonant frequencies and bandwidths are changing. If it is desired to track these changes by allowing the time interval over which the recorded data is Fourier transformed to slide along with time, then how does this affect our choice of the segment length that is to be analyzed at each time instant? In this chapter we shall obtain answers to these and related questions by determining the temporal and spectral resolution capabilities of the time-variant periodogram obtained by Fourier transforming a sliding segment of data.

A. TEMPORAL AND SPECTRAL RESOLUTION

The *time-variant finite-time spectrum*[1] of $x(t)$, also called the *time-variant periodogram* of $x(t)$, is defined by

$$S_{x_T}(t,f) \triangleq \frac{1}{T}|X_T(t,f)|^2 \tag{1}$$

$$X_T(t,f) \triangleq \int_{t-T/2}^{t+T/2} x(u)e^{-i2\pi fu}du \tag{2a}$$

and is the normalized squared magnitude of the Fourier transform of a data-segment of length T centered at time t, as depicted in Figure 2-1. As revealed by the inverse Fourier transformation,

$$x(u) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} X_T(t,f)e^{i2\pi fu}\,df, \qquad u \in [t - T/2, t + T/2], \tag{2b}$$

the Fourier transform $X_T(t, f)$ is the density of complex sine wave components $\{e^{i2\pi fu} : -\infty < f < \infty\}$ contained in $x(u)$ for $u \in [t - T/2, t + T/2]$. This transform is called the *time-variant finite-time Fourier transform*, or *time-variant finite-time complex spectrum*. In order to reveal the resolving power of this spectral measurement on $x(t)$, it can be reexpressed in the two alternative forms

[1] This function was originally introduced by Harold Thayer Davis (1892–) [Davis 1941] for tracking nearly periodic components with slowly evolving amplitude and phase.

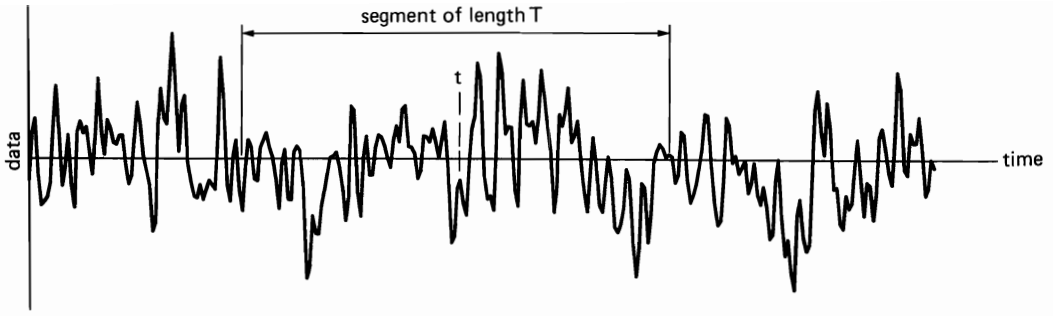


Figure 2-1 Data segment for time-variant spectral analysis.

(exercise 1)

$$S_{x_T}(t,f) = \frac{1}{T}\left|[x(t)e^{-i2\pi ft}] \otimes a_T(t)\right|^2 \tag{3}$$

$$= \frac{1}{T}\left|[X_T(t,f)e^{i2\pi ft}] \otimes A_{1/T}(f)\right|^2, \tag{4}$$

in which a_T is a rectangle function of width T (to be generalized following the discussion in this section)

$$a_T(t) = \begin{cases} 1, & |t| \leq T/2 \\ 0, & |t| > T/2, \end{cases} \tag{5}$$

and $A_{1/T}$ is a sinc function with width parameter $1/T$ (also to be generalized following this discussion):

$$A_{1/T}(f) = \frac{\sin(\pi fT)}{\pi f}. \tag{6}$$

In fact, a_T and $A_{1/T}$ are a Fourier transform pair

$$A_{1/T}(\cdot) = F\{a_T(\cdot)\}. \tag{7a}$$

That is,

$$A_{1/T}(f) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} a_T(t)e^{-i2\pi ft}\,dt. \tag{7b}$$

Since convolution of any function, say y, with any *pulselike function* typically removes all fine structure (wiggles) in y within intervals of the length of the pulselike function (or less),[2] as illustrated in Figure 2-2, then (3) reveals that $S_{x_T}(t,f)$ typically will not have fine structure in t within intervals of length T or less, and (4) reveals that $S_{x_T}(t,f)$ typically will not have fine structure in f within intervals of length $1/T$ or less. This is further illustrated in exercises 2 and 3.

[2] There are exceptions to this general rule, but they are typically pathological, in the sense that the function y cannot represent random data but instead must exhibit a special type of structure; see exercise 2 with $T = 10\Delta$.

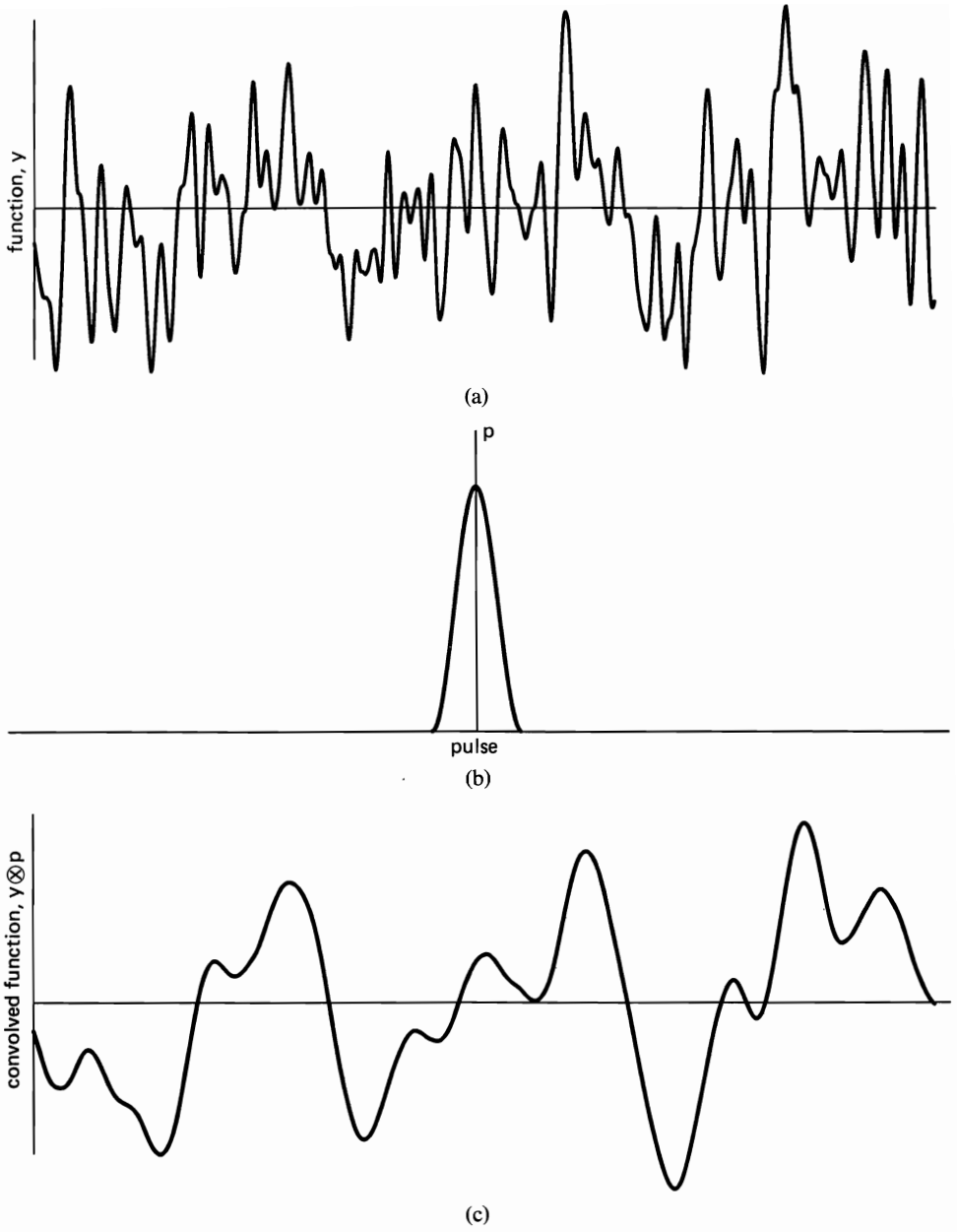


Figure 2-2 (a) A function y for illustration of the smoothing effect of convolution with a pulselike function. (b) A pulselike function p. (c) Smoothed version of function y obtained by convolving with pulselike function p.

Thus, the time-variant finite-time spectrum $S_{x_T}(t, f)$ has *temporal resolution width*, denoted by Δt°, of

$$\Delta t^{\circ} = T \tag{8}$$

and has *spectral resolution width*, denoted by Δf°, on the order of[3]

$$\Delta f^{\circ} \cong \frac{1}{T}. \tag{9}$$

The product of temporal and spectral resolution widths is therefore on the order of unity,

$$\Delta t^{\circ} \Delta f^{\circ} \cong 1, \tag{10}$$

regardless of the length T of the analysis interval $[t - T/2, t + T/2]$.

Another approach to establishing that $X_T(t, f)$—and, therefore, $S_{x_T}(t, f)$—has spectral resolution width on the order of $1/T$ is to prove that $X_T(t, f)$ can be exactly reproduced only from its frequency samples at $f = n/T$ for all integers n by interpolation. Thus there cannot be significant fine structure between points separated by $1/T$ or less. This is explained in exercise 15.

The practical significance of the preceding results ((8)–(10)) on resolution can be explained as follows. If there are spectral features in the data $x(t)$ that are as narrow as Δf^* (e.g., spectral peaks due to resonance phenomena), for example, then these cannot be accurately resolved by the periodogram unless $\Delta f^{\circ} < \Delta f^*$. Thus, the data segment length T analyzed must satisfy $T > 1/\Delta f^*$. If the spectral features are changing with time and significant changes occur in time intervals as small as Δt^*, for instance, then these time-variations cannot be accurately tracked by the time-variant periodogram unless $\Delta t^{\circ} < \Delta t^*$. Thus, the data-segment length T analyzed for each time instant t must satisfy $T < \Delta t^*$. Furthermore, (10) reveals that both tasks of spectral resolution and temporal resolution (tracking) can be performed accurately only if $\Delta t^* \Delta f^* > 1$. In fact, it can be reasoned that it makes no sense even to conceive of a spectral feature of width Δf^* changing substantially in a time-interval of length $\Delta t^* < 1/\Delta f^*$, regardless of the physical phenomenon (see exercise 23).

B. DATA TAPERING

The pulselike function a_T in (3) plays the role of a *temporal aperture*, or *window*, through which the data is seen, as revealed by reexpressing (2a) as

$$X_T(t, f) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} a_T(v) x(t - v) e^{-i2\pi f(t-v)}\, dv \tag{11a}$$

or

$$X_T(t, f) = [x(t) e^{-i2\pi ft}] \otimes a_T(t). \tag{11b}$$

That is, the complex spectrum $X_T(t, f)$ depends on those values of $x(t - v)$ that occur within the interval of v determined by $a_T(v)$—those values of x *seen through* a_T. Similarly, the function $A_{1/T}$ plays the role of a *spectral window* as revealed by (4) (which is analogous to (11b) except for the square). Furthermore, these temporal and spectral windows are a Fourier transform pair (7). Moreover,

[3] The particular value here depends on the particular definition of width adopted. For example, if the width is defined to be the distance between the first zero-crossings to the left and right of the center of the pulse (6), then $\Delta f^{\circ} = 2/T$.

since the Fourier transform of any pulselike function is itself pulselike and the width of this Fourier transform is on the order of the reciprocal of the width of the original pulselike function[4] (exercises 14 and 15), then relation (10) holds regardless of the particular shape of the temporal window a_T. However, the particular shape of window, especially the spectral window $A_{1/T}$, can be of considerable importance, as discussed in the following chapters, and for this reason the definition of the time-variant finite-time spectrum is generalized to allow for an arbitrary pulselike function for the temporal aperture a_T in (3). Four apertures of particular theoretical interest are defined as follows:

Rectangle:

$$u_T(t) \triangleq \begin{cases} \dfrac{1}{T}, & |t| \leq T/2 \\ 0, & |t| > T/2 \end{cases} \tag{12}$$

Triangle:

$$v_T(t) \triangleq \begin{cases} \dfrac{1}{T}\left(1 - \dfrac{|t|}{T}\right), & |t| \leq T \\ 0, & |t| > T \end{cases} \tag{13}$$

Sinc:

$$w_T(t) \triangleq \frac{\sin(\pi t/T)}{\pi t} \triangleq \frac{1}{T}\operatorname{sinc}\left(\frac{t}{T}\right) \tag{14}$$

Squared sinc:

$$z_T(t) \triangleq T\left|\frac{\sin(\pi t/T)}{\pi t}\right|^2 = \frac{1}{T}\operatorname{sinc}^2\left(\frac{t}{T}\right). \tag{15}$$

Each of these windows, which are depicted in Figure 2-3, is defined to have unity area. An aperture with unity area preserves the level of the function it is convolved with, whereas an aperture with unity height preserves the level of the function it multiplies.

Apertures other than the rectangle have a *tapering* effect on the data they multiply, since data occurring away from the aperture center are attenuated relative to the data at the aperture center. Consequently, temporal windows other than the rectangle are called *data-tapering windows*. The symbol a_T will be used from now on to denote an arbitrary data-tapering window of approximate width T and unity height at the origin. For example, a_T can represent any of the four windows Tu_T, Tv_T, Tw_T, or Tz_T. It should be noted that if a_T is not an even function, $a_T(-t) \not\equiv a_T(t)$, then in expressions (3) and (11), $a_T(-t)$ rather than $a_T(t)$ is the window that multiplies the data. This particular definition of a_T enables $X_T(t, f)$ to be expressed as a convolution with $a_T(t)$ rather than with $a_T(-t)$. It should also be noted that with a_T representing apertures other than

[4] The pulselike functions for which this reciprocal relationship holds are sometimes called *simple functions*, and functions for which the product of widths greatly exceeds unity are called *complex*, or *sophisticated, functions* (cf. [Vakman 1968]).

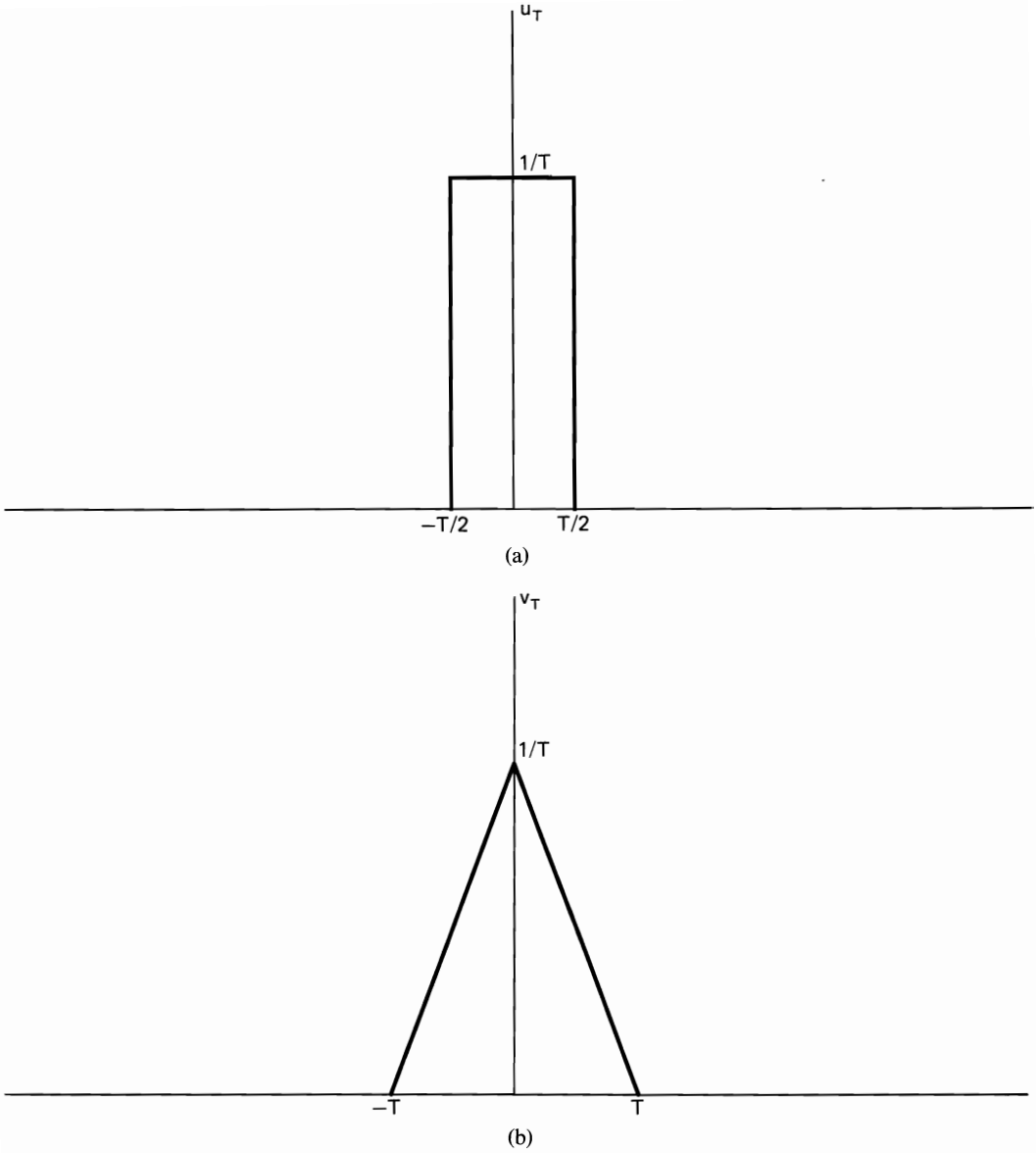
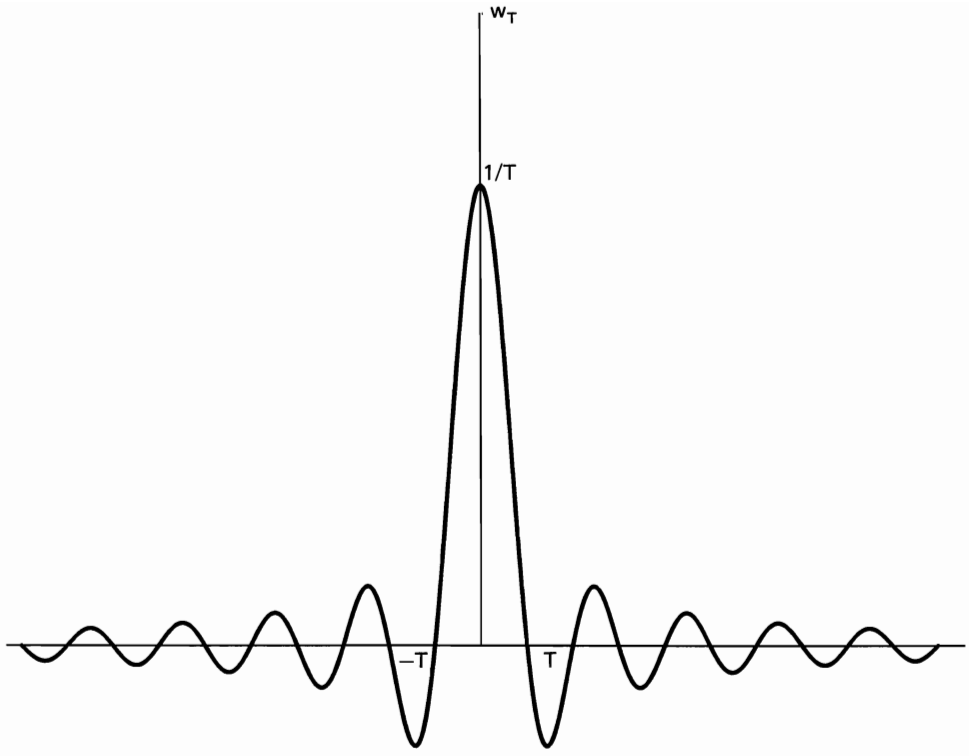
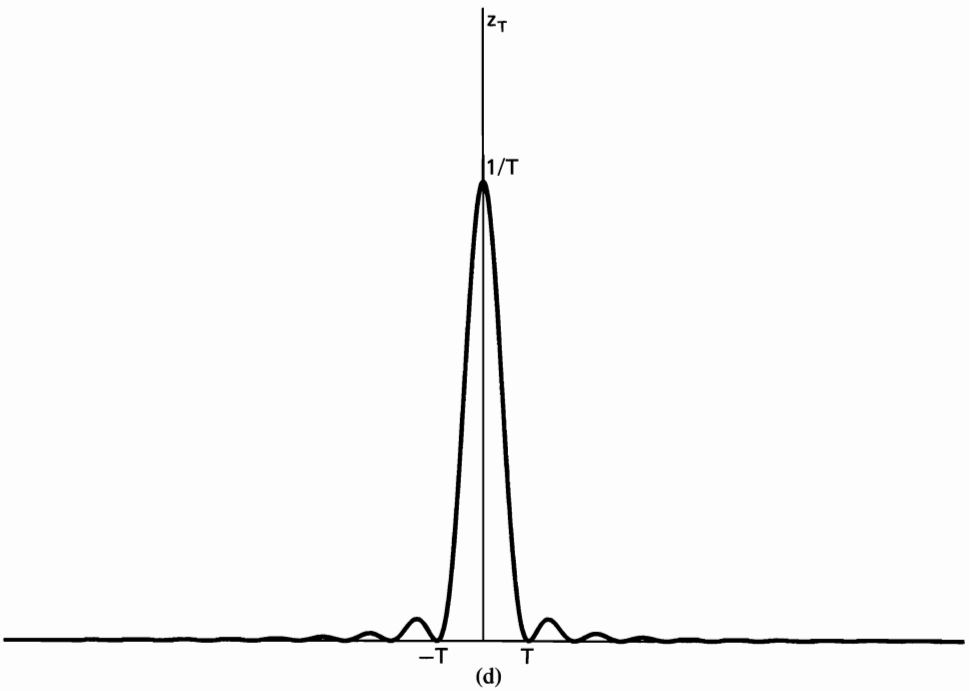


Figure 2-3 (a) Rectangle window u_T. (b) Triangle window v_T.

the rectangle, expression (4) must be modified. For example, (4) is valid, with $X_T(t, f)$ in $S_{x_T}(t, f)$ in the left member of (4) defined by (11) for any data-tapering window satisfying $a_T(t) = 0$ for $|t| > T/2$, only if $X_T(t, f)$ in the right member of (4) is defined by (2a) (which is (11) with $a_T = Tu_T$); otherwise, (4) must be further modified. For example, (4) is valid with $X_T(t, f)$ in $S_{x_T}(t, f)$ defined by (11) for any positive a_T if for the right member of (4), a_T is replaced in (7) and (11) with its square root. In any case, the interpretation of (4) or its modified



(c)



(d)

Figure 2-3 (continued) (c) Sinc window $w_T(t) = \dfrac{\sin \pi t/T}{\pi t}$. (d) Sinc-squared window $z_T(t) = T\left[\dfrac{\sin \pi t/T}{\pi t}\right]^2$.

versions is the same. It reveals that the spectral resolution width of $S_{x_T}(t, f)$ is on the order of $1/T$ for any pulselike aperture a_T of width T.

C. TIME-FREQUENCY UNCERTAINTY PRINCIPLE

When the amount of data to be analyzed is fixed at T units of time, then the spectral resolution width is fixed to be on the order of $1/T$. However, the precise value of spectral resolution width Δf° depends on the particular data-tapering window via (7) (as well as on the particular definition of width of the pulselike function $A_{1/T}$). It is therefore of interest to determine the particular data-tapering window a_T of a given width that yields the finest possible spectral resolution. By adopting the square root of the second central moment (standard deviation) of the square of a function as a particular measure of its width, it can be shown [Franks 1969] that the product of widths of temporal and spectral apertures is minimized by the Gaussian aperture,

$$a_T(t) = \exp\left[\frac{-(t/T)^2}{2}\right], \tag{16a}$$

whose Fourier transform also is Gaussian:

$$A_{1/T}(f) = T\sqrt{2\pi}\exp\left[\frac{-(2\pi f T)^2}{2}\right]. \tag{16b}$$

The minimized resolution product is

$$\min\{\Delta t^{\circ}\Delta f^{\circ}\} = \frac{1}{2\pi}, \tag{17}$$

for which Δt° and Δf° are defined to be the second central moments of the (unsquared but positive) apertures, (16). Apertures that are more convenient for implementation such as (13) (and other measures of width) yield resolution products that are closer to unity than (17).

The general relation (10) and the specific bound (17) are referred to as Dennis Gabor's *time-frequency uncertainty principle* [Gabor 1946], after Werner Heisenberg's related *principle of indeterminacy* for wave mechanics, which was formulated in 1927 (see [Vakman 1968; Robinson 1982]).

D. PERIODOGRAM-CORRELOGRAM RELATION

As a slight generalization of the periodogram-correlogram relation described in Chapter 1, Section C, we have the following relation, which can be obtained by application of the convolution theorem for Fourier transforms:

$$S_{x_T}(t, \cdot) = F\{R_{x_T}(t, \cdot)\}, \tag{18}$$

for which the function $R_{x_T}(t, \tau)$ is defined by

$$R_{x_T}(t, \tau) \triangleq \frac{1}{T}\int_{t-(T-|\tau|)/2}^{t+(T-|\tau|)/2} x(v + \tau/2)x(v - \tau/2)\, dv\, [2Tu_{2T}(\tau)], \tag{19}$$

and is called the *time-variant correlogram* and also the *time-variant finite-time autocorrelation*. This function can be obtained from the more conventional static correlogram, described in Chapter 1, Section C, by simply letting the time location

of the data segment of length T evolve with time t so that $[-T/2, T/2]$ is replaced by $[t - T/2, t + T/2]$. The limits of integration in (19) reflect the fact that the interval of overlap of data segments of length T, centered at $t + \tau/2$ and $t - \tau/2$, is $[t + T/2 - |\tau|/2, t - T/2 + |\tau|/2]$ (see Figure 2-4). The unity-height rectangle-window factor in (19) reflects the fact that this interval of overlap vanishes when $|\tau| > T$, and therefore the correlogram vanishes. This identity (18) can be further generalized (exercise 5) to incorporate data tapering by replacing definition (1) of $S_{x_T}(t, f)$ with the more general form (3), in which a_T is any data-tapering window, and by replacing definition (19) of $R_{x_T}(t, \tau)$ with the more general definition

$$R_{x_T}(t, \tau) \triangleq \frac{1}{T} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} a_T(v + \tau/2)x(t - v - \tau/2)a_T(v - \tau/2)x(t - v + \tau/2)\, dv. \tag{20}$$

The subscript T in $R_{x_T}(t, \tau)$ denotes an approximate width of this function of τ, similar to the width T of the triangle window v_T with base $2T$. (The exact width beyond which $R_{x_T}(t, \tau) = 0$ is $2T$ if $a_T(\tau) = 0$ for $|\tau| > T/2$.) The generalized definitions (1), (11a), and (20) reduce (exercise 5) to the specific definitions (1), (2a), and (19), respectively, when a_T is the rectangle aperture (see Figure 2-4).

E. FINITE-AVERAGE AUTOCORRELATION AND PSEUDOSPECTRUM

In the development of the statistical theory presented in subsequent chapters, another definition of an autocorrelation function plays a fundamental role. By contrast with definition (19), which yields the correlation of a finite data-segment $x(t - v)[Tu_T(v)]$, the alternative definition

$$R_x(t, \tau)_T \triangleq \frac{1}{T} \int_{t-T/2}^{t+T/2} x(v + \tau/2)x(v - \tau/2)\, dv\, [2Tu_{2T}(\tau)] \tag{21}$$

yields the correlation of an unlimited data-segment, but integration of the *lag product* $x(v + \tau/2)x(v - \tau/2)$ is carried out over only a finite interval (compare with (20)), and only a finite set of *lag values* $|\tau| \leq T$ are considered. The function $R_x(t, \tau)_T$ is called the *time-variant finite-average autocorrelation*.

Motivated by the periodogram-correlogram relation (18), an alternative time-variant spectrum is *defined* by

$$S_x(t, \cdot)_T \triangleq F\{R_x(t, \cdot)_T\}. \tag{22}$$

The function $S_x(t, f)_T$ is called the *time-variant pseudospectrum*. The term *pseudo* is used because, unlike the periodogram $S_{x_T}(t, f)$, the function $S_x(t, f)_T$ can take on negative values. Moreover, it is not obtainable from a Fourier transform of a segment of data in contrast to (1).

It should be noted that the distinction between the definitions of the two types of spectra defined by (1) (or (3)) and (22), and between the two types of autocorrelations defined by (19) (or (20)) and (21), is denoted by the two different locations of the subscript T.

The primary reason that the finite-average autocorrelation and its Fourier

transform, the pseudospectrum, play a fundamental role in the theory of statistical (time-smoothed) spectral analysis is because a time-smoothed spectrum is closely approximated by a frequency-smoothed pseudospectrum. This follows from the periodogram-correlogram relation and the following identity between time-smoothed autocorrelations (for untapered data):

$$[R_{x_T}(t, \tau) \otimes u_{\Delta t}(t)]2\Delta t\, u_{2\Delta t}(\tau) = [R_x(t, \tau)_{\Delta t} \otimes u_{T-|\tau|}(t)]\, Tv_T(\tau) \tag{23}$$

(for which both convolutions are in the time variable t), which can be used to derive the approximation

$$R_{x_T}(t, \tau) \otimes u_{\Delta t}(t) \cong R_x(t, \tau)_{\Delta t}[Tv_T(\tau)], \qquad T \ll \Delta t.$$

This approximation reveals that a time-smoothed correlogram can be reinterpreted in terms of a tapered (by v_T) finite-average autocorrelation. Fourier transformation (in τ) of both sides of this approximation yields the desired result, which is explained in Chapter 3, Section B.

In preparation for discussions in subsequent chapters of several such equivalences between time-smoothing and frequency-smoothing, the underlying approximations involving autocorrelations are described here.[5] First, it is noted that (23) follows (exercise 6) from the more fundamental *window identity*

$$u_T\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right)u_T\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right) \equiv v_T(\tau)u_{T-|\tau|}(t) = \begin{cases} \dfrac{1}{T^2}, & |t| \leqslant \dfrac{T - |\tau|}{2} \\ 0, & |t| > \dfrac{T - |\tau|}{2}, \end{cases} \tag{24}$$

which is depicted in Figure 2-4. Now, identity (23) can be used to derive the approximation

$$R_{x_T}(t, \tau) \otimes u_{\Delta t}(t) \cong R_x(t, \tau)_{\Delta t}[Tv_T(\tau)], \qquad T \ll \Delta t. \tag{25}$$

This approximation can be made as accurate as desired for any given t and T and all τ by choosing Δt sufficiently large, provided only that the limit autocorrelation $\hat{R}_x(\tau)$ ((6), Chapter 1) exists (exercise 9). Analogous to identity (23), it can be shown that

$$[R_x(t, \tau)_T \otimes u_{\Delta t}(t)]2\Delta t\, u_{2\Delta t}(\tau) = [R_x(t, \tau)_{\Delta t} \otimes u_T(t)]\, 2Tu_{2T}(\tau), \tag{26}$$

and this identity can be used to derive the approximation

$$R_x(t, \tau)_T \otimes u_{\Delta t}(t) \cong R_x(t, \tau)_{\Delta t}\, [2Tu_{2T}(\tau)], \qquad T \ll \Delta t. \tag{27}$$

Approximation (27) can be made as accurate as desired for any given t and T and all τ by choosing Δt sufficiently large, provided only that $\hat{R}_x(\tau)$ exists (exercise 8). As a generalization of approximation (25) which is for untapered data, it can be shown by using definition (20) that for tapered data

$$R_{x_T}(t, \tau) \otimes u_{\Delta t}(t) \cong R_x(t, \tau)_{\Delta t}\frac{1}{T} r_a(\tau), \qquad T \ll \Delta t, \tag{28}$$

for which the function

$$r_a(\tau) \triangleq a_T(\tau) \otimes a_T(-\tau) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} a_T(u + \tau)a_T(u)\, du \tag{29}$$

[5] The reading of the material in this paragraph can be postponed until needed in subsequent chapters.

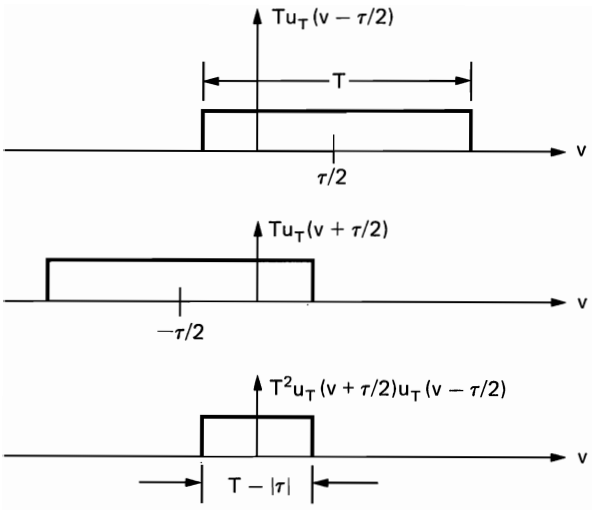


Figure 2-4 Product of shifted windows.

is called the *finite autocorrelation* of a_T. Approximation (28) can be made as accurate as desired for any given t and T, all τ, and any given bounded aperture whose support[6] is contained within a finite interval by choosing Δt sufficiently large, provided only that $\hat{R}_x(\tau)$ exists (exercise 10). Finally, it can be shown that the two types of autocorrelations in (19) and (21) are approximately equal over a limited range of τ. For convenience in the sequel, let T in (19) and (21) be replaced by Δt; then this approximation can be expressed as

$$R_x(t, \tau)_{\Delta t} \cong R_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, \tau), \qquad |\tau| \leq T \ll \Delta t. \tag{30}$$

This approximation can be made as accurate as desired for any given t and T, by choosing Δt sufficiently large, provided only that $\hat{R}_x(\tau)$ exists. The accuracy of approximations (25), (27), (28), and (30) can be quantified in terms of rms error, that is, the square root of the average over all time t of the squared error of approximation. This approach is set up in Chapter 5.

Related to the preceding approximations is the fact that the limit autocorrelation ((6), Chapter 1) can be obtained (exercise 7) from the limit of either the correlogram (for untapered data) or the finite-average autocorrelation

$$\hat{R}_x(\tau) = \lim_{T\to\infty} R_{x_T}(t, \tau) = \lim_{T\to\infty} R_x(t, \tau)_T, \tag{31}$$

and this limit is independent of t. Furthermore, for tapered data it can be shown[7] that

$$\lim_{T\to\infty} R_{x_T}(t, \tau) = \gamma \hat{R}_x(\tau), \tag{32}$$

for which the scale factor

$$\gamma \triangleq \lim_{T\to\infty} \frac{1}{T} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} a_T^2(t)\, dt \tag{33}$$

[6] The term *support* denotes the domain over which a function is nonzero.

[7] (31) is established in [Wiener 1930] (see also exercise 7 and [Kampé de Fériet 1954]), and (32) is established in exercise 11.

is typically on the order of unity, since a_T has width parameter T and unity height parameter (see (5)).

F. PERIODOGRAM AND CORRELOGRAM RELATIONS FOR FILTERS

As explained in Chapter 1, Section B, a fundamental motive for spectral analysis is a preoccupation with data filtering. It is therefore important to determine the effect of filtering on the correlogram and periodogram. Let us consider the filtered data

$$y(t) = h(t) \otimes x(t). \tag{34}$$

It can be shown that the finite-average autocorrelations of x and y are related by the approximation

$$R_y(t, \tau)_T \cong R_x(t, \tau)_T \otimes r_h(\tau), \qquad |\tau| \leqslant T - 2\Delta\tau^*, \qquad T \gg \Delta\tau^*, \tag{35}$$

$$r_h(\tau) = h(\tau) \otimes h(-\tau), \tag{36}$$

for which $\Delta\tau^*$ is the *memory length* of the filter, namely, the width of $h(\tau)$. (The condition $|\tau| \leqslant T - 2\Delta\tau^*$ avoids edge effects.) Approximation (35) can be made as accurate as desired for any given t and τ and any bounded h with finite support by choosing T sufficiently large, provided only that $\hat{R}_x(\tau)$ exists (exercise 12). Similarly, it can be shown that the correlograms of x and y are related by the approximation

$$R_{y_T}(t, \tau) \cong R_{x_T}(t, \tau) \otimes r_h(\tau), \qquad T - |\tau| \gg \Delta\tau^*. \tag{37}$$

Both approximations (35) and (37) become exact equalities in the limit $T \to \infty$:

$$\hat{R}_y(\tau) = \hat{R}_x(\tau) \otimes r_h(\tau). \tag{38}$$

Approximations (35) and (37) can be used to derive the following approximations between pseudospectra and between periodograms (in which the symbol T has been replaced with the symbol Δt):

$$S_y(t, f)_{\Delta t} \otimes w_{\Delta f}(f) \cong [|H(f)|^2 S_x(t, f)_{\Delta t}] \otimes w_{\Delta f}(f), \qquad \Delta t \Delta f > 1, \Delta t \gg \Delta\tau^*, \tag{39}$$

$$S_{y_{\Delta t}}(t, f) \otimes w_{\Delta f}(f) \cong [|H(f)|^2 S_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, f)] \otimes w_{\Delta f}(f), \qquad \Delta t \Delta f > 1, \Delta t \gg \Delta\tau^*. \tag{40}$$

These approximations become exact in the limit $\Delta t \to \infty$ for any $\Delta f > 0$ (exercise 13). In fact, as shown in Chapter 3, Section C, by also letting $\Delta f \to 0$, the following relation is obtained:

$$\hat{S}_y(f) = \hat{S}_x(f)\, |H(f)|^2, \tag{41}$$

where $\hat{S}_x(f)$ is the limit spectrum introduced in Chapter 1,

$$\hat{S}_x(f) \triangleq \lim_{\Delta f \to 0} \lim_{\Delta t \to \infty} S_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, f) \otimes w_{\Delta f}(f). \tag{42}$$

Moreover, as also shown in Chapter 3, Section C, (42) yields the identity

$$\hat{S}_x(\cdot) = F\{\hat{R}_x(\cdot)\}, \tag{43}$$

which is called the *limit spectrum*. (Thus, (41) can be obtained directly from (38) using the convolution theorem and identity (43).) It is pointed out that if $\Delta f < 1/\Delta\tau^*$, then the operations of smoothing and multiplication by $|H(f)|^2$ in (39) and (40) can be interchanged. Also, if there is no anomalous behavior in x at the edges of the data segment (i.e., within $\Delta\tau^*$ of the two time points $t \pm \Delta t/2$), then the condition $\Delta t >> \Delta\tau^*$ can result in (39) and (40) being accurate approximations even with the frequency-smoothing operation (convolution with $w_{\Delta f}$) deleted. Since the condition $\Delta t >> \Delta\tau^*$ guarantees that the time-variant spectrum and pseudospectrum are nearly time-invariant throughout the entire response time of the filter, then the relations (39) and (40) are said to be *quasi-static* approximations.

Before proceeding it should be clarified why the condition $\Delta t >> \Delta\tau^*$ is needed in order for (40) to be a close approximation. To illustrate the necessity of this condition, consider the situation where $\Delta t = \Delta\tau^*$. In this case, the response time, or memory length, of the filter equals the length Δt of the input data segment being considered. Therefore, this input data segment will produce an output data segment that is $\Delta t + \Delta\tau^* = 2\Delta t$ in length. Consequently, the output segment of length Δt contains only half of the effects due to the input segment. Therefore, there cannot be a one-to-one relationship between input and output data segments of length $\Delta t = \Delta\tau^*$. As an extreme example, if the impulse response were $h(\tau) = \delta(\tau - \Delta\tau^*)$ and if $x(t)$ were nonzero only within the interval $t \in [-\Delta t/2, \Delta t/2]$, then $y(t) = 0$ for $t \in [-\Delta t/2, \Delta t/2]$ for $\Delta t \leqslant \Delta\tau^*$. Thus, $S_{y_{\Delta t}}(0, f) = 0$, regardless of $S_{x_{\Delta t}}(0, f)$. Hence, the approximation $S_{y_{\Delta t}}(t, f) \cong |H(f)|^2 S_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, f)$, in which $|H(f)| = 1$ in this example, would be extremely poor for $t = 0$ and, in fact, very poor for all $t \in [-\Delta t/2, \Delta t/2]$.

Let us consider a practical application of (40). If $h(\tau)$ is the impulse response of the multiply-resonant system discussed in the motivating example at the beginning of this chapter, then the width of $h(\tau)$ will be equal to several (say three to five) time constants of the most narrow-band resonance. If Δt does not greatly exceed this system memory length, then we cannot satisfy the conditions in (40). On the other hand, if Δt is sufficiently large to satisfy these conditions and if Δf is smaller than the width of the narrowest resonant peak in the transfer function magnitude $|H(f)|$, then by interchanging the order of the operations of smoothing with $w_{\Delta f}(f)$ and multiplication by $|H(f)|^2$, we obtain the close approximation

$$|H(f)|^2 \cong \frac{S_{y_{\Delta t}}(t, f) \otimes w_{\Delta f}(f)}{S_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, f) \otimes w_{\Delta f}(f)}.$$

This can be used as a basis for determining the resonant frequencies and bandwidths of the system. This idea is discussed further in the next chapter.

Relations (38) and (41) are called the *limit-autocorrelation* and *limit-spectrum relations for filters*, respectively. These relations reveal that the limit autocorrelation and limit spectrum are each *self-determinate characteristics under an LTI transformation;* that is, the only characteristic of x that determines $\hat{R}_y$ (or $\hat{S}_y$) is $\hat{R}_x$ (or $\hat{S}_x$).

G. LOCAL AVERAGE POWER SPECTRAL DENSITY

Relation (40) can be used to derive an interpretation of the time-variant periodogram $S_{x_T}(t, f)$ as the *time-variant* (or *local*) *spectral density of average power in* $x(t)$. Specifically, let $H = F\{h\}$ be the transfer function of an *ideal band-pass filter* with *center frequency* f (and image $-f$) and *bandwidth* Δf^*,

$$H(\nu) = \begin{cases} 1, & ||\nu| - f| \leq \Delta f^*/2 \\ 0, & ||\nu| - f| > \Delta f^*/2. \end{cases} \tag{44}$$

Then, in view of the discussion in Chapter 1, Section B2, we see that the filter output y represents the spectral content of the filter input x only in the band of width Δf^* centered at f (and the image band centered at $-f$). The *instantaneous power* $y^2(t)$ in this spectral band, averaged over the time-interval $[t - \Delta t^*/2, t + \Delta t^*/2]$, is therefore

$$P_{\Delta t^* \Delta f^*}(t, f) \triangleq \frac{1}{\Delta t^*} \int_{t-\Delta t^*/2}^{t+\Delta t^*/2} y^2(u)\, du \tag{45}$$

$$= R_{y_{\Delta t^*}}(t, 0) \tag{46}$$

$$= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} S_{y_{\Delta t^*}}(t, \nu)\, d\nu. \tag{47}$$

Equation (46) is simply definition (19), and (47) is relation (18) in inverse form,

$$R_{y_T}(t, \cdot) = F^{-1}\{S_{y_T}(t, \cdot)\}, \tag{48}$$

with $T = \Delta t^*$ and evaluated at $\tau = 0$. Now, (47) can be identified with the left member of (40), with $\Delta f \to \infty$ and $\Delta t = \Delta t^*$. Therefore, substitution of (44) into the right member of (40) yields (using $S_{x_{\Delta t^*}}(t, -\nu) = S_{x_{\Delta t^*}}(t, \nu)$)

$$P_{\Delta t^* \Delta f^*}(t, f) \cong 2 \int_{f-\Delta f^*/2}^{f+\Delta f^*/2} S_{x_{\Delta t^*}}(t, \nu)\, d\nu, \qquad \Delta t^* \Delta f^* \gg 1, \tag{49}$$

in which the approximation

$$\Delta\tau^* \cong \frac{1}{\Delta f^*} \tag{50}$$

has been used. (The factor 2 in (49) is due to the image band $[-f - \Delta f^*/2, -f + \Delta f^*/2]$.) It follows from (49) that the power of $x(t)$ in the spectral band $[f - \Delta f^*/2, f + \Delta f^*/2]$, averaged over the time interval $[t - \Delta t^*/2, t + \Delta t^*/2]$, is obtained, to a close approximation, by integrating the positive function $S_{x_{\Delta t^*}}(t, \cdot)$ over this spectral band. Since (49) is a close approximation[8]

[8] Since the ideal h corresponding to (44) does not have finite support, then the straightforward method of proof analogous to that developed in exercises 12 and 13, that (40) and therefore (49) are close approximations, does not apply. However, it does apply for bandpass filters that have finite length impulse-response functions.

to (45) if

$$\Delta t^* \Delta f^* >> 1, \tag{51}$$

then the periodogram $S_{x_T}(t, f)$ (with $T = \Delta t^*$) can appropriately be called the *time-variant average power spectral density* of $x(t)$ if condition (51) holds. This condition is called the *time-frequency uncertainty condition for local-average power spectral density*. Furthermore, results in Chapter 5, Section C, reveal that condition (51) is necessary (for a broad class of data) for (49) to yield a reliable measurement of power spectral density for a constant phenomenon, in which case $P_{\Delta t^* \Delta f^*}(t, f)$ is essentially independent of t.

In summary, if it is desired to measure accurately the average power in $x(t)$ due only to spectral components in a band of width Δf^*, then the time-average must be performed over an interval Δt^*, greatly exceeding the reciprocal bandwidth $1/\Delta f^*$. And if the periodogram is to be used for this measurement as in (49), then Δt^* is simply the length of the data-segment that must be Fourier transformed. From another viewpoint, we see that for a given data-segment length Δt^*, the bandwidth Δf^* over which the periodogram must be integrated as in (49) must greatly exceed the periodogram's spectral resolution width $1/\Delta t^*$. Nevertheless, the raw (unsmoothed) periodogram can be a useful (if crude) approximate measure of time-variant average-power spectral density, $P_{\Delta t^* \Delta f^*}(t, f)$ with $\Delta f^* = 1/\Delta t^*$, in some applications involving time-variant phenomena, such as speech (see Chapter 8).

H. TIME SAMPLING AND ALIASING

Since spectral analysis is often accomplished with digital implementations, which operate in discrete time, it is important to understand the effects of time sampling on the time-variant finite-time complex spectrum,

$$X_T(t, f) \triangleq \int_{t-T/2}^{t+T/2} x(u) e^{-i2\pi f u}\, du. \tag{52}$$

If $x(u)$ is sampled every T_s units of time, then the corresponding discrete-time counterpart of (52) is

$$\tilde{X}_T(t, f) \triangleq \sum_{n=(t-T/2)/T_s}^{(t+T/2)/T_s} x(nT_s) e^{-i2\pi f n T_s}, \tag{53}$$

for which it is assumed (for simplicity of expression) that t/T_s and $T/2T_s$ are integers. $\tilde{X}_T(t, f)$ is called the *time-variant finite-time Fourier-series transform*, or the *time-variant finite-time complex spectrum for time-sampled data*. The total number of time-samples transformed in (53) is $N = T/T_s + 1$, which is an odd number. Equation (53) can be reexpressed as the integral

$$\tilde{X}_T(t, f) = \int_{t-T/2}^{t+T/2} \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(u - nT_s) x(u) e^{-i2\pi f u}\, du, \tag{54}$$

and this integral can be reduced as follows:

$$\tilde{X}_T(t,f) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(u - nT_s) T u_T(t-u) x(u) e^{-i2\pi f u}\, du \tag{55}$$

$$= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{1}{T_s} \sum_{m=-\infty}^{\infty} \delta\left(\nu - \frac{m}{T_s}\right) \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} T u_T(t-u) x(u) e^{-i2\pi(f-\nu)u}\, du\, d\nu \tag{56}$$

$$= \frac{1}{T_s} \sum_{m=-\infty}^{\infty} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \delta\left(\nu - \frac{m}{T_s}\right) \int_{t-T/2}^{t+T/2} x(u) e^{-i2\pi(f-\nu)u}\, du\, d\nu \tag{57}$$

$$= \frac{1}{T_s} \sum_{m=-\infty}^{\infty} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \delta\left(\nu - \frac{m}{T_s}\right) X_T(t, f-\nu)\, d\nu \tag{58}$$

$$= \frac{1}{T_s} \sum_{m=-\infty}^{\infty} X_T\left(t, f - \frac{m}{T_s}\right). \tag{59}$$

Equation (56) is the convolution theorem together with the Fourier transform pair (exercise 16)

$$F\left\{\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(t - nT_s)\right\} = \frac{1}{T_s} \sum_{m=-\infty}^{\infty} \delta\left(f - \frac{m}{T_s}\right). \tag{60}$$

Summarizing (54)–(59), we have

$$\tilde{X}_T(t,f) = \frac{1}{T_s} \sum_{m=-\infty}^{\infty} X_T\left(t, f - \frac{m}{T_s}\right). \tag{61}$$

It follows from (61) that the complex spectrum of the time-sampled data is a sum of translates of the complex spectrum of the continuous time data, as illustrated in Figure 2-5. Thus, at a particular frequency f, $\tilde{X}_T(t,f)$ is the superposition of all the values $\{X_T(t, f - m/T_s) : m = 0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \pm 3, \ldots\}$. This is called the *aliasing phenomenon*. If $X_T(t, f)$ is not negligible for $|f| > 1/2T_s$, then

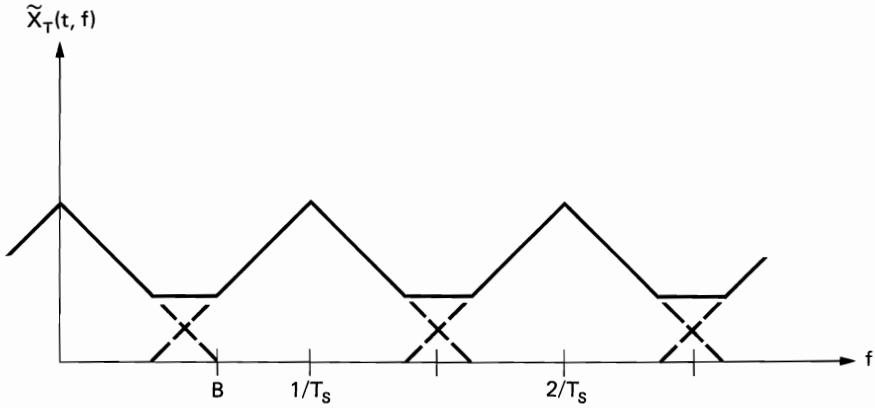


Figure 2-5 Illustration of aliasing phenomenon for a triangular-shaped complex spectrum $X_T(t, f)$ with bandwidth $B > 1/2T_s$ (t fixed).

$\tilde{X}_T(t, f)$ can differ substantially from $X_T(t, f)$, and $X_T(t, f)$ cannot be recovered from $\tilde{X}_T(t, f)$. Equivalently, in order to recover $X_T(t, f)$ from $\tilde{X}_T(t, f)$, when $X_T(t, f)$ is negligible for $|f| > B$, the sampling rate must exceed $2B$,

$$\frac{1}{T_s} > 2B, \tag{62}$$

which is referred to as the *Nyquist rate* (in honor of Harry Nyquist's pioneering work [Nyquist 1928]).

Although it is not apparent from the aliasing formula (61), it can be shown that the *discrete-time periodogram*

$$\tilde{S}_{x_T}(t, f) \triangleq \frac{1}{N} |\tilde{X}_T(t, f)|^2 \tag{63}$$

satisfies the *periodogram-correlogram relation*

$$\tilde{S}_{x_T}(t, f) = \text{FST}\{\tilde{R}_{x_T}(t, \tau)\}, \tag{64}$$

where FST denotes the *Fourier-series transform*

$$\text{FST}\{\tilde{R}_{x_T}(t, \tau)\} \triangleq \sum_{q=-\infty}^{\infty} \tilde{R}_{x_T}(t, qT_s) e^{-i2\pi f q T_s} \tag{65}$$

$$= \sum_{q=-T/T_s}^{T/T_s} \tilde{R}_{x_T}(t, qT_s) e^{-i2\pi f q T_s}, \tag{66}$$

and $\tilde{R}_{x_T}(t, \tau)$ is the *discrete-time correlogram* defined by

$$\tilde{R}_{x_T}(t, \tau) \triangleq \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=(t-T/2)/T_s}^{(t+T/2-|\tau|)/T_s} x(nT_s + |\tau|) x(nT_s) [2T u_{2T}(\tau)],$$

$$\tau = 0, \pm T_s, \pm 2T_s, \ldots, \pm T, \tag{67}$$

which is precisely the discrete-time counterpart of the continuous-time correlogram (19) (with the change of variables $v = u - |\tau|/2$). The relation (64) can be shown to be a direct consequence of the convolution theorem for the FST (exercise 19).

I. SUMMARY

In Section A, the *time-variant periodogram*, which is the squared magnitude of the time-variant finite-time complex spectrum normalized by the data-segment length T, is introduced as an appropriate measure of local spectral content of a waveform; it is established that the *temporal resolution width* of the time-variant periodogram is T, and the *spectral resolution width* is on the order of $1/T$. In Section B, the technique of *data tapering* is introduced as a means for controlling the shape of the *spectral smoothing window* in the periodogram, and several basic tapering apertures or windows are introduced. Then Section C explains that regardless of the particular tapering aperture used, the product of temporal and spectral resolution widths is always on the order of unity, because the

corresponding temporal and spectral windows are a Fourier transform pair. In Section D, the *time-variant correlogram* is introduced as a measure of local autocorrelation of a waveform, and it is established that the time-variant periodogram is the Fourier transform of the time-variant correlogram. Then in Section E, an alternative measure of local autocorrelation termed the *finite-average autocorrelation* is introduced, and its Fourier transform, the *pseudospectrum*, is claimed to be a useful alternative to the periodogram when it is appropriately averaged to obtain a statistical spectrum. Several exact and approximate relationships among time-averaged correlograms and time-averaged finite-average autocorrelations are established for their use in the next chapter, where time-averaged measures of spectral content are studied. It is also explained that in the limit as the parameter T approaches infinity both the correlogram and finite-average autocorrelation approach the ideal *limit autocorrelation*. In Section F, an approximate convolution relation between the correlograms (and finite-average autocorrelations) at the input and output of a filter is derived and then used to derive an approximate product relation between the corresponding periodograms (and pseudospectra). It is explained that these approximate relations become exact in the limit as the parameters T in (35) and (37) and Δt in (39) and (40) approach infinity. These are referred to as the *limit-autocorrelation relation* and *limit-spectrum relation for filters*, (38) and (41). In Section G, the approximate periodogram relation for filters is used to establish that the time-variant periodogram can be interpreted as a measure of *local-average power spectral density* only if the temporal and spectral resolutions are limited in order to satisfy the time-frequency uncertainty condition (51). Finally in Section H, the discrete-time counterpart of the continuous-time complex spectrum is introduced, and the spectral aliasing phenomenon associated with time-sampling is described. Then the discrete-time counterparts of the time-variant periodogram and time-variant correlogram are introduced, and it is established that these are a Fourier-series transform pair.

In Appendix 2-1, the concept of instantaneous frequency for a sine wave with a time-variant argument is introduced and used to illustrate the resolution limitations of the time-variant periodogram.

For the sake of emphasis, two basic and fundamental results on the relationships between the overall widths and the resolution widths of Fourier transform pairs that are developed in this chapter and the exercises are repeated here at the conclusion of this summary. If a time-function has overall width (duration) on the order of T, then the spectral resolution width Δf^* of its transform must be on the order of $1/T$. Furthermore, if the time-function is pulselike, then its temporal resolution width Δt^* is on the order of its overall width T. Similarly, if a frequency function has overall width (bandwidth) on the order of B, then the temporal resolution width Δt^* of its inverse transform must be on the order of $1/B$, and if the frequency function is pulselike (low-pass or band-pass) then its spectral resolution width Δf^* is on the order of its overall width B. These simple order-of-magnitude rules are a key to understanding the principles of spectral analysis.

EXERCISES

1. **(a)** Derive the time-convolution formula (3) from the definition of the time-variant spectrum (1) and the rectangle window (5).

   (b) Derive the frequency-convolution formula (4) from the definitions (1) and (6). *Hint*: Use the change of variable $u = t - v$ in (2a), and use the identity $[x(t - v)Tu_T(v)]Tu_T(v) = x(t - v)$ for $|v| \leq T/2$ to show that

$$|X_T(t, f)| = \left| \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} [x(t - v)Tu_T(v)][Tu_T(v)e^{i2\pi fv}]\, dv \right|.$$

   Then use Parseval's relation (exercise 9, Chapter 1).

2. As a simple illustration of the effect on resolution of convolution with a pulselike function, draw graphs of the convolution $y(t) = x(t) \otimes a(t)$ for

$$x(t) = \delta(t + \Delta/2) - \delta(t - \Delta/2)$$
$$a(t) = u_T(t)$$

   for $T = 10\Delta$, $T = \Delta$, and $T = \Delta/10$. The case $T = 10\Delta$, in which $x(t)$ is a narrow doublet, is an exception to the rule that the resolution width of $y(t)$ will typically be on the order of T.

3. To illustrate the spectral resolution capability of the periodogram, consider the sum of two sine waves

$$x(t) = \cos(2\pi f_1 t) + a\cos(2\pi f_2 t - \phi),$$

   and show that

$$\begin{aligned} S_{x_T}(t, f) = T \Bigg| & \frac{1}{2}\operatorname{sinc}[(f - f_1)T]e^{-i2\pi(f-f_1)t} \\ & + \frac{1}{2}\operatorname{sinc}[(f + f_1)T]e^{-i2\pi(f+f_1)t} \\ & + \frac{a}{2}\operatorname{sinc}[(f - f_2)T]e^{-i[2\pi(f-f_2)t+\phi]} \\ & + \frac{a}{2}\operatorname{sinc}[(f + f_2)T]e^{-i[2\pi(f+f_2)t-\phi]} \Bigg|^2 \end{aligned} \tag{68}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \cong & \frac{T}{4}\operatorname{sinc}^2[(f - f_1)T] + \frac{T}{4}\operatorname{sinc}^2[(f + f_1)T] \\ & + \frac{a^2T}{4}\operatorname{sinc}^2[(f - f_2)T] + \frac{a^2T}{4}\operatorname{sinc}^2[(f + f_2)T] \\ & + \frac{aT}{4}\operatorname{sinc}[(f - f_1)T]\operatorname{sinc}[(f - f_2)T]\cos[2\pi(f_1 - f_2)t + \phi] \\ & + \frac{aT}{4}\operatorname{sinc}[(f + f_1)T]\operatorname{sinc}[(f + f_2)T]\cos[2\pi(f_1 - f_2)t + \phi] \end{aligned} \tag{69}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \cong & \frac{T}{4}\operatorname{sinc}^2[(f - f_1)T] + \frac{T}{4}\operatorname{sinc}^2[(f + f_1)T] \\ & + \frac{a^2T}{4}\operatorname{sinc}^2[(f - f_2)T] + \frac{a^2T}{4}\operatorname{sinc}^2[(f + f_2)T]. \end{aligned} \tag{70}$$

   Hint: Verify that the several cross-product terms in (68) are negligible for $2f_1T \gg 1$

and $2f_2T >> 1$. Then verify that the two cross-products in (69) are negligible for $|f_1 - f_2|T >> 1$ (for $f \neq 0$). Graphs of (68) for several values of $|f_1 - f_2|T$ shown in Figure 2-6 reveal that the two spectral components in $x(t)$ are not resolved by $S_{x_T}(t, f)$ unless $|f_1 - f_2| > 1/T$.

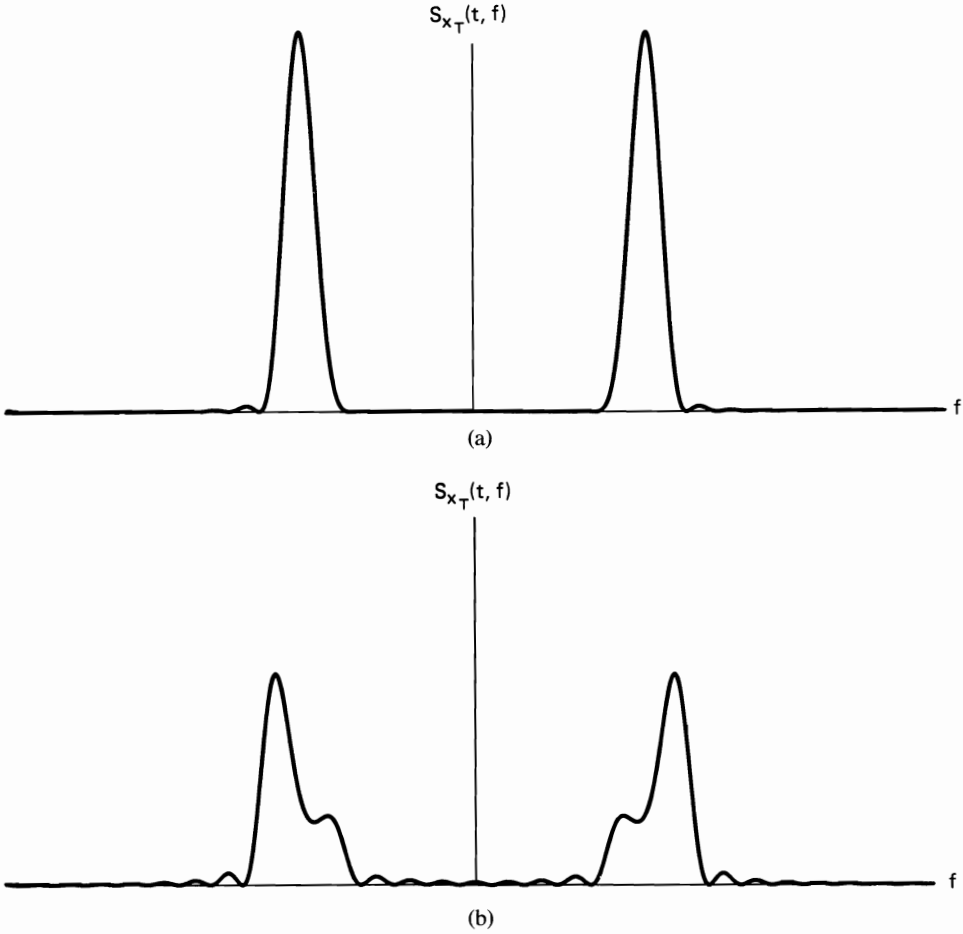


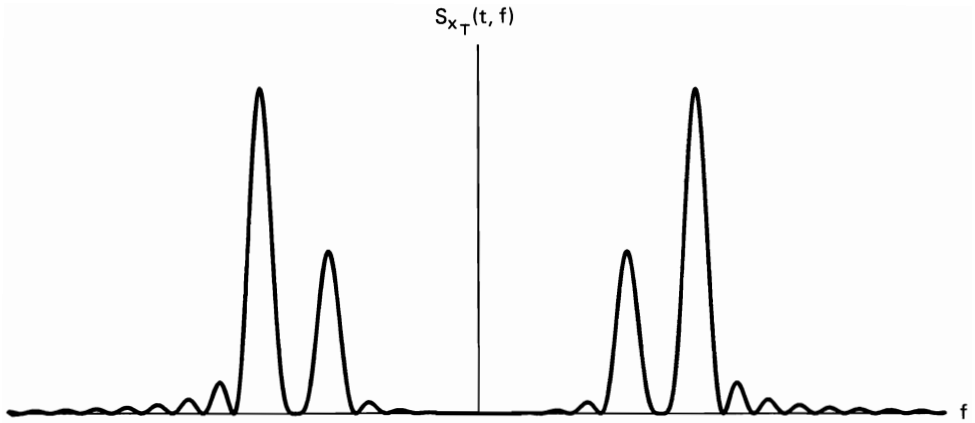
Figure 2-6 Spectra of two sine waves: (a) $f_2 - f_1 = 1/T$, $a = \sqrt{2}$. (b) $f_2 - f_1 = 3/2T$, $a = \sqrt{2}$.

4. **(a)** Prove that a spectral window A has unity height, $A(0) = 1$, if and only if the corresponding temporal window a has unity area

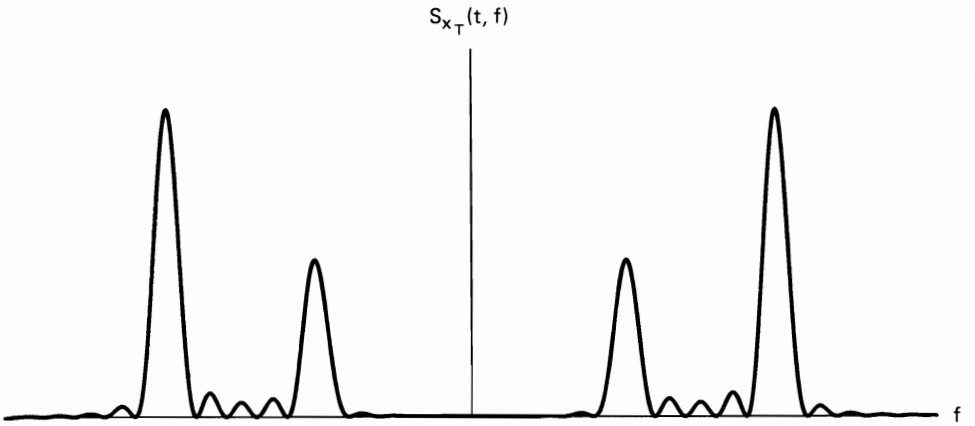
$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} a(t)\, dt = 1$$

and vice versa. Verify that the transform pairs in Table 1-1 satisfy this property.

(b) Prove that areas multiply under convolution; that is, if $a(t)$ has area α and $b(t)$ has area β, then $a(t) \otimes b(t)$ has area $\alpha\beta$. Verify that this property is satisfied by $v_T(t) = u_T(t) \otimes u_T(t)$.



(c)



(d)

Figure 2-6 (continued) (c) $f_2 - f_1 = 2/T$, $a = \sqrt{2}$. (d) $f_2 - f_1 = 10/T$, $a = \sqrt{2}$.

(c) Evaluate the aperture parameter γ in (33) for unity-height rectangle and sinc windows. *Hint*: Use Parseval's relation for the sinc window.

(d) Use the convolution theorem to prove that

$$w_T(t) \otimes w_T(t) = w_T(t). \tag{71}$$

5. (a) Use definitions (1), (11a), and (20) to verify the *time-variant periodogram-correlogram relation for tapered data* (18). *Hint*: Express (20) as a convolution in terms of the time-series $y(w) \triangleq a_T(w)x(t - w)$ and $z(w) \triangleq a_T(-w)x(t + w)$, by using a change of variables, and then apply the convolution theorem.

(b) Show that (20) reduces to (19) for a rectangle aperture, $a_T = Tu_T$.

6. (a) Draw a graph of left and right members of the window identity (24) as a surface above the (t, τ) plane to verify this identity. *Hint*: The height of the window $u_{T-|\tau|}$ is proportional to $1/(T-|\tau|)$.

(b) Use identity (24) to verify identity (23).

(c) Verify identity (26).

7. **(a)** Prove that for $t = 0$ the two limits in (31) both equal the limit autocorrelation as defined by (6) in Chapter 1. *Hint*: Use the fact that

$$\lim_{T\to\infty} A(T)B(T) = \lim_{T\to\infty} A(T) \lim_{T\to\infty} B(T) \tag{72}$$

if the two limits on the right exist to show that

$$\lim_{T\to\infty} R_x(0, \tau)_T = \hat{R}_x(\tau)$$

by letting $B(T) = 2Tu_{2T}(\tau)$. Then show that

$$R_{x_T}(0, \tau) = R_x(0, \tau)_{T-|\tau|}\left(1 - \frac{|\tau|}{T}\right) \tag{73}$$

and again use the above fact for limits to conclude that the right side converges to $\hat{R}_x(\tau)$ (e.g., let $T' = (T - |\tau|)$. (The proof for $t \neq 0$ is not as straightforward; see [Kampé de Fériet 1954].)

8. To verify approximation (27), show that

$$R_x(t, \tau)_{\Delta t} \otimes u_T(t) \cong R_x(t, \tau)_{\Delta t}, \qquad |\tau| \leq T << \Delta t, \tag{74}$$

and use this in (26). *Hint*: To verify that (74) is a close approximation for sufficiently large Δt, proceed as follows. By virtue of (31), we know that for each t and T, all v for which $|v| \leq T/2$, and any $\epsilon > 0$, there exists a Δt such that

$$|R_x(t + v, \tau)_{\Delta t} - \hat{R}_x(\tau)| < \epsilon, \qquad |\tau| \leq T.$$

Use this to show that

$$|R_x(t, \tau)_{\Delta t} \otimes u_T(t) - \hat{R}_x(\tau)| < \epsilon \tag{75}$$

and

$$|R_x(t, \tau)_{\Delta t} - \hat{R}_x(\tau)| < \epsilon. \tag{76}$$

Then use (75)–(76) to show that

$$|R_x(t, \tau)_{\Delta t} \otimes u_T(t) - R_x(t, \tau)_{\Delta t}| < 2\epsilon, \qquad |\tau| \leq T. \tag{77}$$

Thus, for each t and T and any arbitrary small $\epsilon > 0$, there exists a Δt sufficiently large that (77) holds.

9. To verify approximation (25), show that

$$R_x(t, \tau)_{\Delta t} \otimes u_{T-|\tau|}(t) \cong R_x(t, \tau)_{\Delta t}, \qquad |\tau| \leq T << \Delta t, \tag{78}$$

and use this in (23). *Hint*: To verify that (78) is a close approximation for sufficiently large Δt, proceed by analogy with exercise 8.

10. To verify approximation (28), use definition (20) to show that for tapered data in $R_{x_T}(t, \tau)$,

$$[R_{x_T}(t, \tau) \otimes u_{\Delta t}(t)]2\Delta t u_{2\Delta t}(\tau) = \frac{1}{T}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} a_T\left(v + \frac{\tau}{2}\right)a_T\left(v - \frac{\tau}{2}\right)R_x(t - v, \tau)_{\Delta t}\, dv, \tag{79}$$

where $R_x(t - v, \tau)_{\Delta t}$ by definition includes no data tapering, and then use the approximation (see exercise 8)

$$R_x(t + v, \tau)_{\Delta t} \cong R_x(t, \tau)_{\Delta t}, \qquad |v| << \Delta t. \tag{80}$$

Assume there exists a T^* such that $a_T(t) = 0$ for $|t| > T^*/2$, where $T^* \not> T$.

11. To verify (32)–(33) for the limit autocorrelation, use (31) and the result of exercise 10 to show that

$$\lim_{T\to\infty} R_{x_T}(t, \tau) = \lim_{T\to\infty} \lim_{\Delta t\to\infty} R_x(t, \tau)_{\Delta t} \frac{1}{T} r_a(\tau) = \gamma \lim_{\Delta t\to\infty} R_x(t, \tau)_{\Delta t} = \gamma \hat{R}_x(\tau).$$

12. **(a)** Verify the limit-autocorrelation relation for filters (38) directly by substitution of (5) in Chapter 1 into (6) in Chapter 1 (with x replaced by y). *Hint*: Use (5b) in Chapter 1 and interchange the order of the two integrations from (5b) in Chapter 1 with the limit time-average operation from (6) in Chapter 1.

(b) Verify the finite-average autocorrelation relation (35). *Hint*: Proceed as follows. In order to relate the finite-average autocorrelation for $y(t)$ to the finite-average autocorrelation for $x(t)$, substitute (34) into definition (21) (with x replaced by y) to obtain

$$\begin{aligned} R_y(t, \tau)_T &= \frac{1}{T}\int_{t-T/2}^{t+T/2}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} h(v_1)h(v_2)x\left(u + \frac{\tau}{2} - v_1\right)x\left(u - \frac{\tau}{2} - v_2\right) dv_1\, dv_2\, du[2Tu_{2T}(\tau)] \\ &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} h(v_1)h(v_2)\frac{1}{T}\int_{t-T/2}^{t+T/2} x\left(u + \frac{\tau}{2} - v_1\right)x\left(u - \frac{\tau}{2} - v_2\right) du\,[2Tu_{2T}(\tau)]\, dv_1\, dv_2. \end{aligned} \tag{81}$$

Assume that the amount of integration, T, used to obtain the correlation $R_y(t, \tau)_T$ is substantially larger than the filter memory length $\Delta\tau^*$:

$$T >> \Delta\tau^*. \tag{82}$$

Since the factor $h(v_1)h(v_2)$ in the integrand in (81) is negligibly small for

$$|v_1 - v_2| > 2\Delta\tau^*, \tag{83}$$

then the window $u_{2T}(\tau)$ in (81) can be replaced by the slightly shifted window $u_{2T}(\tau - v_1 + v_2)$ to obtain the close approximation

$$\begin{aligned} R_y(t, \tau)_T \cong \int_{-\infty}^{\infty}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} h(v_1)h(v_2)\left\{\frac{1}{T}\int_{t-T/2}^{t+T/2} x\left(u + \frac{\tau}{2} - \frac{v_1 + v_2}{2} - \frac{v_1 - v_2}{2}\right)\right. \\ \left. \times\, x\left(u - \frac{\tau}{2} - \frac{v_1 + v_2}{2} + \frac{v_1 - v_2}{2}\right) du\,[2Tu_{2T}(\tau - v_1 + v_2)]\right\} dv_1\, dv_2, \\ |\tau| \leqslant T - 2\Delta\tau^*. \end{aligned} \tag{84}$$

Show that this approximation is exact if $h(v) = 0$ for $|v| > \Delta\tau^*$. The quantity in braces in (84) is a time-variant finite-average autocorrelation

$$\begin{aligned} \{\cdot\} &= \frac{1}{T}\int_{t_0-T/2}^{t_0+T/2} x\left(v + \frac{\tau_0}{2}\right)x\left(v - \frac{\tau_0}{2}\right) dv\,[2Tu_{2T}(\tau_0)] = R_x(t_0, \tau_0)_T, \\ t_0 &\triangleq t - \frac{v_1 + v_2}{2} \\ \tau_0 &\triangleq \tau - (v_1 - v_2). \end{aligned} \tag{85}$$

Therefore, (84) can be reexpressed as

$$\begin{aligned} R_y(t, \tau)_T \cong \int_{-\infty}^{\infty}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} h(v_1)h(v_2)R_x\left(t - \frac{v_1 + v_2}{2}, \tau - v_1 + v_2\right)_T dv_1\, dv_2, \\ |\tau| \leqslant T - 2\Delta\tau^*. \end{aligned} \tag{86}$$

Since the temporal resolution of $R_x(t, \tau)_T$ is T, then for

$$\frac{|v_1 + v_2|}{2} \leqslant \Delta\tau^* \tag{87}$$

condition (82) suggests that

$$R_x\left(t - \frac{v_1 + v_2}{2}, \tau - v_1 + v_2\right)_T \cong R_x(t, \tau - v_1 + v_2)_T \tag{88}$$

is a close approximation. Show that the accuracy of approximation (88) for fixed τ, subject to (87) with fixed $\Delta\tau^*$, can be made as high as desired by choosing T sufficiently large (see exercise 8). Since $h(v_1)h(v_2)$ is zero for

$$\frac{|v_1 + v_2|}{2} > \Delta\tau^* \tag{89}$$

(assuming $h(v) = 0$ for $|v| > \Delta\tau^*$), then (88) yields the close approximation

$$h(v_1)h(v_2)R_x\left(t - \frac{v_1 + v_2}{2}, \tau - v_1 + v_2\right)_T \cong h(v_1)h(v_2)R_x(t, \tau - v_1 + v_2)_T \tag{90}$$

for all values of v_1 and v_2 for which these quantities are nonzero. Substitution of (90) into (86) yields the close approximation (for sufficiently large T)

$$R_y(t, \tau)_T \cong \int_{-\infty}^{\infty}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} h(v_1)h(v_2)R_x(t, \tau - v_1 + v_2)_T \, dv_1 \, dv_2,$$
$$|\tau| \leq T - 2\Delta\tau^*, \; T \gg \Delta\tau^*. \tag{91}$$

Now, show that (35) is equivalent to (91).

13. Verify the pseudospectrum relation (39). *Hint*: Proceed as follows. The condition

$$|\tau| \leq \Delta t - 2\Delta\tau^* \tag{92}$$

can be satisfied by the two conditions

$$|\tau| \leq (1 - \epsilon)\Delta t \tag{93}$$
$$\Delta t \geq \frac{2\Delta\tau^*}{\epsilon}$$

for arbitrarily small positive ϵ. Use this equivalent condition to reexpress (35) (with T replaced by Δt) as

$$R_y(t, \tau)_{\Delta t}u_T(\tau) \cong [R_x(t, \tau)_{\Delta t} \otimes r_h(\tau)]u_T(\tau), \qquad \begin{cases} \Delta t \geq T/(1 - \epsilon) \\ \Delta t \gg \Delta\tau^* \\ \Delta t \geq 2\Delta\tau^*/\epsilon \end{cases} \tag{94}$$

for sufficiently large Δt and $0 < \epsilon < 1$. Then verify that for $\epsilon \ll 1$ (94) yields

$$R_y(t, \tau)_{\Delta t}u_T(\tau) \cong [R_x(t, \tau)_{\Delta t} \otimes r_h(\tau)]u_T(\tau), \qquad \Delta t > T, \; \Delta t \gg \Delta\tau^*. \tag{95}$$

Finally, Fourier transform (95) to obtain (39) (using $\Delta f = 1/T$).

14. Let $h(\tau)$ have approximate (or exact) duration $\Delta\tau^*$, centered at $\tau = 0$. Then use the approximate (or exact) equation

$$H(f) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} h(\tau)e^{-i2\pi f\tau} \, d\tau$$
$$\cong \int_{-\Delta\tau^*/2}^{\Delta\tau^*/2} h(\tau)e^{-i2\pi f\tau} \, d\tau$$

to show that

$$H(f) \cong H(f) \otimes w_{1/\Delta\tau^*}(f) \tag{96}$$

approximately (or exactly). Thus, the transform of any centered function with approximate duration $\Delta\tau^*$ will have a resolution width, denoted by Δf^*, that is typically no smaller than $1/\Delta\tau^*$: $\Delta f^* \geq 1/\Delta\tau^*$. (If $h(\tau)$ is not centered, the same result can be obtained for $|H(f)|$.) In fact, it is shown in the next exercise that Δf^* and $1/\Delta\tau^*$ are on the same order of magnitude: $\Delta f^* \cong 1/\Delta\tau^*$. If $h(\tau)$ happens to be pulselike,

then $\Delta\tau^*$ is not only the duration (or overall width), it is also the resolution width of $h(\tau)$. Thus, for a pulselike function, the resolution widths of the function and its transform are approximately reciprocals. Show that these two general rules regarding the resolution width Δf^* do indeed hold for the following examples of $h(\tau)$:

(a) Rectangle pulse

(b) Triangle pulse

(c) Symmetrical exponential pulse, $e^{-|t|/\tau^*}$

(d) The product of (a), or (b), or (c) with a sum of sine waves with arbitrary frequencies.

To illustrate further the reciprocal relationship between the width of a time function and the resolution width of its Fourier transform, show that if

$$A(f) \triangleq F\{a(t)\}$$

then

$$F\{a(ct)\} = \frac{1}{|c|}A\left(\frac{f}{c}\right)$$

for any constant c. Thus, for example, if $c = \frac{1}{2}$ so that the width of a is doubled, then the resolution width of A is halved. This relationship is further elucidated in the next exercise.

15. **(a)** Consider a transient (not persistent) finite-energy waveform $x(t)$,

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x^2(t)\,dt < \infty. \tag{97}$$

Use the approach illustrated in section H to show that

$$\bar{X}(f) = \frac{1}{T_s}\sum_{m=-\infty}^{\infty} X\left(f - \frac{m}{T_s}\right), \tag{98}$$

where $X(f)$ is the Fourier transform

$$X(f) \triangleq \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t)e^{-i2\pi ft}\,dt, \tag{99}$$

and $\bar{X}(f)$ is the FST

$$\bar{X}(f) \triangleq \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(nT_s)e^{-i2\pi nT_s f}. \tag{100}$$

This reveals that $X(f)$ (and therefore $x(t)$) can be recovered from $\bar{X}(f)$ (and therefore from $\{x(nT_s)\}$) provided that

$$X(f) = 0, \qquad |f| > \frac{1}{2T_s}. \tag{101}$$

(b) To obtain $x(t)$ directly from $\{x(nT_s)\}$ when (101) is satisfied, substitute (100) into

$$X(f) = \bar{X}(f)u_{1/T_s}(f) \tag{102}$$

(which follows from (98) and (101)) and then evaluate the inverse Fourier transform of (102). The result is

$$x(t) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(nT_s)\frac{\sin[\pi(t - nT_s)/T_s]}{\pi(t - nT_s)/T_s}. \tag{103}$$

This result is referred to as the *sampling theorem* for transient waveforms. A completely analogous theorem applies to persistent waveforms (see [Gardner 1985]). The sampling theorem proves that if a Fourier transform $X(f)$ has absolute width $\Delta f^* = 1/T_s$, then its inverse transform $x(t)$ can be perfectly reconstructed by interpolating its time samples separated by $\Delta t^* = T_s = 1/\Delta f^*$, with a sinc-interpolating pulse as indicated by (103). Thus, the resolution width of $x(t)$ is on the order of Δt^*. This is the time-frequency dual of the result illustrated in the previous exercise.

16. Verify the Fourier transform pair (60). *Hint*: Use (39) in Chapter 1 together with the formula for Fourier coefficients,

$$X_m \triangleq \int_{-1/2\Delta f}^{1/2\Delta f} x(t) e^{-i2\pi m \Delta f t}\, dt,$$

where $1/\Delta f = T_s$ is the period.

17. Assume that at a particular time instant $t = t_0$, the time-variant complex spectrum of $x(t)$ is given by a triangle with base extending from $f = -B$ to $f = +B$. Draw graphs of the complex spectrum $\tilde{X}_T(t_0, f)$ of the time-sampled data $x(nT_s)$ for sampling rates of $1/T_s = B$, $3B/2$, and $2B$.

18. Show that the Fourier series transform of the discrete-time rectangle window

$$a(nT_s) = \begin{cases} 1, & |n| \leq \dfrac{N-1}{2} \\ 0, & |n| > \dfrac{N-1}{2}, \quad N \text{ odd} \end{cases} \tag{104}$$

is

$$\tilde{A}(f) = \frac{\sin(\pi f N T_s)}{\sin(\pi f T_s)}. \tag{105}$$

Hint: Use the identities

$$\sum_{n=0}^{N-1} e^{-i\theta n} = \frac{1 - e^{-i\theta N}}{1 - e^{-i\theta}} \tag{106}$$

and

$$\frac{1}{2i}(e^{i\theta} - e^{-i\theta}) = \sin(\theta).$$

19. Prove the convolution theorem for the FST; that is, if (using $T_s = 1$)

$$z(t) = x(t) \otimes y(t) \triangleq \sum_{v=-\infty}^{\infty} x(t - v) y(v) \tag{107}$$

then

$$\tilde{Z}(f) \triangleq \sum_{t=-\infty}^{\infty} z(t) e^{-i2\pi f t} = \tilde{X}(f)\tilde{Y}(f). \tag{108}$$

Hint: Take the FST of both sides of (107) and then make the change of variables $u = t - v$.

20. Verify the periodogram-correlogram relation (64) for discrete time. *Hint*: Use the convolution theorem for the FST (see exercise 19).

21. Verify that the inverse FST is given by

$$x(t) = \int_{-1/2}^{1/2} \tilde{X}(f) e^{i2\pi f t}\, df, \tag{109}$$

where the FST is defined by (using $T_s = 1$)

$$\tilde{X}(f) \triangleq \sum_{t=-\infty}^{\infty} x(t)e^{-i2\pi ft}. \tag{110}$$

Hint: Substitute (110) into (109) and use the identity

$$\int_{-1/2}^{1/2} e^{i2\pi ft}\, df = \begin{cases} 1, & t = 0 \\ 0, & t = \text{integer} \neq 0. \end{cases} \tag{111}$$

22. **(a)** Consider the sum of two sine waves as in exercise 3, and assume that the two frequencies are close together: $|f_1 - f_2| \ll (f_1 + f_2)/2$. Show that this time-series can be reexpressed as a sine wave with frequency $f_0 = (f_1 + f_2)/2$ and with slowly varying amplitude and phase,

$$x(t) = a(t)\cos[2\pi f_0 t + \theta(t)].$$

Determine explicit formulas for $a(t)$ and $\theta(t)$. *Hint*: Express f_1 and f_2 in the form $f_0 \pm f_*$, and use the trigonometric identity

$$\cos(A \pm B) = \cos(A)\cos(B) \mp \sin(A)\sin(B).$$

(b) Show that when the sum of two sine waves, as in part (a), goes through a nonlinearity, say a square-law device, the resultant time-series, $y(t) = x^2(t)$, contains additive sine wave components at both the sum and difference frequencies, $f_1 - f_2$ and $f_1 + f_2$. These are called *beat frequencies*. *Hint*: Use the following trigonometric identity after expanding the square $x^2(t)$,

$$\cos(A)\cos(B) = \frac{1}{2}\cos(A + B) + \frac{1}{2}\cos(A - B).$$

23. Consider the frequency-modulated sine wave

$$x(t) = \sin[2\pi \int_{-\infty}^{t} f(u)\, du]$$

whose instantaneous frequency is $f(t)$ (from (1)–(2) in Appendix 2-1). We want to show that the bandwidth of the resultant spectral peak exhibited by $x(t)$ can be no narrower than the bandwidth of $f(t)$, say B. It then follows that the width, say Δf^*, of the spectral peak satisfies $\Delta f^* \geq B \cong 1/\Delta t^*$, where Δt^* is the temporal resolution width of $f(t)$. To accomplish this we consider the extreme example in which the entire frequency content of $f(t)$ is at the frequency b,

$$f(t) = a \sin(2\pi bt),$$

where $b \gg a$ so that $f(t)$ fluctuates rapidly relative to the largest value a of the instantaneous frequency $f(t)$ of $x(t)$. Use this condition and the small-angle approximation $\sin\theta \cong \theta$ to show that

$$x(t) \cong 2\pi \int_{-\infty}^{t} f(u)\, du.$$

This same result holds for arbitrary $f(t)$ provided that its lowest frequency b is not too small compared with its peak value a. Use this result to show that the bandwidth of $x(t)$ (the width Δf^* of its spectral peak) is approximately equal to the bandwidth B of $f(t)$, $\Delta f^* \cong B$. Therefore, $\Delta f^* \cong 1/\Delta t^*$. It can be shown that when the above assumption that b is not too small is violated, the bandwidth of $x(t)$ can only be larger than the value B. Thus, in general, $\Delta f^* \geq B \cong 1/\Delta t^*$.

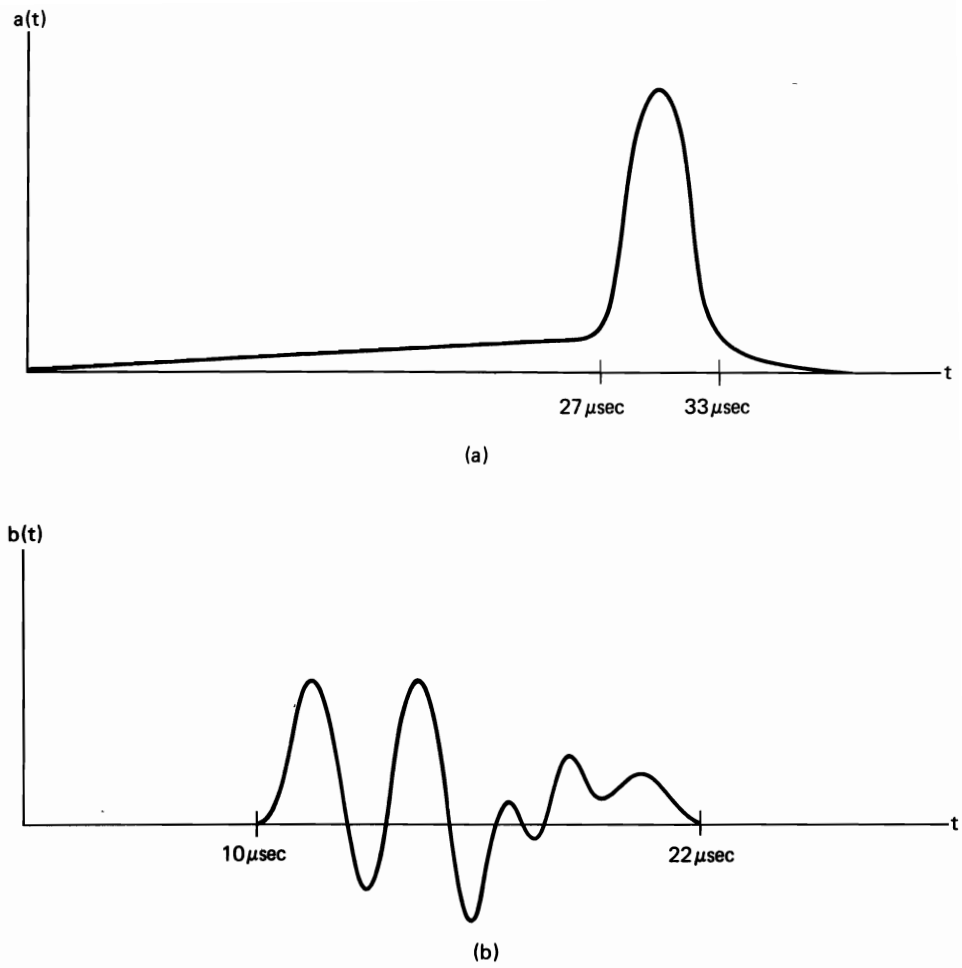


Figure 2-7 Two functions for application of the general rules of thumb regarding resolution width and overall width.

24. **(a)** Consider the pulse $a(t)$ shown in Figure 2-7(a). What is the approximate bandwidth of the Fourier transform $A(f)$?

(b) Consider the waveform $b(t)$ shown in Figure 2-7(b). Give a useful approximate lower limit on the resolution width of the Fourier transform $B(f)$. Then give an order-of-magnitude estimate of the bandwidth of $B(f)$.

(c) It is desired to determine the locations and widths of spectral peaks exhibited in some measured data that consist solely of sine waves with slowly varying amplitudes and phases. The minimum separation between peaks is known to be 10 Hz, and the narrowest peak is known to be 1 Hz. Approximately how long a time segment must be Fourier transformed in order to determine both the location and width of each spectral peak to within an error of no more than 100% of the peak width?

25. It is desired to estimate the transfer function of a linear time-invariant transformation that is continuously excited by random noise from a constant phenomenon, and it is decided to accomplish this by taking the ratio of the output periodogram to the input periodogram,

$$\frac{S_{y_T}(t - t_0, f)}{S_{x_T}(t, f)}.$$

If the impulse response $h(\tau)$ is known to be centered at $\tau = 10$ μs, and to have approximate width 1 μs, then what value for t_0 should be used and which of the values of T would yield the best results: $T = 1/10$ μs, 1 μs, or 10 μs? Explain your answer for T in words with reference to appropriate general results in the chapter. If it were decided to frequency-smooth the periodograms before taking their ratio, what value of width Δf for the smoothing window would you use, $\Delta f < 1/10$ MHz, $\Delta f > 1$ MHz, or $1/10$ MHz $< \Delta f < 1$ MHz? Explain your answer for Δf in words with reference to appropriate general results in the chapter.

26. **(a)** It is desired to estimate the amount of average power in $x(t)$ over the time interval 0 to 1s that is due to spectral components in the band $f_0 - \Delta f/2$ to $f_0 + \Delta f/2$ by integrating the periodogram $S_{x_T}(t, f)$ over this band. What values for t and T should be used, and which condition on Δf will yield the most accurate estimate, $\Delta f < 1$ Hz, $\Delta f > 1$ Hz, or $\Delta f > 10$ Hz? Explain your answers for Δf in words with reference to appropriate general results in the chapter.

(b) If it is desired to carry out the power measurement in (a) digitally and if it is known that the average power is negligible in bands above 100 Hz, then what is the lowest rate that should be used for time-sampling $x(t)$ (for digitization)? Explain your answer in words with reference to appropriate general results in the chapter.

APPENDIX 2-1

Instantaneous Frequency

Instantaneous Frequency Measurement

Consider the sine function with an argument that varies with time:

$$x(t) = \sin[\phi(t)]. \tag{1}$$

The *instantaneous frequency*[9] of this waveform is defined to be the derivative of the argument divided by 2π and is denoted by $f(t)$:

$$f(t) = \frac{1}{2\pi}\frac{d\phi(t)}{dt}. \tag{2}$$

For example, for the sine wave

$$x(t) = \sin(\omega_0 t + \theta),$$

[9] This definition of instantaneous frequency was apparently introduced by B. Van der Pol [Van der Pol 1946].

the instantaneous frequency is a constant,

$$f(t) = \frac{\omega_0}{2\pi}$$

If $f(t)$ is not a constant, then $x(t)$ in (1) is called a *frequency-modulated* (FM) *sine wave*.

Let us determine the conditions under which this mathematical definition of instantaneous frequency (2) corresponds to a quantity that can be measured in practice using spectral analysis; that is, we want to determine the conditions on $f(t)$ under which a time-variant finite-time spectrum $S_{x_T}(t, f)$ will track the time variations of $f(t)$ to within an accuracy of, say, Δf. Thus, we want $S_{x_T}(t, f)$ to be nonnegligible at time t within only the spectral band of width Δf, centered at $f(t)$ (and its image $-f(t)$). This will occur if and only if $|f(u)|$ remains in the spectral band $[|f(t)| - \Delta f/2, |f(t)| + \Delta f/2]$ during the time-interval $[t - \Delta t/2, t + \Delta t/2]$, where Δf and Δt are the spectral and temporal resolutions of $S_{x_T}(t, f)$, namely, $\Delta f \cong 1/T$ and $\Delta t \cong T$. Thus, if $f(t)$ changes by an amount δf during a small time interval δt, then it is sufficient if $|\delta f/\delta t|$ does not exceed $\Delta f/\Delta t \cong (\Delta f)^2$, which can be interpreted as a bound on the derivative of $f(t)$,

$$\left|\frac{df}{dt}\right| < (\Delta f)^2. \tag{3}$$

Thus, *the instantaneous frequency can be tracked by the time-variant periodogram within an accuracy of* Δf *if its rate does not exceed* $(\Delta f)^2$. This leads to a related condition involving only frequency parameters, as follows. The *peak frequency deviation* of the FM sine wave is defined by

$$f_{\max} \triangleq \max_t\{|f(t)|\},$$

and the frequency of the highest-frequency component of $f(t)$ is denoted by $\nu_{\max}$, which is the *bandwidth* of $f(t)$. Since the derivative of a sine wave with amplitude f and frequency ν,

$$(f)\sin(2\pi\nu t),$$

is upper bounded in magnitude by $|2\pi f\nu|$, then a sufficient condition for frequency tracking is

$$2\pi f_{\max}\nu_{\max} \leq (\Delta f)^2. \tag{4}$$

This condition is also necessary for (3) if $f(t)$ is simply a sine wave.

An example of an FM sinewave is the *linear FM signal*, for which

$$f(t) = \alpha t.$$

This signal

$$x(t) = \sin[\pi\alpha t^2]$$

is called a *chirp signal*, and α is the *chirp rate*. It follows from the preceding discussion that the instantaneous frequency of $x(t)$ can be tracked if (and in this case only if) the chirp rate does not exceed the square of the desired resolution,

$$\alpha < (\Delta f)^2.$$

In this case, it can be shown that the time-variant spectrum of the chirp signal is closely approximated by

$$S_{x_T}(t,f) \cong \frac{T}{4}\{\text{sinc}^2([f - \alpha t]T) + \text{sinc}^2([f + \alpha t]T)\}$$

for $\alpha t >> 2/T$.

Instantaneous Frequency Demodulation

As an application of the time-variant periodogram relation for filters, (40) in Chapter 2, consider the problem of measuring the instantaneous frequency of the FM sine wave

$$x(t) = \sin[\phi(t)]. \tag{5}$$

It is assumed that the instantaneous frequency rate is sufficiently low (3) that the time-variant periodogram with $T = \Delta t$ is simply

$$S_{x_{\Delta t}}(t,f) \cong \frac{\Delta t}{4}\{\text{sinc}^2([f - f(t)]\Delta t) + \text{sinc}^2([f + f(t)]\Delta t)\}, \tag{6}$$

where

$$f(t) = \frac{1}{2\pi}\frac{d\phi(t)}{dt}, \tag{7}$$

as explained in the preceding section. Consider two filters with transfer functions $H(f)$ and $G(f)$ that are approximately linear in magnitude over the spectral band for which $S_{x_T}(t, f)$ is nonnegligible, say

$$\begin{aligned} |H(f)| &\cong c(|f| - f_0) + d, \qquad ||f| - f_0| \leq B \\ |G(f)| &\cong c(f_0 - |f|) + d, \qquad ||f| - f_0| \leq B \end{aligned} \tag{8}$$

for some constants c and d, and assume that Δt greatly exceeds the memory lengths of these filters, which are generally much less than $1/B$ (so that (40) in Chapter 2 applies to the following). Now, consider the difference between the time-averaged powers of the responses of these two filters to $x(t)$:

$$\nu(t) \triangleq \frac{1}{\Delta t}\int_{t-\Delta t/2}^{t+\Delta t/2} y^2(u)\,du - \frac{1}{\Delta t}\int_{t-\Delta t/2}^{t+\Delta t/2} z^2(u)\,du \tag{9}$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} y(t) &= x(t) \otimes h(t) \\ z(t) &= x(t) \otimes g(t). \end{aligned} \tag{10}$$

The function $\nu(t)$ can be reexpressed as

$$\begin{aligned} \nu(t) &= R_{y_{\Delta t}}(t, 0) - R_{z_{\Delta t}}(t, 0) \\ &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} S_{y_{\Delta t}}(t,f)\,df - \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} S_{z_{\Delta t}}(t,f)\,df. \end{aligned} \tag{11}$$

Substitution of (40) in Chapter 2, for both y and H and z and G, into (11) yields

(using $\Delta\tau^* \ll 1/B$)

$$\nu(t) \cong \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} (|H(f)|^2 - |G(f)|^2) S_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, f)\, df \tag{12}$$

$$\cong a \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} [|f| - f_0]\, S_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, f)\, df, \qquad \text{for } ||f(t)| - f_0| \leq B \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{1}{\Delta t} < B, \tag{13}$$

where a is just a scale factor. Substitution of (6) into (13) and use of the fact that $S_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, f)$ is negligible for $||f| - f(t)| > 1/\Delta t$ yields

$$\nu(t) \cong b[|f(t)| - f_0], \qquad \text{for } \left|\frac{df}{dt}\right| < \left(\frac{1}{\Delta t}\right)^2 < B^2 \quad \text{and} \quad ||f(t)| - f_0| \leq B, \tag{14}$$

where b is just a scale factor. Thus, the difference (9) of time-averaged powers of the filtered signals yields the instantaneous frequency (14). Since this result requires balancing the characteristics of the two filters, as indicated by (8), this method of measurement of instantaneous frequency is called *balanced frequency discrimination*.[10] Filters that exhibit the linear characteristics (8) are called *frequency-to-amplitude converters*. Alternative methods for rapid instantaneous frequency measurement that can accommodate faster frequency deviation are available. Some of these are closely related to some of the time-series-modeling approaches to spectral analysis described in Chapter 9.

[10] This balanced scheme will cancel out even-order nonlinear terms, such as $(f \pm f_0)^2$, in (8) that are common to both $|H(f)|$ and $|G(f)|$.

3

STATISTICAL SPECTRAL ANALYSIS

This chapter introduces the fundamentals of statistical spectral analysis: the equivalence between statistical spectra obtained from *temporal smoothing* and statistical spectra obtained from *spectral smoothing,* and the relationship between these *statistical spectra* and the abstract *limit spectrum.* The motivation for smoothing—to average out undesired random effects that mask spectral features of interest—is developed by consideration of the problem of measuring the parameters of a resonance phenomenon. It is established that the *limit autocorrelation* and *limit spectrum* are a Fourier transform pair and that each is a self-determinate characteristic under a linear time-invariant transformation (filtering operation). The utility of the limit spectrum for characterizing spectral features in stationary time-series is illustrated with several examples of *modulated waveforms.* Periodically time-sampled waveforms are considered, and a formula for the limit spectrum of the discrete-time sampled data, in terms of the limit spectrum of the waveform, is derived and used to describe further the spectral aliasing phenomenon. The *moving average* and *autoregressive models* of discrete-time data are introduced, and their limit spectra are derived. In Appendix 3-1, *bandpass time-series* are considered and a general representation in terms of *lowpass time-series* is derived, and the relationships between the limit autocorrelations and limit spectra of the bandpass and lowpass time-series also are derived. In Appendix 3-2, the role of spectral analysis in the detection of random signals is explained.

A. MOTIVATING EXAMPLE

In order to understand why a statistical (average) spectrum can be preferable to a nonstatistical spectrum, we must focus our attention not on the data itself but rather on the source of the data—the mechanism that generates the data. Generally speaking, data is nothing more than a partial representation of some phenomenon—a numerical representation of some aspects of a phenomenon. The fundamental reason for interest in a statistical (e.g., time-averaged) spectrum of some given data is a belief that interesting aspects of the phenomenon being investigated have spectral influences on the data that are masked by uninteresting (for the purpose at hand) random effects and an additional belief (or, at least, hope) that these spectral influences can be revealed by averaging out the random effects. This second belief (or hope) should be based on the knowledge (or, at least, suspicion) that the spectral influences of the interesting aspects of the phenomenon are time-invariant, so that the corresponding invariant spectral features (such as peaks or valleys) will be revealed rather than destroyed by time-averaging.

This idea is illustrated with the following example. Consider the problem of determining the resonance frequency and damping ratio of a single-degree-of-freedom mechanical system (see exercise 10) that is subject to a continuous random vibrational force excitation x. The system displacement response y can be modeled as an LTI transformation of the excitation, with the transfer function magnitude $|H|$ shown in Figure 3-1, which reveals the resonance frequency f_0

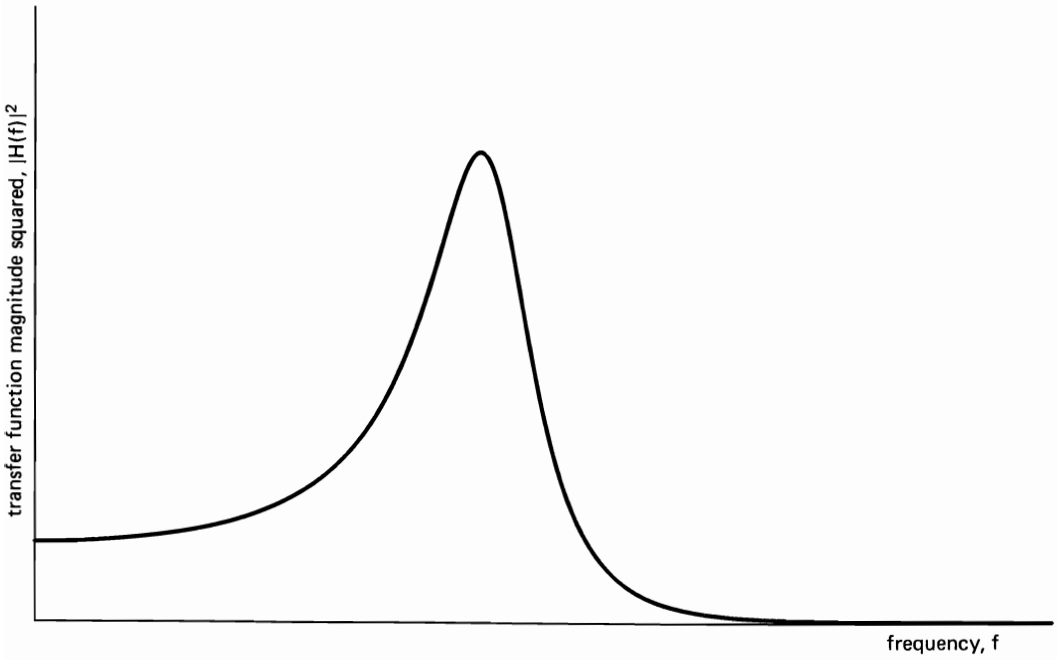


Figure 3-1 Magnitude-squared transfer function of resonant system.

and the bandwidth B (which can be related to the damping ratio). The vibrational response of the system is random by virtue of the randomness of the excitation. Consequently, the spectrum of the response data does not exhibit the desired single smooth peak shown in Figure 3-1. Rather, it is an erratic function with numerous sharp peaks and valleys, as revealed by the simulation shown in Figure 3-2(a). Moreover, as the time-interval of analysis is made longer by increasing T, the spectrum only becomes more erratic (at least locally), as revealed by the simulation shown in Figure 3-2(b). However, if the random excitation arises from a system in statistical equilibrium, the underlying time-invariance in the excitation, as well as in the resonant system, suggests that time-averaging the response spectrum will reduce the random effects while leaving the desired spectral features intact. In fact, it is shown in the next section that for $\Delta t/T >> 1$, the time-smoothed spectrum,

$$S_{y_T}(t,f)_{\Delta t} \triangleq S_{y_T}(t,f) \otimes u_{\Delta t}(t), \tag{1}$$

is closely approximated by the frequency-smoothed spectrum

$$S_{y_{\Delta t}}(t,f) \otimes z_{1/T}(f), \tag{2}$$

and for sufficiently large Δt and T the particular form of the spectral-smoothing window $z_{1/T}$ is irrelevant. Consequently, approximation (40) in Chapter 2 can be used to obtain

$$S_{y_T}(t,f)_{\Delta t} \cong |H(f)|^2 S_{x_T}(t,f)_{\Delta t}, \tag{3}$$

for which it has been assumed that[1]

$$\frac{1}{T} \leqslant \Delta f^*, \tag{4}$$

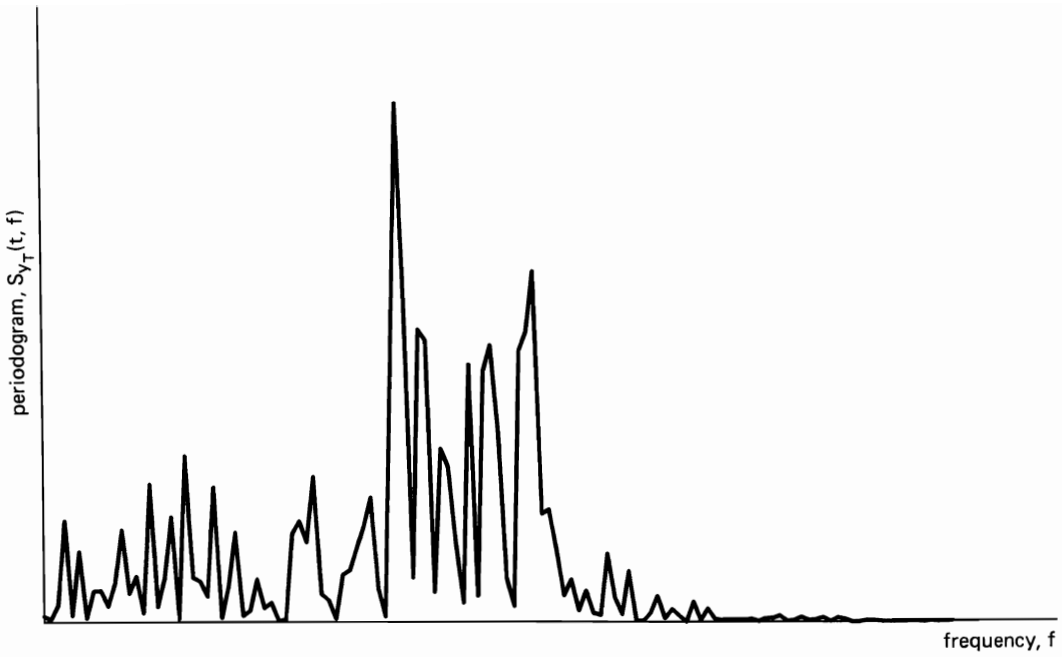
where Δf^* is the resolution width of the function $|H|^2$ (Δf^* is on the order of $1/\Delta\tau^*$, where $\Delta\tau^*$ is the system memory length—the width of h). If the system excitation is completely random so that it exhibits no spectral features, then for $\Delta t/T >> 1$, $S_{x_T}(t,f)_{\Delta t}$ will closely approximate a constant (over the support for which $|H|$ is nonnegligible), say N_0. Therefore, (3) yields the desired result:

$$S_{y_T}(t,f)_{\Delta t} \cong N_0|H(f)|^2, \qquad \Delta t \Delta f^* \geqslant \Delta t/T >> 1, \tag{5}$$

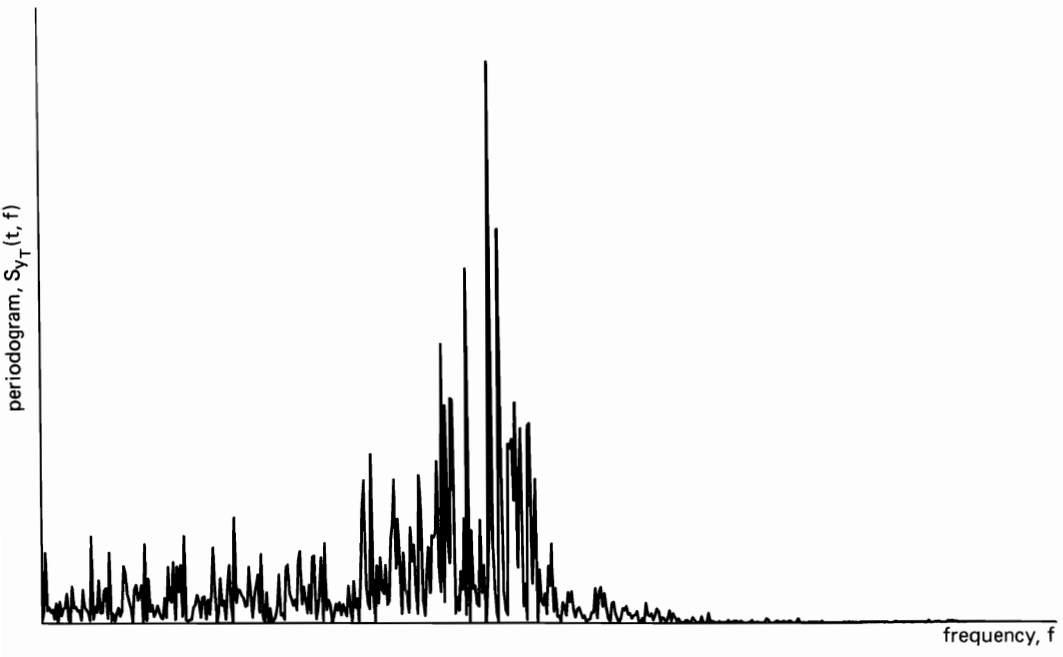
from which the resonance frequency and damping ratio can be determined. This is illustrated with the simulations shown in Figure 3-2c, d.

In addition to illustrating the use of a statistical spectrum obtained from time-smoothing a periodogram (1), this example introduces the idea that an *equivalent* statistical spectrum can also be obtained from frequency-smoothing a periodogram (2). This equivalence is established in the following section. However, before proceeding it should be clarified that in practice when automated spectrum analyzers are used to study visually the spectral features of a phenomenon, it is common practice to use very little smoothing (and in some cases no smoothing) in spite of the erratic behavior of the displayed spectrum due to random effects. But it should be remembered that human visual perception incorporates spatial

[1] Condition (4) guarantees that the order of multiplication with $|H|^2$ and convolution with $w_{1/T}$ in (40), Chapter 2, can be interchanged to obtain a close approximation.

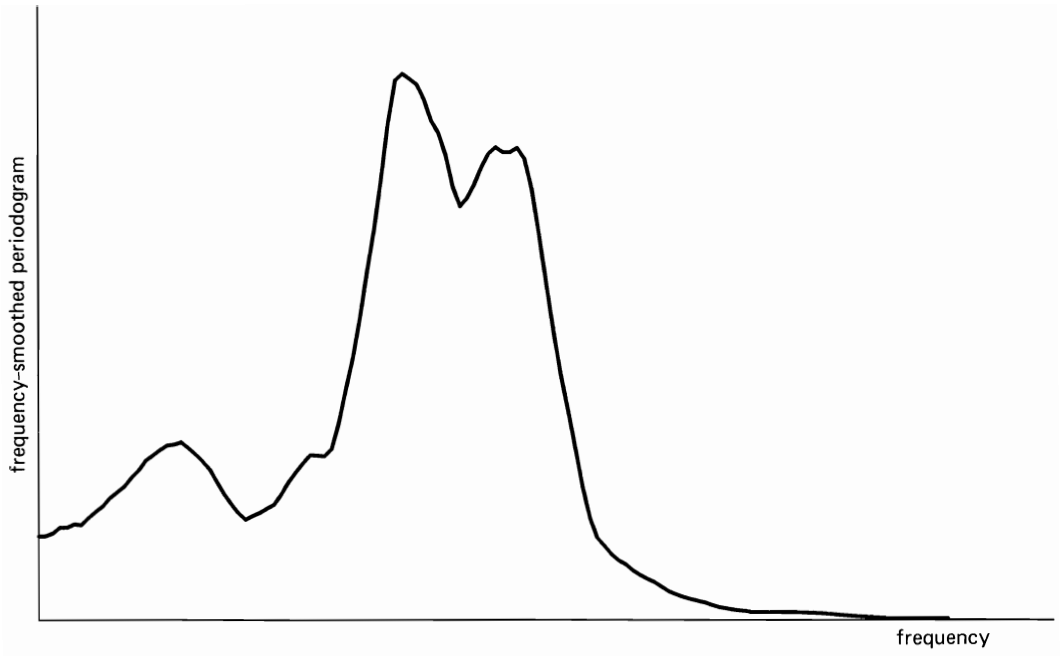


(a)

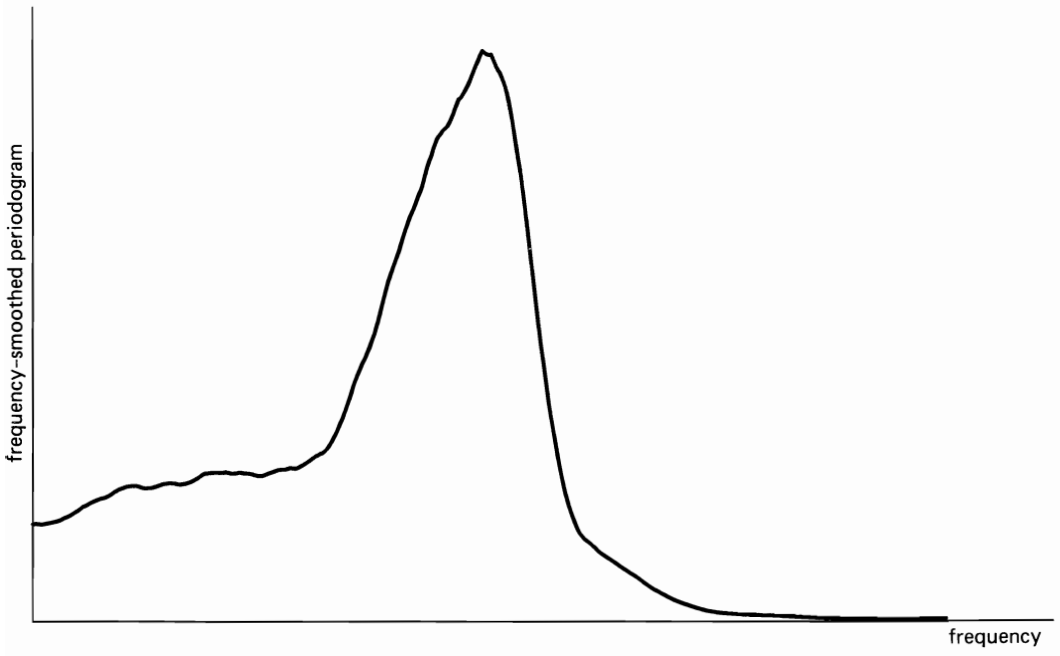


(b)

Figure 3-2 Nonstatistical spectra of response of resonant system to completely random excitation. (Length of time interval of analysis is T): (a) $T = T_0$, (b) $T = 4T_0$.



(c)



(d)

Figure 3-2 (continued) Statistical spectra obtained by frequency-smoothing the nonstatistical spectra shown in (a) and (b): (c) from (a) with $\Delta t/T = 8$, (d) from (b) with $\Delta t/T = 32$.

integration and temporal memory so that we in effect perceive a smoothed spectrum even when the analyzer uses no smoothing. This is apparent from Figure 3-2 (a) and (b), in which we can perceive the smoothed spectra that are shown in Figure 3-2 (c) and (d).

B. TEMPORAL- AND SPECTRAL-SMOOTHING EQUIVALENCE

In this section, it is shown that *time-smoothing,* with a temporal window of width $\Delta t >> T_1 = 1/\Delta f$, a time-variant spectrum with resolutions of T_1 in time and $1/T_1 = \Delta f$ in frequency, yields a statistical spectrum

$$S_{x_{1/\Delta f}}(t,f)_{\Delta t} \triangleq S_{x_{T_1}}(t,f) \otimes u_{\Delta t}(t), \tag{6}$$

that closely approximates the statistical spectrum

$$S_{x_{\Delta t}}(t,f)_{\Delta f} \triangleq S_{x_{T_2}}(t,f) \otimes z_{\Delta f}(f) \tag{7}$$

obtained by *frequency-smoothing,* with a spectral window of width on the order of $\Delta f >> 1/T_2 = 1/\Delta t$, a time-variant spectrum with resolutions of $T_2 = \Delta t$ in time and $1/T_2$ in frequency. And it is shown that this approximation,

$$S_{x_{1/\Delta f}}(t,f)_{\Delta t} \cong S_{x_{\Delta t}}(t,f)_{\Delta f}, \qquad \Delta t \Delta f >> 1, \tag{8}$$

can be made as accurate as desired for any given t and Δf and for all f by choosing Δt sufficiently large, provided only that the limit autocorrelation function

$$\hat{R}_x(\tau) = \lim_{T\to\infty} \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right) x\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right) dt \tag{9}$$

exists. In fact, equivalence (8) will be obtained as a special case of a more general equivalence that incorporates an arbitrary bounded data-tapering aperture a_T with finite support T_*,

$$a_T(t) = 0, \qquad |t| > \frac{T_*}{2} \geqslant \frac{T}{2}. \tag{10}$$

Before studying the following derivation of this equivalence, the reader should interpret the signal-processing operations involved in obtaining the time-averaged periodogram, (6), and the frequency-smoothed periodogram, (7), in terms of the pictorial illustration shown in Figure 3-3.

The derivation consists of the following five steps (in which $T = 1/\Delta f$ represents T_1 in (6)):

$$S_{x_T}(t,f)_{\Delta t} \triangleq \frac{1}{\Delta t} \int_{-\Delta t/2}^{\Delta t/2} S_{x_T}(t-u,f)\, du \tag{11}$$

$$= \frac{1}{\Delta t} \int_{-\Delta t/2}^{\Delta t/2} \int_{-T_*}^{T_*} R_{x_T}(t-u,\tau) e^{-i2\pi f\tau}\, d\tau\, du \tag{12}$$

$$= \int_{-T_*}^{T_*} \frac{1}{\Delta t} \int_{-\Delta t/2}^{\Delta t/2} R_{x_T}(t-u,\tau)\, du\, e^{-i2\pi f\tau}\, d\tau \tag{13}$$

$$\cong \int_{-T_*}^{T_*} R_x(t,\tau)_{\Delta t} \frac{1}{T} r_a(\tau)\, e^{-i2\pi f\tau}\, d\tau, \qquad \Delta t >> T \tag{14}$$

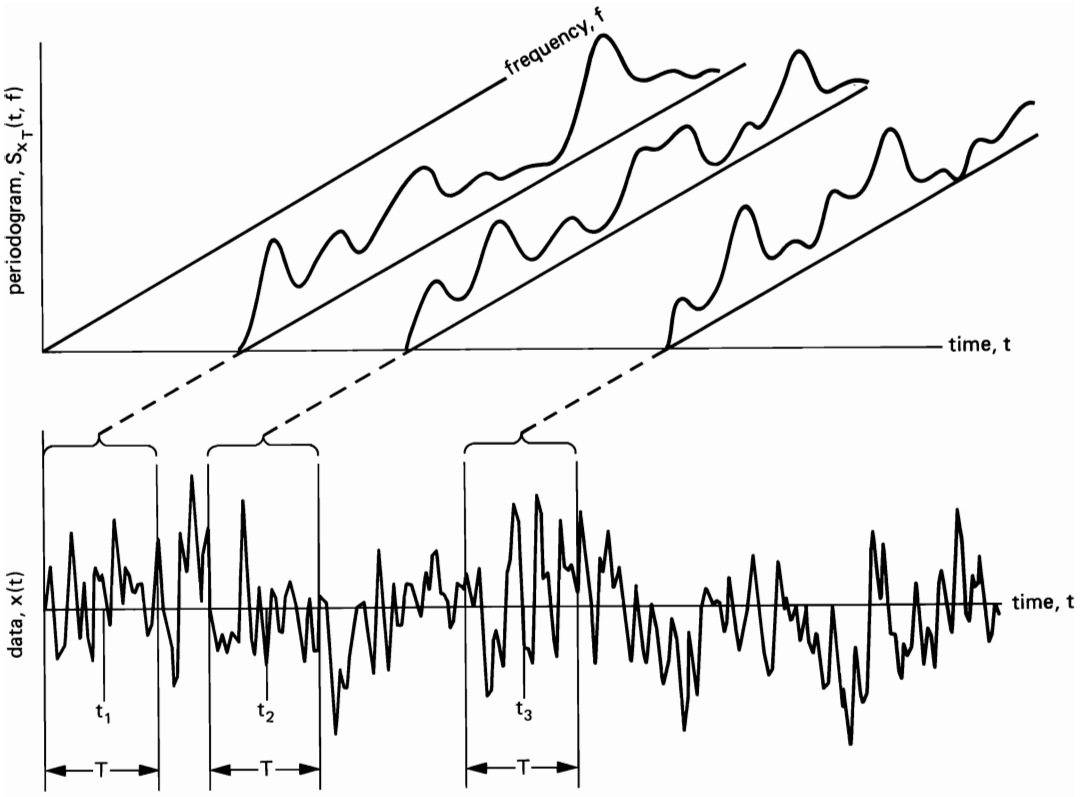


Figure 3-3 Pictorial illustration of a time-variant periodogram.

$$\cong \int_{-T_*}^{T_*} R_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, \tau) \frac{1}{T} r_a(\tau)\, e^{-i2\pi f\tau}\, d\tau, \qquad \Delta t \gg T \tag{15}$$

$$= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} S_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, f - \nu) \frac{1}{T} |A_{1/T}(\nu)|^2\, d\nu \tag{16}$$

$$\triangleq S_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, f)_{\Delta f}. \tag{17}$$

Step 1, (12), is the time-variant periodogram-correlogram relation for tapered data, (18) in Chapter 2, together with the property that follows from (10),

$$r_a(\tau) = 0, \qquad |\tau| > T_*, \tag{18}$$

of the finite autocorrelation r_a defined by (29) in Chapter 2. Step 2, (13), is simply a reversal of the order of two finite-interval integrations. Step 3, (14), is approximation (28) in Chapter 2. Approximation (14) can be made as accurate as desired for any given t and T and for all f by choosing Δt sufficiently large, since T_* is finite, provided only that $\hat{R}_x$ exists (exercise 1). Step 4, (15), is approximation (30) in Chapter 2. Approximation (15) can be made as accurate as desired for any given t and T and for all f by choosing Δt sufficiently large, since T_* is finite, provided only that $\hat{R}_x$ exists (exercise 1). It follows from

exercise 10 in Chapter 2 that although $R_{x_T}(t, \tau)$ in (12) includes a data-tapering window, $R_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, \tau)$ in (15) does not. Step 5, (16), is the convolution theorem (which applies because (18) allows replacement of finite limits of integration in (15) with infinite limits), together with the definition

$$A_{1/T}(\cdot) \triangleq F\{a_T(\cdot)\}. \tag{19}$$

Equivalence (11)–(17) reveals that *the particular data-tapering window a_T in a time-smoothed spectrum determines an effective spectral smoothing window* $(1/T)|A_{1/T}(f)|^2$ (which is the periodogram of the data-tapering window).[2] This equivalence also reveals that effectively the same statistical spectrum can be obtained by carrying out spectral smoothing as in (16) rather than data-tapering and time-smoothing, as in (3) in Chapter 2 and (11) in this chapter. Other related equivalences, some involving the pseudospectrum, are described in Chapter 4, Section A. Approximations (14) and (15) can be quantified in terms of rms error, that is, the square root of the average over all time t of the squared error of approximation. This approach is set up in Chapter 5.

C. THE LIMIT SPECTRUM

It follows from the preceding discussion (following (17)) that in the limit $\Delta t \to \infty$, approximations (14) and (15) become exact (exercise 1), so that

$$\begin{aligned} \lim_{\Delta t \to \infty} S_{x_{1/\Delta f}}(t, f)_{\Delta t} &= \lim_{\Delta t \to \infty} S_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, f)_{\Delta f} \\ &= \lim_{\Delta t \to \infty} \int_{-T_*}^{T_*} R_x(t, \tau)_{\Delta t} \frac{1}{T} r_a(\tau)\, e^{-i2\pi f\tau}\, d\tau. \end{aligned} \tag{20}$$

Moreover, it follows from (31) in Chapter 2 that

$$\lim_{\Delta t \to \infty} \int_{-T_*}^{T_*} R_x(t, \tau)_{\Delta t} \frac{1}{T} r_a(\tau)\, e^{-i2\pi f\tau}\, d\tau = \int_{-T_*}^{T_*} \hat{R}_x(\tau) \frac{1}{T} r_a(\tau)\, e^{-i2\pi f\tau}\, d\tau, \tag{21}$$

where the interchange of limit and integration operations is justified because T_* is finite (exercise 1). Application of the convolution theorem to (21), together with (20), yields

$$\lim_{\Delta t \to \infty} S_{x_{1/\Delta f}}(t, f)_{\Delta t} = \lim_{\Delta t \to \infty} S_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, f)_{\Delta f} = \hat{S}_x(f) \otimes [\Delta f |A_{\Delta f}(f)|^2] \tag{22}$$

for which $\hat{S}_x$ is given by the Fourier transform

$$\hat{S}_x(\cdot) = F\{\hat{R}_x(\cdot)\}, \tag{23}$$

which is assumed to exist.[3] Equation (22) reveals that both of the statistical spectra, $S_{x_{1/\Delta f}}(t, f)_{\Delta t}$ and $S_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, f)_{\Delta f}$, approach the frequency-smoothed limit

[2] In all other treatments of this subject known to the author, this fundamental equivalence (11)–(17) is obtained only in a probabilistic sense, which involves unnecessary abstraction.

[3] This is equivalent to assuming that $\hat{R}_x(\tau)$, with all (if any exist) finite additive sine wave components subtracted out, is absolutely integrable.

spectrum as Δt is increased. Consequently, the (assumed) existence of the limit autocorrelation guarantees that both the time-smoothed and frequency-smoothed statistical spectra converge as $\Delta t \Delta f \to \infty$ for any fixed $\Delta f > 0$. Moreover, since

$$\lim_{\Delta f \to 0} \Delta f |A_{\Delta f}(f)|^2 = \gamma \delta(f), \tag{24}$$

in which

$$\gamma \triangleq \lim_{\Delta f \to 0} \Delta f \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |A_{\Delta f}(f)|^2 \, df = \lim_{T \to \infty} \frac{1}{T} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} a_T^2(t) \, dt, \tag{25}$$

then (22) yields[4] the *limit spectrum*

$$\lim_{\Delta f \to 0} \lim_{\Delta t \to \infty} S_{x_{1/\Delta f}}(t, f)_{\Delta t} = \gamma \hat{S}_x(f) \tag{26a}$$

$$\lim_{\Delta f \to 0} \lim_{\Delta t \to \infty} S_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, f)_{\Delta f} = \gamma \hat{S}_x(f), \tag{26b}$$

and for typical unity-height tapering windows, γ is on the order of unity (e.g., $\gamma = 1$ for $a_T(t) = Tu_T(t)$).

Identities (26a) and (26b) reveal that the limit spectrum, which is also given by (23), is an idealization ($\Delta t \to \infty$, $\Delta f \to 0$) of the two fundamental types of statistical spectra that are measured in practice by time-smoothing or frequency-smoothing a periodogram, and that the particular form of the data-tapering window, or the corresponding spectral smoothing window, is irrelevant[5] for sufficiently large Δt and $1/\Delta f$. It is of paramount importance that the order of the two limit operations in (26) cannot be reversed, because the sequence of periodograms

$$S_{x_T}(t, f), \qquad T \to \infty \tag{27}$$

does not converge.[6] This is proved in Chapter 5, Section C, where it is established that $S_{x_T}(t, \cdot)$ becomes an increasingly erratic function as T is increased. The important practical implications of this for smoothing also are described in Chapter 5.

The fact that the limit (26b) of the frequency-smoothed periodogram is identical to the Fourier transform of the limit autocorrelation (23) was first presented (in rather terse form) by Albert Einstein [Einstein 1914], and then independently presented and rigorously proved by Norbert Wiener, and it is

[4] The limit $\Delta f \to 0$ of (22) exists in the usual pointwise sense, provided that $\hat{R}_x$ is absolutely integrable. However, if $\hat{R}_x$ contains additive periodic components (due to additive periodic components in $x(t)$), then this limit exists only in a more general sense that accommodates Dirac deltas in $\hat{S}_x$ (see [Pfaffelhuber, 1975]).

[5] In practice Δt and $1/\Delta f$ often cannot be made as large as desired, and the particular data-tapering window or corresponding spectral-smoothing window therefore becomes important, as explained in subsequent chapters.

[6] The erroneous definition of the limit spectrum as the limit $T \to \infty$ of the periodogram (27) is a common appearance in the early literature—for example, [Carson 1931; Rice 1944; James et al. 1947; Lawson and Uhlenbeck 1949; Page 1952; Lanning and Battin 1956; Blackman and Tukey 1958; Kharkevich 1960; Papoulis 1962; Schroeder and Atal 1962]—and it continues to appear in some of the current literature, such as [Priestly 1981, Sec. 4.6; Urkowitz 1983]. An early proof that (27) does not converge for random time-series is given in [Grenander 1951].

therefore called the *Wiener relation*[7] [Wiener 1930, Sec. 3]. The fact that the limit (26a) of the time-smoothed periodogram is also identical to the Fourier transform of the limit autocorrelation—although intimately related to practical methods of statistical spectral analysis as explained in Chapter 4—is apparently not a commonly known result. In contrast to its previously unrecognized role,[8] identity (26a) is at the core of the nonprobabilistic theory presented here. Furthermore, it is (26a) rather than (26b) that leads more naturally to a probabilistic interpretation of the limit spectrum and to probabilistic methods of analysis of statistical spectra, as explained in Chapter 5.

Perhaps the single most important result based on the limit spectrum is the *limit-spectrum relation*,

$$\hat{S}_y(f) = |H(f)|^2 \hat{S}_x(f), \tag{28}$$

for filters

$$y(t) = h(t) \otimes x(t) \tag{29}$$

$$H(\cdot) = F\{h(\cdot)\}, \tag{30}$$

which follows directly from the convolution theorem, the *Wiener relation*, and the *limit-autocorrelation relation*,

$$\hat{R}_y(\tau) = r_h(\tau) \otimes \hat{R}_x(\tau) \tag{31}$$

$$r_h(\tau) = h(\tau) \otimes h(-\tau), \tag{32}$$

derived in Chapter 2, Section F.

An argument completely paralleling that given in Section G of Chapter 2 but based on the exact limit-spectrum relation for filters (28) instead of approximation (40) in Chapter 2 yields the interpretation of the limit spectrum $\hat{S}_x$ as the *spectral density of time-averaged power* in $x(t)$. That is, (49) in Chapter 2 becomes exact

[7] More precisely, Wiener worked with the smoothing interval $\Delta f = (-\infty, f)$ in (26b), which yields the *integrated limit spectrum*, whose derivative is the limit spectrum $\hat{S}_x$. Related work by A. J. Khinchin [Khinchin 1934] for random processes yielded a probabilistic counterpart of the Wiener relation, which is known as the *Wiener-Khinchin relation*. Also, Kampé de Fériet [Kampé de Fériet 1954] provided an alternative method of derivation of the *Wiener relation* based on Paul Lévy's *continuity theorem* in probability theory. Since the difference of smoothing intervals $(-\infty, f_1)$ and $(-\infty, f_2)$ used by Wiener yields a rectangle spectral-smoothing window that corresponds to a sinc data-tapering window a_T, which has infinite support, then (10) is violated and the straightforward method used here to derive (26b) does not apply; see exercise 2. In view of Einstein's prior presentation of this relation, it might be more appropriate to call it the *Einstein-Wiener relation*.

[8] It is unlikely that (26a) did not play an important conceptual role during the 1930s and 1940s, when the focus was shifting from deterministic theory to probabilistic theory, since it is (26a) rather than (26b) that leads most naturally (via H.O.A. Wold's isomorphism [Wold 1948]) to a probabilistic interpretation of the limit spectrum, as explained in Chapter 5; but the author has not been successful in finding documentation of the role of (26a) in the literature. Although the time-smoothed spectrum in (26a) is shown in Chapter 4 to be identical to the statistical spectrum obtained by the *wave-analysis* and *demodulation* methods, which do appear in the early literature, the data-tapering window a_T that corresponds to the filters typically referred to for these methods does not have finite support (10), and therefore the straightforward method used here to derive (26a) does not apply.

in the limit $\Delta t \to \infty$,

$$\lim_{\Delta t \to \infty} P_{\Delta t \Delta f}(t, f) = 2 \int_{f - \Delta f/2}^{f + \Delta f/2} \hat{S}_x(\nu)\, d\nu. \tag{33}$$

Specifically, use of the definition of time-averaged power in the spectral band $[f - \Delta f/2, f + \Delta f/2]$ (and its image $[-f - \Delta f/2, -f + \Delta f/2]$),

$$\hat{P}_{\Delta f}(f) \triangleq \lim_{\Delta t \to \infty} \frac{1}{\Delta t} \int_{-\Delta t/2}^{\Delta t/2} [x(t) \otimes h(t)]^2\, dt = \hat{R}_y(0) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \hat{S}_y(\nu)\, d\nu, \tag{34}$$

together with (28) and

$$H(\nu) = \begin{cases} 1, & \|\nu| - f| \leq \Delta f/2 \\ 0, & \|\nu| - f| > \Delta f/2, \end{cases} \tag{35}$$

yields

$$\hat{P}_{\Delta f}(f) = 2 \int_{f - \Delta f/2}^{f + \Delta f/2} \hat{S}_x(\nu)\, d\nu, \tag{36}$$

from which we obtain the desired result

$$\lim_{\Delta f \to 0} \frac{1}{2\Delta f} \hat{P}_{\Delta f}(f) = \hat{S}_x(f), \tag{37}$$

revealing the interpretation of $\hat{S}_x$ as a *power spectral density* (PSD).

D. EXAMPLES OF SPECTRAL DENSITY

1. White Noise

A time-series is called *white noise* if its PSD is a constant, say N_0,

$$\hat{S}_x(f) = N_0. \tag{38}$$

In this case, inverse Fourier transformation yields

$$\hat{R}_x(\tau) = N_0 \delta(\tau), \tag{39}$$

revealing that there is no correlation in $x(t)$ for nonzero lag, $\tau \neq 0$. Strictly speaking, white noise is not within the scope of the theory developed here because $\hat{R}_x(\tau)$ does not exist at $\tau = 0$. But white noise can be used to great advantage with the theory in a formal way.

An interesting curiosity is the idealized linear frequency-modulated sine wave

$$x(t) = \sin(2\pi t^2) \tag{40}$$

with instantaneous frequency

$$f(t) \triangleq \frac{d}{dt}(t^2) = 2t. \tag{41}$$

It can be shown that, similar to white noise, the autocorrelation of $x(t)$ vanishes

for all $\tau \neq 0$,

$$\hat{R}_x(\tau) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{2}, & \tau = 0 \\ 0, & \tau \neq 0 \end{cases} \tag{42}$$

[Wiener 1930]. However, unlike white noise, $\hat{R}_x(0)$ exists and[9]

$$\hat{S}_x(f) \equiv 0. \tag{43}$$

This type of pathological behavior in a time-series model can be avoided by considering only models for which $\hat{R}_x(\tau)$ is continuous at $\tau = 0$ and therefore continuous for all τ (see [Gardner 1985]). Hence, it is assumed that all limit autocorrelations are continuous, as stated at the outset in Chapter 2.

2. Sine Wave with Additive Noise

Consider the sum of time-series

$$x(t) = s(t) + n(t) \tag{44}$$

$$s(t) = a\cos(\omega_0 t + \phi_0). \tag{45}$$

It can be shown (exercise 4) that

$$\hat{R}_x(\tau) = \hat{R}_s(\tau) + \hat{R}_n(\tau) \tag{46}$$

if and only if $\hat{R}_n(\tau)$ exists and

$$\lim_{T\to\infty} \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} n(t)\cos(\omega_0 t + \phi)\, dt = 0 \tag{47}$$

for all ϕ, which holds if and only if $n(t)$ contains no finite additive sine wave component with frequency $f_0 = \omega_0/2\pi$. Furthermore, for $\omega_0 \neq 0$,

$$\hat{R}_s(\tau) = \frac{a^2}{2}\cos(\omega_0 \tau) \tag{48}$$

and therefore (exercise 4)

$$\hat{S}_x(f) = \frac{a^2}{4}[\delta(f - f_0) + \delta(f + f_0)] + \hat{S}_n(f) \tag{49}$$

provided that (47) holds. The Dirac deltas in the limit spectrum (49) are called *spectral lines* (see Figure 3-4).

3. Sine Wave with Multiplicative Noise (Amplitude Modulation)

Consider the product of time-series

$$x(t) = s(t)n(t) \tag{50}$$

$$s(t) = \cos(\omega_0 t + \phi_0). \tag{51}$$

[9] It should be clarified that the inverse Fourier transform does not exist for functions with discontinuities of the type (42). Consequently, although $\hat{S}_x = F\{\hat{R}_x\}$ must be valid, $\hat{R}_x = F^{-1}\{\hat{S}_x\}$ is not valid for (42). Hence the power $\hat{R}_x(0) = \frac{1}{2}$ of the waveform (40) cannot be obtained by integrating $\hat{S}_x$ over all frequencies. Here $\hat{S}_x(f) \equiv 0$ because the finite power in $x(t)$ is spread uniformly over an infinite band of frequencies.

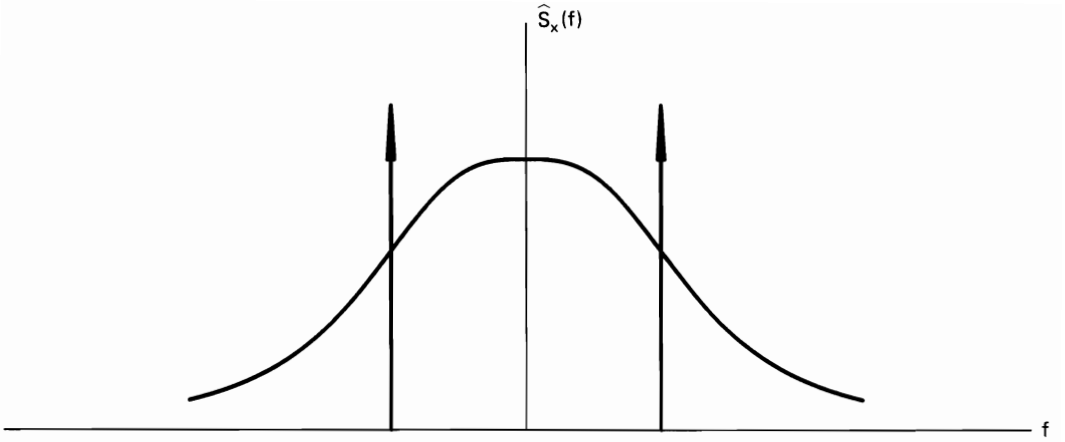


Figure 3-4 A limit spectral density for a sine wave with additive noise.

It can be shown (exercise 5) that

$$\hat{R}_x(\tau) = \hat{R}_s(\tau)\hat{R}_n(\tau) \tag{52}$$

if and only if $\hat{R}_n(\tau)$ exists and the lag products $n(t + \tau/2)n(t - \tau/2)$ contain no finite additive sine wave of frequency $2f_0$, that is,

$$\lim_{T\to\infty} \frac{1}{T}\int_{-T/2}^{T/2} n\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right)n\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right)\cos(2\omega_0 t + 2\phi_0)\, dt = 0 \tag{53}$$

for all τ, which holds only if $n(t)$ contains no additive, multiplicative, or other more subtle forms of periodicity with frequencies appropriately related to f_0. When condition (53) is violated, $\hat{R}_x$ can contain an additional term[10] that is commonly unrecognized in probabilistic treatments due to inappropriate phase-randomization [Gardner 1987a]. It follows from (48) and (52) that (exercise 5)

$$\hat{S}_x(f) = \tfrac{1}{4}\left[\hat{S}_n(f - f_0) + \hat{S}_n(f + f_0)\right] \tag{54}$$

provided that (53) holds.

4. Pulse-Amplitude Modulation

Consider the pulse-train time-series

$$x(t) = \sum_{j=-\infty}^{\infty} a(jT_0)p(t - jT_0) \tag{55}$$

for which $p(t)$ is a pulse with width that is typically on the order of T_0. It can be shown (exercise 6) that

$$\hat{R}_x(\tau) = \frac{1}{T_0}\sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} \tilde{R}_a(kT_0)r_p(\tau - kT_0) \tag{56}$$

for which r_p is the finite autocorrelation of p and $\tilde{R}_a$ is the *discrete-time limit*

[10] This additional term is studied in Part II.

autocorrelation

$$\tilde{R}_a(kT_0) \triangleq \lim_{N\to\infty} \frac{1}{2N+1} \sum_{j=-N}^{N} a(jT_0 + kT_0)a(jT_0) \tag{57}$$

(which is studied in the next section). Fourier transformation of (56) yields

$$\hat{S}_x(f) = \frac{1}{T_0}|P(f)|^2 \sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} \tilde{R}_a(kT_0)e^{-i2\pi kT_0 f}. \tag{58}$$

If there exists a continuous time-series $a(t)$ such that (57) is equivalent to

$$\tilde{R}_a(kT_0) = \lim_{T\to\infty} \frac{1}{T}\int_{-T/2}^{T/2} a\left(t + \frac{kT_0}{2}\right)a\left(t - \frac{kT_0}{2}\right) dt \equiv \hat{R}_a(kT_0), \tag{59}$$

then and only then can (58) be reexpressed as (exercise 6)

$$\hat{S}_x(f) = \left(\frac{1}{T_0}\right)^2 |P(f)|^2 \sum_{m=-\infty}^{\infty} \hat{S}_a\left(f - \frac{m}{T_0}\right). \tag{60}$$

Equivalence between (57) and (59) is violated if $a(t)$ contains additive, multiplicative, or other more subtle forms of periodicity with frequencies appropriately related to $1/T_0$ (which result in finite additive sine waves in the lag products). When (59) is violated, $\hat{S}_x$ in (60) contains additional terms[11] that are commonly unrecognized in probabilistic treatments [Gardner 1987a].

5. Sine Wave with Amplitude and Phase Modulation

Consider the time-series

$$x(t) = a(t)\cos[\omega_0 t + \phi(t)], \tag{61}$$

which can be reexpressed as

$$x(t) = c(t)\cos(\omega_0 t) - s(t)\sin(\omega_0 t), \tag{62}$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} c(t) &= a(t)\cos[\phi(t)] \\ s(t) &= a(t)\sin[\phi(t)]. \end{aligned} \tag{63}$$

It can be shown (exercise 7) that

$$\hat{R}_x(\tau) = \tfrac{1}{2}[\hat{R}_c(\tau) + \hat{R}_s(\tau)]\cos(\omega_0\tau) + \tfrac{1}{2}[\hat{R}_{cs}(\tau) - \hat{R}_{cs}(-\tau)]\sin(\omega_0\tau) \tag{64}$$

if and only if $\hat{R}_c$, $\hat{R}_s$, and $\hat{R}_{cs}$, where

$$\hat{R}_{cs}(\tau) \triangleq \lim_{T\to\infty} \frac{1}{T}\int_{-T/2}^{T/2} c\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right)s\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right) dt, \tag{65}$$

exist and

$$\lim_{T\to\infty} \frac{1}{T}\int_{-T/2}^{T/2} y\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right)z\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right)\cos(2\omega_0 t + \theta)\, dt = 0 \tag{66}$$

for all τ for (1) $y = z = c$ and $\theta = 0$, (2) $y = z = s$ and $\theta = 0$, and (3) $y = c$, $z = s$, and $\theta = \pi/2$, which holds if and only if c and s are free from certain forms of periodicity associated with the frequency f_0 (namely, finite additive sine

[11] These additional terms are studied in Part II.

waves in the lag products). When (66) is violated, $\hat{R}_x$ contains additional terms[12] that are commonly unrecognized in probabilistic treatments [Gardner 1987a]. For example, when $c(t)$ or $s(t)$ contain certain forms of periodicity (which can arise in common types of modulation), the fact that (64) is invalid reveals that *Rice's representation* for band-pass time-series [Appendix 3-1] exhibits properties that differ from those that are well known [Gardner 1987b]. It follows from (64) (exercise 7) that when (66) holds,

$$\hat{S}_x(f) = \tfrac{1}{4}[\hat{S}_c(f - f_0) + \hat{S}_c(f + f_0) + \hat{S}_s(f - f_0) + \hat{S}_s(f + f_0)] + \tfrac{1}{2}\,\mathrm{Im}\{\hat{S}_{cs}(f - f_0) - \hat{S}_{cs}(f + f_0)\}, \tag{67}$$

for which $\mathrm{Im}\{\cdot\}$ denotes *imaginary part*, and

$$\hat{S}_{cs}(\cdot) \triangleq F\{\hat{R}_{cs}(\cdot)\}. \tag{68}$$

The functions $\hat{R}_{cs}$ and $\hat{S}_{cs}$ are called the *limit cross correlation* and *limit cross spectrum*, respectively, and are studied in Chapter 7.

E. TIME-SAMPLING AND ALIASING

An idealized statistical spectrum for time-sampled data can be obtained by analogy with the procedure described in Section C—that is, by time-averaging the periodogram, and then letting the spectral resolution width, $\Delta f = 1/T$, become infinitesimal as follows:

$$\bar{S}_x(f) \triangleq \lim_{T\to\infty} \lim_{K\to\infty} \frac{1}{K} \sum_{n=-(K-1)/2}^{(K-1)/2} \bar{S}_{x_T}(t + nT_s, f), \tag{69a}$$

where $\bar{S}_{x_T}(t, f)$ is the time-variant periodogram for discrete-time data,

$$\bar{S}_{x_T}(t, f) \triangleq \frac{1}{N} |\bar{X}_T(t, f))|^2, \tag{69b}$$

and $\bar{X}_T(t, f)$ is the time-variant finite-time complex spectrum for discrete-time data, defined by (53) in Chapter 2. In (69) $N = 1 + T/T_s$ is the total number of time-samples transformed to obtain $\bar{X}_T(t, f)$, and $K = \Delta t/T$ is the number of periodograms averaged. Substitution of (61) in Chapter 2 for $\bar{X}_T(t, f)$ into (69) yields

$$\bar{S}_x(f) = \frac{1}{T_s} \lim_{T\to\infty} \lim_{K\to\infty} \frac{N-1}{N} \frac{1}{K} \sum_{n=-(K-1)/2}^{(K-1)/2} \left[\sum_{m=-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{1}{T} \left| X_T\left(t + nT_s, f - \frac{m}{T_s}\right) \right|^2 + \sum_{\substack{m,p=-\infty \\ m\neq p}}^{\infty} \frac{1}{T} X_T\left(t + nT_s, f - \frac{m}{T_s}\right) X_T^*\left(t + nT_s, f - \frac{p}{T_s}\right) \right]. \tag{70}$$

The limit of the second term (double sum with $m \neq p$) is an idealized spectral correlation and, as explained in Part II, is nonzero only for an underlying phenomenon that exhibits periodic time variation (such that the lag products contain finite additive sine waves). Thus, for a constant phenomenon only the first term

[12] These additional terms are studied in Part II.

remains, and this term is recognized as a sum of translated limit spectra

$$\bar{S}_x(f) = \frac{1}{T_s} \sum_{m=-\infty}^{\infty} \hat{S}_x\left(f - \frac{m}{T_s}\right). \tag{71}$$

This follows from the fact that for a constant phenomenon, the limit discrete-time (hopped) average and the limit continuous-time average of a periodogram yield the same result (see Part II). It can be seen from (71) that, analogous to the situation for the complex spectrum $X_T(t, f)$ described in Section H in Chapter 2, the limit spectrum of the continuous-time data $\hat{S}_x(f)$ can be recovered from the limit spectrum of the time-sampled data $\bar{S}_x(f)$ if the sampling rate exceeds twice the bandwidth B, where

$$\hat{S}_x(f) = 0, \qquad |f| \geqslant B. \tag{72}$$

Otherwise aliasing effects prevent recovery. (As shown in Part II, Chapter 11, another type of aliasing error that can result in additional terms in (71)—due to the second term in (70)—occurs for periodic phenomena [Gardner 1987a].)

Also analogous to results obtained in Section C, the limit spectrum for time-sampled data can also be obtained by frequency-smoothing the periodogram

$$\bar{S}_x(f) \triangleq \lim_{\Delta f \to 0} \lim_{T \to \infty} \frac{F_s}{\Delta f} \sum_{m=-(\Delta f/F_s - 1)/2}^{(\Delta f/F_s - 1)/2} \bar{S}_{x_T}(t, f + mF_s), \tag{73}$$

where $F_s = 1/NT_s$ is the frequency-sampling increment and $N = 1 + T/T_s$. Although a continuous-frequency average yields the same result (for a constant phenomenon), the discrete-frequency average used here is more appropriate when digital implementations are to be used for spectral analysis, as described in Chapter 6. In the inner limit, the frequency-smoothing window has fixed width Δf, and therefore the number $M = \Delta f/F_s = N\Delta f T_s$ of frequency-samples averaged in (73) approaches infinity as $N \to \infty$ and therefore as $T \to \infty$.

It follows from (71) that the limit spectrum for time-sampled data is given in terms of the limit autocorrelation for time-sampled data by the Fourier-series transform

$$\bar{S}_x(f) = \sum_{q=-\infty}^{\infty} \bar{R}_x(qT_s) e^{-i2\pi q T_s f}. \tag{74}$$

This can be verified as follows (exercise 11):

$$\sum_{q=-\infty}^{\infty} \bar{R}_x(qT_s) e^{-i2\pi q T_s f} = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \sum_{q=-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(\tau - qT_s) \hat{R}_x(\tau) e^{-i2\pi f \tau} \, d\tau \tag{75}$$

$$= \sum_{m=-\infty}^{\infty} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{1}{T_s} \delta\left(\nu - \frac{m}{T_s}\right) \hat{S}_x(f - \nu) \, d\nu \tag{76}$$

$$= \frac{1}{T_s} \sum_{m=-\infty}^{\infty} \hat{S}_x\left(f - \frac{m}{T_s}\right) = \bar{S}_x(f). \tag{77}$$

Equation (75) follows from the fact that

$$\bar{R}_x(qT_s) = \hat{R}_x(qT_s) \tag{78}$$

for a constant phenomenon, where $\tilde{R}_x(\tau)$ is the discrete-time limit autocorrelation

$$\tilde{R}_x(\tau) \triangleq \lim_{K\to\infty} \frac{1}{K} \sum_{n=-(K-1)/2}^{(K-1)/2} x(nT_s + \tau)x(nT_s), \tag{79}$$

and τ is an integer multiple of T_s. As explained in Part II, if the phenomenon exhibits periodic time variation (such that the lag products contain finite additive sine waves) with frequencies appropriately related to the sampling increment T_s, then the right member of (78) contains additional terms corresponding to the second term in (70).

F. TIME-SERIES MODELS

Time-series models play a fundamental role in the class of spectrum estimation techniques called *parametric methods*, which are described in Chapter 9. Three particularly important discrete-time models are the moving average model, the autoregressive model, and their combination, the autoregressive moving average model. The limit spectra for these three models are derived in this section. Let us begin with the counterpart for discrete time,

$$\tilde{S}_y(f) = |\tilde{H}(f)|^2 \tilde{S}_x(f), \tag{80}$$

of the limit-spectrum relation (28) for filters

$$y(n) = h(n) \otimes x(n). \tag{81}$$

For convenience, the sampling increment is taken to be unity, $T_s = 1$. Analogous to the definition (5) in Chapter 1 of continuous-time convolution, the discrete-time convolution (81) is defined by

$$y(n) = x(n) \otimes h(n) \triangleq \sum_{m=-\infty}^{\infty} h(n - m)x(m) \tag{82a}$$

$$= \sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} h(k)x(n - k). \tag{82b}$$

The transfer function $\tilde{H}(f)$ of the filter is given by the Fourier-series transform of the discrete-impulse response $h(n)$,

$$\tilde{H}(f) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} h(n)e^{-i2\pi nf}. \tag{83}$$

The relation (80) can be derived by Fourier-series transformation of the limit-autocorrelation relation

$$\tilde{R}_y(q) = \tilde{R}_x(q) \otimes \tilde{r}_h(q), \tag{84}$$

and application of the convolution theorem for the Fourier-series transform, for example,

$$\sum_{q=-\infty}^{\infty} \tilde{r}_h(q)e^{-i2\pi qf} = |\tilde{H}(f)|^2, \tag{85}$$

where $\bar{r}_h$ is the discrete-time finite autocorrelation sequence

$$\bar{r}_h(q) = h(q) \otimes h(-q). \tag{86}$$

The relation (84) can be derived by substitution of (82b) into (79) (with x replaced by y) (exercise 12).

1. The Moving Average Model

Consider the time-series model

$$y(n) = b_0x(n) + b_1x(n-1) + \cdots + b_Lx(n-L), \tag{87}$$

in which the excitation $x(n)$ is purely random (white noise),

$$\tilde{R}_x(q) = N_0\delta_q, \tag{88}$$

where δ_q is the discrete impulse (Kronecker delta) defined by

$$\delta_q \triangleq \begin{cases} 1, & q = 0 \\ 0, & q \neq 0. \end{cases} \tag{89}$$

It is a simple matter (exercise 13) to show that the transfer function for the linear transformation described by (87) is

$$\tilde{H}(f) = b_0 + b_1e^{-i2\pi f} + b_2(e^{-i2\pi f})^2 + \cdots + b_L(e^{-i2\pi f})^L. \tag{90}$$

Also, it easily follows from (74) and (88) that the limit spectrum of the excitation is

$$\tilde{S}_x(f) = N_0. \tag{91}$$

Thus, the limit-spectrum relation (80), together with (90) and (91), yields the result

$$\tilde{S}_y(f) = N_0 \left| \sum_{q=0}^{L} b_q(e^{-i2\pi f})^q \right|^2. \tag{92}$$

Since the current value of the response $y(n)$ is simply a moving average (sliding average) of the current and L past values of the excitation, with averaging coefficients $b_0, b_1, b_2, \ldots, b_L$, then (92) is called the limit spectrum of a *moving average (MA) model of order L*. This terminology was originally introduced in [Wold 1938].

2. The Autoregressive Model

Consider the time-series model

$$y(n) = -a_1y(n-1) - a_2y(n-2) - \cdots - a_My(n-M) + x(n), \tag{93}$$

in which the excitation is white noise (88). It is easily shown (exercise 13) that the transfer function for the linear time-invariant transformation described by (93) is

$$\tilde{H}(f) = \frac{1}{1 + a_1e^{-i2\pi f} + a_2(e^{-i2\pi f})^2 + \cdots + a_M(e^{-i2\pi f})^M}. \tag{94}$$

Thus, (80), (91), and (94) yield the result

$$\tilde{S}_y(f) = \frac{N_0}{\left|1 + \sum_{p=1}^{M} a_p(e^{-i2\pi f})^p\right|^2}. \tag{95}$$

Since the response $y(n)$ regresses on itself in the sense that its current value is a linear combination of its past M values plus the current excitation, then (95) is called the limit-spectrum of an *autoregressive* (AR) *model of order M*. This terminology was originally introduced in [Wold 1938].

3. The ARMA Model

Consider a model that is a combination of the MA and AR models (87) and (93),

$$\begin{aligned} y(n) = &-a_1y(n-1) - a_2y(n-2) - \cdots - a_My(n-M) \\ &+ b_0x(n) + b_1x(n-1) + b_2x(n-2) + \cdots + b_Lx(n-L), \end{aligned} \tag{96}$$

in which the excitation $x(n)$ is white noise, (88). It is easily shown (exercise 13) that the transfer function for the linear time-invariant transformation described by (96) is

$$\tilde{H}(f) = \frac{\sum_{q=0}^{L} b_q(e^{-i2\pi f})^q}{1 + \sum_{p=1}^{M} a_p(e^{-i2\pi f})^p}, \tag{97}$$

from which the formula for the limit spectrum of an ARMA model of order (M, L) follows directly.

As explained in Chapter 9, MA and AR models arise naturally from certain approaches to measurement of statistical spectra. Because of the particular importance of the AR model, it is studied in detail in Chapter 9. The continuous-time counterparts of these discrete-time models are studied in exercise 9.

G. STATISTICAL INFERENCE

In the spectral analysis problem considered in Section A, the spectral features of interest as described by $|H(f)|$ can be measured only approximately with a *finite* amount, Δt, of data, as indicated by approximation (5). But as shown in subsequent sections, $|H(f)|$ can be determined exactly in the abstract limit as $\Delta t \to \infty$, as indicated by (28) and (38). This reveals that exact description of the spectral characteristics of a phenomenon requires an abstract mathematical model for the data, namely, the limit spectrum. We have thus arrived at the point of view of *statistical inference*, which is that an abstract mathematical model is the desired result that can be only approximately discovered (inferred) with the use of a finite amount of data. From the point of view of statistical inference, the object of statistical spectral analysis is *spectrum estimation*, by

which is meant estimation of the limit spectrum.[13] Succinctly stated, the classical spectrum estimation design problem is: given a finite amount[14] Δt of data, determine the *best* value of spectral resolution Δf to obtain the *best* estimate of $\hat{S}_x$. This involves a trade-off between maximizing spectral resolution, which corresponds to minimizing Δf, and minimizing the *degree of randomness* or *variability* (described in Chapter 5), which in turn corresponds to maximizing Δf in order to maximize the product $\Delta t \Delta f$.

The statistical-inference or spectrum-estimation interpretation given here to spectral analysis is unconventional in that it does not rely on probabilistic concepts. However, it can be put into a probabilistic framework by reinterpreting infinite time averages as ensemble averages (expectations) via H.O.A. Wold's isomorphism (defined in Chapter 1, Section B). This is done in Chapter 5, where the notion of degree of randomness is quantified in terms of a coefficient of variation that is shown to be inversely proportional to the resolution product $\Delta t \Delta f$.

As a matter of fact, the classical spectrum estimation design problem is more involved than suggested by the preceding succinct statement, because the shape as well as the width Δf of the effective spectral window should be optimized in order to minimize the undesirable *spectral leakage effect*. This effect is described in the next chapter, and the design problem that simultaneously takes into account resolution, leakage, and degree of randomness is explained in Chapters 5 and 6.

Before proceeding, a few words about the notion of degree of randomness will be helpful to tide us over until the subject is taken up in Chapter 5. It has been shown in this chapter that randomly fluctuating (in both t and f) statistical spectra, such as $S_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, f)_{\Delta f}$ and $S_{x_{1/\Delta f}}(t, f)_{\Delta t}$, converge in the limit ($\Delta t \to \infty$, $\Delta f \to 0$) to the nonrandom limit spectrum $\hat{S}_x(f)$ if the limit autocorrelation $\hat{R}_x(\tau)$ exists, which is necessary for a constant phenomenon. The degree of randomness or variability of a statistical spectrum can be interpreted as the degree to which the statistical spectrum varies from one point in time to another. If the underlying phenomenon is indeed constant, as hypothesized in Part I, then fluctuation with time of the statistical spectrum must be attributed to random effects. It is shown in Chapter 5 that the time-averaged squared difference between statistical spectra measured at two different times separated by an amount T_0, for example, is approximately inversely proportional to the resolution product $\Delta t \Delta f$ (for sufficiently small Δf and sufficiently large $\Delta t \Delta f$) for all $T_0 > \Delta t$. Also, the time-averaged squared difference between the statistical spectrum and the nonrandom limit

[13] In the literature, the terms *spectrum analysis* and *spectral estimation* are often used in place of the terms *spectral analysis* and *spectrum estimation*, which are used in this book. The latter two terms are more appropriate since we are not concerned with analysis of a spectrum but rather with analysis of data into spectral components, and we are not concerned with estimation using spectral methods but rather with estimation of a spectrum. Nevertheless, because of the long-standing tradition of referring to spectral analysis instruments as *spectrum analyzers*, this term is used in this book in place of the term *spectral analyzers*.

[14] The actual amount of data needed to average a periodogram of length $T = 1/\Delta f$ over an interval of length Δt is $\Delta t + 1/\Delta f$, but this is closely approximated by Δt for $\Delta t \Delta f >> 1$.

spectrum behaves in the same way. Thus, this temporal mean-square measure of the degree of randomness of a statistical spectrum reveals that the degree of randomness is made low (or the *reliability* is made high) by making the resolution product $\Delta t \Delta f$ large.

H. SUMMARY

In Section A, the problem of measuring the parameters of a resonance phenomenon from the randomly resonant response to random excitation is considered in order to motivate consideration of averaging methods for reducing random effects. It is explained that from the point of view adopted here, we focus attention on the phenomenon that gives rise to random data rather than on the data itself, and we apply averaging methods to the nonstatistical spectrum (periodogram) of the data to obtain a statistical spectrum in which the random effects in the data that mask the spectral influences from the phenomenon are reduced. In Section B, a profound fundamental result establishing an equivalence between time-smoothed and frequency-smoothed periodograms is developed. This equivalence reveals that the periodogram of the data-tapering window in a temporally smoothed periodogram of the tapered data is an effective spectral smoothing window in an equivalent spectrally smoothed periodogram of the untapered data. Then in Section C, the idealized limiting form of the statistical spectrum with $\Delta t \to \infty$ and $\Delta f \to 0$ (in this order) is shown to be simply the Fourier transform of the limit autocorrelation. This characterization of the *limit spectrum*, called the *Wiener relation*, is used to derive the limit-spectrum relation for filters (28), which in turn is used to establish the interpretation of the limit spectrum as a spectral density of time-averaged power.

In Section C, several signal and noise models are introduced, and their limit spectra are calculated. Then in Section D, the definition of the limit spectrum is adapted to discrete-time data by simply replacing the Fourier transform with the Fourier-series transform introduced in Section H of Chapter 2. A spectral aliasing formula relating the limit spectra of a waveform and its time-samples is derived. In Section F, three basic time-series models for discrete-time data are introduced. These are the MA, AR, and ARMA models. Formulas for the limit spectra for these models are derived in terms of the parameters of the models.

Finally in Section G, it is pointed out that the arguments presented in the beginning of this chapter have led us to the point of view of statistical inference, which is that an abstract mathematical model—the limit spectrum in this case—is the desired result that can be only approximately discovered (inferred) with the use of a finite amount of data. Thus statistical spectral analysis is typically called *spectrum estimation*. This section ends with a brief discussion of the dependence of the degree of randomness or variability of a statistical spectrum on the resolution product $\Delta t \Delta f$.

In Appendix 3-1, *Rice's representation* is derived. This provides a means for representing band-pass waveforms in terms of low-pass waveforms. Then the limit spectra for the low-pass representors are characterized in terms of the

limit spectrum of the band-pass waveform, and vice versa. In Appendix 3-2, the problem of detecting the presence of a random signal in additive random noise is considered, and the central role played by the periodogram and the limit spectrum is revealed.

EXERCISES

1. **(a)** In order to accomplish the verification of (20)–(22) for the limit spectrum, (13) is reexpressed as

$$S_{x_T}(t, f)_{\Delta t} = \int_{-T_*}^{T_*} [R_{x_T}(t, \tau) \otimes u_{\Delta t}(t)] e^{-i2\pi f\tau}\, d\tau. \tag{98}$$

Use the result of exercise 10, Chapter 2, and an argument parallel to that in exercise 8, Chapter 2, to argue that for any arbitrarily small positive ϵ_1, there exists a Δt_1 (which depends on t) such that

$$R_{x_T}(t, \tau) \otimes u_{\Delta t}(t) = \frac{1}{T} R_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, \tau) r_a(\tau) + \epsilon(t, \tau) \tag{99a}$$

for all $\Delta t \geq \Delta t_1$, where

$$|\epsilon(t, \tau)| \leq \epsilon_1, \qquad |\tau| \leq T_*. \tag{99b}$$

Then use (98)–(99) and (16) to show (using $T = 1/\Delta f$) that

$$|S_{x_{1/\Delta f}}(t, f)_{\Delta t} - S_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, f) \otimes [\Delta f |A_{\Delta f}(f)|^2]| \leq 2T_* \epsilon_1 \tag{100}$$

for all f and all $\Delta t \geq \Delta t_1$, which reveals that this difference between a temporally smoothed spectrum and a spectrally smoothed spectrum can be made as small as desired for each t by choosing Δt sufficiently large.

(b) To proceed with the verification of (20)–(22) consider (16), which is repeated here:

$$S_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, f) \otimes [\Delta f |A_{\Delta f}(f)|^2] = \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T_*}^{T_*} R_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, \tau) r_a(\tau) e^{-i2\pi f\tau}\, d\tau. \tag{101}$$

Use an argument parallel to that in exercise 8, Chapter 2, to argue that for any arbitrarily small positive ϵ_2, there exists a Δt_2 (which depends on t) such that

$$R_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, \tau) = \hat{R}_x(\tau) + \epsilon(t, \tau) \tag{102a}$$

for all $\Delta t \geq \Delta t_2$, where

$$|\epsilon(t, \tau)| \leq \epsilon_2, \qquad |\tau| \leq T_*. \tag{102b}$$

Use (101)–(102) to show that

$$[S_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, f) \otimes [\Delta f |A_{\Delta f}(f)|^2] - \hat{S}_x(f) \otimes [\Delta f |A_{\Delta f}(f)|^2]| \leq 2\epsilon_2 \Delta f T_* r_a(0) \tag{103}$$

for all f and all $\Delta t \geq \Delta t_2$, which reveals that this difference between a spectrally smoothed statistical spectrum and a spectrally smoothed limit spectrum can be made as small as desired for each t by choosing Δt sufficiently large. Hence, substitution of (17) into (103) yields

$$\lim_{\Delta t \to \infty} S_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, f)_{\Delta f} = \hat{S}_x(f) \otimes [\Delta f |A_{\Delta f}(f)|^2] \tag{104}$$

(since we can let $\epsilon_2 \to 0$ by letting $\Delta t \to \infty$), which establishes part of (22).

(c) To complete the verification of (20)–(22), use the results of (a) and (b) to prove that for any arbitrarily small ϵ, there exists a Δt_3 (which depends on t) such that

$$|S_{x_{1/\Delta f}}(t,f)_{\Delta t} - \hat{S}_x(f) \otimes [\Delta f |A_{\Delta f}(f)|^2]| < \epsilon \tag{105}$$

for all f and all $\Delta t \geq \Delta t_3$. *Hint:* Choose any ϵ_1 and ϵ_2 such that $\epsilon = 2T_*\epsilon_1 + 2\epsilon_2 \Delta f T_* r_a(0)$, choose $\Delta t_3 = \max\{\Delta t_1, \Delta t_2\}$, and use the fact that if $|a - b| < \delta_1$ and $|b - c| < \delta_2$, then $|a - c| < \delta_1 + \delta_2$. It follows from (105) that

$$\lim_{\Delta t \to \infty} S_{x_{1/\Delta f}}(t,f)_{\Delta t} = \hat{S}_x(f) \otimes [\Delta f |A_{\Delta f}(f)|^2], \tag{106}$$

which establishes the other part of (22).

2. Norbert Wiener [Wiener 1930, p. 134] has shown that

$$\text{l.i.m.}_{\Delta t \to \infty} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} R_{x_{\Delta t}}(t,\tau) w_{1/\Delta f}(\tau) e^{-i2\pi f\tau}\, d\tau = \text{l.i.m.}_{T_* \to \infty} \int_{-T_*}^{T_*} \hat{R}_x(\tau) w_{1/\Delta f}(\tau) e^{-i2\pi f\tau}\, d\tau, \tag{107}$$

where $w_{1/\Delta f}$ is the sinc window and l.i.m. denotes *limit in mean square*, which means that the integrals (over f) of the squares of the differences between the sequence of functions (of f) and the limit function converge to zero. Use (107) and the identity

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \hat{R}_x(\tau) w_{1/\Delta f}(\tau) e^{-i2\pi f\tau}\, d\tau \equiv \text{l.i.m.}_{T_* \to \infty} \int_{-T_*}^{T_*} \hat{R}_x(\tau) w_{1/\Delta f}(\tau) e^{-i2\pi f\tau}\, d\tau$$

to verify that

$$\text{l.i.m.}_{\Delta t \to \infty} S_{x_{\Delta t}}(t,f)_{\Delta f} = \hat{S}_x(f) \otimes u_{\Delta f}(f), \tag{108}$$

where

$$S_{x_{\Delta t}}(t,f)_{\Delta f} \triangleq S_{x_{\Delta t}}(t,f) \otimes u_{\Delta f}(f).$$

Use result (108) together with

$$\lim_{\Delta f \to 0} u_{\Delta f}(f) = \delta(f) \tag{109}$$

to prove that

$$\lim_{\Delta f \to 0} \text{l.i.m.}_{\Delta t \to \infty} S_{x_{\Delta t}}(t,f)_{\Delta f} = \hat{S}_x(f). \tag{110}$$

(The difference between this result, (108), and (104) is that the proof of (104) requires a correlation-tapering window with finite support, unlike $w_{1/\Delta f}$ in (107)–(108). Evidently, when the support is not finite only the weaker type of convergence, (108) (rather than (104)), can be established.)

3. Use (34) to derive (36) for the time-averaged power in a spectral band.

4. (a) Use (44), (45), and (47) to verify (46) for the limit autocorrelation of a sine wave in noise.
   (b) Verify (48).
   (c) Derive the spectral-line formula (49) from (46) and (48).

5. (a) Use (50), (51), and (53) to verify formula (52) for the limit autocorrelation of an amplitude-modulated sine wave. *Hint:* Use the trigonometric identity

$$\cos(\omega_0 t_1)\cos(\omega_0 t_2) = \tfrac{1}{2}\cos[\omega_0(t_1 - t_2)] + \tfrac{1}{2}\cos[\omega_0(t_1 + t_2)]. \tag{111}$$

   (b) Derive the limit spectrum (54) from (48) and (52).
   (c) What happens to the average power in $n(t)$ when it is multiplied by $\cos(\omega_0 t + \phi)$?

6. **(a)** Derive formula (56) for the limit autocorrelation of the pulse-amplitude modulated pulse train. *Hint:* For the sequence of values of T that approach infinity in the definition

$$\hat{R}_x(\tau) = \lim_{T\to\infty} \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right) x\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right) dt$$

choose

$$T = (2M + 1)T_0$$

with $M = 1, 2, 3 \ldots$, and then decompose the integral over the interval $[-T/2, T/2]$ into the sum of integrals over the $2M + 1$ intervals $[(k - \frac{1}{2})T_0, (k + \frac{1}{2})T_0]$, $k = -M, -M + 1, \ldots, M - 1, M$, to obtain

$$\hat{R}_x(\tau) = \lim_{M\to\infty} \frac{1}{T_0} \frac{1}{2M + 1} \sum_{k=-M}^{M} \int_{-T_0/2}^{T_0/2} x\left(t + kT_0 + \frac{\tau}{2}\right) x\left(t + kT_0 - \frac{\tau}{2}\right) dt. \tag{112}$$

Then substitute

$$x\left(t + kT_0 + \frac{\tau}{2}\right) x\left(t + kT_0 - \frac{\tau}{2}\right)$$
$$= \sum_{j=-\infty}^{\infty} \sum_{j'=-\infty}^{\infty} a(jT_0)a(j'T_0)p\left[t + \frac{\tau}{2} - (j - k)T_0\right]p\left[t - \frac{\tau}{2} - (j' - k)T_0\right]$$

into (112), and introduce the change of variables

$$j - k = r \quad \text{and} \quad j' - k = s,$$

to obtain

$$\hat{R}_x(\tau) = \sum_{r=-\infty}^{\infty} \sum_{s=-\infty}^{\infty} \lim_{M\to\infty} \frac{1}{T_0} \frac{1}{2M + 1} \sum_{j'=-M-s}^{M-s} a[(j' + r - s)T_0]a(j'T_0)$$
$$\times \int_{-T_0/2}^{T_0/2} p\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2} - rT_0\right)p\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2} - sT_0\right) dt. \tag{113}$$

The limit $M \to \infty$ can now be evaluated using definition (57). Finally, the remaining double sum in r and s and integral over $[-T_0/2, T_0/2]$ can be converted to a single sum in q and an integral over $(-\infty, \infty)$ by introducing the change of variables $r - s = q$ and $t' = t - rT_0$.

(b) Verify the *Poisson sum formula*

$$\sum_{p=-\infty}^{\infty} g(pT)e^{-i2\pi pTf} = \frac{1}{T} \sum_{q=-\infty}^{\infty} G\left(f - \frac{q}{T}\right) \tag{114}$$

for any Fourier transformable function g and any sampling increment T. Do this by recognizing the periodicity of this function of f and representing the right member by its Fourier series (recall (22a) and (22b) in Appendix 1-1.)

(c) Use the Poisson sum formula and (59) to derive the limit spectrum (60) from the limit autocorrelation (56).

7. **(a)** Use (66) to verify formula (64) for the limit autocorrelation of an amplitude-and-phase-modulated sine wave. *Hint:* Use the trigonometric identity in exercise 5 together with the identities

$$\sin(\omega_0 t_1)\sin(\omega_0 t_2) = \tfrac{1}{2}\cos[\omega_0(t_1 - t_2)] - \tfrac{1}{2}\cos[\omega_0(t_1 + t_2)]$$
$$\cos(\omega_0 t_1)\sin(\omega_0 t_2) = \tfrac{1}{2}\sin[\omega_0(t_1 - t_2)] + \tfrac{1}{2}\sin[\omega_0(t_1 + t_2)]. \tag{115}$$

(b) Let $\phi(t) = \phi$, a constant, and show that

$$\hat{R}_c(\tau) = \cos^2(\phi)\hat{R}_a(\tau)$$

$$\hat{R}_s(\tau) = \sin^2(\phi)\hat{R}_a(\tau)$$

$$\hat{R}_{cs}(\tau) = \cos(\phi)\sin(\phi)\hat{R}_a(\tau).$$

Use this result to verify that (64) reduces to

$$\hat{R}_x(\tau) = \tfrac{1}{2}\hat{R}_a(\tau)\cos(\omega_0\tau)$$

when there is no phase modulation.

(c) Derive the limit spectrum (67) from the limit autocorrelation (64).

8. *First-order model:* Consider the time-series model

$$x(t) + (1/\alpha)\frac{dx(t)}{dt} = z(t), \tag{116}$$

where $z(t)$ is white noise.

(a) Verify that the impulse-response function of the linear time-invariant transformation of $z(t)$ to $x(t)$ is

$$h(t) = \begin{cases} \alpha e^{-\alpha t}, & t \geqslant 0 \\ 0, & t < 0. \end{cases} \tag{117}$$

Hint: $dh(t)/dt = \alpha\delta(t) - \alpha^2 e^{-\alpha t}$ for $t \geqslant 0$.

(b) Verify that the finite autocorrelation for h is

$$r_h(\tau) = \frac{\alpha}{2}e^{-\alpha|\tau|}. \tag{118}$$

(c) Use relation (31) to determine the limit autocorrelation for $x(t)$.

(d) Use relation (28) to show that the limit spectrum for $x(t)$ is

$$\hat{S}_x(f) = \frac{\alpha^2}{\alpha^2 + (2\pi f)^2}, \tag{119}$$

which is called the *Lorenzian spectrum.*

9. *Pole-zero models:*

(a) Consider the time-series model for $x(t)$

$$x(t) + a_1\frac{dx(t)}{dt} + a_2\frac{d^2x(t)}{dt^2} + \cdots + a_M\frac{d^Mx(t)}{dt^M} = z(t), \tag{120}$$

for which $z(t)$ is white noise. It can be shown that $x(t)$ is an LTI transformation of $z(t)$. Determine the limit spectrum for $x(t)$. (120) is called an *all-pole model* because the transfer function (and $\hat{S}_x(f)$) is the reciprocal of a polynomial. This is the continuous-time counterpart of the discrete-time AR model (Section F). *Hint:* Determine the transfer function for this LTI transformation by the method illustrated in Appendix 1-1 (namely, let $z(t) = e^{i2\pi ft}$ and $x(t) = H(f)e^{i2\pi ft}$), and then use the limit spectrum relation (28).

(b) Consider the time-series model for $x(t)$,

$$x(t) = z(t) + b_1\frac{dz(t)}{dt} + b_2\frac{d^2z(t)}{dt^2} + \cdots + b_L\frac{d^Lz(t)}{dt^L}, \tag{121}$$

for which $z(t)$ is white noise. It can be shown that $x(t)$ is an LTI transformation of $z(t)$. Determine the limit spectrum for $x(t)$. (121) is called an *all-zero model*

because the transfer function (and $\hat{S}_x(f)$) is a polynomial. This is the continuous-time counterpart of the MA model.

(c) Show that the time-series $x(t)$ modeled by

$$x(t) + a_1\frac{dx(t)}{dt} + \cdots + a_M\frac{d^M x(t)}{dt^M} = z(t) + b_1\frac{dz(t)}{dt} + \cdots + b_L\frac{d^L z(t)}{dt^L}, \tag{122}$$

for which $z(t)$ is white noise, has a limit spectrum that is a rational function of f. (122) is called a *pole-zero model*. This is the continuous-time counterpart of the ARMA model.

(d) Determine an explicit pole-zero model (values of a's and b's in (122)) for a time-series with the limit spectrum

$$\hat{S}_x(f) = \frac{4 + (2\pi f)^2}{9 + (2\pi f)^2}.$$

Hint: $|\alpha + i2\pi f|^2 = \alpha^2 + (2\pi f)^2$ for real α.

(e) Determine the limit autocorrelation for the time-series model obtained in (d). *Hint:* Express $\hat{S}_x$ as a sum of two fractions, and use the result of exercise 8 and the fact that multiplication by $(2\pi f)^2$ corresponds to $-d^2/d\tau^2$.

10. *Resonance:* To illustrate an all-pole system of common interest, consider the single-degree-of-freedom mechanical system consisting of a mass, spring, and dashpot, as shown in Figure 3-5. Assume that the mass is subject to a force excitation $x(t)$, producing a displacement response $y(t)$. From Newton's laws, the differential equation of motion describing the response of this system is given by

$$m\frac{d^2y(t)}{dt^2} + c\frac{dy(t)}{dt} + ky(t) = x(t). \tag{123}$$

(a) Show that the transfer function of the system is given by

$$H(f) = \frac{1/k}{1 - (f/f_n)^2 + i2\xi f/f_n}, \tag{124a}$$

where

$$\xi \triangleq \frac{c}{2\sqrt{km}} \tag{124b}$$

$$f_n \triangleq \frac{1}{2\pi}\sqrt{\frac{k}{m}}. \tag{124c}$$

The parameter ξ in (124b) is called the *damping ratio* of the system and describes the system damping as a fractional portion of critical damping c_c. If the mass is displaced from its neutral position and released, c_c is that value of damping for which the mass will just return with the greatest speed to its neutral position without oscillation; for the system in Figure 3-5, $c_c = 2\sqrt{km}$. The parameter f_n in (124c) is called the *undamped natural frequency* of the system. If the system had no damping and the mass were displaced from its neutral position and released, the system would perpetually oscillate at the frequency f_n. The magnitude of the transfer function is given by

$$|H(f)| = \frac{1/k}{\sqrt{[1 - (f/f_n)^2]^2 + (2\xi f/f_n)^2}}. \tag{125}$$

Graphs of both this magnitude and the phase of $H(f)$ for various values of ξ are

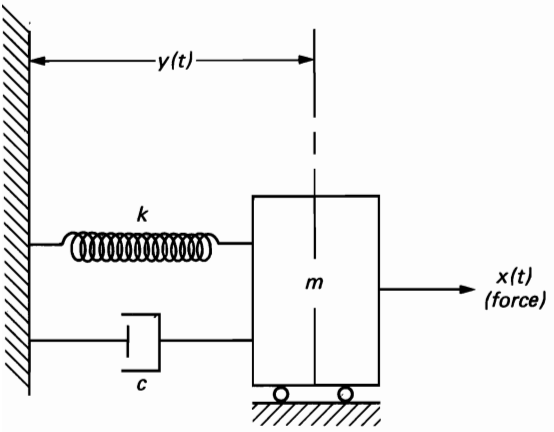


Figure 3-5 A single-degree-of-freedom mechanical system.

shown in Figure 3-6. Observe that there is a peak at some frequency less than f_n for all cases where $\xi \leq 1/\sqrt{2}$. The frequency at which this peak occurs is called the *resonance frequency* of the system, and it approaches f_n as ξ decreases.

(b) Show (by minimizing the denominator of $|H(f)|$) that the resonance frequency, denoted by f_0, is given by

$$f_0 = f_n\sqrt{1 - 2\xi^2}, \qquad \xi^2 \leq \tfrac{1}{2}, \tag{126}$$

and that the peak value, which occurs at the resonance frequency, is given by

$$|H(f_0)| = \frac{1/k}{2\xi\sqrt{1 - \xi^2}}, \qquad \xi^2 \leq \tfrac{1}{2}. \tag{127}$$

(c) Some physical systems have very small values of damping such that $\xi << 1$. For example, mechanical structures often have damping ratios of $\xi < 0.05$. Hence it is common in practice to find physical systems with transfer functions that display very sharp peaks. Such systems in effect appear to be narrow band-pass filters, and their bandwidth is commonly measured in terms of the *half-power point bandwidth*, defined by

$$B = f_2 - f_1, \quad \text{where} \quad |H(f_1)|^2 = |H(f_2)|^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}|H(f_0)|^2. \tag{128}$$

Show that for the case where the damping ratio is relatively small, the bandwidth is given by

$$B \cong 2\xi f_0. \tag{129}$$

(d) Verify that the impulse-response function of this system (for $\xi < 1$) is given by

$$h(\tau) = Ae^{-2\pi f_n \xi \tau}\sin(2\pi f_d \tau), \qquad \tau > 0, \tag{130a}$$

where

$$f_d = f_n\sqrt{1 - \xi^2} = \textit{damped natural frequency} \tag{130b}$$

$$A = \frac{2\pi f_n^2}{kf_d} = \frac{2\pi f_n}{k\sqrt{1 - \xi^2}}. \tag{130c}$$

It follows from (b) and (d) that the autocorrelation and spectral density functions

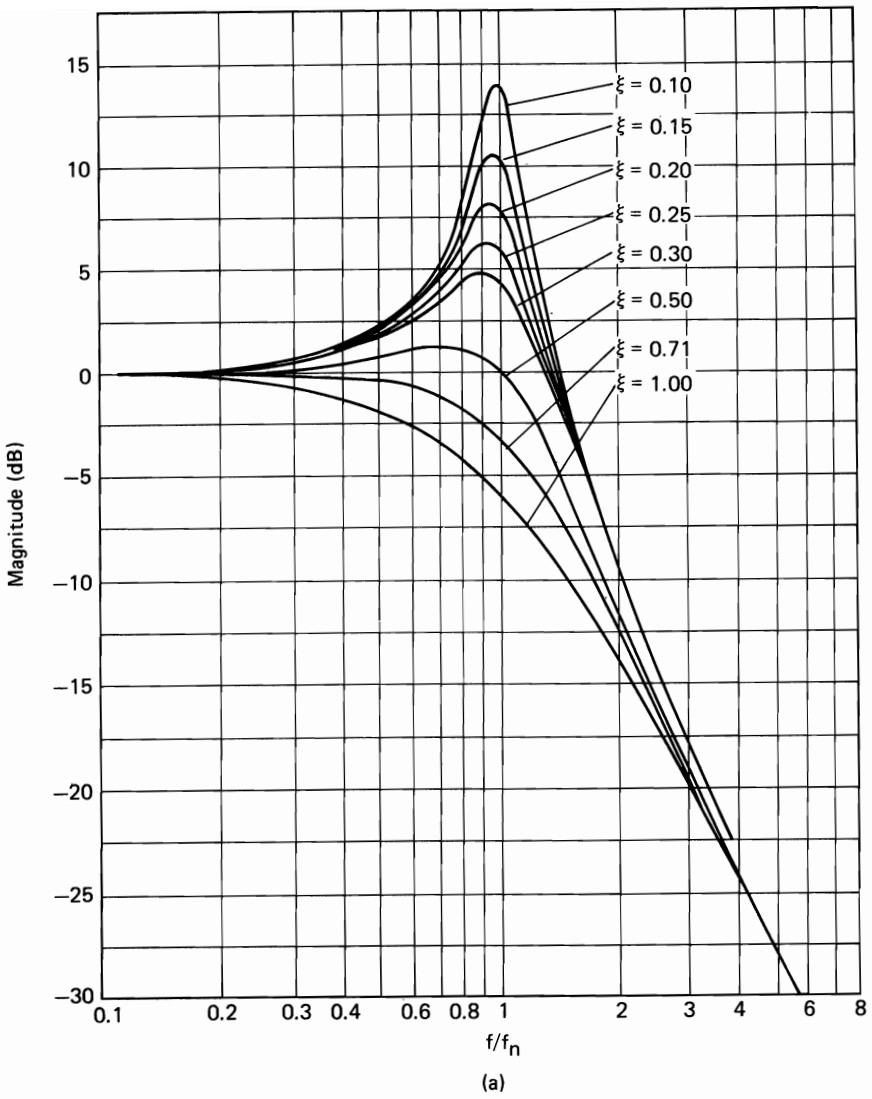


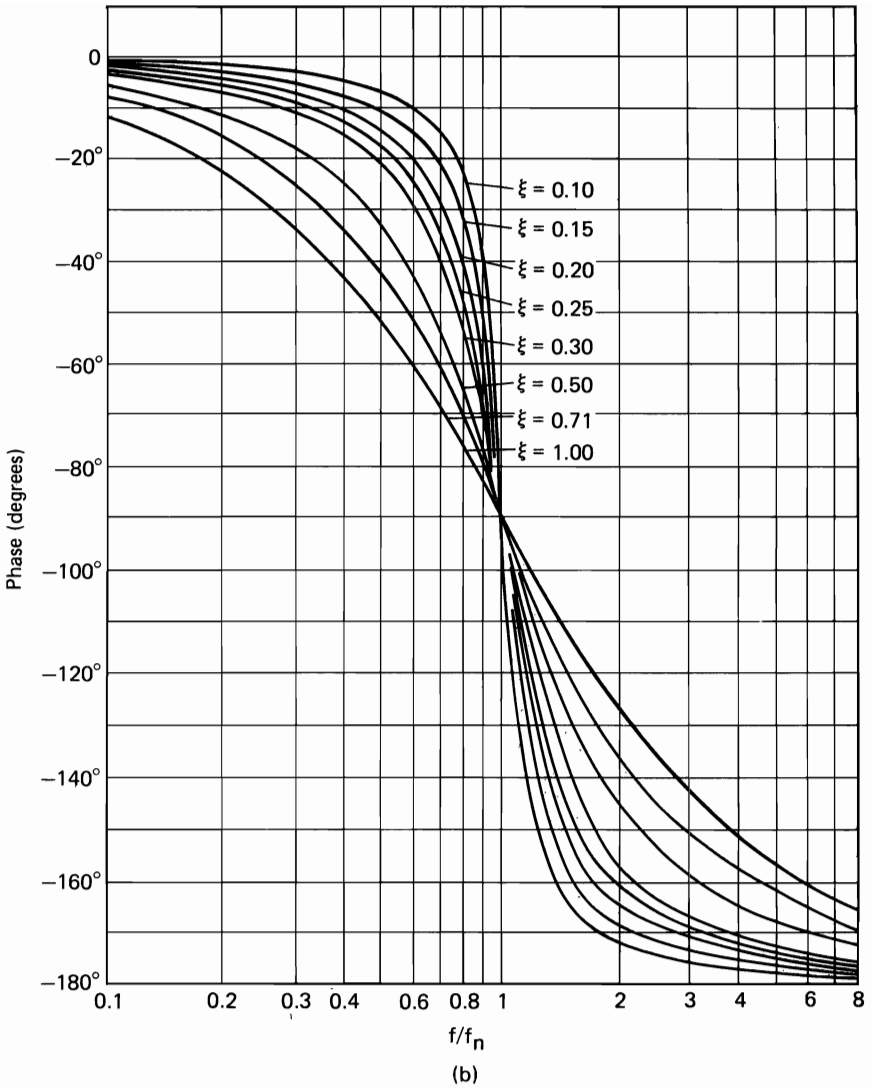
Figure 3-6 Transfer function (124) of the single-degree-of-freedom system shown in Figure 3-5. (a) Magnitude.

of the system response $y(t)$ are given by

$$\hat{R}_y(\tau) = A^2 \int_0^\infty \int_0^\infty e^{-2\pi f_n \xi(\alpha+\beta)} \sin(2\pi f_d \alpha)\sin(2\pi f_d \beta)\hat{R}_x(\tau + \alpha - \beta)d\alpha\, d\beta, \tag{131}$$

$$\hat{S}_y(f) = \frac{\hat{S}_x(f)/k^2}{[1 - (f/f_n)^2]^2 + (2\xi f/f_n)^2}. \tag{132}$$

(e) To illustrate a specific case, assume that the input $x(t)$ is white noise, and show



(b)

Figure 3-6 (continued) (b) Phase.

that

$$\hat{R}_y(\tau) = \frac{N_0 \pi f_n e^{-2\pi f_n \xi |\tau|}}{2\xi k^2} \left[\cos(2\pi f_d \tau) + \frac{\xi}{\sqrt{1-\xi^2}} \sin(2\pi f_d |\tau|) \right] \tag{133}$$

$$\cong \frac{N_0 \pi f_n e^{-2\pi f_n \xi |\tau|}}{2\xi k^2} \cos(2\pi f_n \tau), \qquad \text{for } \xi << 1, \tag{134}$$

$$\hat{S}_y(f) = \frac{N_0/k^2}{[1 - (f/f_n)^2]^2 + (2\xi f/f_n)^2}. \tag{135}$$

For the common situation where $\xi << 1$, (133)–(135) provide reasonably accurate

approximations of the system response as long as $\hat{S}_x(f) \cong N_0$ over the frequency range $(1 - 6\xi)f_n < f < (1 + 6\xi)f_n$ and $\hat{S}_x(f)$ decays outside this range.

(f) As an electrical analog of the mechanical system shown in Figure 3-5, consider the resistive-inductive-capacitive circuit shown in Figure 3-7. From Kirchhoff's laws the differential equation describing the voltage across the capacitor is given by

$$LC\frac{d^2y(t)}{dt^2} + RC\frac{dy(t)}{dt} + y(t) = x(t). \tag{136}$$

Determine the parameters k, f_n, f_0, f_d, ξ, and B in terms of R, L, and C. Then relate the quality factor

$$Q \triangleq \frac{1}{R}\sqrt{\frac{L}{C}} \tag{137}$$

to the damping ratio (124b).

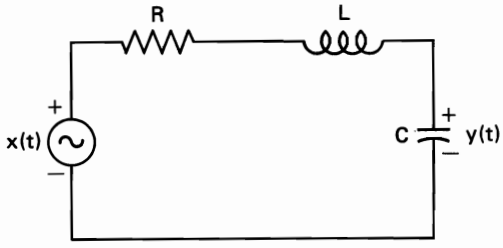


Figure 3-7 Electrical analog of mechanical system shown in Figure 3-5.

(g) An especially graphic example of the utility of statistical spectral analysis in connection with resonant systems is given by the problem of designing the suspension of vehicles such as automobiles, motorcycles, and aircraft (takeoff and landing gear) to minimize the discomfort and destructive effects, such as fatigue, of random vibrations induced by rough road surface. A simplified model of a suspension system for a single wheel is a single-degree-of-freedom system consisting of the mass of the vehicle, a spring, and a shock absorber (dashpot) and is therefore characterized by the model developed in this exercise. By characterizing the random excitation of the system due to imperfect road surface in terms of the measured power spectral density of the randomly fluctuating elevation of a typical road surface, the power spectral density of the vibrations of the vehicle can be determined by multiplication with the squared magnitude of the system transfer function. Then the natural frequency and damping factor can be adjusted to minimize undesirable effects such as peaks at critical frequencies or simply to minimize the total power of the vibrations. As a simple example, suppose that in some normalized units, the mass is $m = 1$ and that it is desired to make the natural frequency $f_n = 1$ Hz and the damping ratio $\xi = \frac{1}{4}$. Determine appropriate values for the spring constant k and the damping constant c. (Consult Figure 3-6 to see the resultant frequency response of the system.)

11. Verify (76) (see (60) in Chapter 2).

12. Derive the limit-autocorrelation relation for filters (84) from (79) and (82b) (see exercise 12(a) in Chapter 2).

13. (a) The transfer function $\tilde{H}(f)$ of a linear time-invariant discrete-time system can always be obtained by determining the response $y(n) = \tilde{H}(f)e^{i2\pi fn}$ to the excitation

$x(n) = e^{i2\pi fn}$ and then dividing $y(n)/x(n)$. Use this technique to derive (90) from (87) for the MA model.

(b) For the AR model, use the technique in (a) to derive (94) from (93).

(c) For the ARMA model, use the technique in (a) to derive (97) from (96).

14. *Second-order AR model:* The discrete-time analog of the second-order all-pole continuous-time model studied in exercise 10 has transfer function given by

$$\begin{aligned} \tilde{H}(f) &= [1 + a_1 e^{-i2\pi f} + a_2 e^{-i4\pi f}]^{-1} \\ &= [(1 - \alpha e^{-i2\pi f})(1 - \alpha^* e^{-i2\pi f})]^{-1}. \end{aligned} \tag{138}$$

Determine α in terms of a_1 and a_2, and discuss the relationships between the values of a_1 and a_2 and the magnitude and phase of α. Note that $|\alpha| > 1$ yields an unstable system, and $|\alpha| = 1$ yields a marginally stable system, whereas $|\alpha| < 1$ yields a stable system. The impulse-response (inverse Fourier-series transform of $\tilde{H}(f)$) for this system is given by (assuming complex α)

$$h(n) = kr^n \sin(\omega_d n + \phi), \qquad n \geq 0, \tag{139a}$$

where

$$r = \sqrt{a_2} \tag{139b}$$

$$\omega_d = \cos^{-1}(-a_1/2\sqrt{a_2}) = \phi. \tag{139c}$$

Determine an effective damping ratio by analogy with the impulse-response in exercise 10.

15. **(a)** Use trigonometric identities to prove that if $u(t)$ and $v(t)$ are given by (21) in Appendix 3-1 for *any* $y(t)$, then $x(t)$ is given by (23) in Appendix 3-1.

(b) Let $x(t)$ be given by (23) in Appendix 3-1, where $u(t)$ and $v(t)$ are bandlimited to $[-B, B]$ with $B < f_0$, and show that $u(t)$ and $v(t)$ are *uniquely* (for all f_0) determined by (21) in Appendix 3-1, where $y(t)$ is the Hilbert transform of $x(t)$. *Hint:* Use the fact that when $u(t)$ and $v(t)$ are bandlimited as described, then the Hilbert transforms of the two terms

$$\begin{matrix} u(t)\cos(2\pi f_0 t), \\ v(t)\sin(2\pi f_0 t) \end{matrix} \tag{140a}$$

are simply

$$\begin{matrix} u(t)\sin(2\pi f_0 t), \\ -v(t)\cos(2\pi f_0 t), \end{matrix} \tag{140b}$$

respectively.

16. **(a)** Use formulas (24) (in Appendix 3-1) and (67) to derive (25) (in Appendix 3-1) from (21) (in Appendix 3-1).

(b) Use the same approach as in (a) to derive (30) from (21) in Appendix 3-1.

17. Derive (7) in Appendix 3-2 from (4) and (5) in Appendix 3-2. *Hint:* See the note in exercise 9(c) in Chapter 4 regarding changes of variables in double integrals in order to reexpress (4)–(5) as

$$y(t) = \int_{-T}^{T} \hat{R}_s(\tau) R_{x_T}(t, \tau)\, d\tau.$$

Then use Parseval's relation, the Wiener relation, and the periodogram-correlogram relation.

18. Acceptable detectability of random signals typically requires a value of deflection d that is no smaller than 10. For a random signal with bandwidth of $B = 10{,}000$ Hz and an effective SNR of $S_0/N_0 = 1$, how long of an observation time T is needed?

If the bandwidth is doubled, how much smaller can T be? If the SNR is doubled, how much smaller can T be? (Refer to Appendix 3-2.)

19. Consider two detection problems, one involving a broadband random signal (i.e., no sine wave component) and the other involving a pure sine wave signal (i.e., no random component). Compare the dependence of deflection on the observation time T for these two problems. (Refer to Appendix 3-2.)

20. Determine the power spectral density of the response voltage for each of the circuits shown in Figure 3-8 for a white-noise excitation voltage with unity intensity, $N_0 = 1$. Also determine the rms value of the response voltage, $\sqrt{R_v(0)}$. *Hint:* Use the results of exercise 8.

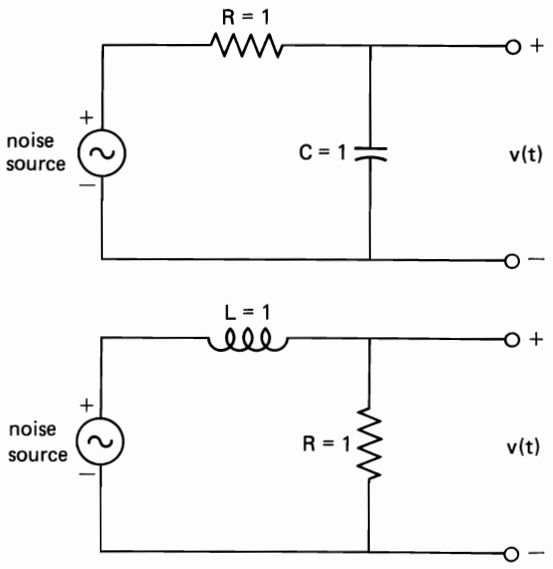


Figure 3-8 Two electrical circuits.

21. It is desired to approximate a time-averaged periodogram of tapered data using a frequency-smoothed periodogram of untapered data. The data-tapering window is a triangle with total base width of 10 μs and unity height. The periodogram is averaged over a time interval of length 1 ms. Determine the data-segment length and appropriate smoothing window for the spectrally smoothed periodogram. Would you expect this to be an accurate approximation? Why? Can this approximation be made exact (in principle)? If so, how?

APPENDIX 3-1
Band-Pass Time-Series

Many signals encountered in signal-processing systems are of the band-pass type; that is, their spectrum is concentrated about some frequency removed from zero. For example, the response of a resonant system such as a band-pass filter is a

band-pass signal. Also, a major purpose for many types of signal modulations is to convert a low-pass signal into a band-pass signal in an appropriate frequency range in order to minimize attenuation and distortion due to propagation through a particular medium. Furthermore, a basic operation in the typical spectrum analyzer is that of decomposing the time-series to be analyzed into narrow-band band-pass signals whose passbands partition the frequency range of interest. Thus, the study of specific spectrum analyzers taken up in the next chapter requires a thorough understanding of band-pass signals. However, for purposes of analysis and computation, it is often more convenient to work with low-pass representations of band-pass signals. These representations are the subject of this appendix.

Let us begin by considering the Fourier transform of a finite-energy function. Since every real finite-energy function $x(t)$ has a Fourier transform $X(f)$ with Hermitian (conjugate) symmetry,

$$X(-f) = X^*(f), \tag{1}$$

then the function $x(t)$ can be completely recovered from the positive-frequency portion of its transform, call it $(\frac{1}{2})\Psi(f)$,

$$\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)\Psi(f) \triangleq \begin{cases} X(f), & f > 0 \\ 0, & f < 0, \end{cases} \tag{2}$$

as described pictorially in Figure 3-1-1(a) and (b). Specifically, the transform of the function $x(t)$ is recovered by

$$X(f) = \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)[\Psi(f) + \Psi^*(-f)]. \tag{3}$$

Furthermore, $X(f)$ and, therefore, $x(t)$ can be recovered from the function $\Gamma(f)$ obtained by translating $\Psi(f)$ by any amount, say f_0,

$$\Gamma(f) \triangleq \Psi(f + f_0), \tag{4}$$

as depicted in Figure 3-1-1(c). In fact, $x(t)$ can be recovered from the inverse transform of $\Gamma(f)$, which is denoted by $\gamma(t)$. Since $x(t)$ can always be recovered from $\gamma(t)$, then $\gamma(t)$ can be interpreted as a representation for $x(t)$. This type of representation is particularly interesting when $x(t)$ is a bandpass function, as depicted in Figure 3-1-2(a), because then $\gamma(t)$ is a low-pass function if f_0 is chosen to be within the passband of $x(t)$, as depicted in Figure 3-1-2(b).

Although $x(t)$ is taken to be a real function, its representation $\gamma(t)$ is in general complex because its Fourier transform $\Gamma(f)$ does not in general exhibit Hermitian symmetry. But $\gamma(t)$ can, of course, be represented in terms of two real functions, namely, its real and imaginary parts, say $u(t)$ and $v(t)$:

$$\gamma(t) = u(t) + iv(t). \tag{5}$$

By letting $w(t)$ be the imaginary process

$$w(t) = iv(t), \tag{6}$$

the transform of $\gamma(t)$ is represented by the sum of transforms

$$\Gamma(f) = U(f) + W(f), \tag{7}$$

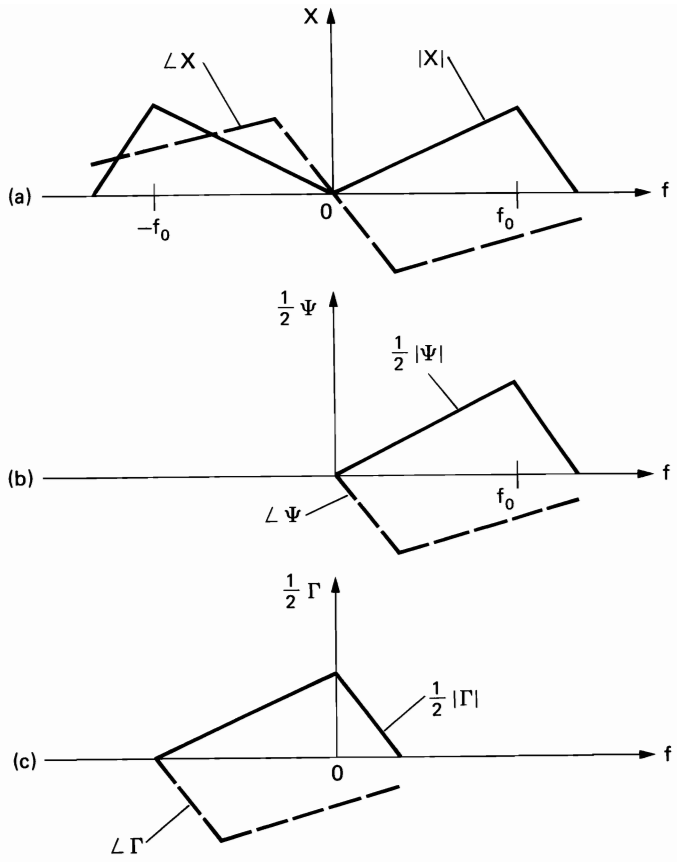


Figure 3-1-1 Equivalent signal representations in the frequency domain.

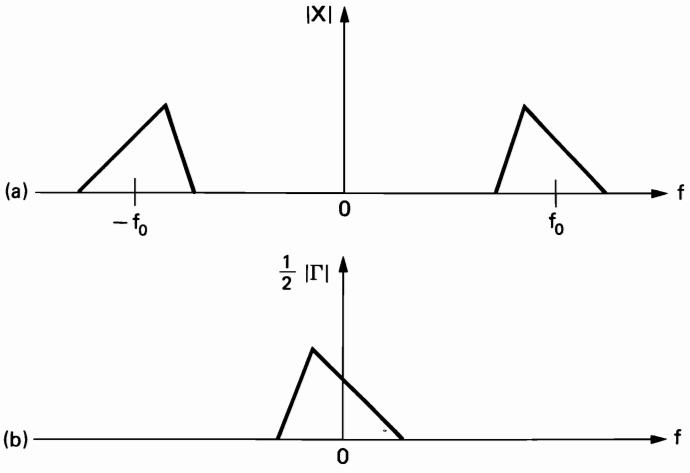


Figure 3-1-2 Low-pass representation of a band-pass signal in the frequency domain.

and it can be shown that these components exhibit the symmetries

$$\begin{aligned} U(-f) &= U^*(f) \\ W(-f) &= -W^*(f). \end{aligned} \tag{8}$$

Thus, $U(f)$ has even conjugate symmetry, but $W(f)$ has odd conjugate symmetry. Hence $\Gamma(f)$, which has no conjugate symmetry in general, is represented by the sum of its even and odd conjugate-symmetric parts, $U(f)$ and $W(f)$. This is illustrated in Figure 3-1-3 for the special case in which Γ, U, and W are real.

Now, let us characterize the operations just described for obtaining the real low-pass representors $u(t)$ and $v(t)$ from a real band-pass function $x(t)$ in terms of operations defined in the time-domain. It follows from (2) that

$$\Psi(f) = X(f) + \text{sgn}(f)X(f), \tag{9}$$

where

$$\text{sgn}(f) \triangleq \begin{cases} +1, & f > 0 \\ -1, & f < 0. \end{cases} \tag{10}$$

Furthermore, the function

$$H(f) \triangleq (-i)\text{sgn}(f) \tag{11}$$

is the transfer function corresponding to the impulse-response function

$$h(t) = \frac{1}{\pi t}, \tag{12}$$

and the transformation

$$y(t) = h(t) \otimes x(t) \tag{13}$$

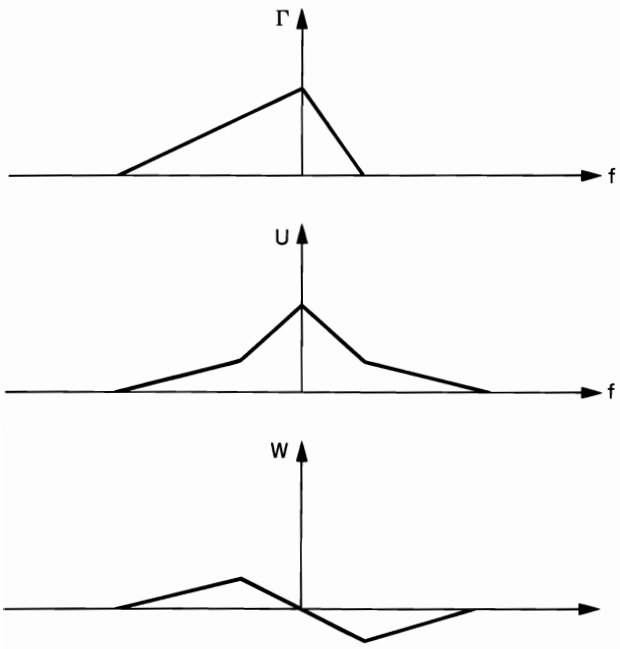


Figure 3-1-3 Even and odd symmetric components U and W of the asymmetric representation Γ (only real parts shown).

is called the *Hilbert transformation*. It follows from the facts

$$|H(f)| \equiv 1$$

$$\arg\{H(f)\} = \begin{cases} -\dfrac{\pi}{2}, & f > 0 \\ \dfrac{\pi}{2}, & f < 0 \end{cases} \tag{14}$$

that this transformation simply shifts the phase of every positive (negative) frequency component by $-(+)\pi/2$ radians $(-(+)90$ degrees). It follows from (9)–(13) that

$$\Psi(f) = X(f) + iY(f) \tag{15}$$

and, therefore,

$$\psi(t) = x(t) + iy(t). \tag{16}$$

Furthermore, it follows from (4) that

$$\gamma(t) = \psi(t)e^{-i2\pi f_0 t}. \tag{17}$$

Equations (16) and (17) yield the result

$$\gamma(t) = [x(t) + iy(t)]e^{-i2\pi f_0 t}, \tag{18}$$

where $y(t)$ is the Hilbert transform of $x(t)$. Now, to obtain the real and imaginary parts of $\gamma(t)$, Euler's formula,

$$e^{-i2\pi f_0 t} = \cos(2\pi f_0 t) - i\sin(2\pi f_0 t), \tag{19}$$

is used in (18) to obtain

$$\begin{aligned} \gamma(t) = {} & [x(t)\cos(2\pi f_0 t) + y(t)\sin(2\pi f_0 t)] \\ & + i[y(t)\cos(2\pi f_0 t) - x(t)\sin(2\pi f_0 t)]. \end{aligned} \tag{20}$$

Thus,

$$\begin{aligned} u(t) &= x(t)\cos(2\pi f_0 t) + y(t)\sin(2\pi f_0 t) \\ v(t) &= y(t)\cos(2\pi f_0 t) - x(t)\sin(2\pi f_0 t). \end{aligned} \tag{21}$$

In order to recover $x(t)$ from $\gamma(t)$, (18) can be used to obtain

$$x(t) = \mathrm{Re}\{\gamma(t)e^{i2\pi f_0 t}\}, \tag{22}$$

where $\mathrm{Re}\{\cdot\}$ denotes the *real part*. Substitution of (5) into (22) yields

$$x(t) = u(t)\cos(2\pi f_0 t) - v(t)\sin(2\pi f_0 t). \tag{23}$$

Formulas (21) and (23) comprise the desired explicit representation for a real band-pass function $x(t)$ in terms of two real low-pass functions $u(t)$ and $v(t)$, which are called the *in-phase* and *quadrature components* of the *complex representation* $\gamma(t)$. This is called *Rice's representation* in honor of Stephen O. Rice's pioneering work in signal representation theory [Rice 1944, 1945, 1948]. It follows from (2) and (4) that if $x(t)$ is bandlimited to the band $[f_0 - B, f_0 + B]$ (and its negative-frequency image), then $\gamma(t)$—and, therefore, $u(t)$ and $v(t)$—are bandlimited to the band $[-B, B]$. Furthermore, given *any* finite-energy function in the form (23), for which $u(t)$ and $v(t)$ are bandlimited to $[-B, B]$ for

$B < f_0$, it can be shown (exercise 15) that $u(t)$ and $v(t)$ are *uniquely* determined by (21).

Although Rice's representation is derived here for transient finite-energy time-series, which are directly Fourier transformable, it is valid for persistent finite-power time-series as well. This raises the question of how the limit spectral densities of $u(t)$, $v(t)$, and $x(t)$ are related. It follows (exercise 16) from Part 5 of Section *D*, Chapter 3, using

$$\hat{S}_{xy}(f) = -\hat{S}_{yx}(f) = i \operatorname{sgn}(f)\hat{S}_x(f) \tag{24a}$$

$$\hat{S}_y(f) = \hat{S}_x(f) \tag{24b}$$

for $x(t)$ and its Hilbert transform $y(t)$ (see Chapter 7 for cross spectra), that

$$\hat{S}_u(f) = \hat{S}_v(f) = \hat{S}_x(f + f_0)U(f_0 + f) + \hat{S}_x(f - f_0)U(f_0 - f), \tag{25}$$

where U is the unit step function

$$U(f) = \begin{cases} 1, & f > 0 \\ 0, & f < 0. \end{cases} \tag{26}$$

Formula (25) is valid provided that $x(t)$ does not contain certain forms of periodicity associated with the frequency f_0, as mentioned in Part 5 of Section D, Chapter 3. Otherwise (25) must be generalized as explained in Part II, Chapter 11 (for example, $\hat{S}_u$ and $\hat{S}_v$ need not be identical). It follows from (25) that if $x(t)$ has limit spectral density that is bandlimited to $[f_0 - B, f_0 + B]$,

$$\hat{S}_x(f) = 0, \qquad ||f| - f_0| \geq B, \tag{27}$$

then $u(t)$ and $v(t)$ have limit spectra that are bandlimited to $[-B, B]$,

$$\hat{S}_u(f) = \hat{S}_v(f) = 0, \qquad |f| \geq B. \tag{28}$$

Furthermore, if $B \leq f_0$, then

$$\hat{S}_u(f) = \hat{S}_v(f) = \begin{cases} \hat{S}_x(f - f_0) + \hat{S}_x(f + f_0), & |f| < f_0 \\ 0, & |f| \geq f_0. \end{cases} \tag{29}$$

It can also be shown that the limit cross-spectral densities for $u(t)$ and $v(t)$ are given by

$$\hat{S}_{uv}(f) = -\hat{S}_{vu}(f) = i[\hat{S}_x(f + f_0)U(f_0 + f) - \hat{S}_x(f - f_0)U(f_0 - f)], \tag{30}$$

and if $B \leq f_0$, then

$$\hat{S}_{uv}(f) = -\hat{S}_{vu}(f) = \begin{cases} i[\hat{S}_x(f + f_0) - \hat{S}_x(f - f_0)], & |f| < f_0 \\ 0, & |f| \geq f_0. \end{cases} \tag{31}$$

Again, formula (30) is valid with the earlier-mentioned provision regarding periodicity. The PSD for $x(t)$ can be expressed in terms of the PSDs for $u(t)$ and $v(t)$ by direct substitution of $u(t)$ and $v(t)$ for $c(t)$ and $s(t)$, respectively, into (67).

APPENDIX 3-2
Random-Signal Detection

In problems of detecting the presence of random signals buried in noise, the concepts and methods of spectral analysis are particularly useful for both detector design and performance analysis. To illustrate this, we consider the problem of detecting (in each interval $[t - T/2, t + T/2]$ indexed by t) the presence of a random signal s hidden in noise n, using the data

$$x(u) = \delta s(u) + n(u), \qquad -\frac{T}{2} \leqslant u - t \leqslant \frac{T}{2}, \tag{1}$$

for which δ is the indicator variable

$$\delta = \begin{cases} 1, & \text{signal present} \\ 0, & \text{signal absent.} \end{cases} \tag{2}$$

A well-known signal detector is the threshold test

$$y(t) \underset{no}{\overset{yes}{\gtrless}} \gamma, \tag{3}$$

for which $y(t)$ is the quadratic detection statistic

$$y(t) = \int_{t-T/2}^{t+T/2} \int_{t-T/2}^{t+T/2} k(u, v)x(u)x(v)\, du\, dv, \tag{4}$$

and γ is the threshold level, which is set to provide the desired *false alarm rate* and/or *detection rate*. If the kernel k that specifies the detection statistic is the limit autocorrelation function (scaled by T),

$$k(u, v) = \frac{1}{T}\hat{R}_s(u - v), \tag{5}$$

then this detector is optimum for a signal in additive white Gaussian[15] noise in the sense[16] of maximizing the following measure of signal-to-noise ratio (SNR), called *deflection* [Gardner 1985],

$$d = \left[\frac{\left|\langle y(t)|\delta = 1\rangle - \langle y(t)|\delta = 0\rangle\right|^2}{\langle |y(t)|^2|\delta = 0\rangle - \left|\langle y(t)|\delta = 0\rangle\right|^2}\right]^{1/2}, \tag{6}$$

where $\langle\cdot\rangle$ denotes limit time-average (see (22) in Chapter 1). Substitution of (5) into (4) and application of a change of variables and Parseval's relation yields the revealing characterization

$$y(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \hat{S}_s(f)S_{x_T}(t, f)\, df, \tag{7}$$

[15] A Gaussian time-series is defined in Chapter 5.

[16] This detector is also optimum in other senses—see [Gardner 1985]—but maximization of deflection is especially appropriate for weak signals.

for which $\hat{S}_s(f)$ is the limit spectrum of the signal s and $S_{x_T}(t, f)$ is the time-variant periodogram of the data x on the interval $[t - T/2, t + T/2]$. Thus, the detector (3)–(5) measures the periodogram and correlates (multiplies and integrates) it with a stored replica of the limit spectrum of the signal to be detected. The detector decides *yes*, the signal is present, if and only if this correlation exceeds the threshold level γ.

The maximum value of the deflection (6) is given by

$$d = \left\{ \frac{1}{2N_0^2} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} [\hat{R}_s(u - v)]^2 \, du \, dv \right\}^{1/2} \tag{8}$$

[Gardner 1985], which can be reexpressed as

$$d = \left\{ \frac{T}{2N_0^2} \int_{-T}^{T} [\hat{R}_s(\tau)]^2 (1 - |\tau|/T) \, d\tau \right\}^{1/2}. \tag{9}$$

Application of Parseval's relation and the convolution theorem to (9) yields the alternative formula in terms of the limit spectrum

$$d = \left\{ \frac{T^2}{2N_0^2} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} [\hat{S}_s(f) \otimes \hat{S}_s(f)] \left[\frac{\sin(\pi f T)}{\pi f T} \right]^2 df \right\}^{1/2}. \tag{10}$$

For a long observation time, that is, T much greater than the width of the limit autocorrelation of the signal (which is necessary for good detection performance for weak signals), (9) is closely approximated by

$$d \cong \left\{ \frac{T}{2N_0^2} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} [\hat{R}_s(\tau)]^2 \, d\tau \right\}^{1/2}. \tag{11}$$

Application of Parseval's relation to (11) yields the alternative close approximation

$$d \cong \left\{ \frac{T}{2N_0^2} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} [\hat{S}_s(f)]^2 \, df \right\}^{1/2}. \tag{12}$$

Thus, performance can be determined solely from the limit spectra of the signal to be detected and the noise.

These characterizations, (7) and (12), of the optimum detector and its performance can be generalized for nonwhite noise (see [Gardner 1985]).

As an example of the deflection formula (12), if $s(t)$ is a band-pass signal with effective spectral intensity S_0 and (positive-frequency) bandwidth B, then

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} [\hat{S}_s(f)]^2 \, df = 2BS_0^2, \tag{13}$$

and

$$d \cong \frac{S_0}{N_0} \sqrt{BT}. \tag{14}$$

Thus, the deflection is determined by the input signal-to-noise ratio and the duration-bandwidth product.

As another example, if $s(t)$ consists of a random component with spectral density $\hat{S}(f)$ plus a sine wave with frequency f_0 and amplitude a, then

$$\hat{S}_s(f) = \frac{a^2}{4} [\delta(f + f_0) + \delta(f - f_0)] + \hat{S}(f), \tag{15}$$

and therefore

$$\hat{S}_s(f) \otimes \hat{S}_s(f) = \frac{a^4}{16}[\delta(f + 2f_0) + \delta(f - 2f_0) + 2\delta(f)] + \frac{a^2}{2}[\hat{S}(f + f_0) + \hat{S}(f - f_0)] + \hat{S}(f) \otimes \hat{S}(f). \tag{16}$$

Substitution of (16) into (10) yields

$$d = \left[\frac{T^2}{2N_0^2}\left\{\left(\frac{a^4}{8}\right)\left[1 + \left(\frac{\sin 2\pi f_0 T}{2\pi f_0 T}\right)^2\right] + a^2\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \hat{S}(f + f_0)\left(\frac{\sin \pi f T}{\pi f T}\right)^2 df + \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \hat{S}(f) \otimes \hat{S}(f)\left(\frac{\sin \pi f T}{\pi f T}\right)^2 df\right\}\right]^{1/2}. \tag{17}$$

If many cycles of the sine wave are observed, $f_0 T >> 1$, and if T is much greater than the width of the limit autocorrelation of the random component (so that $1/T$ resolves $\hat{S}(f)$), then (17) yields the close approximation

$$d \cong \left[\frac{T}{2N_0^2}\left\{\frac{a^4}{8}T + a^2\hat{S}(f_0) + \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} [\hat{S}(f)]^2 df\right\}\right]^{1/2}. \tag{18}$$

If the random component of the signal is band-pass with effective spectral intensity S_0 and (positive-frequency) bandwidth B, then (18) yields

$$d \cong \left[\frac{T}{N_0^2}\left(\frac{a^4}{16}T + \frac{a^2}{2}S_0 + BS_0^2\right)\right]^{1/2}. \tag{19}$$

It follows that the sine wave dominates the performance and

$$d \cong \frac{Ta^2}{4N_0} \tag{20}$$

when

$$\frac{a^2}{4} > S_0\sqrt{\frac{B}{T}}. \tag{21}$$

In this case for which the signal contains an additive sine wave component, the detection statistic (7) decomposes into two terms that can be determined by substitution of (15) into (7),

$$y(t) = \frac{a^2}{2}S_{x_T}(t, f_0) + \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \hat{S}(f)S_{x_T}(t, f)\, df. \tag{22}$$

If the random component of the signal is band-pass with effective spectral intensity S_0, center frequency f_*, and (positive-frequency) bandwidth B, then (22) yields

$$y(t) = \frac{a^2}{2}S_{x_T}(t, f_0) + 2S_0\int_{f_*-B/2}^{f_*+B/2} S_{x_T}(t, f)\, df. \tag{23}$$

If follows that for a sufficiently large sine wave component, the single-frequency sample $S_{x_T}(t, f_0)$ of the periodogram tends to dominate the detection statistic.

As discussed in Chapter 9, the periodogram is also an optimum detection statistic for a sine wave (in white Guassian noise) with unknown amplitude, phase, and frequency. Nevertheless, it is also explained in Chapter 9 that the periodogram can be considerably improved upon for detection of multiple sine waves in noise when the observation time T is short by using *parametric spectral analysis* methods.

4

ANALOG METHODS

In Chapter 3 it is established that a statistical spectrum can be obtained from a periodogram by either the temporal-smoothing method or the spectral-smoothing method and that these two methods yield approximately the same statistical spectrum when a substantial amount of smoothing is done ($\Delta t \Delta f >> 1$). In this chapter it is shown that a variety of alternative methods yield approximately or exactly the same statistical spectrum, but it is emphasized that differences can be quite important in practice. These alternatives include the methods of temporal or spectral smoothing of the pseudospectrum, hopped temporal smoothing of the periodogram and pseudospectrum, Fourier transformation of the tapered correlogram and finite-average autocorrelation, real and complex wave-analysis, real and complex demodulation, and swept-frequency-demodulation wave-analysis. The methods are referred to as *analog methods* because they process the continuous-time waveforms directly. The actual form of implementation of such methods can employ conventional resistive-capacitive-inductive passive electrical circuits, more modern active electrical circuits, microwave devices, various optical, acousto-optical, and electro-acoustical devices, or mechanical devices. The particular form of implementation depends on available technology, economic constraints, environmental constraints (e.g., temperature, mechanical vibration, humidity, and so on), and frequency ranges of interest. Chapter 6 presents *digital methods*, so called because they process discrete-time data and because digital electrical forms of implementation (both hardware and software) are the primary means for discrete-time processing.

Before proceeding, a word about notation is in order. As in Chapter 3, $S_{x_T}(t, f)_{\Delta t}$ and $S_{x_T}(t, f)_{\Delta f}$ denote time- and frequency-smoothed spectra obtained from the periodogram $S_{x_T}(t, f)$,

$$S_{x_T}(t,f)_{\Delta t} \triangleq S_{x_T}(t,f) \otimes g_{\Delta t}(t) \tag{1a}$$

$$S_{x_T}(t,f)_{\Delta f} \triangleq S_{x_T}(t,f) \otimes H_{\Delta f}(f), \tag{2a}$$

for which $g_{\Delta t}$ and $H_{\Delta f}$ are arbitrary pulselike smoothing functions with width parameters Δt and Δf, respectively. Similarly, $S_x(t, f)_{T,\Delta t}$ and $S_x(t, f)_{T,\Delta f}$ denote time- and frequency-smoothed spectra obtained from the pseudospectrum, $S_x(t, f)_T$,

$$S_x(t,f)_{T,\Delta t} \triangleq \mathrm{S}_x(t,f)_T \otimes g_{\Delta t}(t) \tag{3a}$$

$$S_x(t,f)_{T,\Delta f} \triangleq \mathrm{S}_x(t,f)_T \otimes H_{\Delta f}(f). \tag{4a}$$

As in Chapter 3, there is no explicit denotation of the data-tapering window a_T used in the periodogram. In (1a) and (3a), T is the reciprocal of the spectral resolution width, $T = 1/\Delta f$, and in (2a) and (4a), T is the temporal resolution width, $T = \Delta t$; thus, we have the following four distinct combinations of subscripts in Δt and Δf,

$$S_{x_{1/\Delta f}}(t,f)_{\Delta t} = S_{x_{1/\Delta f}}(t,f) \otimes g_{\Delta t}(t) \tag{1b}$$

$$S_{x_{\Delta t}}(t,f)_{\Delta f} = S_{x_{\Delta t}}(t,f) \otimes H_{\Delta f}(f) \tag{2b}$$

$$S_x(t,f)_{1/\Delta f,\Delta t} = S_x(t,f)_{1/\Delta f} \otimes g_{\Delta t}(t) \tag{3b}$$

$$S_x(t,f)_{\Delta t,\Delta f} = S_x(t,f)_{\Delta t} \otimes H_{\Delta f}(f). \tag{4b}$$

In all four cases, the rightmost subscript denotes the smoothing parameter, and the type of smoothing is identified by the dimension of the parameter (T and Δt have temporal dimension, and $1/T$ and Δf have spectral dimension).

A. TEMPORAL AND SPECTRAL SMOOTHING

In the derivation (11)–(17) in Chapter 3, approximation (15) can be deleted to obtain the alternative approximation

$$S_{x_{1/\Delta f}}(t,f)_{\Delta t} \cong S_x(t,f)_{\Delta t,\Delta f}, \qquad \Delta t \Delta f >> 1, \tag{5a}$$

for which $g_{\Delta t}$ in (1b) is the rectangle

$$g_{\Delta t}(t) = u_{\Delta t}(t) \tag{5b}$$

and $H_{\Delta f}$ in (4b) is given by

$$H_{\Delta f}(f) = \Delta f |A_{\Delta f}(f)|^2 \tag{5c}$$

$$A_{\Delta f}(\cdot) = F\{a_{1/\Delta f}(\cdot)\}, \tag{5d}$$

where $a_{1/\Delta f}$ is the data-tapering window in (1b) (see (3) and (11) in Chapter 2).

Motivated by approximation (5a), which was obtained by manipulating (1b),

we consider the following manipulation of (3b):

$$S_x(t,f)_{T,\Delta t} \triangleq \frac{1}{\Delta t}\int_{-\Delta t/2}^{\Delta t/2} S_x(t-u,f)_T\,du \tag{6}$$

$$= \frac{1}{\Delta t}\int_{-\Delta t/2}^{\Delta t/2}\int_{-T}^{T} R_x(t-u,\tau)_T e^{-i2\pi f\tau}\,d\tau\,du \tag{7}$$

$$= \int_{-T}^{T}\frac{1}{\Delta t}\int_{-\Delta t/2}^{\Delta t/2} R_x(t-u,\tau)_T\,du\,e^{-i2\pi f\tau}\,d\tau \tag{8}$$

$$= \int_{-T}^{T}\frac{1}{T}\int_{-T/2}^{T/2} R_x(t-u,\tau)_{\Delta t}\,2Tu_{2T}(\tau)\,du\,e^{-i2\pi f\tau}\,d\tau \tag{9}$$

$$= \frac{1}{T}\int_{-T/2}^{T/2}\int_{-T}^{T} R_x(t-u,\tau)_{\Delta t}\,2Tu_{2T}(\tau)e^{-i2\pi f\tau}\,d\tau\,du \tag{10}$$

$$= \frac{1}{T}\int_{-T/2}^{T/2}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} S_x(t-u,f-\nu)_{\Delta t}\,w_{1/2T}(\nu)\,d\nu\,du \tag{11}$$

$$= \frac{1}{T}\int_{-T/2}^{T/2} S_x(t-u,f)_{\Delta t,1/T}\,du. \tag{12}$$

Equation (7) is definition (22) in Chapter 2, (9) is identity (26) in Chapter 2, (11) is the convolution theorem and definition (22) in Chapter 2, and (12) is definition (4b) with[1]

$$H_{1/T}(f) = w_{1/2T}(f). \tag{13}$$

If approximation (27) in Chapter 2 were used following (10), then we would obtain (using $\Delta f = 1/T$) the approximation

$$S_x(t,f)_{1/\Delta f,\Delta t} \cong S_x(t,f)_{\Delta t,\Delta f}, \qquad \Delta t\Delta f >> 1, \tag{14a}$$

for which $g_{\Delta t}$ in (3b) is the rectangle

$$g_{\Delta t}(t) = u_{\Delta t}(t), \tag{14b}$$

and $H_{\Delta f}$ in (4b) is the sinc

$$H_{\Delta f}(f) = w_{\Delta f/2}(f). \tag{14c}$$

Approximation (14a) also follows from (12) by noting that for $\Delta t >> T$, the integral in (12) can be omitted with negligible effect since the temporal resolution of the integrand is Δt. In view of approximations (8) in Chapter 3, (5), and (14), we see that we also have the approximation

$$S_x(t,f)_{\Delta t,\Delta f} \cong S_{x_{\Delta t}}(t,f)_{\Delta f}, \qquad \Delta t\Delta f >> 1. \tag{15a}$$

[1] The factor of $\frac{1}{2}$ in $1/2T$ is due to the particular definition (14) in Chapter 2 of the width parameter for the sinc function. If the width were taken to be the distance between the first zero crossings to the left and right of the central peak, then the factor of $\frac{1}{2}$ would vanish.

To verify (15a) directly, we manipulate (4b) as follows (using $\Delta f = 1/T$):

$$S_x(t,f)_{\Delta t,\Delta f} \triangleq \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} S_x(t,f-\nu)_{\Delta t}\, H_{\Delta f}(\nu)\, d\nu \tag{16}$$

$$= \int_{-T}^{T} R_x(t,\tau)_{\Delta t}\, h_T(\tau) e^{-i2\pi f\tau}\, d\tau \tag{17}$$

$$\cong \int_{-T}^{T} R_{x_{\Delta t}}(t,\tau) h_T(\tau) e^{-i2\pi f\tau}\, d\tau, \qquad \Delta t >> T \tag{18}$$

$$= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} S_{x_{\Delta t}}(t,f-\nu) H_{\Delta f}(\nu)\, d\nu \tag{19}$$

$$\triangleq S_{x_{\Delta t}}(t,f)_{\Delta f}. \tag{20}$$

Equation (17) is the convolution theorem and definition (22) in Chapter 2, for which it is assumed that

$$h_T(\tau) = 0, \qquad |\tau| > T. \tag{15b}$$

Approximation (18) is approximation (30) in Chapter 2, and (19) is the convolution theorem. Thus, (15a) is valid for $H_{\Delta f}$ given by the Fourier transform of any duration-limited aperture (15b),

$$H_{\Delta f}(\cdot) = F\{h_{1/\Delta f}(\cdot)\}. \tag{15c}$$

In summary, all four of the statistical spectra (1b)–(4b) are approximately equal, with appropriate choices for smoothing windows, and the accuracy of approximation increases as the resolution product $\Delta t \Delta f$ increases. In fact, all four statistical spectra become identical[2] to the limit spectrum $\hat{S}_x$ as $\Delta t \to \infty$ and $\Delta f \to 0$. Thus, for sufficiently large Δt and $1/\Delta f$, the particular shapes of the data-tapering aperture and the spectral-smoothing window are irrelevant. However, it should be emphasized that in applications where Δt must be relatively small, because of limited data, the desire to track time-variant phenomena, or implementational limitations, the differences among the statistical spectra obtained from different smoothing methods and different windows can be substantial, and the particular choice then becomes an important component of the *design problem*. This is especially so because of *spectral leakage effects*, which are described in Section C. The window-design problem is considered in Chapter 5, Section D.

Example

Let us consider a hypothetical situation in which we know that the limit spectrum to be estimated has resolution width $\Delta f^* = 1$ KHz. Let us also assume that a resolution product of $\Delta t \Delta f = 100$ is desired for reduction of random effects in our spectrum estimate. In order to ensure that our spectrum estimate will provide adequate spectral resolution, we select its resolution-width parameter to be $\Delta f =$

[2] Except possibly for the scale factor γ defined by (25) in Chapter 3.

$\Delta f^*/2 = 500$ Hz. Then we conclude that the parameter Δt must be given by $\Delta t = 100/\Delta f = 200$ ms. If we choose to use a time-averaged periodogram as our spectrum estimate, then we must select appropriate values for the length of the data segment to be Fourier transformed and for the length of the time-interval over which the periodogram will be averaged. It follows directly from the definition of the notation $S_{x_{1/\Delta f}}(t, f)_{\Delta t}$ that the data segment length is $T = 1/\Delta f = 1/500$ Hz $=$ 2 ms and that the averaging time-interval length is $\Delta t = 200$ ms. On the other hand, if we choose to use a frequency-smoothed periodogram, then we can conclude from the definition of the notation $S_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, f)_{\Delta f}$ that the length of the data segment to be Fourier transformed is $T = \Delta t = 200$ ms and that the width of the spectral smoothing window is $\Delta f = 500$ Hz.

B. FOURIER TRANSFORMATION OF TAPERED AUTOCORRELATION

It follows directly from the time-frequency dual of the convolution theorem, the periodogram-correlogram relation (18) in Chapter 2, and its analog for the pseudospectrum, (22) in Chapter 2, that the two spectrally smoothed statistical spectra (2b) and (4b) can each be obtained by *Fourier transformation of tapered autocorrelations*,

$$S_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, \cdot)_{\Delta f} = F\{R_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, \cdot)h_{1/\Delta f}(\cdot)\} \tag{21}$$

$$S_x(t, \cdot)_{\Delta t, \Delta f} = F\{R_x(t, \cdot)_{\Delta t}h_{1/\Delta f}(\cdot)\}. \tag{22}$$

In both cases (21) and (22), the spectrum has undergone substantial spectral smoothing ($\Delta t \Delta f >> 1$) if and only if the *autocorrelation-tapering aperture* h_T is substantially narrower than the lag-width parameter Δt of the autocorrelation, $T << \Delta t$ (recall from Chapter 2 that $R_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, \tau) = R_x(t, \tau)_{\Delta t} = 0$ in general only if $|\tau| > \Delta t$; thus, $2\Delta t$ is the lag-width).

Alternative terms for distinguishing between data tapering introduced in Chapter 2, Section B, and autocorrelation tapering introduced here, are *linear tapering* and *quadratic tapering*, respectively. Although both tapering methods have an impact on the *effective spectral smoothing window* as explained in the sequel, their effects are different. For example, it follows directly from (21) and (2b) and (22) and (4b) that the autocorrelation-tapering window has a strong primary influence on the effective spectral smoothing window, and it follows directly from (11)–(17) in Chapter 3 that the data-tapering window used with a temporally smoothed periodogram can have a strong primary influence on the effective spectral-smoothing window. However, it can be shown that the data-tapering window used with a spectrally smoothed periodogram has only a secondary influence on the effective spectral smoothing window. These comments are supported by derivations of effective spectral smoothing windows in Chapter 5, Section D.

The spectrally smoothed periodogram is sometimes called a *spectrograph estimate* [Grenander and Rosenblatt 1984], and therefore the equivalence (21) reveals that the Fourier transform of the tapered correlogram is also a spectrograph estimate. However, the term *spectrograph* is most commonly used to denote a graph of a time-variant spectrum estimate in which the magnitude is represented by the intensity of the graph, and time and frequency are plotted along the abscissa and ordinate, respectively [Koenig, et al. 1946]. The corresponding graph of a time-variant correlation estimate has been called a *correlatograph* [Bennett 1953], but will be referred to here as a *correlograph*.

C. SPECTRAL LEAKAGE AND PREWHITENING

The eight alternative methods for obtaining the four different types of statistical spectra, (1b)–(4b), that have been discussed so far are summarized in block-diagram form in Figures 4-1 and 4-2. For each of these eight methods, either a spectral smoothing window is used directly or an effective (exact or approximate) spectral smoothing window results from another operation (data-tapering or data-

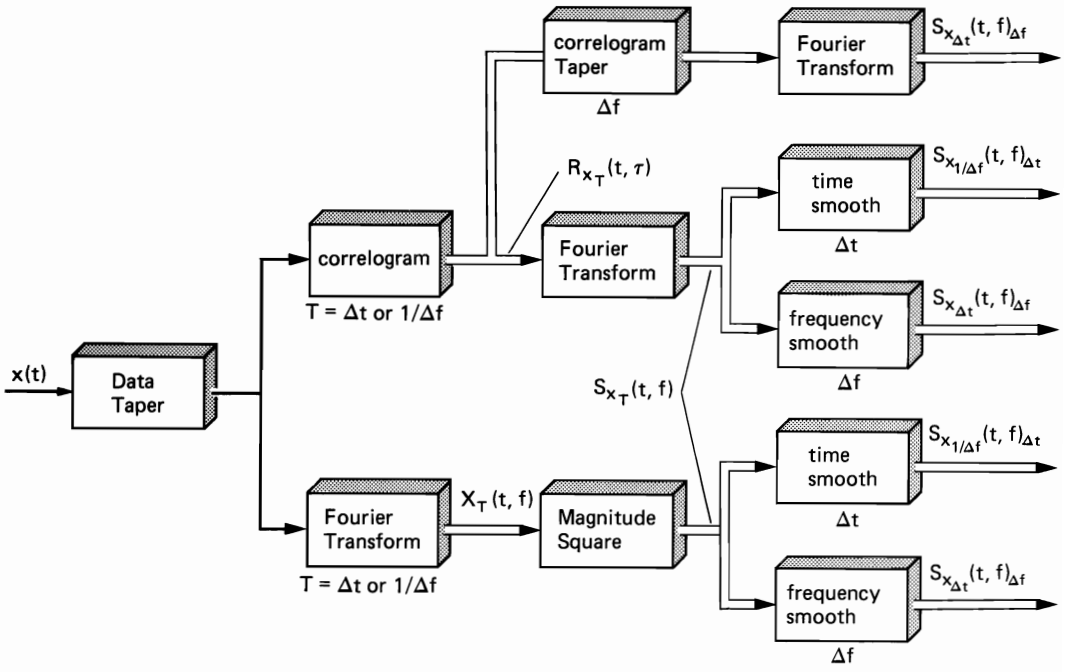


Figure 4-1 Five methods for obtaining statistical spectra based on the periodogram or correlogram ($T = \Delta t$ or $1/\Delta f$, depending on the method).

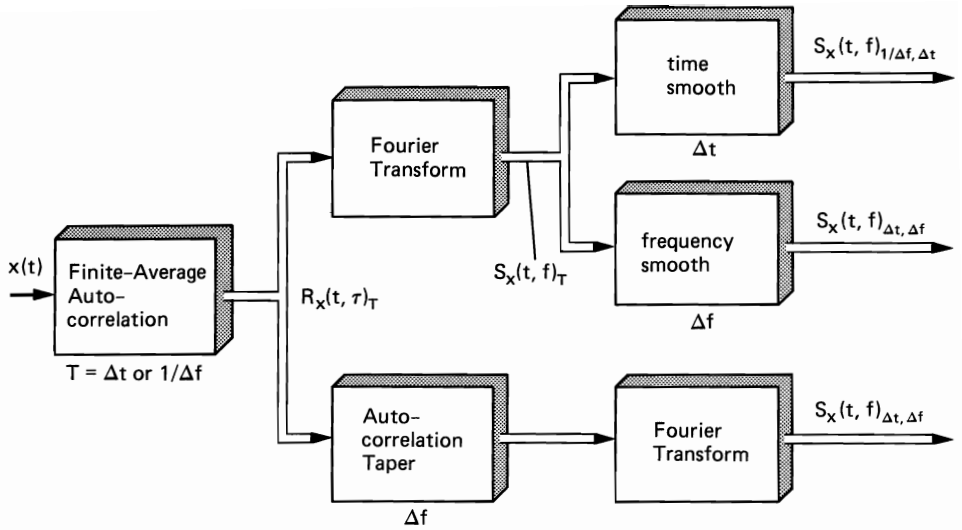


Figure 4-2 Three methods for obtaining statistical spectra based on the pseudospectrum or finite-average auotcorrelation ($T = \Delta t$ or $1/\Delta f$, depending on the method).

windowing and/or autocorrelation-tapering or autocorrelation-windowing[3]). For each of these eight methods, the amount of smoothing is determined (exactly or approximately) by the resolution product $\Delta t \Delta f$, and substantial smoothing is effected if and only if the width Δf of the (effective) spectral smoothing window greatly exceeds the reciprocal of the total amount Δt of data used,

$$\Delta t \Delta f >> 1. \tag{23}$$

However, when Δt is limited so that (23) requires a Δf that is not small compared with the widths of the spectral features to be measured, then the *shape* as well as the width of the spectral-smoothing aperture is important. Moreover, for the methods in which spectral smoothing is accomplished indirectly, this shape is determined, as discussed in the preceding paragraph, by temporal-aperture shapes, namely, 1) the data-tapering aperture a_T in (1b), for which the effective spectral smoothing window is (5c), or 2) the autocorrelation-tapering aperture h_T in (21), for which the effective spectral smoothing window is approximately (15c). (Exact effective spectral smoothing windows are determined in Chapter 5.) For example, as shown in Figure 4-3, the sinc and squared-sinc spectral windows, corresponding to the rectangle and triangle autocorrelation-tapering apertures, respectively, both exhibit a desirable *main lobe*, whose width determines the spectral resolution, and both exhibit a number of potentially nonnegligible undesirable *sidelobes*. But since the triangle aperture has a more gradual taper than the rectangle aperture (which tapers from no attenuation to complete attenuation in an infinitesimal interval), then its Fourier transform (the corresponding spectral window) has a

[3] To make a distinction, if the aperture is the rectangle, then the term *windowing* can be used; otherwise, the term *tapering* can be used.

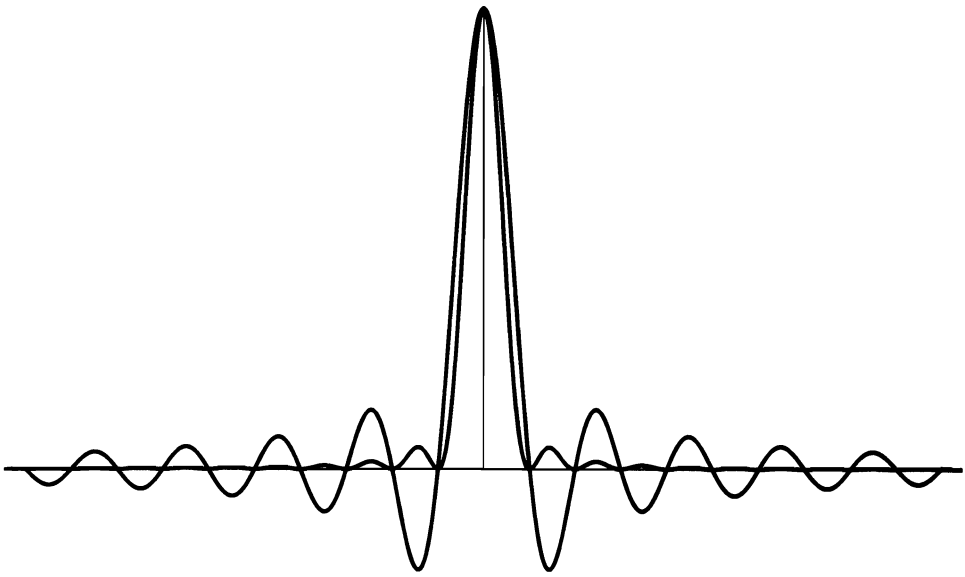


Figure 4-3 Comparison of sidelobes of sinc and squared-sinc windows (with unity width parameter).

less gradual taper, that is, its side lobes are smaller. This can be important because large side lobes can result in the undesirable phenomenon known as *spectral leakage*, whereby spectral content in a spectral band that is coincident with a side lobe contributes to the measured spectral content in the desired spectral band which is coincident with the main lobe. Depending on the sign of the sidelobe, this spectral leakage phenomenon can either increase or decrease the measured spectral content at the main-lobe frequency. This spectral leakage effect is especially problematic when spectral lines are present. As an illustration of this, refer to the graphs of the periodogram for two sine waves shown in Figure 2-6. In Figure 2-6(c) and (d), leakage effects are minimal, but they are significant in Figure 2-6(b), where the peak due to each sine wave has been substantially reduced due to (negative) leakage from the other. Thus, it is generally advisable whenever possible to remove finite additive sine wave components from otherwise random data prior to measurement of the spectrum. Methods for doing this are described in Chapter 9.

It follows from the relationships (5c) and (15c) between the data-tapering or autocorrelation-tapering aperture and the effective spectral-smoothing window that spectral leakage can be controlled by appropriate design of the tapering window.[4] (The topic of window design is treated in Chapter 5, Section D.)

[4] For time-series from periodic phenomena (see, for example, Chapter 3, Section D, Parts 3–5), there is another spectral leakage phenomenon referred to as *cycle leakage* that has apparently not previously been studied. The effects of this phenomenon on spectral measurements are described in Part II, Chapter 15.

However, in some applications where the desired spectrum $\hat{S}_x$ has a wide range (high peaks and/or low valleys), an alternative to data-tapering or autocorrelation-tapering, called *prewhitening*, can sometimes be superior in the sense of yielding a lower degree of randomness for a given resolution product, $\Delta t \Delta f$ (see [Priestley 1981, Section 7.4.1]). Specifically, if a wide spectral range is discovered from a preliminary spectral analysis, then this range can be reduced (heights of peaks lowered and depths of valleys heightened) by filtering the data in an attempt to *whiten* it, that is, to flatten its spectrum. After whitening the data (approximately), a statistical spectrum with the desired resolution can be obtained while incurring only minimal spectral leakage. This statistical spectrum must then be corrected to account for prewhitening. The spectrum relations for filters, (39) and (40) in Chapter 2, can be used to show that the corrected statistical spectrum for x should be obtained by dividing the spectrum for the prewhitened data y by the squared magnitude of the transfer function of the whitening filter; for example,

$$S_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, f)_{\Delta f} \triangleq \frac{S_{y_{\Delta t}}(t, f)_{\Delta f}}{|H(f)|^2}. \tag{24}$$

The prewhitening method suggests another quite distinct method for obtaining a statistical spectrum, which can be especially well suited to the case of sharp spectral peaks. If a particularly effective whitening method is used, then the whitened data y will have a very nearly flat statistical spectrum, say

$$S_{y_{\Delta t}}(t, f)_{\Delta f} \cong N_0, \tag{25}$$

and therefore (24) reduces to

$$S_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, f)_{\Delta f} \cong \frac{N_0}{|H(f)|^2}. \tag{26}$$

Consequently, there is no need to do spectral analysis after particularly effective whitening. There do exist methods for whitening that do not require a preliminary spectral analysis. When the *least squares autoregressive method* of whitening discrete-time data is used, (26) yields the *autoregressive spectrum estimate* originally proposed by George Udny Yule [Yule 1927]. Discussion of this method of spectrum estimation and other methods that minimize spectral leakage is postponed until Chapters 6 and 9 since they typically require digital implementations.

D. HOPPED TEMPORAL SMOOTHING

In some situations, the implementation of a temporally smoothed statistical spectrum can be simplified if the smoothing time index is hopped along discretely rather than slid along continuously. For example, for periodograms of data segments of length T, the smoothing time index can be hopped along at integer multiples of $T/2$, so that subsequent data segments that are Fourier transformed overlap by 50%. For a fixed amount of data, it can be shown that for 50% or more overlap, the effect of smoothing on reduction of degree of randomness is only slightly degraded by hopping rather than sliding. Even less than 50% overlap is sometimes acceptable. This motivates inquiry into the specific relationships between hopped temporal smoothing and other smoothing methods. For example,

it can be shown that hopped-temporal smoothing of the pseudospectrum is exactly equivalent to spectral smoothing, when the hop time interval is equal to the integration time T of the finite-average autocorrelation,

$$S_x(t,f)_{1/\Delta f} \otimes \eta_{\Delta t,\Delta f}(t) = S_x(t,f)_{\Delta t} \otimes H_{\Delta f}(f) \tag{27a}$$

in which

$$H_{\Delta f}(f) = w_{\Delta f/2}(f) \tag{27b}$$

and $\eta_{\Delta t,\Delta f}$ is the *rectangle comb window* defined by

$$\eta_{\Delta t,\Delta f}(t) \triangleq \frac{1}{\Delta t \Delta f} \sum_{m=-M}^{M} \delta\left(t + \frac{m}{\Delta f}\right) \tag{28}$$

with overall width

$$\Delta t \triangleq \frac{(2M+1)}{\Delta f}.$$

Convolution with $\eta_{\Delta t,\Delta f}$ is a hopped time-smoothing operation, as revealed by substitution of (28) into the left member of (27a) to obtain

$$S_x(t,f)_T \otimes \eta_{\Delta t,1/T}(t) = \frac{1}{2M+1} \sum_{m=-M}^{M} S_x(t + mT, f)_T. \tag{29}$$

Equivalence (27) can be derived as follows (using $T = 1/\Delta f$):

$S_x(t,f)_{\Delta t} \otimes H_{\Delta f}(f)$

$$= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} S_x(t, f-\nu)_{\Delta t} H_{\Delta f}(\nu)\, d\nu \tag{30}$$

$$= \int_{-T}^{T} R_x(t,\tau)_{\Delta t} h_T(\tau) e^{-i2\pi f\tau}\, d\tau \tag{31}$$

$$= \int_{-T}^{T} \frac{1}{\Delta t} \int_{t-\Delta t/2}^{t+\Delta t/2} x\left(u + \frac{\tau}{2}\right) x\left(u - \frac{\tau}{2}\right) du\, h_T(\tau)\, e^{-i2\pi f\tau}\, d\tau \tag{32}$$

$$= \frac{1}{2M+1} \sum_{m=-M}^{M} \int_{-T}^{T} \frac{1}{T} \int_{t+mT-T/2}^{t+mT+T/2} x\left(u + \frac{\tau}{2}\right) x\left(u - \frac{\tau}{2}\right) du\, [2Tu_{2T}(\tau)] e^{-i2\pi f\tau}\, d\tau \tag{33}$$

$$= \frac{1}{2M+1} \sum_{m=-M}^{M} \int_{-T}^{T} R_x(t + mT, \tau)_T\, e^{-i2\pi f\tau}\, d\tau \tag{34}$$

$$= \frac{1}{2M+1} \sum_{m=-M}^{M} S_x(t + mT, f)_T \tag{35}$$

$$= S_x(t,f)_{1/\Delta f} \otimes \eta_{\Delta t,\Delta f}(t). \tag{36}$$

Equation (31) is the convolution theorem (since $h_T(\tau) = 2Tu_{2T}(\tau) = 0$ for $|\tau| > T$) and definition (22) in Chapter 2, and (32) is definition (21) in Chapter 2. Equation (33) is simply the expression of an integral over an interval as the sum of integrals over subintervals that partition the interval. Equation (34) is definition (21) in Chapter 2, and (35) is definition (22) in Chapter 2. Equation (36) follows from (29). If the spectral-smoothing window $H_{\Delta f}$ is not the sinc window, then (27) is an approximation.

The hopped temporally smoothed periodogram is studied in exercises 1 and 2 and for discrete-time data in Chapter 6.

E. WAVE ANALYSIS

One of the most attractive analog methods of spectral analysis is based on the use of electrical wave filters, and is called the wave-analysis method. It is shown in this section that, with certain wave-filter characteristics, this method is exactly equivalent to the temporally smoothed periodogram method.

1. Complex Implementation

The temporally smoothed periodogram for tapered data is defined by (see (3) in Chapter 2 and (1b))

$$S_{x_{1/\Delta f}}(t,f)_{\Delta t} \triangleq \Delta f|[x(t)e^{-i2\pi ft}] \otimes a_{1/\Delta f}(t)|^2 \otimes g_{\Delta t}(t) \tag{37}$$

but can be reexpressed (exercise 3) as

$$S_{x_{1/\Delta f}}(t,f)_{\Delta t} = \Delta f|x(t) \otimes a^f_{1/\Delta f}(t)|^2 \otimes g_{\Delta t}(t), \tag{38}$$

for which

$$a^f_{1/\Delta f}(t) \triangleq a_{1/\Delta f}(t)e^{i2\pi ft}. \tag{39}$$

The smoothing functions $a^f_{1/\Delta f}$ and $g_{\Delta t}$ in (38) can be interpreted as the impulse-response functions of filters with transfer functions

$$A^f_{\Delta f}(\cdot) = F\{a^f_{1/\Delta f}(\cdot)\} \tag{40}$$

and

$$G_{1/\Delta t}(\cdot) = F\{g_{\Delta t}(\cdot)\}, \tag{41}$$

and it is easily shown that

$$A^f_{\Delta f}(\nu) = A_{\Delta f}(\nu - f), \tag{42}$$

where

$$A_{\Delta f}(\cdot) = F\{a_{1/\Delta f}(\cdot)\}. \tag{43}$$

For a typical data-tapering aperture $a_{1/\Delta f}$, $A_{\Delta f}$ is a pulselike function centered at the origin, with width on the order of Δf. Thus, $A^f_{\Delta f}$ is a pulselike function centered at f, with width on the order of Δf. Hence, $A^f_{\Delta f}$ is the transfer function of a *band-pass filter* (BPF) that passes primarily the frequency components of $x(t)$ in the spectral band of width Δf centered at f. Similarly, $G_{1/\Delta t}$ is the transfer function of a *low-pass filter* (LPF) with bandwidth $1/\Delta t$ centered at zero frequency. Thus, we see that the statistical spectrum $S_{x_{1/\Delta f}}(t, f)_{\Delta t}$ can be obtained by band-pass filtering, magnitude-squaring, and low-pass filtering the waveform $x(t)$, as illustrated in Figure 4-4. For this statistical spectral analysis method, which is called *wave analysis*, the condition $\Delta t \Delta f >> 1$ for substantial smoothing requires that the bandwidth Δf of the input BPF (typically called the *predetection*, or *resolution*, bandwidth) greatly exceed the bandwidth $1/\Delta t$ of the output LPF

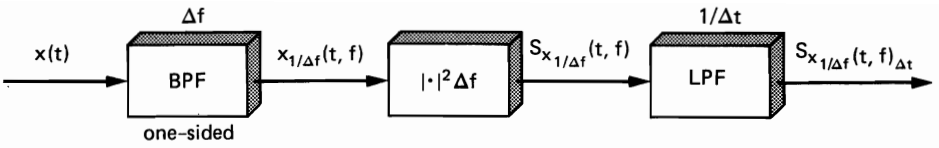


Figure 4-4 Wave analysis method for time-variant statistical spectral analysis. (For $\Delta t \Delta f \gg 1$ and $|f|/\Delta f \gg 1$, the complex one-sided BPF can be replaced with a real two-sided BPF with negligible effect on the measured spectrum.)

(typically called the *postdetection*, or *video*, bandwidth).[5] It follows from approximation (11)–(17) in Chapter 3 that the squared magnitude of the BPF transfer function is the effective spectral smoothing window, $H_{\Delta f}$ in (2b).

The output of the BPF, denoted by $x_T(t, f)$, is given by

$$x_T(t,f) \triangleq x(t) \otimes a_T^f(t) \tag{44}$$

$$= X_T(t,f)e^{i2\pi ft}. \tag{45}$$

Generalizing on interpretations discussed in Part 2 of Section B in Chapter 1, the waveform $x_T(t, f)$ can be interpreted as the *local sine wave component* of $x(t)$ at frequency f and time-locale $[t - T/2, t + T/2]$. The low-pass waveform $X_T(t, f)$ obtained from the band-pass waveform $x_T(t, f)$ by the frequency-shifting operation (45) is called the *complex envelope*[6] or *complex demodulate* of $x_T(t, f)$. By expanding (45) into real and imaginary parts, denoted by subscripts r and i, respectively, we obtain

$$x_T(t,f)_r = X_T(t,f)_r\cos(2\pi ft) - X_T(t,f)_i\sin(2\pi ft) \tag{46}$$

$$= |X_T(t,f)|\cos[2\pi ft + \arg\{X_T(t,f)\}] \tag{47}$$

$$x_T(t,f)_i = X_T(t,f)_i\cos(2\pi ft) + X_T(t,f)_r\sin(2\pi ft) \tag{48}$$

$$= |X_T(t,f)|\sin[2\pi ft + \arg\{X_T(t,f)\}]. \tag{49}$$

Thus, $|X_T(t, f)|$ represents the envelope (amplitude) of either of two sine waves in quadrature at frequency f, with slowly varying (for $1/T << |f|$) amplitude and phase. Substitution of (44) into (38) yields the alternative expression for the output of the wave analyzer,

$$S_{x_{1/\Delta f}}(t,f)_{\Delta t} = \Delta f|x_{1/\Delta f}(t,f)|^2 \otimes g_{\Delta t}(t). \tag{50}$$

It is interesting that the basic time-frequency uncertainty principle described in Chapter 2, which establishes the approximate relation $\Delta t^\circ \Delta f^\circ \cong 1$ on the temporal and spectral resolution widths of a nonstatistical spectral measurement, can be interpreted here as a constraint on the response-time Δt° of a filter with bandwidth Δf°. Specifically, it follows directly from the Fourier transform re-

[5] The terms *detection* and *video bandwidth* originated in the fields of radar and radio, where detection used to mean extraction of the amplitude of an amplitude-modulated sine wave and video referred to a signal that is to be visually displayed on the screen of a cathode ray tube.

[6] If $x_T(t, f)$ is sufficiently narrow band that it is negligibly small for $f < 0$, then the complex envelope $X_T(t, f)$ is a close approximation to the complex envelope $\gamma(t)$ of $x_T(t, f)$ as defined in Rice's representation for band-pass waveforms with center frequency $f_0 = f$ (Appendix 3-1).

lationship between the transfer function and impulse-response function that a filter with bandwidth Δf° takes on the order of $\Delta t^\circ \cong 1/\Delta f^\circ$ units of time to respond fully to an excitation at a given instant. Furthermore, if an input BPF with bandwidth $\Delta f^\circ = \Delta f$ is used, then the condition $\Delta t >> 1/\Delta f$ on the integration time Δt of the output LPF requires that a long segment of the input (much longer than the input-filter-response time) be processed. Moreover, when the relative bandwidth of a BPF is much less than 1, that is, $\Delta f/|f| << 1$, then the relation $\Delta t^\circ \Delta f^\circ \cong 1$ when applied to such a BPF yields $\Delta t^\circ >> 1/|f|$, which reveals that it takes many cycles of excitation before the BPF fully responds. Consequently, if an input BPF with narrow relative bandwidth $\Delta f << |f|$ is used, then the condition $\Delta t >> 1/\Delta f$ on the integration time of the output LPF results in $\Delta t >> 1/\Delta f >> 1/|f|$, which requires that integration be carried out over very many cycles of the local sine wave component.

2. Real Implementation

The BPF defined by (40) has a passband at f but none at the image frequency $-f$. This one-sided BPF requires a complex impulse-response function (39). In order to obtain an implementation involving only real filters, we simply expand the square in (50) to obtain

$$S_{x_{1/\Delta f}}(t,f)_{\Delta t} = \Delta f\,[x_{1/\Delta f}(t,f)_r]^2 \otimes g_{\Delta t}(t) + \Delta f\,[x_{1/\Delta f}(t,f)_i]^2 \otimes g_{\Delta t}(t), \tag{51}$$

in which

$$\begin{aligned} x_T(t,f)_r &\triangleq x(t) \otimes a_T^f(t)_r \\ x_T(t,f)_i &\triangleq x(t) \otimes a_T^f(t)_i, \end{aligned} \tag{52}$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} a_T^f(t)_r &\triangleq a_T(t)\cos(2\pi f t) \\ a_T^f(t)_i &\triangleq a_T(t)\sin(2\pi f t). \end{aligned} \tag{53}$$

It can be shown (exercise 4) that the two terms in (51) are approximately equal for

$$\frac{|f|}{\Delta f} >> 1 \tag{54}$$

and

$$\Delta t \Delta f >> 1, \tag{55}$$

and therefore

$$\begin{aligned} S_{x_{1/\Delta f}}(t,f)_{\Delta t} &\cong 2\Delta f\,[x_{1/\Delta f}(t,f)_r]^2 \otimes g_{\Delta t}(t) \\ &\cong 2\Delta f\,[x_{1/\Delta f}(t,f)_i]^2 \otimes g_{\Delta t}(t), \qquad \frac{|f|}{\Delta f} >> 1,\ \Delta t \Delta f >> 1. \end{aligned} \tag{56}$$

F. DEMODULATION

A direct implementation of a spectrum analyzer using the wave-analysis method requires a bank of typically many BPF-squarer-LPF devices, one for each frequency f of interest in the spectral band of interest. For a spectral resolution width of

Δf and a total bandwidth of B, this amounts to $B/\Delta f$ individual values of f. This number is often as large as several orders of magnitude. A means for simplifying such a highly complex spectrum analyzer is based on the method of demodulation, by which spectral components at different frequencies are shifted to a common frequency such as $f = 0$. This method is described here.

1. Complex Implementation

An alternative to the wave-analysis method of implementation of the statistical spectrum $S_{x_{1/\Delta f}}(t, f)_{\Delta t}$ is suggested by (37). Specifically, the operation

$$X_T(t,f) \triangleq [x(t)e^{-i2\pi ft}] \otimes a_T(t) \tag{57}$$

on $x(t)$, which consists of frequency-shifting down by an amount f and low-pass filtering, is called *complex demodulation*, and it produces the complex demodulate (envelope) of the local sine wave component $x_T(t, f)$. It follows from (45) that the complex demodulate is simply the local sine wave component shifted down to zero frequency, as illustrated in Figure 4-5.

It follows directly from (37) and (57) that the temporally smoothed statistical spectrum for tapered data $S_{x_{1/\Delta f}}(t, f)_{\Delta t}$ can be obtained by low-pass filtering the squared magnitude of the complex demodulate, as illustrated in Figure 4-6(a). The condition $\Delta t \Delta f >> 1$ for substantial smoothing requires that the bandwidth Δf of the input LPF greatly exceed the bandwidth $1/\Delta t$ of the output LPF. It follows from approximation (11)–(17) in Chapter 3 that the squared magnitude of the input LPF transfer function is the effective spectral-smoothing window, $H_{\Delta f}$ in (2b).

It is explained in exercises 3 and 5 that the demodulation spectrum analyzer can be derived from the wave analyzer simply by using band-pass to low-pass transformations on the filters in the latter analyzer, as illustrated in Figures 4-5 and 4-8. (Observe that the multiplication by $\exp(-i2\pi ft)$ just preceding the squared-magnitude operation has no effect after this operation.)

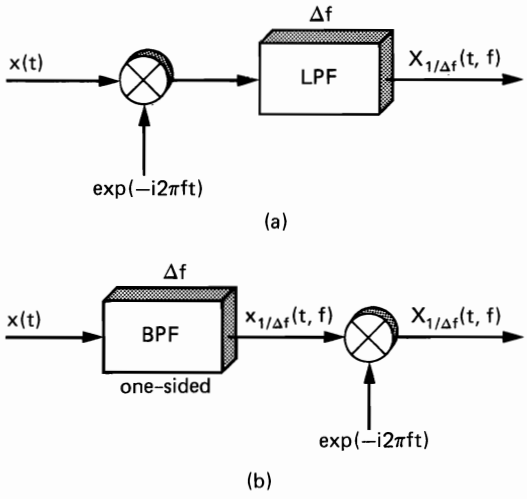


Figure 4-5 (a) Direct generation of complex demodulate. (b) Indirect generation of complex demodulate from local sine wave component.

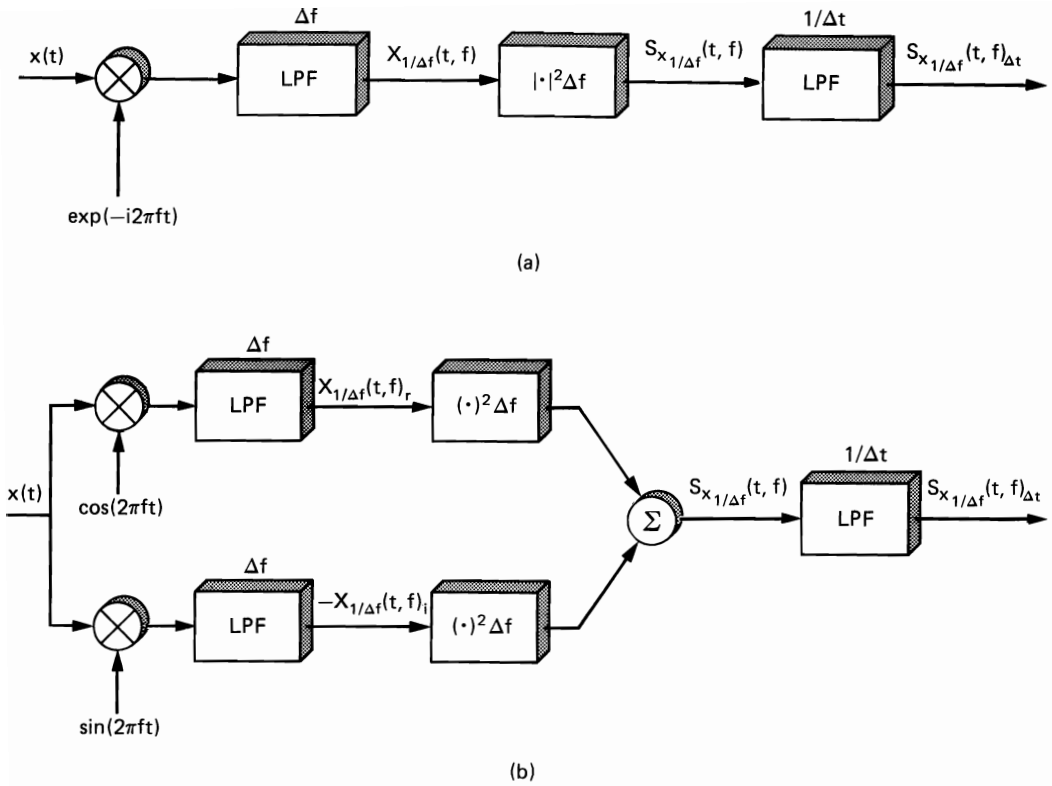


Figure 4-6 (a) Demodulation method for time-variant statistical spectral analysis. (b) Real implementation of demodulation method for time-variant statistical spectral analysis. (Either of the two parallel paths can be deleted with negligible effect on the measured spectrum provided that (i) $\Delta t \Delta f \gg 1$ and (ii) either $x(t)$ contains no finite additive sine wave components in the lag product or the swept-frequency implementation in Figure 4-7 is used.)

2. Real Implementation

The demodulation operation (57) involves a complex sine wave. In order to obtain an implementation involving only real sine wave generators, we simply expand the squared magnitude of (57) to obtain from (37)

$$S_{x_{1/\Delta f}}(t, f)_{\Delta t} = \Delta f\, [X_{1/\Delta f}(t, f)_r]^2 \otimes g_{\Delta t}(t) + \Delta f\, [X_{1/\Delta f}(t, f)_i]^2 \otimes g_{\Delta t}(t), \tag{58}$$

in which

$$\begin{aligned} X_T(t, f)_r &\triangleq [x(t)\cos(2\pi f t)] \otimes a_T(t) \\ X_T(t, f)_i &\triangleq [x(t)\sin(2\pi f t)] \otimes a_T(t). \end{aligned} \tag{59}$$

This real implementation is illustrated in Figure 4-6(b).

It can be shown (exercise 4) that the two terms in (58) are approximately equal for

$$\Delta t \Delta f >> 1, \tag{60}$$

provided that $x(t)$ contains no periodicities[7] that would violate the condition

$$\left|\mathrm{Re}\left\{\int_{-T}^{T} R_x^{2f}(t,\tau)_{\Delta t} T v_T(\tau)\, d\tau\right\}\right| \ll S_{x_T}(t,f)_{\Delta t}, \tag{61}$$

for which (using $\alpha = 2f$)

$$R_x^{\alpha}(t,\tau)_{\Delta t} \triangleq \frac{1}{\Delta t}\int_{t-\Delta t/2}^{t+\Delta t/2} x\left(u+\frac{\tau}{2}\right)x\left(u-\frac{\tau}{2}\right) e^{-i2\pi\alpha u}\, du\, [2\Delta t\, u_{2\Delta t}(\tau)]. \tag{62}$$

Therefore, (58) is approximated by

$$\begin{aligned} S_{x_{1/\Delta f}}(t,f)_{\Delta t} &\cong 2\Delta f\,[X_{1/\Delta f}(t,f)_r]^2 \otimes g_{\Delta t}(t) \\ &\cong 2\Delta f\,[X_{1/\Delta f}(t,f)_i]^2 \otimes g_{\Delta t}(t), \qquad \Delta t\Delta f >> 1 \end{aligned} \tag{63}$$

provided that (61) holds. In this case, either of the two parallel signal-flow paths in Figure 4-6(b) can be deleted to obtain a single-demodulator implementation.

3. Swept-Frequency Implementation

An economical way to construct a spectrum analyzer that covers a broad range of frequencies is to use the demodulation method and sweep the frequency f of the sine wave used for demodulation throughout the desired spectral band. Let us consider a linear sweep for which the *instantaneous frequency* (see Appendix 2-1) is

$$f(t) = f_0 + \beta t. \tag{64}$$

That is, the wave used for demodulation is

$$d(t) \triangleq \cos[2\pi \textstyle\int f(t)\, dt] = \cos(2\pi f_0 t + \pi\beta t^2), \tag{65}$$

which is a *linear frequency modulated sine wave*. In order to obtain the desired spectral resolution, it is required that $f(t)$ not change more than Δf during the integration time Δt,

$$|f(t+\Delta t) - f(t)| \leq \Delta f, \tag{66}$$

which results in the condition

$$|\beta| \leq \frac{\Delta f}{\Delta t}. \tag{67}$$

Since the linear FM sine wave (65) can be reexpressed as

$$d(t) = \cos[2\pi f(t_0)t - \theta_0(t)], \tag{68}$$

for which $f(t_0)$ is given by (64), evaluated at $t = t_0$, and

$$\theta_0(t) \triangleq 2\pi\beta\left(t_0 t - \frac{t^2}{2}\right), \tag{69}$$

then in any time interval of length Δt, centered at $t = t_0$, we can *interpret* $d(t)$ as having fixed frequency $f(t_0)$ and time-varying phase $\theta_0(t)$. Furthermore, if we choose the maximum sweep rate consistent with condition (67), $|\beta| = \Delta f/\Delta t$,

[7] The statistical parameter (62) is a measure of the strength of any possible additive sine wave component at frequency α contained in the lag product and is studied in Part II (see also Chapter 7, Section C).

then this phase sweeps through a range of

$$\max[\theta_0(t)] - \min[\theta_0(t)] = \frac{\pi}{4}\Delta t \Delta f \tag{70}$$

during the time interval $[t_0 - \Delta t/2,\ t_0 + \Delta t/2]$. Thus, in all cases for which $\Delta t \Delta f > 2$, the phase $\theta_0(t)$ sweeps through more than $\pi/2$ radians for each frequency of interest. It follows that the simplified method of implementation that uses only one demodulator, (63), rather than both the *in-phase* and *quadrature* demodulators, (58)-(59), effectively realizes both an in-phase and a quadrature demodulator (since $\cos(2\pi f_0 t + \pi/2) = \sin(2\pi f_0 t)$). Hence, the single-demodulator swept-frequency implementation can be used even if the data contains periodicity that violates condition (61).

Most practical swept-frequency spectrum analyzers use a combination of the wave-analysis and demodulation methods, by demodulating all frequencies of interest down to a fixed *intermediate frequency* $f_1 > 0$ (rather than to $f_1 = 0$), as illustrated in Figure 4-7. However, this creates a problem that requires *prefiltering* to solve, because the real sine wave used for demodulation not only shifts spectral components down from frequencies near $f = f_0$ to frequencies near f_1 (i.e., a negative shift by $f - f_1$) but also shifts spectral components up from frequencies near $2f_1 - f$ to frequencies near f_1 (i.e., a positive shift by $f - f_1$). Let us assume that all frequencies f of interest for spectral analysis are greater than f_1. Then the undesired *image* components at frequencies near $2f_1 - f$ can be eliminated by prefiltering with a high-pass filter with cutoff frequency f_* that satisfies the inequalities

$$-f_* < 2f_1 - f - \frac{\Delta f}{2} \tag{71a}$$

and

$$f_* < f - \frac{\Delta f}{2}. \tag{71b}$$

For example, if f_* is put in the middle of the range specified by (71) then (within $\pm \Delta f/2$)

$$f_* = f - f_1, \tag{72}$$

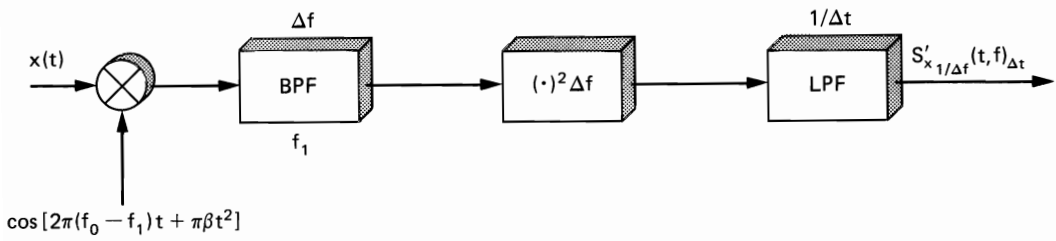


Figure 4-7 Swept-frequency implementation of spectrum analyzer. (The analysis frequency at time t is $f(t) = f_0 + \beta t$.)

which indicates that the cutoff frequency must track the swept frequency f. As an alternative, the cutoff frequency can be increased in discrete steps as the swept frequency f moves from one range to another. In particular, each time f increases to the point where (71a) will be violated, f_* can be increased instantaneously to the point where (71b) is just satisfied.

G. A GENERAL REPRESENTATION

Every method of spectral analysis considered in this chapter (except the swept-frequency wave analyzer) can be mathematically represented by quadratic time-invariant transformations of the data to be analyzed, $x(t)$. (The swept-frequency wave analyzer is a time-variant quadratic transformation.) Specifically, if $y_f(t)$ denotes a time-variant statistical spectrum at a given frequency f, such as

$$y_f(t) = S_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, f)_{\Delta f},$$

then $y_f(t)$ can be represented by

$$y_f(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} k_f(u, v)x(t - u)x(t - v)\, du\, dv \tag{73}$$

for some appropriate kernel k_f. Furthermore, the kernel is conveniently represented by

$$k_f(u, v) = m\left(\frac{u + v}{2}, v - u\right)e^{-i2\pi f(v-u)}, \tag{74}$$

where the function $m(t, \tau)$ is independent of f and has width Δt in the variable t and width $1/\Delta f$ in the variable τ. Furthermore, for every method considered (except the hopped temporal-smoothing method), the function is a two-dimensional pulselike function. For $\Delta t \Delta f >> 1$, it has oblong contours of constant elevation of its main lobe. (For the hopped temporal-smoothing method without overlap, the function $m(t, \tau)$ is a series versus t of uniformly spaced pulses in τ.) Moreover, for each of these methods this function can be approximated by a separable function,

$$m(t, \tau) \cong g_{\Delta t}(t)h_{1/\Delta f}(\tau). \tag{75}$$

This approximation is either exact, or it is a close approximation for $\Delta t \Delta f >> 1$. For example, for the temporally smoothed periodogram $y_f(t) = S_{x_{1/\Delta f}}(t, f)_{\Delta t}$ for tapered data, it follows (exercise 9) from (37) that

$$m(t, \tau) = \Delta f \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} a_{1/\Delta f}\left(t - w + \frac{\tau}{2}\right)a_{1/\Delta f}\left(t - w - \frac{\tau}{2}\right)g_{\Delta t}(w)\, dw \tag{76a}$$

$$\cong g_{\Delta t}(t)h_{1/\Delta f}(\tau), \qquad \Delta t \Delta f >> 1, \tag{76b}$$

where

$$h_{1/\Delta f}(\tau) = r_a(\tau)\Delta f. \tag{76c}$$

Because of the equivalences described in Sections E and F, (76) also applies to the wave-analysis and demodulation methods. As another example, if $y_f(t)$ is the spectrally smoothed periodogram $S_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, f)_{\Delta f}$, then it follows (exercise 9) from

(21) that

$$m(t, \tau) = \frac{1}{\Delta t} a_{\Delta t}\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right) a_{\Delta t}\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right) h_{1/\Delta f}(\tau) \tag{77a}$$

$$\cong g_{\Delta t}(t) h_{1/\Delta f}(\tau), \qquad \Delta t \Delta f >> 1, \tag{77b}$$

where

$$g_{\Delta t}(t) = \frac{1}{\Delta t} [a_{\Delta t}(t)]^2. \tag{77c}$$

Because of the equivalence described in Section B, (77) also applies to the method based on Fourier transformation of a tapered correlogram. As a final example, if $y_f(t)$ is the Fourier transform of the tapered finite-average autocorrelation $S_x(t, f)_{\Delta t, \Delta f}$ (or, equivalently, the spectrally smoothed pseudospectrum), then it follows (exercise 9) from (22) that

$$m(t, \tau) = \begin{cases} g_{\Delta t}(t) h_{1/\Delta f}(\tau), & |\tau| \leq T \\ 0, & |\tau| > T, \end{cases} \tag{78a}$$

where

$$g_{\Delta t}(t) = u_{\Delta t}(t). \tag{78b}$$

This general representation, (73)–(74), provides a unifying basis for describing the similarities and differences among the various methods of spectral analysis and for design of alternative methods of spectral analysis. Furthermore, (73)–(74) provides a unifying basis for the study of the resolution, leakage, and reliability properties of spectrum estimates, which is taken up in the next chapter.

As one example of the use of (73)–(74) for design, consider the kernel representation

$$m(t, \tau) = g_{\Delta t}\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right) a_{1/\Delta f}(\tau) \tag{79a}$$

$$\cong g_{\Delta t}(t) h_{1/\Delta f}(\tau), \qquad \Delta t \Delta f >> 1. \tag{79b}$$

Substitution of (79a) into (74) and then (74) into (73) yields (exercise 10)

$$y_f(t) = \{x(t)[x(t) \otimes (a_{1/\Delta f}(t) e^{-i2\pi f t})]\} \otimes g_{\Delta t}(t), \tag{80}$$

which is a type of cross-wave analyzer. Because of (79b), we know that the measurement (80) is an appropriate spectrum estimate. This type of spectrum analyzer is considered further in Appendix 4-1.

H. SUMMARY

In this chapter, an introductory comparative study of a variety of analog (continuous-time and continuous-amplitude) methods of measurement of statistical spectra is conducted. In Section A, approximate equivalences among the four methods based on temporal and spectral smoothing of the periodogram and pseudospectrum are derived, and in Section B it is established that the two spectral smoothing

methods are each exactly equivalent to a method consisting of Fourier transformation of a tapered autocorrelation function. The resultant eight distinct methods for obtaining the four distinct (but approximately equivalent) statistical spectra are summarized in Figures 4-1 and 4-2. In Section C, the spectral leakage phenomenon that results from the sidelobes of the effective spectral smoothing window is explained, and the sine-wave-removal, tapering, and prewhitening approaches to reducing spectral leakage are described. Then Section D explains that temporal smoothing based on continuously sliding periodograms or pseudospectra can be modified to obtain hopped periodograms or pseudospectra, and an exact equivalence between a hopped time-averaged pseudospectrum and a spectrally smoothed pseudospectrum is derived. A similar but approximate equivalence for the hopped time-averaged periodogram is derived in exercises 1 and 2.

In Section E, an alternative method for implementing the temporally smoothed periodogram, which is based on filtering is introduced. Both real and complex implementations, called *wave analyzers*, are developed (Figure 4-4). Then in Section F, another alternative implementation based on demodulation is derived. The real and complex implementations of the *demodulation spectrum analyzer* (Figure 4-6) can be obtained directly from the corresponding implementations of the wave analyzer by using band-pass-to-low-pass transformations on the filters (Figure 4-8). It is then explained that an economical way to construct a spectrum analyzer that covers a broad range of frequencies is to use the demodulation method and sweep the frequency of the sine wave used for demodulation. It is also explained that it is often more practical to use swept-frequency demodulation to down-convert all frequencies to a fixed nonzero intermediate frequency and then use the wave-analysis method (Figure 4-7). In addition, an alternative method of swept-frequency spectral analysis that incorporates time compression is described in exercise 14.

Finally in Section G, a general representation for all preceding types of spectrum analyzers (except the swept-frequency wave analyzer) is introduced, and it is explained that the two width parameters Δt and Δf of the kernel $m(t, \tau)$ that prescribes the representation for a particular spectrum analyzer determine the temporal and spectral resolution widths of the statistical spectrum produced by the analyzer. A convenient separable approximation (75) to the kernel is introduced, and it is explained that the resultant approximate and exact general representations provide a unifying basis for the design and analysis of spectrum analyzers. This is demonstrated in the next chapter.

In Appendix 4-1, an alternative wave-analysis method that is equivalent to a method based on Fourier transformation of a tapered autocorrelation is presented.

EXERCISES

1. (a) Let $H_{\Delta f}(\cdot) = F\{h_T(\cdot)\}$ with $h_T(\tau) = 0$ for $|\tau| > T_0/2$ and $T_0 \geq T$.

Verify the following identity for the spectrally smoothed pseudospectrum:

$$S_x(t,f)_{\Delta t} \otimes H_{\Delta f}(f) = S_x(t,f)_{T_0} \otimes \eta_{\Delta t,1/T_0}(t) \otimes H_{\Delta f}(f), \tag{81}$$

where $\eta_{\Delta t,1/T_0}$ is the rectangular comb window defined by (28) and $\Delta t/T_0$ is an integer.

(b) Show that if $T_0 >> T = 1/\Delta f$, then (81) yields the following close approximation for the spectrally smoothed periodogram:

$$S_{x_{\Delta t}}(t,f) \otimes H_{\Delta f}(f) \cong S_{x_{T_0}}(t,f) \otimes \eta_{\Delta t,1/T_0}(t) \otimes H_{\Delta f}(f). \tag{82}$$

Hint: Follow a procedure analogous to (11)–(13) in Chapter 3. Then use (30) in Chapter 2 (with Δt replaced by T_0). (Equivalence (82) reveals that before spectral smoothing, the length of the data segment that must be Fourier transformed to obtain a periodogram can be reduced from Δt to T_0 by partitioning the time interval of length Δt into $\Delta t/T_0$ nonoverlapping adjacent intervals of length T_0; then these periodograms [$\Delta t/T_0$ in number] are simply averaged. In practice, the spectral-smoothing operation is usually omitted, as discussed in exercise 2.)

(c) Is the identity (81) valid if the convolution with $H_{\Delta f}$ is deleted on both sides? Why?

2. (a) If $x(t)$ contains no *second-order periodicities*, in the sense that

$$\lim_{T\to\infty} \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right) x\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right) e^{-i2\pi\alpha t}\, dt = 0$$

for all $\alpha \neq 0$ (especially for α equal to integer multiples of $1/T_*$), then it can be shown, as it is in Part II (*synchronized averaging identity*), that the limit autocorrelation defined by (6) in Chapter 1 can be obtained with hopped time-averaging,

$$\hat{R}_x(\tau) = \lim_{M\to\infty} \frac{1}{2M+1} \sum_{m=-M}^{M} x\left(t + mT_* + \frac{\tau}{2}\right) x\left(t + mT_* - \frac{\tau}{2}\right) \tag{83}$$

for all t. Use (83) to prove that the limit spectrum can be obtained with hopped time-averaging,

$$\lim_{T\to\infty} \lim_{M\to\infty} \frac{1}{2M+1} \sum_{m=-M}^{M} S_{x_T}(t + mT_*, f) = \hat{S}_x(f). \tag{84}$$

Hint: First use the periodogram-correlogram relation; then substitute the definition of the correlogram; then evaluate the limit, $M \to \infty$; then evaluate one of the integrals and then perform the remaining Fourier transformation using the convolution theorem. Finally, evaluate the limit $T \to \infty$.

(b) To verify that hopped temporal smoothing of the periodogram, $S_{x_T}(t, f) \otimes \eta_{\Delta t,1/T_*}(t)$, is approximately equivalent to spectral smoothing of the pseudospectrum (for appropriate values of T/T_*), modify the procedure used in part (a) by replacing the step $M \to \infty$ with a step that introduces the approximation

$$\frac{1}{2M+1} \sum_{m=-M}^{M} R_{x_T}(t + mT_*, \tau) \cong R_x(t, \tau)_{(2M+1)T_*} \frac{1}{T} r_a(\tau),$$

which is useful for $T/T_* \geq 2$ and $\Delta t = (2M+1)T_* >> T$. Since the spectrally smoothed periodogram approximates the spectrally smoothed pseudospectrum for $\Delta t \Delta f >> 1$ (see (15a)), then the result obtained reveals that the hopped time-averaged periodogram approximates the spectrally smoothed periodogram with

smoothing window $(1/T)|A_{1/T}(f)|^2$, provided that $T/T_* \geq 2$ and $\Delta t = (2M + 1)T_* >> T = 1/\Delta f$.

(c) A method for computation of statistical spectra proposed by P. D. Welch [Welch 1967] (for discrete-time data) averages the periodograms of tapered data. The data segments overlap each other by 50%. Thus $T = 2T_*$ and there are $1 + \Delta t/T_*$ data segments each of length T. Consider the triangular tapering window $a_T(t) = T_* v_{T_*}(t)$, and use the result of (b) to show that the effective spectral-smoothing window is $(1/T)[z_{2/T}(f)]^2$.

3. (a) For the wave analyzer, derive (38) from (37).

(b) Verify relation (45) between the complex demodulate and the local sine wave component.

(c) Verify the equivalence illustrated in Figure 4-8 for which the BPF is a complex one-sided filter with impulse-response function

$$a^f(t) = a(t)e^{i2\pi ft},$$

where $a(t)$ is the impulse-response function of the LPF.

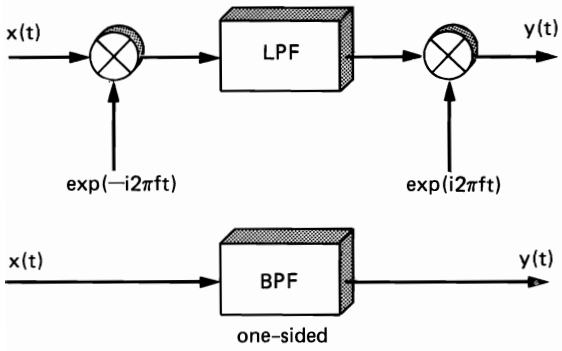


Figure 4-8 Equivalent filters.

4. (a) Verify that the two terms in (56), which describe the wave analyzer, are approximately equal for $\Delta t \Delta f >> 1$ and $|f| >> \Delta f$. *Hint:* Use the following trigonometric identities in the order given:

(i)
$$\begin{aligned} \cos(2\pi f[t - u]) &= \cos(2\pi ft)\cos(2\pi fu) + \sin(2\pi ft)\sin(2\pi fu) \\ \sin(2\pi f[t - u]) &= \sin(2\pi ft)\cos(2\pi fu) - \cos(2\pi ft)\sin(2\pi fu), \end{aligned} \tag{85}$$

(ii)
$$\begin{aligned} [\cos(2\pi ft)]^2 &= \tfrac{1}{2} + \tfrac{1}{2}\cos(4\pi ft) \\ [\sin(2\pi ft)]^2 &= \tfrac{1}{2} - \tfrac{1}{2}\cos(4\pi ft), \end{aligned} \tag{86}$$

(iii)
$$\cos(2\pi ft)\sin(2\pi ft) = \tfrac{1}{2}\sin(4\pi ft). \tag{87}$$

Also use the fact that the terms (using $T = 1/\Delta f$)

$$\begin{aligned} &\frac{1}{\Delta t}\int_{-\Delta t/2}^{\Delta t/2} [X_T(t,f)_r]^2 \cos(4\pi ft)\, dt, \\ &\frac{1}{\Delta t}\int_{-\Delta t/2}^{\Delta t/2} [X_T(t,f)_i]^2 \cos(4\pi ft)\, dt, \\ &\frac{1}{\Delta t}\int_{-\Delta t/2}^{\Delta t/2} X_T(t,f)_r X_T(t,f)_i \sin(4\pi ft)\, dt \end{aligned} \tag{88}$$

can be neglected. (This can be seen as follows. Since $X_T(t, f)_r$ and $X_T(t, f)_i$ have bandwidths on the order of $1/T$ centered at zero, then $[X_T(t, f)_r]^2$, $X_T(t, f)_r X_T(t, f)_i$, and $[X_T(t, f)_i]^2$ have bandwidths on the order of $2/T$ centered at zero, and therefore both the cosine- and sine-Fourier transforms of each of these, at frequencies $|\nu|$ exceeding $2/T$, are relatively small and become negligible for $|\nu|T/2 >> 1$. For Δt substantially exceeding the reciprocal bandwidth $T/2$, the three integrals (88) are finite cosine- and sine-transforms (scaled by $1/\Delta t$) that accurately reflect the spectral characteristics of the time-functions $[X_T(t, f)_r]^2$, $X_T(t, f)_r X_T(t, f)_i$, and $[X_T(t, f)_i]^2$, and these Fourier transforms are evaluated at $\nu = 2f$. Hence for $|f| >> 1/T$ and $\Delta t >> T$, these integrals become negligible compared with remaining terms identified in (89) below.) This yields the close approximations (with $T = 1/\Delta f$)

$$\begin{aligned} S_{x_T}(t, f)_{\Delta t} &\cong \frac{1}{\Delta t} \int_{-\Delta t/2}^{\Delta t/2} \frac{2}{T} \left[\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} a_T^f(t - v - u)_r x(u)\, du \right]^2 dv \\ &\cong \frac{1}{\Delta t} \int_{-\Delta t/2}^{\Delta t/2} \frac{2}{T} \left[\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} a_T^f(t - v - u)_i x(u)\, du \right]^2 dv. \end{aligned} \tag{89}$$

(b) Verify that the two terms in (63) (and (58)), which describe the demodulation spectrum analyzer, are approximately equal for $\Delta t \Delta f >> 1$. *Hint:* Define the function

$$R_{x_T}^{\alpha}(t, \tau) \triangleq \frac{1}{T} \int_{t-(T-|\tau|)/2}^{t+(T-|\tau|)/2} x\left(u + \frac{\tau}{2}\right) x\left(u - \frac{\tau}{2}\right) e^{-i2\pi\alpha u}\, du\, [2Tu_{2T}(\tau)],$$

and show that the difference d of the two terms in (63) is given by

$$d = \mathrm{Re}\left\{ \frac{1}{\Delta t} \int_{-\Delta t/2}^{\Delta t/2} \int_{-T}^{T} R_{x_T}^{\alpha}(t - u, \tau)\, d\tau\, du \right\}$$

with $\alpha = 2f$. Then use a slight generalization (to $\alpha \neq 0$) of the result of exercise 6, Chapter 2 (namely, (23) in Chapter 2) to obtain the identity

$$d = \mathrm{Re}\left\{ \int_{-T}^{T} [R_x^{\alpha}(t, \tau)_{\Delta t} \otimes u_{T-|\tau|}(t)][Tv_T(\tau)]\, d\tau \right\},$$

for which $R_x^{\alpha}(t, \tau)_{\Delta t}$ is defined by (62). Now, if $x(t)$ contains no second-order periodicity, then (as explained in Part II; see also Chapter 7, Section C),

$$\lim_{\Delta t \to \infty} R_x^{\alpha}(t, \tau)_{\Delta t} = 0,$$

and therefore

$$\lim_{\Delta t \to \infty} d = 0.$$

Hence, d is negligible for sufficiently large Δt. (An alternative approach to this problem is to observe that the two terms in (63) converge ($\Delta t \to \infty$) to the frequency-smoothed limit spectra for the in-phase and quadrature low-pass components of the real local sine wave component (52); and then use the fact that these limit spectra are identical if $x(t)$ contains no second-order periodicity (in which case the real local sine wave component (52) contains no second-order periodicity), as established in Appendix 3-1.)

5. For the real demodulation spectrum analyzer, derive (58) directly from (50) using nothing more than (45). This emphasizes the fact that the demodulation method is simply the low-pass implementation of the bandpass wave-analysis method.

6. **(a)** Consider the problem of using the swept-frequency method of implementation for an audio spectrum analyzer that covers the band from 10 Hz to 10,000 Hz, with a frequency resolution of $\Delta f = 10$ Hz and an integration time of $\Delta t = 1$ s ($\Delta t \Delta f = 10$). Verify that it would take $16\frac{2}{3}$ min to analyze the whole band from 10 Hz to 10,000 Hz. (This reveals why the swept-frequency method is used primarily for higher frequency ranges with broader resolution widths.)
   (b) Consider a swept-frequency spectrum analyzer that covers the band from f_0 to $10^3 f_0$, with a spectral resolution of $\Delta f = f_0$ and an integration time that satisfies $\Delta t \Delta f = 10$. Show that if it is desired to analyze the whole band from f_0 to $10^3 f_0$ in 0.1 s, then f_0 must be at least 100 KHz.
   (c) Show that for a swept-frequency spectrum analyzer, only 0.1% of the total data used to obtain an analysis of the band from f_0 to $10^3 f_0$ is used to measure the spectrum in the minimum resolvable band of width Δf, if $\Delta f = f_0$.
   (d) Verify that approximately 100 cycles at frequency f are averaged by the output LPF if $\Delta t \Delta f = 10$ and the input BPF has relative bandwidth $\Delta f / |f| = 1/10$.

7. As explained in Chapter 2 (see exercise 14, Chapter 2), the resolution width Δf^* of the limit spectrum $\hat{S}_x(f)$ is on the order of the reciprocal of the overall width $\Delta\tau^*$ of the limit autocorrelation $\hat{R}_x(\tau)$,

$$\Delta f^* \cong \frac{1}{\Delta\tau^*}.$$

(For example, an oscillatory time-series gives rise to a limit autocorrelation with decaying oscillation, which dies away for $|\tau| > \Delta\tau^* \cong 1/\Delta f^*$, where Δf^* is the width of the spectral peak that corresponds to the oscillatory behavior.) Thus, if it is desired to resolve all fine structure in $\hat{S}_x(f)$, then the spectral resolution capability Δf of the measurement method must satisfy

$$\Delta f \leqslant \Delta f^* \cong \frac{1}{\Delta\tau^*},$$

and if it is desired to obtain a reliable measurement, then the amount Δt of data analyzed must satisfy $\Delta t \Delta f >> 1$, and therefore

$$\Delta t >> \frac{1}{\Delta f} \geqslant \Delta\tau^*.$$

Assume that $\Delta\tau^* = 1$ ms, or $\Delta f^* = 1$ KHz, and $\Delta t \Delta f \cong 100$.

Select appropriate values for the parameters for the following measurement methods:
(a) Temporally smoothed periodogram of tapered data: tapering window width and time-smoothing interval.
(b) Spectrally smoothed periodogram: length of data segment Fourier transformed and width of spectral smoothing window.
(c) Fourier transformed tapered correlogram: length of data segment correlated and width of correlogram-tapering window.
(d) Hopped temporally smoothed periodograms of half-overlapped tapered data segments: width of tapering window and number of periodograms averaged.
(e) Wave analyzer: bandwidths of input BPF and output LPF and total amount of data needed.
(f) Demodulation method: bandwidths of input and output LPFs, and total amount of data needed.
(g) Swept-frequency method: bandwidths of input BPF and output LPF and total

amount of data needed for a sweep rate of $\beta = \Delta f/\Delta t$ Hz/s and an overall frequency range of 100 KHz.

Answers: (a) width = 2 ms, smoothing interval = 200 ms; (d) width = 2 ms, number = 200; (g) input bandwidth = 500 Hz, output bandwidth = 5 Hz, sweep rate = 2500 Hz/s, amount of data = 40 s.

8. Consider an LTI system with unknown transfer function $H(f)$, which is subjected to random excitation $n(t)$ and random measurement noise $m(t)$, as depicted in Figure 4-9. The random waveforms $n(t)$ and $m(t)$ are stationary (i.e., their limit autocorrelations exist) and broadband with limit spectra that are flat (with values of N_0 and M_0, respectively) for $|f| \leq B$, where B is the bandwidth of the LTI system. Also, $n(t)$ and $m(t)$ are uncorrelated with each other. Only $x(t)$ is accessible, but N_0 and M_0 are known.

(a) Propose and describe in detail two distinct methods for measuring $|H(f)|$ with a degree of accuracy that can (theoretically) be made as high as desired. Identify the *effective* spectral smoothing window for each method, and compare them in terms of potential leakage.

(b) Assume that $x(t)$ is available for only Δt seconds, and describe in detail how this limits the accuracy (resolution and reliability) with which $|H(f)|$ can be measured. Discuss how you might go about choosing specific values for parameters (to specify spectral resolution Δf) for your measurement methods.

9. The purpose of this exercise is to develop a systematic approach to solving for the kernel representor $m(t, \tau)$ in the general representation (73)–(74) for time-variant statistical spectra. This is accomplished by first reviewing the basic method for changing variables in a double integral in part (a). Then in part (b), this method is used to solve for the effect of time-averaging and frequency-smoothing on the kernel representor. In parts (c) and (d), the kernel representors for the time-variant periodogram and time-variant pseudospectrum are solved for. Finally in part (e) the results of parts (b) through (d) are combined to obtain explicit formulas for the kernel representors for various specific statistical spectra.

(a) When changing variables in a double integral,

$$K = \int_a^b \int_c^d I[u, v]\, du\, dv,$$

according to the transformation

$$u = p(t, \tau)$$
$$v = q(t, \tau)$$

with inverse

$$t = r(u, v)$$
$$\tau = s(u, v),$$

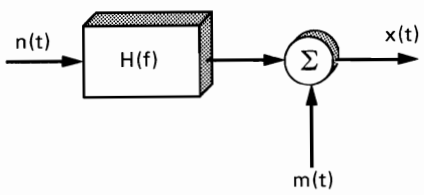


Figure 4-9 System subject to random excitation and random measurement noise.

the area of the incremental volume $dudv$ gets transformed into the area $J(t, \tau)dtd\tau$, where

$$J(t, \tau) = |A(t, \tau)|$$

and $A(t, \tau)$ is the Jacobian determinant

$$A(t, \tau) = \det\begin{bmatrix} \frac{\partial p}{\partial t} & \frac{\partial p}{\partial \tau} \\ \frac{\partial q}{\partial t} & \frac{\partial q}{\partial \tau} \end{bmatrix}.$$

Thus, K becomes

$$K = \int_{a'}^{b'} \int_{c'}^{d'} I[p(t, \tau), q(t, \tau)]\, J(t, \tau)\, dt\, d\tau.$$

For example, for the linear transformation

$$u = p(t, \tau) = \alpha t + \beta\tau + \mu$$
$$v = q(t, \tau) = \gamma t + \sigma\tau + \eta,$$

we have

$$J(t, \tau) = \alpha\sigma - \beta\gamma.$$

Also, since the inverse transformation is given by

$$t = r(u, v) = \alpha' u + \beta' v + \mu'$$
$$\tau = s(u, v) = \gamma' u + \sigma' v + \eta',$$

where α', β', γ', σ', μ', and η' are determined from α, β, γ, σ, μ, and η by matrix inversion, then the limits of integration a', b', c', and d' can be determined from a, b, c, and d. For example, we can first choose the limits a' and b' for τ according to

$$a' = \min_{\substack{u \in [a, b] \\ v \in [c, d]}} s(u, v)$$
$$b' = \max_{\substack{u \in [a, b] \\ v \in [c, d]}} s(u, v),$$

and then solve for c' and d' as functions of τ, using the same minimization and maximization methods on $r[u, v]$ but subject to the constraint $s(u, v) = \tau$ for each $\tau \in [a', b']$. As an exercise, show that for $a = c$, $b = d$, $t = (u + v)/2$, $\tau = v - u$, we obtain $J = 1$, $a' = c - b$, $b' = d - a$, $c' = c - |\tau|/2$, $d' = d + |\tau|/2$. *Hint:* Draw a picture that describes this change of variables as a transformation of coordinates in a plane and shows the region of integration as a rectangle.

(b) Consider the quadratic time-invariant transformation

$$w_f(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} k_f'(u, v)x(t - u)x(t - v)\, du\, dv,$$

where

$$k_f'(u, v) = m'\left(\frac{u + v}{2}, v - u\right)e^{-i2\pi f(v-u)}.$$

Use the change of variables

$$s = t - \frac{u + v}{2}$$

$$\tau = v - u$$

to show that

$$w_f(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} m'(t - s, \tau) e^{-i2\pi f\tau} x\left(s + \frac{\tau}{2}\right) x\left(s - \frac{\tau}{2}\right) ds\, d\tau.$$

Let

$$y_f(t) = w_f(t) \otimes g(t)$$

and show that $y_f(t)$ has the same form of representation as $w_f(t)$ with kernel representor given by

$$m(t, \tau) = m'(t, \tau) \otimes g(t).$$

Similarly let

$$y_f(t) = w_f(t) \otimes H(f)$$

and show that

$$m(t, \tau) = m'(t, \tau) h(\tau)$$

where $h = F^{-1}\{H\}$.

(c) Show that the time-variant periodogram with data-tapering window a_T can be put into the form of $w_f(t)$ in (b) with kernel representor

$$m'(t, \tau) = \frac{1}{T} a_T\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right) a_T\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right).$$

Hint: Use (18) and (20) in Chapter 2.

(d) Show that the time-variant pseudospectrum can be put into the form of $w_f(t)$ in (b) with kernel representor

$$m'(t, \tau) = u_T(t) 2T u_{2T}(\tau).$$

(e) Use the results of (b), (c), and (d) to derive the kernel representors (76), (77), and (78).

10. Show that the kernel specified by (74) and (79) yields the spectrum estimate (80).

11. Sketch the kernel representation $m(t, \tau)$ as a surface above the (t, τ) plane for the following spectrum estimates (assume $\Delta t \Delta f >> 1$):

(a) Temporally smoothed periodogram (1b) with $a_{1/\Delta f} = \frac{1}{\Delta f} u_{1/\Delta f}$ and $g_{\Delta t} = u_{\Delta t}$.

(b) Spectrally smoothed periodogram (2b) with $a_{\Delta t} = \Delta t\, u_{\Delta t}$ and $H_{\Delta f} = u_{\Delta f}$.

(c) The spectrum estimate (80) with $a_{1/\Delta f} = \frac{1}{\Delta f} u_{1/\Delta f}$ and $g_{\Delta t} = u_{\Delta t}$.

(d) Fourier transformed tapered correlogram (21) with $h_{1/\Delta f} = \frac{1}{\Delta f} v_{1/\Delta f}$.

12. Derive the kernel representation $m(t, \tau)$ for the following spectrum estimates:

(a) Temporally smoothed pseudospectrum, (3b).

(b) Spectrally smoothed pseudospectrum, (4b).

(c) Hopped time-averaged periodogram.

(d) Hopped time-averaged pseudospectrum.

(e) Fourier transformed tapered correlogram.

Hint: Wherever possible use exact equivalences to be able to apply results from exercise 9.

13. As an alternative to (11)–(17) in Chapter 3, use the general representation method of Section G to show that

$$S_{x_{1/\Delta f}}(t, f)_{\Delta t} \cong S_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, f)_{\Delta f}$$

for $\Delta t \Delta f >> 1$, by showing that the representor $m(t, \tau)$ is approximately the same for these two methods.

14. As explained in exercise 6(c), although the swept-frequency method of spectral analysis is particularly attractive from an implementation standpoint, it does not use the data efficiently, since for each portion of width Δf of the total spectral band of width B, only a fraction $\Delta f/B$ of the total data segment analyzed is used to measure the spectral content. This is especially problematic for detection of a narrow-band feature that is only intermittently present, since the fraction-of-time probability of measuring the spectrum in the appropriate part of the spectral band when the narrow-band feature is present is proportional to the small fraction $\Delta f/B$. An alternative to the swept-frequency method that avoids this drawback is the following compressive spectral analysis method, which uses a modified swept-frequency analyzer in which the output is compressed in time so that only T units of time are needed to sweep across the total spectral band for a data segment of length T. Specifically, a finite segment of $x(t)$ is both down-converted and up-converted by multiplication with the chirp signal $e^{-i\pi\beta t^2}$ (the instantaneous frequency $f(t) = -\beta t$ is negative for $t > 0$ and positive for $t < 0$), filtered with a quadratic-phase filter, which has impulse-response function $q(t) = e^{i\pi\beta t^2}$, and then again both down-converted and up-converted. Thus, the response of this analyzer is given by

$$y(t) = e^{-i\pi\beta t^2}\{e^{i\pi\beta t^2} \otimes [Tu_T(t)x(t)e^{-i\pi\beta t^2}]\}.$$

Show that this reduces to

$$y(t) = \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x(u)e^{-i2\pi\beta tu}\, du = X_T(\beta t),$$

which is the complex spectrum evaluated at frequency $f = \beta t$. Hence, if the bandwidth of interest is B and $\beta = B/T$, then the total spectral band is swept across during an interval of length T. A statistical spectrum can be obtained by the method of spectral smoothing, which translates here to temporal smoothing since $f = \beta t$. Specify the temporal-smoothing window width needed for a resolution product of $\Delta t \Delta f = 10$, where $\Delta t = T$. Evaluate this for $T = 1$ ms and B = 1MHz.

15. Consider the statistical spectrum measurement specified by the quadratic time-invariant transformation

$$S(t, f) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} k_f(u, v)x(t - u)x(t - v)\, du\, dv,$$

where

$$k_f(u, v) = m\left(\frac{u + v}{2}, v - u\right)e^{-i2\pi f(v-u)}$$

$$m(t, \tau) = b\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right)b\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right) \otimes c(t).$$

Show how to implement this spectrum analyzer using only two real BPFs, two squarers, a summor, and one LPF. Specify the impulse-response functions of the filters in terms of $b(t)$ and $c(t)$. Explain how the widths of the impulse-response functions must be related in order to provide a reliable spectrum estimate.

APPENDIX 4-1
Other Wave-Analysis Methods

1. The Fano Identity

Motivated by the simplicity of analog implementation of a first-order (1-pole) LPF, with impulse-response function

$$g_T(t) \triangleq \begin{cases} e^{-2t/T}, & t \geq 0 \\ 0, & t < 0, \end{cases} \tag{1}$$

and second-order (2-pole) BPFs, with impulse-response functions

$$a_T^f(t)_r = \begin{cases} \sqrt{2}\, e^{-t/T}\cos(2\pi ft), & t \geq 0 \\ 0, & t < 0 \end{cases} \tag{2}$$

$$a_T^f(t)_i = \begin{cases} \sqrt{2}\, e^{-t/T}\sin(2\pi ft), & t \geq 0 \\ 0, & t < 0, \end{cases} \tag{3}$$

Robert M. Fano [Fano 1950] proposed the following method of computation of an autocorrelation and a spectrum:

$$R'_x(t, \tau)_T \triangleq g_T(t) \otimes [x(t)x(t - |\tau|)] \tag{4}$$

$$S'_{x_T}(t, f) \triangleq \frac{1}{T}|x'_T(t, f)|^2, \tag{5}$$

where $x'_T(t, f)$ is the local sine wave component

$$x'_T(t, f) \triangleq a_T^f(t) \otimes x(t) \tag{6}$$

$$a_T^f(t) \triangleq \begin{cases} \sqrt{2}\, e^{-t/T}e^{i2\pi ft}, & t \geq 0 \\ 0, & t < 0. \end{cases} \tag{7}$$

Moreover, Fano proved that, analogous to the tapered-autocorrelation methods of Section B, (4) and (5) are related by

$$S'_{x_T}(t, \cdot) = F\{R'_x(t, \cdot)_T e^{-|\cdot|/T}\}, \tag{8}$$

which we shall call the *Fano identity*.

2. The Schroeder-Atal Identity

Generalizing on Fano's work, M. R. Schroeder and B. S. Atal [Schroeder and Atal 1962] defined a statistical spectrum by

$$S'_x(t, \cdot)_{\Delta t \Delta f} \triangleq F\{R'_x(t, \cdot)_{\Delta t} h_{1/\Delta f}(|\cdot|)\}, \tag{9}$$

in which $R'_x(t, \cdot)_{\Delta t}$ is defined by (4), with *arbitrary causal aperture*,

$$g_{\Delta t}(t) = 0, \qquad t < 0, \tag{10}$$

and in which $h_{1/\Delta f}$ is an arbitrary causal aperture,

$$h_{1/\Delta f}(t) = 0, \qquad t < 0. \tag{11}$$

Moreover, they proved that the spectrum (9) is a kind of temporally smoothed

cross periodogram (see Chapter 7),

$$S'_x(t,f)_{\Delta t,\Delta f} = g_{\Delta t}(t) \otimes [x(t)x'_{1/\Delta f}(t,f)_r], \tag{12}$$

in which $x'_T(t, f)_r$ is the real local sine wave component

$$x'_T(t,f)_r \triangleq h^f_T(t)_r \otimes x(t), \tag{13}$$

where

$$h^f_T(t)_r = h_T(t)\cos(2\pi ft). \tag{14}$$

Characterization (12) reveals that the statistical spectrum (9) can be measured by low-pass filtering the product of the data and the band-pass-filtered data instead of the square of the band-pass-filtered data, as in the wave-analysis method of Section E (compare with (80)).

5

FRACTION-OF-TIME PROBABILISTIC ANALYSIS

In this chapter it is shown that the notion of the *degree of randomness* or *variability* of a statistical spectrum can be quantified solely in terms of time-averages, without resort to the popular but more abstract probabilistic model based on a hypothetical ensemble and an associated probability measure. Nevertheless, it is also shown that the mechanics of this quantification are equivalent to those based on an abstract probabilistic model, because the time-averages employed here can be reinterpreted as ensemble averages, or expected values, based on fraction-of-time probability. Thus, the actual techniques developed here are conventional, but the interpretation is unconventional. The results obtained from the fraction-of-time probabilistic analysis are used to obtain general formulas for an effective spectral smoothing window and for variability. It is then explained how these formulas can be used as a basis for evaluating design trade-offs among resolution, leakage, and reliability.

A. MOTIVATION

As explained in Chapter 3, Section A, the fundamental reason for interest in statistical (average) spectra is a belief that interesting aspects of a phenomenon being investigated have spectral influences on the data that are masked by uninteresting random effects and an additional belief that these spectral influences can be revealed by averaging out the random effects, thereby obtaining a statistical spectrum. As an alternative to the temporal-smoothing and spectral-smoothing methods of averaging described in Chapters 3 and 4, for the moment let us consider ensemble averaging as a means for reducing the degree of randomness

of a spectrum. Specifically, consider an ensemble $\{x(t, s)\}$ of *random samples* of time-series from a given phenomenon, for which the ensemble index s is a positive-integer-valued variable. For each ensemble member, we can obtain a nonstatistical spectrum (periodogram)

$$S_{x_T}(t, f, s) \triangleq \frac{1}{T}|X_T(t, f, s)|^2, \tag{1}$$

where

$$X_T(t, f, s) \triangleq \int_{t-T/2}^{t+T/2} x(u, s)e^{-i2\pi fu}\, du. \tag{2}$$

Then a statistical spectrum can be obtained by averaging over the ensemble

$$S_{x_T}(t, f)_M \triangleq \frac{1}{M}\sum_{s=1}^{M} S_{x_T}(t, f, s). \tag{3}$$

An *idealized statistical spectrum* is defined by the limit

$$E\{S_{x_T}(t, f)\} \triangleq \lim_{M\to\infty} S_{x_T}(t, f)_M \tag{4}$$

and can be interpreted (via the *law of large numbers* in probability theory; see [Gardner 1985]) as the *expected value* of the time-variant periodogram. Moreover, by analogy with the definition of the deterministic limit spectrum in Chapter 3, Section C, the *probabilistic limit spectrum* is defined by the limit

$$\mathscr{S}_x(f) \triangleq \lim_{T\to\infty} E\{S_{x_T}(t, f)\}, \tag{5}$$

as the spectral resolution width $\Delta f = 1/T$ becomes infinitesimal.

There are two fundamental motives for interest in ensemble averaging and resultant probabilistic spectra. The first motive is a desire to reduce random effects without forfeiting temporal or spectral resolution. That is, since the ensemble-averaged statistical spectrum $S_{x_T}(t, f)_M$ is obtained without smoothing over either t or f, then the fundamental time-frequency uncertainty principle (Chapter 2, Section C) is the only constraint on temporal and spectral resolution. Specifically, $\Delta t = T$ and $\Delta f \cong 1/T$ and, therefore,

$$\Delta t \Delta f \cong 1, \tag{6}$$

regardless of the amount M of averaging. The second motive is a desire to apply probabilistic methods of analysis to spectral analysis problems. For example, it might be desirable to obtain a probabilistic quantification of the *degree of randomness* of a statistical spectrum or the accuracy of approximation between each of various temporally or spectrally smoothed statistical spectra and the limit spectrum.

In the case of the first motive, it is required that an ensemble of time-series from the phenomenon under study be physically available. There are many applications in which ensembles are (or can be made) available, because the underlying experiment is repeatable. For example, in exploration seismology, a given region of earth can be repeatedly shaken. However there are also many applications for which ensembles are not (and cannot be made) available. For example, in studies of dynamic ocean-wave spectra from a volcanic explosion at a given spatial and temporal locale, no ensemble of oceans or explosions is

available. Similarly, in studies of dynamic seismographic spectra from an earthquake phenomenon at a given temporal and spatial locale, no ensemble of earths or quakes is available. Also, for meteorological time-series analysis of weather dynamics associated with a particular storm at a given temporal and spatial locale, no ensemble of atmospheres is available.

In the case of the second motive, it is not required that an ensemble be physically available. All that is needed is the *concept* of an ensemble and a mathematical model for its probabilistic description. Nevertheless, it is far more intuitively satisfying if the ensemble can be conceived of as corresponding to time-series that can be made physically available. It is this situation that is pursued in this chapter, namely, the situation for which probabilistic analysis is the motive and for which an ensemble of time-series can be made physically available. However, this ensemble will be derived from a single time-series. As briefly explained in Part 2 of Section B, Chapter 1, and expanded upon in the following section, this can be accomplished for a time-series representing data from a time-invariant phenomenon.

In Chapter 8, the complementary situation of statistical spectral analysis for time-variant phenomena based on ensemble averaging, according to the first motive, is pursued.

Although the general approach taken here is equally valid for both continuous time and discrete time, the results in these two cases are analogous, and it is therefore more efficient to treat only one case. In keeping with the preceding chapters, the continuous-time case is chosen, but the necessary modifications for discrete time are explained in the following chapter.

B. FRACTION-OF-TIME PROBABILISTIC MODEL

A *probabilistic model* of a time-series is a mathematical specification of a probability law governing a hypothetical ensemble of random samples of time-series and is called a *stochastic process* or a *random process*. We adopt the empirical approach proposed for signal-processing problems involving time-invariant phenomena by Donald G. Brennan [Brennan 1961] and developed by Edward M. Hofstetter [Hofstetter 1964]. In this approach, the conceptualization of an appropriate ensemble of random samples is a trivial matter for constant phenomena. One simply envisions the members of the ensemble to be all time-translated versions of a single persistent time-series,

$$x(t, s) = x(t + s), \tag{7}$$

as discussed in Part 2 of Section B, Chapter 1. The probability law can be envisioned as being derived from relative frequencies of occurrence of events, so that probability distributions are really *fraction-of-time distributions*.

For example, the *probability distribution* for the amplitude of a time-series is formally defined by

$$F_x(y) \triangleq \textit{probability that } x(t) < y \tag{8}$$

$$= \lim_{T_0 \to \infty} \frac{1}{T_0} \int_{-T_0/2}^{T_0/2} U[y - x(t)]\, dt, \tag{9}$$

for which $U(\cdot)$ is the unit-step function

$$U(y) \triangleq \begin{cases} 1, & y > 0 \\ 0, & y \leq 0. \end{cases} \tag{10}$$

In (8), t is interpreted as a random sample of time. In (9), $U[y - x(t)]$ is the *indicator* of the event $x(t) < y$, and (9) is the relative frequency (fraction of time) of occurrence of this event. That is, the integral adds up the lengths of time intervals for which the event $x(t) < y$ occurs and this is divided by the length of the overall interval.[1]

When probability law is conceived of in this way, it is unquestionably *stationary* and *ergodic*, as discussed in Part 2 of Section B, Chapter 1. That is, expected values (ensemble averages) are time-invariant and are equal to time averages. For example, the *expected value* of the amplitude is defined by

$$E\{x(t)\} \triangleq \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} y \, dF_x(y) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} y \frac{dF_x(y)}{dy} \, dy, \tag{11}$$

for which $dF_x(y)/dy$ is the *probability density* of the amplitude [Gardner 1985]. Substitution of (9) into (11) and application of the identity

$$\frac{dU(y)}{dy} = \delta(y) \tag{12}$$

yields

$$E\{x(t)\} = \langle x(t) \rangle \triangleq \lim_{T_0 \to \infty} \frac{1}{T_0} \int_{-T_0/2}^{T_0/2} x(t) \, dt. \tag{13}$$

Similarly, the *probabilistic autocorrelation* defined (in terms of a second-order joint probability density) by

$$\mathcal{R}_x(\tau) \triangleq E\left\{x\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right)x\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right)\right\} \tag{14}$$

is time-invariant and identical (exercise 11) to the deterministic (time-average) autocorrelation

$$\hat{R}_x(\tau) = \left\langle x\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right)x\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right)\right\rangle \triangleq \lim_{T_0 \to \infty} \frac{1}{T_0} \int_{-T_0/2}^{T_0/2} x\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right)x\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right) dt. \tag{15}$$

Thus, it is clear that the mapping (7) from an individual time-series to an ensemble corresponding to a stochastic process, known as *H. O. A. Wold's isomorphism* for the discrete-time case [Wold 1948], can be viewed (at least heuristically) as being responsible for the duality between deterministic and probabilistic theories

[1] In order for this double-sided limit to yield an appropriate model that properly reflects time-invariance, it must be assumed that the two single-sided limits,

$$\lim_{T_0 \to \infty} \frac{1}{T_0} \int_{0}^{T_0} (\cdot) \, dt = \lim_{T_0 \to \infty} \frac{1}{T_0} \int_{-T_0}^{0} (\cdot) \, dt,$$

are identical. Otherwise, the theory can be based on a single-sided limit (e.g., for phenomena with finite starting times).

of time-series from time-invariant phenomena. (For a development of this duality, see [Brillinger 1975] for discrete time and [Gardner 1985] for continuous time.)

The most commonly used probabilistic model for time-series is the Gaussian random process, which is defined to be a random process for which all time-samples are jointly Gaussian random variables. Specifically, for every positive integer N and every N time-points $t_1, t_2, \ldots, t_N$, the samples $x(t_1), x(t_2), \ldots, x(t_N)$ are jointly Gaussian in the sense that every linear combination of these samples is a Gaussian random variable (see [Rao 1973; Gardner 1985]). That is, in the fraction-of-time framework adopted here, for every N real numbers $\omega_1, \omega_2, \ldots, \omega_N$, the variable

$$z(t) \triangleq \omega_1 x(t + t_1) + \omega_2 x(t + t_2) + \cdots + \omega_N x(t + t_N)$$

has a fraction-of-time probability density of the form

$$\frac{dF_z(y)}{dy} = \frac{1}{\sigma\sqrt{2\pi}} \exp\left[-\frac{(y - \mu)^2}{2\sigma^2}\right], \tag{16}$$

for some real number μ (the *mean*) and some positive real number σ (the *standard deviation*, or square root of the *variance*). Based on this definition, it is a simple matter to show that the *joint characteristic function* for the N samples $\boldsymbol{x}(t) \triangleq [x(t + t_1), x(t + t_2), x(t + t_3), \ldots, x(t + t_N)]'$, which is defined by

$$\Psi_{\boldsymbol{x}}(\boldsymbol{\omega}) \triangleq \langle \exp\{i\boldsymbol{\omega}'\boldsymbol{x}(t)\}\rangle, \tag{17}$$

is given by (exercise 18)

$$\Psi_{\boldsymbol{x}}(\boldsymbol{\omega}) = \exp\{i\boldsymbol{\omega}'\hat{\boldsymbol{m}}_x - \tfrac{1}{2}\boldsymbol{\omega}'\hat{\boldsymbol{K}}_x\boldsymbol{\omega}\}, \tag{18a}$$

where

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{m}}_x \triangleq \langle \boldsymbol{x}(t)\rangle \tag{18b}$$

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{K}}_x \triangleq \langle [\boldsymbol{x}(t) - \hat{\boldsymbol{m}}_x][\boldsymbol{x}(t) - \hat{\boldsymbol{m}}_x]'\rangle \tag{18c}$$

and $\boldsymbol{\omega} \triangleq [\omega_1, \omega_2, \omega_3, \ldots, \omega_N]'$. From this joint characteristic function, all probabilistic parameters of interest can be obtained, including the joint fraction-of-time probability density (exercise 18). An important property of a zero-mean Gaussian random process, which is used in the next section, is *Isserlis' formula* for the fourth joint moment in terms of the second joint moments [Isserlis 1918] (see also [Gardner 1985]). The fraction-of-time version of this formula is

$$\begin{aligned}
&\langle x(t + t_1)x(t + t_2)x(t + t_3)x(t + t_4)\rangle \\
&\quad \triangleq \lim_{T_0\to\infty} \frac{1}{T_0}\int_{-T_0/2}^{T_0/2} x(t + t_1)x(t + t_2)x(t + t_3)x(t + t_4)\, dt \\
&\quad = \langle x(t + t_1)x(t + t_2)\rangle\langle x(t + t_3)x(t + t_4)\rangle \\
&\qquad + \langle x(t + t_1)x(t + t_3)\rangle\langle x(t + t_2)x(t + t_4)\rangle \\
&\qquad + \langle x(t + t_1)x(t + t_4)\rangle\langle x(t + t_2)x(t + t_3)\rangle.
\end{aligned} \tag{19}$$

Although no particular probabilistic model is needed for the study of the mean and variance of the complex spectrum and the mean of the spectrum and

statistical spectrum, the study of the variance of the spectrum and the statistical spectrum is substantially more tractable for the Gaussian model than for other models. However, as discussed in the sequel, the results obtained for the Gaussian model are indeed representative for many other models and in fact are asymptotically ($\Delta t \Delta f \to \infty$) equivalent to the results obtainable for a large class of non-Gaussian models.

C. BIAS AND VARIABILITY

In the motivating example in Chapter 3, Section A, it is shown that the periodogram $S_{x_T}(t, f)$ is an erratic function of frequency f, and as the time interval of analysis is made longer by increasing T, the periodogram becomes even more erratic. Furthermore, the particular erratic function does not represent spectral influences of the underlying time-invariant phenomenon, because this particular function also changes erratically with time t (for time changes exceeding T). In addition, in Chapter 3, Section C, it is asserted that the limit of $S_{x_T}(t, f)$ as $T \to \infty$ does not even exist. However, it is also shown that not only does the temporally smoothed or spectrally smoothed periodogram, $S_{x_{1/\Delta f}}(t, f)_{\Delta t}$ or $S_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, f)_{\Delta f}$, become a *less* erratic function of f as the amount of smoothing (as measured by the resolution product $\Delta t \Delta f$) is increased, but it also becomes a less erratic function of t for arbitrarily large time changes (e.g., changes greatly exceeding Δt), and the limit spectrum obtained from $\Delta t \to \infty$ is a completely nonrandom function that represents only the spectral influences of the phenomenon, that is, all random effects are averaged out in the limit. The purpose of this section is to prove these assertions by means of a type of probabilistic analysis that is based entirely on time averages, as explained in the previous two sections.

This study of *degree of randomness* or *variability* of spectral density measurements is based on two probabilistic parameters, the *coefficient of variation* (squared), which is the variance normalized by the squared mean,

$$r_S \triangleq \frac{\text{var}\{S_{x_T}(t, f)\}}{[\text{mean}\{S_{x_T}(t, f)\}]^2}, \tag{20}$$

and the *correlation coefficient*, which is the covariance normalized by the variances,

$$\rho_S \triangleq \frac{\text{cov}\{S_{x_T}(t, f_1), S_{x_T}(t, f_2)\}}{[\text{var}\{S_{x_T}(t, f_1)\}\text{var}\{S_{x_T}(t, f_2)\}]^{1/2}}. \tag{21}$$

Analogous definitions of r_S and ρ_S apply to the statistical spectra $S_{x_T}(t, f)_{\Delta t}$ and $S_{x_T}(t, f)_{\Delta f}$. We shall say that a spectral density measurement is *nonrandom as a function of t* if and only if $r_S = 0$ and that it is *highly random as a function of t* if r_S is not much smaller than unity. We shall also say that it is *completely random as a function of f* if and only if $\rho_S = 0$ for all $f_1 \neq \pm f_2$. In general, we shall say that the *reliability* of a spectral density measurement increases as its degree of randomness in both t and f decreases.

Because of the fraction-of-time type of probabilistic model that we have adopted, the probabilistic parameters (20) and (21) can be expressed in terms of

time-averages only. Specifically,

$$\text{mean}\{S_{x_T}(t,f)\} \triangleq \langle S_{x_T}(t,f)\rangle = \lim_{T_0\to\infty}\frac{1}{T_0}\int_{-T_0/2}^{T_0/2} S_{x_T}(t,f)\,dt, \tag{22}$$

$$\text{var}\{S_{x_T}(t,f)\} \triangleq \langle |S_{x_T}(t,f) - \langle S_{x_T}(t',f)\rangle|^2\rangle$$

$$= \lim_{T_0\to\infty}\frac{1}{T_0}\int_{-T_0/2}^{T_0/2} |S_{x_T}(t,f) - \langle S_{x_T}(t',f)\rangle|^2\,dt, \tag{23}$$

$$\text{cov}\{S_{x_T}(t,f_1), S_{x_T}(t,f_2)\} \triangleq \langle [S_{x_T}(t,f_1) - \langle S_{x_T}(t',f_1)\rangle][S_{x_T}(t,f_2) - \langle S_{x_T}(t',f_2)\rangle]^*\rangle$$

$$= \lim_{T_0\to\infty}\frac{1}{T_0}\int_{-T_0/2}^{T_0/2} [S_{x_T}(t,f_1) - \langle S_{x_T}(t',f_1)\rangle]$$

$$\times [S_{x_T}(t,f_2) - \langle S_{x_T}(t',f_2)\rangle]^*\,dt. \tag{24}$$

(In (23) and (24), t and t' represent distinct dummy variables over which averaging is carried out.) But we shall also consider a few frequency-averages, to augment the argument based on (20) and (21).

For the purposes of this section, it is assumed that the phenomenon of interest is *time-invariant* in the sense that 1) the limit autocorrelation (15) exists and is not identically zero and 2) the phenomenon exhibits no periodicity in the sense that the time-series $x(t)$ and the lag product time-series $x(t + \tau/2) \times x(t - \tau/2)$ (for each τ) contain no finite additive sine wave components, so that the following periodicity parameters (see Part II, Chapter 10) vanish:

$$\lim_{T_0\to\infty}\frac{1}{T_0}\int_{-T_0/2}^{T_0/2} x(t)e^{-i2\pi\alpha t}\,dt = 0, \qquad \alpha \neq 0 \tag{25}$$

$$\lim_{T_0\to\infty}\frac{1}{T_0}\int_{-T_0/2}^{T_0/2} x\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right)x\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right)e^{-i2\pi\alpha t}\,dt \equiv 0, \qquad \alpha \neq 0. \tag{26}$$

It is assumed that the convergence in (25) is in the temporal mean square sense. In this case it can be (and is in Part II) shown that the limit autocorrelation $\hat{R}_x(\tau)$ contains no finite additive sine wave components. Furthermore, it is assumed that $\hat{R}_x(\tau)$ is absolutely integrable so that its Fourier transform $\hat{S}_x(f)$ exists and that (25) holds for $\alpha = 0$ so that $x(t)$ has zero mean value and, therefore, $\hat{S}_x(f)$ contains no dirac deltas.

As explained in Part II, Chapter 15, when (25) or (26) is violated the results on variability presented in this section must be modified. In fact the Gaussian model assumed here cannot be valid if (26) is violated (as proven in Chapter 15).

1. The Finite-Time Complex Spectrum

We consider first the normalized time-variant finite-time complex spectrum for tapered data,

$$\overline{X}_T(t,f) \triangleq \frac{1}{\sqrt{T}}X_T(t,f), \tag{27}$$

where $X_T(t, f)$ is defined by (11) in Chapter 2. It is easily shown using (25)

(exercise 1) that the temporal mean is zero for all T and all $f \neq 0$:

$$\text{mean}\{\overline{X}_T(t,f)\} = 0, \qquad f \neq 0, \tag{28}$$

regardless of the mean of $x(t)$. It can also be shown (exercise 1) that the temporal variance is given by

$$\text{var}\{\overline{X}_T(t,f)\} = \hat{S}_x(f) \otimes \frac{1}{T}|A_{1/T}(f)|^2, \tag{29}$$

where $A_{1/T}$ is the Fourier transform of the data-tapering window a_T. As T is increased without bound, we obtain the limit

$$\lim_{T\to\infty} \text{var}\{\overline{X}_T(t,f)\} = \gamma \hat{S}_x(f), \tag{30}$$

where γ is the limiting area of the smoothing window in (29) (see (24)–(25) in Chapter 3), which is typically on the order of unity for a unity-height tapering window a_T. Hence, the erratic fluctuation in t of the normalized complex spectrum does not decrease (i.e., the variance does not decrease) as T is increased. Furthermore, the temporal correlation coefficient of $\overline{X}_T(t, f_1)$ and $\overline{X}_T(t, f_2)$ can be shown using (26) (exercise 1) to vanish for all T and $f_1 \neq f_2$, since

$$\text{cov}\{\overline{X}_T(t,f_1), \overline{X}_T(t,f_2)\} = 0, \qquad f_1 \neq f_2. \tag{31}$$

Hence, the normalized complex spectrum is completely random as a function of f. Moreover, for a rectangle data-tapering window $a_T = Tu_T$, the finite autocorrelation in f is (exercise 1)

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \overline{X}_T\left(t, f + \frac{\nu}{2}\right) \overline{X}_T^*\left(t, f - \frac{\nu}{2}\right) df = \frac{1}{T}\int_{t-T/2}^{t+T/2} x^2(u) e^{-i2\pi\nu u}\, du, \tag{32}$$

which vanishes in the limit as $T \to \infty$ (because of (26)) for all $\nu \neq 0$. (The same is true for any window a_T.)

2. The Finite-Time Spectrum

It can be shown (exercise 2) that the temporal mean of the time-variant finite-time spectrum

$$S_{x_T}(t,f) = |\overline{X}_T(t,f)|^2 \tag{33}$$

for tapered data is given by

$$\text{mean}\{S_{x_T}(t,f)\} = \hat{S}_x(f) \otimes \frac{1}{T}|A_{1/T}(f)|^2. \tag{34}$$

Also, for a zero-mean Gaussian time-series $x(t)$, Isserlis' formula (19) can be used to show (exercise 2) that the temporal variance of the spectrum is given by

$$\begin{aligned}\text{var}\{S_{x_T}(t,f)\} &= [\text{mean}\{S_{x_T}(t,f)\}]^2 \\ &\quad + \left[\frac{1}{T}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \hat{S}_x(\nu) A_{1/T}(f-\nu) A_{1/T}(f+\nu)\, d\nu\right]^2.\end{aligned} \tag{35}$$

As T is increased without bound, (20), (34), and (35) yield (exercise 2)

$$\lim_{T\to\infty} r_S = 1 + \delta_f, \tag{36}$$

in which δ_f is the Kronecker delta

$$\delta_f \triangleq \begin{cases} 1, & f = 0 \\ 0, & f \neq 0. \end{cases} \tag{37}$$

Hence, the erratic fluctuation in t of the spectrum does not decrease as T is increased. In fact the limit

$$\lim_{T\to\infty} S_{x_T}(t, f) \tag{38}$$

does not even exist in the temporal mean square sense. This can be established as follows. The mean of $S_{x_T}(t, f)$ converges ($T \to \infty$) to $\hat{S}_x(f)$, as revealed by (34), but the limit ($T \to \infty$) of the temporal mean-square deviation of $S_{x_T}(t, f)$ about its limit mean is given by the nonzero quantity

$$\begin{aligned}
\lim_{T\to\infty} \langle [S_{x_T}(t,f) - \hat{S}_x(f)]^2 \rangle &= \lim_{T\to\infty} \langle [S_{x_T}(t,f)]^2 \rangle - [\hat{S}_x(f)]^2 \\
&= \lim_{T\to\infty} \langle [S_{x_T}(t,f)]^2 \rangle - [\lim_{T\to\infty} \langle S_{x_T}(t',f) \rangle]^2 \\
&= \lim_{T\to\infty} \{ \langle [S_{x_T}(t,f)]^2 \rangle - [\langle S_{x_T}(t',f) \rangle]^2 \} \\
&= \lim_{T\to\infty} \langle [S_{x_T}(t,f) - \langle S_{x_T}(t',f) \rangle]^2 \rangle \\
&= \lim_{T\to\infty} \operatorname{var}\{S_{x_T}(t,f)\} \neq 0.
\end{aligned} \tag{39}$$

Isserlis' formula (19) can again be used to show (exercise 2) that the temporal covariance of $S_{x_T}(t, f_1)$ and $S_{x_T}(t, f_2)$ is given by[2]

$$\begin{aligned}
\operatorname{cov}\{S_{x_T}(t,f_1), S_{x_T}(t,f_2)\} = &\left[\frac{1}{T}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \hat{S}_x(\nu) A_{1/T}(f_1 - \nu) A_{1/T}(\nu - f_2)\, d\nu\right]^2 \\
&+ \left[\frac{1}{T}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \hat{S}_x(\nu) A_{1/T}(f_1 - \nu) A_{1/T}(\nu + f_2)\, d\nu\right]^2.
\end{aligned} \tag{40}$$

It follows (exercise 2) from (40) and (35) that the temporal correlation coefficient is very small for $|f_1 - f_2| >> 1/T$ and $|f_1 + f_2| >> 1/T$,

$$\rho_S << 1, \qquad |f_1 \pm f_2| >> \frac{1}{T}, \tag{41}$$

and vanishes for $f_1 \neq \pm f_2$ in the limit as $T \to \infty$:

$$\lim_{T\to\infty} \rho_S = 0, \qquad f_1 \neq \pm f_2. \tag{42}$$

[2] Within the conventional probabilistic framework, the results (35) and (40) are good approximations for a broad class of *non-Gaussian* time-series, provided that T is sufficiently large. This is a well-known result from asymptotic distribution theory [Grenander and Rosenblatt 1984; Hannan 1970]. For example, (35) is asymptotically correct for any non-Gaussian time-series for which $x(t_1)$ and $x(t_2)$ are statistically independent for all t_1 and t_2 such that $|t_1 - t_2| > T_*$ for some finite T_*. It follows from Wold's isomorphism that equivalent results can be obtained for a single time-series.

Hence, the spectrum approaches a completely random function of f as T is increased without bound.

The finite-autocorrelation in f is

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} S_{x_T}\left(t, f + \frac{\nu}{2}\right) S_{x_T}\left(t, f - \frac{\nu}{2}\right) df = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} [R_{x_T}(t, \tau)]^2 e^{-i2\pi\nu\tau}\, d\tau, \tag{43}$$

but its limit as $T \to \infty$ apparently does not exist by analogy with (38), which can be reexpressed as

$$\lim_{T\to\infty} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} R_{x_T}(t, \tau) e^{-i2\pi f\tau}\, d\tau. \tag{44}$$

3. Statistical Spectra

In direct contrast to the increasingly erratic behavior with increasing T of the nonstatistical spectrum $S_{x_T}(t, f)$ just described, we shall find in this section that the spectrally smoothed statistical spectrum $S_{x_T}(t, f)_{\Delta f}$ exhibits a degree of randomness that *decreases* as the resolution product $\Delta t \Delta f = T\Delta f$ is increased by increasing Δt and that *vanishes* in the limit as $\Delta t \Delta f \to \infty$ for any $\Delta f > 0$ no matter how small. We shall also find that the same is true for the temporally smoothed spectrum $S_{x_T}(t, f)_{\Delta t}$ for which $\Delta t \Delta f = \Delta t/T$. In fact this result will be obtained for a large class of statistical spectra.

There are actually two statistical characteristics of spectrum estimates that are of interest: the bias and the variability. If the mean of an estimate does not equal the quantity being estimated (the limit spectrum in this case), the estimate is said to be *biased*. The bias is a particularly convenient characterization of both the spectral resolution and spectral leakage properties of a given spectrum estimation method (when variability is sufficiently small). In particular, we shall see that the temporal means of the time-variant spectrum estimates, to be denoted by $y_f(t)$, can be expressed in the form

$$\text{mean}\{y_f(t)\} = \hat{S}_x(f) \otimes E(f), \tag{45}$$

where $E(f)$ is interpreted as an *effective spectral smoothing window* whose mainlobe width determines the spectral resolution, and whose sidelobe heights determine the spectral leakage (when variability is sufficiently small). We shall also find that in the limit as $\Delta f \to 0$, the effective window $E(f)$ approaches an impulse which reveals that resolution becomes perfect and leakage vanishes, yielding an asymptotically unbiased estimate (assuming $E(f)$ has unity area in the limit). The term *fidelity* is sometimes used for the degree to which the mean of a spectrum estimate approximates the ideal limit spectrum. Thus, high fidelity means low bias.

The most concise and transparent approach to the study of both bias and variability of the variety of statistical spectra obtained from the various methods described in Chapter 4 is based on the general representation for statistical spectra introduced in Chapter 4, Section G,

$$y_f(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} k_f(u, v) x(t - u) x(t - v) du\, dv, \tag{46}$$

where the kernel is represented by

$$k_f(u, v) = m\left(\frac{u + v}{2}, v - u\right)e^{-i2\pi f(v-u)}, \tag{47}$$

in which $m(t, \tau)$ is independent of f. Substitution of (47) into (46) and use of a change of variables yields

$$y_f(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} m(w, \tau)x\left(t - w + \frac{\tau}{2}\right)x\left(t - w - \frac{\tau}{2}\right)e^{-i2\pi f\tau}\, dw\, d\tau, \tag{48}$$

which is the starting point for our study.

Effective spectral smoothing window

The temporal mean of a time-variant statistical spectrum denoted by $y_f(t)$ and represented by (48) is easily shown (exercise 6) to be[3]

$$\text{mean}\{y_f(t)\} = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} m(t, \tau)\, dt\, \hat{R}_x(\tau)e^{-i2\pi f\tau}\, d\tau \tag{49}$$

$$= \hat{S}_x(f) \otimes E(f), \tag{50}$$

where

$$E(f) \triangleq \int_{-\infty}^{\infty}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} m(t, \tau)\, dt\, e^{-i2\pi f\tau}\, d\tau = M(0, -f), \tag{51}$$

in which $M(\nu, \mu)$ is the double Fourier transform of $m(t, \tau)$,

$$M(\nu, \mu) \triangleq \int_{-\infty}^{\infty}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} m(t, \tau)e^{-i2\pi(\nu t - \mu\tau)}\, dt\, d\tau. \tag{52}$$

The effective spectral window $E(f)$ can be expressed explicitly in terms of the windows that define a particular statistical spectrum, as illustrated in Chapter 4. Specifically, for the spectrally smoothed periodogram for tapered data and for the Fourier transform of the tapered correlogram, it is shown in Chapter 4, Section G, that

$$m(t, \tau) = \frac{1}{\Delta t}\, a_{\Delta t}\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right)a_{\Delta t}\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right)h_{1/\Delta f}(\tau), \tag{53}$$

from which it follows that

$$E(f) = \frac{1}{\Delta t}\,|A_{1/\Delta t}(f)|^2 \otimes H_{\Delta f}(f) \tag{54a}$$

$$\cong \gamma\, H_{\Delta f}(f), \qquad \text{for } \Delta t\Delta f \gg 1, \tag{54b}$$

where $A_{1/\Delta t}$ is the Fourier transform of the data-tapering window, $H_{\Delta f}$ is the spectral smoothing window, or $h_{1/\Delta f}$ is the autocorrelation-tapering window, and γ is the data-tapering window parameter defined by (33) in Chapter 2. For the temporally smoothed periodogram for tapered data and the statistical spectra obtained from the wave-analysis and demodulation methods, it is shown in Chapter

[3] This result, (49)–(51), does not require (25). It is equally valid if $x(t)$ contains finite additive sine wave components, in which case $\hat{S}_x(f)$ contains spectral lines.

4, Section G, that

$$m(t, \tau) = \Delta f \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} a_{1/\Delta f}\left(t - w + \frac{\tau}{2}\right) a_{1/\Delta f}\left(t - w - \frac{\tau}{2}\right) g_{\Delta t}(w)\, dw, \tag{55}$$

from which it follows that

$$E(f) = \Delta f |A_{\Delta f}(f)|^2 G_{1/\Delta t}(0), \tag{56}$$

where $A_{\Delta f}$ is the Fourier transform of the data-tapering window or the predetection filter transfer function for the demodulation method and $G_{1/\Delta t}$ is the Fourier transform of the temporal smoothing window or the postdetection filter transfer function. If this latter window has unity area, then $G_{1/\Delta t}(0) = 1$. For any statistical spectrum that is representable by (48) and admits the separable approximation

$$m(t, \tau) \cong g_{\Delta t}(t) h_{1/\Delta f}(\tau), \tag{57}$$

(which is discussed in Chapter 4, Section G), the effective spectral smoothing window is given by

$$E(f) \cong G_{1/\Delta t}(0) H_{\Delta f}(f). \tag{58}$$

This includes (54b) and (56) as examples.

Coefficient of variation

The temporal variance of the time-series $y_f(t)$ is equal to the temporal mean-squared value of the centered time-series

$$z_f(t) \triangleq y_f(t) - \text{mean}\{y_f(t)\}, \tag{59}$$

and it follows from the inverse of the Wiener relation,

$$\hat{R}_z(\tau) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \hat{S}_z(\nu) e^{i2\pi\nu\tau}\, d\nu,$$

that the temporal mean-squared value of $z_f(t)$, namely $\hat{R}_z(0)$, is given by the integral over all frequencies of the limit spectrum $\hat{S}_z$. The limit spectrum of the time-series $z_f(t)$ specified by (59) and (48), which represents a large class of statistical spectra, takes on a particularly tractable form for zero-mean Gaussian time-series $x(t)$. Specifically, it can be shown (exercise 7) that

$$\hat{S}_{z_f}(\nu) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} [|M(\nu, \mu - f)|^2 + M(\nu, \mu - f) M^*(\nu, -\mu - f)] \times \hat{S}_x\left(\mu + \frac{\nu}{2}\right) \hat{S}_x\left(\mu - \frac{\nu}{2}\right) d\mu, \tag{60}$$

where $M(\nu, \mu)$ is the transform (52) of the kernel $m(t, \tau)$ in the representation (48). The transformed kernels for the various spectrum analyzers described in Chapter 4 are given in Table 5-1. In those cases for which $m(t, \tau)$ can be approximated by the separable form (57) (e.g., this is typically a close approximation for $\Delta t \Delta f >> 1$; see Chapter 4, Section G), the transform $M(\nu, \mu)$ can also be approximated by the separable form

$$M(\nu, \mu) \cong G_{1/\Delta t}(\nu) H_{\Delta f}(-\mu). \tag{61}$$

TABLE 5-1 SPECTRAL ANALYSIS KERNELS*

Spectrum estimate	Kernel	Kernel transform	Spectrum analyzer
$S_{x_T}(t, f)$	$m_T(t, \tau) = \frac{1}{T}a_T\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right)a_T\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right)$	$M_{1/T}(\nu, \mu) = \frac{1}{T}A_{1/T}\left(\frac{\nu}{2} + \mu\right)A_{1/T}\left(\frac{\nu}{2} - \mu\right)$	Periodogram ($T = 1/\Delta f$ or Δt)
$S_x(t, f)_T$	$m(t, \tau)_T = u_T(t)2Tu_{2T}(\tau)$	$M(\nu, \mu)_{1/T} = \frac{1}{T}w_{1/T}(\nu)w_{1/2T}(\mu)$	Pseudospectrum ($T = 1/\Delta f$ or Δt)
$S_{x_{1/\Delta f}}(t, f)_{\Delta t}$	$m_{1/\Delta f}(t, \tau) \otimes g_{\Delta t}(t)$	$M_{\Delta f}(\nu, \mu)G_{1/\Delta t}(\nu)$	Temporally smoothed periodogram, wave analyzer, demodulation wave analyzer, hopped time-averaged periodogram ($g_{\Delta t} = \eta_{\Delta t,\Delta f}$).
$S_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, f)_{\Delta f}$	$m_{\Delta t}(t, \tau)h_{1/\Delta f}(\tau)$	$M_{1/\Delta t}(\nu, \mu) \otimes H_{\Delta f}(-\mu)$	Spectrally smoothed periodogram, Fourier transformed tapered correlogram.
$S_x(t, f)_{1/\Delta f,\Delta t}$	$m(t, \tau)_{1/\Delta f} \otimes g_{\Delta t}(t)$	$M(\nu, \mu)_{\Delta f}G_{1/\Delta t}(\nu)$	Temporally smoothed pseudospectrum, hopped time-averaged pseudospectrum ($g_{\Delta t} = \eta_{\Delta t,\Delta f}$).
$S_x(t, f)_{\Delta t,\Delta f}$	$m(t, \tau)_{\Delta t}h_{1/\Delta f}(\tau)$	$M(\nu, \mu)_{1/\Delta t} \otimes H_{\Delta f}(-\mu)$	Spectrally smoothed pseudospectrum, Fourier transformed tapered finite-average autocorrelation.

* $g_{\Delta t}$ is an arbitrary temporal smoothing window; $\eta_{\Delta t,\Delta f}$ is the comb window given by (28) in Chapter 2; $H_{\Delta f}$ is an arbitrary spectral smoothing window; a_T is an arbitrary data-tapering window; u_T and $w_{1/T}$ are the rectangle and sinc windows given by (12) and (14) in Chapter 2.

In such cases, (60) can be approximated by (exercise 7)

$$\hat{S}_{z_f}(\nu) \cong |G_{1/\Delta t}(\nu)|^2 \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} [|H_{\Delta f}(f - \mu)|^2 + H_{\Delta f}(f - \mu)H^*_{\Delta f}(f + \mu)] \times \hat{S}_x\left(\mu + \frac{\nu}{2}\right)\hat{S}_x\left(\mu - \frac{\nu}{2}\right) d\mu. \tag{62}$$

Furthermore, if the width $1/\Delta t$ is small enough and the sidelobes of $G_{1/\Delta t}$ are low enough to resolve the fine structure in $\hat{S}_x$, then (62) yields (exercise 7) the close approximation

$$\hat{S}_{z_f}(\nu) \cong |G_{1/\Delta t}(\nu)|^2 \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} [|H_{\Delta f}(f - \mu)|^2 + H_{\Delta f}(f - \mu)H^*_{\Delta f}(f + \mu)][\hat{S}_x(\mu)]^2 d\mu. \tag{63}$$

Moreover, if Δf is also small enough and the sidelobes of $H_{\Delta f}$ are low enough to resolve the fine structure in $\hat{S}_x$, and if $H_{\Delta f}$ is real and even, then (63) yields

(exercise 7) the close approximation

$$\hat{S}_{z_f}(\nu) \cong |G_{1/\Delta t}(\nu)|^2 \, [\hat{S}_x(f)]^2 \, [r_{H_{\Delta f}}(0) + r_{H_{\Delta f}}(2f)], \tag{64}$$

where $r_{H_{\Delta f}}(f)$ is the finite autocorrelation of $H_{\Delta f}(f)$,

$$r_{H_{\Delta f}}(f) \triangleq \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} H_{\Delta f}\left(\mu + \frac{f}{2}\right) H_{\Delta f}\left(\mu - \frac{f}{2}\right) d\mu. \tag{65}$$

It follows from (64) that $z_f(t)$ is a low-pass process whose spectral shape is determined primarily by the output LPF transfer function $G_{1/\Delta t}$ and whose spectral intensity is determined primarily by the gains of the output LPF and input BPF and the spectral density $\hat{S}_x(f)$ being estimated. The spectral density of the spectrum estimate $y_f(t)$ is the same as that for $z_f(t)$ except for the presence of a spectral line at zero frequency, which has area $[\text{mean}\{y_f(t)\}]^2$ determined primarily by $\hat{S}_x(f)$.

The temporal variance of the spectrum estimate $y_f(t)$ is obtained by integration of the spectral density for $z_f(t) = y_f(t) - \text{mean}\{y_f(t)\}$, and it follows from (60) that this temporal variance is given by

$$\begin{aligned} \text{var}\{y_f(t)\} = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} & [|M(\nu, \mu - f)|^2 + M(\nu, \mu - f) M^*(\nu, -\mu - f)] \\ & \times \hat{S}_x\left(\mu + \frac{\nu}{2}\right) \hat{S}_x\left(\mu - \frac{\nu}{2}\right) d\mu \, d\nu. \end{aligned} \tag{66}$$

Since $m(t, \tau)$ is in general a two-dimensional oblong pulselike function with widths of Δt and $1/\Delta f$ in t and τ, respectively, then its double Fourier transform $M(\nu, \mu)$ is also, in general, a two-dimensional oblong pulselike function, and its widths are on the orders of $1/\Delta t$ and Δf in ν and μ, respectively. Thus, if the width $1/\Delta t$ is small enough and the corresponding sidelobes are low enough to resolve the fine structure in $\hat{S}_x$, then (66) yields (exercise 7) the close approximation

$$\begin{aligned} \text{var}\{y_f(t)\} \cong \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \Bigg[\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} & |M(\nu, \mu - f)|^2 \\ & + M(\nu, \mu - f) M^*(\nu, -\mu - f) \, d\nu \Bigg] [\hat{S}_x(\mu)]^2 \, d\mu. \end{aligned} \tag{67}$$

Furthermore, if the width Δf is also small enough and the corresponding sidelobes are low enough to resolve the fine structure in $\hat{S}_x$, then (67) yields (exercise 7) the close approximation

$$\text{var}\{y_f(t)\} \cong L(f)[\hat{S}_x(f)]^2, \tag{68}$$

where

$$L(f) \triangleq \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} [|M(\nu, \mu)|^2 + M(\nu, \mu - f) M^*(\nu, -\mu - f)] \, d\nu \, d\mu. \tag{69}$$

Moreover, if $M(\nu, \mu)$ can be approximated by the separable form (61) in which $H_{\Delta f}$ is real and even, then (69) is approximated by

$$L(f) \cong \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |G_{1/\Delta t}(\nu)|^2 \, d\nu \, [r_{H_{\Delta f}}(0) + r_{H_{\Delta f}}(2f)], \tag{70}$$

where $r_{H_{\Delta f}}$ is given by (65).

To obtain the temporal coefficient of variation, (66) is divided by the square of (50). By use of approximation (68) and the similar approximation to (50),

$$\text{mean}\{y_f(t)\} \cong \hat{S}_x(f) \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} E(\mu)\, d\mu, \tag{71}$$

the following approximation to the coefficient of variation for $y_f(t)$ is obtained:

$$r_{y_f} \triangleq \frac{\text{var}\{y_f(t)\}}{|\text{mean}\{y_f(t)\}|^2} \cong \frac{L(f)}{\left[\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} E(\mu)\, d\mu\right]^2} \triangleq R(f), \qquad \frac{1}{\Delta t} < \Delta f < \Delta f^*, \tag{72}$$

where Δf^* is the resolution width of $\hat{S}_x(f)$. This approximation, which is specified by

$$R(f) = \frac{\int_{-\infty}^{\infty}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} [|M(\nu, \mu)|^2 + M(\nu, \mu - f)M^*(\nu, -\mu - f)]\, d\nu\, d\mu}{\left[\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} M(0, \mu)\, d\mu\right]^2}, \tag{73}$$

reduces to

$$R(f) \cong \frac{\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |G_{1/\Delta t}(\nu)|^2\, d\nu\, [r_{H_{\Delta f}}(0) + r_{H_{\Delta f}}(2f)]}{|G_{1/\Delta t}(0)|^2 \left|\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} H_{\Delta f}(\mu)\, d\mu\right|^2} \tag{74}$$

when the separable approximation (61) in which $H_{\Delta f}$ is real and even is used. By introducing the factor

$$\eta \triangleq \left[\frac{\Delta t\, \|G_{1/\Delta t}\|^2}{|G_{1/\Delta t}(0)|^2}\right]\left[\frac{\Delta f\, \|h_{1/\Delta f}\|^2}{[h_{1/\Delta f}(0)]^2}\right], \tag{75a}$$

where

$$\|G_{1/\Delta t}\|^2 \triangleq \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |G_{1/\Delta t}(\nu)|^2\, d\nu \tag{75b}$$

$$\|h_{1/\Delta f}\|^2 \triangleq \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} h_{1/\Delta f}^2(\tau)\, d\tau, \tag{75c}$$

and using the approximation and inequality

$$r_{H_{\Delta f}}(2f) \begin{cases} \cong r_{H_{\Delta f}}(0), & |f| << \Delta f \\ << r_{H_{\Delta f}}(0), & |f| >> \Delta f, \end{cases} \tag{76}$$

(72) and (74) can be reexpressed as

$$r_{y_f} \cong \frac{\eta}{\Delta t \Delta f}[1 + \delta_{\Delta f}(f)], \qquad \text{for } \Delta t \Delta f >> 1 \quad \text{and} \quad \Delta f < \Delta f^*, \tag{77a}$$

where Δf^* is the resolution width of $\hat{S}_x$, $\delta_{\Delta f}$ is a type of indicator function that is positive and less than or approximately equal to unity (for all f) and satisfies

$$\delta_{\Delta f}(f) \begin{cases} \cong 1, & |f| << \Delta f \\ << 1, & |f| >> \Delta f, \end{cases} \tag{77b}$$

and η is in general on the order of unity, regardless of Δt and Δf (exercise 12).

For example, if $h_{1/\Delta f}$ and $G_{1/\Delta t}$ are rectangle or sinc windows, $\eta = 1$. The reason the coefficient of variation is doubled in the vicinity of $f = 0$ is that when the spectral window $H_{\Delta f}$ is centered at $f = 0$, half of the spectral component magnitudes (those for $f > 0$) are perfectly correlated with the other half (those for $f < 0$) and, therefore, when they are summed by the frequency smoothing operation, their variance is twice as large as it would be if they were all uncorrelated.

The explicit relationships between the window functions in (75) and those used in the various specific statistical spectra can be determined from Table 5-1 (see also Chapter 4, Section G and exercise 9). In conclusion, we see that (under the stated assumptions) the temporal coefficient of variation is independent of $\hat{S}_x(f)$ and is inversely proportional to the resolution product $\Delta t \Delta f$, and the proportionality constant is on the order of unity and is twice as large at f near zero. Moreover, this result applies to all the various methods for spectrum estimation described in Chapter 4. Furthermore, it can be shown that for the discrete-time counterparts to all these continuous-time spectrum estimates, the result is the same as (77), except that in (75) the integral over frequency ranges over $[-\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2}]$ rather than $(-\infty, \infty)$, and the integral over time becomes a discrete sum over time. This is explained further in Chapter 6. Moreover, the result (77) is valid for a large class of non-Gaussian time-series as well as the Gaussian time-series on which its derivation is based. This follows from the discussion in the footnote in Part 2 of Section C. The reader is reminded that if assumption (26) is violated (as it often is when dealing with modulated signals; see Chapter 3, Section D), then the well-known result (77) must be modified to incorporate additional terms as explained in Chapter 15 of Part II.

Since the temporal variance approaches zero as $\Delta t \to \infty$ for any $\Delta f > 0$, then the statistical spectrum $y_f(t)$ approaches its own temporal mean value, in the temporal-mean-square sense:

$$\underset{\Delta t \to \infty}{\text{l.i.m.}}\ y_f(t) = \text{mean}\{y_f(t)\}. \tag{78}$$

Therefore, the erratic behavior in t of the statistical spectrum vanishes in the limit as $\Delta t \to \infty$. Thus, regardless of how erratic in f the true spectral influences of the phenomenon as reflected in $\hat{S}_x(f)$ might be, the statistical spectrum (e.g., $y_f(t) = S_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, f)_{\Delta f}$) closely approximates it for *all* t in the temporal-mean-square sense, provided that Δt is sufficiently large and Δf is sufficiently small. In contrast, the nonstatistical spectrum $S_{x_T}(t, f)$ becomes increasingly erratic as T is increased, in the sense that $S_{x_T}(t_1, f)$ and $S_{x_T}(t_2, f)$ do not closely approximate each other for $|t_1 - t_2| > T$ and neither closely approximates $\hat{S}_x(f)$, and furthermore $S_{x_T}(t, f_1)$ and $S_{x_T}(t, f_2)$ are essentially uncorrelated for $|f_1 - f_2| > 1/T$.

Explanation of variability

A popular approach to explaining why the variance of the smoothed periodogram $S_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, f)_{\Delta f}$ approaches zero as $\Delta t \to \infty$, when the variance of the raw (unsmoothed) periodogram $S_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, f)$ does not approach zero as $\Delta t \to \infty$, is based on the formulas

$$S_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, f) = \int_{-\Delta t}^{\Delta t} R_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, \tau) e^{-i2\pi f\tau}\, d\tau \tag{79}$$

$$S_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, f)_{\Delta f} = \int_{-\Delta t}^{\Delta t} R_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, \tau) h_{1/\Delta f}(\tau) e^{-i2\pi f\tau}\, d\tau \tag{80}$$

$$\cong \int_{-1/2\Delta f}^{1/2\Delta f} R_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, \tau) e^{-i2\pi f\tau}\, d\tau \tag{81}$$

$$R_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, \tau) = \frac{1}{\Delta t} \int_{-(\Delta t - |\tau|)/2}^{(\Delta t - |\tau|)/2} x\left(t + u + \frac{\tau}{2}\right) x\left(t + u - \frac{\tau}{2}\right) du. \tag{82}$$

Specifically, it is argued (e.g., [Koopmans 1974, p. 266; Papoulis 1977, pp. 380, 383; Papoulis 1984, p. 491]) that no matter how large Δt is, $R_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, \tau)$ in (82) is highly unreliable for $|\tau|$ near Δt because the length $\Delta t - |\tau|$ of the averaging interval $[-(\Delta t - |\tau|)/2, (\Delta t - |\tau|)/2]$ is small; furthermore, the highly unreliable portion of $R_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, \tau)$ is omitted from the Fourier transform integral (81) that produces $S_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, f)_{\Delta f}$ (for $\Delta t >> 1/\Delta f$) but is included in the integral (79) that produces $S_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, f)$. Unfortunately, this explanation is insufficient. One reason is that although the mean-squared error between $\hat{R}_x(\tau)$ and $R_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, \tau)$ approaches the large value $\hat{R}_x(\tau)^2$ as $|\tau|$ approaches Δt, the variance of $R_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, \tau)$ is proportional to $1/\Delta t$ for all $|\tau| \leq \Delta t$ and therefore does approach zero as $|\Delta t| \to \infty$. The real reason that the variance of $S_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, f)$ approaches a nonzero constant is that the function $R_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, \tau)$ for $|\tau| \leq \Delta t$ can be interpreted as $\Delta t/\Delta\tau^*$ contiguous segments of length $\Delta\tau^*$ in τ, and only adjacent segments and mirror images about $\tau = 0$ are nonnegligibly correlated ($\Delta\tau^*$ is the width of $\hat{R}_x(\tau)$); thus when these segments are summed in the Fourier transform integral (79), their variances, each of which is proportional to $\Delta\tau^*/\Delta t$, add up to produce a variance that does not decrease as Δt increases (exercise 3). The fact that the poor quality of the estimate $R_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, \tau)$ of $\hat{R}_x(\tau)$ for $|\tau|$ near Δt is not responsible for the large variance of the periodogram $S_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, f)$ is confirmed by the fact that the variance of the pseudospectrum

$$S_x(t, f)_{\Delta t} = \int_{-\Delta t}^{\Delta t} R_x(t, \tau)_{\Delta t} e^{-i2\pi f\tau}\, d\tau \tag{83}$$

$$R_x(t, \tau)_{\Delta t} = \frac{1}{\Delta t} \int_{-\Delta t/2}^{\Delta t/2} x\left(t + u + \frac{\tau}{2}\right) x\left(t + u - \frac{\tau}{2}\right) du, \tag{84}$$

is just as large, and the estimate $R_x(t, \tau)_{\Delta t}$ is of no poorer quality for $|\tau|$ near Δt than it is for $|\tau| << \Delta t$; that is, the mean-squared error (and variance) of $R_x(t, \tau)_{\Delta t}$ is proportional to $1/\Delta t$ for all $|\tau| \leq \Delta t$, but the coefficient of variation for $S_x(t, f)_{\Delta t}$ is asymptotically ($\Delta t \to \infty$) the same as it is for $S_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, f)$, namely (36) (see exercise 5).

Example: ***White Noise***

To illustrate the decrease in degree of randomness of a statistical spectrum with an increase in the resolution product, the spectra of simulated white Gaussian noise for three analysis intervals of lengths $T = \Delta t = 128, 512, 2048$, are shown in Figure 5-1. In Figure 5-1(a)–(c), $\Delta f = 1/T = 1/\Delta t$, yielding the nonstatistical periodogram, and the result is an increase in degree of randomness with an increase in Δt. But in Figures 5-1(d)–(f), Δf is fixed at $\frac{1}{32}$, yielding a spectrally smoothed periodogram with resolution products of $\Delta t \Delta f = 4$, 16, and 64, and the result is a decrease in degree of randomness with an increase in Δt. To illustrate the facts that the nonstatistical

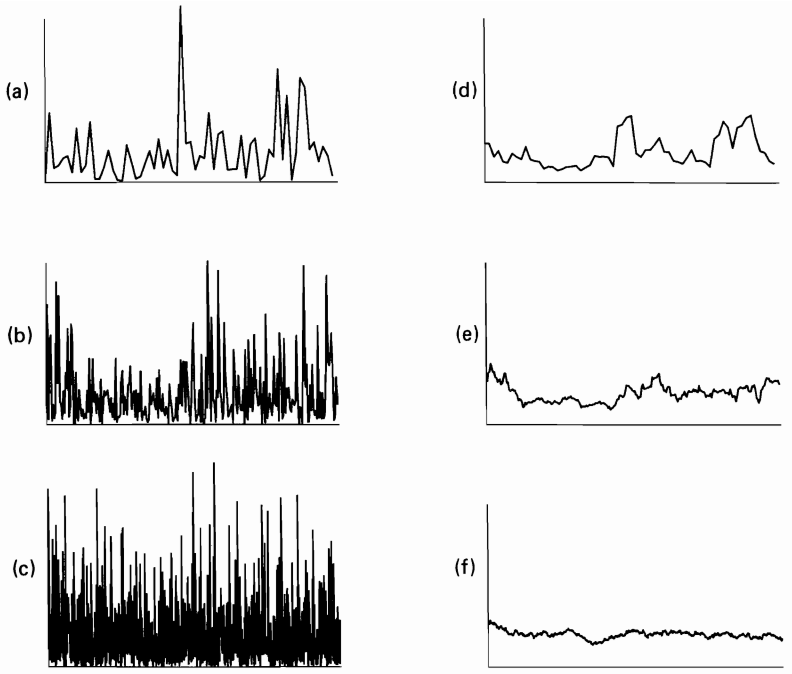


Figure 5-1 Illustration of dependence of degree of randomness on length Δt of data segment and on length of frequency-smoothing interval Δf. (a) $\Delta t = 128$, $\Delta t \Delta f = 1$. (b) $\Delta t = 512$, $\Delta t \Delta f = 1$. (c) $\Delta t = 2048$, $\Delta t \Delta f = 1$. (d) $\Delta t = 128$, $\Delta t \Delta f = 4$. (e) $\Delta t = 512$, $\Delta t \Delta f = 16$. (f) $\Delta t = 2048$, $\Delta t \Delta f = 64$.

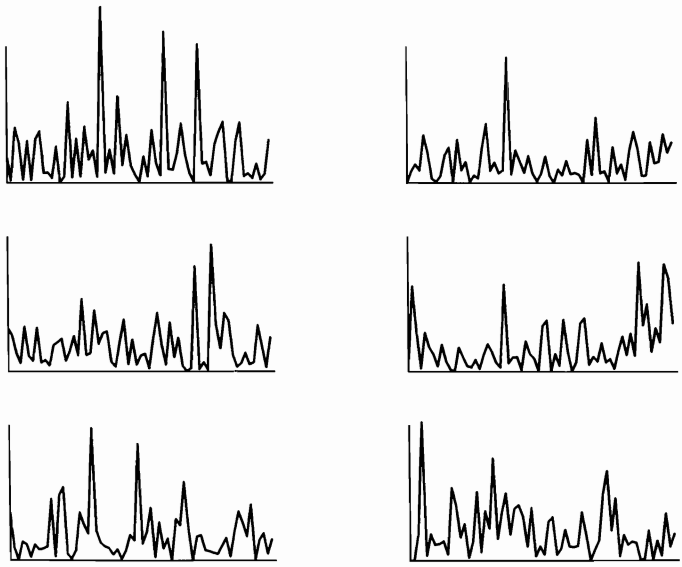


Figure 5-2 Periodograms of various segments of white Gaussian noise.

periodogram fluctuates randomly with time as well as frequency and that the degree of randomness in frequency is reduced by time averaging, the nonstatistical periodograms for six adjacent segments of white Gaussian noise data are shown in Figure 5-2, and their averages are shown in Figure 5-3(a)–(h).

Example: ***Hidden Periodicities and Disturbed Harmonics***

To demonstrate the lack of reliability of nonstatistical spectra of random data, consider the problem of trying to distinguish between two possible phenomena, one of which gives rise to periodic components masked by additive white noise, the other of which gives rise to white noise filtered by a narrow-band BPF. The former phenomenon yields data with *hidden periodicities* (its limit spectrum contains spectral lines). The latter yields data that might be called *disturbed harmonics*—the data does not contain any periodicities (its limit spectrum does not contain spectral lines). Two segments of data $y(t)$ from *one* of these two phenomena are shown in Figure 5-4(a) and (b). The nonstatistical spectra (periodograms) for these two data segments are shown in Figure 5-4(c) and (d). The several significant peaks in these

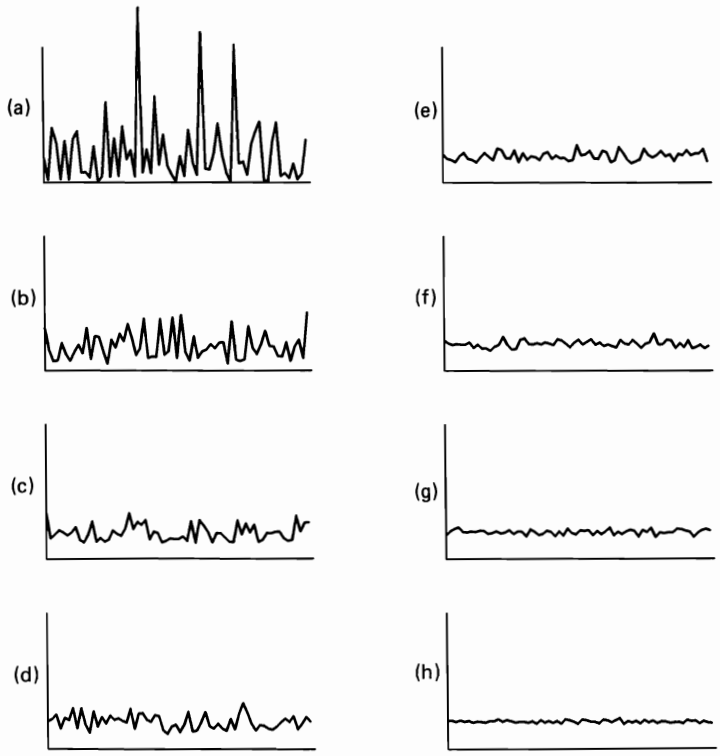
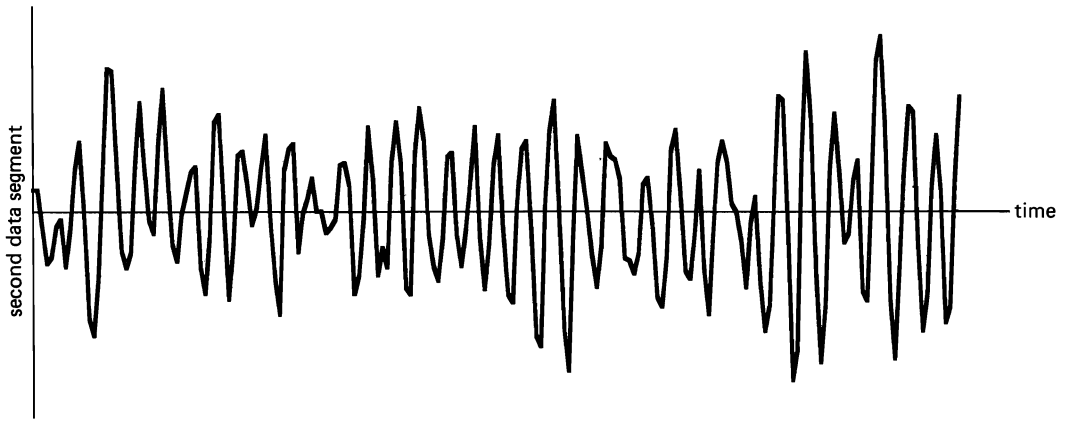


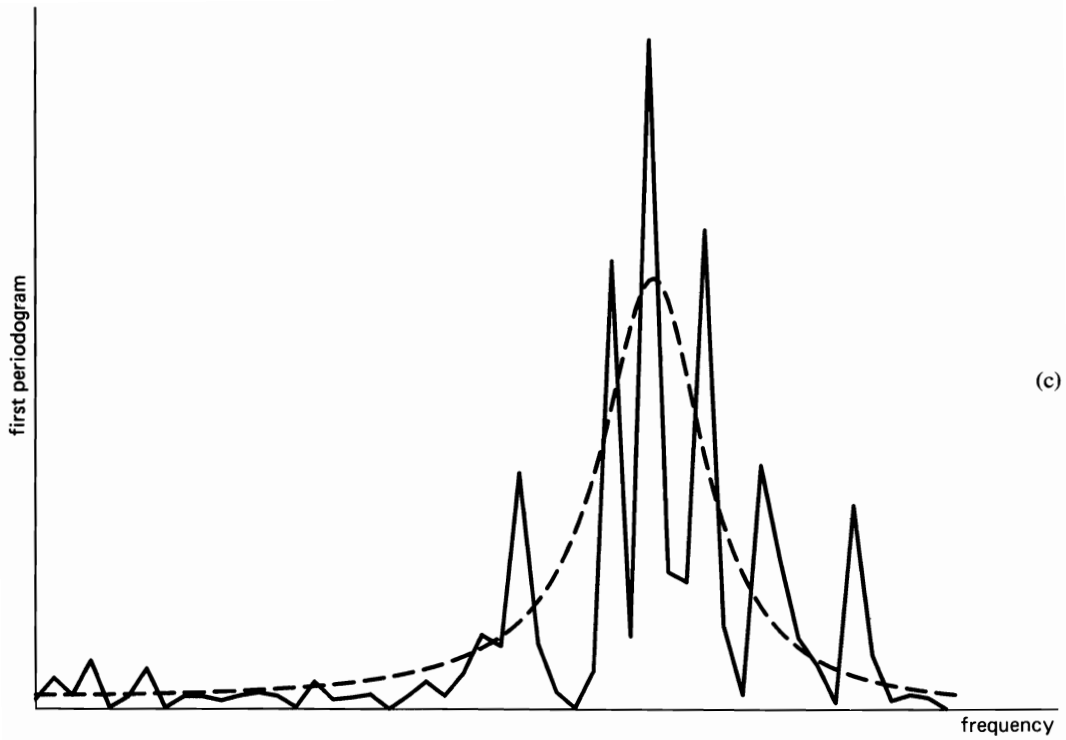
Figure 5-3 Averages of periodograms from various segments of white Gaussian noise (number of periodograms averaged is N): (a) $N = 1$, (b) $N = 4$, (c) $N = 8$, (d) $N = 16$, (e) $N = 32$, (f) $N = 64$, (g) $N = 128$, (h) $N = 256$.

(a)

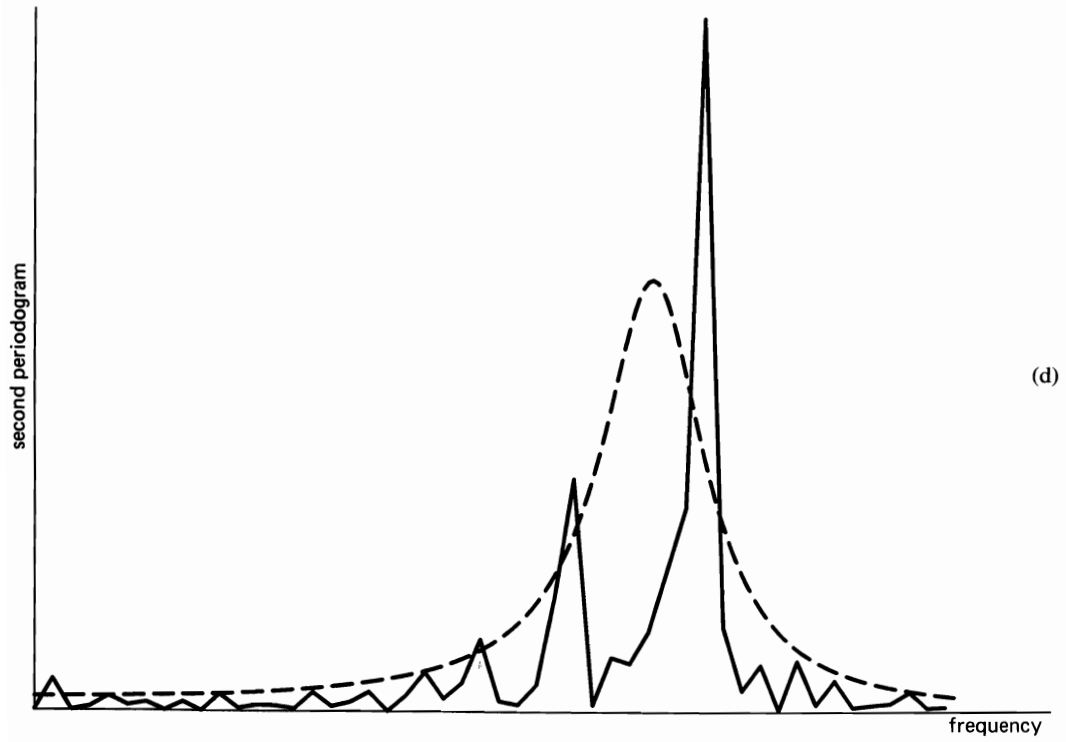


(b)

Figure 5-4 (a), (b) Two segments of data from one phenomenon. (c), (d) Periodograms of the two data segments shown in (a) and (b) (broken curve is the limit spectrum).



(c)



(d)

Figure 5-4 (continued)

two spectra would seem to suggest that there are indeed hidden periodicities; however, the frequencies of these hypothetical periodicities suggested by one spectrum are different from those suggested by the other spectrum. As a matter of fact, there are *no* hidden periodicities. The data is band-pass filtered white noise. The magnitude-squared transfer function $|H(\cdot)|^2$ of the BPF is shown superimposed on the spectra in Figure 5-4(c) and (d), and this is the limit spectrum that is approached by a statistical spectrum with sufficiently fine spectral resolution Δf and sufficiently long averaging time $\Delta t >> 1/\Delta f$ (see Figures 3-1 to 3-3). On the other hand, if it is known that the data consists of periodic components in additive white noise, then the normalized complex spectrum is indeed useful if enough data is available. This can be seen from the fact that for the model

$$x(t) = \sum_{\alpha} m_\alpha e^{i2\pi\alpha t} + n(t) \tag{85}$$

where $n(t)$ contains no periodic components, the temporal mean of the normalized complex spectrum is given by (exercise 1)

$$\text{mean}\{\overline{X}_T(t,f)\} = \sqrt{T} \sum_{\alpha} m_\alpha \delta_{f-\alpha} \tag{86}$$

where $\delta_{f-\alpha}$ is the Kronecker delta, and the temporal variance is given by (exercise 1)

$$\text{var}\{\overline{X}_T(t,f)\} = \hat{S}_n(f) \otimes z_{1/T}(f) + \sum_{\alpha} |m_\alpha|^2 \left[\frac{1}{T} w_{1/T}(f-\alpha) - \delta_{f-\alpha}\right]^2. \tag{87}$$

Thus, as the length T of the data segment is increased, the coefficient of variation (20) decreases inversely proportional to T for $f = \alpha$ for each of the periodicity frequencies α.

4. Time-Frequency Uncertainty Condition

In Chapter 2, Section C, it is established that for a nonstatistical spectrum, that is, a time-variant periodogram, the product of temporal and spectral resolutions is on the order of unity,

$$\Delta t \Delta f \cong 1, \tag{88}$$

regardless of the particular data-tapering aperture. This principle imposes *a limit on the simultaneous resolvability of temporal and spectral characteristics of the DATA*. By comparison, in this section it is established that for a statistical spectrum obtained, for example, from either temporal or spectral smoothing of the time-variant periodogram, the product of temporal and spectral resolutions must greatly exceed unity,

$$\Delta t \Delta f >> 1, \tag{89}$$

regardless of the particular (effective) spectral smoothing window, if the statistical spectrum is to be *reliable,* that is, if it is to exhibit a low degree of randomness as reflected in the size of its coefficient of variation (77). This condition[4] imposes

[4] This condition (89) is referred to as *Grenander's uncertainty condition,* in honor of Ulf Grenander's pioneering work in probabilistic analysis for spectral analysis of time-series [Grenander 1951, 1958].

a limit on the reliable simultaneous resolvability of temporal and spectral characteristics of the PHENOMENON (which are masked in the data by random effects). If the phenomenon is time-invariant so that temporal resolution is irrelevant, then Δt simply represents the total amount of data available for analysis, and (89) indicates that the spectrum is reliable only if the spectral resolution width greatly exceeds the reciprocal of the length of the total amount of data analyzed. If higher spectral resolution is desired for a fixed amount of data, reliability must be forfeited.

As an alternative to the term *reliability* for the degree of variability of a statistical spectrum, the term *stability* is sometimes used. Also, the term *degrees of freedom* is commonly used in discussions of stability because for $\Delta t \Delta f >> 1$, it can be shown that for a large class of time-series models a statistical spectrum has an approximate (exact for Gaussian time-series) chi-squared probability density (fraction-of-time density in the nonprobabilistic framework adopted in this book) with $\nu = 2\Delta t \Delta f / \eta$ degrees of freedom. Therefore, there is a one-to-one correspondence between the coefficient of variation, r_{y_f}, as given by (77), and the number of degrees of freedom, ν, that is,

$$\nu = 2r_{y_f} \quad \text{for} \quad |f| >> \Delta f.$$

The results in Chapter 4 show that when condition (89) is satisfied, most of the many alternative methods for continuous-time measurement of statistical spectra yield approximately the same spectrum. Consequently, the spectral analysis design problem is particularly challenging when (89) cannot be satisfied because the desired spectral resolution width does not greatly exceed the reciprocal of the total amount of data available (or the desired temporal resolution width). This is a problem to which considerable research effort has been devoted during the last several decades and is still being devoted under the title of *high-resolution spectral analysis*, as discussed in Chapter 9.

In Chapter 2, Section G, it is shown that the periodogram $S_{x_T}(t, f)$ is the local-average power spectral density of $x(t)$ in the sense that the instantaneous power in the spectral band $[f - \Delta f/2, f + \Delta f/2]$, averaged over the time-interval $[t - \Delta t/2, t + \Delta t/2]$ at locale t, is given to a close approximation by

$$P_{\Delta t \Delta f}(t, f) \cong \int_{f-\Delta f/2}^{f+\Delta f/2} S_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, \nu)\, d\nu \tag{90}$$

if (89) holds. Moreover, we now see that if (89) holds, then the spectrally smoothed periodogram (90) closely approximates the correspondingly smoothed limit spectrum $\hat{S}_x(f)$, which is shown in Chapter 3, Section C, to be precisely the average (over all time) power spectral density of $x(t)$. Thus, the condition (89), which assures that $P_{\Delta t \Delta f}(t, f)$ can be appropriately interpreted as the local-average power in the spectral band $[f - \Delta f/2, f + \Delta f/2]$, also assures that $P_{\Delta t \Delta f}(t, f)$ is—to a close approximation—the *global*-average power in the spectral band $[f - \Delta f/2, f + \Delta f/2]$ for a constant phenomenon. Furthermore, (89) is not only a sufficient condition for this latter interpretation of $P_{\Delta t \Delta f}(t, f)$, it is also a necessary condition for a broad class of time-series data.

D. RESOLUTION, LEAKAGE, AND RELIABILITY: DESIGN TRADE-OFFS

As revealed in Chapter 4, each method for continuous-time measurement of a statistical spectrum has an effective spectral smoothing window, and as explained in Part 3 of Section C, this window can be identified from the formula for the mean of the measured spectrum (see exercise 9). Furthermore, both the spectral resolution and the potential spectral leakage for each measurement method can be determined from the main-lobe width and the sidelobe heights of the effective spectral smoothing window provided that variability is sufficiently low. Moreover, the multiplicative coefficient η in formula (77) for the coefficient of variation for the statistical spectrum is determined by the effective spectral smoothing window (and the effective temporal window) through (75). Consequently, all three of the major performance parameters—resolution, leakage, and reliability—are determined at least in part (to a close approximation for $\Delta t \Delta f >> 1$) by the effective spectral smoothing window. For some applications, such as those for which spectral lines are present, there are actually two spectral leakage performance parameters of interest, namely, the heights of sidelobes close to the main lobe (which are typically the highest) and the rate of decay of the heights of the sidelobes when their distance from the main lobe is large.

Many different windows (more than 25) have been proposed and evaluated in terms of these four (and related) performance parameters. A few of these are described here. Since special window designs are most conveniently implemented digitally, the windows described here are defined for discrete time. Both the effective spectral smoothing windows and their inverse Fourier transforms, the effective correlation-tapering windows, are described—the latter first.

Rectangle (*Dirichlet*):

$$h(\tau) = \begin{cases} 1, & |\tau| \leq T/2 \\ 0, & |\tau| > T/2 \end{cases} \tag{91a}$$

Triangle (*Bartlett* or *Fejér*):

$$h(\tau) = \begin{cases} 1 - \dfrac{2|\tau|}{T}, & |\tau| \leq T/2 \\ 0, & |\tau| > T/2 \end{cases} \tag{92a}$$

Raised Cosine (*von Hann*):

$$h(\tau) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{2}\left[1 + \cos\left(\dfrac{2\pi\tau}{T}\right)\right], & |\tau| \leq T/2 \\ 0, & |\tau| > T/2 \end{cases} \tag{93a}$$

Raised Cosine on a Platform (*Hamming*):

$$h(\tau) = \begin{cases} 0.54 + 0.46\cos\left(\dfrac{2\pi\tau}{T}\right), & |\tau| \leq T/2 \\ 0, & |\tau| > T/2 \end{cases} \tag{94a}$$

Blackman:

$$h(\tau) = \begin{cases} 0.42 + 0.50\cos\left(\frac{2\pi\tau}{T}\right) + 0.08\cos\left(\frac{4\pi\tau}{T}\right), & |\tau| \leq T/2 \\ 0, & |\tau| > T/2. \end{cases} \tag{95a}$$

These windows are identical for discrete and continuous time. The corresponding Fourier-series transforms (using the sampling increment $T_s = 1$) are as follows:

Dirichlet (*Rectangle*):

$$H(f) = \frac{\sin(\pi f T)}{\sin(\pi f)}, \qquad |f| \leq \frac{1}{2} \tag{91b}$$

Bartlett or *Fejér* (*Triangle*):

$$H(f) = \frac{2}{T}\left[\frac{\sin(\pi f T/2)}{\sin(\pi f)}\right]^2, \qquad |f| \leq \frac{1}{2} \tag{92b}$$

von Hann (*Raised Cosine*):

$$H(f) = \frac{1}{2}\frac{\sin(\pi f T)}{\sin(\pi f)} + \frac{1}{4}\frac{\sin \pi T(f - 1/T)}{\sin \pi(f - 1/T)} + \frac{1}{4}\frac{\sin \pi T(f + 1/T)}{\sin \pi(f + 1/T)}, \qquad |f| \leq \frac{1}{2} \tag{93b}$$

Hamming (*Raised Cosine on a Platform*):

$$H(f) = 0.54\frac{\sin(\pi f T)}{\sin \pi f} + 0.23\frac{\sin \pi T(f - 1/T)}{\sin \pi(f - 1/T)} + 0.23\frac{\sin \pi T(f + 1/T)}{\sin \pi(f + 1/T)}, \qquad |f| \leq \frac{1}{2} \tag{94b}$$

Blackman:

$$H(f) = 0.42\frac{\sin(\pi f T)}{\sin(\pi f)} + 0.25\frac{\sin \pi T(f - 1/T)}{\sin \pi(f - 1/T)} + 0.25\frac{\sin \pi T(f + 1/T)}{\sin \pi(f + 1/T)} + 0.04\frac{\sin[(\pi T/2)(f + 2/T)]}{\sin \pi(f + 2/T)} + 0.04\frac{\sin[(\pi T/2)(f - 2/T)]}{\sin \pi(f - 2/T)}, \qquad |f| \leq \frac{1}{2}. \tag{95b}$$

For $T >> 1$, these spectral windows are essentially the same as the Fourier transforms of the continuous-time counterparts for $|f| \leq 1/2$.

In addition to these five spectral windows, there is the rectangle spectral window,

$$H(f) = \begin{cases} T, & |f| \leq 1/2 \\ 0, & |f| > 1/2, \end{cases} \tag{96}$$

which is referred to as the *Daniell window*. The four spectral windows (91b)–(94b) are shown in Figure 5-5. Observe how much smaller the sidelobes are for the second two compared with the first two. The Hamming window is designed

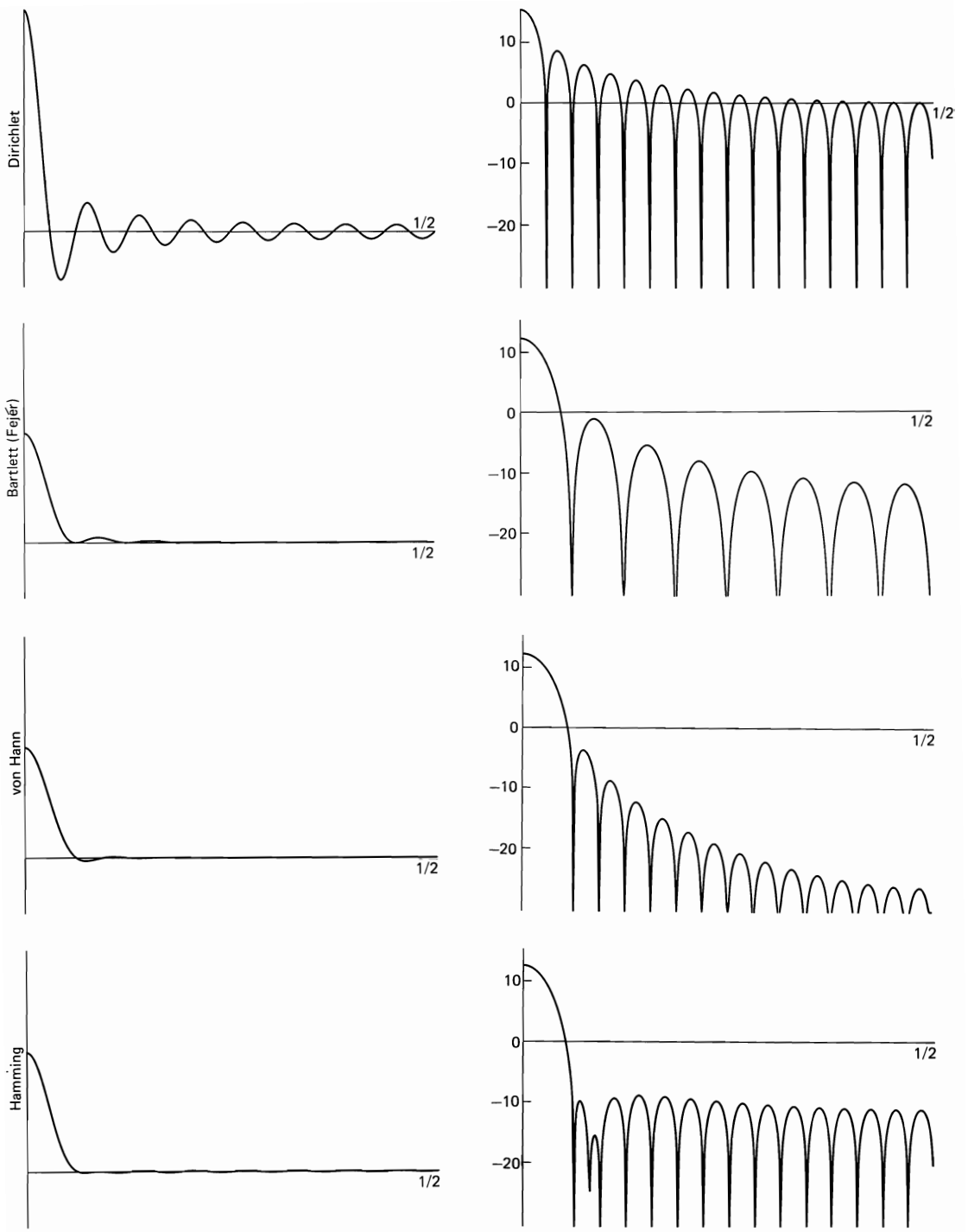


Figure 5-5 Correlation tapering windows (left) displayed with linear ordinate and spectral smoothing windows (right) displayed with log ordinate (from (91)–(95) with $T = 32$).

TABLE 5-2 SPECTRAL WINDOW PARAMETERS

Effective spectral window	Highest sidelobe (dB)	Asymptotic decay rate (dB/octave)	3-dB bandwidth ($\times T$)	Reliability factor η_0
Dirichlet (rectangle)	−6.5	−3	1.21	1
Bartlett or Fejér (triangle)	−13.5	−6	1.78	0.333
von Hann (raised cosine)	−16	−9	2.00	0.375
Hamming (raised cosine on a platform)	−22.5	−3	1.81	0.397
Blackman	−29	−9	2.35	0.305

to produce a zero in the spectral window near the peak of the first sidelobe of the Dirichlet window and thereby approximately minimize the height of the highest sidelobe [Blackman and Tukey 1958; Harris 1978]. The Blackman window is designed to produce two zeros in the spectral window [Blackman and Tukey 1958; Harris 1978], and it also removes the discontinuities at the temporal window edges that are present in the Hamming window, which results in an improvement in the sidelobe decay rate for the Blackman window relative to the Hamming window. Table 5-2 presents the following parameters for these windows: the height of the highest sidelobe relative to the main lobe (in decibels, i.e., 10 $\log_{10}$ of the ratio), the rate of decay of the sidelobes (in decibels per octave), the 3-dB bandwidth of the main lobe, and the reliability factor

$$\eta_0 = \frac{\sum_{|\tau| \leq T/2} h_T^2(\tau)}{T\, h_T^2(0)}, \tag{97}$$

which occurs in the discrete-time counterpart to the proportionality coefficient η (75) that determines the coefficient of variation (77). The factor η_0 in (97) depends not only on the particular window but also on the number of time samples per window width T; however, this latter dependence becomes negligible as the number of time-samples increases ($T >> 1$). Therefore, the values given in Table 5-2 are asymptotic values for (97) obtained from the continuous-time counterparts of the windows.[5] Observe that if the temporal windows in Table 5-2, (91a)–(95a), are data-tapering windows rather than effective autocorrelation-tapering windows, then $|H(f)|^2$ rather than $H(f)$ is the effective spectral smoothing window for a temporally smoothed periodogram, and therefore the decibel values

[5] Since $\Delta f/\eta_0$ in (77) with $\eta = \eta_0$ can be interpreted as an effective bandwidth, then $1/\eta_0$ is sometimes called the *standardized bandwidth* but should not be confused with the resolution bandwidth (e.g., the 3-dB bandwidth in Table 5-2).

in the first two columns of Table 5-2 need to be doubled and the values in the last two columns need to be recalculated.

Example:

Consider the problem of measuring the squared magnitude of the transfer function, here denoted by $K(f)$, of the resonant system driven by white Gaussian noise described in Section A, Chapter 3. Let B denote the bandwidth of the resonance peak centered at f_0, as depicted in Figure 5-6, and assume that it is desired to have a spectral resolution of $\Delta f = B/5$. Also assume that the coefficient of variation of the spectrum estimate must be no larger than $\frac{1}{10}$ in order to obtain a sufficient reduction of random effects, and choose a time-averaged periodogram as the spectrum estimate. Let us determine the minimum amount Δt of data that must be analyzed, and then evaluate the result for a resonance bandwidth of $B = 1$ KHz. A coefficient of variation of $\frac{1}{10}$ suggests that $\Delta t \Delta f = \Delta t/T$ is on the order of 10, in which case approximation (77) can be used; that is, the coefficient of variation is approximated by

$$r_{y_f} \cong \eta \frac{T}{\Delta t} \tag{98}$$

for frequencies sufficiently far removed from zero ($|f| > 1/T$). For a time-averaged periodogram, the factor η in (98), which is defined by (75), reduces to the reliability factor

$$\eta = \eta_0 \triangleq \frac{\int_{-T/2}^{T/2} h_T^2(\tau)\, d\tau}{T h_T^2(0)}, \tag{99}$$

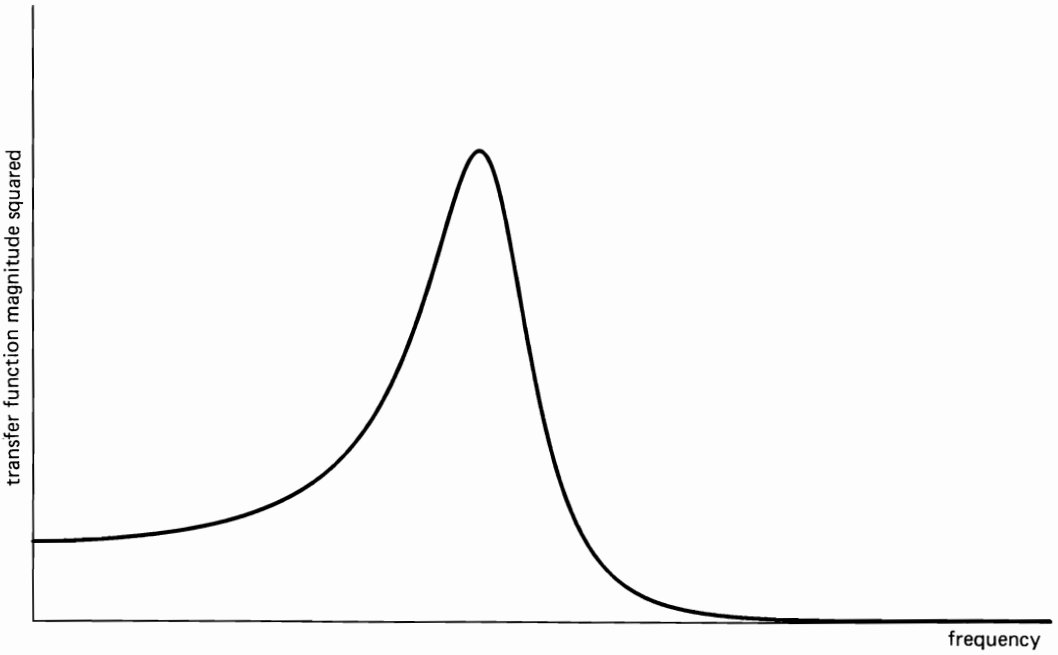


Figure 5-6 Transfer function for resonant system.

assuming that a rectangle time-averaging window $g_{\Delta t}(t) = u_{\Delta t}(t)$ is used. It follows from (55)–(57) that

$$h_T(\tau) = \frac{1}{T} a_T(\tau) \otimes a_T(-\tau), \tag{100}$$

where $a_T(\tau)$ is the data-tapering window. It follows from (98) and (99) that for a coefficient of variation of $\frac{1}{10}$, we need a data segment of length

$$\Delta t = 10\eta_0 T. \tag{101}$$

For example, it follows from (100) and Table 5-2 that for no data tapering (a_T = rectangle $\Rightarrow$ h_T = triangle), the 3-dB resolution bandwidth is $\Delta f = 1.78/T$ and the reliability factor is $\eta_0 = 0.333$, and therefore (101) becomes

$$\Delta t = \frac{(10)(0.333)(1.78)}{\Delta f} = \frac{5.9}{\Delta f}.$$

Thus, for $\Delta f = B/5$ and $B = 1$ KHz, we need $\Delta t \cong 30$ ms of data. For comparison, if we use a data-tapering window that yields an effective autocorrelation tapering window (100) that is the raised cosine (namely, the inverse transform of the square root of the magnitude of the transform of the raised cosine) to obtain better leakage behavior at the cost of moderately larger resolution bandwidth ($\Delta f = 2/T$) and moderately larger reliability factor ($\eta_0 = 0.375$), then (101) becomes

$$\Delta t = \frac{(10)(0.375)(2)}{\Delta f} \cong \frac{7.5}{\Delta f},$$

and therefore we need $\Delta t = 37.5$ ms of data. This is only a 25% increase, but it reduces the highest sidelobe of the spectral window by 2.5 dB and reduces the decay rate of the sidelobes by 3 dB/octave, as shown in Table 5-2. Alternatively, the performance obtained in this second case can be realized with a spectrally smoothed periodogram rather than a temporally smoothed periodogram, provided that the spectral smoothing window is the transform of the raised cosine. Although the effective smoothing window is the convolution of the spectral window actually used for smoothing with the squared magnitude of the transform of the data tapering window (see (54a)), which is a sinc-squared (Fejér) spectral window if no tapering is used, nearly the same length of data segment will be required (since nearly the same 3-dB bandwidth and reliability factor will result—see (54b)), and the same decay rate of the sidelobes will result.

As another alternative, a spectrally smoothed periodogram with the rectangle smoothing window can be used. Then since $\Delta t \Delta f >> 1$, approximation (54b) can be used for the effective spectral window to obtain the approximate 3-dB bandwidth ($\Delta f = 1/T$) and approximate reliability factor ($\eta_0 = 1$); however, the exact formula (54a) must be used to determine the sidelobe behavior. For example, with no data tapering, the asymptotic decay rate will be that of the Fejér spectral window, which is the same as it was for the time-averaged periodogram with no data tapering. However, the highest sidelobe will be lower (and will continually decrease as $\Delta t \Delta f$ is increased). The cost of this improvement is that $\Delta t = 50$ ms of data is needed, which is an increase of 67% above the 30 ms needed for the time-averaged periodogram with no data tapering.

Observe that if the desired spectral resolution width were cut in half to $\Delta f = B/10$, then for the same coefficient of variation, the amount of data required is simply doubled in each of the cases considered.

Example:

To illustrate the particular importance of spectral window sidelobe behavior when the data contains additive periodicity, which gives rise to spectral lines, we reconsider the previous example but with modified data that is contaminated with sine wave interference of power P_* at frequency f_*, as illustrated in Figure 5-7. Let us evaluate and compare the amount of spectral leakage at the frequency $f = f_0$ of the resonance peak, due to the sine wave power at $f = f_*$, for a time-averaged periodogram with no data tapering and with triangle data tapering. For this purpose, we let $f_* = f_0 + 3B/10$ and $P_* = 2B|K(f_0)|^2$. (The proportionality to the bandwidth B renders the leakage performance independent of the bandwidth parameter when the resolution is also proportional to B.)

If we assume a reliability factor of $\frac{1}{10}$ as in the previous example, then the leakage behavior is accurately characterized by the mean of the measured spectrum. It follows from (50) and (56) that the mean of the time-averaged periodogram is given by

$$\text{mean}\{y_f(t)\} = \hat{S}_x(f) \otimes \frac{1}{T}|A_{1/T}(f)|^2, \tag{102}$$

assuming that a rectangle time-averaging window $g_{\Delta t}(t) = u_{\Delta t}(t)$ is used. Formula (102) together with

$$\hat{S}_x(f) = \begin{cases} |K(f)|^2, & \text{interference absent} \\ |K(f)|^2 + \dfrac{P_*}{2}[\delta(f - f_*) + \delta(f + f_*)], & \text{interference present} \end{cases} \tag{103}$$

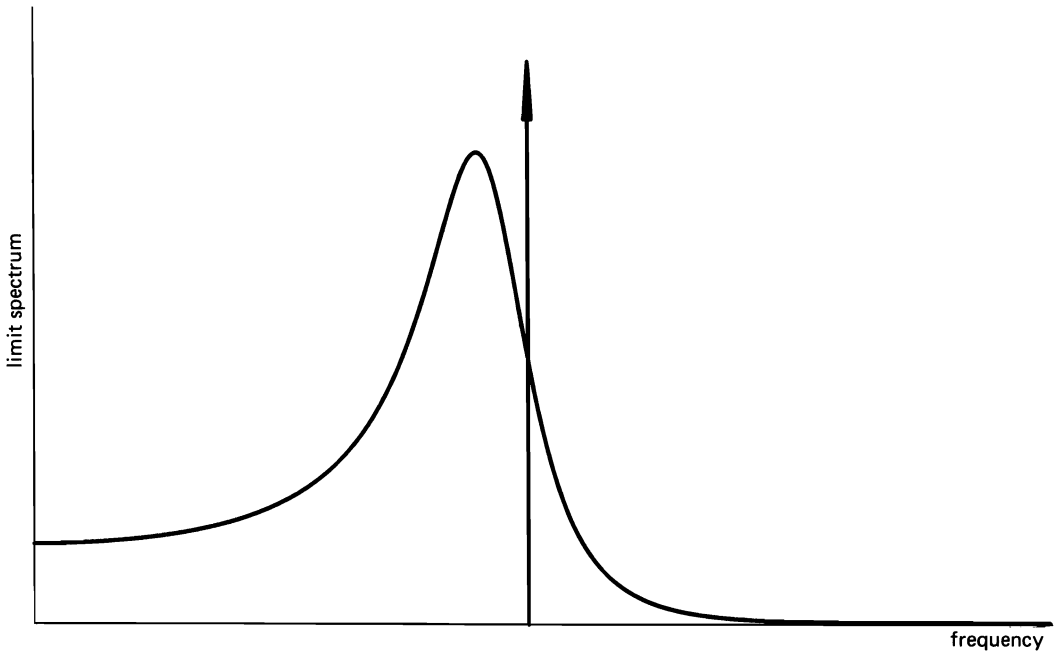


Figure 5-7 Limit spectrum of response of resonant system contaminated with sine wave interference.

(in which we have let $N_0 = 1$ for the intensity of the white noise excitation of the resonant system) yields

$$\text{mean}\{y_f(t)\} = |K(f)|^2 \otimes \frac{1}{T}|A_{1/T}(f)|^2, \tag{104}$$

for interference absent and

$$\begin{aligned}\text{mean}\{y_f(t)\} = |K(f)|^2 \otimes \frac{1}{T}|A_{1/T}(f)|^2 \\ + \frac{P^*}{2}\left[\frac{1}{T}|A_{1/T}(f - f_*)|^2 + \frac{1}{T}|A_{1/T}(f + f_*)|^2\right]\end{aligned} \tag{105}$$

for interference present. If we assume that $\Delta f = 1/T$ is small enough to resolve $|K(f)|^2$, say $1/T = B/5$, and that $|A_{1/T}(f_0 + f_*)| << |A_{1/T}(f_0 - f_*)|$ (which means that the image spectral line at $f = -f_*$ has negligible effect in the measurement at $f = f_0$), then we obtain simply

$$\text{mean}\{y_f(t)\} \cong |K(f_0)|^2 \tag{106}$$

for interference absent and

$$\text{mean}\{y_f(t)\} \cong |K(f_0)|^2 + \frac{P_*}{2T}|A_{1/T}(f_0 - f_*)|^2 \tag{107}$$

for interference present. Given that $P^* = 2B|K(f_0)|^2$ and $B = 5/T$, the *fractional leakage* FL at $f = f_0$ is

$$\text{FL} = \frac{500}{T^2}|A_{1/T}(f_0 - f_*)|^2 \quad \text{percent.} \tag{108}$$

Using

$$A_{1/T} = \frac{\sin(\pi f T)}{\pi f} \tag{109a}$$

for no data tapering and

$$A_{1/T} = \frac{1}{T}\left[\frac{\sin(\pi f T)}{\pi f}\right]^2 \tag{109b}$$

for triangle tapering together with $f_* = f_0 + 3B/10$ yields

$$\text{FL} = 500\left[\frac{\sin(3\pi/2)}{3\pi/2}\right]^n \quad \text{percent,} \tag{110}$$

where $n = 2$ for no data tapering and $n = 4$ for triangle tapering. It follows that FL = 22.5% for no data tapering and FL = 1.0% for triangle tapering. Thus, although the use of data tapering requires only a modest increase in the amount Δt of data in order to maintain a desired spectral resolution and coefficient of variation (as illustrated in the previous example), it greatly reduces spectral leakage.

The preceding two examples illustrate that although there is a fundamental trade-off between resolution and reliability, in that for a given amount of data Δt, the spectral resolution can be made finer (Δf smaller) only by decreasing the reliability (increasing the coefficient of variation) in inverse proportion, and vice versa, much can be gained in terms of improving spectral leakage performance, with only modest losses in either spectral resolution or reliability. Consequently,

the use of carefully designed data-tapering windows or autocorrelation-tapering windows to obtain good effective spectral smoothing windows is generally advisable. Sophisticated window design is particularly feasible in practice when digital methods of implementation are used, as discussed in the next chapter.

This discussion of window design is concluded with an anecdote on the lighter side. Recall that the Fourier transform of the rectangle is the sinc. Because of the common interpretation of the word *window* as a rectangular aperture in a structure such as a house, the subject of window design has long been referred to as *window carpentry*. This led one of my students, Louis W. Botsford, to remark that in order to Fourier transform a house, you need only change all the windows to sinks and all the sinks to windows.

E. SUMMARY

In this chapter the concept of fraction-of-time probabilistic analysis is introduced and used to quantify the resolution, leakage, and reliability properties of statistical spectra. In Section A it is explained that probabilistic analysis can be carried out without relying on the abstract notion of a probability space and an associated ensemble of random samples by using the concept of fraction-of-time probability. Then in Section B, the general fraction-of-time probabilistic model is defined and the particularly important special case, the Gaussian model, is defined. In Section C, the two temporal probabilistic measures of performance called *bias* and *variability* are defined and characterized in terms of the temporal mean, temporal coefficient of variation, and temporal correlation coefficient. These temporal probabilistic parameters are evaluated for the complex spectrum, periodogram, and various statistical spectra specified by the general representation introduced in Chapter 4, Section G. A general formula (50)–(51) for the effective spectral smoothing window is obtained and evaluated for various specific types of statistical spectra. A general formula (72)–(73) for the coefficient of variation is obtained, and it is simplified ((74)–(77)) by using the separable approximation to the kernel in the general representation (48), and the variability phenomenon is explained. Then two examples that illustrate the effects of variability are presented, and a time-frequency uncertainty principle for statistical spectra is described. Finally, the utility of the explicit formula for the effective spectral smoothing window is brought to light by explaining how it can be used in design to tradeoff resolution, leakage, and reliability performance (see Table 5-2). Two examples are presented to illustrate these design trade-offs. For situations in which the amount of data available is severely restricted or the range of the spectrum is large, such that the conditions required for the approximate formula for the coefficient of variation to be accurate are violated, the exact formulas for the mean (50)–(51) and variance (66) can be used simply by substituting in the kernel $M(\nu, \mu)$ that specifies the particular spectrum estimate of interest (see Table 5-1). This is important because leakage effects that do not show up in the effective spectral smoothing window can be revealed in the variability when the exact formulas are used.

EXERCISES

1. **(a)** Use (25) to show that the mean of the normalized time-variant finite-time complex spectrum (27) is zero for all nonzero frequencies, $f \neq 0$.

(b) Use (26) to show that the covariance of the normalized spectrum (27), at frequencies $f + \nu/2$ and $f - \nu/2$, is zero for all $\nu \neq 0$. *Hint:* In the integral

$$\int_{-T_0/2}^{T_0/2} x(t + u)x(t + v)e^{-i\pi\nu(2t+u+v)}\, dt,$$

let $t + u = t' + \tau/2$ and $t + v = t' - \tau/2$ to obtain the form in (26).

(c) Show that the variance of the normalized complex spectrum (27) is given by (29) for $f \neq 0$ and also for $f = 0$ if the mean of $x(t)$ is zero. *Hint:* Use the identity

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} a_T(u)a_T(v)\hat{R}_x(u - v)e^{-i2\pi f(u-v)}\, du\, dv = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} r_a(\tau)\hat{R}_x(\tau)e^{-i2\pi f\tau}\, d\tau. \tag{112}$$

(d) Show that the finite autocorrelation in f of the normalized complex spectrum is given by (32) and is therefore zero in the limit, as $T \to \infty$, for $\nu \neq 0$. *Hint:* Use the identity

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-i2\pi f(u-v)}\, df = \delta(u - v). \tag{113}$$

(e) Using methods similar to those in (a)–(c), show that the mean and variance of the normalized complex spectrum for the model (85) are given by (86) and (87), respectively.

2. **(a)** Show that the mean of the periodogram is the variance of the normalized complex spectrum for $f \neq 0$.

(b) Show that the covariance of the periodogram for tapered data, at frequencies f_1 and f_2, is given by (40) for a zero-mean Gaussian time-series $x(t)$. *Hint:* Use Isserlis' formula (19) to show that the correlation is given by

$$\langle S_{x_T}(t, f_1)S_{x_T}(t, f_2)\rangle = \frac{1}{T^2}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} a_T(u)a_T(v)a_T(r)a_T(s)$$
$$[\hat{R}_x(u - v)\hat{R}_x(r - s) + \hat{R}_x(u - r)\hat{R}_x(v - s) + \hat{R}_x(u - s)\hat{R}_x(v - r)]$$
$$\times e^{-i2\pi(f_1u - f_1v + f_2r - f_2s)}\, du\, dv\, dr\, ds. \tag{114}$$

Then show that the three terms in this expression are given by

$$\left[\frac{1}{T}\hat{S}_x(f_1) \otimes |A_{1/T}(f_1)|^2\right]\left[\frac{1}{T}\hat{S}_x(f_2) \otimes |A_{1/T}(f_2)|^2\right], \tag{115a}$$

$$\left[\frac{1}{T}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \hat{S}_x(\nu)A_{1/T}(f_1 - \nu)A_{1/T}(\nu + f_2)\, d\nu\right]^2, \tag{115b}$$

$$\left[\frac{1}{T}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \hat{S}_x(\nu)A_{1/T}(f_1 - \nu)A_{1/T}(\nu - f_2)\, d\nu\right]^2. \tag{115c}$$

In order to accomplish this, use the identity (112) and the identity

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} a_T(u)a_T(v)\hat{R}_x(u - v)e^{-i2\pi(gu+hv)}\, du\, dv$$
$$= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \hat{S}_x(\nu)A_{1/T}(g - \nu)A_{1/T}(h + \nu)\, d\nu, \tag{116}$$

where $A_{1/T}$ is the Fourier transform of a_T. Finally, use the formula

$$\text{cov}\{S_{x_T}(t, f_1), S_{x_T}(t, f_2)\} = \langle S_{x_T}(t, f_1) S_{x_T}(t, f_2)\rangle - \langle S_{x_T}(t, f_1)\rangle\langle S_{x_T}(t, f_2)\rangle$$

for the covariance, together with (34) and (115).

(c) Show that the variance of the periodogram is given by (35) for a zero-mean Gaussian time-series $x(t)$. *Hint:* Use the result of (b).

(d) With the aid of a graph, verify that

$$\lim_{T\to\infty} \frac{1}{T} A_{1/T}(f - \nu) A_{1/T}(\nu + f) = \lim_{T\to\infty} \frac{1}{T} |A_{1/T}(\nu)|^2 \delta_f = \gamma\delta(\nu)\delta_f, \tag{117}$$

where γ is the limit area defined by (25) in Chapter 3. Then use this result to derive (36), for the limiting coefficient of variation, from (35) and to derive (42), for the limiting correlation coefficient, from (40).

(e) Use the periodogram-correlogram relation to verify (43) for the finite autocorrelation of the periodogram.

3. Assume that $x(t)$ is a zero-mean Gaussian time-series and

$$\hat{R}_x(\tau) \begin{cases} > 0, & |\tau| \leq \Delta\tau^* \\ = 0, & |\tau| > \Delta\tau^*. \end{cases} \tag{118}$$

(a) Show that the variance of the correlogram $R_{x_T}(t, \tau)$ is proportional to $\Delta\tau^*/T$ for all $|\tau| \leq T$. *Hint:* Use Isserlis' formula to show that

$$\langle [R_{x_T}(t, \tau)]^2\rangle = \frac{1}{T^2} \int_{t-(T-|\tau|)/2}^{t+(T-|\tau|)/2} \int_{t-(T-|\tau|)/2}^{t+(T-|\tau|)/2} \{\hat{R}_x(u - v + \tau)\hat{R}_x(u - v - \tau) + [\hat{R}_x(u - v)]^2 + [\hat{R}_x(\tau)]^2\}\, du\, dv. \tag{119}$$

Then subtract the squared mean and use the identity (112) to show that

$$\text{var}\{R_{x_T}(t, \tau)\} = \frac{T - |\tau|}{T^2} \int_{-(T-|\tau|)}^{T-|\tau|} \left(1 - \frac{|w|}{T - |\tau|}\right) \times \{\hat{R}_x(w + \tau)\hat{R}_x(w - \tau) + [\hat{R}_x(w)]^2\}\, dw \tag{120}$$

$$\geqslant \frac{T - |\tau|}{T^2} \int_{-(T-|\tau|)}^{T-|\tau|} \left(1 - \frac{|w|}{T - |\tau|}\right) [\hat{R}_x(w)]^2\, dw \tag{121}$$

$$= \frac{T - |\tau|}{T^2} \int_{-\Delta\tau^*}^{\Delta\tau^*} \left(1 - \frac{|w|}{T - |\tau|}\right) [\hat{R}_x(w)]^2\, dw, \qquad \Delta\tau^* \leq T - |\tau| \tag{122}$$

$$\cong \sigma_x^4 \left(1 - \frac{|\tau|}{T}\right)\left(\frac{\Delta\tau^*}{T}\right), \qquad \text{for } \Delta\tau^* \ll T - |\tau|, \tag{123}$$

and also that

$$\text{var}\{R_{x_T}(t, \tau)\} \leq \frac{2(T - |\tau|)}{T^2} \int_{-\Delta\tau^*}^{\Delta\tau^*} [\hat{R}_x(w)]^2\, dw \qquad \Delta\tau^* \leq T - |\tau| \tag{124}$$

$$\cong 2\sigma_x^4 \left(1 - \frac{|\tau|}{T}\right)\left(\frac{\Delta\tau^*}{T}\right). \tag{125}$$

Thus, the variance of $R_{x_T}(t, \tau)$ is (to a close approximation) between the bounds (123) and (125).

(b) Show that the covariance of $R_{x_T}(t, \tau_1)$ and $R_{x_T}(t, \tau_2)$ is zero for $|\tau_1 + \tau_2| > 2\Delta\tau^*$ and $|\tau_1 - \tau_2| > 2\Delta\tau^*$. *Hint:* Use Isserlis' formula to show that

$$\langle R_{x_T}(t, \tau_1)R_{x_T}(t, \tau_2)\rangle = \frac{1}{T^2}\int_{t-(T-|\tau_1|)/2}^{t+(T-|\tau_1|)/2}\int_{t-(T-|\tau_2|)/2}^{t+(T-|\tau_2|)/2}\left\{\hat{R}_x(\tau_1)\hat{R}_x(\tau_2)\right.$$
$$+ \hat{R}_x\left(u - v + \frac{\tau_1 + \tau_2}{2}\right)\hat{R}_x\left(u - v - \frac{\tau_1 + \tau_2}{2}\right)$$
$$\left.+ \hat{R}_x\left(u - v + \frac{\tau_1 - \tau_2}{2}\right)\hat{R}_x\left(u - v - \frac{\tau_1 - \tau_2}{2}\right)\right\} du\, dv. \quad (126)$$

Then use the identity

$$I \triangleq \int_{t-(T-|\tau_1|)/2}^{t+(T-|\tau_1|)/2}\int_{t-(T-|\tau_2|)/2}^{t+(T-|\tau_2|)/2} f(u - v)\, du\, dv = \int_{-(T-a)}^{-(T-b)} (T - a - |w|)f(w)\, dw$$
$$+ \int_{T-b}^{T-a}(T - a - |w|)f(w)\, dw + \int_{-(T-b)}^{(T-b)} (T - b)f(w)\, dw \quad (127)$$

where $a \triangleq \frac{1}{2}(|\tau_1| + |\tau_2|)$ and $b \triangleq \frac{1}{2}\min\{|\tau_1|, |\tau_2|\}$, which yields

$$0 \leqslant \mathrm{I} \leqslant \int_{-T}^{T} Tf(w)\, dw, \quad (128)$$

for $f(w) \geqslant 0$ and $\Delta\tau^* < T$, to obtain

$$|\mathrm{cov}\{R_{x_T}(t, \tau_1), R_{x_T}(t, \tau_2)\}| \leqslant \frac{1}{T}\int_{-T}^{T}\left\{\hat{R}_x\left(w + \frac{\tau_1 + \tau_2}{2}\right)\hat{R}_x\left(w - \frac{\tau_1 + \tau_2}{2}\right)\right.$$
$$\left.+ \hat{R}_x\left(w + \frac{\tau_1 - \tau_2}{2}\right)\hat{R}_x\left(w - \frac{\tau_1 - \tau_2}{2}\right)\right\} dw. \quad (129)$$

It follows from (118) and (129) (or more directly from (118) and (126)) that for $|\tau_1 + \tau_2| > 2\Delta\tau^*$ and $|\tau_1 - \tau_2| > 2\Delta\tau^*$, the covariance is zero. It also follows from this result that if $\{R_{x_T}(t, \tau) : |\tau| \leqslant T\}$ is divided into $T/\Delta\tau^*$ contiguous segments, then only adjacent segments (which can satisfy $|\tau_1 - \tau_2| < 2\Delta\tau^*$) and mirror images about $\tau = 0$ (which can satisfy $|\tau_1 + \tau_2| < 2\Delta\tau^*$) are correlated. All others are mutually uncorrelated, and their variances therefore add when they are summed in an integral such as

$$S_{x_T}(t, f) = \int_{-T}^{T} R_{x_T}(t, \tau)e^{-i2\pi f\tau}\, d\tau.$$

Thus, the variance of such an integral is essentially independent of T and therefore does not approach zero as $T \to \infty$. This is true in spite of the fact that the variance of the integrand approaches zero as $T \to \infty$ for each and every value of τ.

4. (a) For a zero-mean Gaussian time-series, evaluate the mean-squared error in the approximation

$$R_x(t, \tau)_{\Delta t} \cong R_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, \tau), \qquad |\tau| \leqslant T << \Delta t, \quad (130)$$

and show that the error can be made arbitrarily small by selecting $\Delta t/T$ to be sufficiently large. *Hint:* See the hint in exercise 3(a).

(b) For a zero-mean Gaussian time-series, evaluate the mean-squared error in the approximation

$$R_{x_T}(t, \tau) \otimes u_{\Delta t}(t) \cong R_x(t, \tau)_{\Delta t}\frac{1}{T}r_a(\tau), \qquad T << \Delta t, \quad (131)$$

for tapered data (see (20) in Chapter 2), and show that the error can be made arbitrarily small by selecting $\Delta t/T$ to be sufficiently large.

5. Show that the limit of the variance of the pseudospectrum for a zero-mean Gaussian time-series is given by

$$\lim_{T\to\infty} \operatorname{var}\{S_x(t,f)_T\} = [\hat{S}_x(f)]^2(1 + \delta_f). \tag{132}$$

Hint: Use Isserlis' formula to show that the mean-squared value is given by

$$\langle [S_x(t,f)_T]^2 \rangle = \int_{-T}^{T}\int_{-T}^{T} \left\{ \hat{R}_x(u)\hat{R}_x(v) + \left(\frac{1}{T}\right)^2 \int_{-T/2}^{T/2}\int_{-T/2}^{T/2} \left[\hat{R}_x\left(r - s + \frac{u-v}{2}\right) \right.\right.$$

$$\left.\left. \times\, \hat{R}_x\left(r - s - \frac{u-v}{2}\right) + \hat{R}_x\left(r - s + \frac{u+v}{2}\right)\hat{R}_x\left(r - s - \frac{u+v}{2}\right)\right] dr\, ds \right\} e^{-i2\pi f(u+v)}\, du\, dv. \tag{133}$$

Then use the identity (112) to show that

$$\operatorname{var}\{S_x(t,f)_T\} = \int_{-T}^{T}\int_{-T}^{T} \frac{1}{T}\int_{-T}^{T} \left(1 - \frac{|\tau|}{T}\right)\left[\hat{R}_x\left(\tau + \frac{u+v}{2}\right)\hat{R}_x\left(\tau - \frac{u+v}{2}\right) \right.$$

$$\left. + \hat{R}_x\left(\tau + \frac{u-v}{2}\right)\hat{R}_x\left(\tau - \frac{u-v}{2}\right)\right] d\tau\, e^{-i2\pi f(u+v)}\, du\, dv, \tag{134}$$

and then use the condition $T >> \Delta\tau^*$ to justify omission of the factor $(1 - |\tau|/T)$ and evaluate the integral with respect to τ. Finally, use the identity (116) to obtain

$$\operatorname{var}\{S_x(t,f)_T\} \cong \frac{1}{T}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} [\hat{S}_x(\nu)]^2\{w_{1/T}(\nu - f)w_{1/T}(\nu + f) + [w_{1/T}(\nu - f)]^2\}\, d\nu,$$

$$T >> \Delta\tau^*. \tag{135}$$

Now, since $1/T << 1/\Delta\tau^* = \Delta f^*$, where Δf^* is the resolution width of $\hat{S}_x(f)$, and $z_{1/T} = (1/T)w_{1/T}^2$, then the desired result (132) follows (see (117)).

6. **(a)** Derive formula (50)–(51) for the mean of a statistical spectrum of the form (48).
(b) Simplify (51) for the case in which the kernel is separable, (57).

7. Let $x(t)$ be a zero-mean Gaussian time-series.
(a) Use Isserlis' formula (19) to derive the formula (62) for the limit spectrum of the centered spectrum estimate $z_f(t)$ specified by (59) and (48) with a separable kernel (57). *Hint:* Show that the limit autocorrelation of $y_f(t)$ (based on the conjugate lag product $y_f(t + \tau/2)y_f^*(t - \tau/2)$) is given by

$$\hat{R}_{y_f}(\tau) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} g_{\Delta t}(w_1)g_{\Delta t}^*(w_2)h_{1/\Delta f}(\tau_1)h_{1/\Delta f}^*(\tau_2)e^{-i2\pi f(\tau_1-\tau_2)}$$

$$\times \left[\hat{R}_x(\tau_1)\hat{R}_x(\tau_2) + \hat{R}_x\left(\tau + w_1 - w_2 + \frac{\tau_1-\tau_2}{2}\right)\hat{R}_x\left(\tau + w_1 - w_2 - \frac{\tau_1-\tau_2}{2}\right) \right.$$

$$\left. + \hat{R}_x\left(\tau + w_1 - w_2 + \frac{\tau_1+\tau_2}{2}\right)\hat{R}_x\left(\tau + w_1 - w_2 - \frac{\tau_1+\tau_2}{2}\right)\right] dw_1\, dw_2\, d\tau_1\, d\tau_2. \tag{136}$$

(The generalization of Isserlis' formula for complex-valued time-series is given in Chapter 15.) Then evaluate the Fourier transform. For example, the second term denoted by $S_2(\nu)$ is evaluated as follows. Application of the convolution theorem to the Fourier transform of the second term of (136) yields

$$S_2(\nu) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} g_{\Delta t}(w_1)g^*_{\Delta t}(w_2)h_{1/\Delta f}(\tau_1)h^*_{1/\Delta f}(\tau_2)e^{-i2\pi f(\tau_1-\tau_2)}$$
$$\times \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \hat{S}_x(\nu-\mu)e^{i2\pi[w_1-w_2+(\tau_1-\tau_2)/2](\nu-\mu)}\hat{S}_x(\mu)e^{i2\pi[w_1-w_2-(\tau_1-\tau_2)/2]\mu}\,d\mu\,dw_1\,dw_2\,d\tau_1\,d\tau_2. \tag{137}$$

Factoring the five integrals into four Fourier transformation integrals and one remaining integral yields

$$S_2(\nu) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} G(\nu)G^*(\nu)H\left(f+\mu-\frac{\nu}{2}\right)H^*\left(f+\mu-\frac{\nu}{2}\right)\hat{S}_x(\nu-\mu)\hat{S}_x(\mu)\,d\mu, \tag{138}$$

which can be reexpressed as the first term in (62). Proceed similarly for the first and third terms in (136), and use (50) together with (57) to identify the first term in (136) with the squared mean term which is present in S_{y_f} but not in S_{z_f}. Then use (59) to express S_{y_f} in terms of S_{z_f}.

(b) When a window function, say A, is narrow enough to resolve accurately another function, say B, then the following approximation is accurate:

$$A(\nu)B\left(\mu+\frac{\nu}{2}\right)B\left(\mu-\frac{\nu}{2}\right) \cong A(\nu)B^2(\mu). \tag{139}$$

Use this approximation to derive (63) from (62).

(c) Use the fact that when a window function A is narrow enough to resolve accurately another function B then the approximation

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} A(f-\mu)B(\mu)\,d\mu \cong \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} A(\mu)\,d\mu\; B(f) \tag{140}$$

is accurate to show that (64)–(65) accurately approximates (63). Note: A more accurate approximation than (64) can be obtained by replacement of $[\hat{S}_x(f)]^2\, r_{H_{\Delta f}}(2f)$ with $[\hat{S}_x(0)]^2\, r_{H_{\Delta f}}(2f)$. However, as long as $H_{\Delta f}$ resolves $\hat{S}_x$, then (64) is accurate.

(d) Finally, use (50), (58), (64), and (65) to derive (72) and (74), and then manipulate this result into the form (75) and (77).

(e) Using the same techniques as those described in (a)–(d), derive the general formulas (60) and (66) and the approximations (67)–(69). Then show that the separable approximation (57)–(58) can be used to obtain (62) from (60), (70) from (69), and (74) from (73).

8. (a) Sketch the mean of the time-averaged periodogram $S_{x_{1/\Delta f}}(t, f)_{\Delta t}$ for a sine wave in additive white noise,

$$x(t) = \cos(2\pi f_0 t + \theta) + n(t), \tag{141}$$

and a rectangle data-tapering window.

(b) Sketch the mean of the spectrally smoothed periodogram $S_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, f)_{\Delta f}$ for the same data as in (a) and a rectangle spectral smoothing window with $\Delta t \Delta f \gg 1$.

(c) If one had an unlimited amount Δt of data, how might one proceed to determine if the data is narrow-band-pass filtered white noise with bandwidth B in additive white noise or a sine wave in additive noise?

9. Determine the kernel transform $M(\nu, \mu)$ and the effective spectral smoothing window $E(f)$ for the following measurement methods:

(a) Temporally smoothed periodogram with a triangle data-tapering window $Tv_T(t)$.

(b) Spectrally smoothed periodogram with a rectangle smoothing window, $u_{\Delta f}(\nu)$.

(c) Fourier-transformed tapered correlogram with a triangle correlation-tapering window $(1/\Delta f)v_{1/\Delta f}(\tau)$.

(d) Hopped temporally smoothed pseudospectrum with hop time-interval of length T.

(e) Hopped temporally smoothed periodogram of half-overlapped data segments each of length T, with a triangle data-tapering window, $Tv_T(t)$.

(f) Wave analyzer with input BPF transfer function magnitude given by a sinc-squared function $z_{\Delta f}(\nu - f)$ for each f.

(g) Demodulation method with input LPF transfer function given by a sinc-squared function $z_{\Delta f}(\nu)$.

Observe that $E(f)$ is the same for (a), (e), (f), and (g). (Do not use the separable approximation (57) until exact formulas for $M(\nu, \mu)$ and $E(f)$ have been obtained.) *Hint:* See exercise 9 in Chapter 4.

10. (a) Show that the effective autocorrelation tapering window, which is defined to be the inverse Fourier transform of the effective spectral smoothing window, is given by

$$e(\tau) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} m(t, \tau)\, dt.$$

(b) Determine the effective autocorrelation tapering window for the statistical spectra prescribed in exercise 9(a), (b), (e), (f), and (g).

11. Use the definition of probabilistic autocorrelation,

$$E\{x(t_1)x(t_2)\} \triangleq \int_{-\infty}^{\infty}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} y_1 y_2 f_{x(t_1)x(t_2)}(y_1, y_2)\, dy_1\, dy_2, \tag{142}$$

where $f_{x(t_1)x(t_2)}$ is the joint fraction-of-time probability density defined by the second mixed partial derivative of the joint fraction-of-time distribution [Gardner 1985],

$$f_{x(t_1)x(t_2)}(y_1, y_2) \triangleq \frac{\partial^2}{\partial y_1 \partial y_2} \lim_{T_0 \to \infty} \frac{1}{T_0} \int_{-T_0/2}^{T_0/2} U[y_1 - x(t_1 + t)]U[y_2 - x(t_2 + t)]\, dt, \tag{143}$$

to verify the equivalence between (14) and (15).

12. (a) Use the continuous-time counterpart of (97),

$$\eta_0 = \frac{\int_{-T/2}^{T/2} h_T^2(\tau)\, d\tau}{T h_T^2(0)}, \tag{144}$$

to verify the values given in Table 5-2 for the five windows (91)–(95).

(b) Evaluate η_0 for the following windows (see Chapter 2, Section B):

(i) Sinc: $h_T(\tau) = Tw_T(\tau)$

(ii) Sinc^2: $h_T(\tau) = Tz_T(\tau)$.

Hint: Use Parseval's relation.

13. In order to illustrate that the general formula (77) for the coefficient of variation of a statistical spectrum $y_f(t)$ can be obtained without using the separable approximation, proceed as follows for the spectrally smoothed periodogram (with no data tapering). Express the variance in the form

$$\text{var}\{S_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, f)_{\Delta f}\} = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} K_S(\nu_1, \nu_2) H_{\Delta f}(f - \nu_1) H_{\Delta f}(f - \nu_2)\, d\nu_1\, d\nu_2 \tag{145}$$

where $K_S(\nu_1, \nu_2)$ is the temporal covariance

$$K_S(\nu_1, \nu_2) \triangleq \text{cov}\{S_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, \nu_1), S_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, \nu_2)\}$$

and $H(f)$ is assumed to be real. Show that for Δt large enough for $1/\Delta t$ to resolve $\hat{S}_x$, formula (40) (with T replaced by Δt) yields the close approximation

$$K_S(\nu_1, \nu_2) \cong \left[\frac{1}{\Delta t}\hat{S}_x(\nu_1)w_{1/\Delta t}(\nu_1 - \nu_2)\right]^2 + \left[\frac{1}{\Delta t}\hat{S}_x(\nu_1)w_{1/\Delta t}(\nu_1 + \nu_2)\right]^2. \tag{146}$$

Hint: $w_{1/\Delta t} \otimes w_{1/\Delta t} = w_{1/\Delta t}$. Then substitute (146) into (145) to obtain the close approximation

$$\text{var}\{S_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, f)_{\Delta f}\} \cong \frac{1}{\Delta t}[\hat{S}_x(f)]^2 \otimes [H_{\Delta f}(f)]^2 + \frac{1}{\Delta t}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty}[\hat{S}_x(\nu)]^2 H_{\Delta f}(f - \nu)H_{\Delta f}(f + \nu)\, d\nu, \qquad \Delta t\Delta f \gg 1. \tag{147}$$

Finally, show that it follows from (147) that the temporal coefficient of variation of $S_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, f)_{\Delta f}$ is closely approximated by

$$r_S \cong \frac{\xi}{\Delta t \Delta f}[1 + \delta_{\Delta f}(f)], \qquad \Delta t\Delta f \gg 1, \tag{148}$$

where the coefficient ξ in (148) is defined by

$$\xi \triangleq \frac{[\hat{S}_x(f)]^2 \otimes [\Delta f H_{\Delta f}^2(f)]}{[\hat{S}_x(f) \otimes H_{\Delta f}(f)]^2}. \tag{149}$$

Let Δf be small enough to resolve $\hat{S}_x$ and show that (149) and (75) are then approximately equivalent. *Hint:* Since $a_{\Delta t}$ in (53) is a rectangle, then $g_{\Delta t}$ in (75) is a rectangle.

14. Consider the hopped time-averaged periodogram of triangle-tapered data as a statistical spectrum.

(a) Determine the 3-dB bandwidth of the sinc^4 spectral window, which results from a triangle data-tapering window. That is, determine the value of f at which

$$\left[\frac{\sin(\pi f T)}{\pi f T}\right]^4 = \frac{1}{2},$$

and then double this value of f. Compare the result with that for the triangle autocorrelation tapering window (which corresponds to no data tapering) from Table 5-2.

(b) Determine the reliability factor η_0 (99) for the sinc^4 spectral window, and compare the result with that for the triangle autocorrelation tapering window. *Hint:* The corresponding effective autocorrelation tapering window for sinc^4 is

$$h_{2T}(\tau) = T v_T(\tau) \otimes v_T(\tau),$$

where $v_T(\tau)$ is the unit-area triangle window with base of width $2T$. Use this convolution characterization to show that

$$h_{2T}(\tau) = \begin{cases} 1 - \frac{3}{2}\left(\frac{\tau}{T}\right)^2 + \frac{3}{4}\left|\frac{\tau}{T}\right|^3, & |\tau| \leq T \\ 2\left(1 - \frac{1}{2}\left|\frac{\tau}{T}\right|\right)^3, & T \leq |\tau| \leq 2T \\ 0, & |\tau| > 2T. \end{cases}$$

(c) Consider the first example in Section D, and use the results of (a) (3-dB bandwidth $= 0.636/T$) and (b) ($\eta_0 = 0.269$) to determine the length Δt of data segment needed for a coefficient of variation of $r_{y_f} = \frac{1}{10}$ and a spectral resolution width

of $\Delta f = B/5$, when triangle data tapering is used. Compare the result with the results in the example.

(d) Consider the second example in Section D, and evaluate the fractional leakage at $f = f_0$ for triangle data tapering, when the sine wave frequency is $f_* = f_0 + B/5$, $f_0 + 3B/10$, $f_0 + 2B/5$, and the sine wave power is $P_* = 2B|K(f_0)|^2$. Explain any unexpected results and discuss practical implications.

15. Consider the problem of designing a wave analyzer using conventional analog electrical circuitry, that is, passive resistive-inductive-capacitive networks. The simplest BPF to implement would be a second-order resonant circuit with impulse-response function

$$k(t) = e^{-t/T}\cos(2\pi ft), \qquad t \geqslant 0,$$

and the simplest LPF to implement would be the first-order circuit with impulse response function

$$g(t) = e^{-t/\Delta t}, \qquad t \geqslant 0.$$

Determine the following characteristics of this spectrum analyzer:

(a) Effective data-tapering window.

(b) Effective autocorrelation-tapering window.

(c) Effective spectral smoothing window and its 3-dB bandwidth ($E(\Delta f/2) = E(0)/2$).

(d) Time-averaging window.

(e) Reliability factor (75).

(f) Highest sidelobe (if any) of the effective spectral smoothing window.

(g) Rate of decay of spectral window sidelobes (skirts).

Hint: Use the fact established in Chapter 4, Section E, that the real implementation described here is essentially equivalent to the complex implementation with BPF

$$k(t) = e^{-t/T}e^{i2\pi ft},$$

provided that $\Delta t \Delta f \gg 1$ and $|f|/\Delta f \gg 1$.

16. Consider the problem of designing a swept-frequency wave analyzer for audio spectral analysis. Assume that the spectral band to be analyzed ranges from 300 Hz to 15,000 Hz, the desired resolution is 100 Hz, and the desired coefficient of variation is $\frac{1}{10}$. Also assume that at each frequency f in the band that is swept across, one can treat the swept frequency analyzer as an unswept wave analyzer with the particular filters described in exercise 15. In order to specify design parameters for this spectrum analyzer, determine the following characteristics:

(a) The time constant T required for a 3-dB resolution bandwidth of $\Delta f = 100$ Hz.

(b) The time constant Δt required for a coefficient of variation of $\frac{1}{10}$.

(c) The sweep rate $\beta = \Delta f/\Delta t$.

(d) The analysis time AT (AT = period of sweep).

(e) If it is desired to detect a very brief audio event that occupies a band of width 500 Hz, what is the fraction-of-time probability of detection using this spectrum analyzer?

(f) Assume that there is a constraint to cut the analysis time to half that found in (d). Propose a modification to the above design to meet this constraint; that is, adjust the requirements on sweep rate, resolution, and reliability.

Answers: (a) $T = 1/100\pi$ s. (b) $\Delta t = 5/100\pi$ s. (c) $\beta = 2000\pi$ Hz/s. (d) AT = $7.35/\pi$ s. (e) Probability = 0.034. (f) Since β must be doubled and since $\Delta t \Delta f = (\Delta f)^2/\beta$, then if reliability is held fixed Δf must be increased by the factor $\sqrt{2}$, or if Δf is held fixed then the coefficient of variation is doubled.

17. Evaluate the coefficient of variation $R(f)$ given by (73) for the spectrum estimates specified in exercise 9(a)–(g).

18. **(a)** The characteristic function for $z(t)$ is defined by

$$\Psi_z(\omega) \triangleq \langle \exp\{i\omega z(t)\} \rangle \tag{150a}$$

$$= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f_z(y) \exp\{i\omega y\}\, dy, \tag{150b}$$

where

$$f_z(y) = \frac{dF_z(y)}{dy}$$

is the fraction-of-time probability density for $z(t)$. Here (150b) is a conjugate Fourier transform, and it can be shown, by use of (16), that for a Gaussian time-series $z(t)$, (150b) yields

$$\Psi_z(\omega) = \exp\{i\omega\hat{m}_z - \tfrac{1}{2}\omega^2\hat{\sigma}_z^2\}. \tag{151}$$

To verify that for a Gaussian time-series $x(t)$ the joint characteristic function (17) is given by (18), use (151) with $\omega = 1$ and

$$z(t) = \boldsymbol{\omega}'\boldsymbol{x}(t).$$

(b) Use the result of (a) with $N = 2$, $t_1 = \tau/2$, and $t_2 = -\tau/2$ to show that the joint characteristic function for $x(t + \tau/2)$ and $x(t - \tau/2)$ is given by

$$\Psi_x(\omega_1, \omega_2) = \exp\{i(\omega_1 + \omega_2)\hat{m}_x - \tfrac{1}{2}(\omega_1^2 + \omega_2^2)[\hat{R}_x(0) - \hat{m}_x^2] - \tfrac{1}{2}\omega_1\omega_2[\hat{R}_x(\tau) - \hat{m}_x^2]\}. \tag{152}$$

(c) From (17), we have

$$\Psi_{\boldsymbol{x}}(\boldsymbol{\omega}) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \cdots \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f_{\boldsymbol{x}}(\boldsymbol{y}) \exp\{i\boldsymbol{\omega}'\boldsymbol{y}\}\, d\boldsymbol{y}, \tag{153}$$

which is the N-dimensional conjugate Fourier transform of the Nth-order joint fraction-of-time probability density. Consequently, $f_{\boldsymbol{x}}(\boldsymbol{y})$ for a Gaussian time-series can be obtained by Fourier transformation of (18). If the inverse matrix $\hat{\boldsymbol{K}}_x^{-1}$ exists, then the result is

$$f_{\boldsymbol{x}}(\boldsymbol{y}) = [(2\pi)^N |\hat{\boldsymbol{K}}_x|]^{-1/2} \exp\left\{ -\tfrac{1}{2}(\boldsymbol{y} - \hat{\boldsymbol{m}}_x)'\hat{\boldsymbol{K}}_x^{-1}(\boldsymbol{y} - \hat{\boldsymbol{m}}_x) \right\}, \tag{154}$$

where $|\hat{\boldsymbol{K}}_x|$ denotes the determinant of $\hat{\boldsymbol{K}}_x$. Express (153) as explicitly as possible in terms of $\hat{m}_x$ and $\hat{R}_x(\tau)$ for $N = 2$, $t_1 = \tau/2$, and $t_2 = -\tau/2$. (When the inverse matrix $\hat{\boldsymbol{K}}_x^{-1}$ does not exist, then $f_{\boldsymbol{x}}(\boldsymbol{y})$ contains impulse fences that reflect the linear dependence among the N variables in $\boldsymbol{x}(t)$; see [Gardner 1985].)

6

DIGITAL METHODS

A. INTRODUCTION

Modern general-purpose spectral analysis instruments are typically implemented using primarily analog technology for frequencies above 100 KHz and digital technology for frequencies below 100 Hz, and both technologies are used in the midrange. The swept-frequency method described in Chapter 4 is the most commonly used analog method for general-purpose instruments, whereas the *fast Fourier transform* (FFT), with the discrete-time and discrete-frequency counterparts of the frequency smoothing and/or hopped time-averaging methods described in Chapter 4, is used for most digital implementations. Digital methods are especially attractive for low frequencies because the most attractive analog method (swept frequency) requires long measurement times compared with the simultaneous analysis methods based on Fourier transformation of the data. Analog methods are especially appropriate for high frequencies because of technological limitations on switching times, which limit the speed of digital computation. When the required speed is not a limiting factor, digital implementations are generally attractive because of economy as well as high accuracy, stability, and flexibility, including programmability. Furthermore, spectral analysis at frequencies far above 100 KHz can be accomplished digitally by down-converting spectral bands (of width less than 100 KHz) from higher frequency ranges (e.g., megahertz to gigahertz) to lower frequency ranges (below 100 KHz), and this band-selective approach can be used to obtain very high spectral resolution. Moreover, the flexibility of digital methods is an attractive feature for many special-purpose spectral analysis tasks, where general-purpose instruments are inappropriate. An example of this flexibility is the fact that digital methods can be directly implemented in software so that both the convenience of personal computers and the immense data-handling capabilities of supercomputers are available for

spectral analysis. Finally, because of the increasing amount of data that is digitally encoded for storage and transmission, digital methods of spectral analysis that can be directly applied to digital data are especially appropriate.

Unfortunately, the study of digital methods of spectral analysis is somewhat more complicated than the study of analog methods for several reasons. These include 1) the spectral aliasing phenomenon that results from time-sampling, 2) the discrete nature of the frequency parameter in FFT and other *discrete Fourier transform* (DFT) algorithms, and 3) the block format for data that is required by DFT algorithms. All three of these items are sources of conceptual complication that can lead to complications in practice, including erroneous procedures and misinterpretation of results. Fortunately, many of the fundamentals of spectral analysis can be understood, as explained in the other chapters of this book, without introducing the complications associated with digital methods of implementation. This applies especially to the digital methods of spectral analysis that are simply discrete-time and discrete-frequency counterparts of the analog methods studied in Chapter 4.

In Section B, the DFT is introduced and its properties and relationships with other Fourier transformations are studied. Then in Section C, various digital counterparts of the analog methods developed in Chapter 4 are described. Finally in Section D, the applicability to discrete-time spectrum estimates of the results on fraction-of-time probabilistic analysis obtained in Chapter 5 for continuous time is explained.

B. THE DFT

1. Resolution and Zero-Padding

Consider a finite sequence of numbers $\{x_n\} = \{x_0, x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_{N-1}\}$. The DFT of this sequence is denoted by $\{X_m\} = \{X_0, X_1, X_2, \ldots, X_{N-1}\}$ and is defined by

$$X_m \triangleq \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} x_n e^{-i(2\pi/N)mn}, \qquad m = 0, 1, 2, \ldots, N-1, \tag{1a}$$

and the inverse DFT is defined by

$$x_n \triangleq \frac{1}{N} \sum_{m=0}^{N-1} X_m e^{i(2\pi/N)nm}, \qquad n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots, N-1. \tag{1b}$$

It is easily verified (exercise 2) that (1a) and (1b) are indeed a transform pair in the sense that if (1a) is substituted into (1b), an identity is obtained. It is clear from the inverse DFT (1b) that the DFT $\{X_m\}$ is the complex-valued discrete density (scaled by N) of sine wave components contained in the sequence $\{x_n\}$. The frequencies of these sine waves are $0, 1/N, 2/N, \ldots, (N-1)/N$, which indicates that the DFT cannot resolve frequency any finer than the increment $1/N$ between adjacent frequencies. However, there is a way to interpolate between the N points in the DFT. Specifically, if it is desired to add N interpolating points between the N original points, then one just adds N zeros to the end of the time sequence to obtain a new sequence, say $\{y_n\}$, of length $2N$,

$$y_n = \begin{cases} x_n, & n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots, N-1 \\ 0, & n = N, N+1, N+2, \ldots, 2N-1. \end{cases} \tag{2}$$

The DFT of $\{y_n\}$ is given by

$$Y_m = \sum_{n=0}^{2N-1} y_n e^{-i(2\pi/2N)mn}, \qquad m = 0, 1, 2, \ldots, 2N-1, \tag{3}$$

which upon substitution of (2) becomes

$$Y_m = \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} x_n e^{-i(2\pi/N)nm/2}, \qquad m = 0, 1, 2, \ldots, 2N-1. \tag{4}$$

Comparison of (1a) and (4) reveals that

$$Y_{2m} = X_m, \qquad m = 0, 1, 2, \ldots, N-1. \tag{5}$$

Hence, the even-indexed frequency points in the new DFT are identical to the N points in the original DFT, but there are N additional points between these, namely, the odd-indexed frequencies. To show that the additional N frequency points are nothing more than an interpolation from the original N frequency points, we can substitute (1b) into (4) to obtain (exercise 4)

$$Y_m = \sum_{p=0}^{N-1} X_p I\left(p - \frac{m}{2}\right), \tag{6a}$$

where $I(q/2)$ is an interpolating sequence with magnitude given by

$$\left|I\left(\frac{q}{2}\right)\right| = \frac{1}{N}\left|\frac{\sin(\pi q/2)}{\sin(\pi q/2N)}\right| \tag{6b}$$

and phase (in radians) given by

$$\arg\left\{I\left(\frac{q}{2}\right)\right\} = \left(\frac{\pi q}{2}\right)\left(1 - \frac{1}{N}\right) + \pi U\left[-\frac{\sin(\pi q/2)}{\sin(\pi q/2N)}\right], \tag{6c}$$

where $U(\cdot)$ is the unit-step function.

If $(K-1)N$ zeros are appended to the time-sequence $\{x_n\}$, then the DFT (4) and the interpolation formula (6) are modified by replacement of $m/2$ and $q/2$ with m/K and q/K, and m ranges from 0 to $NK-1$. Thus, the DFT of the K-fold zero-padded time-sequence $\{x_n\}$ is given by

$$Y_m = \sum_{n=0}^{NK-1} x_n e^{-i(2\pi/N)nm/K}, \qquad m = 0, 1, 2, \ldots, NK-1, \tag{7}$$

which can be reexpressed as

$$Y_m = \sum_{p=0}^{N-1} X_p I\left(p - \frac{m}{K}\right), \tag{8a}$$

where

$$\left|I\left(\frac{q}{K}\right)\right| = \frac{1}{N}\left|\frac{\sin(\pi q/K)}{\sin(\pi q/KN)}\right| \tag{8b}$$

$$\arg\left\{I\left(\frac{q}{K}\right)\right\} = \left(\frac{\pi q}{K}\right)\left(1 - \frac{1}{N}\right) + \pi U\left[-\frac{\sin(\pi q/K)}{\sin(\pi q/KN)}\right]. \tag{8c}$$

A graph of $|I(q/K)|$ for large K is shown in Figure 6-1. To illustrate the utility of frequency interpolation by zero-padding the time sequence, the DFT of a sequence consisting of 16 uniformly spaced time samples of a sum of three sine waves is shown in Figure 6-2 for various amounts of zero-padding ($K = 1, 2, 4, 16$).

It follows directly from (1a) that the DFT with frequency parameter m extended to include all the integers is periodic with period N. As a result, the N numbers (N is assumed to be even)

$$\{X_m : m = 0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \ldots, \pm (N/2 - 1), N/2\}$$

that are centered (except for the rightmost point) at zero frequency, $m = 0$, can be used in place of the N numbers

$$\{X_m : m = 0, 1, 2, \ldots, N - 1\}$$

since the latter can be obtained from the former by using the identity

$$X_{m+N} = X_m.$$

In Section C, the centered DFT is used exclusively.

There are various numerically efficient algorithms for computation of the DFT and its inverse. The most well known of these are collectively referred to as *fast Fourier transform* (FFT) algorithms (see [Nussbaumer 1982; Blahut 1985; Burrus and Parks 1985]. However, a closely related but distinct class of numerically

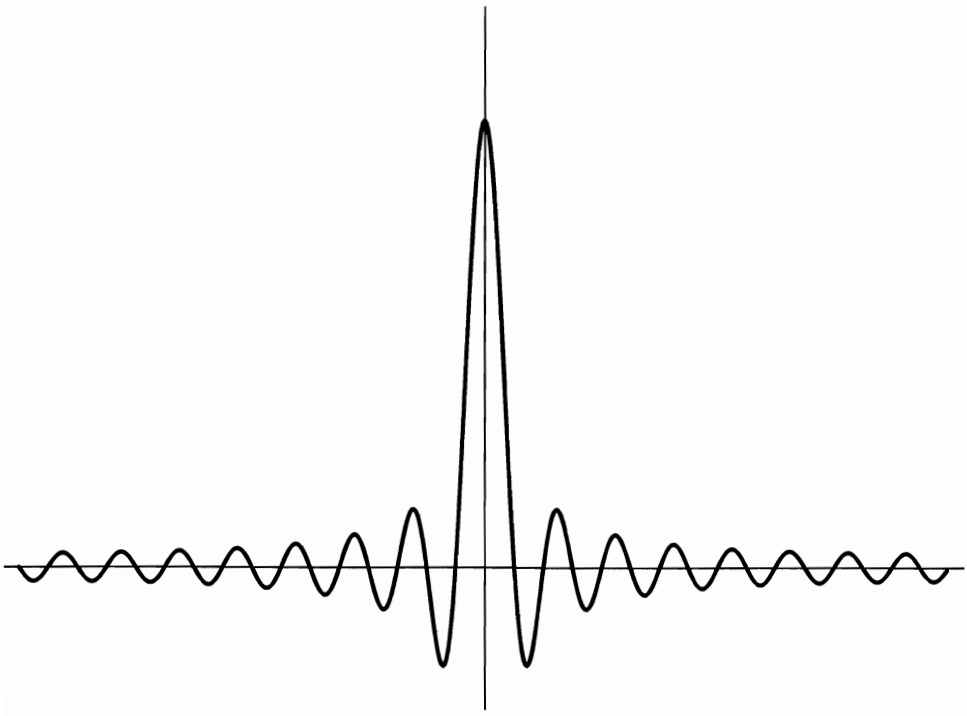
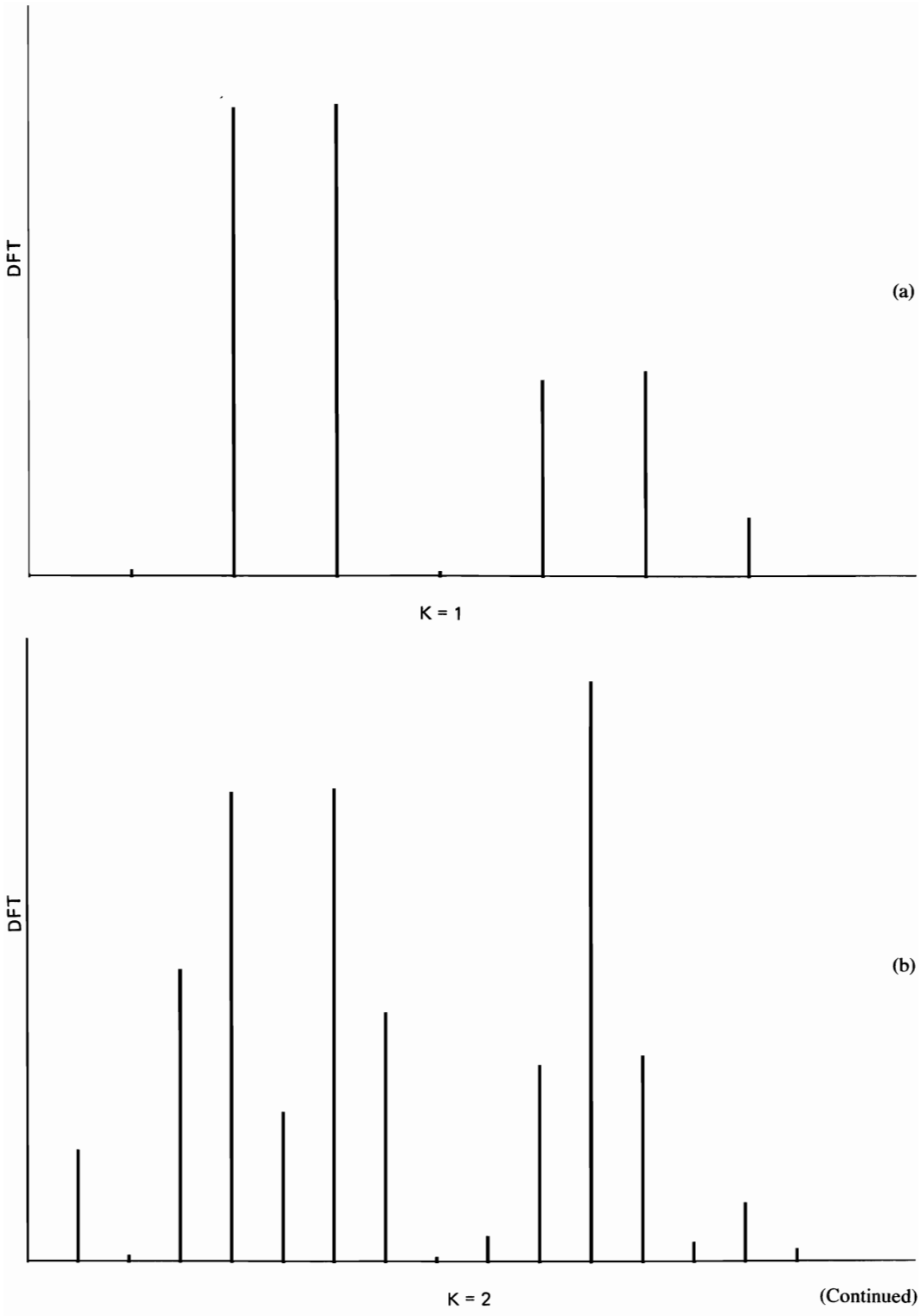
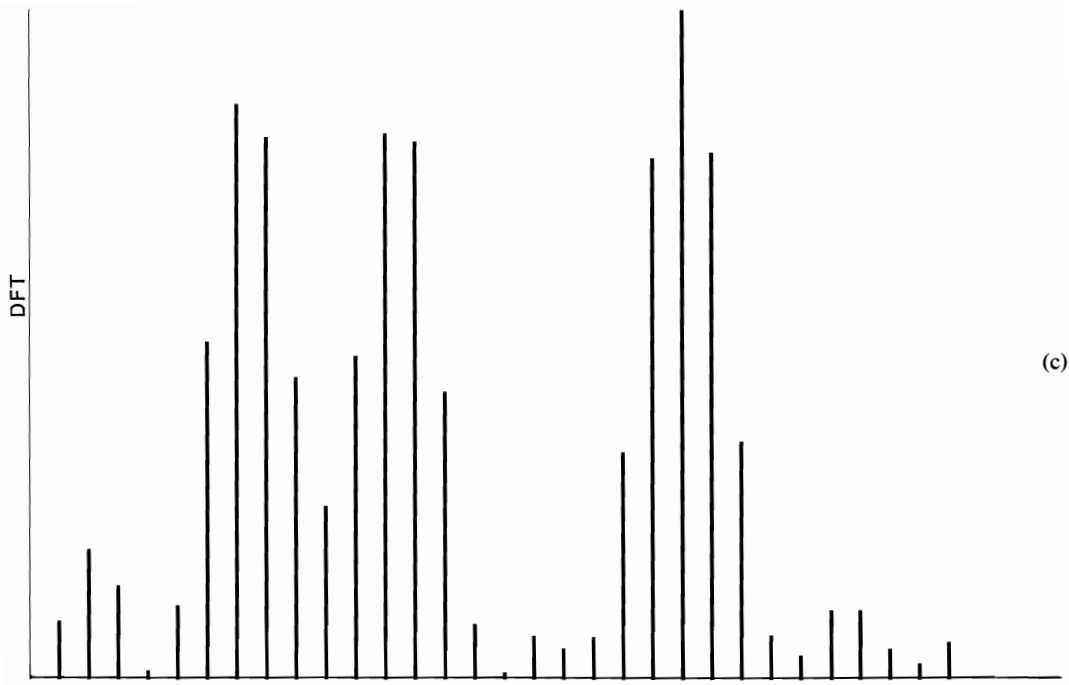


Figure 6-1 Interpolation sequence $\sin(\pi q/K)/\sin(\pi q/KN)$ for $K = 16$, $N = 32$, $|q| \leq 256$. (Sequence for smaller values of K obtained by subsampling in q.)



(Continued)

Figure 6-2 Effect of zero-padding on spectral resolution: (a) $K = 1$. (b) $K = 2$.



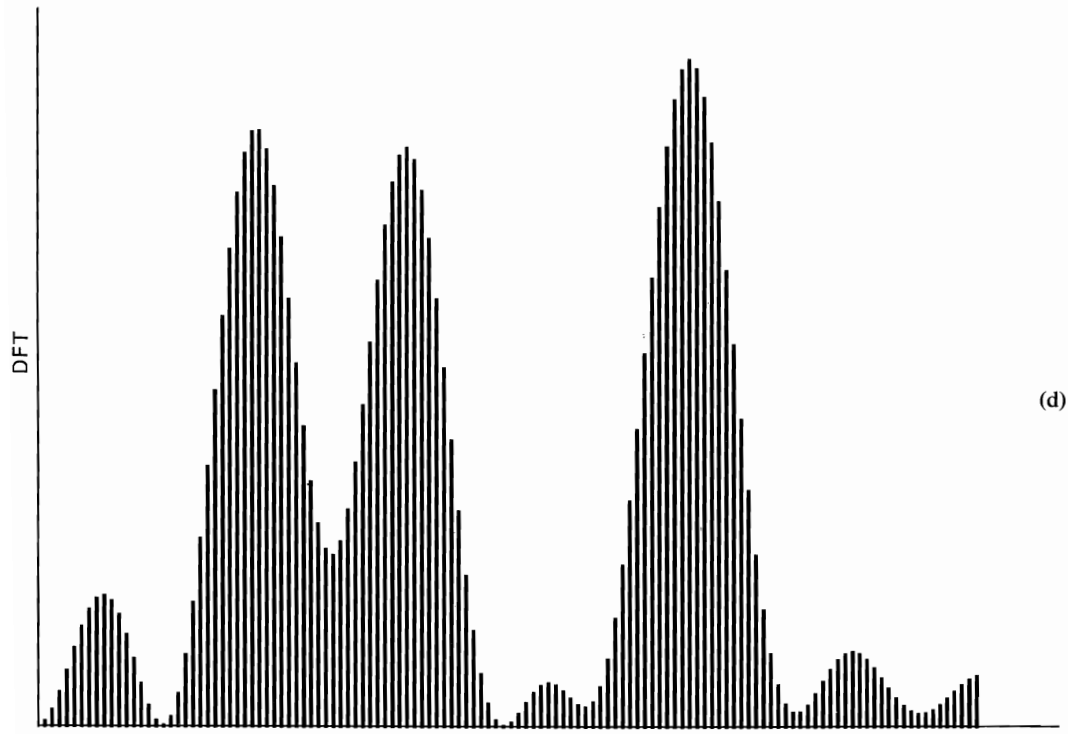


Figure 6-2 (continued) (c) $K = 4$. (d) $K = 16$.

efficient algorithms, collectively referred to as *fast Hartley transform* (FHT) algorithms, have recently been developed by Ronald N. Bracewell [Bracewell 1985, 1986]. The *discrete Hartley transform* (DHT) is simply the real part of the DFT minus the imaginary part, whereas the DFT is the even part of the DHT minus i times the odd part. The FFT and FHT algorithms require that the number of points to be transformed be an integer multiple of 2. For real data, the most efficient FHT algorithm has some advantages in terms of program running time and storage requirements relative to the most efficient FFT algorithms, whereas for complex data they are apparently equivalent (see [Sorenson et al. 1985]).

2. Circular Convolution

Recall from Chapter 2 that the Fourier series transform (FST) of the convolution of two sequences, say

$$z_n = \sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} x_k y_{n-k} \triangleq x_n \otimes y_n, \tag{9a}$$

is given by the product of FSTs

$$\bar{Z}(f) = \bar{X}(f)\bar{Y}(f). \tag{9b}$$

If the sequences $\{x_n\}$ and $\{y_n\}$ are both nonzero for only $0 \leq n \leq N-1$, then the convolution (9a) reduces to

$$z_n = \sum_{k=0}^{n} x_k y_{n-k} \tag{9c}$$

but (9b) remains unchanged. One might expect an analogous result to hold for the DFT of the convolution of two finite-length sequences, but there is a complication in that the length of the convolution of two sequences each of length N is in general $2N$, and therefore it would appear that the DFT in the left member of the analog of (9b) would have to be of length $2N$ when the DFTs in the right member of the analog of (9b) are of length N. However, if the sequences $\{x_n\}$ and $\{y_n\}$ of length N are first zero-padded out to length $2N$, then $\{z_n\}$ given by (9a) would still have length $2N$ (for its nonzero portion), and therefore a DFT of length $2N$ could be used for both members in the analog of (9b). In fact, in this case the analog of (9b) for the DFT would simply be the frequency-sampled version of (9b) as explained in the following subsection on the FST.

Nevertheless, there is a modified convolution theorem that holds for DFTs of length N for sequences of length N (without zero-padding), but the type of convolution operation in this theorem is a modification of the standard convolution (9a). Specifically, (9a) can be called a *linear convolution* because it can be visualized as consisting of a sequence of three operations carried out on a straight line representing the domain of the sequences being convolved, namely, the set of all integers. The three operations are those of reflecting one of the sequences, say $\{y_n\}$, about the origin, shifting the reflected version by integer amounts k, and summing the product of the reflected and shifted sequence $\{y_{k-n}\}$ with the

other sequence $\{x_n\}$, as indicated by (9a). On the other hand, if $\{x_n\}$ and $\{y_n\}$ are both finite-length (N) sequences, then their domain can be taken to be the N integers 0, 1, 2, . . ., $N - 1$ arranged uniformly on a circle, with an arbitrary location on this circle identified as the origin 0. In this case, the sequence of three operations described above can be taken as the definition of what is called *circular convolution*. As a matter of fact, the circular convolution of two sequences of length N can also be obtained by periodically repeating these sequences to obtain

$$x_n = x_{n+N}$$

$$y_n = y_{n+N}$$

for all integers n, and then forming the finite linear convolution

$$z_n = \sum_{k=0}^{N-1} x_k y_{n-k}. \tag{10}$$

It follows from the preceding descriptions that the circular convolution of the two finite-length sequences $\{x_n\}$ and $\{y_n\}$ is given by

$$z_n = \sum_{k=0}^{n} x_k y_{n-k} + \sum_{k=n+1}^{N-1} x_k y_{N+n-k}, \qquad n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots, N-1. \tag{11a}$$

Observe that the indexes on x and y in (11a) always remain within the set {0, 1, 2, . . ., $N - 1$}, regardless of the value of the index of summation k, for all values of n in this same set, given that the second sum is defined to be zero for $k > N - 1$. Comparison of (11a) with (9c) reveals that the difference between linear convolution and circular convolution is the presence of the second sum in (11a). This sum contains what are called the *wraparound* terms; that is, the $N - n - 1$ terms at the end of the sequence $\{y_k\}$ that are wrapped around (due to reflection and shifting by n around the circle) and therefore overlap the $N - n - 1$ terms at the end of the sequence $\{x_k\}$. It is easily shown that if $\{x_n\}$ and $\{y_n\}$ are zero-padded out to length $2N$ and N in (11a) is replaced with $2N$, then the second sum vanishes (since $2N + n - k > N$ for $n + 1 \leq k \leq N - 1$ and $0 \leq n \leq 2N - 1$), and therefore circular convolution is equivalent to linear convolution in this case.

The usefulness of the concept of circular convolution results not only from the fact that it preserves the length of sequences but also from the fact that the DFT of a circular convolution is given by the product of DFTs

$$Z_m = X_m Y_m, \qquad m = 0, 1, 2, \ldots, N-1. \tag{11b}$$

This circular convolution theorem is proved in exercise 5.

The time-frequency dual of the circular convolution theorem is also useful. This theorem states that the DFT of the product of two time-series segments

$$z_n = x_n y_n, \qquad n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots, N-1 \tag{12a}$$

is given by the circular convolution of their DFTs

$$Z_m = \sum_{p=0}^{m} X_p Y_{m-p} + \sum_{p=m+1}^{N-1} X_p Y_{N+m-p}, \tag{12b}$$

where the second sum is defined to be zero for $p > N - 1$. It follows from the circular convolution theorem that there is an analog of the periodogram-correlogram relation for the FST that holds for the DFT, provided that the correlogram is of the circular type (see exercise 6). However, if the data is zero padded with $K \geq 2$, then the circular correlogram is identical to the linear correlogram (see exercise 6).

3. The FST and CFT

In the limit as the number of zeros appended to $\{x_n\}$ approaches infinity ($K \to \infty$), the DFT approaches the FST for finite-length sequences

$$\tilde{X}(f) \triangleq \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} x_n e^{-i2\pi nf}, \tag{13}$$

which is defined for all real values of the frequency parameter f. It follows from (1a) and (13) that the N-point DFT is simply the frequency-sampled version of the FST,

$$X_m = \tilde{X}\left(\frac{m}{N}\right), \qquad m = 0, 1, 2, \ldots, N - 1. \tag{14}$$

This is illustrated in Figure 6-2(d), where the envelope of the DFT lines is the FST. The fact that the FST for a finite segment can be exactly recovered from its sampled version, the DFT, by interpolation is a direct result of the time-frequency dual of the sampling theorem for bandlimited time-series (see exercise 15, Chapter 2). This follows from the fact that a finite-segment time-series is duration-limited and is therefore the time-frequency dual of a bandlimited time-series.

If the time-sequence $\{x_n\}$ is obtained from a waveform $x(t)$ by time-sampling,

$$x_n = x(nT_s), \tag{15a}$$

or if it is desired to interpret $\{x_n\}$ in this way, then it is of interest to determine the relationship between the FST (and therefore the DFT) and the *continuous Fourier transform* (CFT). For this purpose, we consider the CFT of the finite segment of a waveform

$$X_T(\hat{f}) \triangleq \int_0^T x(t) e^{-i2\pi \hat{f} t}\, dt, \tag{16}$$

where $T = (N - 1)T_s$, as illustrated in Figure 6-3. As shown in Section H of Chapter 2, we have the relationship

$$\tilde{X}(f) = \frac{1}{T_s} \sum_{q=-\infty}^{\infty} X_T\left(\frac{f}{T_s} - \frac{q}{T_s}\right), \tag{15b}$$

which describes the spectral aliasing phenomenon for time-sampling as in (15a). It follows from (15b) that the dimensionless frequency parameter f and the dimensioned frequency parameter $\hat{f}$ are related by the sampling increment,

$$\hat{f} = \frac{f}{T_s}. \tag{17}$$

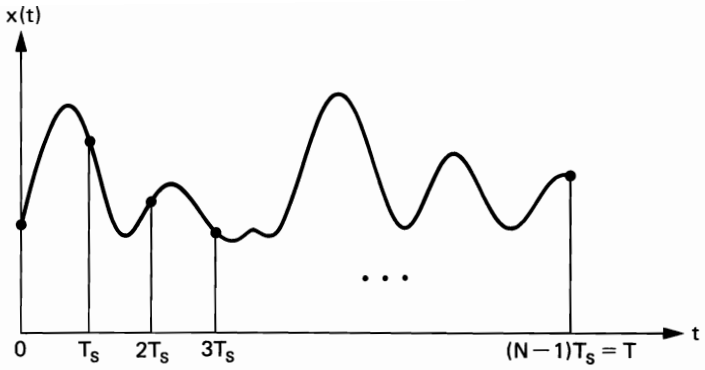


Figure 6-3 Illustration of N samples in interval of length T with sampling increment T_s.

Whereas the symbol f is used in all other chapters for the dimensioned frequency parameter, the symbol $\hat{f}$ is used instead in this chapter so that f can be used for the dimensionless frequency, which is the most prevalent of the two in this chapter.

There is a fundamental theorem of Fourier analysis that establishes that a finite segment of a waveform cannot be strictly bandlimited. Thus, there will always be some nonzero aliasing error involved in approximating the CFT $X_T(\hat{f})$ by the FST $\tilde{X}(f)$ of a finite segment. However, it can be argued that if the waveform $x(t)$ is sufficiently bandlimited (e.g., if a conservative measure of bandwidth, say B, satisfies $B < 1/2T$) before $x(t)$ is truncated to the finite time interval $[0, T]$, then the error in the approximation from (15b),

$$\tilde{X}(f) \cong \frac{1}{T_s} X_T\left(\frac{f}{T_s}\right), \qquad |f| \leq \frac{1}{2}, \tag{18}$$

will be negligible. This suggests that in applications where there is a desire to relate the time sequence $\{x_n\}$ to a continuous-time waveform, a highly interpolated DFT, which closely approximates the FST, which in turn approximates a CFT, is more appropriate than the DFT with no zero-padding. However, this appears to be at odds with the arguments that 1) since a CFT of a segment of length T has spectral resolution width on the order of $1/T$, then samples of the frequency $\hat{f}$ (or f) separated by $1/T = 1/(N-1)T_s \cong 1/NT_s$ (or $1/N$) should yield an adequate spectral representation of the CFT and 2) since the FST approximates the CFT and samples in f separated by $1/N$ of the FST are given by the DFT with no zero padding, then the DFT without zero padding should yield an adequate representation of the CFT. The problem with this argument is that we can say only that the spectral resolution of the CFT is *on the order of* $1/T$. Thus, one might need samples of the frequency $\hat{f}$ separated by $1/2T$ or $1/3T$ or less to represent the FST adequately (without additional interpolation). The following example illustrates that the DFT can change drastically when the spectral sampling increment is only halved by appending only N zeros to the time sequence, even though the new DFT is just an interpolated version of the original DFT.

Example: ***Pseudonoise***

A *pseudonoise* (PN) sequence is a sequence of numbers, such as +1s and −1s that appears to be random but, in fact, is perfectly predictable given the algorithm that generates it. A particularly important type of ±1 PN sequence is the *maximal-length shift-register sequence,* which when periodically repeated yields a limit autocorrelation sequence that is similar to that for white noise. For a periodic sequence with period N, we have

$$\tilde{R}_x(k) \triangleq \lim_{Q\to\infty} \frac{1}{2Q+1} \sum_{n=-Q}^{Q} x_{n+k}x_n = \tilde{R}_x(k+N) \tag{19a}$$

and

$$\tilde{R}_x(k) = \tilde{R}_{x_N}(k)_c \triangleq \frac{1}{N}\sum_{n=0}^{N-1} x_{n+k}x_n. \tag{19b}$$

The sequence defined by (19b) is the *circular correlogram* of one period of the sequence $\{x_n\}$. For a maximal-length sequence $\{x_n\}$, it can be shown [Golomb 1967] that

$$\tilde{R}_{x_N}(k)_c = \begin{cases} 1, & k = 0 \\ -\dfrac{1}{N}, & 1 \leq |k| \leq N-1, \end{cases} \tag{20}$$

where $N = 2^M - 1$ for some positive integer M. It follows from the periodogram-correlogram relation for the DFT that the N-point DFT of the circular correlogram of this sequence with length N is given by

$$\text{DFT}\{\tilde{R}_{x_N}(k)_c\} = \frac{1}{N}|\text{DFT}\{x_n\}|^2. \tag{21}$$

Since (20) can be used to show that (exercise 7)

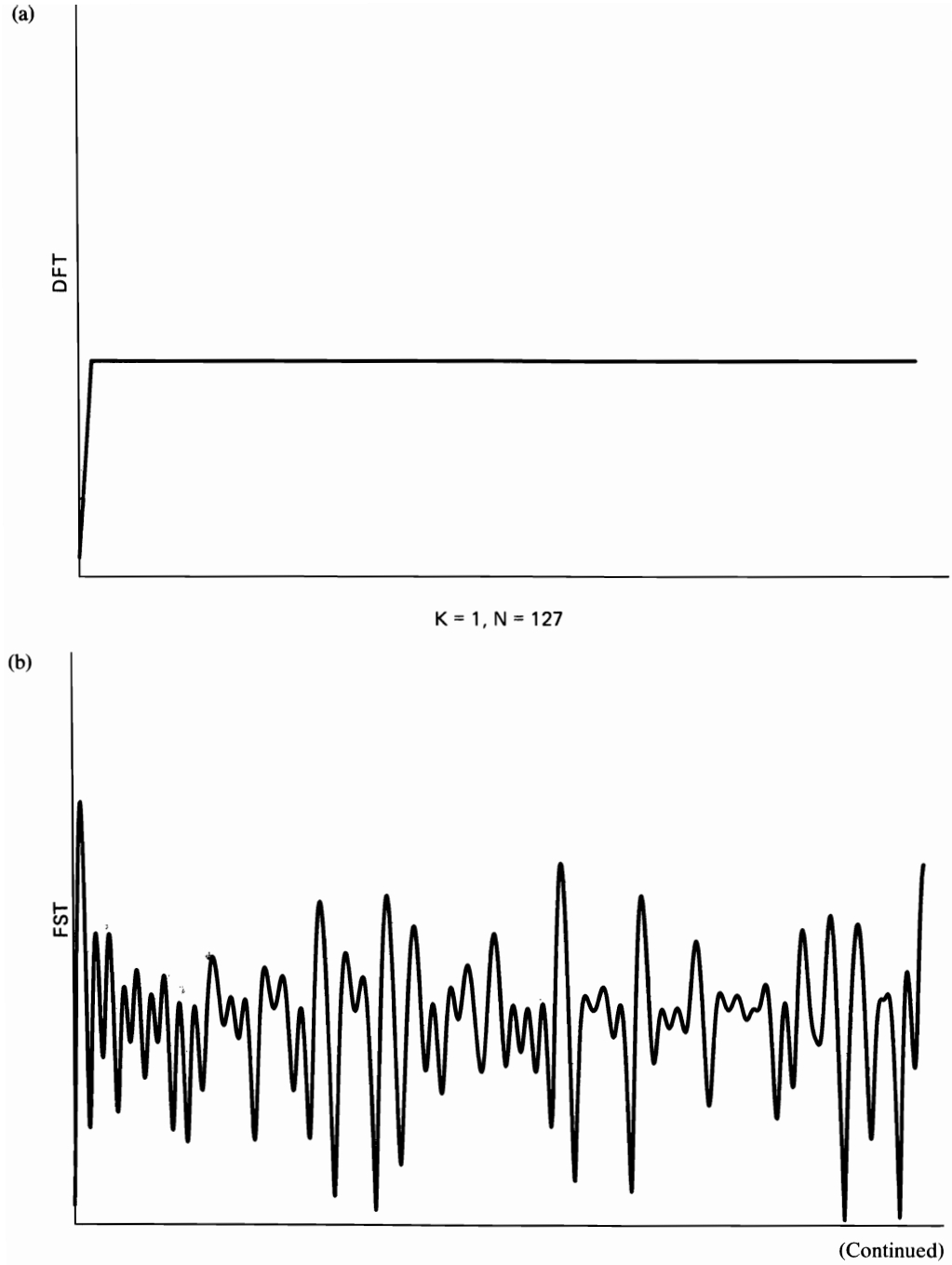
$$\text{DFT}\{\tilde{R}_{x_N}(k)_c\} = \begin{cases} \dfrac{1}{N}, & m = 0 \\ 1 + \dfrac{1}{N}, & 1 \leq |m| \leq N-1, \end{cases} \tag{22}$$

then it follows from (21) that the magnitude of the DFT of a maximal-length sequence $\{x_n\}$ is given by

$$|X_m| = \begin{cases} 1, & m = 0 \\ \sqrt{N+1}, & 1 \leq |m| \leq N-1, \end{cases} \tag{23}$$

which is flat except for a notch at zero frequency, as shown in Figure 6-4(a).

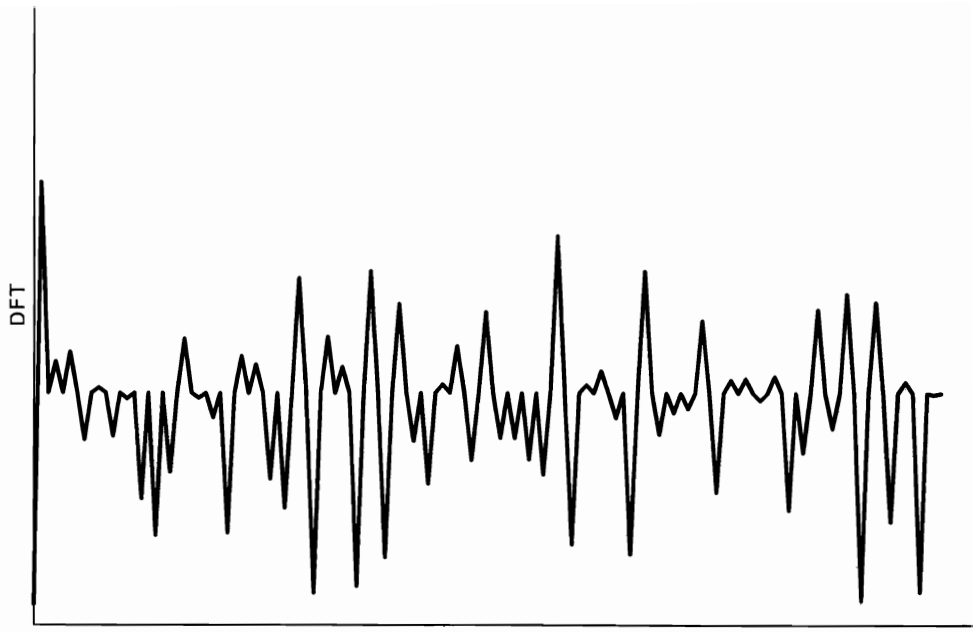
If the spectral sampling increment of the DFT is decreased by appending a large number of zeros to $\{x_n\}$, a close approximation to the FST is obtained, as shown in Figure 6-4(b). The original N frequency points are still given by (23) as they must be, but the interpolated points in between are surprisingly different. At first glance this seems impossible, since the points in between are obtained from the original points by interpolation. However, it is the complex-valued numbers $\{X_m\}$ that are interpolated, not their magnitudes. Evidently, the phase sequence is sufficiently erratic to yield a highly erratic magnitude after interpolation. It can be seen from the FST in Figure 6-4(b) that merely halving the spectral sampling increment of the DFT by appending N zeros yields a drastically different result than the original DFT specified by (23). This is illustrated in Figure 6-4(c). As a matter of fact, appending only one point to obtain a total number of points that is an integer



(Continued)

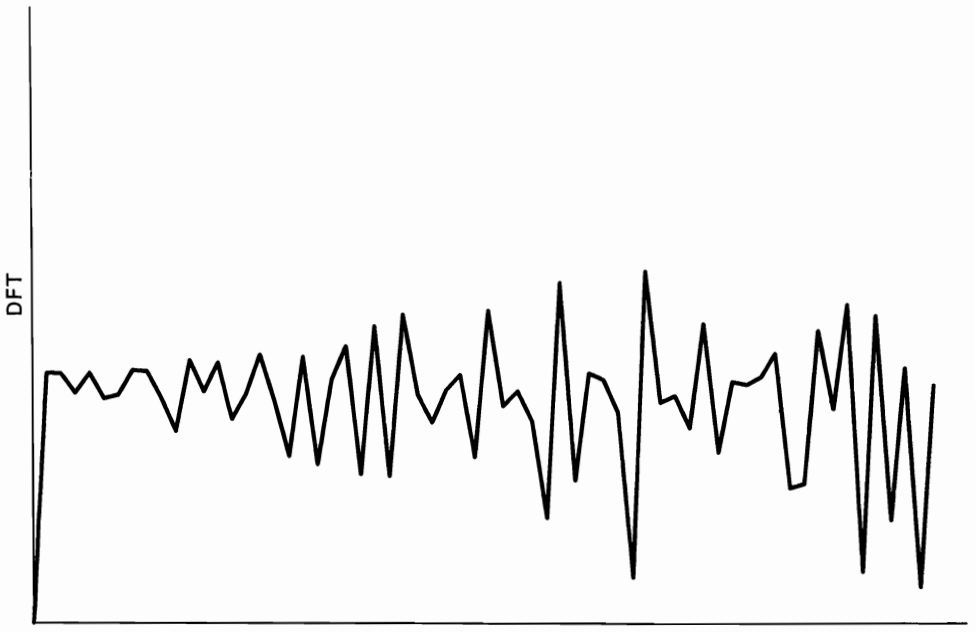
Figure 6-4 (a) DFT magnitude of a PN sequence of length 127 (points connected by straight lines). (b) FST magnitude of the PN sequence whose DFT magnitude is shown in (a). (c) DFT magnitude of the PN sequence whose DFT magnitude is shown in (a) but zero-padded out to length 254. (d) DFT magnitude of PN sequence whose DFT magnitude is shown in (a), but with the digit -1 appended to obtain a length of 128.

(c)



K = 2, N = 127

(d)



K = 1, N = 128

Figure 6-4 (continued)

multiple of two $N = 2^M$, so that a fast DFT algorithm can be used, yields a drastically different result than the original DFT with $N = 2^M - 1$ points (see exercise 9). This is illustrated in Figure 6-4(d). It can be seen from this example that without sufficient zero-padding, the DFT can be a misleading measure of spectral content. This is further illustrated by the previous example of a time-series consisting of three sine waves. As shown in Figure 6-2(a), it is not at all clear from the DFT without zero-padding that there should be only three spectral peaks, but this is confirmed by the DFT with double ($K = 2$) and quadruple ($K = 4$) zero-padding, as shown in Figures 6-2(b) and 6-2(c).

C. METHODS BASED ON THE DFT

In this section, the notation used for discrete-time quantities is very similar to that used for continuous-time quantities in previous chapters. Although this requires a change from the notation used in Section B, which is conventional, the notation to be used here emphasizes the fact that all the methods described in this section are discrete-time analogs of the continuous-time methods described in Chapter 4. The correspondences between the notations in this section and Section B are as follows:

$$x_n = x(t), \qquad n = t = 0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \pm 3, \ldots, \tag{24a}$$

$$X_m = \tilde{X}_T(f), \quad \frac{m}{KN} = f = 0, \pm\frac{1}{KN}, \pm\frac{2}{KN}, \pm\frac{3}{KN}, \ldots, \pm\left(\frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{KN}\right), \frac{1}{2}, \tag{24b}$$

where K is the zero-padding factor. The sampling increment is taken to be unity ($T_s = 1$), and therefore the number of time points in a finite segment of length T is given by

$$N = T + 1 \tag{25}$$

and the dimensioned and dimensionless frequencies, $\hat{f}$ and f, are identical. Sampling increments other than unity can be accommodated simply by multiplying all discrete-time variables by T_s and all discrete-frequency variables by $1/T_s$.

If the DFT with K-fold zero-padding is applied to the sequence of data blocks

$$\{x(t - u) : u = 0, 1, 2, 3, \ldots, N - 1\},$$

indexed by $t = 0, 1, 2, 3, \ldots$, it produces the sequence of transformed blocks

$$\left\{\tilde{x}_T(t,f) : f = 0, \pm\frac{1}{KN}, \pm\frac{2}{KN}, \pm\frac{3}{KN}, \ldots, \pm\left(\frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{KN}\right), \frac{1}{2}\right\},$$

indexed by $t = 0, 1, 2, 3, \ldots$, where

$$\tilde{x}_T(t,f) \triangleq \sum_{v=0}^{T} x(t - T + v)e^{-i2\pi fv}. \tag{26}$$

The index t represents the most recent time in a block, or the leading edge of a block. For each value of f, $\tilde{x}_T(t, f)$ is a band-pass time-series with center frequency f and bandwidth $\Delta f^o \cong 1/N$ ($\Delta f^o \cong 1/T$ for $N >> 1$). Thus, $\tilde{x}_T(t, f)$ is the discrete-time-discrete-frequency analog of the continuous-time-continuous-

frequency local sine wave component $x_T(t, f)$ (except that t in $\tilde{x}_T(t, f)$ represents the leading edge of the locale, whereas t in $x_T(t, f)$ represents the midpoint of the locale—see (44) in Chapter 4). The low-pass time-series that is the complex demodulate of $\tilde{x}_T(t, f)$ is obtained by frequency-shifting,

$$\tilde{X}_T(t, f) = \tilde{x}_T(t, f)e^{-i2\pi ft}. \tag{27}$$

Thus, we have (using $u = -v$ in (26))

$$\tilde{X}_T(t, f) = \sum_{u=-T}^{0} x(t - T - u)e^{-i2\pi f(t-u)}, \tag{28}$$

which is the discrete-time-discrete-frequency analog of the time-variant finite-time complex spectrum $X_T(t, f)$—see (2a) in Chapter 2. Consequently all the analog methods introduced in Chapter 4 that are described in terms of $x_T(t, f)$ or $X_T(t, f)$ can be implemented digitally using $\tilde{x}_T(t, f)$ or $\tilde{X}_T(t, f)$ obtained from a DFT. This is explained in the following subsections.

1. Bartlett-Welch Method

One of the most computationally efficient digital methods (especially for long data segments) is referred to as the *Bartlett-Welch method* [Bartlett 1948; Welch 1967]. This method uses hopped time-averaging of periodograms with data-tapering and typically 50% overlap,

$$\tilde{S}_{x_{1/\Delta f}}(t, f)_{\Delta t} \triangleq \frac{1}{2L/N - 1} \sum_{u=0}^{2(L/N-1)} \tilde{S}_{x_T}\left(t - \frac{uN}{2}, f\right), \tag{29}$$

where $\tilde{S}_{x_T}(t, f)$ is the time-variant periodogram (with $T = N - 1$)

$$\tilde{S}_{x_T}(t, f) \triangleq \frac{1}{N}|\tilde{X}_T(t, f)|^2 \tag{30a}$$

$$= \frac{1}{N}|\tilde{x}_T(t, f)|^2 \tag{30b}$$

and

$$\tilde{x}_T(t, f) = \sum_{v=0}^{N-1} a_T(-v)x(t - T + v)e^{-i2\pi fv}. \tag{31}$$

The sequence $a_T(u)$ is the data-tapering window.[1] Figure 6-5 illustrates 50% overlapped triangle windows. The Bartlett-Welch method is sometimes referred to as the *WOSA* (weighted overlapped-segment averaging) *method.*

The number of blocks averaged in (29) is

$$2M \triangleq \frac{2L}{N} - 1.$$

The total time span of data used is $\Delta t = L - 1$, and L is the number of time

[1] The tapering window $a_T(t)$ is defined here for $t \leq 0$ in order to be able to express $\tilde{x}_T(t, f)$ as a convolution with $a_T(t)$, rather than $a_T(-t)$. This is consistent with the convention in earlier chapters.

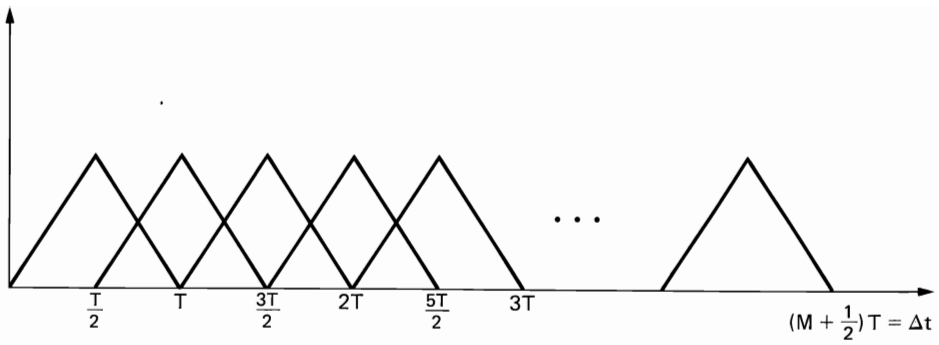


Figure 6-5 Illustration of 50% overlapped data-tapering windows.

points in the total span. Thus, the length of the time span of data analyzed is given by

$$\Delta t = (M + \tfrac{1}{2})N - 1, \tag{32}$$

and the spectral resolution width is on the order of $1/T$, that is, it is on the order of the separation between frequency points without zero padding,

$$\Delta f = \frac{1}{N} \tag{33}$$

as explained in Section B. Consequently, the temporal-spectral resolution product is given by

$$\Delta t \Delta f = M + \frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{N} \cong M. \tag{34}$$

As explained in Section D and Chapter 5, the data-tapering window determines the effective spectral smoothing window

$$\tilde{E}(f) = \frac{1}{T}|\tilde{A}_{1/T}(f)|^2 \tag{35}$$

for time-averaged periodograms. The most basic tapering windows, including the triangle (Bartlett), raised cosine (von Hann), raised cosine on a platform (Hamming), and Blackman windows, are described in Section D of Chapter 5. Other more sophisticated windows that have certain optimality properties are treated in the literature. These include the family of *Kaiser-Bessel windows,* which are approximations to the *prolate spheroidal wavefunctions* that minimize the window energy outside a specified main-lobe spectral band for a given temporal duration [Kaiser 1966], and the family of *Dolph-Chebyshev windows,* which minimize the main-lobe spectral bandwidth for a specified peak sidelobe level and a given temporal duration [Dolph 1946] (cf. [Harris 1978; Nuttall 1981; Hamming 1983].)

2. Wiener-Daniell Method

As a second example, we consider the spectrally smoothed periodogram, which is perhaps the most popular digital method (especially for analysis of data segments that are not so long as to render the DFT too computationally complex). This method, which is referred to as the *Wiener-Daniell method*[2] [Wiener 1930; Daniell 1946], yields the statistical spectrum

$$\tilde{S}_{x_{\Delta t}}(t,f)_{\Delta f} \triangleq \frac{1}{KM} \sum_{w=-(KM-1)/2}^{(KM-1)/2} \tilde{S}_{x_{\Delta t}}\left(t, f + \frac{w}{KN}\right), \tag{36}$$

where

$$\tilde{S}_{x_{\Delta t}}(t,f) = \frac{1}{N}|\tilde{X}_{\Delta t}(t,f)|^2 \tag{37a}$$

$$= \frac{1}{N}|\tilde{x}_{\Delta t}(t,f)|^2 \tag{37b}$$

and

$$\tilde{x}_{\Delta t}(t,f) = \sum_{v=0}^{\Delta t} a_{\Delta t}(-v)x(t - \Delta t + v)e^{-i2\pi fv}. \tag{38}$$

The data-tapering window $a_{\Delta t}(u)$ is often chosen to be uniform (a rectangle), since its influence on the effective spectral smoothing window,

$$\tilde{E}(f) = \frac{1}{\Delta t}|\tilde{A}_{1/\Delta t}(f)|^2 \otimes u_{\Delta f}(f), \tag{39}$$

is diminished by the spectral smoothing operation in (36). However, this choice is not always advisable because its influence is not always negligible, as shown in Chapter 5. The number of frequency points averaged in (36) is KM, and therefore the spectral resolution is

$$\Delta f = \frac{KM}{KN} = \frac{M}{N}. \tag{40}$$

The total span of data used is

$$\Delta t = N - 1. \tag{41}$$

Consequently, the temporal-spectral resolution product is given by

$$\Delta t \Delta f = \left(1 - \frac{1}{N}\right)M \cong M. \tag{42}$$

Observe that in both the Bartlett-Welch and Wiener-Daniell methods, the resolution product $\Delta t \Delta f \cong M$ is independent of the number KN of points in each block that is transformed and is therefore not affected by zero-padding. Furthermore, the spectral resolution is on the order of the reciprocal of the time-span T of data transformed in the Bartlett-Welch method (29), regardless of the amount of zero padding, and similarly the spectral resolution is equal to the

[2] Because of the recently discovered prior suggestion of this method by Einstein [Einstein 1914], it should be referred to as the *Einstein-Wiener-Daniell method*.

smoothing parameter Δf in the Wiener-Daniell method (36), regardless of how many frequency points are contained in the band Δf and therefore regardless of zero-padding. Nevertheless, some zero-padding (e.g., $K = 2$ to $K = 4$) can be desirable because it ensures that no fine structure is overlooked due to sparse frequency sampling. That is, since we can in general say only that the spectral resolution width is *on the order of* $1/N$, it might actually be more accurately approximated by $1/2N$ or even $1/4N$, thereby requiring $K = 2$ or $K = 4$. However, any advantage gained by zero-padding becomes negligible for sufficiently large resolution product $\Delta t \Delta f$ for the Wiener-Daniell method (in which case the effective spectral smoothing window covers a substantial number of sidelobes of the interpolating function (8)) and can become negligible for the Bartlett-Welch method when the data-tapering window is very smooth (and therefore results in an effective spectral smoothing window with relatively broad main lobe covering the highest sidelobes of the interpolating function (8)).

An alternative approach to spectral smoothing that results in reduced spectral leakage has recently been proposed [Thomson 1982]. The approach is based on an orthogonal series representation of the FST of the data segment, where the orthogonal basis functions are the eigenfunctions of the operator that bandlimits (to a bandwidth of $\Delta f \cong 1/N$) and then duration-limits (to a segment length of $N = \Delta t + 1 = T + 1$) and are known as the *discrete prolate spheroidal wavefunctions*. The approach produces a spectrum estimate that is approximately a sum of weighted shifted periodograms of tapered data (called *eigenspectrum estimates*), each of which is obtained by squaring the magnitude of the FST (or a zero-padded DFT) of the data segment multiplied by a prolate spheroidal wave sequence window. Since each window has the approximate effect of shifting the spectral content of the data by a different amount, the sum of the resultant approximate shifted periodograms is effectively a spectrally smoothed periodogram. However, reduced spectral leakage results from the fact that the equivalent spectral smoothing window exhibits extremely small sidelobes for a given main-lobe width. This approach is potentially attractive in applications where the data segment is short, the range of the spectrum being estimated is large (high peaks or plateaus and/or low notches or valleys), and high computational complexity is acceptable. The details of this method are beyond the scope of this introductory treatment but are given by Thomson [Thomson 1982].

3. Blackman-Tukey Method

A third example of a digital counterpart of an analog method uses the DFT of a tapered linear correlogram,

$$\tilde{S}_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, f)_{\Delta f} \triangleq \sum_{\tau=-\Delta t}^{\Delta t} \tilde{R}_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, \tau) h_{1/\Delta f}(\tau) e^{-i2\pi f\tau} \tag{43a}$$

$$= 2\mathrm{Re}\left\{ \sum_{\tau=0}^{\Delta t} \tilde{R}_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, \tau) h_{1/\Delta f}(\tau) e^{-i2\pi f\tau} \right\} - \tilde{R}_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, 0) h_{1/\Delta f}(0), \tag{43b}$$

where $\tilde{R}_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, \tau)$ is the time-variant linear correlogram defined by

$$\tilde{R}_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, \tau) \triangleq \frac{1}{N} \sum_{u=t-\Delta t}^{t-|\tau|} x(u)x(u + |\tau|), \qquad \tau = 0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \ldots, \pm N - 1 \quad (44)$$

and $N = \Delta t + 1$ is the length of the data-segment $\{x(t - u) : u = 0, 1, 2, \ldots, \Delta t\}$ used. Observe that (43a) can be interpreted as an FST for any real f, whereas (43b) can be implemented with an N-point DFT for $f = 0, \pm 1/N, \pm 2/N, \ldots, +1/2$. It follows from the time-frequency dual of the convolution theorem for the FST that this spectrum estimate is exactly equivalent to a frequency-sampled version of a spectrally smoothed continuous-frequency periodogram. An alternative to this method uses the circular correlogram in place of the linear correlogram,

$$\tilde{S}'_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, f)_{\Delta f} \triangleq 2 \operatorname{Re}\left\{ \sum_{\tau=0}^{N-1} \tilde{R}_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, \tau)_c h_{1/\Delta f}(\tau) e^{-i2\pi f\tau} \right\} - \tilde{R}_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, 0)_c h_{1/\Delta f}(0), \quad (45)$$

where $\tilde{R}_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, \tau)_c$ is the time-variant circular correlogram for the sequence of data blocks $\{x(t - u) : u = 0, 1, 2, 3, \ldots, \Delta t\}$ indexed by t,

$$\tilde{R}_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, \tau)_c \triangleq \frac{1}{N} \sum_{u=t-\Delta t}^{t-\tau} x(\tau + u)x(u) + \frac{1}{N} \sum_{u=t-\tau+1}^{t} x(\tau + u - \Delta t - 1)x(u). \quad (46)$$

This alternative method (45) is exactly equivalent to the modified Wiener-Daniell method that uses a spectrally smoothed discrete-frequency periodogram with smoothing window $\tilde{H}_{\Delta f} = \text{DFT}\{h_{1/\Delta f}\}$, in which circular convolution is used for the spectral smoothing operation (exercise 10). This follows from the periodogram-correlogram relation for the DFT and the time-frequency dual of the circular convolution theorem for the DFT. However, circular convolution is usually not appropriate for spectral smoothing (at frequencies near the ends of the DFT). Furthermore the first method (43), which is often referred to as the *Blackman-Tukey method* [Blackman and Tukey 1959], is not as computationally efficient as the preceding two methods, especially the Bartlett-Welch method, when an FFT or FHT algorithm is used for the DFT and the data segment is long. Nevertheless, in some applications the correlogram must be computed for other purposes, and when it is available the Blackman-Tukey method is very attractive, especially when an FFT or FHT algorithm is used for the DFT of the tapered correlogram. This method is most computationally efficient when the correlogram tapering window is simply a rectangle, although the spectral leakage properties of the corresponding effective spectral smoothing window (and/or the leakage effects in the variability for short data segments) are at their worst in this case.

4. Channelizer Methods

Since the sliding DFT used in the Bartlett-Welch method (and possibly in the Wiener-Daniell method), which produces the bank of $1 + KN/2$ local sine wave components

$$\bar{x}_T(t, f), \qquad f = 0, \frac{1}{KN}, \frac{2}{KN}, \frac{3}{KN}, \ldots, \frac{1}{2},$$

can be interpreted as a bank of band-pass filters with center frequencies of $\{m/KN : m = 0, 1, 2, 3, \ldots, KN/2\}$, then an obvious digital implementation can be based on a bank of computationally efficient band-pass filters, collectively referred to as a *channelizer* (i.e., a spectral channelizer). In fact, this is the digital counterpart of the analog wave-analysis method. Computational savings can be obtained by exploiting the fact that the low-pass time-series to be time-averaged, $|\tilde{x}_T(t, f)|^2 = |\bar{X}_T(t, f)|^2$ for each f, has bandwidth of only $2\Delta f^{\circ} = 2/N$, and $\tilde{x}_T(t, f)$ can therefore be subsampled at a rate of $2/N$ or preferably $4/N$ before it is magnitude-squared and averaged. Also, the time-averaging can be implemented with a computationally efficient digital low-pass filter. The subsampling at a rate of $2/N$ is equivalent to using hopped time-averaging of the periodogram with 50% overlapped blocks, as in the Bartlett-Welch method. The shape of the transfer function of each band-pass filter is equivalent to the DFT of the data-tapering window (frequency-shifted up to passband) in the Bartlett-Welch method (provided that zero-padding is used so that the linear convolution (31) is equivalent to a circular convolution). These equivalences follow by analogy from the explanations of equivalences among analog methods in Chapters 4 and 5. Increasingly efficient and fast computational procedures for realizing channelizers are continually being developed. Thus, this digital wave-analysis generalization of the Bartlett-Welch method is one of the most promising of the existing generic architectures for digital statistical spectral analysis. A variety of approaches to efficient implementation are presented in [Crochiere and Rabiner 1983].

5. Minimum-Leakage Method

A statistical spectrum estimate such as that provided by a wave analyzer at a given frequency f can be interpreted as the time-averaged power at the output of a narrow-band band-pass filter with center frequency f, normalized by the filter bandwidth. The instantaneous power is averaged over a time span of length $\Delta t = L - 1$ and the bandwidth of the filter is $\Delta f = 1/N$. Thus,

$$\bar{S}_{x_{1/\Delta f}}(t, f)_{\Delta t} = \frac{1}{L} \sum_{w=0}^{L-1} \frac{1}{\Delta f} P_{\Delta f}(t - w, f), \tag{47a}$$

where $P_{\Delta f}(t, f)$ is the instantaneous power of the filter output,

$$P_{\Delta f}(t, f) = \left| \sum_{u=0}^{N-1} a^f_{1/\Delta f}(u) x(t - u) \right|^2, \tag{47b}$$

and $a^f_{1/\Delta f}(u)$ is the impulse-response sequence of the filter. (In terms of the data-tapering window in (31), $a^f_{1/\Delta f}(u) = a_{1/\Delta f}(T - u)\, e^{i2\pi f(u-T)}$.) One approach to optimizing this type of spectrum estimate in order to minimize spectral leakage is to optimize the band-pass filter for each value of f to minimize the average power $S_{x_{1/\Delta f}}(t, f)_{\Delta t}$ at its output subject to the constraint that the strength of its response to an input sine wave of frequency f is equal to unity,

$$\sum_{u=0}^{N-1} a^f_{1/\Delta f}(u) e^{i2\pi f(t-u)} = e^{i2\pi ft}. \tag{48}$$

It is shown in exercise 14 that the solution for the optimum filter is given by the N-vector[3]

$$\boldsymbol{g} = [a^f_{1/\Delta f}(0), a^f_{1/\Delta f}(1), a^f_{1/\Delta f}(2), \ldots, a^f_{1/\Delta f}(N-1)]' \tag{49}$$

that is specified by

$$\boldsymbol{g}(t,f) = \frac{\boldsymbol{R}_x^{-1}(t)\boldsymbol{s}(f)}{\boldsymbol{s}'(f)\boldsymbol{R}_x^{-1}(t)\boldsymbol{s}^*(f)} \tag{50a}$$

for each data block indexed by t, where $\boldsymbol{s}(f)$ is the sine wave N-vector

$$\boldsymbol{s}(f) = [1, e^{i2\pi f}, e^{i2\pi f2}, e^{i2\pi f3}, \ldots, e^{i2\pi f(N-1)}]', \tag{50b}$$

$\boldsymbol{R}_x(t)$ is the $N \times N$ matrix of time-variant finite-average autocorrelations with uvth element defined by

$$[\boldsymbol{R}_x(t)]_{uv} \triangleq \frac{1}{L}\sum_{w=0}^{L-1} x(t-w-u)x(t-w-v) \tag{50c}$$

for $u, v = 0, 1, 2, \ldots, N-1$, and $\boldsymbol{R}_x^{-1}(t)$ is the inverse of this matrix. Substitution of (49) into (47) yields

$$\tilde{S}_{x_{1/\Delta f}}(t,f)_{\Delta t} = \frac{1}{\Delta f}\boldsymbol{g}'(t,f)\boldsymbol{R}_x(t)\boldsymbol{g}^*(t,f), \tag{51}$$

and substitution of (50a) into (51) yields (exercise 14) the *minimum-leakage* (ML) *spectrum estimate* (using the notation $S_x(f)_{\mathrm{ML}} \triangleq \tilde{S}_{x_{1/\Delta f}}(t,f)_{\Delta t}$)

$$S_x(f)_{\mathrm{ML}} = \frac{1/\Delta f}{\boldsymbol{s}'(f)\boldsymbol{R}_x^{-1}(t)\boldsymbol{s}^*(f)}. \tag{52}$$

Observe that the optimum filter (50) adapts to the data and is therefore time-variant. Consequently, its bandwidth Δf is also adaptive. One measure of the bandwidth of a filter with transfer function $H(\nu)$ is its equivalent rectangular bandwidth, defined by

$$\Delta f \triangleq \frac{1}{|H(f)|^2}\int_{-1/2}^{1/2}|H(\nu)|^2\,d\nu, \tag{53}$$

where f is the center frequency. Substitution of the transfer function

$$H(\nu) = A^f_{\Delta f}(\nu) = \sum_{u=0}^{N-1} a^f_{1/\Delta f}(u)e^{-i2\pi\nu u} \tag{54}$$

into (53) and use of (49) and (50a) yields (exercise 14)

$$\Delta f = \frac{\boldsymbol{s}'(f)\boldsymbol{R}_x^{-2}(t)\boldsymbol{s}^*(f)}{[\boldsymbol{s}'(f)\boldsymbol{R}_x^{-1}(t)\boldsymbol{s}^*(f)]^2}, \tag{55}$$

where $\boldsymbol{R}_x^{-2}(t)$ is the square of the inverse matrix $\boldsymbol{R}_x^{-1}(t)$. Finally, substitution of (55) into (52) yields the formula

$$S'_x(f)_{\mathrm{ML}} = \frac{\boldsymbol{s}'(f)\boldsymbol{R}_x^{-1}(t)\boldsymbol{s}^*(f)}{\boldsymbol{s}'(f)\boldsymbol{R}_x^{-2}(t)\boldsymbol{s}^*(f)} \tag{56}$$

for the *modified ML spectrum estimate*.

[3] The notation [ ]′ denotes matrix transposition.

Although the derivation of this optimum spectrum estimate presented here is believed to be novel (in that it does not rely on probabilistic models or infinite amounts of data), the estimate itself, in the form (52) with fixed Δf, was proposed at least as early as the mid-1960s [Capon et al. 1967; Capon 1969; Lacoss 1971], but was only recently modified to the form (56) [Lagunas-Hernandez and Gasull-Llampallas 1984]. This spectrum estimate is known to provide somewhat better resolution of spectral lines than the nonoptimized methods and this is demonstrated in Chapter 9. However, it is also somewhat more computationally complex. Nevertheless its computational complexity can be reduced if the Toeplitz form of $\boldsymbol{R}_x(t)$, in which the uvth element depends on only the difference $u - v$, is exploited, and if the inner products

$$\boldsymbol{s}'(f)\boldsymbol{R}_x^p(t) \quad \text{and} \quad [\boldsymbol{s}'(f)\boldsymbol{R}_x^p(t)]\boldsymbol{s}^*(f)$$

(for $p = -1, -2$) are performed using an FFT algorithm. The Toeplitz form of $\boldsymbol{R}_x(t)$ is obtained when the range of summation in (47a) and, therefore, (50c) is chosen large enough to allow the filter to run completely off the ends of the L-point data segment being analyzed.[4] This form can be exploited for efficient matrix inversion, as explained in Chapter 9 (see also [Musicus 1985]). Whatever algorithm is used for the DFT, zero-padding should be used to obtain a frequency increment smaller than $1/N$, since the spectral resolution capability of this method is typically better than that of the nonoptimized methods, which produce a spectral resolution width on the order of $1/N$. Nevertheless, the resolution capability is still tied to N, and there is still a resolution-reliability trade-off. For a given data-segment length of L, as N is increased, resolution increases; but so too does variability due to the increased variability of $[\boldsymbol{R}_x(t)]_{uv}$ for values of u or v close to N. Furthermore, this variability is enhanced by the matrix inversion operation in (52) and is enhanced even more by the squaring operation and the ratio in (56). Large variability can result in spurious peaks in the spectrum estimate. Some improvement in this trade-off with N might be possible by variability reduction through modification of the correlation matrix estimate (50c). For example, the forward-backward covariance-matrix estimate and/or the singular-value-decomposition method of rank reduction described in Chapter 9 might be used (e.g., for data consisting of sine waves in white noise). The higher variability of the modified estimate (56) can render it less desirable than the unmodified estimate (52) (see Section E in Chapter 9).

Since the filter (50a) with $\boldsymbol{R}_x(t)$ replaced by the limit autocorrelation matrix can be shown (exercise 14) to be the solution to a maximum-likelihood estimation problem for a sine wave in additive Gaussian noise, the spectrum estimation method (52) is often called the *maximum-likelihood method* (MLM), but MLM also stands for the *minimum-leakage method*. The minimum-leakage method is also sometimes referred to as the *Capon method* and the *minimum-variance method*. It should not be confused with the classical maximum-likelihood autoregressive method described in Chapter 9.

[4] The estimate (52) was originally proposed for wave-number analysis of spatial data, in which case the Toeplitz form of $\boldsymbol{R}_x(t)$ is not appropriate.

D. FRACTION-OF-TIME PROBABILISTIC ANALYSIS

Fraction-of-time probabilistic analysis of discrete-time spectrum estimates is analogous to the analysis carried out in Chapter 5 for continuous-time spectrum estimates. The obvious differences are that integrals over continuous time must be replaced with sums over discrete time and CFTs must be replaced with FSTs, in which case integrals over the infinite frequency range $(-\infty, \infty)$ get replaced with integrals over the finite frequency range $[-\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2}]$. Specifically, any of the quadratic time-invariant spectrum estimates (such as the Bartlett-Welch, Wiener-Daniell, Blackman-Tukey, and channelizer estimates) can be put into the general form

$$\bar{y}_f(t) = \sum_{u=-\infty}^{\infty} \sum_{v=-\infty}^{\infty} \bar{k}_f(u, v)x(t - u)x(t - v) \tag{57}$$

for some appropriate kernel $\bar{k}_f$ which can be represented by its double FST

$$\bar{K}_f(\nu', \mu') \triangleq \sum_{u,v=-\infty}^{\infty} \bar{k}_f(u, v)e^{-i2\pi(u\nu' - v\mu')}, \tag{58}$$

which in turn can be represented by the kernel transform

$$\tilde{M}(\nu, \mu) \triangleq \bar{K}_f(\nu + f + \mu/2, \nu + f - \mu/2). \tag{59}$$

Then, the temporal mean of $\bar{y}_f(t)$ is given by (see (50) in Chapter 5)

$$\text{mean } \{\bar{y}_f(t)\} = \int_{-1/2}^{1/2} \bar{S}_x(f - \nu)\bar{E}(\nu)\, d\nu, \tag{60}$$

where

$$\bar{E}(f) \triangleq \tilde{M}(0, -f). \tag{61}$$

Also, the temporal variance of $\bar{y}_f(t)$ is given by (see (66) in Chapter 5)

$$\text{var}\{\bar{y}_f(t)\} = \int_{-1/2}^{1/2} \int_{-1/2}^{1/2} [|\tilde{M}(\nu, \mu - f)|^2 + \tilde{M}(\nu, \mu - f)M^*(\nu, -\mu - f)]$$

$$\times \bar{S}_x\left(\mu + \frac{\nu}{2}\right) \bar{S}_x\left(\mu - \frac{\nu}{2}\right) d\mu\, d\nu. \tag{62}$$

Thus, all that is needed to evaluate the mean and variance is to determine the kernel transform $\tilde{M}(\nu, \mu)$ using (58) and (59) by putting the spectrum estimate into the form of (57). The resultant kernel transform will be analogous to those given in Table 5-1 for continuous-time methods. Various effective spectral smoothing windows $H(f) \equiv \bar{E}(f)$ for discrete-time methods are described in Section D of Chapter 5.

The analogy with continuous time is not complete, and this can be seen by attempting to define the inverse double FST of $\tilde{M}(\nu, \mu)$, namely $\tilde{m}(t, \tau)$, directly in terms of $\bar{k}_f(u, v)$ as done for continuous time in Chapter 5. But since

this intermediate step in reaching the kernel transform $\tilde{M}(\nu, \mu)$ is not necessary, we shall not pursue the matter any further.[5]

E. SUMMARY

In Section A, the complementary nature of analog and digital methods of spectral analysis are discussed. Then in Section B the DFT, on which most digital methods are based, is studied. Topics include the use of zero-padding to control resolution, the distinction between circular and linear convolutions, the circular convolution theorem and the associated wraparound phenomenon, and a circular correlogram-periodogram relation. Also, the relationships among the DFT, FST, and CFT are described, and the importance of zero-padding is discussed and illustrated by example. In Section C various digital methods for statistical spectral analysis that are based on the DFT are described and compared. It is explained that these methods, known by the names Bartlett-Welch, Wiener-Daniell, Blackman-Tukey, and channelizer methods, are all digital counterparts of analog methods studied in Chapter 4. Then the minimum-leakage method, which is an optimized wave analyzer (channelizer), is derived and its interpretation in terms of maximum likelihood is explained. Finally in Section D, it is explained that the formulas derived in Chapter 5 for the mean and variance of continuous-time spectrum estimates apply equally well to discrete-time spectrum estimates, provided only that the range of integration over frequency variables is reduced from $(-\infty, \infty)$ to $[-\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2}]$, to reflect the replacement of the CFT by the FST in the derivation.

EXERCISES

1. **(a)** Use polynomial division to prove that $Q(a) = P(a)$ for $a \neq 1$, where

$$Q(a) \triangleq \frac{1 - a^N}{1 - a} \tag{63}$$

$$P(a) \triangleq \sum_{k=0}^{N-1} a^k. \tag{64}$$

Hint:

$$\begin{array}{r} 1 + a + a^2 + \cdots \\ 1 - a \,\overline{)\, 1 - a^N} \\ \underline{1 - a} \\ a - a^N \\ \underline{a - a^2} \\ a^2 - a^N \\ \underline{a^2 - a^3} \\ a^3 - a^N \\ \vdots \end{array}$$

[5] The reader should be warned that the formulas (60)–(62) were not derived by the author. They were simply written down by analogy with (50) and (66) in Chapter 5. Readers with any question about the analogy should derive (60)–(62) directly by following a procedure that is analogous to that outlined in Chapter 5.

Since $P(1) = N$ and $Q(a) \to N$ as $a \to 1$, it is convenient to *define* $Q(1)$ to be

$$Q(1) \triangleq N. \tag{65}$$

(b) Use the result of (a) to prove that

$$\sum_{k=0}^{N-1} e^{i2\pi rk/N} = \frac{1 - e^{i2\pi r}}{1 - e^{i2\pi r/N}} = \begin{cases} N, & r = pN,\ p = \text{integer} \\ 0, & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases} \tag{66}$$

2. (a) Verify that (1a) and (1b) are a transform pair by substituting (1a) into (1b) and using the result of (b) in exercise (1).

(b) Define an $N \times N$ matrix $\boldsymbol{M}$ with mnth element $M_{mn} \triangleq \frac{1}{\sqrt{N}} W^{mn}$ for $n, m = 0, 1, 2, \ldots, N - 1$, where $W \triangleq e^{-i2\pi/N}$. Then the scaled DFT and inverse scaled DFT can be expressed in terms of $\boldsymbol{M}$ by

$$\boldsymbol{X} = \boldsymbol{M}\boldsymbol{x}$$

$$\boldsymbol{x} = \boldsymbol{M}^{-1}\boldsymbol{X}.$$

Show that $\boldsymbol{M}$ is symmetric,

$$\boldsymbol{M}' = \boldsymbol{M},$$

and that it is *orthonormal* in the sense that

$$\boldsymbol{M}'\boldsymbol{M}^* = \boldsymbol{I},$$

where $\boldsymbol{I}$ is the $N \times N$ identity matrix. *Hint:* Use the result of exercise 1(b).

3. (a) Use the result of exercise 1(b) to verify that the FST of the rectangle sequence

$$u_n = \begin{cases} 1, & 0 \leq n \leq M - 1 \\ 0, & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \tag{67a}$$

is given by

$$\tilde{U}(f) = e^{-i\pi f(M-1)} \frac{\sin(\pi f M)}{\sin(\pi f)}. \tag{67b}$$

(b) Use the aliasing formula (15b) for a time-sampled rectangle,

$$u(t) = \begin{cases} 1, & 1 \leq t < M \\ 0, & \text{otherwise,} \end{cases} \tag{68}$$

to verify that the FST $\tilde{U}(f)$ in (a) is also given by (for M even)

$$\tilde{U}(f) = e^{-i\pi fM} \sum_{q=-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{\sin[\pi(f - q)M]}{\pi(f - q)}. \tag{67c}$$

Thus, (67b) and (67c) form an identity.

4. To verify that the DFT (7) of a zero-padded sequence is simply an interpolation of the DFT (1a) of the unpadded sequence, substitute (1b) into (7) and use the result of exercise 1(b) to prove that (8a) holds with

$$I\left(\frac{q}{K}\right) = \frac{1 - e^{i2\pi(q/K)}}{N(1 - e^{i2\pi(q/K)/N})}. \tag{69}$$

Then factor out $e^{i\pi(q/K)}/e^{i\pi(q/K)/N}$ to verify that the magnitude and phase of $I(q/K)$ are given by (8b) and (8c).

5. (a) Illustrate graphically the equivalence of circular convolution of finite-length sequences (11a) and linear convolution of the periodically repeated versions of the finite-length sequences (10). Also show graphically that zero-padding sequences of length N out to length $2N$ renders linear convolution of the zero-padded sequences equivalent to linear convolution of the periodically repeated (period $= 2N$) sequences.

Finally, show that when one sequence is much shorter than the other, then the difference between linear convolution and circular convolution occurs only near the ends of the resultant sequences.

(b) Verify the *circular convolution theorem,*

$$Z_m = X_m Y_m, \tag{70a}$$

where X_m, Y_m, Z_m are the N-point DFTs of x_n, y_n, z_n and where z_n is the circular convolution of x_n and y_n,

$$z_n = \sum_{k=0}^{n} x_k y_{n-k} + \sum_{k=n+1}^{N-1} x_k y_{N+n-k}, \qquad n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots, N-1, \tag{70b}$$

in which the second sum is defined to be zero for $k > N - 1$. *Hint:* Let $\{x_n : n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots, N-1\}$ and $\{y_n : n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots, N-1\}$ be periodically repeated,

$$x_{n+N} = x_n, \qquad y_{n+N} = y_n, \qquad -\infty < n < \infty,$$

and use the result of (a) to show that the circular convolution (70b) of the original finite segments is identical to the linear convolution

$$z_n = \sum_{k=0}^{N-1} x_k y_{n-k} \tag{70c}$$

of the periodically repeated sequences. Then take the DFT of one period of both sides of (70c) and insert the unity factor $e^{-i(2\pi/N)(mk-mk)}$ to obtain

$$\bar{Y}_m = \sum_{k=0}^{N-1} x_k \, e^{-i(2\pi/N)mk} \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} y_{n-k} \, e^{-i(2\pi/N)m(n-k)}.$$

Finally, use the periodicity of the summand in the second sum to argue that k can be set equal to any fixed value, say $k = 0$, in the second sum. The result (70a) follows immediately.

(c) Verify that if x_n is zero for $n < 0$ and $n > N_x - 1$ and y_n is zero for $n < 0$ and $n > N_y - 1$, then by appending enough zeros to x_n and y_n to obtain sequences of length $N_{xy} = N_x + N_y - 1$, the N_{xy}-point circular convolution of these zero-padded sequences is identical to the linear convolution

$$z_n = \sum_{q=0}^{N_{xy}-1} x_q y_{n-q}. \tag{71}$$

6. (a) Verify that the N-point DFT of the *circular correlogram,*

$$\tilde{R}_{x_N}(q)_c \triangleq \frac{1}{N} \sum_{k=0}^{N-q-1} x_{q+k} x_k + \frac{1}{N} \sum_{k=N-q}^{N-1} x_{q+k-N} x_k, \qquad q = 0, 1, 2, \ldots, N-1, \tag{72a}$$

is given by $1/N$ times the squared magnitude of the N-point DFT of x_n, which is the N-point periodogram of x_n,

$$\mathrm{DFT}\{\tilde{R}_{x_N}(q)_c\} = \frac{1}{N} |\mathrm{DFT}\{x_n\}|^2. \tag{72b}$$

Hint: Let $\{x_n\}$ be periodically repeated and show that (72a) is identical to

$$\tilde{R}_{x_N}(q)_c = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{k=0}^{N-1} x_{k+q} x_k. \tag{72c}$$

Then proceed as described in the hint for exercise 5(b).

(b) Verify that the circular correlogram is symmetrical about the midpoint $N/2$ (N even)

$$\tilde{R}_{x_N}(N/2 + p)_c = \tilde{R}_{x_N}(N/2 - p)_c. \tag{73}$$

(Notice that $N/2$ is the midpoint for the set $[0, N]$ rather than $[0, N - 1]$, which has no integral midpoint for even N. Notice also that $\tilde{R}_{x_N}(q)_c$ peaks at $q = 0$, as does the linear correlogram.)

(c) Derive the DFT relation (15) from the FST relation (14).

7. As a supplement to the periodogram-correlogram relation (72b), verify the following relation:

$$2\,\mathrm{Re}[\mathrm{DFT}\{\tilde{R}_{x_N}(q)\}] - \tilde{R}_{x_N}(0) = \frac{1}{N}|\mathrm{DFT}\{x_n\}|^2, \tag{74a}$$

where $\tilde{R}_{x_N}(q)$ is the *linear correlogram* defined by

$$\tilde{R}_{x_N}(q) \triangleq \frac{1}{N}\sum_{k=0}^{N-1} x_k x_{k+|q|}, \qquad q = 0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \ldots, \pm N - 1. \tag{74b}$$

Hint: Use the periodogram-correlogram relation for the FST ((63) in Chapter 2) to obtain

$$\sum_{q=-N+1}^{N-1} \tilde{R}_{x_N}(q)e^{-i2\pi qf} = \frac{1}{N}\left|\sum_{n=0}^{N-1} x_n e^{-i2\pi fn}\right|^2, \tag{75}$$

and then use the fact that $\tilde{R}_{x_N}(q)$ is even together with $f = m/N$ to obtain the desired result.

8. Show that the DFT of the circular correlogram (20) of a PN sequence is given by (22).

9. Let $\{z_n\}$ be the $(N + 1)$-point sequence obtained by appending x_* to the end of an N-point sequence $\{x_n\}$. Show that the $(N + 1)$-point DFT of $\{z_n\}$ is related to the FST of $\{x_n\}$ by

$$Z_m = \tilde{X}\left(\frac{m}{N} - \frac{m}{N(N + 1)}\right) + x_* e^{-i2\pi mN/(N+1)}. \tag{76}$$

Then let $\{x_n\}$ be a PN sequence and let $x_* = \pm 1$ and show that for $m \neq 0$ and $N \gg 1$, $\{Z_m\}$ is closely approximated by

$$Z_m \cong \tilde{X}\left(\frac{m}{N} - \frac{m}{N(N + 1)}\right) \tag{77a}$$

whereas $\{X_m\}$ is given by

$$X_m = \tilde{X}\left(\frac{m}{N}\right). \tag{88b}$$

10. Show that the FST of the limit autocorrelation of a periodic sequence with period N,

$$\tilde{R}_x(k) \triangleq \lim_{Q\to\infty} \frac{1}{2Q + 1}\sum_{n=-Q}^{Q} x_{n+k}x_n, \tag{78a}$$

is given by

$$\tilde{S}_x(f) = \frac{1}{N}\sum_{p=-\infty}^{\infty}\left|\tilde{X}_N\left(\frac{p}{N}\right)\right|^2 \delta\left(f - \frac{p}{N}\right), \tag{78b}$$

where

$$\tilde{X}_N(f) \triangleq \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} x_n e^{-i2\pi fn} \tag{78c}$$

and therefore $\tilde{X}_N([p + N]/N) = \tilde{X}_N(p/N)$. Consequently, $\tilde{S}_x(f)$ contains the same information as the N-point periodogram

$$\frac{1}{N}\left|\tilde{X}_N\left(\frac{p}{N}\right)\right|^2, \qquad p = 0, 1, 2, \ldots, N - 1.$$

Hint: Take the inverse FST of (78b) and then apply the periodogram-correlogram relation for the DFT.

11. **(a)** Show that the KN-point DFT of the N-point sequence

$$x_n = \cos\left(\frac{2\pi kn}{KN} + \theta\right), \qquad n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots, N - 1 \tag{79a}$$

with $(K - 1)N$ zeros appended is given by

$$X_m = 0 \qquad \text{for } m = \pm k + pK, \tag{79b}$$

for all integers $p \neq 0, \pm N, \pm 2N, \pm 3N, \ldots$, if $k = qK/2$ for any integer q such that k is an integer and $K \neq 1$.

(b) Show that if $K = 1$, then $X_m = 0$ for $m \neq \pm k$, and the DFT therefore exhibits no leakage at all when there is no zero-padding. This nonphysical situation should be avoided when conducting simulations by never choosing a sine wave frequency to be exactly at the center of a bin in the DFT.

(c) Explain (a) and (b) by characterizing the DFT as a frequency-sampled FST and showing the graph of the FST of the sine wave sequence x_n.

12. **(a)** Consider a sampling increment $T_s \neq 1$. Give expressions for the generalizations (from $T_s = 1$) of the Bartlett-Welch equations (29)–(31) and the Wiener-Daniell equations (36)–(38).

(b) Give the equations that relate Δt and Δf to K, L, M, N, and T_s for the Bartlett-Welch method, and the equations that relate Δt and Δf to K, M, $L = N$, and T_s for the Wiener-Daniell method.

(c) Give a formula for the frequency-sampling increment, denoted by F_s, of the DFT in terms of K, N, and T_s.

13. **(a)** Consider a stationary time-series with bandwidth $B = 100$ KHz ($\hat{S}_x(f) = 0$ for $|f| \geq B$) and correlation width $\Delta\tau^* = 1$ ms. It is desired to use a frequency-smoothed periodogram computed with the FFT algorithm without zero-padding to measure the spectral density, and it is desired to have a temporal-spectral resolution product of $\Delta t \Delta f = 100$. Determine the minimum allowable time-sampling rate, $1/T_s$, the number, N, of time-samples to be Fourier transformed (the size of the FFT), the separation, F_s, between frequency points, and the number, M, of frequency points to be averaged for each frequency point in the smoothed spectrum.

(b) Let an average of periodograms of half-overlapped data segments be used in place of the frequency-smoothed periodogram in (a), and determine the number of data segments to be transformed and the number of time-points within each segment.

14. **(a)** Use (49) and (50c) to verify that the spectrum estimate (47a) can be expressed as

$$\tilde{S}_{x_{1/\Delta f}}(t, f)_{\Delta t} = \frac{1}{\Delta f}\boldsymbol{g}'(t, f)\boldsymbol{R}_x(t)\boldsymbol{g}^*(t, f), \tag{80}$$

and use (49) and (50b) to show that the constraint (48) on the filter $g(t, f)$ can be expressed as

$$g'(t,f)s^*(f) = 1. \tag{81}$$

(b) A standard result from optimization theory is that the quadratic form (80) is minimum subject to the linear constraint (81) if and only if $g(t, f)$ satisfies the linear equation

$$R_x(t)g(t,f) = cs(f) \tag{82}$$

for some constant c. Since $R_x(t)$ is assumed to be positive definite, then the solution $g(t, f)$ can be obtained by inverting $R_x(t)$ and then substituting the resultant formula for $g(t, f)$ into (81) to determine the appropriate value for c. Show that this yields (50a).

(c) Show that (50a) and (51) yield the ML spectrum estimate (52).

(d) Use (49) and (50a) to show that (53) can be expressed by (55).

15. To establish the relationship between (52) and the time-averaged power of a sequence of maximum-likelihood estimates of a sine wave component of $x(t)$ with frequency f, proceed as follows. It can be shown that the Gaussian fraction-of-time distribution for the N-vector consisting of a *real* sine wave vector as with unknown amplitude a plus a zero-mean residual vector n with limit autocorrelation matrix $\bar{R}_n$,

$$x = as + n,$$

is given by (cf. Chapter 15)

$$f_x(z|as) = [(2\pi)^{N/2}|\hat{R}_n|^{1/2}]^{-1} \exp\{-\tfrac{1}{2}(z - as)'\hat{R}_n^{-1}(z - as)\}, \tag{83}$$

where $|\hat{R}_n|$ denotes the determinant of $\hat{R}_n$ and $x = [x(t), x(t - 1), \ldots, x(t - N + 1)]'$. It follows from the monotonicity of $\exp\{\cdot\}$ that the value of a that maximizes $f_x(z|as)$ is the value of a that minimizes the quadratic form

$$(z - as)'\hat{R}_n^{-1}(z - as). \tag{84}$$

Expand (84) into a sum of four terms, and show that the minimizing value of a is given by (using $z = x$)

$$\hat{a} = \frac{x'\hat{R}_n^{-1}s}{s'\hat{R}_n^{-1}s} \triangleq x'h = h'x. \tag{85}$$

Now, for each data block $x = [x(t), x(t - 1), \ldots, x(t - N + 1)]'$ indexed by t, we get an estimate $\hat{a} = \hat{a}(t)$. Show that the limit time-averaged power of this sequence of estimates is given by

$$\hat{P}_a(f) = h'\hat{R}_x h = \frac{s'\hat{R}_n^{-1}\hat{R}_x\hat{R}_n^{-1}s}{(s'\hat{R}_n^{-1}s)^2}, \tag{86}$$

where

$$\hat{R}_x = a^2ss' + \hat{R}_n. \tag{87}$$

Finally, use (86) and (87) to show that

$$\hat{P}_a(f) = \frac{1}{s'\hat{R}_x^{-1}s}, \tag{88}$$

which is to be compared with (52). (It can be shown that for a sufficiently large value of N, (88) is, to a close approximation, independent of the phase of the real sine wave vector s (because of the near-Toeplitz form of $\hat{R}_n^{-1}$ for large N) and is therefore

closely approximated by the same form with s replaced by the complex sine wave vector (50b).)

Hint: Use *Woodbury's identity,*

$$[\hat{R}_x - a^2 ss']^{-1} = \hat{R}_x^{-1} + \frac{a^2 \hat{R}_x^{-1} ss' \hat{R}_x^{-1}}{1 - a^2 s' \hat{R}_x^{-1} s}, \tag{89}$$

to show that

$$\hat{R}_n^{-1} s = \hat{R}_x^{-1} s \left[1 + \frac{a^2 s' \hat{R}_x^{-1} s}{1 - a^2 s' \hat{R}_x^{-1} s}\right] = \hat{R}_x^{-1} s \left[\frac{1}{1 - a^2 s' \hat{R}_x^{-1} s}\right] \tag{90}$$

and

$$s' \hat{R}_n^{-1} s = s' \hat{R}_x^{-1} s \left[\frac{1}{1 - a^2 s' \hat{R}_x^{-1} s}\right]. \tag{91}$$

Then substitute (90) and (91) into (86) to obtain (88).

16. Consider the problem of measuring the squared magnitude of the transfer function of a resonant system driven by white noise, as discussed in the first example in Section D of Chapter 5. Assume that the resonance peak occurs at $f_0 = 10$ KHz and has a 3-dB bandwidth of 1 KHz and that it is desired to obtain a spectral resolution of 200 Hz and a coefficient of variation of $\frac{1}{10}$ over the spectral band from dc to 30 KHz.

(a) Determine an appropriate sampling rate for the response of the resonant system, and determine roughly how many time-samples will be needed.

(b) Specify an amount of data and zero-padding, the required DFT size, and the number of DFT blocks to be averaged using the Bartlett-Welch method with 50% overlap and no data tapering. Restrict the DFT size to an integer power of 2 so that FFT or FHT algorithms can be used.

(c) Specify an amount of data and zero-padding, the required DFT size, and the number of DFT bins to be averaged using the Wiener-Daniell method with no data tapering. Restrict the DFT size to an integer power of 2.

(d) How would the specifications in (b) and (c) change if triangle data tapering were used?

(e) Identify the autocorrelation tapering windows in the Blackman-Tukey method that is equivalent to the modified Wiener-Daniell method (that uses circular convolution for spectral smoothing) with and without data tapering as in (d) and (c). Also determine the DFT size needed for transforming the tapered autocorrelation. Restrict the DFT size to an integer power of 2.

(f) How many digital band-pass filters would be needed if a channelizer were used, and what would their 3-dB bandwidths be?

17. An oscillator produces an approximation to an exact sine wave. The distortion exhibited in the oscillator's periodic output is usefully characterized by the strength of the components at the harmonics (integer multiples) of the fundamental frequency of the periodic waveform. Assume that the fundamental frequency is 60 Hz and that the first 10 harmonics are the only nonnegligible ones. Specify an appropriate spectral resolution and the total amount of data to be analyzed in order to assess the amount of harmonic distortion. Discuss the basis for selection of a particular data-tapering window to be used, and determine an appropriate amount of zero-padding and the required DFT size (an integer multiple of 2). Assume that oscillator noise and other random effects are negligible, in which case no time-averaging or frequency-smoothing is required.

18. Voiced human speech can be thought of as being generated by passing a nearly periodic pulse train through a slowly time-varying filter. The resultant waveform can be approximately modeled as a fourth- (or sixth-) order autoregressive time-series with autoregression parameters that are nearly time-invariant over intervals of length 25 to 250 ms. The locations of the two spectral peaks in this model, which are called the (first two) *formant frequencies,* are typically contained within the bands 400–1200 Hz and 1000–2400 Hz. The great majority of the speech energy is contained within the band 300–3000 Hz, but during intervals of length 25–250 ms, the majority of energy is in a fraction (roughly $\frac{1}{3}$) of this band, centered around the two formant frequencies, and the 3-dB bandwidths of these peaks is typically on the order of a few hundred Hertz.

Consider the problem of measuring the time-variant spectrum of a speech waveform and specify the following parameters for the Wiener-Daniell method:

(a) Preanalysis-filter bandwidth (to minimize aliasing effects)
(b) Sampling rate
(c) Segment length to be transformed (N)
(d) Number of zeros for padding ($[K - 1]N$)
(e) Width of spectral smoothing window (M)
(f) Hop interval (number of time samples) for discrete-time tracking of the spectrum
(g) The resolution product $\Delta t \Delta f$ realized with the parameters selected

19. Carry out the discrete-time and discrete-frequency counterpart of exercise 9 in Chapter 4. In part (e) consider the Bartlett-Welch, Wiener-Daniell, and Blackman-Tukey methods.

20. Consider a phenomenon that produces data of the form

$$x(t) = \sum_{k=1}^{K} c_k e^{-t/\tau_k} \cos(\omega_k t + \theta_k), \qquad t \geq 0,$$

where $0 \leq \omega_k \leq 1/\tau_k$. This condition implies that the higher the frequency of oscillation of a given component is, the faster it decays. Consequently as time progresses, the range of frequencies of non-negligible components becomes lower and lower. In such a case, time-sampling can be made more and more sparse as time progresses without significant loss of information. Thus, an exponential time-sampling scheme in which the sampling times are related by $t_{n+1} = ct_n$ for some constant c is appropriate. If these time samples are to be used for spectral analysis over a very broad range of frequencies, say several decades, then an exponential frequency-sampling scheme can also be appropriate, say $f_{m+1} = cf_m$. Use the approximation

$$X(f_m) = \int_{t_0}^{T} x(t) e^{-i2\pi f_m t} dt \cong \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} x(t_n) \int_{t_n}^{t_{n+1}} e^{-i2\pi f_m t} dt \tag{92}$$

together with $t_n = c^n t_0$ and $f_m = c^m f_0$ to show that

$$X(f_m) \cong \frac{1}{f_m} \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} A(m + n) x(t_n), \qquad m = 0, 1, 2, \ldots, M - 1, \tag{93}$$

where

$$N = \log_c(T/t_0)$$

$$M = \log_c(F/f_0)$$

and $[f_0, F]$ is the frequency band of interest. Show that the $M \times N$ matrix with mnth element $A(n + m)$ is completely specified by only $N + M$ numbers, and the matrix product (93) is actually a convolution. Thus, an FFT algorithm can be used

to compute (93). Assume that $c = 2$, $t_0 = 10^{-1}$, $T = 10^5$, $f_0 = 10^{-1}$, $F = 10^5$, and compare the size of the FFT needed using (93) with that needed using uniform time sampling, $t_{n+1} - t_n = 1/2F$, and uniform frequency sampling with $M = N$. In practice a more conservative value of c closer to unity could be used. Also, improved performance at the high frequency end of the domain $[f_0, F]$ can be obtained by using linear interpolation in (92) rather than piecewise constant approximation; the same form (93) results.[6]

[6] This efficient method of spectral analysis, based on exponential sampling, was developed by K. G. Weil and H. Wiese, who brought it to the author's attention prior to its publication.

7

CROSS-SPECTRAL ANALYSIS

In this chapter, the concept of the spectral density of a single real-valued time-series is generalized to the concept of the cross-spectral density of two complex-valued time-series. Complex-valued time-series are considered in order to accommodate complex low-pass representations of real band-pass time-series (see Appendix 3-1). It is established that the cross spectrum, which is a measure of spectral correlation, plays a fundamental role in characterizing the degree to which two time-series are related by a linear time-invariant transformation. Methods for measurement of statistical cross spectra that are straightforward generalizations of the methods described in Chapter 4 for measurement of statistical spectra are described. The chapter concludes with a discussion of the resolution, leakage, and reliability properties of cross-spectrum measurements. Three appendices describe applications of cross-spectral analysis to propagation path identification, distant source detection, and time- and frequency-difference-of-arrival estimation.

A. ELEMENTS OF CROSS-SPECTRAL ANALYSIS

There are many phenomena that give rise to some measurable quantity that is the superposition of two or more constituent quantities. We consider as the most elementary case the superposition of two possibly complex-valued waveforms $x(t)$ and $y(t)$, which forms a composite waveform

$$z(t) = x(t) + y(t), \tag{1}$$

and we inquire into how the time-variant spectrum of $z(t)$ depends on the components $x(t)$ and $y(t)$. It is easily shown (exercise 1) that the time-variant periodogram

of $z(t)$ is given by

$$S_{z_T}(t,f) = S_{x_T}(t,f) + S_{y_T}(t,f) + S_{xy_T}(t,f) + S_{yx_T}(t,f), \tag{2}$$

for which the function $S_{xy_T}(t,f)$ is defined by

$$S_{xy_T}(t,f) \triangleq \frac{1}{T} X_T(t,f) Y_T^*(t,f), \tag{3a}$$

where for example

$$X_T(t,f) \triangleq \int_{t-T/2}^{t+T/2} x(u) e^{-i2\pi fu}\, du \tag{3b}$$

is the time-variant finite-time complex spectrum. It can also be shown that $S_{xy_T}(t,f)$ is characterized by the Fourier transform relation

$$S_{xy_T}(t,\cdot) = F\{R_{xy_T}(t,\cdot)\}, \tag{4}$$

for which the function $R_{xy_T}(t,\tau)$ is defined by

$$R_{xy_T}(t,\tau) \triangleq \frac{1}{T} \int_{t-(T-|\tau|)/2}^{t+(T-|\tau|)/2} x\left(u + \frac{\tau}{2}\right) y^*\left(u - \frac{\tau}{2}\right) du\, [2Tu_{2T}(\tau)]. \tag{5}$$

By analogy with the terminology introduced in Chapter 2, $S_{xy_T}(t,f)$ is called the time-variant *cross periodogram,* or *time-variant finite-time cross spectrum,* of $x(t)$ and $y(t)$, $R_{xy_T}(t,\tau)$ is called the *time-variant cross correlogram* of $x(t)$ and $y(t)$, and relation (4) is referred to as the time-variant *cross-periodogram-correlogram relation*. Parallel to (2), it is easily shown (exercise 1) that the correlogram of $z(t)$ is given by

$$R_{z_T}(t,\tau) = R_{x_T}(t,\tau) + R_{y_T}(t,\tau) + R_{xy_T}(t,\tau) + R_{yx_T}(t,\tau). \tag{6}$$

It follows from the linearity of the averaging operation that (2) gives rise to an identical form of relation for statistical spectra. For example, the spectrally smoothed periodogram of $z(t)$ is given by

$$S_{z_{\Delta t}}(t,f)_{\Delta f} = S_{x_{\Delta t}}(t,f)_{\Delta f} + S_{y_{\Delta t}}(t,f)_{\Delta f} + S_{xy_{\Delta t}}(t,f)_{\Delta f} + S_{yx_{\Delta t}}(t,f)_{\Delta f}, \tag{7}$$

in which the function $S_{xy_{\Delta t}}(t,f)_{\Delta f}$ is defined by

$$S_{xy_{\Delta t}}(t,f)_{\Delta f} \triangleq \frac{1}{\Delta f} \int_{-\Delta f/2}^{\Delta f/2} S_{xy_{\Delta t}}(t, f-\nu)\, d\nu \tag{8}$$

and is called a *statistical time-variant cross spectrum*. The form of relation (7) is valid as well for the statistical spectra $S_{z_{1/\Delta f}}(t,f)_{\Delta t}$, $S_z(t,f)_{\Delta t,\Delta f}$, and $S_z(t,f)_{1/\Delta f,\Delta t}$ defined in Chapter 4, and this gives rise to the following definitions of statistical cross spectra:

$$S_{xy_{1/\Delta f}}(t,f)_{\Delta t} \triangleq \frac{1}{\Delta t} \int_{-\Delta t/2}^{\Delta t/2} S_{xy_{1/\Delta f}}(t-u,f)\, du \tag{9}$$

$$S_{xy}(t,f)_{\Delta t,\Delta f} \triangleq \frac{1}{\Delta f} \int_{-\Delta f/2}^{\Delta f/2} S_{xy}(t,f-\nu)_{\Delta t}\, d\nu \tag{10}$$

$$S_{xy}(t,f)_{1/\Delta f,\Delta t} \triangleq \frac{1}{\Delta t} \int_{-\Delta t/2}^{\Delta t/2} S_{xy}(t-u,f)_{1/\Delta f}\, du, \tag{11}$$

in which the function $S_{xy}(t, f)_T$ is defined by

$$S_{xy}(t, \cdot)_T \triangleq F\{R_{xy}(t, \cdot)_T\} \tag{12}$$

and is called (by analogy with terminology in Chapter 2) the *time-variant pseudo–cross spectrum*. The function $R_{xy}(t, \tau)_T$ is defined by

$$R_{xy}(t, \tau)_T \triangleq \frac{1}{T}\int_{t-T/2}^{t+T/2} x\left(u + \frac{\tau}{2}\right)y^*\left(u - \frac{\tau}{2}\right) du\, [2Tu_{2T}(\tau)] \tag{13}$$

and is called the *time-variant finite-average cross correlation* of $x(t)$ and $y(t)$.

The relation (7) among statistical spectra gives rise to an identical form of relation for limit spectra,

$$\hat{S}_z(f) = \hat{S}_x(f) + \hat{S}_y(f) + \hat{S}_{xy}(f) + \hat{S}_{yx}(f), \tag{14}$$

for which the function $\hat{S}_{xy}(f)$ is defined by

$$\hat{S}_{xy}(f) \triangleq \lim_{\Delta f \to 0} \lim_{\Delta t \to \infty} S_{xy_{1/\Delta f}}(t, f)_{\Delta t} \tag{15}$$

and is called the *limit cross spectrum* of $x(t)$ and $y(t)$. Analogous to results in Chapter 3, Section C, the limit cross spectrum exists only if the *limit cross correlation,* defined by

$$\hat{R}_{xy}(\tau) \triangleq \lim_{T \to \infty} \frac{1}{T}\int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right)y^*\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right) dt, \tag{16}$$

exists. The relation (6) among correlations gives rise to an identical form of relation for limit correlations,

$$\hat{R}_z(\tau) = \hat{R}_x(\tau) + \hat{R}_y(\tau) + \hat{R}_{xy}(\tau) + \hat{R}_{yx}(\tau). \tag{17}$$

Analogous to results in Chapter 2, Section E, the limit cross correlation can be obtained from either of the alternative equivalent limits

$$\hat{R}_{xy}(\tau) = \lim_{T \to \infty} R_{xy_T}(t, \tau) = \lim_{T \to \infty} R_{xy}(t, \tau)_T \tag{18}$$

(but this needs a proof, see [Kampé de Fériet 1954]). Similarly, analogous to results in Chapter 3, Section C, and Chapter 4, Section A, the limit cross spectrum can be obtained from any of the alternative equivalent limits

$$\hat{S}_{xy}(f) = \lim_{\Delta f \to 0} \lim_{\Delta t \to \infty} S_{xy_{1/\Delta f}}(t, f)_{\Delta t} \tag{19a}$$

$$= \lim_{\Delta f \to 0} \lim_{\Delta t \to \infty} S_{xy_{\Delta t}}(t, f)_{\Delta f} \tag{19b}$$

$$\hat{S}_{xy}(f) = \lim_{\Delta f \to 0} \lim_{\Delta t \to \infty} S_{xy}(t, f)_{\Delta t, \Delta f} \tag{20a}$$

$$= \lim_{\Delta f \to 0} \lim_{\Delta t \to \infty} S_{xy}(t, f)_{1/\Delta f, \Delta t}. \tag{20b}$$

Moreover, the limit cross spectrum and limit cross correlation are a Fourier transform pair,

$$\hat{S}_{xy}(\cdot) = F\{\hat{R}_{xy}(\cdot)\}. \tag{21}$$

Furthermore, analogous to results in Chapters 2 and 3, all preceding relations

(with the exception of (10)–(13), (20a), and (20b)) apply for tapered data as well, in which case the definitions of cross correlogram and cross periodogram are generalized to

$$R_{xy_T}(t,\tau) \triangleq \frac{1}{T}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} a_T\left(v+\frac{\tau}{2}\right)a_T^*\left(v-\frac{\tau}{2}\right)x\left(t-v+\frac{\tau}{2}\right)y^*\left(t-v-\frac{\tau}{2}\right)dv \tag{22}$$

and

$$S_{xy_T}(t,f) \triangleq \frac{1}{T}X_T(t,f)Y_T^*(t,f), \tag{23}$$

where for example

$$X_T(t,f) \triangleq \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} a_T(t-u)x(u)e^{-i2\pi fu}\,du. \tag{24}$$

However, (19a) and (19b) must be modified in this case to incorporate the factor γ, defined by (25) in Chapter 3.

Interchange of x with y in any of the cross spectra simply conjugates the cross spectra; for example,

$$S_{xy_T}(t,f) = S_{yx_T}^*(t,f) \tag{25}$$

(see (3a)). Interchange of x with y in any of the cross correlations simply conjugates the cross correlations and reverses the sign of τ (see (5)); for example,

$$R_{xy_T}(t,\tau) = R_{yx_T}^*(t,-\tau). \tag{26}$$

Analogous to results in Chapters 3 and 5, the limit cross spectrum cannot be obtained directly from the cross periodogram because the limit

$$\lim_{T\to\infty} S_{xy_T}(t,f) \tag{27}$$

does not exist in general. Thus, the smoothing operations in the formulas (19) and (20) cannot be circumvented.

An important interpretation of the cross spectrum can be obtained from definition (15). Substitution of (3a) into (9) into (15) reveals that *the limit cross spectrum* $\hat{S}_{xy}(f)$, *evaluated at frequency* f, *is an idealized measure of the temporal correlation between the spectral components of* $x(t)$ *and* $y(t)$ *at frequency* f. Thus, it can be called a *spectral correlation function*. Like the limit spectrum, which is a spectral *density* of temporal mean square (time-average power), the spectral correlation function is a spectral density of temporal correlation. By normalizing this spectral correlation by the temporal mean-square values $\hat{S}_x(f)$ and $\hat{S}_y(f)$ of the two spectral components, it can be made into a spectral correlation coefficient (recall from Chapter 5 that the mean of each spectral component for $f \neq 0$ is zero, and therefore the mean square and correlation are actually the variance and covariance, respectively). This complex-valued *spectral correlation coefficient,*

$$\frac{\hat{S}_{xy}(f)}{[\hat{S}_x(f)\hat{S}_y(f)]^{1/2}},$$

is studied in the next section.

B. COHERENCE

A major reason for interest in statistical cross spectra is a preoccupation with pairs of time-series that are related by LTI transformations. We have already seen in Section A that the notion of cross spectrum arises naturally when we consider a linear combination of time-series, such as (1). In fact, the theory of cross-spectral analysis originated in Sir Arthur Schuster's study of optical interference phenomena [Schuster 1904, par. 185], which are characterized by linear combinations of optical signals from one or more light sources. If two interfering optical signals x and y are derived from the same light source z and the primary difference between these two signals is that they have traveled different paths to the same point in space, then significant interference effects would occur, and the signals would be said to be *coherent*. Motivated by the physics of this situation, two time-series $x(t)$ and $y(t)$ are said to be *completely coherent* if they are both LTI transformations of a single time-series $z(t)$, say

$$x(t) = g(t) \otimes z(t) \tag{28a}$$

$$y(t) = h(t) \otimes z(t), \tag{28b}$$

for some functions $g(t)$ and $h(t)$ that do not annihilate any spectral components (i.e., $H(f) \neq 0$, $G(f) \neq 0$). More generally, the *degree of coherence* between $x(t)$ and $y(t)$ is measured in terms of the degree of accuracy with which $x(t)$ and $y(t)$ can be related to each other by an LTI transformation. We shall see that the idealized statistical cross spectrum—the limit cross spectrum $\hat{S}_{xy}$—plays a fundamental role in the characterization of an idealized measure of this degree of accuracy.

Since the relationship between two random time-series is generally masked by random effects, a reliable measure of the relationship must involve an averaging operation that removes random effects. A particularly useful idealized measure of the degree of accuracy with which $x(t)$ and $y(t)$ can be related by an LTI transformation is the limit time-average (temporal mean) of the squared error

$$e_{xy} \triangleq \lim_{T\to\infty} \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} |x(t) - \hat{x}(t)|^2 \, dt \tag{29a}$$

between $x(t)$ and an LTI transformation of $y(t)$,

$$\hat{x}(t) = g(t) \otimes y(t), \tag{30a}$$

minimized over all possible LTI transformations $g(t)$. It can be shown (exercise 3) that the minimum value of e_{xy} is given by

$$\min_g e_{xy} \triangleq e_{xy}^0 = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \hat{S}_x(f)[1 - |\hat{C}_{xy}(f)|^2] \, df, \tag{31a}$$

in which the function $\hat{C}_{xy}(f)$ is the complex-valued spectral correlation coefficient

$$\hat{C}_{xy}(f) \triangleq \frac{\hat{S}_{xy}(f)}{[\hat{S}_x(f)\hat{S}_y(f)]^{1/2}}. \tag{32a}$$

Similarly, the minimum value of the mean-squared error

$$e_{yx} \triangleq \lim_{T\to\infty} \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} |y(t) - \hat{y}(t)|^2 \, dt \tag{29b}$$

between $y(t)$ and an LTI transformation of $x(t)$,

$$\hat{y}(t) = h(t) \otimes x(t), \tag{30b}$$

is given by

$$\min_h e_{yx} \triangleq e_{yx}^0 = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \hat{S}_y(f)[1 - |\hat{C}_{yx}(f)|^2] \, df, \tag{31b}$$

in which

$$\hat{C}_{yx}(f) \triangleq \frac{\hat{S}_{yx}(f)}{[\hat{S}_y(f)\hat{S}_x(f)]^{1/2}} . \tag{32b}$$

Although

$$|\hat{C}_{xy}(f)| \equiv |\hat{C}_{yx}(f)|, \tag{33}$$

$\hat{S}_x(f)$ and $\hat{S}_y(f)$ are unequal, in general, and therefore e_{xy}^0 and e_{yx}^0 are generally unequal. Consequently, neither e_{xy}^0 nor e_{yx}^0 alone is an appropriate measure of the degree to which $x(t)$ and $y(t)$ are related by an LTI transformation (without reference to the sense of the relation). However, since both e_{xy}^0 and e_{yx}^0 are characterized by the same function (33), then this function $|\hat{C}_{xy}(f)|$ is indeed an appropriate as well as convenient measure of the degree of coherence between $x(t)$ and $y(t)$, as explained in the following. First of all, $|\hat{C}_{xy}(f)|$ incorporates convenient normalization since it can be shown that

$$|\hat{C}_{xy}(f)| \leq 1 \tag{34}$$

for all $x(t)$ and $y(t)$ (because it is a correlation coefficient). Moreover,

$$|\hat{C}_{xy}(f)| \equiv 1 \tag{35}$$

if and only if there exists an $h(t)$ and $g(t)$ such that (28) is valid (at least in the mean-square sense), which indicates that $x(t)$ and $y(t)$ are *completely coherent*. Furthermore,

$$|\hat{C}_{xy}(f)| \equiv 0 \tag{36}$$

if and only if the minimum-mean-squared-error LTI transformations are identically zero,

$$g_0(t) \equiv h_0(t) \equiv 0, \tag{37}$$

in which case $x(t)$ and $y(t)$ are said to be *completely incoherent*. Because of the fundamental role that the spectral correlation coefficient $|\hat{C}_{xy}(f)|$ plays in characterizing the degree of coherence of $x(t)$ and $y(t)$, it is called the *spectral coherence function* for $x(t)$ and $y(t)$ and is often abbreviated to just *coherence function*. $\hat{C}_{xy}(f)$ is called the *complex coherence function*.[1]

[1] The complex coherence function is sometimes called the *coherency function*.

It can be shown (exercise 3) that the minimum-mean-squared-error LTI transformations denoted by $h_0(t)$ and $g_0(t)$ are specified by the transfer functions

$$G_0(f) = \frac{\hat{S}_{xy}(f)}{\hat{S}_y(f)} \tag{38a}$$

$$H_0(f) = \frac{\hat{S}_{yx}(f)}{\hat{S}_x(f)} \tag{38b}$$

and are called *Wiener filters* in honor of Norbert Wiener's pioneering work [Wiener 1949]. It follows from (32) and (38) that

$$|\hat{C}_{xy}(f)|^2 = G_0(f)H_0(f). \tag{39}$$

The most transparent interpretation of $|\hat{C}_{xy}(f)|$ as a measure of coherence can be obtained by considering the situation for which $x(t)$ and $y(t)$ are processed by an ideal band-pass filter that rejects all frequency content outside a small band of width Δ centered at f to produce the local sine wave components $x_{1/\Delta}(t, f)$ and $y_{1/\Delta}(t, f)$ with limit spectra

$$\hat{S}_{x_{1/\Delta}}(\nu) = \begin{cases} \hat{S}_x(\nu), & |\nu - f| \leq \Delta/2 \\ 0, & |\nu - f| > \Delta/2 \end{cases}$$

and (40)

$$\hat{S}_{y_{1/\Delta}}(\nu) = \begin{cases} \hat{S}_y(\nu), & |\nu - f| \leq \Delta/2 \\ 0, & |\nu - f| > \Delta/2. \end{cases}$$

Then the coherence between $x_{1/\Delta}(t, f)$ and $y_{1/\Delta}(t, f)$ can be shown (using (28) in Chapter 3 and (44)) to be

$$|\hat{C}_{xy_{1/\Delta}}(\nu)| = \begin{cases} |\hat{C}_{xy}(\nu)|, & |\nu - f| \leq \Delta/2 \\ 0, & |\nu - f| > \Delta/2. \end{cases} \tag{41}$$

Consequently, with $\Delta \to 0$ we see that for each value of f the degree of coherence of $x_{1/\Delta}(t, f)$ and $y_{1/\Delta}(t, f)$ is given by $|\hat{C}_{xy}(f)|$. Thus, *the spectral coherence function* $|\hat{C}_{xy}(f)|$ *is a frequency-decomposed measure of the degree to which* $x(t)$ *and* $y(t)$ *are related by an* LTI *transformation.*

System identification

A major application of the coherence function is to the problem of identification of dynamical systems. Consider a dynamical system (LTI transformation) with excitation and response denoted by $x(t)$ and $y(t)$,

$$y(t) = h(t) \otimes x(t). \tag{42}$$

It can be shown (exercise 2) that the limit cross correlation of $x(t)$ and $y(t)$ is

$$\hat{R}_{yx}(\tau) = \hat{R}_x(\tau) \otimes h(\tau). \tag{43}$$

Application of relation (21) to (43) yields the limit cross spectrum

$$\hat{S}_{yx}(f) = \hat{S}_x(f)H(f). \tag{44}$$

It follows from (44) that the transfer function of a system can be determined from the limit spectra,

$$H(f) = \frac{\hat{S}_{yx}(f)}{\hat{S}_x(f)}. \tag{45}$$

We see that this formula is identical to (38b), which specifies the minimum-mean-squared-error LTI transformation for *approximation* of an arbitrary $y(t)$ in terms of an arbitrary $x(t)$. Thus, given a system that might not be linear and/or might not be time-invariant, (45) yields an optimum[2] LTI approximating system.[3] The degree of nonlinearity and/or time-variation is measured by the mean-squared error of approximation (31b), which is specified by the coherence function and the limit spectrum $\hat{S}_y(f)$. Moreover, the integrand in (31b) is the spectral density of the approximation error (exercise 3).

Application of this system identification method to the problem of propagation-path identification is described in Appendix 7-1. Application of the coherence concept to the problem of detecting distant sources of energy propagating through frequency selective media is described in Appendix 7-2.

Partial coherence

When a time-series $y(t)$ is related to more than one other time-series, say $x_1(t), x_2(t), \ldots, x_N(t) \triangleq \{x_i(t)\}_1^N$, there is a problem with the direct use of the coherence function for determining the degree to which $y(t)$ is directly related to one of the N time-series $\{x_i(t)\}_1^N$, say $x_1(t)$, rather than indirectly related through its relationships with the others, $\{x_i(t)\}_2^N$. In particular, the effects of the other $N - 1$ time-series, if not properly removed, can yield either an erroneously high coherence or an erroneously low coherence. To avoid this problem, the effects on $x_1(t)$ and $y(t)$ of the other $N - 1$ time-series can be removed before the coherence is measured. This yields what is called the *partial coherence* between $x_1(t)$ and $y(t)$. In particular, the relationships (coherences) between $x_1(t)$ and $\{x_i(t)\}_2^N$ are removed by subtracting from $x_1(t)$ the best fitting (minimum-mean-squared-error) LTI transformation of $\{x_i(t)\}_2^N$ to obtain

$$x_1^0(t) \triangleq x_1(t) - \sum_{i=2}^{N} h_i^0(t) \otimes x_i(t), \tag{46a}$$

and similarly the relationships between $y(t)$ and $\{x_i(t)\}_2^N$ are removed to obtain

$$y^0(t) \triangleq y(t) - \sum_{i=2}^{N} g_i^0(t) \otimes x_i(t). \tag{46b}$$

[2] This system identification method is optimum only for system excitations that are purely stationary in the sense that they do not exhibit second-order periodicity (no sine waves in the lag products). Otherwise there is a better method that is tolerant to measurement noise on the excitation, as explained in Chapter 14, Part II.

[3] Although the actual excitation and response might be related by an LTI transformation, the measured excitation and response might not be due to additive measurement noise; see exercise 6.

Then the complex partial coherence between $x_1(t)$ and $y(t)$ is given by[4]

$$\hat{C}^0_{x_1y}(f) = \frac{\hat{S}_{x_1^0y^0}(f)}{[\hat{S}_{x_1^0}(f)\hat{S}_{y^0}(f)]^{1/2}}. \tag{47}$$

The vector of transfer functions in (46a) is given by (exercise 7)

$$\boldsymbol{H}_0(f) = [\hat{\boldsymbol{S}}_{\boldsymbol{x}}^{-1}(f)\hat{\boldsymbol{S}}_{\boldsymbol{x}x_1}(f)]^*, \tag{48a}$$

where $\hat{\boldsymbol{S}}_{\boldsymbol{x}}$ is the $(N-1) \times (N-1)$ spectral density matrix for the $N-1$ time-series $\{x_i(t)\}_2^N$, and $\hat{\boldsymbol{S}}_{\boldsymbol{x}x_1}$ is the vector of $N-1$ cross-spectral densities. For example, the ijth element of the matrix $\hat{\boldsymbol{S}}_{\boldsymbol{x}}(f)$ is the Fourier transform of the ijth element of the matrix $\hat{\boldsymbol{R}}_{\boldsymbol{x}}(\tau)$ defined by

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{R}}_{\boldsymbol{x}}(\tau) \triangleq \left\langle \boldsymbol{x}\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right)\boldsymbol{x}'\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right)^*\right\rangle; \tag{49}$$

this ijth element is

$$[\hat{\boldsymbol{R}}_{\boldsymbol{x}}(\tau)]_{ij} = \left\langle x_i\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right)x_j\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right)^*\right\rangle \triangleq \hat{R}_{x_ix_j}(\tau). \tag{50}$$

Similarly, the vector of transfer functions in (46b) is given by

$$\boldsymbol{G}_0(f) = [\hat{\boldsymbol{S}}_{\boldsymbol{x}}^{-1}(f)\hat{\boldsymbol{S}}_{\boldsymbol{x}y}(f)]^*. \tag{48b}$$

Furthermore, the spectral densities in (47) are given by (exercise 7)

$$\hat{S}_{y^0}(f) = \hat{S}_y(f) - \boldsymbol{G}_0'(f)\hat{\boldsymbol{S}}_{\boldsymbol{x}}(f)\boldsymbol{G}_0^*(f) \tag{51a}$$

$$\hat{S}_{x_1^0}(f) = \hat{S}_{x_1}(f) - \boldsymbol{H}_0'(f)\hat{\boldsymbol{S}}_{\boldsymbol{x}}(f)\boldsymbol{H}_0^*(f) \tag{51b}$$

$$\hat{S}_{x_1^0y^0}(f) = \hat{S}_{x_1y}(f) - \boldsymbol{H}_0'(f)\hat{\boldsymbol{S}}_{\boldsymbol{y}\boldsymbol{x}}^*(f) - \hat{\boldsymbol{S}}_{x_1\boldsymbol{x}}'(f)\boldsymbol{G}_0^*(f) + \boldsymbol{H}_0'(f)\hat{\boldsymbol{S}}_{\boldsymbol{x}}(f)\boldsymbol{G}_0^*(f). \tag{52}$$

Substitution of (48), (51), and (52) into (47) yields an explicit formula for the complex partial coherence between $x_1(t)$ and $y(t)$ in terms of only cross-spectral densities and spectral densities of $y(t)$ and $\{x_i(t)\}_1^N$.

As a specific example, consider the problem of determining the partial coherence of $y(t)$ and $x_1(t) = x(t)$, with the effect of $x_2(t) = w(t)$ removed. In this case, the vector quantities in (48) to (52) all reduce to scalars, and (47) to (52) yield the partial coherence

$$\hat{C}^0_{xy}(f) = \frac{\left[\hat{S}_{xy}(f) - \dfrac{\hat{S}_{xw}(f)\hat{S}_{yw}^*(f)}{\hat{S}_w(f)}\right]}{\left[\left(\hat{S}_x(f) - \dfrac{|\hat{S}_{xw}(f)|^2}{\hat{S}_w(f)}\right)\left(\hat{S}_y(f) - \dfrac{|\hat{S}_{yw}(f)|^2}{\hat{S}_w(f)}\right)\right]^{1/2}}. \tag{53}$$

The theory and methods of partial coherence are fundamental in the study of multiple-input-multiple-output systems in science and especially in engineering.

[4] The partial coherence is the spectral counterpart of the temporal partial correlation (PARCOR) coefficient, which arises naturally in the lattice implementation of the linear-prediction-error filter described in Chapter 9.

For example, a turbo-alternator used in a power system can be modeled as an approximately linear two-input, two-output system, where the inputs are the deviations from nominal values of the in-phase (active) power and quadrature (reactive) power, which measure the load on the turbo-alternator, and the outputs are the deviations from nominal values of the amplitude and frequency of the voltage generated at the stator terminals. The system-identification technique described in this section can be used together with the partial coherence method to determine experimentally a model of the turbo-alternator. Actual experimental data for this and other system identification problems are given in [Jenkins and Watts 1968]. It should be clarified that the system identification and modeling methods that employ spectrum estimates directly to estimate transfer functions are often used in practice primarily as a first stage, which is followed by a second stage of parametric model fitting using methods such as the autoregressive modeling methods described in Chapter 9. In this two-stage approach, the first stage is used mostly to determine an appropriate type of model, such as the MA, AR, or ARMA models described in Chapter 9.

In addition to the study of multiple-input-multiple-output systems, partial-coherence methodology is fundamental to many, if not most, experimental sciences where physical phenomena are investigated on the basis of relationships among measurements of a multiplicity of fluctuating quantities, including a particular quantity at various spatial locations, such as electromagnetic field strength, acoustical pressure, sea temperature, air humidity, atmospheric temperature, wind velocity, atmospheric pressure, and radiation intensity. Such techniques are used, for example, in astronomy, meteorology, oceanography, geology, and biology.

C. AUTOCOHERENCE AND PERIODICITY

In a natural development of concepts, this is an appropriate point at which to provide a brief introduction to the subject of Part II, which builds on the concepts of cross correlation, cross spectrum, and coherence for the purpose of studying random data from periodic phenomena. The limit autocorrelation of a time-series $x(t)$ is defined by

$$\hat{R}_x(\tau) \triangleq \lim_{T\to\infty} \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x_{+\tau/2}(t) x^*_{-\tau/2}(t)\, dt, \tag{54}$$

in which $x_\sigma(t)$ is the time-translate

$$x_\sigma(t) \triangleq x(t + \sigma) \tag{55}$$

for $\sigma = \pm\tau/2$. Thus, $\hat{R}_x(\tau)$ is the correlation of time-translates of $x(t)$. An analogous quantity is the correlation of frequency-translates

$$\lim_{T\to\infty} \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x^{+\alpha/2}(t)[x^{-\alpha/2}(t)]^*\, dt, \tag{56}$$

in which $x^\nu(t)$ is the frequency translate

$$x^\nu(t) \triangleq x(t) e^{-i2\pi\nu t} \tag{57}$$

for $\nu = \pm\alpha/2$. Let us combine (54) and (56) to obtain a correlation of time- and frequency-translates defined by

$$\hat{R}_x^{\alpha}(\tau) \triangleq \lim_{T\to\infty} \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x_{+\tau/2}^{+\alpha/2}(t)[x_{-\tau/2}^{-\alpha/2}(t)]^* \, dt, \tag{58a}$$

in which

$$x_{\sigma}^{\nu}(t) \triangleq x(t + \sigma)e^{-i2\pi\nu t}, \tag{58b}$$

for $\nu = \pm\alpha/2$ and $\sigma = \pm\tau/2$. It is easily shown (exercise 9) that this time-frequency limit autocorrelation is given by

$$\hat{R}_x^{\alpha}(\tau) = \lim_{T\to\infty} \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right) x^*\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right) e^{-i2\pi\alpha t} \, dt. \tag{59}$$

This generalized limit autocorrelation plays a fundamental role in the characterization of periodicity in random data. Specifically, we say that a real time-series $x(t)$ exhibits *second-order periodicity* (or is *cyclostationary*) with *cycle frequency* $\alpha \neq 0$ if and only if there exists a stable[5] *quadratic time-invariant* (QTI) transformation of $x(t)$, say

$$w(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} k(t - u, t - v)x(u)x(v) \, du \, dv, \tag{60}$$

where

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |k(u, v)| \, du \, dv < \infty, \tag{61}$$

that produces an additive sine wave component (spectral line) in $w(t)$ with frequency α. It can be shown (exercise 10) that $x(t)$ exhibits such second-order periodicity if and only if the time-frequency limit autocorrelation function $\hat{R}_x^{\alpha}$ is not identically zero.

If the frequency-translates in (57) are denoted by

$$\begin{aligned} y(t) &= x^{+\alpha/2}(t) \\ z(t) &= x^{-\alpha/2}(t), \end{aligned} \tag{62}$$

then (58) is recognized as a limit cross-correlation function,

$$\hat{R}_x^{\alpha}(\tau) \equiv \hat{R}_{yz}(\tau) \triangleq \lim_{T\to\infty} \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} y\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right) z^*\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right) dt. \tag{63}$$

The corresponding limit cross spectrum is denoted by $\hat{S}_x^{\alpha}(f)$,

$$\hat{S}_{yz}(\cdot) \triangleq F\{\hat{R}_{yz}(\cdot)\} \equiv F\{\hat{R}_x^{\alpha}(\cdot)\} \triangleq \hat{S}_x^{\alpha}(\cdot). \tag{64}$$

The limit spectra of $y(t)$ and $z(t)$ are easily shown to be

$$\begin{aligned} \hat{S}_y(f) &= \hat{S}_x\left(f + \frac{\alpha}{2}\right) \\ \hat{S}_z(f) &= \hat{S}_x\left(f - \frac{\alpha}{2}\right). \end{aligned} \tag{65}$$

[5] The QTI transformation (60) is said to be *stable* if the kernel $k(\cdot, \cdot)$ is absolutely integrable, (61).

It follows from (64)–(65) and definition (32) that the complex coherence function for $y(t)$ and $z(t)$ is given by

$$\hat{C}_{yz}(f) \equiv \frac{\hat{S}_x^{\alpha}(f)}{[\hat{S}_x(f + \alpha/2)\hat{S}_x(f - \alpha/2)]^{1/2}} \triangleq \hat{C}_x^{\alpha}(f). \tag{66}$$

This complex coherence between the two frequency-translates $x^{+\alpha/2}(t)$ and $x^{-\alpha/2}(t)$ of the single time-series $x(t)$ is called the *complex spectral autocoherence* (or *self-coherence*) of $x(t)$ at frequency α. It follows directly from the interpretation of $\hat{C}_{yz}(f)$ as a spectral correlation coefficient that $\hat{C}_x^{\alpha}(f)$ is the correlation coefficient for the spectral components of $x^{+\alpha/2}(t)$ and $x^{-\alpha/2}(t)$ at frequency f, which are precisely the same as the spectral components of $x(t)$ at the two frequencies $f + \alpha/2$ and $f - \alpha/2$. Thus, $f = \frac{1}{2}[(f + \alpha/2) + (f - \alpha/2)]$ is the *location* of the pair of frequencies $f \pm \alpha/2$, and $\alpha = (f + \alpha/2) - (f - \alpha/2)$ is the *separation*. To distinguish the complex autocoherence from the complex coherence $\hat{C}_{uv}(f)$ between two *arbitrary* waveforms $u(t)$ and $v(t)$, we can refine the terminology and call $\hat{C}_{uv}(f)$ the *complex spectral cross coherence* (or *mutual coherence*).

It follows directly from the preceding definitions that the autocoherence function is identically zero for all $\alpha \neq 0$ if and only if $x(t)$ contains no second-order periodicity. Also, since

$$|\hat{C}_x^{\alpha}(f)| \leq 1 \tag{67}$$

(see (34)), the magnitude of the complex autocoherence (often called simply the *autocoherence*) is a conveniently normalized measure of the *degree of second-order periodicity* in $x(t)$, or of the *degree of self-coherence* of $x(t)$. A real waveform $x(t)$ is said to be *completely (self-) coherent* at frequency α over a spectral band, say B, if and only if

$$|\hat{C}_x^{\alpha}(f)| \equiv 1, \qquad f \in B, \tag{68}$$

and it is said to be *completely (self-) incoherent* at frequency α over the band B if and only if

$$|\hat{C}_x^{\alpha}(f)| \equiv 0, \qquad f \in B. \tag{69}$$

Stated another way, (68) (or (69)) means that the pair of spectral bands $\{f \pm \alpha/2 : f \in B\}$ is completely coherent (or incoherent). Furthermore, it can be shown that the autocoherence function is appropriately invariant to LTI transformations of the time-series. That is, if

$$y(t) = x(t) \otimes h(t), \tag{70a}$$

and if

$$H(\nu) \neq 0, \qquad \nu = f \pm \alpha/2 \tag{70b}$$

so that the spectral components at $f \pm \alpha/2$ are not annihilated, then it follows from (28) in Chapter 3, (44), and (64)–(66) that

$$C_y^{\alpha}(f) = C_x^{\alpha}(f). \tag{71}$$

In conclusion, the complex autocoherence function plays a fundamental role in the theory of second-order periodicity that is developed in Part II.

Example

As an illustration of second-order periodicity, we consider the example of a real bandlimited amplitude- and phase-modulated sine wave,

$$\begin{aligned} x(t) &= a(t)\cos[\omega_0 t + \phi(t)] \\ &= c(t)\cos(\omega_0 t) - s(t)\sin(\omega_0 t), \end{aligned} \tag{72}$$

(see Part 5 of Section D, Chapter 3) for which $c(t)$ and $s(t)$ are bandlimited such that

$$\hat{S}_c(f) = \hat{S}_s(f) = 0, \qquad |f| > \frac{\omega_0}{2\pi}. \tag{73}$$

It is shown in Part II that if $c(t)$ and $s(t)$ contain no second-order periodicity, then the squared autocoherence for the waveform $x(t)$ is given by

$$|\hat{C}_x^{\alpha}(f)|^2 = \frac{[\hat{S}_c(f) - \hat{S}_s(f)]^2 + 4[\mathrm{Re}\{\hat{S}_{cs}(f)\}]^2}{[\hat{S}_c(f) + \hat{S}_s(f)]^2 - 4[\mathrm{Im}\{\hat{S}_{cs}(f)\}]^2} \tag{74}$$

for $\alpha = \pm\omega_0/\pi$ and is identically zero for all other $\alpha \neq 0$. It follows from (74) that $x(t)$ contains no second-order periodicity (is completely incoherent) if and only if the spectra of in-phase and quadrature components are identical,

$$\hat{S}_c(f) \equiv \hat{S}_s(f), \tag{75a}$$

and the real part of their cross-spectral density is identically zero,

$$\mathrm{Re}\{\hat{S}_{cs}(f)\} \equiv 0. \tag{75b}$$

At the other extreme, it can be shown that the degree of second-order periodicity at frequency $\alpha = \omega_0/\pi$ is maximum ($x(t)$ is completely coherent within the spectral band $|f| \leq \omega_0/\pi$) if and only if the in-phase and quadrature components are completely mutually coherent,

$$|\hat{C}_{cs}(f)| \equiv 1, \tag{76}$$

and either (75a) or (75b) is violated. As an example, if $s(t)$ is the Hilbert transform (see Appendix 3-1) of $c(t)$, then $x(t)$ is a *single-sideband,* amplitude-modulated sine wave,[6]

$$\hat{S}_x(f) = 0, \qquad |f| < \frac{\omega_0}{2\pi}, \tag{77}$$

and (76) is valid, but neither (75a) nor (75b) is violated. Therefore, $x(t)$ is completely incoherent. However, it can be shown that (76) holds and (75b) is violated if $x(t)$ has no phase modulation,

$$x(t) = a(t)\cos(\omega_0 t + \phi). \tag{78}$$

Thus, a bandlimited (see (73)) *double-sideband* amplitude-modulated sine wave is completely coherent within its spectral band.

D. MEASUREMENT METHODS

As explained in Chapter 4, statistical spectral measurements can be obtained from any of a variety of methods, and these various methods are either exactly

[6] The band below the center frequency $f_0 = \omega_0/2\pi$ is canceled out when $s(t)$ is a 90° phase-lagged version of $c(t)$.

or approximately equivalent to each other. In principle, the approximations can be made as accurate as desired by choosing Δt sufficiently large provided only that the limit autocorrelation exists. In particular, there are more than 10 alternative methods, which are described by diagrams in Figures 4-1, 4-2, 4-4, 4-6, and 4-7. Because of the fact that all the elements of cross-spectral analysis are straightforward generalizations of the elements of spectral analysis, as explained in Section A, all these alternative methods for obtaining statistical spectra generalize in a straightforward way for statistical cross spectra. Some of these generalizations are briefly described in this section. As explained in Chapter 4, Section A, although the approximations relating the spectra obtained from these various methods can in principle be made as accurate as desired by choosing Δt sufficiently large, it should be emphasized that in applications where Δt must be relatively small, the differences among statistical spectra obtained from different smoothing methods or different windows can be substantial, and the particular choice then becomes an important component of the design problem, as illustrated in Chapter 5, Section D. Although only analog methods are described here, the corresponding digital methods can easily be deduced from these and the digital methods based on the DFT described in Chapter 6, Section C.

1. Temporal and Spectral Smoothing

By analogy with the arguments in Chapter 3, Section B, and Chapter 4, Section A, it can be shown that all four of the temporally smoothed and spectrally smoothed statistical cross spectra (8)–(11) are approximately equal for $\Delta t \Delta f >> 1$.

2. Fourier Transformation of Tapered Cross Correlation

By analogy with the argument in Chapter 4, Section B, it is easily shown (exercise 10) that the two spectrally smoothed statistical cross spectra, of which (8) and (10) are examples, can be obtained by Fourier transformation of tapered cross correlations,

$$S_{xy_{\Delta t}}(t, \cdot)_{\Delta f} = F\{R_{xy_{\Delta t}}(t, \cdot)h_{1/\Delta f}(\cdot)\} \tag{79}$$

$$S_{xy}(t, \cdot)_{\Delta t, \Delta f} = F\{R_{xy}(t, \cdot)_{\Delta t}\, h_{1/\Delta f}(\cdot)\}, \tag{80}$$

for which $h_{1/\Delta f}$ is the inverse Fourier transform of the spectral smoothing window $H_{\Delta f}$ (see (2b) and (4b) in Chapter 4). Five alternative methods for obtaining the temporally smoothed cross periodogram or the spectrally smoothed cross periodogram are shown in Figure 7-1.

3. Cross-Wave Analysis

By analogy with the derivation of the expression (38) in Chapter 4 for the temporally smoothed spectrum, the temporally smoothed cross spectrum (9) can be reexpressed as

$$S_{xy_{1/\Delta f}}(t, f)_{\Delta t} = \Delta f\{[x(t) \otimes a^f_{1/\Delta f}(t)][y(t) \otimes a^f_{1/\Delta f}(t)]^*\} \otimes g_{\Delta t}(t), \tag{81}$$

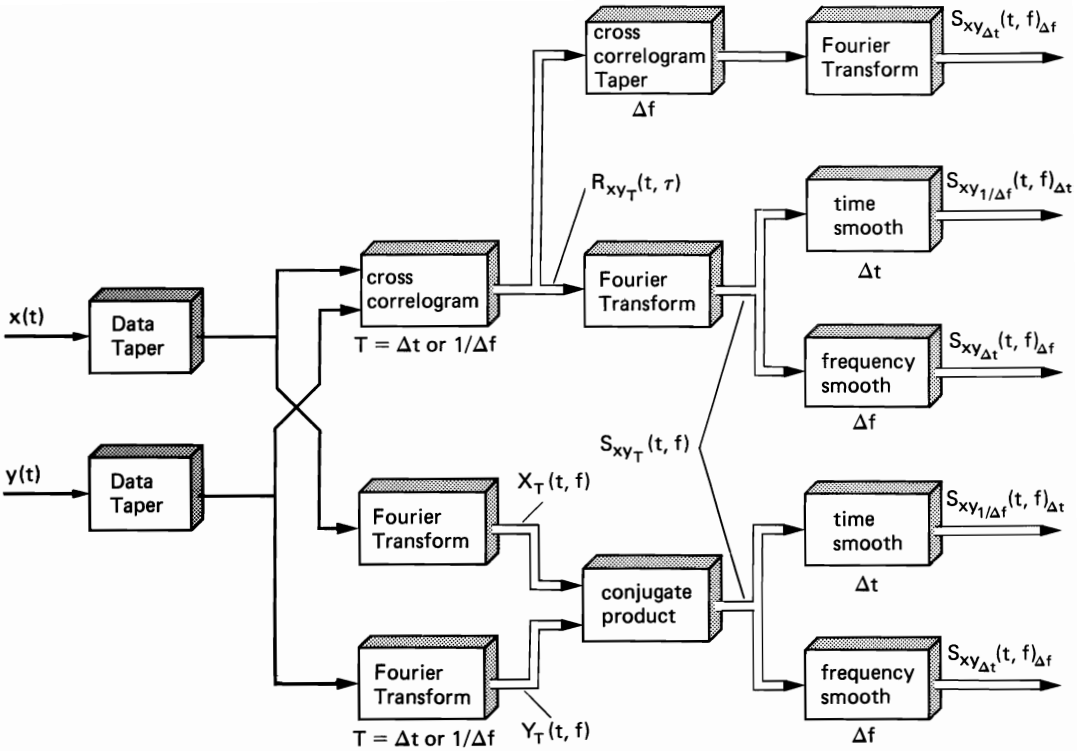


Figure 7-1 Five methods for obtaining statistical cross spectra based on the cross periodogram and cross correlogram.

in which

$$a^f_{1/\Delta f}(t) \triangleq a_{1/\Delta f}(t)e^{i2\pi ft}, \tag{82}$$

where $a_{1/\Delta f}(t)$ is the data-tapering aperture. The smoothing functions $g_{\Delta t}$ and $a^f_{1/\Delta f}$ can be interpreted as the impulse-response functions of filters with transfer functions

$$G_{1/\Delta t}(\cdot) = F\{g_{\Delta t}(\cdot)\}$$

and

$$A^f_{\Delta f}(\nu) = A_{\Delta f}(\nu - f),$$

where

$$A_{\Delta f}(\cdot) = F\{a_{1/\Delta f}(\cdot)\}. \tag{83}$$

$G_{1/\Delta t}$ represents a low-pass filter with bandwidth $1/\Delta t$, and $A^f_{\Delta f}$ represents a band-pass filter with bandwidth Δf centered at f. Consequently, the temporally smoothed statistical spectrum (9) can be obtained by band-pass filtering $x(t)$ and $y(t)$, multiplying the results, and low-pass filtering the product, as depicted in Figure 7-2(a). This cross-spectral analysis method is called *cross-wave analysis*. The condition $\Delta t \Delta f >> 1$ for substantial smoothing requires that the bandwidths of the input BPFs greatly exceed the bandwidth of the output LPF. It follows from

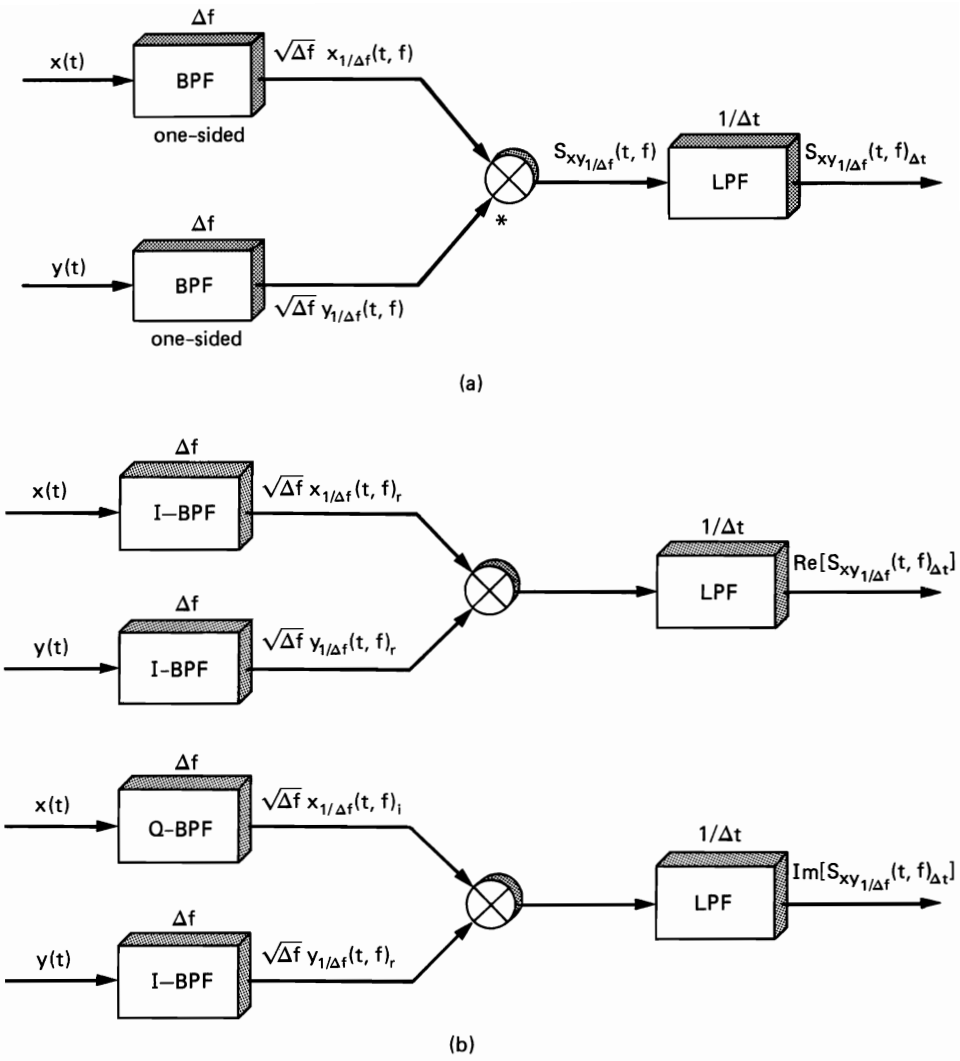


Figure 7-2 (a) Complex implementation of wave-analysis method for time-variant statistical cross-spectral analysis. (b) Approximate real implementation of wave-analysis method for time-variant statistical cross-spectral analysis of real time-series. (Impulse responses of I-BPF and Q-BPF are $a_{1/\Delta f}(t)\cos 2\pi ft$ and $a_{1/\Delta f}(t)\sin 2\pi ft$. Accuracy of approximation is high for $\Delta t \Delta f \gg 1$ and $|f|/\Delta f \gg 1$.)

a temporal-spectral smoothing equivalence, analogous to (11)–(17) in Chapter 3 (or from calculation of the mean, analogous to (56) in Chapter 5) that the squared magnitude of the transfer function of the BPF is the effective spectral smoothing window.

Formula (81) can be reexpressed as

$$S_{xy_{1/\Delta f}}(t, f)_{\Delta t} = \Delta f [x_{1/\Delta f}(t, f)\, y^*_{1/\Delta f}(t, f)] \otimes g_{\Delta t}(t), \tag{84}$$

in which the waveform

$$x_{1/\Delta f}(t,f) \triangleq x(t) \otimes a^{f}_{1/\Delta f}(t) \tag{85}$$

is the *local sine wave component* of $x(t)$.

By analogy with the derivation of approximation (56) in Chapter 4, it can be shown that the cross-wave analyzer for real time-series that employs complex (one-sided) band-pass filters can be approximated by the real implementation depicted in Figure 7-2(b). This is a close approximation for $|f|/\Delta f >> 1$ and $\Delta t \Delta f >> 1$, and the accuracy of approximation increases as these inequalities are strengthened. The statistical cross spectrum obtained from this real cross-wave analyzer can be expressed by

$$\begin{aligned} S_{xy_{1/\Delta f}}(t,f)_{\Delta t} \cong\ & 2\Delta f[x_{1/\Delta f}(t,f)_r y_{1/\Delta f}(t,f)_r] \otimes g_{\Delta t}(t) \\ & + i2\Delta f[x_{1/\Delta f}(t,f)_i y_{1/\Delta f}(t,f)_r] \otimes g_{\Delta t}(t), \qquad |f|/\Delta f >> 1,\ \Delta f \Delta t >> 1, \end{aligned} \tag{86}$$

in which the waveforms

$$x_{1/\Delta f}(t,f)_r = x(t) \otimes [a_{1/\Delta f}(t)\cos(2\pi f t)]$$

and

$$x_{1/\Delta f}(t,f)_i = x(t) \otimes [a_{1/\Delta f}(t)\sin(2\pi f t)] \tag{87}$$

are the real and imaginary parts of the complex local sine wave component (85). Unfortunately, the BPFs required in this real cross-wave analyzer exhibit in-phase and quadrature symmetries that render them problematic for analog implementation. This can be circumvented by using the demodulation method described next.

4. Cross Demodulation

By use of the relationship

$$X_T(t,f) = x_T(t,f)e^{-i2\pi f t} \tag{88}$$

between the *demodulate* $X_T(t,f)$ and the local sine wave component $x_T(t,f)$ of $x(t)$, the formula (84) for the temporally smoothed cross spectrum can be reexpressed as

$$S_{xy_{1/\Delta f}}(t,f)_{\Delta t} = \Delta f[X_{1/\Delta f}(t,f)Y^{*}_{1/\Delta f}(t,f)] \otimes g_{\Delta t}(t), \tag{89}$$

for which

$$X_{1/\Delta f}(t,f) \triangleq [x(t)e^{-i2\pi f t}] \otimes a_{1/\Delta f}(t). \tag{90}$$

We see from (89) and (90) that this statistical cross spectrum can be obtained by low-pass filtering the product of the complex demodulate for $x(t)$ and the conjugate complex demodulate for $y(t)$, and these demodulates can be obtained by low-pass filtering the product of the waveform with a complex sine wave, as depicted in Figure 7-3(a).

By representing the complex sine wave in (90) in terms of the real sine and cosine functions,

$$e^{i2\pi f t} = \cos(2\pi f t) + i\sin(2\pi f t),$$

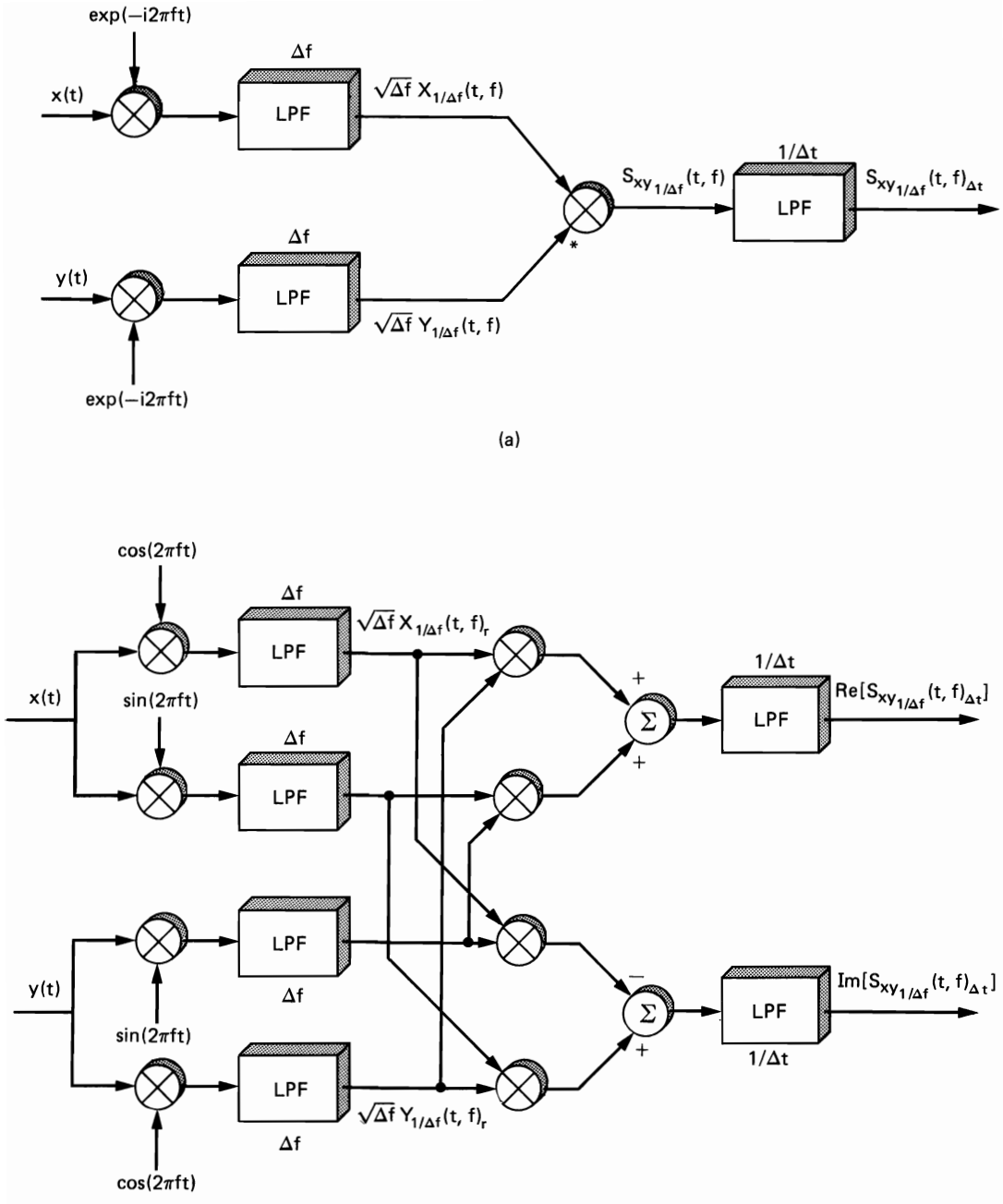


Figure 7-3 (a) Complex implementation of demodulation method for time-variant statistical cross-spectral analysis. (b) Real implementation of demodulation method for time-variant statistical cross-spectral analysis of real time-series.

the statistical cross spectrum (89) for a real time-series can be reexpressed as

$$S_{xy_{1/\Delta f}}(t,f)_{\Delta t} = \Delta f[X_{1/\Delta f}(t,f)_r Y_{1/\Delta f}(t,f)_r + X_{1/\Delta f}(t,f)_i Y_{1/\Delta f}(t,f)_i] \otimes g_{\Delta t}(t) + i\Delta f[X_{1/\Delta f}(t,f)_i Y_{1/\Delta f}(t,f)_r - X_{1/\Delta f}(t,f)_r Y_{1/\Delta f}(t,f)_i] \otimes g_{\Delta t}(t), \tag{91}$$

for which $X_{1/\Delta f}(t, f)_r$ and $X_{1/\Delta f}(t, f)_i$ are the real and imaginary parts of the demodulate,

$$X_{1/\Delta f}(t,f)_r = [x(t)\cos(2\pi ft)] \otimes a_{1/\Delta f}(t)$$
$$X_{1/\Delta f}(t,f)_i = [x(t)\sin(2\pi ft)] \otimes a_{1/\Delta f}(t). \tag{92}$$

It follows from (91) and (92) that the demodulation method has the real implementation shown in Figure 7-3(b).

It can be shown (exercise 12) that for a real time-series, the two terms in the real part of $S_{xy_{1/\Delta f}}(t,f)_{\Delta t}$ in (91) are approximately equal and the two terms in the imaginary part are approximately equal, except for opposite signs, provided that $\Delta t \Delta f >> 1$ and that $x(t)$ and $y(t)$ contain no additive, multiplicative, or other second-order periodicities (see Section C). Thus, we have

$$S_{xy_{1/\Delta f}}(t,f)_{\Delta t} \cong 2\Delta f[X_{1/\Delta f}(t,f)_r Y_{1/\Delta f}(t,f)_r] \otimes g_{\Delta t}(t) + i2\Delta f[X_{1/\Delta f}(t,f)_i Y_{1/\Delta f}(t,f)_r] \otimes g_{\Delta t}(t), \qquad \Delta t\Delta f >> 1, \tag{93}$$

and the accuracy of the approximation increases as $\Delta t \Delta f$ is increased. This reveals that half of the filters and modulators in Figure 7-3(b) can be deleted provided that $x(t)$ and $y(t)$ contain no second-order periodicity.

E. RESOLUTION, LEAKAGE, AND RELIABILITY

The resolution, leakage, and reliability properties of cross-spectrum measurements are very similar to the corresponding properties of spectrum measurements, which are described in Chapter 5. However, as revealed in this section, the coefficient of variation of a cross-spectrum measurement can be much larger than the coefficient of variation of a spectrum measurement, and resolution requirements can be more demanding.

1. Cross Periodogram

We consider first the cross periodogram $S_{xy_T}(t, f)$. It can be shown (exercise 13) that the temporal mean is given by

$$\text{mean}\{S_{xy_T}(t,f)\} = \hat{S}_{xy}(f) \otimes z_{1/T}(f), \tag{94}$$

and for zero-mean jointly Gaussian time-series $x(t)$ and $y(t)$, the temporal variance is given by

$$\text{var}\{S_{xy_T}(t,f)\} = [\hat{S}_x(f) \otimes z_{1/T}(f)][\hat{S}_y(f) \otimes z_{1/T}(f)] + \left| \frac{1}{T}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \hat{S}_{xy}(\nu) w_{1/T}(f-\nu) w_{1/T}(f+\nu)\, d\nu \right|^2 \tag{95}$$

and the temporal covariance is given by

$$
\begin{aligned}
K_S(f_1, f_2) &\triangleq \operatorname{cov}\{S_{xy_T}(t, f_1), S_{xy_T}(t, f_2)\} \\
&\triangleq \langle [S_{xy_T}(t, f_1) - \langle S_{xy_T}(t', f_1)\rangle][S_{xy_T}(t, f_2) - \langle S_{xy_T}(t', f_2)\rangle]^*\rangle \\
&= \frac{1}{T^2}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \hat{S}_x(\nu) w_{1/T}(f_1 - \nu) w_{1/T}(f_2 - \nu)\, d\nu \\
&\quad \times \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \hat{S}_y(\nu) w_{1/T}(f_1 - \nu) w_{1/T}(f_2 - \nu)\, d\nu \\
&\quad + \left|\frac{1}{T}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \hat{S}_{xy}(\nu) w_{1/T}(f_1 - \nu) w_{1/T}(f_2 + \nu)\, d\nu\right|^2. \qquad (96)
\end{aligned}
$$

If $1/T$ is sufficiently small for $w_{1/T}$ and $z_{1/T}$ to resolve the fine structure in $\hat{S}_x(f)$, $\hat{S}_y(f)$, and $\hat{S}_{xy}(f)$, then it follows from (94) and (95) that the temporal coefficient of variation of the cross periodogram is closely approximated by

$$
r_S \cong \frac{1}{|\hat{C}_{xy}(f)|^2} + \delta_{1/T}(f), \qquad (97)
$$

for which $\delta_{1/T}(f)$ is positive and less than or approximately equal to unity for all f, and satisfies

$$
\delta_{1/T}(f) \begin{cases} \cong 1, & |f| \ll 1/T \\ \ll 1, & |f| \gg 1/T. \end{cases} \qquad (98)
$$

Thus, when the coherence between $x(t)$ and $y(t)$ is small, the coefficient of variation can be much larger than unity, because of the relatively small value of the mean. It follows from (95) and (96) that if $1/T$ is sufficiently small for $w_{1/T}$ to resolve the fine structure in $\hat{S}_x$, $\hat{S}_y$, and $\hat{S}_{xy}$, then the temporal correlation coefficient is closely approximated by

$$
\rho_S \cong \delta_{1/T}(f_1 - f_2) + |\hat{C}_{xy}(f_1)|^2 \delta_{1/T}(f_1 + f_2) \qquad (99)
$$

for $|f_1| \gg 1/T$ and $|f_2| \gg 1/T$ and is therefore much smaller than unity for $|f_1 - f_2| \gg 1/T$ and $|f_1 + f_2| \gg 1/T$. Thus, like the periodogram, the cross periodogram is a highly erratic unreliable measurement of cross-spectral density.

2. Statistical Cross Spectra

In order to obtain a unified treatment for the large variety of statistical cross spectra that result from the various methods described in Section D, we shall employ the general representation from Section G of Chapter 4 and Section C of Chapter 5 for statistical spectra but generalized (by replacement of $x(t - u)x(t - v)$ with $x(t - u)y^*(t - v)$) for statistical cross spectra:

$$
w_f(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} k_f(u, v) x(t - u) y^*(t - v)\, du\, dv, \qquad (100a)
$$

where

$$
k_f(u, v) = m\left(\frac{u + v}{2}, v - u\right) e^{-i2\pi f(v-u)}. \qquad (100b)
$$

The kernel representor $m(t, \tau)$ and its double Fourier transform $M(\nu, \mu)$ are specified in Table 5-1 for the various methods described in Section D. The temporal mean of the statistical cross spectrum $w_f(t)$ is easily shown (exercise 14) to be given by

$$\text{mean}\{w_f(t)\} = \hat{S}_{xy}(f) \otimes E(f), \tag{101a}$$

where $E(f)$ is an effective spectral smoothing window given by

$$E(f) = M(0, -f), \tag{101b}$$

in which $M(\nu, \mu)$ is the double Fourier transform

$$M(\nu, \mu) \triangleq \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} m(t, \tau) e^{-i2\pi(\nu t - \mu\tau)}\, dt\, d\tau. \tag{102}$$

As discussed at length in Chapter 5, Section D, for statistical (auto) spectra, the resolution and leakage properties of a statistical cross spectrum are (assuming low variability) characterized by the effective spectral window $E(f)$ in terms of the width of its main lobe and the heights of its sidelobes. However, the resolution problem can be more crucial for cross spectral analysis because of the effect of time misalignment. For example, if $y(t) = x(t - a)$, then $\hat{S}_{xy}(f) = \hat{S}_x(f)e^{i2\pi af}$. Therefore, a main-lobe width narrower than $\Delta f = 1/a$ is required to avoid substantial attenuation due to averaging of the sinusoidal factor. Consequently, a large time misalignment a will result in a highly attenuated cross-spectrum estimate unless the effective spectral smoothing window has a very narrow main-lobe width.

If $x(t)$ and $y(t)$ are jointly Gaussian zero-mean time-series, then the limit spectral density for the centered time-series

$$z_f(t) \triangleq w_f(t) - \text{mean}\{w_f(t)\} \tag{103}$$

is given by

$$S_{z_f}(\nu) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |M(\nu, \mu - f)|^2\, \hat{S}_x\left(\mu + \frac{\nu}{2}\right)\hat{S}_y\left(\mu - \frac{\nu}{2}\right) d\mu + \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} M(\nu, \mu - f)M^*(\nu, -\mu - f)S_{xy*}\left(\mu + \frac{\nu}{2}\right)S^*_{xy*}\left(-\mu + \frac{\nu}{2}\right) d\mu. \tag{104}$$

This result can be derived by the method outlined in exercise 7, Chapter 5. (A derivation is given in [Brown 1987].) For the sake of generality, the representation (100) and the formulas (101) and (104) are given for complex-valued time-series $x(t)$ and $y(t)$ and analyzers $k_f(t, \tau)$. Thus, the results here apply, for example, to complex envelopes of band-pass time-series.

If the separable approximation

$$M(\nu, \mu) \cong G_{1/\Delta t}(\nu)H_{\Delta f}(-\mu), \tag{105}$$

which is often valid for $\Delta t \Delta f >> 1$ (see Chapter 4, Section G), is used, then the effective spectral smoothing window (101b) is simply

$$E(f) \cong G_{1/\Delta t}(0)H_{\Delta f}(f), \qquad \Delta t \Delta f >> 1, \tag{106}$$

and the limit spectrum of the centered statistical cross spectrum (104) reduces

to

$$S_{z_f}(\nu) \cong |G_{1/\Delta t}(\nu)|^2 \Bigg[\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |H_{\Delta f}(f-\mu)|^2 \, \hat{S}_x\left(\mu + \frac{\nu}{2}\right) \hat{S}_y\left(\mu - \frac{\nu}{2}\right) d\mu + \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} H_{\Delta f}(f-\mu) H^*_{\Delta f}(f+\mu) \hat{S}_{xy*}\left(\mu + \frac{\nu}{2}\right) \hat{S}^*_{xy*}\left(-\mu + \frac{\nu}{2}\right) d\mu \Bigg],$$

$$\Delta t \Delta f \gg 1. \tag{107}$$

The temporal variance of the statistical cross spectrum $w_f(t)$ is given by the integral of the limit spectrum (104), and if the width $1/\Delta t$ of $M(\nu, \mu)$ in ν is small enough and the corresponding sidelobes are low enough to resolve the fine structure in $\hat{S}_x$, $\hat{S}_y$, and $\hat{S}_{xy*}$, then this integral yields the close approximation

$$\text{var}\{w_f(t)\} \cong \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} [L(f, \mu) \hat{S}_x(\mu) \hat{S}_y(\mu) + N(f, \mu) \hat{S}_{xy*}(\mu) \hat{S}^*_{xy*}(-\mu)] \, d\mu, \qquad \frac{1}{\Delta t} < \Delta f^*, \tag{108a}$$

where Δf^* is the minimum of the resolution widths of $\hat{S}_x$, $\hat{S}_y$, and $\hat{S}_{xy*}$, and

$$L(f, \mu) \triangleq \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |M(\nu, \mu - f)|^2 \, d\nu \tag{108b}$$

$$N(f, \mu) \triangleq \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} M(\nu, \mu - f) M^*(\nu, -\mu - f) \, d\nu. \tag{108c}$$

Furthermore, if the width Δf of $M(\nu, \mu)$ in μ is also small enough and the corresponding sidelobes are low enough to resolve the fine structure in $\hat{S}_x$, $\hat{S}_y$, and $\hat{S}_{xy*}$, then (108) reduces to the close approximation

$$\text{var}\{w_f(t)\} \cong A \hat{S}_x(f) \hat{S}_y(f) + B(f) \, \text{Re}\{\hat{S}_{xy*}(f) \hat{S}^*_{xy*}(-f)\}, \qquad \frac{1}{\Delta t}, \Delta f < \Delta f^*, \tag{109a}$$

where

$$A \triangleq \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |M(\nu, \mu)|^2 \, d\nu \, d\mu \tag{109b}$$

$$B(f) \triangleq \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} M(\nu, \mu - f) M^*(\nu, -\mu - f) \, d\nu \, d\mu. \tag{109c}$$

It follows from the fact that $M(\nu, \mu)$ has width on the order of Δf in μ that $B(f)$ is negligible compared with A for $|f| \gg \Delta f$. Thus, for frequencies well beyond one resolution width from zero frequency, the second term in (109a) is negligible. Use of this approximation together with

$$\text{mean}\{w_f(t)\} \cong C \hat{S}_{xy}(f), \qquad \Delta f < \Delta f^*, \tag{110a}$$

where

$$C \triangleq \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} M(0, \mu) \, d\mu, \tag{110b}$$

yields the close approximation

$$r_{w_f} \triangleq \frac{\text{var}\{w_f(t)\}}{|\text{mean}\{w_f(t)\}|^2} \cong \frac{\eta}{\Delta t \Delta f} \frac{1}{|\hat{C}_{xy}(f)|^2}, \qquad \frac{1}{\Delta t}, \Delta f < \Delta f^*, |f| \gg \Delta f \tag{111a}$$

for the temporal coefficient of variation. In (111a), the reliability factor η is given by

$$\eta \triangleq \frac{\Delta t \Delta f \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |M(\nu, \mu)|^2 \, d\nu \, d\mu}{\left| \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} M(0, \mu) \, d\mu \right|^2}. \tag{111b}$$

This factor η is typically on the order of unity (see Chapter 5, Section D). If the separable approximation (105) is used, then η is approximated by

$$\eta \cong \left[\frac{\Delta t \, \|G_{1/\Delta t}\|^2}{|G_{1/\Delta t}(0)|^2} \right] \left[\frac{\Delta f \|h_{1/\Delta f}\|^2}{|h_{1/\Delta f}(0)|^2} \right]. \tag{111c}$$

In conclusion, a statistical cross spectrum is a reliable measurement only if

$$\Delta t \Delta f \gg \frac{1}{|\hat{C}_{xy}(f)|^2}. \tag{112}$$

For $x = y$, $\hat{C}_{xy}(f) \equiv 1$ and (112) reduces to Grenander's uncertainty condition for statistical (auto) spectra discussed in Chapter 5. But for statistical cross spectra for which $x \neq y$, it follows from the inequality $|\hat{C}_{xy}(f)| \leq 1$ that a larger resolution product can be needed. This is a result of the fact that even if the quantity $\hat{S}_{xy}(f)$ that is being estimated is small compared with $[\hat{S}_x(f)\hat{S}_y(f)]^{1/2}$, the variance of the estimate is still determined by the power levels of x and y and is therefore proportional to $\hat{S}_x(f)\hat{S}_y(f)$. Other than this potentially troublesome factor $1/[\hat{C}_{xy}(f)|$ in the coefficient of variation, the design trade-offs among the properties of resolution, leakage, and reliability for statistical cross spectra are the same as they are for statistical (auto) spectra, and the reader is therefore referred to Chapter 5, Section D, for an in-depth discussion of these trade-offs and the associated window-design problem. Nevertheless, when combining auto- and cross-spectrum estimates to obtain an estimate of the coherence function $\hat{C}_{xy}(f)$, additional problems can arise. Specifically, when estimating the coherence function using estimates of the individual spectra and cross spectrum such as

$$C_{xy_{\Delta t}}(t, f)_{\Delta f} \triangleq \frac{S_{xy_{\Delta t}}(t, f)_{\Delta f}}{[S_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, f)_{\Delta f} S_{y_{\Delta t}}(t, f)_{\Delta f}]^{1/2}}, \tag{113}$$

one must exercise considerably more care to minimize the effects of limited resolution, leakage, and variability than would be surmised from the discussions in Chapter 5, Section D. The reasons for this are twofold. In addition to the fact that variability of cross-spectrum estimates can be considerably more problematic, the nonlinear combination of three spectrum estimates in (113) can amplify the effects of leakage and limited resolution. An example that illustrates

this is given in exercise 17. The general problem is treated thoroughly in [Jenkins and Watts 1968], where it is explained that individual analysis of magnitude and phase and real and imaginary parts of cross-spectrum estimates and coherence function estimates provides a more complete picture of the measurement problem.

F. SUMMARY

In Section A, the elements of cross-spectral analysis are introduced, and it is explained that these are all generalizations of the elements of spectral analysis. These elements include the *cross periodogram, cross correlogram, finite-average cross correlation, pseudo–cross spectrum, limit cross correlation* and *limit cross spectrum,* and the various temporally smoothed and spectrally smoothed *statistical cross spectra*. It is also explained that whereas the limit spectrum gives the mean-square strength of spectral components, the limit cross spectrum gives the correlation of spectral components. In Section B, the *spectral coherence function,* which is the spectral correlation coefficient obtained from the limit cross spectrum, is introduced and is shown to be a measure of the degree to which two time-series are related by a linear time-invariant transformation. The two extremes of completely coherent and completely incoherent time-series are described, and the role of coherence in the identification of dynamical systems is explained. Then the concept of coherence is generalized to that of *partial coherence* for a pair of time-series that are coherent with other time-series. In Section C, the central role of spectral correlation (coherence) in the spectral analysis of random data from periodic phenomena is explained, and the *spectral autocoherence function* for a single time-series is defined, and is illustrated for a class of amplitude- and phase-modulated sine waves.

In Section D, the various analog methods for statistical spectral analysis that are described in Chapter 4 are generalized for statistical cross-spectral analysis. This includes the methods of *temporal and spectral smoothing, Fourier transformation of tapered cross correlations, cross-wave analysis,* and *cross demodulation* (Figures 7-1, 7-2, 7-3). In Section E, the results on *resolution, leakage,* and *reliability* that are developed in Chapter 5 for spectral analysis are generalized for cross-spectral analysis, and it is explained that the variability and resolution of cross-spectrum estimates can be even more problematic than for (auto) spectrum estimates.

Appendix 7-1 describes the use of cross-spectral analysis for propagation path identification. Appendix 7-2 explains the use of cross-spectral analysis for distant-source detection. Appendix 7-3 reveals the connection between the cross-correlation function, the cross-spectral density function, and the *cross-ambiguity function* for the problems of time- and frequency-difference-of-arrival estimation.

EXERCISES

1. **(a)** Show that the periodogram of the sum of two time-series (1) is given by (2).
   (b) Show that the correlogram of the sum of two time-series (1) is given by (6).
2. Consider an LTI transformation with impulse-response function $h(t)$, (42). Show that

the limit cross correlation and limit cross spectrum for the excitation and response are given by (43)–(44).

3. **(a)** To prove that the Wiener filter (38a) minimizes the mean-squared error (29a), proceed as follows. First show that

$$e_{xy} = \hat{R}_x(0) - \hat{R}_{x\hat{x}}(0) - \hat{R}_{\hat{x}x}(0) + \hat{R}_{\hat{x}}(0). \tag{114}$$

Then use

$$\hat{R}_x(0) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \hat{S}_x(f)\, df$$

together with (30a) and (44) to show that

$$e_{xy} = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} [\hat{S}_x(f) - \hat{S}_{xy}(f)G^*(f) - \hat{S}_{yx}(f)G(f) + \hat{S}_y(f)|G(f)|^2]\, df. \tag{115}$$

Finally, let

$$G(f) = G_0(f) + G_*(f),$$

for which $G_0(f)$ is the Wiener filter (38a) and $G_*(f)$ is arbitrary, and show that

$$e_{xy} = e_{xy}^0 + e_{xy}^*,$$

where e_{xy}^0 is given by (31a) (which is independent of $G_*(f)$), that $e_{xy}^* \geqslant 0$, and that $e_{xy}^* = 0$ if and only if $G_*(f) \equiv 0$. Then conclude that e_{xy} is minimum if and only if $G(f) \equiv G_0(f)$. (A detailed treatment of Wiener filtering including geometrical interpretations is given in [Gardner 1985].)

(b) To verify that the integrand in (31a) is the spectral density of the error $e(t) \triangleq x(t) - \hat{x}(t)$, determine $\hat{R}_e(\tau)$ and then use (30a), (38a), and (44) (with H replaced by G_0).

4. Derive the formula

$$|\hat{C}_{12}(f)| = \{[1 + \rho_1(f)][1 + \rho_2(f)]\}^{-1/2}, \tag{116a}$$

in which

$$\rho_i(f) = \frac{\hat{S}_{n_i}(f)}{|H_i(f)|^2 \hat{S}_x(f)}, \qquad i = 1, 2, \tag{116b}$$

for the mutual coherence between the two time-series

$$\begin{aligned} y_1(t) &= h_1(t) \otimes x(t) + n_1(t) \\ y_2(t) &= h_2(t) \otimes x(t) + n_2(t), \end{aligned} \tag{117}$$

for which $n_1(t)$, $n_2(t)$, and $x(t)$ are mutually uncorrelated.

5. Consider two time-series $x(t)$ and $y(t)$ related by

$$y(t) = x(t) \otimes h(t) + n(t),$$

for which $x(t)$ and $n(t)$ are uncorrelated and have zero means ($\hat{R}_{xn} \equiv 0$), the Fourier transform of $h(t)$ is given by

$$H(f) = \begin{cases} 0, & |f| \leqslant B \\ 1, & |f| > B, \end{cases}$$

and the limit spectrum of $n(t)$ is given by

$$\hat{S}_n(f) = \begin{cases} N_0, & |f| \leqslant B \\ 0, & |f| > B. \end{cases}$$

Determine the mutual coherence of $x(t)$ and $y(t)$.

6. **(a)** Consider the problem of identifying a linear time-invariant system (estimating its

transfer function), using measurements $z(t) = x(t) + n(t)$ and $w(t) = y(t) + m(t)$ of the excitation $x(t)$ and the response $y(t)$ that are corrupted by measurement noise $n(t)$ and $m(t)$. Assume that $n(t)$ and $m(t)$ are uncorrelated with each other and with $x(t)$ and $y(t)$. Determine an explicit formula in terms of the ratio $\rho_1(f) = \hat{S}_n(f)/\hat{S}_x(f)$ for the error between the transfer function $H_0(f)$ and its estimate $H(f)$, normalized by $H_0(f)$, based on the estimation formula $H(f) = \hat{S}_{wz}(f)/\hat{S}_z(f)$. Then, if possible, simplify the general result for the two special cases of no input noise ($n(t) \equiv 0$) and no output noise ($m(t) \equiv 0$).

(b) Determine an explicit formula for the coherence magnitude $|\hat{C}_{zw}|$ in terms of the ratios $\rho_1(f) = \hat{S}_n(f)/\hat{S}_x(f)$ and $\rho_2(f) = \hat{S}_m(f)/|H_0(f)|^2\hat{S}_x(f)$ for the general case and two special cases described in (a).

7. (a) To verify the spectral density formulas (51) and (52), use (46) and determine $\hat{R}_{y\theta}(\tau)$, $\hat{R}_{x\theta}(\tau)$, and $\hat{R}_{x\theta y\theta}(\tau)$, and then evaluate the Fourier transforms using the convolution theorem.

(b) Generalize the procedure outlined in exercise 3, from scalar-filtering to vector-filtering, to derive the vector Wiener filter (48).

8. Consider three related processes, $x(t)$, $y(t)$, and $w(t)$, and show that the complex partial coherence function for $x(t)$ and $y(t)$ is given by (53).

9. Show that the generalized autocorrelation (58) yields the periodicity parameter (59).

10. The strength of an additive sine wave component in $w(t)$ at frequency α is given by

$$\hat{M}_w^\alpha \triangleq \lim_{T\to\infty} \frac{1}{T}\int_{-T/2}^{T/2} w(t)e^{-i2\pi\alpha t}\,dt. \tag{118a}$$

Show that, with $w(t)$ given by the QTI transformation (60), $\hat{M}_w^\alpha$ is given by

$$\hat{M}_w^\alpha = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} k(u, v)\hat{R}_x^\alpha(u - v)e^{-i\pi\alpha(u+v)}\,du\,dv. \tag{118b}$$

Therefore, it can be concluded that there exists a QTI transformation $k(u, v)$ such that $\hat{M}_w^\alpha$ is not zero (the QTI transformation generates a spectral line) if and only if $\hat{R}_x^\alpha(\tau)$ is not identically zero.

11. Verify the equivalence (79) between statistical cross spectra by using the following generalization of (8):

$$S_{xy_{\Delta t}}(t, f)_{\Delta f} \triangleq \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} S_{xy_{\Delta t}}(t, f - \nu)H_{\Delta f}(\nu)\,d\nu.$$

12. Generalize the approach outlined in exercise 4 in Chapter 4 to show that (93) is a close approximation to (91) for the demodulation cross-spectrum analyzer for real time-series. Do this by showing that the two terms in the real part of (91) are approximately equal and the two terms in the imaginary part are approximately equal, except for opposite signs, provided that $\Delta t\Delta f \gg 1$, and that

$$\lim_{T\to\infty} \frac{1}{T}\int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right)y^*\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right)e^{-i2\pi\alpha t}\,dt = 0 \qquad \text{for all } \alpha \neq 0,$$

which indicates the absence of second-order periodicity.

13. (a) Show that the mean of the cross periodogram is given by (94).

(b) Show that the covariance of the cross periodogram is given by (96) for zero-mean jointly Gaussian time-series $x(t)$ and $y(t)$. *Hint:* Follow a procedure analogous to that outlined in the hint for exercise 2(b) in Chapter 5 with the following Isserlis' formula:

$$\langle x(t+t_1)y^*(t+t_2)x^*(t+t_3)y(t+t_4)\rangle = \hat{R}_{xy}(t_1-t_2)\hat{R}_{yx}(t_4-t_3) + \hat{R}_x(t_1-t_3)\hat{R}_y(t_4-t_2) + \hat{R}_{xy^*}(t_1-t_4)\hat{R}_{y^*x}(t_2-t_3). \quad (119)$$

(c) Use (96) to obtain the formula (95) for the variance of the cross periodogram.

14. (a) Show that the mean of the statistical cross spectrum (100) is given by (101).

(b) Show that, for real-valued zero-mean jointly Gaussian time-series $x(t)$ and $y(t)$ and a real even spectral window $H_{\Delta f}$, the variance of the spectrally smoothed periodogram is given by

$$\text{var}\{S_{xy_{\Delta t}}(t,f)_{\Delta f}\} = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} K_S(\nu_1,\nu_2)H_{\Delta f}(f-\nu_1)H_{\Delta f}(f-\nu_2)\,d\nu_1\,d\nu_2. \quad (120)$$

Then verify the approximation

$$\text{var}\{S_{xy_{\Delta t}}(t,f)_{\Delta f}\} \cong \frac{1}{\Delta t}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty}\hat{S}_x(\nu)\hat{S}_y(\nu)H_{\Delta f}^2(f-\nu)\,d\nu + \frac{1}{\Delta t}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty}[\hat{S}_{xy}(\nu)]^2H_{\Delta f}(f-\nu)H_{\Delta f}(f+\nu)\,d\nu, \qquad \Delta t\Delta f \gg 1. \quad (121)$$

Hint: Follow a procedure analogous to that outlined in the hint for exercise 13 in Chapter 5.

(c) Show that (121) corroborates the general formula (108), by use of approximation (105).

15. Derive formula (104) for the limit spectral density of any statistical cross spectrum of the form (100) for jointly Gaussian zero-mean time-series $x(t)$ and $y(t)$. *Hint:* See exercise 7 in Chapter 5.

16. (a) Determine $M(\nu,\mu)$ in (100) and (102) for each of the methods of cross-spectrum estimation corresponding to the auto-spectrum estimation methods enumerated in exercise 9 of Chapter 5.

(b) Use formula (101b) to determine the effective spectral smoothing window for each case in (a). Comment on the relationship between the effective spectral smoothing windows you obtain here and those obtained in exercise 9 in Chapter 5.

17. Use formula (101a) to show that the estimated coherence function, for example,

$$|C_{yx_{\Delta t}}(t,f)_{\Delta f}|^2 \triangleq \frac{|S_{yx_{\Delta t}}(t,f)_{\Delta f}|^2}{S_{y_{\Delta t}}(t,f)_{\Delta f}S_{x_{\Delta t}}(t,f)_{\Delta f}}, \quad (122)$$

for coherent time-series, $y(t) = h(t) \otimes x(t)$, can differ substantially from unity due to bias (leakage and limited resolution) only, regardless of how reliable these estimates are (i.e., regardless of how small their coefficients of variation are). Do this by substituting the means of the spectrum estimates in place of the estimates themselves in (122) and showing that even though

$$|\hat{C}_{yx}(f)|^2 = \frac{|\hat{S}_{yx}(f)|^2}{\hat{S}_y(f)\hat{S}_x(f)} \equiv 1,$$

$|C_{yx_{\Delta t}}(t,f)_{\Delta f}|$ can be much smaller than unity. Let $\hat{S}_x(f) \equiv 1$ for simplicity and assume that $E(f)$ has unity area to obtain

$$|C_{yx_{\Delta t}}(t,f)_{\Delta f}|^2 \cong \frac{|H(f) \otimes E(f)|^2}{|H(f)|^2 \otimes E(f)}.$$

Hint: To show the desired result by example, let $H(f)$ be flat except for a rectangle notch 50% deep and $2\Delta f$ wide, and let $E(f)$ be a rectangle of width Δf. Verify that this results in as much as 20% error, due entirely to limited resolution (no leakage).

18. Consider N propagation paths with impulse-response functions $\{h_i\}_1^N$ of the form

$$h_i(t) = g_i(t - T_i),$$

where

$$g_i(t) = 0, \qquad |t| > V_i$$

and

$$\min_{j \neq k} |T_j - T_k| > T_* + \max_i \{V_i\}.$$

This indicates that the differences between all pairs of propagation delays $\{T_i\}$ exceed the time-dispersive spreads $\{V_i\}$ plus a constant T_*. Let T_* exceed twice the correlation width τ_* of a common source of energy $x(t)$,

$$T_* > 2\tau_*,$$

where

$$\hat{R}_x(\tau) = 0, \qquad |\tau| > \tau_*.$$

Show that the cross correlation of the source and response

$$y(t) = \sum_{i=1}^{N} h_i(t) \otimes x(t) = \sum_{i=1}^{N} y_i(t) \tag{123}$$

decomposes into the sum of N nonoverlapping terms,

$$\hat{R}_{yx}(\tau) = \sum_{i=1}^{N} h_i(\tau) \otimes \hat{R}_x(\tau) = \sum_{i=1}^{N} \hat{R}_{y_i x}(\tau) \tag{124}$$

in which

$$R_{y_i x}(\tau) R_{y_j x}(\tau) \equiv 0, \qquad i \neq j. \tag{125}$$

19. Consider the model (1) for TDOA described in Appendix 7-3. Show that the limit cross-correlation function is given by (2) in Appendix 7-3.

20. The limit autocorrelation for a complex-valued time-series $x(t)$ is defined by

$$\hat{R}_x(\tau) \triangleq \lim_{T \to \infty} \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right) x^*\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right) dt, \tag{126}$$

and the limit spectral density is given by the Wiener relation

$$\hat{S}_x(f) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \hat{R}_x(\tau) e^{-i2\pi f\tau} \, d\tau.$$

Prove that $\hat{S}_x(f)$ is real-valued but is not necessarily an even function,

$$\hat{S}_x^*(f) = \hat{S}_x(f) \neq \hat{S}_x(-f).$$

21. **(a)** It is desired to estimate the cross spectrum for two real-valued time-series $x(t)$ and $y(t)$, which are modeled as

$$y(t) = x(t) \otimes h(t) + n(t),$$

where $\hat{S}_x(f) \equiv 1$ and $\hat{S}_n(f) \cong 10|H(f)|^2$, $n(t)$ and $x(t)$ are uncorrelated, and $H(f)$ has resolution width of $\Delta f^* = 100$ Hz. If it is desired to resolve $\hat{S}_{xy}(f)$ properly and to maintain a coefficient of variation of approximately $\frac{1}{10}$, then what is the minimum amount Δt of data needed?

(b) For (a) specify a particular cross-spectrum estimation method, and specify all required window shapes and widths.

22. Consider the problem of filtering the noisy signal

$$y(t) = x(t) + n(t)$$

in order to suppress the noise $n(t)$. Assume that the noise is white with intensity N_0 and the signal has limit autocorrelation function given by

$$\hat{R}_x(\tau) = S_0 e^{-f_0|\tau|}.$$

Determine an explicit formula in terms of only S_0, N_0, and f_0 for the transfer function of the Wiener filter that minimizes the mean-squared error between the filtered signal

$$\hat{x}(t) = y(t) \otimes g(t)$$

and the desired signal $x(t)$.

APPENDIX 7-1

Propagation-Path Identification

Consider a linear time-invariant propagation path for energy, such as acoustical waves traveling from one point to another, that is a parallel combination of separate paths such that the input-output relation is of the form

$$y(t) = \sum_{i=1}^{N} x(t) \otimes h_i(t) \triangleq \sum_{i=1}^{N} y_i(t), \tag{1}$$

where h_i is the impulse-response function for the ith path. In the event that the propagation delays for these N paths are quite distinct so that the differences between all delays exceed the time-dispersive spread for each path plus twice the correlation width of the source data x, then the transfer functions for each of the paths can be identified from the overall input-output measurements. Specifically, in this case it can be shown (exercise 18) that the cross correlation $\hat{R}_{yx}$ decomposes into the sum

$$\hat{R}_{yx}(\tau) = \sum_{i=1}^{N} h_i(\tau) \otimes \hat{R}_x(\tau) = \sum_{i=1}^{N} \hat{R}_{y_i x}(\tau) \tag{2}$$

of N nonoverlapping terms. Thus, once the individual terms in (2) have been separated, the transfer functions can be determined from the formula

$$H_i(f) = \frac{\hat{S}_{y_i x}(f)}{\hat{S}_x(f)}. \tag{3}$$

However, the accuracy of the LTI model for each path cannot be assessed by using the coherence functions

$$\hat{C}_{y_i x}(f) = \frac{\hat{S}_{y_i x}(f)}{\hat{S}_{y_i}(f)\hat{S}_x(f)}, \tag{4}$$

because the ith component of the response y_i is not accessible. All N components are superimposed, and therefore $\hat{S}_{y_i}$ cannot be measured. This and related approaches to propagation path identification are treated in [Bendat and Piersol 1980].

APPENDIX 7-2
Distant-Source Detection

We consider an important application of the coherence concept to the problem of detecting the presence of a distant source of energy propagating through a medium, based on noisy measurements of disturbance in the medium. In particular, we consider the ocean as a medium, and we consider detection of a distant underwater disturbance such as an earthquake or storm center [Munk et al. 1965].

Suppose there are two recording stations, separated by a considerable distance, at which measurements of ocean-wave amplitudes, $y_1(t)$ and $y_2(t)$, are taken. Suppose also that all contributions to $y_1(t)$ and $y_2(t)$ due to the distant source can be attributed to a single waveform $x(t)$ representing an idealized point source. Let $y_1(t)$ and $y_2(t)$ be modeled by

$$y_1(t) = h_1(t) \otimes x(t) + n_1(t)$$
$$y_2(t) = h_2(t) \otimes x(t) + n_2(t),$$

for which $n_1(t)$ and $n_2(t)$ are uncorrelated with $x(t)$ and are due primarily to local disturbance around each of the two recording stations, so that $n_1(t)$ and $n_2(t)$ are uncorrelated with each other. For this situation, it can be shown (exercise 4) that the coherence of $y_1(t)$ and $y_2(t)$ is given by

$$|\hat{C}_{12}(f)| = \{[1 + \rho_1(f)][1 + \rho_2(f)]\}^{-1/2},$$

where $\rho_1(f)$ is the ratio of noise and signal spectral densities

$$\rho_i(f) \triangleq \frac{\hat{S}_{n_i}(f)}{|H_i(f)|^2 \hat{S}_x(f)}.$$

Since the power in locally generated seawaves, such as $n_1(t)$ and $n_2(t)$, generally occupies a higher frequency range than that of waves that have traveled a long distance, such as $h_1(t) \otimes x(t)$ and $h_2(t) \otimes x(t)$ (because $h_1(t)$ and $h_2(t)$ represent low-pass filters), then we should have

$$\rho_1(f_l) \ll \rho_1(f_h)$$
$$\rho_2(f_l) \ll \rho_2(f_h)$$

for f_l in the low-frequency range and f_h in the high-frequency range. Consequently

$$|\hat{C}_{12}(f_l)| \gg |\hat{C}_{12}(f_h)|.$$

Moreover, if

$$\rho_1(f_l) \ll 1$$
$$\rho_2(f_l) \ll 1,$$

then

$$|\hat{C}_{12}(f_l)| \cong 1.$$

This would hold true if a distant source $x(t)$ were present. If not, then $\hat{S}_x(f) \to 0$ and, therefore,

$$|\hat{C}_{12}(f)| \longrightarrow \frac{|\hat{S}_{n_1 n_2}(f)|}{[\hat{S}_{n_1}(f)\hat{S}_{n_2}(f)]^{1/2}} = 0$$

since $n_1(t)$ and $n_2(t)$ are uncorrelated. Hence, a large value of coherence in the low frequency range indicates the presence of a distant source.

Of course, in practice our recordings are limited to finite time intervals, so that we must use statistical inference methods for estimation of the limit spectra and cross spectra of $y_1(t)$ and $y_2(t)$, as described in Section D.

Other energy source problems, such as source location, for which statistical spectral analysis is useful, are treated in [Bendat and Piersol 1980]. See also Appendix 7-3, and for improved methods that are tolerant to noise and interference see Chapter 14 in Part II.

APPENDIX 7-3

Time- and Frequency-Difference-of-Arrival Estimation

In many application areas such as radar and sonar, a fundamental problem is that of estimating the relative delay and/or relative frequency shift (doppler) between two corrupted versions, say $y(t)$ and $z(t)$, of a time-series, $x(t)$. For example, if $y(t)$ and $z(t)$ are the signals received by a pair of sensors on which a signal wavefront is impinging, then the planar direction of arrival of the wavefront can be determined from the relative delay of these two signals. If $y(t)$ and $z(t)$ are modeled by

$$y(t) = x(t - t_y) + n(t) \tag{1a}$$
$$z(t) = x(t - t_z) + m(t), \tag{1b}$$

where $n(t)$ and $m(t)$ are uncorrelated zero-mean measurement noises, then it follows (exercise 19) that the cross correlation of y and z is given by

$$\hat{R}_{yz}(\tau) = \hat{R}_x(\tau + t_z - t_y). \tag{2}$$

Consequently the *time-difference of arrival* (TDOA) of $y(t)$ and $z(t)$ can be estimated by measuring the cross correlogram

$$R_{yz_T}(\tau) = \frac{1}{T}\int_{-(T-|\tau|)/2}^{(T-|\tau|)/2} y\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right) z\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right) dt \tag{3}$$

and searching over the lag parameter τ for a peak. The accuracy of estimation is directly related to the width of the autocorrelation $\hat{R}_x$. The narrower (more peaked) $\hat{R}_x$ is, the more accurately the shift $t_z - t_y$ in the peak can be determined.

Similarly, if $y(t)$ and $z(t)$ represent noisy measurements of Doppler-shifted versions of $x(t)$, then the cross spectrum is given by

$$\hat{S}_{yz}(f) = \hat{S}_x(f + f_z - f_y)\delta_{f_z - f_y}. \tag{4}$$

This is an approximation that is accurate if the width of $\hat{S}_x$ is narrow relative to its center frequency (otherwise the doppler effect is not simply a frequency shift.) The Kronecker delta,

$$\delta_{f_z - f_y} = \begin{cases} 1, & f_z = f_y \\ 0, & f_z \neq f_y, \end{cases} \tag{5}$$

reflects the fact that frequency-shifted versions of a given stationary time-series $x(t)$ are uncorrelated with each other (see Chapter 5). It follows from (4) that the *frequency-difference of arrival* (FDOA) of $y(t)$ and $z(t)$ cannot be determined simply by measurement of the cross spectrum, since the limit cross spectrum vanishes for all nonzero FDOA. However, if $y(t)$ and $z(t)$ are frequency-shifted by $+\nu/2$ and $-\nu/2$, respectively, then when $\nu = f_z - f_y$ the cross spectrum will not vanish. Hence, the FDOA can be estimated by measuring the cross correlogram at zero lag as a function of the local frequency-shift, ν, and finding the peak of this function.

This FDOA estimation method can be combined with the TDOA estimation method. If the correlogram estimate is used, then the joint estimation procedure is described by

$$\max_{\nu,\tau} A(\tau, \nu), \tag{6a}$$

where

$$A(\tau, \nu) \triangleq \left| \frac{1}{T} \int_{-(T-|\tau|)/2}^{(T-|\tau|)/2} \gamma_y\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right)\gamma_z^*\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right)e^{i2\pi\nu t}\, dt \right|, \tag{6b}$$

which is the cross correlogram magnitude at zero lag for the two time- and frequency-shifted time-series

$$\tilde{y}(t) \triangleq \gamma_y\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right)e^{i2\pi(\nu/2)(t+\tau/2)} \tag{7a}$$

$$\tilde{z}(t) \triangleq \gamma_z\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right)e^{-i2\pi(\nu/2)(t-\tau/2)}, \tag{7b}$$

where γ_y and γ_z are the complex envelope representations (relative to some frequency f_0) of $y(t)$ and $z(t)$ (see Appendix 3-1),

$$A(\tau, \nu) = \left| \frac{1}{T} \int_{-(T-|\tau|)/2}^{(T-|\tau|)/2} \tilde{y}(t)\tilde{z}^*(t)\, dt \right| = \left| R_{\tilde{y}\tilde{z}_\tau}(0) \right|. \tag{8}$$

The function $A(\tau, \nu)$ is the *cross-ambiguity function* from radar theory [Rihaczek 1969]. The reason that the complex envelopes of the time-series are used in place of the time-series themselves is that the actual Doppler effect shifts the positive frequencies in one direction and the negative frequencies in the other.

In order to model this frequency-shift simply as a multiplication by a complex sine wave (which shifts *all* frequencies in the same direction), the negative frequencies must first be discarded (as done in the formation of the complex envelope (see Appendix 3-1)).

8

TIME-VARIANT SPECTRAL ANALYSIS

A. GENERAL VARIATION

As explained in Chapter 1, spectral analysis is especially appropriate in principle only for time-invariant linear transformations of data and for data from time-invariant phenomena. But, from a pragmatic point of view, we expect spectral analysis to be useful for time-variant linear transformations and for data from time-variant phenomena, provided that time variation is sufficiently slow. The purpose of this chapter is to clarify why time variation must be slow and how slow it must be. Only the situation in which the time-series data alone is to be used for spectral analysis is considered. That is, the model-fitting methods described in Chapter 9, which typically require additional information for the purpose of model-type selection, are omitted from consideration.

1. The Physical Spectrum

Regardless of the phenomenon or the data under study, the time-variant periodogram introduced in Chapter 2, Section A, is the normalized squared magnitude of a time-variant density of spectral components (namely, the time-variant finite-time complex spectrum; see (2b) in Chapter 2), and is therefore the most natural definition and the only generally appropriate definition of a nonstatistical time-variant spectrum. As explained in Chapter 5, Section C, if there is no ensemble of time-series available from the phenomenon of interest, then the degree of randomness of this spectrum can be reduced (reliability increased) only by temporal or spectral smoothing, with the result that temporal and spectral resolution are severely constrained by *Grenander's uncertainty condition,* (89) in Chapter 5,

$$\Delta t \Delta f \gg 1, \tag{1}$$

which is a necessary and sufficient condition (for a broad class of time-series data) for high reliability. Thus, the reliable resolvability of time variation in spectral characteristics of a phenomenon is limited by a temporal resolution width Δt that must greatly exceed the reciprocal of the spectral resolution width Δf. On the other hand, if an ensemble of replicas of a time-series (not time-translates of a single time-series but rather genuine random samples as would be obtained, for example, from replicating an experiment) from a given time-variant phenomenon is available, then as explained in Chapter 5, Section A, the degree of randomness can be reduced by ensemble averaging with no degradation in either temporal or spectral resolution. Thus, resolvability is limited by only *Gabor's uncertainty principle,* (88) in Chapter 5,

$$\Delta t \Delta f \cong 1, \tag{2}$$

which applies to the time-variant periodogram, whether or not it is ensemble-averaged. Furthermore, even when an ensemble is not physically available, the concept of an ensemble-averaged time-variant spectrum can be of value.[1] Specifically, the idealized limit of an ensemble-averaged time-variant periodogram, (4) in Chapter 5, which is the *expected time-variant periodogram*

$$\mathcal{S}_{x_T}(t, f) \triangleq E\{S_{x_T}(t, f)\}, \tag{3}$$

can be interpreted as a *completely reliable* (zero degree of randomness) measure of the time-variant spectral characteristics of a phenomenon. This most reliable measure exhibits the best possible temporal and spectral resolutions, that is, the resolutions satisfy (2). From this point of view, it apparently makes no sense to conceive of or seek a probabilistic measure of time-variant spectral characteristics that exhibits finer resolutions than those that satisfy (2).

Nevertheless, there is a probabilistic function of time and frequency that plays a fundamental role in the mathematical characterization of the expected periodogram $\mathcal{S}_{x_T}(t, f)$ and that is not subject to any counterpart of (2). Specifically, it can be shown (exercise 1) [Mark 1970], that the expected periodogram is a time- and frequency-smoothed version of a function $\mathcal{S}_x(t, f)$ called the *probabilistic instantaneous spectrum,*

$$\mathcal{S}_{x_T}(t, f) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \mathcal{S}_x(t - \tau, f - \nu) w(\tau, \nu)\, d\tau\, d\nu, \tag{4}$$

in which the smoothing function w is defined by

$$w(\tau, \nu) \triangleq \frac{1}{T} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} Tu_T\left(\tau + \frac{u}{2}\right) Tu_T\left(\tau - \frac{u}{2}\right) e^{-i2\pi\nu u}\, du \tag{5}$$

and the probabilistic instantaneous spectrum $\mathcal{S}_x$ is defined by

$$\mathcal{S}_x(t, \cdot) \triangleq F\{\mathcal{R}_x(t, \cdot)\} \tag{6}$$

$$\mathcal{R}_x(t, \tau) \triangleq E\left\{x\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right) x\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right)\right\}, \tag{7}$$

[1] *Wold's isomorphism* cannot be used to envision an appropriate ensemble in this case, as done in Chapter 5, Section B for time-invariant phenomena, because the equivalence between ensemble- and time-averaging would result in all time variation being averaged away by the ensemble-averaging operation.

where $\mathcal{R}_x(t, \tau)$ is called the *probabilistic instantaneous autocorrelation function*. Although the probabilistic instantaneous spectrum can in principle be measured as accurately as desired when a sufficiently large ensemble is physically available, in general it does not represent a time-variant spectrum of the data in any physical sense.[2] It can only approximate a time-variant spectrum, and this approximation can be close only when the time-variation is sufficiently slow that the fine structure of the function $\mathcal{S}_x(t, f)$ is accurately resolved with resolution widths satisfying

$$\Delta t \Delta f \geq 1 \tag{8}$$

(see [Mark 1970; Donati 1971]). But it can be shown by using (4)–(5) that when (8) is satisfied, then (using $T = \Delta t$)

$$\mathcal{S}_{x_T}(t, f) \cong \mathcal{S}_x(t, f). \tag{9}$$

As a reflection of the facts stated in the preceding discussion, the expected time-variant spectrum is called the *physical spectrum* to distinguish it from the generally nonphysical instantaneous probabilistic spectrum [Mark 1970; Eberly and Wodkiewicz 1977].

2. Linear Time-Variant Systems

To illustrate the ideas in the preceding subsection, let us consider a generalization of the motivating example discussed in Chapter 3, Section A. Specifically, we consider the problem of determining the time-variant spectral characteristics of a *linear time-variant* (LTV) system excited by white noise by measuring the time-variant spectrum of the system response. We begin with a definition of the time-variant spectral characteristics of an LTV system. The response of an LTV system can be expressed as a time-variant continuous linear combination of the excitation values,

$$y(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} h(t, u)x(u)\, du \tag{10}$$

for which $h(t, u)$ is the response at time t to an impulse excitation applied at time u. The *system function* for such a system is defined to be the Fourier transform [D'Angelo 1970]

$$G(t, \cdot) = F\{g(t, \cdot)\} \tag{11}$$

for which

$$g(t, \tau) \triangleq h(t, t - \tau). \tag{12}$$

The system function $G(t, f)$ is a generalization of the *transfer function* for a linear time-invariant (LTI) system for which $h(t, u) = h(t - u)$, because in this case we have

$$G(t, f) = H(f). \tag{13}$$

Moreover, for a sine wave excitation,

$$x(t) = e^{i2\pi ft}, \tag{14a}$$

[2] However, it is explained in Part II that for a cyclostationary or almost cyclostationary process, the Fourier coefficients of the periodic or almost periodic function $\mathcal{S}_x(t, f)$ are spectral correlation functions, which do indeed have a concrete physical interpretation.

the response is obtained simply by multiplication with the system function,

$$y(t) = G(t,f)e^{i2\pi ft}, \tag{14b}$$

analogous to the principal-component property of the transfer function of an LTI system, as described in Part 2 of Section B, Chapter 1. Consequently, *the system function magnitude* $|G(t,f)|$ *is defined* (by analogy with $|H(f)|$) *to be a representation of the time-variant spectral characteristics of an LTV system.*

Now, let us determine the relationship between the probabilistic instantaneous spectrum $\mathcal{S}_y(t,f)$ and the system function magnitude $|G(t,f)|$. For an LTI system with transfer function H, excited by white noise with probabilistic spectrum

$$\mathcal{S}_x(f) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \mathcal{R}_x(\tau)e^{-i2\pi f\tau}\,d\tau = N_0, \tag{15a}$$

where

$$\mathcal{R}_x(\tau) \triangleq E\left\{x\left(t+\frac{\tau}{2}\right)x\left(t-\frac{\tau}{2}\right)\right\} = N_0\delta(\tau), \tag{15b}$$

we know that (see (28) in Chapter 3)

$$\mathcal{S}_y(f) = |H(f)|^2N_0. \tag{16}$$

Also, for a time-invariant phenomenon it follows from (15) in Chapter 5 and (6) and (7) that

$$\mathcal{S}_y(t,f) = \mathcal{S}_y(f). \tag{17}$$

However, even though $|G(t,f)|$ and $\mathcal{S}_y(t,f)$ are natural generalizations of $|H(f)|$ and $\mathcal{S}_y(f)$, it does not follow that (16) generalizes to

$$\mathcal{S}_y(t,f) = |G(t,f)|^2N_0. \tag{18}$$

But, it can be shown (exercise 2) that the approximation

$$\mathcal{S}_y(t,f) \cong |G(t,f)|^2N_0 \tag{19}$$

is close in general if (and only if) the system time variation is sufficiently slow that the fine structure of $G(t,f)$ can be accurately resolved with resolution widths satisfying (8). Moreover, in this case (9) applies so that we have

$$\mathcal{S}_{y_T}(t,f) \cong |G(t,f)|^2N_0. \tag{20}$$

Thus, only the physical spectrum $\mathcal{S}_{y_T}(t,f)$, not the probabilistic instantaneous spectrum $\mathcal{S}_y(t,f)$, is needed in general for determining the time-variant spectral characteristics of an LTV system. Moreover, when no ensemble is available, these characteristics as reflected in $|G(t,f)|$ can be reliably measured only for a resolution product satisfying (1).

Example: ***Locally Stationary Process***

Consider an LTV system with time-varying attenuation and negligible temporal dispersion. The input-output model for such a system is simply a product

$$y(t) = a(t)x(t). \tag{21}$$

This product can be put into the form of the superposition integral (10) by use of the impulse-response function

$$h(t,\tau) = a(t)\delta(t-\tau). \tag{22}$$

Formulas (11) and (12) applied to (22) yield the system function

$$G(t, f) = a(t), \tag{23}$$

which is independent of frequency f—a result of the dispersionless character of the system. Substitution of (21) into definition (7) (with x there replaced by y) yields the probabilistic instantaneous autocorrelation function

$$\begin{aligned} \mathscr{R}_y(t, \tau) &= E\left\{a\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right)x\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right)a\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right)x\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right)\right\} \\ &= a\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right)a\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right)\mathscr{R}_x(t, \tau). \end{aligned} \tag{24}$$

For white noise excitation we have

$$\mathscr{R}_x(t, \tau) = N_0\delta(\tau),$$

and therefore (24) reduces to

$$\mathscr{R}_y(t, \tau) = N_0 a^2(t)\delta(\tau). \tag{25}$$

Application of definition (6) to (25) yields the probabilistic instantaneous spectrum

$$\mathscr{S}_y(t, f) = N_0 a^2(t), \tag{26}$$

which is independent of frequency f. Consequently, no resolution in f is needed, and we can let $\Delta f = \infty$. As a result (8) is satisfied for arbitrarily small Δt, and therefore approximation (19) is exact. This is directly corroborated by substitution of (23) and (26) into (19). This example is the time-frequency dual of an LTI system that depends on f but is independent of t, in which case (19) is again exact, because we can let $\Delta t = \infty$ and satisfy (8) with arbitrarily small Δf. The stochastic process $y(t)$ in this example is sometimes called *locally stationary*. More generally, a probabilistic model for which (19) is a close approximation is called locally stationary (in the wide sense). The conditions under which a model consisting of an LTV system with white noise excitation is locally stationary are developed in exercise 2(a).

For a time-series $y(t)$ that can be modeled by (10) and (15) (with $N_0 = 1$), the squared magnitude of the system function $|G(t, f)|^2$ is called the *evolutionary spectrum* of $y(t)$ and has been suggested as an alternative to the probabilistic instantaneous spectrum that can be interpreted as an idealized probabilistic spectrum with no constraints on resolution [Priestley 1965, 1981; Tjøstheim 1976]. However as illustrated here, this function can be accurately determined in general with the use of ensemble averaging if and only if (8) is satisfied for $|G(t, f)|^2$, in which case both (19) and (20) are close approximations. A popular approach to time-variant spectral analysis based on the evolutionary spectrum employs the model-fitting methods described in Chapter 9. For example, the AR model fitting methods can be adapted to provide a time-variant AR model of the form

$$y(n) + a_M(n)y(n - M) + a_{M-1}(n)y(n - M + 1) + \cdots + a_1(n)y(n - 1) = x(n). \tag{27}$$

After having fit such a model to a given time-series $y(t)$, the function

$$|G_*(n, f)|^2 \triangleq \frac{N_0}{\left|1 - \sum_{p=1}^{M} a_p(n)(e^{-i2\pi f})^p\right|^2} \tag{28}$$

can be used as a time-variant spectrum estimate. This approach is reasonable for a sufficiently slowly time-variant phenomenon, in which case the function $G_*(n, f)$ can be a useful approximation to the system function for the model (27) (exercise 6), and the discrete-time counterparts to (19) and (20) can be useful approximations. However for time-variant phenomena with rapid time-variations, this approach is of questionable value; see exercise 6. (See [Loynes 1968] and [Priestley and Tong 1973] for interesting discussions of time-variant spectral analysis and [Gardner 1987c] for a general treatment of the related problem of measurement of time-variant correlation.)

3. Local Ergodicity

It is often thought that a probabilistic model that is locally stationary is also *locally ergodic,* which means that, for example, the probabilistic parameter $\mathcal{S}_y(t, f)$ can be accurately estimated using only a time average instead of an ensemble average. This thought is based on the reasoning that since the time variations are slow, much time averaging can be done while the physical spectrum $\mathcal{S}_{y_T}(t, f)$ changes very little, and therefore the ensemble average (expected value) in (3) can be closely approximated by a time average. But this is not true in general even if the probabilistic model is such that it becomes ergodic in the limit as the rate of time variations approaches zero so that the locally stationary process becomes stationary.[3] To illustrate why this is so, we consider an example.

Example: ***Photodetector Output***

As an example of a physical phenomenon that can be modeled probabilistically as time-variant, consider the voltage output $x(t)$ of a photodetector with light excitation whose intensity varies with time,

$$x(t) = \sum_i a_i g(t - \tau_i). \tag{29}$$

The ith photon incident on the detector gives rise to a voltage pulse at time τ_i with random amplitude a_i. The amplitudes $\{a_i\}$ can be modeled as a sequence of independent variables that are also independent of the times of arrival of the photons $\{\tau_i\}$. This sequence of arrival times can be modeled as a Poisson point process, with expected rate $\lambda(t)$, in which case the probabilistic instantaneous autocorrelation can be shown [Snyder 1975] to be given by

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{R}_x(t, \tau) &= \bar{\mathcal{R}}_a(0) \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \lambda(u) g\left(t - u + \frac{\tau}{2}\right) g\left(t - u - \frac{\tau}{2}\right) du \\ &= \bar{\mathcal{R}}_a(0)\lambda(t) \otimes \left[g\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right) g\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right) \right], \end{aligned} \tag{30}$$

where $\bar{\mathcal{R}}_a(0)$ is the mean-squared value of $\{a_i\}$, and the convolution is with respect to the variable t. The probabilistic instantaneous spectrum is obtained by Fourier transformation of (30) and is given by

$$\mathcal{S}_x(t, f) = \bar{\mathcal{R}}_a(0)\lambda(t) \otimes W_g(t, f), \tag{31a}$$

where the function

$$W_g(t, f) \triangleq \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} g\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right) g\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right) e^{-i2\pi f\tau} \, d\tau \tag{31b}$$

[3] A detailed treatment of ergodicity is given in [Gardner 1985].

is called the *Wigner-Ville time-frequency energy density* of the pulse $g(t)$ [Wigner 1932; Ville 1948] (see [Claasen and Mecklenbräuker 1980]). Because of the smoothing effect of convolution, the temporal resolution of $\mathscr{S}_x(t, f)$ is limited by the smoothest of the two time functions $\lambda(t)$ and $W_g(t, f)$. If the pulse $g(t)$ is narrow enough to be treated as an impulse, then $W_g(t, f) = \delta(t)$, and therefore

$$\mathscr{S}_x(t, f) = \tilde{\mathscr{R}}_a(0)\lambda(t), \tag{32}$$

which indicates that this is a locally stationary process when $g(t)$ is sufficiently narrow. Does this mean that this probabilistic model is also locally ergodic? No it does not. This model is locally ergodic only if the expected rate $\lambda(t)$ of photon arrivals (which is proportional to the light intensity) is sufficiently high. If the expected rate is very low, then there will be very few photons and, therefore, very few voltage pulses to time average during the interval over which $\lambda(t)$ is nearly constant, and consequently the expected rate factor in (32) cannot be accurately estimated with a time average. This same conclusion applies to the example of a locally stationary probabilistic model in the previous subsection if the white noise excitation $x(t)$ in (21) is low-rate Poisson impulse noise. On the other hand, if the white noise $x(t)$ is Gaussian, then the locally stationary model (21) is indeed locally ergodic.[4] This example illustrates the subtleties that must be dealt with when probabilistic models are used.

B. PERIODIC VARIATION

In contrast with the general conclusion drawn in the preceding section, a *periodically time-variant linear system*[5] is a special case for which it can be shown that the probabilistic instantaneous spectrum, (6)–(7), for the system response (10) can be measured as accurately as desired *without ensemble averaging*. In fact, this is true for any periodically time-variant phenomenon with an appropriate (cycloergodic) probabilistic model [Boyles and Gardner 1983]. Therefore, (4) can be used to obtain the completely reliable measure of periodically time-variant spectral characteristics (3), which is subject only to the resolution-limiting condition (8) rather than the severely limiting condition (1). Moreover, it is shown in Part II that $|G(t, f)|^2$ can be measured as accurately as desired for a periodically time-variant system, with *no* limitation on resolution (not even (8)) and without ensemble averaging! In addition, the model-fitting approach has proven to be particularly useful for time-variant spectral analysis for periodic phenomena (see [Jones and Brelsford 1967; Parzen and Pagano 1979; Hasselmann and Barnett 1981]), and does not require that the periodic time variations be slow.

Example: *Swept-Frequency Analyzer*

As explained in Chapter 4, a waveform $x(t)$ can be analyzed over a broad range of frequencies by using a single low-pass filter preceded by a swept-frequency modulator. The output $y(t)$ of this modulator-filter combination is given by

$$y(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} h(t - u)c(u)x(u)\, du, \tag{33}$$

[4] A detailed treatment of the different white noise models is given in [Gardner 1985].

[5] The claims made here for a system with a single periodicity apply equally well to a system with multiple incommensurate periodicities.

where $h(t)$ is the impulse-response function for the filter and $c(u)$ is a sine wave with linearly swept frequency that is periodically repeated with period T_0,

$$c(t) = \cos(2\pi f_0 t + \pi\beta t^2), \qquad \frac{-T_0}{2} \leqslant t < \frac{T_0}{2}. \tag{34}$$

The probabilistic instantaneous autocorrelation of $y(t)$ is easily shown to be

$$\mathcal{R}_y(t, \tau) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} h\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2} - u\right)h\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2} - v\right)c(u)c(v)\mathcal{R}_x\left(\frac{u + v}{2}, u - v\right) du\, dv. \tag{35}$$

If the waveform $x(t)$ is simply white noise, then

$$\mathcal{R}_x(t, \tau) = N_0\delta(\tau)$$

and therefore (35) reduces to

$$\mathcal{R}_y(t, \tau) = N_0 c^2(t) \otimes \left[h\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right)h\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right)\right] \tag{36}$$

and the probabilistic instantaneous spectrum is given by

$$\mathcal{S}_y(t, f) = N_0 c^2(t) \otimes W_h(t, f), \tag{37}$$

where W_h is the Wigner-Ville density for $h(t)$ (see (31b)). In practice the width of the impulse-response function $h(t)$ is typically chosen to be considerably larger than the varying period of the swept sine wave. Consequently, this is definitely not a locally stationary process, regardless of the sweep rate β. Nevertheless, it is a cycloergodic process and therefore the techniques described in Part II can be used to estimate $\mathcal{S}_y(t, f)$ as accurately as desired without ensemble averaging. And this would be true even if $c(u)$ were the sum of several periodic functions with incommensurate periods.

C. SUMMARY

In Section A the fundamental limitations on the simultaneous temporal and spectral resolution capabilities of statistical spectra are described, and the advantage of ensemble averaging (when possible) is explained. The *instantaneous probabilistic spectrum* is introduced and its relation to the *physical spectrum* is explained and illustrated with an application to the problem of identification of a time-variant linear system. An alternative to the instantaneous probabilistic spectrum as an idealized probabilistic time-variant spectrum, called the *evolutionary spectrum,* is introduced and its direct relationship with the system function is explained. The limitations on measurement of these idealized probabilistic spectra, when ensemble averaging cannot be used, are explained and the concepts of locally stationary and locally ergodic processes are introduced.

In Section B the fact that a periodically time-variant phenomenon is an exceptional case is briefly discussed. It is explained that for this special type of time-variant phenomenon, the fundamental resolution limitations do not apply. Another exception also should be mentioned: those situations in which the spectral analyst has more information about the phenomenon under study than can be obtained from the time-series alone. For example, if it is known that the time-series can be accurately modeled as an autoregression, then—as explained in

Chapter 9—spectral resolution performance that exceeds that of the periodogram is possible (but is not guaranteed).

A general treatment of the related problem of reliable measurement of time-variant auto- and cross-correlation functions is given in [Gardner 1987c].

EXERCISES

1. **(a)** Show that the expected periodogram is given by (4)–(7). *Hint:* Use the periodogram-correlogram relation, and the formula

$$R_{x_T}(t, \tau) = \frac{1}{T}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} Tu_T\left(v + \frac{\tau}{2}\right)Tu_T\left(v - \frac{\tau}{2}\right)x\left(t + v + \frac{\tau}{2}\right)x\left(t + v - \frac{\tau}{2}\right) dv. \quad (38)$$

(b) Let $x(t)$ arise from a time-invariant phenomenon so that $\mathcal{S}_x(t, f)$ is independent of t, and show that (4)–(7) reduce to formula (34) in Chapter 5.

2. **(a)** Let $x(t)$ be white noise so that $\mathcal{R}_x(t, \tau) = N_0\delta(\tau)$, and show that the instantaneous autocorrelation for the response of the LTV system (10) is given by

$$\mathcal{R}_y(t, \tau) = N_0\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} g\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}, \tau + v\right)g\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}, v\right) dv. \quad (39)$$

If the resolution width Δt^* of time variation of the system (minimum over τ of the resolution width in t of $g(t, \tau)$) is greater than the memory length $\Delta\tau^*$ of the system (maximum-over-t width in τ of $g(t, \tau)$), then (39) is closely approximated by

$$\mathcal{R}_y(t, \tau) \cong N_0\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} g(t, \tau + v)g(t, v) dv. \quad (40)$$

Show that (40) yields (19) for $\Delta t^*\Delta f^* \geq 1$, where $\Delta f^* = 1/\Delta\tau^*$ is the minimum over t of the resolution width in f of $G(t, f)$.

(b) Verify that (40) and (19) are exact for the particular LTV system considered in the example in Part 2 of Section A.

3. Determine the system function for the swept-frequency system described in the example in Section B.

4. Consider a time-variant resistive-capacitive low-pass filter, which is governed by the differential equation

$$a(t)\frac{dy(t)}{dt} + y(t) = x(t), \quad (41)$$

where $a(t)$ represents the product of time-variant resistance and capacitance.

(a) Show that the system function is given by

$$G(t, f) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} a^{-1}(v)\exp\left\{-\int_v^t a^{-1}(u)\,du\right\}\exp\{-i2\pi f(t - v)\}\,dv. \quad (42)$$

Hint: Substitute $x(t) = e^{i2\pi ft}$ and $y(t) = G(t, f)e^{i2\pi ft}$ into (41), and then use the fact that the steady-state solution to the differential equation

$$\frac{dG(t)}{dt} = \alpha(t)G(t) + \beta(t) \quad (43a)$$

is given by

$$G(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{t}\exp\left\{-\int_v^t \alpha(u)\,du\right\}\beta(v)\,dv. \quad (43b)$$

Note that the analysis of the time-variant circuit in this exercise is deceptively simple because the time-variant parameters do not get differentiated in the differential equation. This is unfortunately not the case for most time-variant circuits of interest.

(b) Verify that if the product $a(t)$ of resistance and capacitance is time-invariant, then

$$G(t, f) = \frac{1}{1 + i2\pi fa}. \tag{44}$$

5. Consider the problem of time-variant spectral analysis of speech. In order to track certain fluctuations in the character of speech, a temporal resolution of 30 ms is desired.

(a) If a coefficient of variation of $\frac{1}{10}$ is desired, what is the minimum attainable spectral resolution width?

(b) How can the requirements on temporal resolution and/or coefficient of variation be modified in order to obtain a spectral resolution of 100 Hz?

(c) Assume that a temporal resolution of 30 ms and a spectral resolution of 200 Hz are required, and that the speech waveform to be analyzed is bandlimited to 5 KHz. If the Bartlett-Welch method with 50% overlap and no data-tapering is to be used, then determine how many time-samples are to be processed for each spectrum estimate (30-ms segment), how many zeros are to be added, what DFT size (integer power of 2 only) is needed, and how many DFT blocks are to be averaged for each spectrum estimate.

(d) What properties of the spectrum estimate will change and how will they change if data tapering is used?

6. (a) Consider the LTV model

$$y(t) - a_1(t)\frac{dy(t)}{dt} - a_2(t)\frac{d^2y(t)}{dt^2} - \cdots - a_M(t)\frac{d^My(t)}{dt^M} = x(t), \tag{45}$$

which is the time-variant counterpart of the all-pole LTI model described in exercise 9 of Chapter 3. Let $x(t) = e^{i2\pi ft}$ and let $G(t, f)$ denote the system function for (45). Then $y(t) = G(t, f)e^{i2\pi ft}$. Use this to verify that

$$G(t, f) \neq G_*(t, f) \triangleq \frac{1}{1 - \sum_{m=1}^{M} a_m(t)(i2\pi f)^m} \tag{46}$$

except in the special case for which $\{a_m(t)\}_1^M$ are all time-invariant, so that $G(t, f) = H(f)$. Also show that if $\{a_m(t)\}_1^M$ and $G(t, f)$ vary sufficiently slowly with time, then by treating derivatives of $G(t, f)$ with respect to t as negligible, (46) becomes a useful approximation.

(b) Do the discrete-time counterpart of (a), in which model (45) is replaced with the AR model (27).

9

PARAMETRIC METHODS

A. INTRODUCTION

All the methods of spectral analysis described in previous chapters are based on a direct decomposition of the data to be analyzed into spectral components using Fourier transformation or filtering and are therefore called *direct methods*. In contrast, the methods studied in this chapter are based on an entirely different philosophy. Specifically, each of these methods fits a particular form of model to the data by adjusting the values of parameters in the model. Once the model fitting is complete, the parameter values can be substituted into a formula to obtain an estimate of the limit spectrum for that model. There are many variations on this prototypical method. All such methods are referred to as *parametric methods,* whereas the direct methods described in previous chapters based on direct decomposition into spectral components are referred to as *nonparametric* methods.

Parametric methods of spectral analysis can yield better resolution of multiple spectral lines or other narrow features when the amount of data is severely limited, especially if the data-segment length is smaller than the reciprocal of the desired spectral resolution, and the experiment is repeatable so that an ensemble of data segments is available. (This occurs, for example, in some sensor-array signal-processing problems, where the spatial data-segment length is the number of sensors and ensemble averaging is performed by time-averaging.) But more generally the relative advantages depend on the appropriateness of the form of the model chosen. In some cases, nonparametric methods are helpful in selecting a form of model to be used as the basis for a parametric method.

In fact, in some applications the main objective is to fit a model to the data, and nonparametric spectral analysis methods are often used as a first step. But, even when an appropriate form of model for a signal is known, if the signal is masked by noise, then nonparametric methods can be superior for spectral analysis. However, parametric methods can be particularly useful for identification (detection and estimation) of additive sine wave components to be removed (to minimize spectral leakage) before application of a nonparametric method. Generally speaking, parametric methods are more computationally burdensome than nonparametric methods, but some methods based on autoregressive models are computationally competitive with direct methods based on the FFT. The practicality of autoregressive model-fitting methods of spectral analysis is attested to by the wide range of problems to which these methods have been applied. These include radar, sonar, image processing, radio astronomy, biomedicine, speech analysis and synthesis, geophysics, seismology, and oceanography.

Since parametric methods of spectral analysis are diverse and often tailored to special types of data, it is not possible to present a comprehensive and unified treatment paralleling that presented in previous chapters for the direct methods. However, the fundamental concepts and mathematical theory underlying the particularly important class of autoregressive methods can be and therefore are presented in a unified manner. In keeping with the philosophy of this book, the unified treatment is nonprobabilistic, whereas other treatments of the same material are typically couched within the conventional probabilistic framework.

Although the results of the fraction-of-time probabilistic analysis, such as bias and variance formulas derived in Chapter 5, apply to all direct methods, the parametric methods are not amenable to such straightforward probabilistic analysis. Useful results on bias and variance are typically obtainable only asymptotically as the data segment length used for spectral analysis approaches infinity (see [Kay 1987]).

In Section B, the theoretical background for autoregressive and related ARMA methods is presented. Then, in Sections C and D some of the methods that have proven to be of practical value are described. Finally, in Section E, an extensive experimental study and comparison of these methods is presented.

B. AUTOREGRESSIVE MODELING THEORY

There is a variety of different parametric methods of statistical spectral analysis that are based on the autoregressive (AR) model for time-series introduced in Chapter 3. In order to understand the motivation behind these various methods, we must first develop some background on the theory of AR modeling, which is accomplished in this section. The notation used in Section B of Chapter 6 is adopted here since it is conventional for this subject. Extension of the theory in this section and most of the methods in the following sections from real data to complex data can be found in [Kay 1987; Marple 1987].

The Mth order AR model for a time-series x_n is the difference equation

$$x_n + a_1 x_{n-1} + a_2 x_{n-2} + \cdots + a_M x_{n-M} = b z_n, \tag{1}$$

where z_n is a zero-mean sequence of uncorrelated variables,

$$\tilde{R}_z(k) = \begin{cases} 1, & k = 0 \\ 0, & k \neq 0. \end{cases} \tag{2}$$

This model enables us to interpret x_n as the response of a linear time-invariant system to white noise excitation z_n. The transfer function $\tilde{G}(f)$ of this system is obtained by substitution of the excitation $z_n = e^{i2\pi nf}$ and response $x_n = \tilde{G}(f)e^{i2\pi nf}$ into (1) to obtain

$$\tilde{G}(f) = \frac{b}{1 + \sum_{p=1}^{M} a_p(e^{-i2\pi f})^p}. \tag{3}$$

Since the power spectral density for z_n is unity (from (2)), then it follows from the limit-spectrum relation for filters and (3) that the power spectral density for x_n is given by

$$\tilde{S}_x(f) = \frac{b^2}{\left|1 + \sum_{p=1}^{M} a_p(e^{-i2\pi f})^p\right|^2}. \tag{4}$$

1. Yule-Walker Equations

The autocorrelation sequence $\tilde{R}_x(k)$ for the AR model satisfies a set of linear equations that can be derived as follows. Multiplication of both sides of (1), with n replaced by $n + k$, by x_n and evaluation of the limit time-average value of this product yields the equation (exercise 1)

$$\tilde{R}_x(k) = -a_1\tilde{R}_x(k-1) - a_2\tilde{R}_x(k-2) - \cdots - a_M\tilde{R}_x(k-M) + b\tilde{R}_{zx}(k). \tag{5}$$

Since z_n has zero mean value and x_n depends on only z_n, z_{n-1}, z_{n-2}, . . . (see (1)), then

$$\tilde{R}_{zx}(n) = 0, \qquad n \geq 1. \tag{6a}$$

Multiplication of both sides of (1) by z_n and evaluation of the limit time-average value of this product yields (exercise 1)

$$\tilde{R}_{zx}(0) = -a_1\tilde{R}_{zx}(1) - a_2\tilde{R}_{zx}(2) - \cdots - a_M\tilde{R}_{zx}(M) + b, \tag{7}$$

from which (6a) yields

$$\tilde{R}_{zx}(0) = b. \tag{6b}$$

It follows from (5)–(7) that

$$\tilde{R}_x(k) = -\sum_{p=1}^{M} a_p\tilde{R}_x(k-p), \qquad k \geq 1 \tag{8a}$$

$$\tilde{R}_x(0) = b^2 - \sum_{p=1}^{M} a_p\tilde{R}_x(-p). \tag{8b}$$

If the $M + 1$ values $\{\tilde{R}_x(k) = \tilde{R}_x(-k) : k = 0, 1, 2, 3, \ldots, M\}$ of the autocorrelation of x_n are known, then these $M + 1$ linear equations (for $k = 0, 1, 2, 3, \ldots, M$)

can be solved for the $M + 1$ model parameters $\{a_p : p = 1, 2, 3, \ldots, M\}$ and b^2. Thus, the AR model is fully specified (except for the sign of b, which is irrelevant) by the first $M + 1$ values of $\tilde{R}_x(k)$. Once the model is determined, $\tilde{R}_x(k)$ is fully specified for *all* k. Thus, there must be a way to determine $\{\tilde{R}_x(k) : |k| > M\}$ from $\{\tilde{R}_x(k) : |k| \leq M\}$. In fact (8a) for $k > M$ is a linear recursion that enables $\tilde{R}_x(k)$ to be determined from $\{\tilde{R}_x(j) : |j| < k\}$ for every $k > M$. Of course, this *autocorrelation extrapolation* procedure is valid (i.e., equations (8a)–(8b) are valid) only if $\tilde{R}_x(k)$ truly is the autocorrelation sequence for some Mth-order AR model. Equations (8a)–(8b) are known as the *Yule-Walker equations,* in honor of George Udny Yule's and Gilbert Walker's pioneering work on AR models [Yule 1927; Walker 1931]. They can be expressed jointly as a single matrix equation

$$\begin{bmatrix} \tilde{R}_x(0) & \tilde{R}_x(-1) & \tilde{R}_x(-2) & \cdots & \tilde{R}_x(-M) \\ \tilde{R}_x(1) & \tilde{R}_x(0) & \tilde{R}_x(-1) & \cdots & \tilde{R}_x(1-M) \\ \tilde{R}_x(2) & \tilde{R}_x(1) & \tilde{R}_x(0) & \cdots & \tilde{R}_x(2-M) \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\ \tilde{R}_x(M) & \tilde{R}_x(M-1) & \tilde{R}_x(M-2) & \cdots & \tilde{R}_x(0) \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ a_1 \\ a_2 \\ \vdots \\ a_M \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} b^2 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ \vdots \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \tag{8c}$$

or alternatively as

$$\begin{bmatrix} \tilde{R}_x(-1) & \tilde{R}_x(-2) & \tilde{R}_x(-3) & \cdots & \tilde{R}_x(-M) \\ \tilde{R}_x(0) & \tilde{R}_x(-1) & \tilde{R}_x(-2) & \cdots & \tilde{R}_x(1-M) \\ \tilde{R}_x(1) & \tilde{R}_x(0) & \tilde{R}_x(-1) & \cdots & \tilde{R}_x(2-M) \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\ \tilde{R}_x(M-1) & \tilde{R}_x(M-2) & \tilde{R}_x(M-3) & \cdots & \tilde{R}_x(0) \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} a_1 \\ a_2 \\ \vdots \\ a_M \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} b^2 - \tilde{R}_x(0) \\ -\tilde{R}_x(1) \\ -\tilde{R}_x(2) \\ \vdots \\ -\tilde{R}_x(M) \end{bmatrix} \tag{8d}$$

2. Levinson-Durbin Algorithm

The Yule-Walker equations can be solved using a particularly efficient recursive algorithm called the *Levinson-Durbin algorithm* [Levinson 1947; Durbin 1960; Wiggins and Robinson 1965]. Because of the fact that an AR model of order M_1 is identical to an AR model of order $M_2 > M_1$ if $a_{M_1+1} = a_{M_1+2} = \cdots = a_{M_2} = 0$, then one need not know the model order M in order to use the Yule-Walker equations to determine the model parameters. One can simply solve (8a) for $M = 1, 2, 3, \ldots$ until $a_p = 0$ for all $p > M$. Evidently, one would in principle have to solve for a_p for $p \to \infty$ to be sure that there are no nonzero a_p for $p > M$, but this problem can often be circumvented in practice. The following Levinson-Durbin algorithm is a computationally efficient recursion for carrying out this solution procedure. Let $\{a_p(M)\}$ and $b(M)$ denote the parameters for an Mth-order AR model. Then the algorithm is initialized by

$$a_1(1) = \frac{-\tilde{R}_x(1)}{\tilde{R}_x(0)} \tag{9a}$$

$$b^2(1) = [1 - a_1^2(1)]\tilde{R}_x(0) \tag{9b}$$

and the Mth step of the recursion is specified by

$$a_M(M) = \frac{-1}{b^2(M-1)}\left[\tilde{R}_x(M) + \sum_{q=1}^{M-1} a_q(M-1)\tilde{R}_x(M-q)\right] \tag{9c}$$

$$b^2(M) = [1 - a_M^2(M)]b^2(M-1) \tag{9d}$$

$$a_p(M) = a_p(M-1) + a_M(M)a_{M-p}(M-1), \qquad p = 1, 2, 3, \ldots, M-1. \tag{9e}$$

For any value of M, the solution $\{a_p(M) : p = 1, 2, 3, \ldots, M\}$ and $b^2(M)$ provided by (9) is identical to the solution provided by (8) for $k = 1, 2, 3, \ldots, M$. Thus at each step, say M, the Levinson-Durbin algorithm provides the solution to the Yule-Walker equations for an AR model of order M (see exercise 1).

3. Linear Prediction

The problem of fitting an AR model to a given autocorrelation sequence $\tilde{R}_x(k)$ is intimately related to the problem of predicting the value x_n of the time-series using the previous M values $\{x_{n-1}, x_{n-2}, \ldots, x_{n-M}\}$. This relationship is explained as follows. Since b^2 must be nonnegative, (9d) indicates that

$$|a_M(M)| \leq 1 \tag{10a}$$

and also that

$$b^2(M) \leq b^2(M-1). \tag{10b}$$

Furthermore, it follows from the AR model (1) that the temporal variance of the model error is equal to b^2,

$$\lim_{N\to\infty} \frac{1}{2N+1} \sum_{n=-N}^{N} \left[x_n - \sum_{p=1}^{M} -a_p(M)x_{n-p}\right]^2 = b^2(M). \tag{11}$$

Hence, the sequence of model-error variances indexed by M is nonincreasing. The term *model-error variance* is used because the quantity

$$bz_n = x_n - \sum_{p=1}^{M} -a_p x_{n-p} \tag{12}$$

from (1) is the error in fitting the time-series x_n to an Mth-order linear regression on its past. The *Mth-order regressor* is denoted by

$$\hat{x}_n \triangleq \sum_{p=1}^{M} -a_p x_{n-p}. \tag{13}$$

It can be shown that the solution to the Yule-Walker equations of order M minimizes this error variance for any time-series x_n. This follows from the fact that the temporal variance (11) is minimum if and only if the *orthogonality condition,*

$$\lim_{N\to\infty} \frac{1}{2N+1} \sum_{n=-N}^{N} (x_n - \hat{x}_n)x_{n-p} = 0, \qquad p = 1, 2, 3, \ldots, M, \tag{14}$$

is satisfied. This condition can be derived simply by equating to zero the M partial derivatives of the variance (11) with respect to the M parameters $\{a_p\}$. Substitution of (13) into (14) yields the Yule-Walker equations (8a) (exercise 1).

Because the Yule-Walker equations are equivalent to the orthogonality condition and the terms *orthogonal* and *normal* are synonyms, they are also called the *normal equations*. Condition (14) is called an *orthogonality condition* because the limiting time average of the product of time-series can be interpreted as an inner product of vectors [Gardner 1985]. Furthermore, since the regressor $\hat{x}_n$ depends only on values of x_n at times prior to n, then it can be interpreted as a *predictor* of the value x_n. Thus, the solution to the Yule-Walker equations of order M yields the minimum-variance Mth-order linear predictor of the time-series and the minimum value, $b^2(M)$, of the prediction-error variance.

It can be shown (exercise 2) that, for any time-series x_n from a constant phenomenon whose limit spectrum contains no spectral lines, the model-error time-series, bz_n, becomes white, (2), in the limit $M \to \infty$. This reveals that *any* such time-series can be modeled exactly by an AR model, although the order M can be infinite. Nevertheless, since the model-error variance is a nonincreasing function of the model order M, then for any desired degree of accuracy in the fit of the model to the time-series (arbitrarily small difference between the finite-order model-error variance and the minimum error variance $b^2(\infty)$), there is a sufficiently large but finite value for the order M.

4. Wold-Cramér Decomposition

Any zero-mean time-series x_n from a constant phenomenon can be decomposed into two zero-mean time-series that are uncorrelated with each other,

$$x_n = x_n(r) + x_n(s) \tag{15}$$

$$\tilde{R}_{x(r)x(s)}(k) \equiv 0, \tag{16}$$

for which the component $x_n(s)$ is perfectly predictable (zero prediction-error variance) and is mean-square equivalent to a sum of sine waves and for which $x_n(r)$ is mean-square equivalent to the response of a linear, time-invariant, causal, stable system, whose inverse is also causal and stable, to a unity-variance white excitation, say z_n. The component $x_n(s)$ is called *singular,* and the component $x_n(r)$ is called *regular.*

The regular component admits a stable AR model (i.e., (1) with $x_n = x_n(r)$) with transfer function $\tilde{G}(f)$ given by (3) and with order M possibly infinite, and the inverse model is also stable and causal, with transfer function denoted by

$$\tilde{G}^{-1}(f) = \frac{1}{\tilde{G}(f)}$$

and corresponding impulse-response sequence denoted by g_n^{-1}. The white excitation of the inverse model

$$z_n = g_n^{-1} \otimes x_n(r) \tag{17a}$$

is called the *innovations representation* for $x_n(r)$,

$$x_n(r) = g_n \otimes z_n, \tag{17b}$$

because each new value z_n of the time-series is uncorrelated with all prior values $\{z_j : j < n\}$ of the time-series and therefore provides completely new information—an *innovation*. Since g_n is a causal stable sequence, then (17a) reveals that $x_n(r)$

also admits a stable MA model (see (87) in Chapter 3) with transfer function given by

$$\tilde{G}^{-1}(f) = \sum_{q=0}^{L-1} b_q (e^{-i2\pi f})^q \tag{18}$$

in which the order L is possibly infinite and $b_q = g_q^{-1}$. It is easy to show that if L is finite, then M in (3) is infinite, and if M is finite, then L in (18) is infinite. Also, either model can be obtained from the other by polynomial division of its transfer function.

The singular component $x_n(s)$ also admits an AR model, but with $b = 0$. That is, the system is marginally unstable and produces a response consisting of a sum of sine waves, without any excitation (see exercise 9). If there are K sine waves, then the AR model order is $M = 2K$, and the Levinson-Durbin algorithm terminates (with $b(M) = 0$) at this value of M. Unlike the regular component, $x_n(s)$ cannot admit a useful finite-order MA model because the sequence of coefficients g_n consists of a sum of sine waves that do not approach zero as $n \to \infty$.

The spectral density for the singular component consists of Dirac deltas only (a *pure line spectrum*), and the spectral density for the regular component is continuous and is equal to $|\tilde{G}(f)|^2$, which can be expressed as (4), with M possibly infinite. This representation of $\tilde{S}_{x(r)}(f)$ in terms of the product of conjugate factors,

$$\tilde{S}_{x(r)}(f) = \tilde{G}(f)\tilde{G}^*(f), \tag{19}$$

is called a *spectral factorization*. The particular factorization described here, in which both $\tilde{G}(f)$ and $1/\tilde{G}(f)$ are *minimum-phase functions*[1] (that is, they represent causal stable systems) is called the *canonical spectral factorization*. It follows from (17a) that this factorization identifies the *whitening filter* that produces the innovations representation z_n from $x_n(r)$.

The probabilistic counterpart of this decomposition[2] of x_n and its spectral density $\tilde{S}_x(f)$ is called the *Wold-Cramér decomposition* (see [Grenander and Rosenblatt 1984]). However, the Wold-Cramér decomposition is more general than that described here because it applies to nonstationary processes as well. Moreover the Wold-Cramér decomposition is a wide-sense version of a strict sense decomposition known as the *Doob decomposition,* in which the predictor (regressor) is not constrained to be linear (see [Larson and Shubert 1979; Doob 1953]). There is a partially analogous decomposition for continuous time-series (see [Larson and Schubert 1979; Doob 1953]). That is, such time-series can be decomposed into a sum of singular and regular components that are uncorrelated with each other. However, the singular component need not have a pure line spectrum, and therefore the component with continuous spectral density need

[1] If $\tilde{G}(f) = \mathcal{G}(e^{i2\pi f})$, then $\tilde{G}(f)$ is a *minimum-phase function* if $\mathcal{G}(z)$ and $1/\mathcal{G}(z)$ are analytic functions of the complex variable z for $|z| \geq 1$.

[2] Wold presented both the probabilistic and nonprobabilistic versions of this decomposition, which he referred to as the *stochastic* and *functional* decompositions, respectively [Wold 1948].

not be the regular component. Nevertheless, there is a condition on continuous spectral densities that guarantees that a time-series with a spectral density satisfying the condition is regular, and this is called the *Paley-Wiener condition* [Wiener and Paley 1934]. If the Paley-Wiener condition is satisfied for the component with the continuous spectral density, then it is the regular component, and its residual is the singular component and has a pure line spectrum.

5. Maximum-Entropy Model

An interesting question that arises in the practical application of AR models is what interpretation can be given to the Mth-order AR model obtained from the Yule-Walker equations when the only values of the autocorrelation sequence that are known are the $M + 1$ values used in these equations. That is, if the values $\{\tilde{R}_x(k) : k > M\}$ are unknown (or perhaps cannot be reliably estimated), then it cannot be known whether or not x_n is truly an Mth-order AR time-series. There is one particularly intriguing answer to this question. Specifically, it is shown in this section that among all possible time-series that have the same $M + 1$ autocorrelation values $\{\tilde{R}_x(k) : |k| \leq M\}$, the Mth-order AR time-series specified by the Yule-Walker equations is the *most random* in the sense of having maximum relative entropy rate for a given relative entropy rate of its innovations representation.

The *relative entropy rate,* denoted by $\overline{H}_x$, for a time-series x_n is defined by analogy with the probabilistic definition [Shannon and Weaver 1962] to be

$$\overline{H}_x \triangleq \lim_{L\to\infty} \frac{1}{L} \lim_{N\to\infty} \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} \ln\left\{\frac{1}{f_{x(L)}[\boldsymbol{x}_n(L)]}\right\}, \tag{20}$$

where $f_{x(L)}[\boldsymbol{x}_n(L)]$ is the Lth-order joint fraction-of-time probability density for the vector of L variables $\{x_{k+1}, x_{k+2}, \ldots, x_{k+L}\}$,

$$f_{x(L)}(\boldsymbol{z}) \triangleq \frac{\partial^L}{\partial z_1 \partial z_2 \cdots \partial z_L} \lim_{K\to\infty} \frac{1}{K} \sum_{k=0}^{K-1} U[z_1 - x_{k+1}]\, U[z_2 - x_{k+2}] \cdots U[z_K - x_{k+K}], \tag{21}$$

evaluated at $\boldsymbol{z} = \boldsymbol{x}_n(L) \triangleq [x_{n+1}, x_{n+2}, \ldots, x_{n+L}]'$. In (21), U is the unit step function, and therefore the summand is the indicator of the joint event

$$x_{k+l} < z_l, \qquad l = 1, 2, 3, \ldots, L.$$

The one-sided (positive time) averages in (20) and (21) are used instead of two-sided averages only because it is more common to consider one-sided time-series in subjects dealing with entropy. The relative entropy rate defined by (20) is a relative measure of the *average uncertainty per time-sample* of the time-series. It can be shown (exercise 3) that the difference between the *entropy rate* $\overline{H}_z$ of the input z_n and the entropy rate $\overline{H}_x$ of the output x_n of a minimum-phase linear time-invariant system with transfer function $\tilde{G}(f)$ is given by

$$\overline{H}_x - \overline{H}_z = \frac{1}{2} \int_{-1/2}^{1/2} \ln[|\tilde{G}(f)|^2]\, df \tag{22}$$

(which is completely analogous to the probabilistic result [Shannon and Weaver

1962]). It can also be shown that the model-error variance for $M \to \infty$ is given by the *Szegö-Kolmogorov formula* [Doob 1953; Grenander and Rosenblatt 1984],

$$b^2(\infty) = \exp\left\{\int_{-1/2}^{1/2} \ln[S_{x(r)}(f)]\, df\right\}. \tag{23}$$

Observe that the singular component has no effect on prediction-error variance (since it is perfectly predictable). It is assumed in the following that the singular component is zero so that the time-series is regular, $x_n = x_n(r)$. By letting z_n be the innovations representation for x_n, it follows from (19), (22), and (23) that the model-error variance for $M \to \infty$ can be expressed as

$$b^2(\infty) = \exp\{2[\overline{H}_x - \overline{H}_z]\}, \tag{24}$$

and it follows from (9d) that for finite-order models the model-error variance is nonincreasing,

$$b^2(M) \geq b^2(M+1) \geq b^2(M+2) \geq \cdots \geq b^2(\infty). \tag{25}$$

Consequently, the time-series with a given Mth-order model-error variance $b^2(M)$ will have maximum relative entropy rate $\overline{H}_x$, for a given relative entropy rate $\overline{H}_z$ of its innovations representation, if and only if

$$b^2(\infty) = b^2(M). \tag{26}$$

It follows from (26) that for a given model-error variance, $b^2(M)$, the time-series x_n exhibits maximum relative entropy rate if and only if the parameters in (9) satisfy

$$a_m(m) = 0, \qquad m > M, \tag{27}$$

in which case x_n is exactly modeled by an Mth-order AR time-series. Furthermore, since $b^2(M)$ is given if $\{\tilde{R}_x(k) : |k| \leq M\}$ is given (see (9)), then the maximum-entropy model for a zero-mean time-series with given $\{\tilde{R}_x(k) : |k| \leq M\}$ is the Mth-order AR model specified by the Levinson-Durbin algorithm, or equivalently the Yule-Walker equations.

Another approach to proving that the AR model specified by the Yule-Walker equations is a maximum-entropy model is to use (22) with the arbitrary transfer function $\tilde{G}(f)$ chosen to be that of the inverse whitening filter for x_n, in which case

$$\tilde{S}_x(f) = |\tilde{G}(f)|^2. \tag{28}$$

Then for a given relative entropy rate of the innovations z_n, the relative entropy rate of x_n will be maximum if and only if the integral

$$I \triangleq \int_{-1/2}^{1/2} \ln[\tilde{S}_x(f)]\, df \tag{29}$$

is maximum. Thus, the power spectral density of the maximum-entropy model is given by the function $\tilde{S}_x(f)$ that maximizes I subject to the constraints

$$\int_{-1/2}^{1/2} \tilde{S}_x(f) e^{i2\pi kf}\, df = \tilde{R}_x(k), \qquad k = 0, 1, 2, \ldots, M. \tag{30}$$

It is shown in exercise 4 that the solution to this constrained optimization problem is of the form (4), which corresponds to an AR model of order M. Thus, the

Yule-Walker equations specified by the $M + 1$ constraint values $\{\tilde{R}_x(k) : k = 0, 1, 2, \ldots, M\}$ yields the parameters $\{a_p(M)\}$ and $b(M)$ that specify the maximum-entropy model.

As an interesting aside, it is mentioned that although the AR model yields the maximum relative entropy rate for x_n only for a given relative entropy rate of the innovations z_n, it can be shown that a white (innovations) time-series has maximum relative entropy rate, for a given average power, if and only if it has a Gaussian fraction-of-time distribution.[3] Since the Gaussian property is preserved by linear transformations, then it follows that the time-series x_n that has maximum relative entropy rate, for a given $\{\tilde{R}_x(k) : |k| \leqslant M\}$, is specified by a Gaussian AR model.

6. Lattice Filter

The Mth-order minimum-variance linear predictor for a time-series x_n can be implemented in the form of a *lattice filter,* which has important properties from an implementation standpoint, especially if the predictor is to be made adaptive (see [Friedlander 1982a; Honig and Messerschmitt 1984]). This lattice-filter implementation can be derived from the Levinson-Durbin algorithm as follows. The Mth-order linear-prediction-error time-series denoted by $e_n(M)$ is given by

$$e_n(M) \triangleq x_n - \hat{x}_n(M), \tag{31}$$

where $\hat{x}_n(M)$ denotes the Mth-order linear predictor, which can be expressed (using (13)) as

$$\hat{x}_n(M) = -a_n(M) \otimes x_n, \tag{32}$$

where $\{-a_n(M) : n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots, M\}$ is interpreted as a finite-impulse-response sequence. Consequently, $e_n(M)$ can be expressed as

$$e_n(M) = c_n(M) \otimes x_n, \tag{33a}$$

where

$$c_n(M) = \delta_n + a_n(M). \tag{33b}$$

Alternatively, $\hat{x}_n(M)$ can be expressed as

$$\hat{x}_n(M) = [\delta_n - c_n(M)] \otimes x_n. \tag{34}$$

Thus, a realization for the prediction filter $\{-a_n(M)\}$ can always be obtained from a realization of the prediction-error filter $\{c_n(M)\}$, and vice versa. A realization of $\{c_n(M)\}$ can be obtained from the Levinson-Durbin algorithm as follows

$$e_n(M) = x_n + \sum_{p=1}^{M} a_p(M)x_{n-p} \tag{35a}$$

$$= x_n + \sum_{p=1}^{M-1} [a_p(M-1) + a_M(M)a_{M-p}(M-1)]x_{n-p} + a_M(M)x_{n-M} \tag{35b}$$

$$= e_n(M-1) + a_M(M)\check{e}_{n-1}(M-1), \tag{35c}$$

[3] This follows directly from the fact that the maximum-entropy distribution for a random variable with a given variance is the Gaussian distribution [Shannon and Weaver 1962].

where

$$\check{e}_n(M) \triangleq x_{n-M} + \sum_{p=1}^{M} a_p(M)x_{n-M+p}. \tag{36}$$

The quantity $\check{e}_n(M)$ is a *backward prediction-error* time-series, that is, it is the error in prediction of x_{n-M}, using $\{x_{n-M+p} : p = 1, 2, 3, \ldots, M\}$. It can be shown (using only the fact that $\bar{R}_x(k)$ is an even sequence) that the minimum-variance backward-prediction filter-coefficients are identical to those for minimum-variance forward prediction. Thus, (36) is the *minimum-variance* backward-prediction-error time-series. Consequently, the Levinson-Durbin algorithm can again be used to show (exercise 5) that

$$\check{e}_n(M) = \check{e}_{n-1}(M - 1) + a_M(M)e_n(M - 1). \tag{37}$$

The pair of joint recursions (35c) and (37) can be implemented directly with the lattice structure shown in Figure 9-1.

One of the greatest advantages of this lattice structure for implementation of a linear predictor is that as the order M is increased or decreased by the addition or deletion of final stages in the lattice, there is no effect on any of the previous stages. That is, their coefficients need not be readjusted. Moreover, it can be shown that the coefficients

$$\rho_p \triangleq -a_p(p) \tag{38}$$

that completely specify the minimum-variance prediction-error lattice filter are identical to the correlation coefficients for $e_n(p - 1)$ and $\check{e}_{n-1}(p - 1)$ [Kay 1987] and are called the PARCOR coefficients for x_n and x_{n-p} because

$$e_n(p - 1) = x_n - \hat{x}_n(p - 1) \tag{39a}$$

$$\check{e}_{n-1}(p - 1) = x_{n-p} - \check{x}_{n-p}(p - 1), \tag{39b}$$

where $\check{x}_{n-p}(p - 1)$ is the $(p - 1)$th-order backward linear predictor of x_{n-p}. Thus, ρ_p is the correlation coefficient for x_n and x_{n-p}, with the correlation of $\{x_{n-1}, x_{n-2}, \ldots, x_{n-p+1}\}$ first removed (see Chapter 7 on partial correlation). This explains why $|a_p(p)| \leq 1$, as concluded earlier from the Levinson-Durbin algorithm. Notice also that it follows directly from (9a), (9b), and (9d) in the Levinson-Durbin algorithm and (38) that the minimum prediction-error variance is easily determined from the PARCOR coefficients,

$$b^2(M) = \left[\prod_{p=1}^{M} (1 - \rho_p^2)\right]\bar{R}_x(0). \tag{40}$$

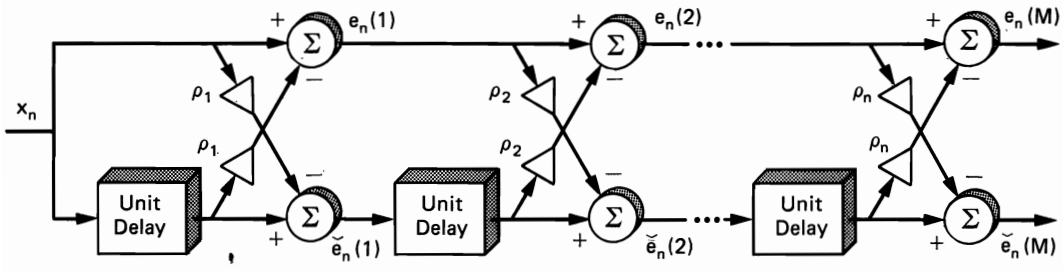


Figure 9-1 Lattice implementation of prediction-error filter.

It should be clarified that the AR model with input e_n (or z_n) and output x_n is an all-pole model, whereas the MA lattice model, with input x_n and output e_n, is an all-zero model, and these models are inverses of each other. Furthermore, it can be shown that the AR model is stable if and only if all coefficients $\{\rho_p\}$ in the lattice model for its inverse have magnitudes less than unity, and it is marginally stable if and only if some coefficients have unity magnitude. The preceding properties and various other properties of lattice models and recursive algorithms for linear prediction all can be given elegant interpretations as well as derivations in terms of the geometrical concept of orthogonal projection (see [Honig and Messerschmitt 1984; Kay 1987], and for the foundations of the geometric theory of random processes and time-series, see [Gardner 1985]).

7. Cholesky Factorization and Correlation Matrix Inversion

Since the Levinson-Durbin algorithm described in Part 2 of this section solves the Yule-Walker equations (8c), then it must in effect invert the correlation matrix

$$\tilde{\boldsymbol{R}}_x \triangleq \begin{bmatrix} \tilde{R}_x(0) & \tilde{R}_x(-1) & \tilde{R}_x(-2) & \dots & \tilde{R}_x(-M) \\ \tilde{R}_x(1) & \tilde{R}_x(0) & \tilde{R}_x(-1) & \dots & \tilde{R}_x(1-M) \\ \tilde{R}_x(2) & \tilde{R}_x(1) & \tilde{R}_x(0) & \dots & \tilde{R}_x(2-M) \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\ \tilde{R}_x(M) & \tilde{R}_x(M-1) & \tilde{R}_x(M-2) & \dots & \tilde{R}_x(0) \end{bmatrix} \tag{41}$$

As a matter of fact, the inverse of this matrix can easily be obtained from the results of the Levinson-Durbin algorithm. Specifically, let $\{a_p(m) : p = 1, 2, \dots, m\}$, denote the model parameters for the mth-order AR model specified by the Yule-Walker equations for $m = 1, 2, 3, \dots, M$, and define a lower-triangular matrix by

$$\boldsymbol{A} \triangleq \begin{bmatrix} 1 & & & & \\ a_1(M) & 1 & & & \\ a_2(M) & a_1(M-1) & 1 & & \\ a_3(M) & a_2(M-1) & a_1(M-2) & & \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & & \\ a_M(M) & a_{M-1}(M-1) & a_{M-2}(M-2) & \dots & 1 \end{bmatrix} \tag{42}$$

Also, let $\{b^2(m) : m = 0, 1, 2, \dots, M\}$ denote the other AR model parameter (model-error variance), and define a diagonal matrix by

$$\boldsymbol{B} \triangleq \begin{bmatrix} b(M) & & & & \\ & b(M-1) & & & \\ & & b(M-2) & & \\ & & & \ddots & \\ & & & & b(0) \end{bmatrix} \tag{43}$$

With these definitions, the Yule-Walker equations can be used to show (exercise 6) that

$$\tilde{\boldsymbol{R}}_x^{-1} = \boldsymbol{A}\,\boldsymbol{B}^{-2}\boldsymbol{A}' \tag{44}$$

and, therefore,

$$\tilde{\boldsymbol{R}}_x^{-1} = \boldsymbol{L}\,\boldsymbol{L}', \tag{45}$$

where $\boldsymbol{L}$ is the lower-triangular matrix

$$\boldsymbol{L} = \boldsymbol{A}\,\boldsymbol{B}^{-1} = \begin{bmatrix} \dfrac{1}{b(1)} & & & & \\ \dfrac{a_1(M)}{b(1)} & \dfrac{1}{b(2)} & & & \\ \dfrac{a_2(M)}{b(1)} & \dfrac{a_1(M-1)}{b(2)} & \dfrac{1}{b(3)} & & \\ \vdots & \vdots & & \ddots & \\ \dfrac{a_M(M)}{b(1)} & \dfrac{a_{M-1}(M-1)}{b(2)} & \cdots & & \dfrac{1}{b(M)} \end{bmatrix} \tag{46}$$

and $\boldsymbol{L}'$ is its transpose, which is an upper-triangular matrix. It follows from (44) that the correlation matrix itself is given by

$$\tilde{\boldsymbol{R}}_x = \boldsymbol{L}^{-\prime}\boldsymbol{L}^{-1}, \tag{47}$$

where $\boldsymbol{L}^{-\prime}$ denotes the inverse of the transpose of $\boldsymbol{L}$ and is an upper-triangular matrix and $\boldsymbol{L}^{-1}$ is a lower triangular matrix. The decomposition (45) (as well as (47)) of a matrix into the product of upper- and lower-triangular matrices is called a *Cholesky factorization* [Lawson and Hanson 1974]. Thus, the Levinson-Durbin recursion not only provides the inverse of the correlation matrix, but it also provides its Cholesky factorization (see [Friedlander 1982a]). Formula (45)–(46) is equivalent to the original Gohberg-Semencul formula (see [Kailath et al. 1978]).

C. AUTOREGRESSIVE METHODS

1. Introduction

It follows from the Wold-Cramér decomposition described in Part 4 of Section B that a time-series that contains no finite additive sine waves can be exactly represented by either a stable moving average (MA) model

$$x_n = b_0 w_n + b_1 w_{n-1} + b_2 w_{n-2} + \cdots + b_L w_{n-L} \tag{48}$$

or a stable autoregressive (AR) model

$$x_n + a_1 x_{n-1} + a_2 x_{n-2} + \cdots + a_M x_{n-M} = w_n, \tag{49}$$

where w_n is white noise with variance σ_w^2. The limit spectrum for the MA model is

$$\tilde{S}_x(f) = \sigma_w^2 \left| \sum_{q=0}^{L} b_q (e^{-i2\pi f})^q \right|^2 \tag{50}$$

and for the AR model it is

$$\tilde{S}_x(f) = \frac{\sigma_w^2}{\left| 1 + \sum_{p=1}^{M} a_p (e^{-i2\pi f})^p \right|^2}. \tag{51}$$

For a given time-series, either of the model orders L or M or both can be infinite. If one is finite, the other must be infinite. If a close approximation (or exact representation) of the MA type with low order L exists, then a close approximation (or exact representation) of the AR type must necessarily be of high order, $M >> L$, and vice versa. Also, a time-series that cannot be closely approximated by either a low-order MA model or a low-order AR model can in some instances be closely approximated (or exactly represented) by a low-order ARMA model

$$\begin{aligned} x_n + a_1 x_{n-1} + a_2 x_{n-2} + \cdots + a_M x_{n-M} \\ = b_0 w_n + b_1 w_{n-1} + b_2 w_{n-2} + \cdots + b_L w_{n-L}, \end{aligned} \tag{52}$$

which has limit spectrum

$$\bar{S}_x(f) = \frac{\sigma_w^2 \left| \sum_{q=0}^{L} b_q (e^{-i2\pi f})^q \right|^2}{\left| 1 + \sum_{p=1}^{M} a_p (e^{-i2\pi f})^p \right|^2}. \tag{53}$$

(Observe that for a given time-series, L in (52) and (53) cannot be the same as L in (48) and (50) unless $M = 0$, and M in (52) and (53) cannot be the same as M in (49) and (51) unless $L = 0$.) These general observations reveal the practical importance of the choice of model type when it is desired to fit a model to data—the primary reason for this being that model-fitting methods typically work best when the number of parameters in the model is minimal, and this is especially crucial when the amount of data available for model-fitting is limited. Generally speaking, reliable model fitting requires a number of data points N that greatly exceeds the number of parameters required for a good fit. Therefore, small N requires small L for an MA model, small M for an AR model, and small L and M for an ARMA model.

In order to determine what types of limit spectra are most easily modeled by the three model types, we observe that the MA model can produce $L/2$ nulls or very low valleys for positive frequencies at the roots on or very near the unit circle in the complex plane of its Lth-order polynomial transfer function

$$\mathcal{H}(z) = \sum_{q=0}^{L} b_q z^{-q}. \tag{54}$$

The AR model can produce $M/2$ infinite spikes or very high peaks for positive frequencies at the roots on or very near the unit circle of its Mth-order polynomial reciprocal-transfer function,

$$\frac{1}{\mathcal{H}(z)} = 1 + \sum_{p=1}^{M} a_p z^{-p}. \tag{55}$$

The ARMA model can produce both $L/2$ valleys and $M/2$ peaks (exercise 8).

Model fitting can be used for statistical spectral analysis in a straightforward way. Once a model has been fit to a time-series of data, the model-parameter estimates ($\{\hat{b}_q\}$ and $\hat{\sigma}_w$ for MA, $\{\hat{a}_p\}$ and $\hat{\sigma}_w$ for AR, or $\{\hat{b}_q\}$, $\{\hat{a}_p\}$, and $\hat{\sigma}_w$ for ARMA) are simply substituted into the limit spectrum formula for the model ((50) for MA, (51) for AR, or (53) for ARMA), and the resultant function is taken

as the spectrum estimate. The difficulty thus lies only in the model-fitting procedures. Unfortunately, many MA and ARMA model-fitting procedures require highly nonlinear iterative algorithms with various undesirable characteristics, such as potential convergence to local rather than global maxima and potential divergence of maximum likelihood methods or potentially poor performance of more approximate maximum likelihood and other methods of suboptimum model fitting. These problems often discourage the user from adopting MA and ARMA model-fitting approaches in favor of other approaches, such as direct methods and AR model-fitting methods. As a matter of fact, the direct methods all produce spectrum estimates of the MA type (with the exception of the minimum leakage method, which produces spectrum estimates of the AR and ARMA types). It is shown in exercise 10 that for the temporally smoothed periodogram (Bartlett-Welch method), the model order is $L = T \cong 1/\Delta f$, and for the spectrally smoothed periodogram (Wiener-Daniell method) the model order is exactly $L = \Delta t$ but is effectively only $L \cong 1/\Delta f$ because the coefficients $\{b_q : |q| > 1/\Delta f\}$ are relatively small in magnitude.

As a consequence of the foregoing facts, MA model-fitting methods for spectral analysis are primarily of interest in two types of situations: 1) those where highly accurate determination of spectral nulls is important enough to merit relatively complicated algorithms and 2) those where highly accurate determination of spectral nulls as well as spikes is important, in which case AR modeling methods can be (but are not necessarily) inadequate and ARMA methods (which typically involve both AR and MA methods) can therefore be desirable. There are also some other situations where ARMA model-fitting methods can be of interest. For example, time-series consisting of either the sum of two independent AR time-series or the sum of an AR signal time-series and a broadband (white) noise time-series result in ARMA time-series with equal AR and MA orders, $L = M$. Some suboptimum but computationally manageable methods for ARMA model fitting have recently been proposed for such time-series.

In contrast to the relatively limited attractiveness of MA and ARMA parametric methods of spectral analysis, AR methods are very attractive in applications where low-order (and even some relatively high-order) AR models are appropriate. The primary reason is twofold: 1) many AR methods require only linear algorithms that are not computationally intensive and 2) AR methods can produce spectral resolution performance that is superior to that of direct methods, especially for spectra with multiple spikes, or at least dominant peaks, and short data segments. Motivated by the relative attractiveness of AR methods, the treatment of model-fitting methods presented here is limited primarily to those based on the AR model. However, a brief discussion of the ARMA model-fitting problem, which involves both MA and AR techniques, is given in Section D.

The fundamental difference between the resolution capabilities of direct methods and AR model-fitting methods can be seen by considering the fact that the narrowest peak resolvable with a direct method (without sequential sine wave removal) using N data points is on the order of $1/N$, and this can be attained only when no averaging (to reduce random effects) is done, whereas there is no fundamental limit on the resolvable width of a peak with an AR method since

the resolution width for a given spectral peak is simply the reciprocal of the distance between the location of the corresponding root of the polynomial (55) for the model and the unit circle in the complex plane. This difference in resolution capabilities is illustrated in Figures 9-2 and 9-3, where the *ideal spectra obtained from exact values of the limit autocorrelation* $\tilde{R}_x$ *for a limited number of lag values* are shown for the Blackman-Tukey (BT) direct method with triangle window ((143) in Chapter 6), the minimum leakage (ML) methods ((52) and (56) in Chapter 6), and the Yule-Walker (YW) autoregressive method ((51) and (8)). In Figure 9-2, the autocorrelation

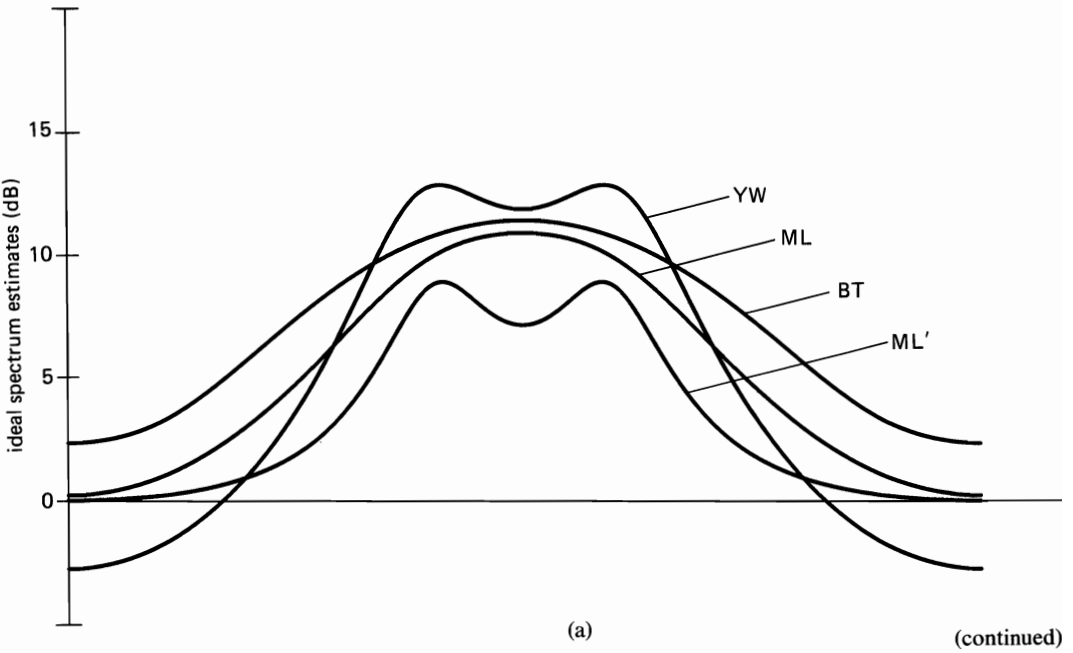
$$\tilde{R}_x(k) = \delta(k) + A\cos(\omega_1 k) + B\cos(\omega_2 k) \tag{56}$$

for the sum of two sine waves in additive white noise is used, and in Figure 9-3 the autocorrelation

$$\begin{aligned}\tilde{R}_x(k) = {} & Ae^{-\alpha|k|}\left[\cos(\omega_1 k) + \left(\frac{\alpha}{\omega_1}\right)\sin(\omega_1|k|)\right] \\ & + Be^{-\beta|k|}\left[\cos(\omega_2 k) + \left(\frac{\beta}{\omega_2}\right)\sin(\omega_2|k|)\right]\end{aligned} \tag{57}$$

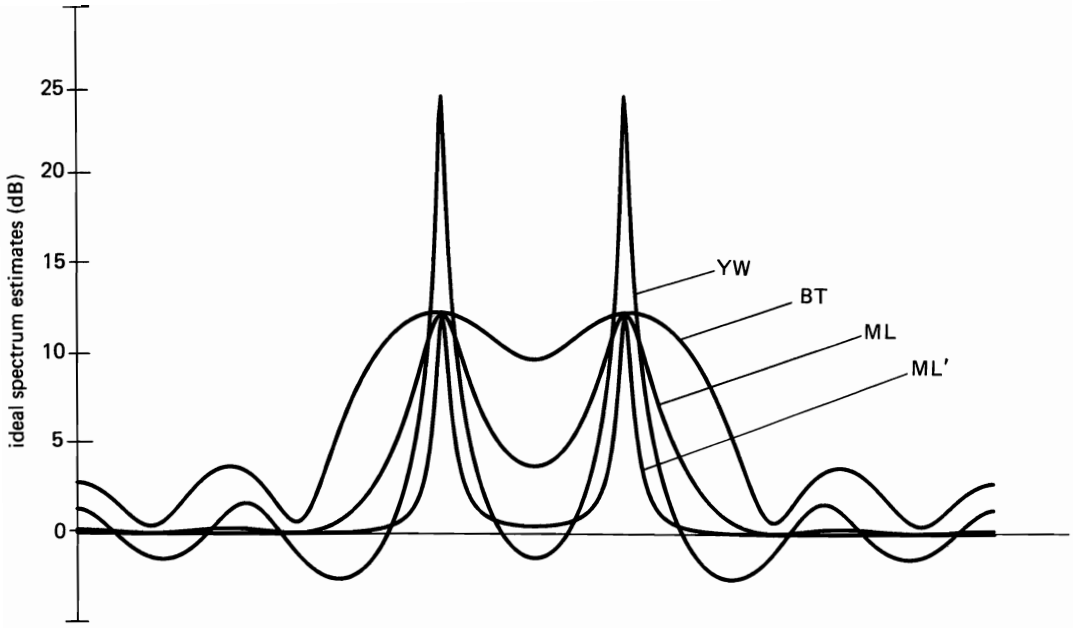
for a fourth-order ARMA time-series, obtained from adding two uncorrelated second-order AR time-series together, is used. The parameter values used are

$$\omega_1 = \frac{2\pi}{5},\ \omega_2 = \frac{3\pi}{5},\ A = B = 2\sqrt{2},\ \alpha = \frac{1}{50},\ \beta = \frac{1}{25}.$$

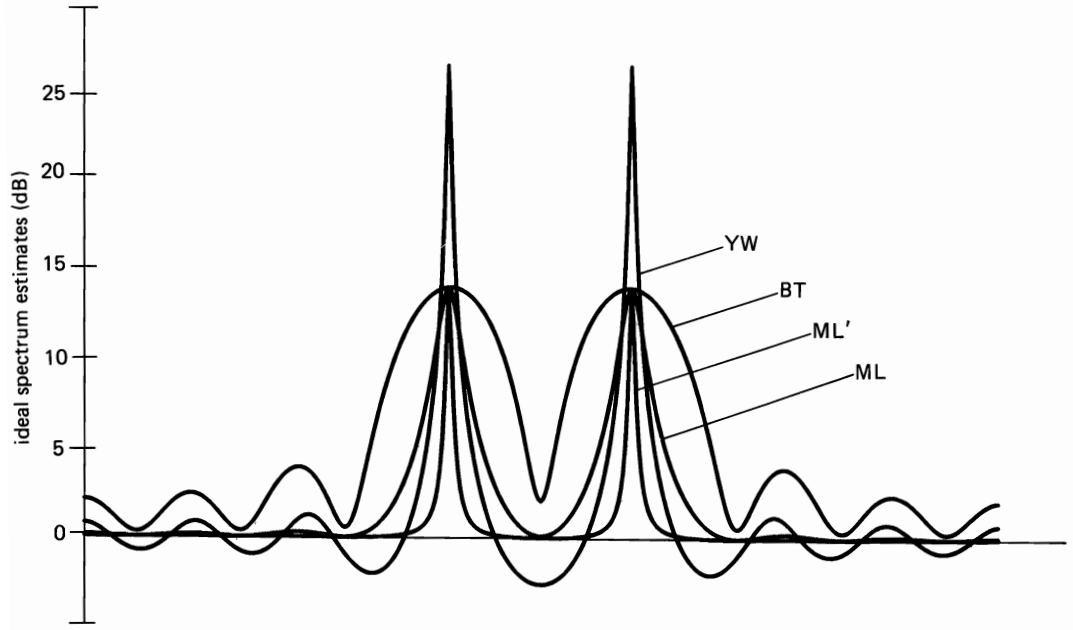


(continued)

Figure 9-2 Different spectrum estimates for $0 \leq f \leq 1/2$ obtained using exact values of the limit autocorrelation $\tilde{R}_x(k) = \delta(k) + 2\sqrt{2}[\cos(\omega_1 k) + \cos(\omega_2 k)]$: (a) $|k| \leq 6$. (b) $|k| \leq 12$. (c) $|k| \leq 18$.

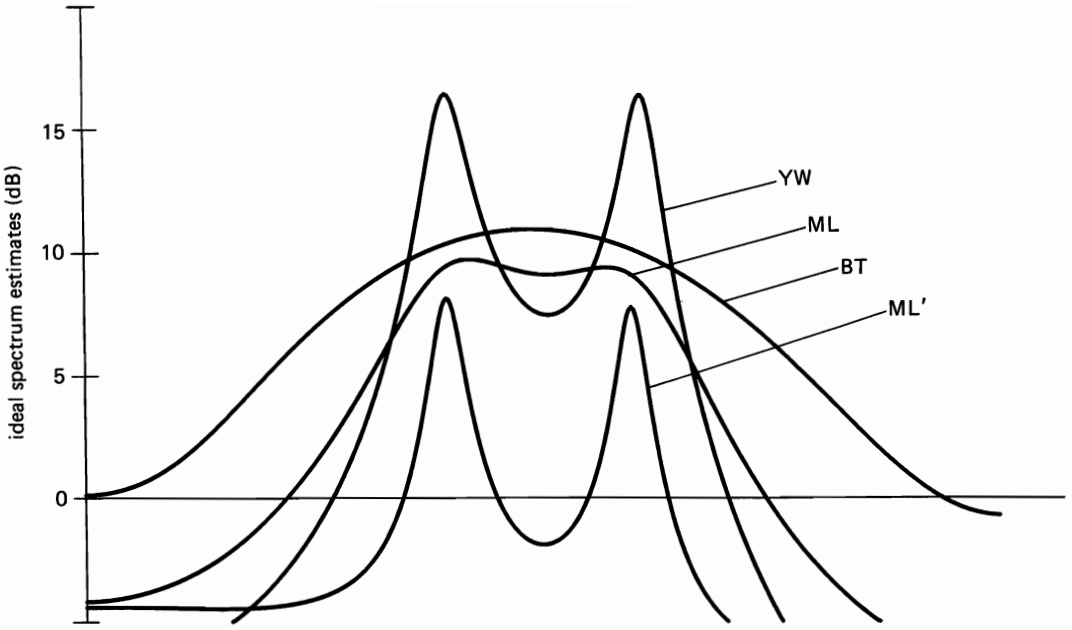


(b)

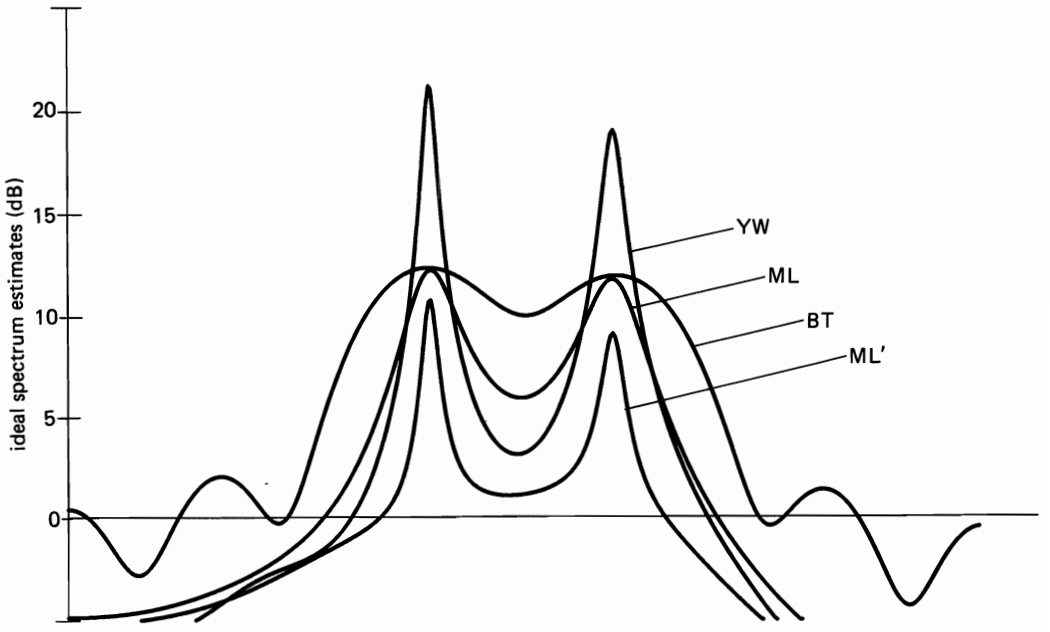


(c)

Figure 9-2 (continued)



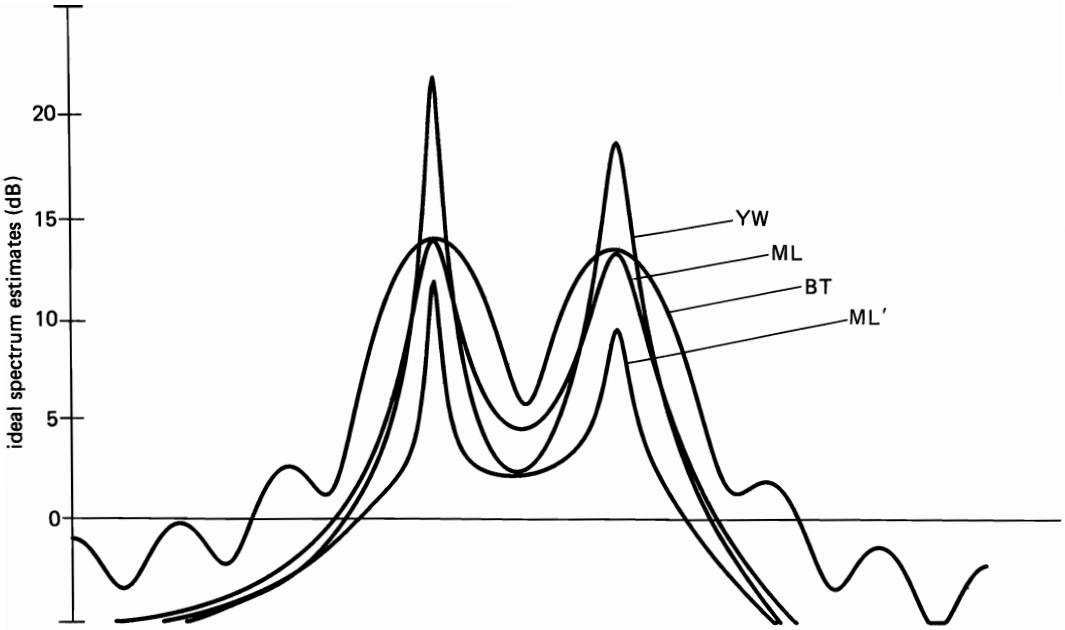
(a)



(b)

(continued)

Figure 9-3 Different spectrum estimates for $0 \leq f \leq 1/2$ obtained using exact values of the limit autocorrelation $\tilde{R}_x(k) = 2\sqrt{2}\{e^{-\alpha|k|}[\cos(\omega_1 k) + (\alpha/\omega_1)\sin(\omega_1 k)] + e^{-\beta|k|}[\cos(\omega_2 k) + (\beta/\omega_2)\sin(\omega_2 k)]\}$: (a) $|k| \leq 6$. (b) $|k| \leq 12$. (c) $|k| \leq 18$.



(c)

Figure 9-3 (continued)

In spite of the theoretically unlimited capability for resolving $M/2$ peaks with an Mth-order AR spectrum estimate, there is still a fundamental trade-off between resolution and reliability. Specifically, it can be shown [Berk 1974] that for zero-mean Gaussian data, the least squares procedures for AR model-fitting lead to an asymptotic ($N \to \infty$, $M \to \infty$) variance given by

$$\text{var}\{S_x(f)_{\text{AR}}\} \cong \frac{2M}{N}[\tilde{S}_x(f)]^2. \tag{58}$$

Thus, like the direct methods, the variance is inversely proportional to $\Delta t \cong N$; but unlike the direct methods, the variance is proportional to the number $M/2$ of resolvable peaks, rather than the reciprocal of the resolution width Δf. Also, in spite of the theoretical resolution limitation of the direct methods that simply time-average or frequency-smooth the periodogram, more sophisticated use of the DFT (e.g., sequential removal of sine wave component estimates; see exercise 22) can in fact produce much higher resolution of spectral peaks as illustrated in Section E. These observations reveal that even when high resolution is a major objective, the choice between methods based on the DFT and those based on AR model fitting is not clear-cut. It is also important to recognize that comparison of *ideal* spectra as in Figures 9-2 and 9-3, although of some utility, can be a misleading indication of comparative performance of corresponding spectrum estimators that use random data. For example, it is shown in Section E that the resolution capability of the ML method is not necessarily inferior to that of the YW method when variability effects are taken into account.

2. Least Squares Procedures

We know from the theory of AR modeling (Section B) that any time-series can be arbitrarily closely modeled by an AR model of sufficiently large but finite order M and that for an Mth-order AR time-series (49), the limit spectrum is given by (51), where the parameters $\{a_p\}_1^M$ minimize the prediction-error variance

$$\min_{\{a_p\}} \langle [x_n - \hat{x}_n]^2 \rangle = b^2, \tag{59a}$$

where

$$\hat{x}_n = -\sum_{p=1}^{M} a_p x_{n-p} \tag{59b}$$

$$b^2 = \sigma_w^2. \tag{59c}$$

This suggests the approach to spectrum estimation of using a finite number, say K, of time-samples of the prediction error to estimate the prediction-error variance and then minimizing this estimated variance with respect to the model parameters:

$$\min_{\{\hat{a}_p\}} \frac{1}{K} \sum_{n=0}^{K-1} w_n^2 = \hat{b}^2, \tag{60a}$$

where

$$w_n \triangleq x_n - \hat{x}_n \tag{60b}$$

$$\hat{x}_n \triangleq -\sum_{p=1}^{M} \hat{a}_p x_{n-p}. \tag{60c}$$

The solution $\{\hat{a}_p\}_1^M$ yields what is called the Mth-order *least squares* (LS) *linear predictor* (60c) and the corresponding LS AR spectrum estimate,

$$S_x(f)_{\text{AR}} \triangleq \frac{\hat{b}^2}{\left|1 + \sum_{p=1}^{M} \hat{a}_p (e^{-i2\pi f})^p\right|^2}. \tag{61}$$

The solution can be obtained from the necessary and sufficient *orthogonality condition*

$$\sum_{n=0}^{K-1} w_n x_{n-q} = 0, \qquad q = 1, 2, 3, \ldots, M, \tag{62}$$

which results from equating to zero the derivatives of the sum of squared errors in (60) with respect to the M parameters $\{\hat{a}_p\}_1^M$ (exercise 11). Substitution of (60b) for w_n into (62) yields

$$\sum_{n=0}^{K-1} \left(x_n + \sum_{p=1}^{M} \hat{a}_p x_{n-p}\right) x_{n-q} = 0, \qquad q = 1, 2, 3, \ldots, M, \tag{63}$$

which can be reexpressed as

$$\sum_{p=1}^{M} R_x(q, p)_K \hat{a}_p = -R_x(q, 0)_K, \qquad q = 1, 2, 3, \ldots, M, \tag{64}$$

where

$$R_x(q, p)_K \triangleq \frac{1}{K} \sum_{n=0}^{K-1} x_{n-p} x_{n-q} = R_x(p, q)_K. \tag{65}$$

The M equations (64) are the finite-data counterparts of the normal equations discussed in Part 3 of Section B (and are also called *normal equations*). In practice, only a finite segment $\{x_0, x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_{N-1}\}$ of data is available, and there are several ways to deal with this in (65), each of which gives rise to a distinct LS AR spectrum estimate. These are described in the following. For all methods it is required that $M < N$, at least, but the methods are often most useful for $M \ll N$.

The linear prediction equation (60c) can be expressed in matrix form as follows (for $K \geq N + M$):

$$\begin{bmatrix} 0 & & & \\ x_0 & & & \\ x_1 & x_0 & & \\ x_2 & x_1 & x_0 & \\ \vdots & & \ddots & \\ \hline x_{M-1} & & \cdots & x_0 \\ \vdots & & & \vdots \\ x_{N-2} & & \cdots & x_{N-M-1} \\ \hline x_{N-1} & & \cdots & x_{N-M} \\ & & \ddots & \vdots \\ & & & x_{N-1} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} -\hat{a}_1 \\ -\hat{a}_2 \\ -\hat{a}_3 \\ \vdots \\ -\hat{a}_M \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \hat{x}_0 \\ \hat{x}_1 \\ \hat{x}_2 \\ \vdots \\ \hat{x}_{M-1} \\ \hline \hat{x}_M \\ \vdots \\ \hat{x}_{N-1} \\ \hline \hat{x}_N \\ \vdots \\ \hat{x}_{N+M-1} \end{bmatrix} \tag{66}$$

Only the predictors for the time points $n = 0, 1, 2, 3, \ldots, N + M - 1$ are included in (66) because these are the only times at which data is available. In fact the predictions $\hat{x}_n$ for $n = 0, 1, 2, 3, \ldots, M - 1$ are not truly of order M due to lack of data at the beginning; the same is true for $n = N + 1, N + 2, N + 3, \ldots, N + M - 1$ at the end. It can be argued that the resultant prediction filter specified by the solution $\{\hat{a}_p\}_1^M$ to (66) might be more appropriate if these $2M$ lower-order predictors were not included in the estimate of error variance to be minimized, (60a). This can be accomplished by changing the range of summation in (60a) and therefore in (65) from $[0, K - 1]$ to $[M, K - 1]$ and choosing $K = N + 1$. Also, since the Nth predictor $\hat{x}_N$ has no corresponding datum value x_N with which to determine the error w_N, then it can be argued that $K = N$ is a better choice. This corresponds to retaining only the portion of the matrices within the dashed lines in (66). Because the resultant matrix $R_x(q, p)_K$ is symmetric and nonnegative definite, it has all the properties of a covariance matrix, and this LS method is therefore often called the *covariance method*. In this case, $M < N/2$ is required for the existence of the inverse of the covariance matrix.

As an alternative to the covariance method, if all predictors in (66) are retained, then it can be shown (exercise 12) that (65) reduces (for $K \geq N + M$)

to

$$R_x(q, p)_K = \frac{1}{K} \sum_{n=\max\{p,q\}}^{N-1+\min\{p,q\}} x_{n-p} x_{n-q}$$
$$= \frac{1}{K} \sum_{n=0}^{N-1-|p-q|} x_{n+|p-q|} x_n \triangleq R_x(q - p)_K. \tag{67}$$

Because this matrix is symmetric, Toeplitz, and nonnegative definite, it has all the properties of a matrix obtained from an autocorrelation sequence (e.g., $\bar{R}_x(q, p) \triangleq \bar{R}_x(q - p)$), and this LS method is therefore often called the *autocorrelation method*. With (67) substituted into (64), we obtain the particular form of normal equations called the Yule-Walker equations (for finite data) as described in Part 1 of Section B, although only the first part, (8a), of the Yule-Walker equations is obtained here; nevertheless the second part, (8b), also arises, as explained later. Consequently, the autocorrelation method is also called the *Yule-Walker* (YW) *method*.

Now that we have methods for obtaining the parameter estimates $\{\hat{a}_p\}_1^M$ in the spectrum estimate (61), we must determine methods for obtaining the additional parameter estimate $\hat{b}^2$ in (61), which represents the intensity of the spectrum estimate. This parameter estimate is simply the value of the minimized sum of squared prediction errors (60a), and it can be shown (exercise 11) by using the orthogonality condition (62) that

$$\hat{b}^2 \triangleq \frac{1}{K} \sum_{n=0}^{K-1} w_n^2 = \frac{1}{K} \sum_{n=0}^{K-1} w_n x_n. \tag{68}$$

Substitution of (60b) and (60c) into (68) yields the desired result,

$$\hat{b}^2 = R_x(0, 0)_K + \sum_{p=1}^{M} \hat{a}_p R_x(0, p)_K. \tag{69}$$

For the autocorrelation method, this reduces to the other part (8b) of the (finite-data) Yule-Walker equations. Consequently, the parameter estimates $\{\hat{a}_p\}_1^M$ and $\hat{b}$ in the LS spectrum estimate (61) using the autocorrelation method can be obtained using the efficient Levinson-Durbin algorithm described in Part 2 of Section B. As a matter of fact, there is an efficient generalized Levinson recursion [Morf et al. 1977; Honig and Messerschmitt 1984; Marple 1987] that applies to the covariance method so that both methods possess efficient implementations.

Before proceeding, it is mentioned that an interesting interpretation of the AR spectrum estimate provided by the YW method can be obtained from the fact that the AR model specified by the Yule-Walker equations is a maximum-entropy model, as explained in Part 5 of Section B. Consequently, if the finite set of correlogram values (67) used in the finite-data Yule-Walker equations are interpreted as values of the limit autocorrelation, then the AR spectrum estimate can be interpreted as a maximum-entropy (ME) spectrum estimate. The maximum-entropy interpretation of AR spectrum estimation was first promoted by John P. Burg, who also exploited the connection with least squares prediction [Burg 1967]. Another interesting interpretation of the AR spectrum estimate provided

by the YW method can be obtained from the fact that the Yule-Walker equations extrapolate the limit autocorrelation, as explained in Part 1 of Section B. Consequently, the AR spectrum estimate can be interpreted as the FST of an extrapolated version of the correlogram. This interpretation reveals the fact that AR methods of spectral analysis avoid the leakage effects resulting from the actual or effective autocorrelation windowing operation that occurs in the direct methods. This advantage was apparently first explained in [Burg 1967].

It is also interesting that in the limit as the amount of data N approaches infinity, both the autocovariance and autocorrelation matrices equal the limit autocorrelation matrix $\tilde{R}_x(p - q)$, and therefore both methods yield the same spectrum estimate, (61), in the limit. Also, as the order M approaches infinity ($M < N$), this spectrum estimate becomes the exact limit spectrum $\tilde{S}_x(f)$. (If the time-series is truly of the AR type with order M_0, then only $M = M_0$ is needed.) Although these asymptotic properties are comforting, they are not particularly helpful in the case of primary concern in practice, namely, that of small N and, therefore, small M.

A primary source of poor performance of LS AR spectrum estimates in practice is an insufficient amount of data (small N). But some improvement can be made by using the available data more efficiently. One method for accomplishing this is based on the fact that for data from a time-invariant phenomenon, the ideal (infinite data) forward and backward prediction filters are identical. Consequently, we can double the number of prediction errors used to estimate the error variance to be minimized. That is, we can minimize the following sum of squared errors:

$$\hat{b}^2 \triangleq \frac{1}{K} \sum_{n=0}^{K-1} (w_n^2 + \breve{w}_n^2), \tag{70a}$$

where

$$\breve{w}_n \triangleq x_{n-M} - \breve{x}_{n-M} \tag{70b}$$

is the backward prediction error and

$$\breve{x}_{n-M} \triangleq -\sum_{p=1}^{M} \hat{a}_p x_{n-M+p} \tag{70c}$$

is the backward predictor. It can be shown (exercise 13) that the LS prediction parameters are specified by the linear equations

$$\sum_{p=1}^{M} [R_x(q, p)_K + \breve{R}_x(q, p)_K]\hat{a}_p = -[R_x(q, 0)_K + \breve{R}_x(q, 0)_K], \qquad q = 1, 2, 3, \ldots, M, \tag{71}$$

where $R_x(q, p)_K$ is given by (65) and

$$\breve{R}_x(q, p) \triangleq \frac{1}{K} \sum_{n=0}^{K-1} x_{n-M+p} x_{n-M+q} = \breve{R}_x(p, q)_K. \tag{72}$$

This method of spectrum estimation is called the *forward-backward* (FB) LS

method. In the autocorrelation version of this method, $R_x(p, q)_K$ is given by (67) and (exercise 12)

$$\begin{aligned}\check{R}_x(p, q)_K &= \frac{1}{K} \sum_{n=\max\{M-p, M-q\}}^{N-1+\min\{M-p, M-q\}} x_{n-M+p} x_{n-M+q} \\ &= \frac{1}{K} \sum_{n=0}^{N-1-|p-q|} x_{n+|p-q|} x_n \equiv R_x(p, q)_K,\end{aligned} \tag{73}$$

and therefore (71) is identical to (64); this method is thus identical to the forward-only autocorrelation method. Consequently, it is only the covariance version of this method that is of interest. In this case it can be shown that

$$\begin{aligned}R_x(p, q)_K + \check{R}_x(p, q)_K &= \frac{1}{K} \sum_{n=M}^{N-1} x_{n-p} x_{n-q} + \frac{1}{K} \sum_{n=M}^{N-1} x_{n-M+p} x_{n-M+q} \\ &= \frac{1}{K} \sum_{n=0}^{N-M-1} x_{n+M-p} x_{n+M-q} + \frac{1}{K} \sum_{n=0}^{N-1-M} x_{n+p} x_{n+q} \\ &\triangleq \mathring{R}_x(p, q)_N = \mathring{R}_x(q, p)_N.\end{aligned} \tag{74}$$

Also, it can be shown (exercise 13) that the minimized sum of squared errors is given by

$$\hat{b}^2 = \frac{1}{K} \sum_{n=0}^{K-1} [w_n x_n + \check{w}_n x_{n-M}]. \tag{75}$$

Substitution of (60b), (60c), (70b), and (70c) into (75) yields the explicit result

$$\hat{b}^2 = R_x(0, 0)_K + \check{R}_x(0, 0)_K + \sum_{p=1}^{M} \hat{a}_p [R_x(0, p)_K + \check{R}_x(0, p)_K]. \tag{76}$$

Equations (71) and (76) together with (74) can be combined into a single matrix equation

$$\begin{bmatrix} \mathring{R}_x(0, 0)_N & \mathring{R}_x(0,1)_N & \mathring{R}_x(0, 2)_N & \cdots & \mathring{R}_x(0, M)_N \\ \mathring{R}_x(1, 0)_N & \mathring{R}_x(1, 1)_N & \mathring{R}_x(1, 2)_N & \cdots & \mathring{R}_x(1, M)_N \\ \mathring{R}_x(2, 0)_N & \mathring{R}_x(2, 1)_N & \mathring{R}_x(2, 2)_N & \cdots & \mathring{R}_x(2, M)_N \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\ \mathring{R}_x(M, 0)_N & \mathring{R}_x(M, 1)_N & \mathring{R}_x(M, 2)_N & \cdots & \mathring{R}_x(M, M)_N \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ \hat{a}_1 \\ \hat{a}_2 \\ \vdots \\ \hat{a}_M \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \hat{b}^2 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ \vdots \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \tag{77}$$

where the definition (74) of $\mathring{R}_x(p, q)_N$ is extended from $p, q = 1, 2, 3, \ldots, M$ to $p, q = 0, 1, 2, \ldots, M$. For the existence of the inverse of the matrix $\mathring{R}_x$, it is required that $M < N/3$. Efficient algorithms for solution of these linear equations are available [Dickinson and Turner 1979] (for $M < 50$), [Marple 1980] (for $M > 50$). The FB LS method was originally proposed independently in [Ulrych and Clayton 1976] and [Nuttall 1976].

In summary, for the autocorrelation (or YW) LS method, the parameter estimates $\hat{b}^2$ and $\{\hat{a}_p\}_1^M$ in the spectrum estimate (61) can be obtained by solving the normal equations (64) and (69) using the autocorrelation sequence estimate (67), and this can be accomplished with the Levinson-Durbin algorithm (9) using

the estimate (67) in place of the limit autocorrelation sequence $\tilde{R}_x$. For the covariance LS method, the parameter estimates in (61) can be obtained by solving the normal equations (64) and (69) using the covariance matrix estimate (65) with $[0, K-1]$ replaced with $[M, K-1]$ and $K = N$. For the FB LS method, the parameter estimates in (61) can be obtained by solving the normal equations (64) and (69) using the matrix (74) in place of that specified by (65). This is summarized in (77).

A variation that predates the FB LS method and is perhaps the most popular of the AR methods is called the *Burg method* in honor of its originator John P. Burg [Burg 1968]. The Burg method is based on constrained least squares forward-backward prediction. That is, the AR parameters are obtained by minimization of the sum of squared errors

$$\hat{b}^2(M) = \frac{1}{2(N-M)} \sum_{n=M}^{N-1} (w_n^2 + \breve{w}_n^2) \tag{78}$$

as in the FB LS method but subject to the constraint that the parameter estimates satisfy the recursion

$$\hat{a}_p(M) = \hat{a}_p(M-1) + \hat{a}_M(M)\hat{a}_{M-p}(M-1), \qquad p = 1, 2, 3, \ldots, M-1. \tag{79}$$

The notation $\hat{a}_p(M)$ denotes the estimate of the pth parameter in the Mth-order model. The recursion (79) arises in the Levinson-Durbin algorithm described in Part 2 of Section B and is automatically satisfied by the AR parameters obtained using the YW (autocorrelation) method. It is introduced here as a constraint in order to ensure that the AR parameter estimates will yield a stable filter (roots of (55) inside the unit circle). The limits on the sum in (78) are those corresponding to the covariance method and are used here to avoid the edge effects that were discussed in arriving at the covariance method. Thus, the Burg method combines features of the three preceding AR methods: the autocorrelation, covariance and forward-backward least squares methods.

It is easily shown (exercise 5) by substitution of the constraint (79) into the expressions for w_n and $\breve{w}_n$, (60) and (70), that these error sequences obey the lattice recursions (see (35) and (37))

$$w_n(M) = w_n(M-1) + \hat{a}_M(M)\breve{w}_{n-1}(M-1) \tag{80a}$$

$$\breve{w}_n(M) = \breve{w}_{n-1}(M-1) + \hat{a}_M(M)w_n(M-1). \tag{80b}$$

It follows immediately by substitution of these recursions into (78) that the constrained sum of squared errors to be minimized can be expressed as

$$\hat{b}^2(M) = \frac{1}{2(N-M)} \sum_{n=M}^{N-1} \{[w_n(M-1) + \hat{a}_M(M)\breve{w}_{n-1}(M-1)]^2 + [\breve{w}_{n-1}(M-1) + \hat{a}_M(M)w_n(M-1)]^2\}. \tag{81}$$

Since $w_n(M-1)$ and $\breve{w}_{n-1}(M-1)$ depend only on the data $\{x_0, x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_{N-1}\}$ and the parameters $\{a_1(M-1), a_2(M-1), a_3(M-1), \ldots, a_{M-1}(M-1)\}$ of the $(M-1)$st-order model, then $\hat{b}^2(M)$ can be minimized recursively. Given the parameters of the $(M-1)$st-order model, $\hat{b}^2(M)$ can be minimized by equating to zero its derivative with respect to $\hat{a}_M(M)$. This yields (exercise 14)

the solution

$$\hat{a}_M(M) = \frac{-2\sum_{n=M}^{N-1} w_n(M-1)\breve{w}_{n-1}(M-1)}{\sum_{n=M}^{N-1} [w_n^2(M-1) + \breve{w}_{n-1}^2(M-1)]} \tag{82}$$

in which the denominator, denoted by $d(M)$, can be reexpressed as

$$d(M) = 2(N-M+1)\hat{b}^2(M-1) - w_{M-1}^2(M-1) - \breve{w}_{N-1}^2(M-1). \tag{83}$$

Furthermore, (81)–(83) can be used to show (exercise 14) that the denominator obeys the recursion

$$d(M) = [1 - \hat{a}_{M-1}^2(M-1)]\, d(M-1) - w_{M-1}^2(M-1) - \breve{w}_{N-1}^2(M-1) \tag{84}$$

and also that

$$\hat{b}^2(M) = [1 - \hat{a}_M^2(M)]\frac{d(M)}{2(N-M)}. \tag{85}$$

In summary, the *Burg algorithm* consists of the following three steps:

1. Initialize the parameters with $M = 0$, $\hat{a}_0(0) = 0$, $w_n(0) = \breve{w}_n(0) = x_n$,
$$\hat{b}^2(0) = \frac{1}{N}\sum_{n=0}^{N-1} x_n^2, \qquad \text{and} \qquad d(1) = 2N\hat{b}^2(0) - x_0^2 - x_{N-1}^2.$$
2. Increase M by 1 and compute $\hat{a}_M(M)$ using (82); then (for $M \geq 2$) compute $\{\hat{a}_p(M) : p = 1, 2, 3, \ldots, M-1\}$ using recursion (79) and compute $\hat{b}^2(M)$ using (85).
3. If M is not large enough, update $w_n(M-1)$ and $\breve{w}_n(M-1)$ for $n = M-1, M, M+1, \ldots, N-1$ using recursions (80a) and (80b), update $d(M)$ using recursion (84), and return to Step 2.

Observe that unlike the three preceding AR methods, the Burg method computes the AR parameter estimates directly from the data without first computing an autocorrelation sequence or covariance matrix from the data.

For applications involving sine waves in noise, a recently proposed modification of the Burg algorithm can provide improved performance. The modified algorithm results from weighting the prediction errors before carrying out the constrained minimization (see [Kaveh and Lippert 1983; Paliwal 1985; Helme and Nikias 1985]). Another modification that can be applied not only to the Burg method but to the other AR methods as well and that can provide improved resolution is based on channelization and decimation, or subsampling (see Part 4 of Section C in Chapter 6), prior to AR parameter estimation [Quirk and Liu 1983].

A primary source of limitation on the performance of the preceding AR spectrum estimation methods is the limited accuracy of the autocorrelation estimates used (or implied in the case of the Burg method). The errors in these estimates

limit the accuracy of the AR parameter estimates. An interesting alternative approach that can reduce sensitivity to errors in the autocorrelation estimates introduces another stage of least squares approximation [Mehra 1971]. This approach is motivated by the Yule-Walker equations (8a), which can be expressed in matrix form (similar to (8d)) as

$$\begin{bmatrix} \tilde{R}_x(0) & \tilde{R}_x(-1) & \tilde{R}_x(-2) & \dots & \tilde{R}_x(1-M) \\ \tilde{R}_x(1) & \tilde{R}_x(0) & \tilde{R}_x(-1) & \dots & \tilde{R}_x(2-M) \\ \tilde{R}_x(2) & \tilde{R}_x(1) & \tilde{R}_x(0) & \dots & \tilde{R}_x(3-M) \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\ \tilde{R}_x(Q-1) & \tilde{R}_x(Q-2) & \tilde{R}_x(Q-3) & \dots & \tilde{R}_x(Q-M) \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} a_1 \\ a_2 \\ a_3 \\ \vdots \\ a_M \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} -\tilde{R}_x(1) \\ -\tilde{R}_x(2) \\ -\tilde{R}_x(3) \\ \vdots \\ -\tilde{R}_x(Q) \end{bmatrix} \tag{86}$$

where $Q > M$. Although this means that there are more equations than unknowns, these are consistent equations, which possess a solution $\{a_p\}_1^M$ (assuming that $\tilde{R}_x$ is indeed the autocorrelation sequence of an Mth-order AR time-series). This is a result of the autocorrelation extrapolation property of AR models (see Part 1 of Section B), which reveals that there is linear dependence among the rows of the matrix in (86). However, when the entries of the matrix are replaced with the autocorrelation estimates $R_x(p-q)_K$ specified by (67), the errors in these estimates typically remove all linear dependence among the rows, yielding an inconsistent set of $Q > M$ equations, expressed in matrix form as

$$\boldsymbol{R}_x\hat{\boldsymbol{a}} \cong -\boldsymbol{r}_x, \tag{87}$$

where $\boldsymbol{R}_x$ and $\boldsymbol{r}_x$ are defined by

$$R_x(p, q) \triangleq R_x(p-q)_K \tag{88a}$$

$$r_x(p) \triangleq R_x(p)_K \tag{88b}$$

and the elements of $\hat{\boldsymbol{a}}$ are the desired AR parameter estimates. The approximation in (87) reflects the inconsistency of these Q equations. To accommodate this situation, let us obtain the AR parameter estimates by minimizing the sum of squared errors in (87). This sum of Q squared errors can be expressed as the squared Euclidean norm of the vector of errors, and therefore the parameter estimates are given by the solution to the norm-minimization problem

$$\min_{\hat{\boldsymbol{a}}} \|\boldsymbol{R}_x\hat{\boldsymbol{a}} + \boldsymbol{r}_x\|. \tag{89}$$

Thus, $\hat{\boldsymbol{a}}$ is the least squares solution to the set of inconsistent estimated Yule-Walker equations.[4] This solution is given by the pseudo-inverse of the nonsquare matrix $\boldsymbol{R}_x$ (exercise 16),

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{a}} = -[\boldsymbol{R}_x'\boldsymbol{R}_x]^{-1}\boldsymbol{R}_x'\boldsymbol{r}_x. \tag{90}$$

Various algorithms for this matrix inversion are given in [Lawson and Hanson 1974]. In spite of the fact that the $Q \times M$ matrix includes entries whose estimation errors are typically greater than those in the $M \times M$ matrix used in the YW

[4] By substitution of (88a) and (88b) into (89), it can be seen that the solution of (89) is the least squares extrapolator of the sequence $R_x(n)_K$.

method (because their lag values, $|p - q|$, are greater, and therefore the numbers of terms averaged to obtain the estimates (67) are smaller), this least squares procedure reportedly can outperform the other AR methods, especially for time-series with sharply peaked spectra, (e.g., for sine waves in additive noise) but not necessarily for smoother spectra (see [Kaveh and Bruzzone 1981]). This method is called the *overdetermined normal equations* (ODNE) *method* of spectrum estimation. Some users of this method recommend using the unbiased correlation matrix estimate $[K/(N - |p - q|)]\boldsymbol{R}_x$ in place of the biased estimate $\boldsymbol{R}_x$ (exercise 12), especially for time-series with sharply peaked spectra.

If $Q << N$ in the ODNE method, then the accuracy of the autocorrelation estimates that are added to the $M \times M$ matrix to obtain the $Q \times M$ matrix is essentially as good as the accuracy of the autocorrelation estimates in the $M \times M$ matrix, because the number of terms $N - |p - q|$ averaged to obtain the estimate $R_x(p - q)_K$ in (67) is nearly equal to N for all values of p and q. Thus, in this case the ODNE method is justified by the argument that the M AR parameters should satisfy every set of M Yule-Walker equations, not just the set with the smallest lag values $|p - q|$. Although more than one set cannot simultaneously be satisfied, the closest simultaneous fit to a number $(Q - M + 1)$ of sets is more appropriate than a perfect fit to one set, which need not be any more appropriate than the other sets. In fact, data that exhibit sharply peaked spectra have autocorrelations that oscillate for relatively large values of lag $|p - q|$ (see Figure 1-2). This oscillatory behavior is better reflected in the $Q >> M$ normal equations, which involve larger lag values, than in the M normal equations corresponding to the smallest lag values. (It is also better reflected in the unbiased correlation matrix estimate than in the biased estimate that is effectively attenuated at larger lag values.) Although this argument is not as strong when Q is not much smaller than N, in practice good results have been obtained with relatively large values of Q (see [Tufts and Kumaresan 1982; Cadzow 1982; Cadzow et al. 1983]).

Once the AR parameter estimates have been obtained using (90), the parameter b^2 in (4) can then be estimated by one of several possible methods. For example, the Yule-Walker equation (8b) can be used as a basis, together with the estimates of $\tilde{R}_x(k)$ and a_p. Or, as a potentially superior approach, the estimate of b^2 can simply be taken to be the time-averaged, squared prediction error obtained using the AR parameter estimates as the predictor coefficients.

3. Model-Order Determination

When any of the preceding AR methods of spectral analysis are used in practice, they require a technique for determining an appropriate model order M. For example, this task must be performed in order to carry out the third step in the Burg algorithm. In view of the preliminary discussion of AR, MA, and ARMA modeling in Part 1 of Section B, it would appear that the largest possible order should be used. However, the effects of a limited data segment intervene, and we find that there is a trade-off to be dealt with. Specifically, although the bias of the spectrum estimate can in principle be reduced by increasing M, the

variance of the spectrum estimate typically increases as M is increased. In particular, in order to maintain a small variance for the AR parameter estimates (and therefore for the AR spectrum estimate) it is generally required that $M \ll N$. Thus, the smaller the data-segment length N is, the smaller the order M must be. But if M is too small, then the resolution capability of the spectrum estimate is inadequate, and the bias is therefore large. For example, an Mth-order AR spectrum can contain no more than $M/2$ peaks (at positive frequencies). Thus, if M is too small, the spectrum estimate will be too smooth. But if M is too large, the large variance is typically exhibited in the form of spurious peaks. Thus, for a given length N of the data segment, there is in principle an optimal order M. However, this optimum depends on the underlying phenomenon that gives rise to the data as well as on the particular data segment and its length. Consequently, the order of the AR model to be used for spectral analysis must be determined from the data itself, except in those fortunate situations for which knowledge of the phenomenon dictates a specific order (that is manageable with the given data, e.g., $M < N/2$). As a general rule, the best order is typically within the range from $N/20$ to $N/5$, but for particularly short data segments the best order can be as large as $N/3$ or even $N/2$.

There are several techniques for automatically estimating an order according to specific optimization criteria. An ideal order-determining technique would use a concave-upward cost function, so that a unique minimum would exist and it would therefore not be necessary to try all orders $M < N$ to find the optimum. Rather, one would simply try $M = 1, 2, 3, \ldots$ in sequence. The corresponding values of the cost function would decrease until the optimum order is reached. The next larger order would produce an increase in the value of the cost function. Some techniques used in practice behave this way (see [Beamish and Priestley 1981], but not all do (see [Ulrych and Bishop 1975]).

There are three particular order-determining criteria that have proven to be of some use in practice. Furthermore, all three techniques typically produce comparable results and require essentially the same amount of computation because they all employ the same set of statistics, namely, the sum of squared prediction errors, $\hat{b}^2(M)$, for each model order, $M = 1, 2, 3, \ldots$. The cost functions used in these three methods are

$$\text{FPE}(M) \triangleq \left[\frac{N+M}{N-M}\right]\hat{b}^2(M) \tag{91}$$

$$\text{AIC}(M) \triangleq \frac{N}{2}\ln[\hat{b}^2(M)] + M \tag{92}$$

$$\text{CAT}(M) \triangleq \frac{1}{N}\sum_{m=1}^{M}\left[\frac{N-m}{N\hat{b}^2(m)}\right] - \frac{N-M}{N\hat{b}^2(M)}. \tag{93}$$

(Observe that minimization of AIC(M) is equivalent to minimization of $\hat{b}^2(M)e^{2M/N}$, which can be easier to compute.) Minimization of the cost function FPE is called the *final prediction error criterion*. It results from the objective of minimizing the sum of the variance of the prediction error and a quantity representing the error in estimating the AR parameters [Akaike 1969a, 1969b, 1970]. (If the sample

mean of the data segment is subtracted from the data before the AR model-fitting procedure is performed, then M should be replaced by $M + 1$ in the first factor in (91).) Minimization of the cost function AIC is called the *type A information criterion*. It results from the objective of minimizing the Kullback-Leibler distance (mean-information) between the true probability density of the data and the probability density of the assumed model, which is approximately the same as maximizing the difference between the likelihood function for the model-error variance and the model order [Akaike 1974]. Minimization of the cost function CAT is called the *autoregressive transfer function criterion*. It results from the objective of minimizing the integrated mean-squared relative error between the Mth-order fitted-model transfer function and the transfer function of the exact AR model (possibly of infinite order) [Parzen 1974, 1977].

Although all three techniques perform comparably in many situations, it has been observed that performance is often especially poor for short data segments, and even for relatively long data segments there is often much room for improvement.[5] Unfortunately, these techniques do not always exhibit an unambiguous minimum for time-series with sharp spectral peaks [Burshtein and Weinstein 1985]. If, for a given model-fitting method, $\hat{b}^2(M)$ is not monotonically decreasing in M, then none of these criteria can be expected to result in a unique local minimum that is the global minimum. Some interesting relationships among these three criteria are derived in [Burshtein and Weinstein 1985].

4. Singular-Value Decomposition

A recently proposed alternative to the methods of model-order determination based on the model-error variance $\hat{b}^2(M)$ has grown out of the ODNE approach to estimation of the AR parameters [Cadzow 1982] and earlier approaches to reduction of sensitivity of least squares solutions to perturbations of the matrix to be inverted (see [Tufts and Kumareson 1982; Cadzow et al. 1983; Owsley 1985]). This alternative approach is quite distinct in that it effectively determines a model order before any model fitting is done. The approach is motivated by the fact that the $Q \times M$ matrix in the Yule-Walker equations (86) has rank of only $M_0 < M$ if the true order of the AR time-series is M_0. (Also, for data consisting of M_0 sine waves in white noise, the approach is motivated by the fact that for $M_0 \ll M$ and not too low a signal-to-noise ratio, the *approximate* rank of the rank-M correlation matrix is only M_0.) The method is to replace M by Q to obtain a $Q \times Q$ matrix of correlation estimates $\boldsymbol{R}_x$ with elements defined by (88a) and to determine the *approximate rank*, say M_0, of $\boldsymbol{R}_x$, and then to use a rank-M_0 approximant to $\boldsymbol{R}_x$ in the Yule-Walker equations. Thus, the model order remains equal to the initially chosen large value $M = Q$ (e.g., $Q = N/2$ or even $Q = N$), but the solution tends to behave like a model of order M_0.

The approximate rank, say M_0, of a matrix and the best rank-M_0 approximating

[5] An alternative method, which uses a cost function that differs from AIC by the inclusion of the factor $\ln[N]$ multiplying the term that is linear in M in (92), produces lower order estimates that are apparently more appropriate for model fitting, but not necessarily for spectrum estimation [Hannan and Quinn 1979].

matrix (in the least squares sense) are determined using the *singular value decomposition* (SVD) method. Specifically, let $\boldsymbol{W}$ be the $Q \times Q$ matrix whose columns are the orthonormal eigenvectors of the $Q \times Q$ matrix $\boldsymbol{R}_x$, and let $\boldsymbol{\Lambda}$ be the diagonal $Q \times Q$ matrix whose elements are the corresponding eigenvalues, $\Lambda_{qq} = \lambda_q$. That is, the qth column of $\boldsymbol{W}$, denoted by $\boldsymbol{w}_q$, is specified by the eigenequation

$$\boldsymbol{R}_x \boldsymbol{w}_q = \lambda_q \boldsymbol{w}_q. \tag{94}$$

For convenience let the eigenvalues be ordered so that $\lambda_1 \geqslant \lambda_2 \geqslant \lambda_3 \geqslant \cdots, \geqslant \lambda_Q$. (The λ_p are all real and nonnegative because $\boldsymbol{R}_x$ is symmetric and nonnegative definite.) $\boldsymbol{R}_x$ can be represented by $\boldsymbol{W}$ and $\boldsymbol{\Lambda}$ as

$$\boldsymbol{R}_x = \boldsymbol{W}\boldsymbol{\Lambda}\boldsymbol{W}', \tag{95}$$

which is simply a reexpression of (94) for $q = 1, 2, 3, \ldots, Q$ (since $\boldsymbol{W}' = \boldsymbol{W}^{-1}$). The approximate rank of $\boldsymbol{R}_x$ is taken to be the smallest index, say $q = M_0$, such that

$$\rho \triangleq \frac{\sum_{q=1}^{M_0} \lambda_q}{\sum_{q=1}^{Q} \lambda_q} \cong 1. \tag{96}$$

Thus, when (96) is satisfied, $\lambda_{M_0+1}, \lambda_{M_0+2}, \lambda_{M_0+3}, \ldots, \lambda_Q$ are all negligibly small. The closest rank-M_0 matrix to $\boldsymbol{R}_x$, denoted by $\boldsymbol{R}_{(M_0)}$, which minimizes the sum of squared errors between all Q^2 elements of these two matrices, is simply (see [Eckart and Young 1936; Householder and Young 1950; Rao 1964])

$$\boldsymbol{R}_{(M_0)} = \boldsymbol{W}\boldsymbol{\Lambda}_{(M_0)}\boldsymbol{W}', \tag{97}$$

where

$$\boldsymbol{\Lambda}_{(M_0)} \triangleq \begin{bmatrix} \lambda_1 & & & & & & \\ & \lambda_2 & & & & & \\ & & \lambda_3 & & & & \\ & & & \ddots & & & \\ & & & & \lambda_{M_0} & & \\ & & & & & 0 & \\ & & & & & & \ddots \\ & & & & & & & 0 \end{bmatrix} \tag{98}$$

Fortunately, this SVD ODNE method for AR model fitting can be carried out in a recursive fashion, which requires calculation of only M_0 eigenvalues and eigenvectors. Specifically, using the identity

$$\sum_{q=1}^{Q} \lambda_q = \operatorname{tr}\{\boldsymbol{R}_x\} \triangleq \sum_{p=1}^{Q} R_x(p, p)_K, \tag{99}$$

one can calculate λ_1 and check (96) with $M_0 = 1$, then calculate λ_2 and check (96) with $M_0 = 2$, and so on, until (96) is satisfied. Then the desired AR parameter estimates are obtained by solving the Q normal equations ((86) with $M = Q$) modified by replacement of $\boldsymbol{R}_x$ with its best rank-M_0 approximant $\boldsymbol{R}_{(M_0)}$. Since

$\boldsymbol{R}_{(M_0)}$ is not of full rank (assuming $M_0 < Q$, as will usually be the case) then the solution $\hat{\boldsymbol{a}}$ to the modified normal equations is not unique. If the particular solution that has minimum norm is used, then it can be expressed in terms of only the first M_0 eigenvectors and eigenvalues. Specifically, the minimum-norm solution is (exercise 16)

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{a}} = -\boldsymbol{W}\boldsymbol{\Lambda}_{(M_0)}^{-1}\boldsymbol{W}'\boldsymbol{r}_x, \tag{100}$$

where

$$\boldsymbol{\Lambda}_{(M_0)}^{-1} \triangleq \begin{bmatrix} \frac{1}{\lambda_1} & & & & & & \\ & \frac{1}{\lambda_2} & & & & & \\ & & \frac{1}{\lambda_3} & & & & \\ & & & \ddots & & & \\ & & & & \frac{1}{\lambda_{M_0}} & & \\ & & & & & \ddots & \\ & & & & & & 0 \end{bmatrix} \tag{101}$$

Substitution of (101) into (100) yields

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{a}} = -\sum_{q=1}^{M_0} \frac{1}{\lambda_q}(\boldsymbol{w}_q'\boldsymbol{r}_x)\boldsymbol{w}_q. \tag{102}$$

Finally, calculation of $\boldsymbol{w}_q$ as well as λ_q can be carried out recursively by calculating λ_1 and $\boldsymbol{w}_1$, then subtracting $\lambda_1\boldsymbol{w}_1\boldsymbol{w}_1'$ from $\boldsymbol{R}_x$ and calculating λ_2 and $\boldsymbol{w}_2$ from the resultant matrix, and so on. At the qth stage of this process, the largest eigenvalue is λ_q (assuming $\lambda_1 \geq \lambda_2 \geq \lambda_3 \geq \cdots \geq \lambda_Q$). Thus, a standard method for determining the largest eigenvalue and corresponding eigenvector can be used recursively (see [Golub and Kahan 1965; Lawson and Hanson 1974; Klema and Laub 1980]).

The result in (102) provides a means for interpreting how this rank-reduction method improves the parameter estimate $\hat{\boldsymbol{a}}$. When no rank reduction is used, the parameter estimate provided by the ODNE method is given simply by (102) with $M_0 = M = Q$. Thus, the rank-reduction method discards the $Q - M_0$ terms corresponding to the smallest eigenvalues λ_q, and it is these smallest eigenvalues and their corresponding eigenvectors that are typically the most sensitive to perturbations in the elements of the correlation matrix estimate $\boldsymbol{R}_x$ (see [Wilkinson 1965; Lawson and Hanson 1974]). Thus, the random errors in this matrix estimate typically have their greatest influence on the terms that are discarded in (102).

Once the AR parameter estimates have been obtained using (102), the parameter b^2 in (4) can be estimated by evaluating the average squared prediction error obtained using the AR parameter estimates as the predictor coefficients, or by using (69).

For sine waves in additive broadband noise, improved performance can reportedly be obtained by replacing the autocorrelation matrix $\boldsymbol{R}_x$ used in (95) with the forward-backward covariance matrix defined by (74). In this case

$Q = 3N/4$ often yields the best results. However, both types of autocorrelation matrix estimates used with this SVD ODNE method can result in poor spectrum estimates when there is no clear-cut best reduced-rank estimate. That is, when the eigenvalues roll off slowly rather than dropping abruptly, rank reduction, depending on its extent, can either cause important data components to be discarded or result in negligible improvement.

Although this method has worked well in practice on appropriate types of data, there is a modification that yields a model order of $M = M_0$ rather than $M = Q$, and the modified method can reportedly work even better in some applications [Cadzow 1982]. The method begins with the matrix in the estimated Yule-Walker equations (similar to (8c)),

$$\boldsymbol{R}_x \triangleq \begin{bmatrix} R_x(1)_K & R_x(0)_K & R_x(-1)_K & \cdots & R_x(1-Q)_K \\ R_x(2)_K & R_x(1)_K & R_x(0)_K & \cdots & R_x(2-Q)_K \\ R_x(3)_K & R_x(2)_K & R_x(1)_K & \cdots & R_x(3-Q)_K \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\ R_x(Q+1)_K & R_x(Q)_K & R_x(Q-1)_K & \cdots & R_x(1)_K \end{bmatrix} \tag{103}$$

This matrix is replaced by its best rank-M_0 approximant, $\boldsymbol{R}_{(M_0)}$, as before. The approximant is then used to construct $Q + 1 - M_0$ matrices of the form

$$\boldsymbol{R}_{(M_0)}(p) \triangleq \begin{bmatrix} R_{(M_0)}(1,p) & R_{(M_0)}(1,p+1) & \cdots & R_{(M_0)}(1,p+M_0) \\ R_{(M_0)}(2,p) & R_{(M_0)}(2,p+1) & \cdots & R_{(M_0)}(2,p+M_0) \\ R_{(M_0)}(3,p) & R_{(M_0)}(3,p+1) & \cdots & R_{(M_0)}(3,p+M_0) \\ \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\ R_{(M_0)}(Q+1,p) & R_{(M_0)}(Q+1,p+1) & \cdots & R_{(M_0)}(Q+1,p+M_0) \end{bmatrix} \tag{104}$$

for $p = 1, 2, 3, \ldots, Q + 1 - M_0$, where $R_{(M_0)}(p, q)$ is the pqth element of $\boldsymbol{R}_{(M_0)}$. (Observe that even though $\boldsymbol{R}_x$ is Toeplitz, $\boldsymbol{R}_{(M_0)}$ will in general not be Toeplitz.) Then $Q + 1 - M_0$ sets of normal equations (similar to (8c)) are formed,

$$\boldsymbol{R}_{(M_0)}(p)\hat{\boldsymbol{\alpha}} \cong \mathbf{0}, \qquad p = 1, 2, 3, \ldots, Q + 1 - M_0, \tag{105}$$

where

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{\alpha}} \triangleq [1, a_1, a_2, a_3, \ldots, a_{M_0}]'. \tag{106}$$

The approximation in (105) reflects the inconsistency of these equations: There are $Q + 1$ equations but only M_0 unknowns in each set. (Strictly speaking, nothing but zero itself can be approximately equal to zero.) To accommodate this situation, let us obtain the AR parameter estimates by minimizing the sum of weighted squared errors in (105),

$$\min_{\hat{\boldsymbol{\alpha}}} \sum_{p=1}^{Q+1-M_0} c_p \|\boldsymbol{R}_{(M_0)}(p)\hat{\boldsymbol{\alpha}}\|^2, \tag{107}$$

where $\{c_p\}$ is a set of positive weights. For example, since the equations in the midrange, $p \cong (Q - M_0)/2$, use the autocorrelation estimates that are expected to be the most accurate (since $|n - p|$ in (67) takes on the smallest values), then

the weight sequence could be selected to decay from a maximum value as p departs from the midpoint $(Q - M_0)/2$. Since the first element in the vector of unknowns $\hat{\boldsymbol{\alpha}}$ in (106) is fixed, then this is actually a constrained minimization problem. The solution is given (exercise 17) by the matrix equation

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{\alpha}} = \beta \boldsymbol{S}^{-1}\boldsymbol{e}, \tag{108}$$

where $\boldsymbol{S}^{-1}$ is the inverse of the $(M_0 + 1) \times (M_0 + 1)$ matrix

$$\boldsymbol{S} \triangleq \sum_{p=1}^{Q+1-M_0} c_p \boldsymbol{R}'_{(M_0)}(p)\boldsymbol{R}_{(M_0)}(p), \tag{109a}$$

$\boldsymbol{e}$ is the unit vector

$$\boldsymbol{e} = [1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ \ldots\ 0]', \tag{109b}$$

and β is a constant, which ensures that the first element of $\hat{\boldsymbol{\alpha}}$ is unity. The fact that $\boldsymbol{R}_{(M_0)}(p + 1)$ is obtained from $\boldsymbol{R}_{(M_0)}(p)$ simply by deleting the leftmost column and adding a new rightmost column can be exploited to obtain an efficient algorithm for computation of the matrix $\boldsymbol{S}$ [Cadzow 1982].

5. Maximum Likelihood Approach

An entirely different approach to AR model-fitting that predates all but the original YW method is based on the principle of maximum likelihood. Let $f_x(z \mid \boldsymbol{a}, \sigma_w)$ denote the fraction-of-time joint probability density for a segment of length N of the time-series x_n, which is assumed to be an Mth-order AR time-series, (49), with Gaussian innovations w_n having variance σ_w^2 and with AR parameter vector $\boldsymbol{a} \triangleq \{a_p\}_1^M$. This fraction-of-time density is given by

$$f_x(z \mid \boldsymbol{a}, \sigma_w) = [(2\pi)^N |\tilde{\boldsymbol{R}}_x|]^{-1/2} \exp\left\{ -\tfrac{1}{2} z' \tilde{\boldsymbol{R}}_x^{-1} z \right\}, \tag{110}$$

where $|\tilde{\boldsymbol{R}}_x|$ is the determinant of the $N \times N$ matrix $\tilde{\boldsymbol{R}}_x$, which has jkth element given by the limit autocorrelation sequence

$$\tilde{R}_x(j, k) = \tilde{R}_x(j - k), \tag{111}$$

and $\tilde{R}_x(k)$ is given by the inverse FST of the limit spectrum (51),

$$\tilde{R}_x(k) = \int_{-1/2}^{1/2} \sigma_w^2 \left| 1 + \sum_{p=1}^{M} a_p e^{-i2\pi pf} \right|^{-2} e^{i2\pi kf}\, df. \tag{112}$$

In the *maximum-likelihood* method, the fraction-of-time density (110) is evaluated at $z = \{x_0, x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_{N-1}\} \triangleq \boldsymbol{x}$, the available data segment, and then maximized with respect to the unknown parameters $\boldsymbol{a}$ and σ_w^2. Since σ_w^2 factors out of the matrix $\tilde{\boldsymbol{R}}_x$, we can easily maximize with respect to σ_w^2 first, substitute the maximum value into (110), and then maximize with respect to $\boldsymbol{a}$. The result of the first step is (exercise 18)

$$\hat{\sigma}_w^2 = \frac{1}{N} \boldsymbol{x}' \tilde{\boldsymbol{R}}^{-1} \boldsymbol{x} \tag{113}$$

and

$$\max_{\sigma_w} f_x(\boldsymbol{x} \mid \boldsymbol{a}, \sigma_w) = \left[(2\pi)^N \left(\frac{1}{N} \boldsymbol{x}' \tilde{\boldsymbol{R}}^{-1} \boldsymbol{x} \right)^N |\tilde{\boldsymbol{R}}| \right]^{-1/2} \exp\{-N/2\}, \tag{114}$$

where

$$\tilde{\boldsymbol{R}} \triangleq \frac{1}{\sigma_w^2}\tilde{\boldsymbol{R}}_x. \tag{115}$$

Therefore, the remaining maximization problem is (using $|\boldsymbol{R}^{-1}| = 1/|\boldsymbol{R}|$)

$$\max_{\boldsymbol{a}} \frac{|\tilde{\boldsymbol{R}}^{-1}|^{1/N}}{\boldsymbol{x}'\tilde{\boldsymbol{R}}^{-1}\boldsymbol{x}}, \tag{116}$$

where the matrix $\tilde{\boldsymbol{R}}$ has elements given by

$$\tilde{R}(j, k) = \int_{-1/2}^{1/2} \left|1 + \sum_{p=1}^{M} a_p e^{-i2\pi pf}\right|^{-2} e^{i2\pi(j-k)f}\, df. \tag{117}$$

This is, in general, a difficult maximization problem. One simplification is to use the approximation

$$|\tilde{\boldsymbol{R}}^{-1}|^{1/N} \cong 1 \tag{118}$$

for large N; however, unless N is very large, this is not a close approximation if the roots of the polynomial (55) are close to the unit circle in the complex plane, which is precisely the situation where the limit spectrum exhibits dominant peaks (exercise 8) and AR spectrum estimates are especially attractive. Because of the computational complexity of the maximization problem (116)–(117), the maximum-likelihood method of AR spectrum estimation has not been considered to be competitive with the preceding LS and SVD methods for many applications. In fact, if the available data-segment length N is very large, $N >> M$, then it can be shown (exercise 18) that the AR parameters obtained from the maximum-likelihood method are closely approximated by those obtained from the Yule-Walker least squares method.

Nevertheless, the maximum-likelihood approach continues to be a topic of research interest, and new and improved methods for obtaining approximate solutions to the optimization problem (116)–(117) are still being proposed (see [Kay 1983]).

6. Discussion

All the direct methods of spectral analysis described in preceding chapters yield spectrum estimates of the MA type except for the minimum-leakage method, which yields spectrum estimates of either the AR or ARMA types and generally provides better resolution of sharp spectral peaks. It has been reported that of the four AR LS methods, the best resolution of sharp peaks using short data-segment lengths is provided by the FB method, the poorest (relatively speaking) is provided by the YW method, and the Burg method does somewhat better than the covariance method. But there are many other performance criteria to be considered when selecting a method in practice. For example, both the YW and Burg methods guarantee a stable AR model, whereas neither the covariance nor FB LS methods guarantee stability, although in practice they typically do yield stable models, and even an unstable model can produce a useful spectrum estimate. The variance of the minimum-leakage AR method is reportedly smaller

than that of the YW method [Baggeroer 1976], but the YW method has smaller variance than both the covariance method and the Burg method for short data segments; the FB LS method has been said to have the smallest variance (as well as the best resolution) of all the LS AR methods [Swingler 1974; Ulrych and Bishop 1975; Nuttal 1976; Ulrych and Clayton 1976] but the minimum-leakage method can be superior as illustrated in Section E. Also, for sine waves in additive broadband noise, the YW, covariance, and Burg methods all occasionally produce two close spectral peaks around the frequency of a single sine wave (the spectral line-splitting phenomenon), but the FB LS method [Kay and Marple 1981] and the modified (weighted) Burg method [Helme and Nikias 1985], [Paliwal 1985] have not been observed to do this. Moreover, the location of the peaks in these latter two methods are generally closer to the correct frequencies than in the other three LS AR methods [Kay 1987]. It is also of interest that in all four LS AR methods, the amplitude of a spectral peak is proportional to the square of the power in the underlying spectral line associated with a sine wave for high signal-to-noise ratio, but the area under the peak is proportional to the power (because the width is inversely proportional to the power) [Lacoss 1971]. On the other hand, the amplitude of a spectral peak produced by the minimum-leakage AR method is indeed proportional to the power [Lacoss 1971] (assuming that the width of the spectral line is narrower than the effective resolution width for this method) as it is for all the direct methods. In summary, it appears that the best performing LS AR methods for sharply peaked spectra are the FB LS method and the modified Burg method. It should also be noted that additive white noise in the data generally has a smoothing effect on these AR spectrum estimates. Consequently, for sufficiently low signal-to-noise ratio sine waves in noise, the resolution performance of all these LS AR methods becomes inferior to that of the direct methods [Kay 1987]. (Also, for MA-type time-series, AR methods can be substantially inferior to direct methods [Beamish and Priestley 1981].) Nevertheless, other AR methods, such as the ODNE and SVD methods can reportedly provide improved performance for some low signal-to-noise ratio (e.g., as low as 0 dB) applications [Cadzow 1982; Tufts and Kumaresan 1982; Cadzow et al. 1983]. These SVD methods also considerably improve on other related but earlier parametric methods designed specifically for sine waves in noise, such as the *Hildebrand-Prony method* and the *Pisarenko method* (see [Tufts and Kumaresan 1982; Kay 1987]).

Another performance criterion to consider in selecting a method for spectral analysis is the ease with which spectrum estimates can be updated as time passes in applications where it is desired to do time-variant spectral analysis. Updating is relatively straightforward for direct methods, as explained in Chapter 6, and is also possible for many of the AR methods but is not quite as simple [Friedlander 1982a, 1982b, 1983a, 1983b; Cioffi and Kailath 1984; Honig and Messerschmitt 1984; Marple 1987]. It should be emphasized that the focus on computationally efficient methods of spectral analysis is appropriate in situations where large amounts of data are continually produced, such as in radar, sonar, and seismology signal-processing applications. However, in situations where the cost or other limitations on collecting data are dominant, this focus is not necessarily appropriate,

and the more computationally burdensome but potentially higher-performing exact or near-exact maximum-likelihood methods can be attractive. This is especially true for ARMA methods, which are discussed in the next section.

Finally, it should be emphasized that the appropriateness of parametric methods for sharply peaked spectra applies only when there are multiple peaks that are closely spaced. If the separation between peaks exceeds the resolution width $\Delta f = 1/N$ determined by the amount of data available, then direct nonparametric methods typically perform just as well, if not better. In fact it is shown in exercise 22 that for a spectrum with a single sharp peak, modeled by a time-series consisting of a single sine wave in additive white Gaussian noise, the periodogram provides optimum (maximum-likelihood) estimates of the amplitude and frequency of the sine wave. Furthermore, for multiple sine waves with frequency separation sufficiently in excess of $1/N$, the periodogram is still nearly optimum. However, when there are multiple spectral peaks spaced more closely than $1/N$, the parametric methods can perform better than the direct methods. If the complex spectrum obtained from the DFT with substantial zero-padding is used to estimate (phase as well as frequency and amplitude) and subtract sequentially each of a multiplicity of additive sine wave components, and the spectrum of the residual is then estimated by direct methods, then performance can be considerably improved, but is still not comparable with parametric methods for data consisting of multiple closely spaced sine waves in additive noise. Furthermore, parametric methods typically provide substantial improvements in performance relative to direct methods for sensor-array signal-processing problems that arise in radar, sonar, and seismology applications. The reason for this is that in these problems, the number of spatial samples N is very small, but the $N \times N$ correlation matrix for these N samples can be relatively accurately estimated (since the number of products averaged is not restricted by N but rather is determined by the number of time samples taken at each of the N sensors). Thus, the problems of energy-source detection and direction-of-arrival estimation, which are the spatial analogs of the temporal counterparts of spectral-line detection and spectral-line-frequency estimation, can benefit from exploitation of special structure in the correlation matrix, including AR structure and special eigenstructure that can be revealed by singular value decomposition.

D. ARMA METHODS

Although high-order AR methods of spectral analysis are being developed to perform well for some ARMA time-series as well as AR time-series, ARMA model fitting continues to be of interest because of its inherent appropriateness for ARMA and related time-series. For example a time-series consisting of M sine waves in additive white noise behaves much like an ARMA time-series with order parameters M and $L = M$ (exercise 9), and therefore an ARMA spectrum estimate would appear to be the most appropriate of the three parametric types. Similarly the sum of two independent AR time-series of orders M_1 and M_2 is an ARMA time-series with order parameters of $M \leq M_1 + M_2$ and $L \leq M_1 + M_2$. However, because of the inherent nonlinearity of the ARMA

model-fitting problem, currently available ARMA methods are not as well proven as the AR methods described in the previous section.

ARMA methods of model fitting can be conveniently classified into three groups. The first group consists of those methods that attempt to maximize the exact likelihood function for the $L + M + 2$ ARMA parameters $\{a_p\}_1^M$, $\{b_q\}_0^L$, and σ_w in (52) and (53) and those that attempt to maximize a close approximation to the likelihood function, which includes some nonlinear least squares methods and other interative procedures.[6] These methods typically involve the most computationally intensive and potentially problematic algorithms for optimization but also are potentially the best performing. The second group consists of those methods that use estimates of the autocorrelation sequence to jointly estimate both the AR parameters $\{a_p\}_1^M$ and the MA parameters $\{b_q\}_0^L$. These first two groups of methods are beyond the scope of this introductory treatment. The third group consists of those methods that use estimates of the autocorrelation sequence first to estimate the AR parameters and then use these estimates together with the autocorrelation estimates or the data to estimate the MA parameters.[7] These methods are typically the most computationally attractive but often at the cost of poorer performance relative to methods in the first two groups (see [Kaveh and Bruzzone 1981; Kaveh and Bruzzone 1983; Bruzzone and Kaveh 1984]). Nevertheless, their performance can be superior to AR methods for some time-series. It is this third approach to ARMA spectrum estimation that is briefly described here.

1. Modified Yule-Walker Equations

Part of the Yule-Walker equations for AR time-series, which are derived in Part 1 of Section B, apply equally well to ARMA time-series. Specifically, it is shown in exercise 19 that (8a) applies for $k \geq L + 1$,

$$\tilde{R}_x(k) = -\sum_{p=1}^{M} a_p \tilde{R}_x(k-p), \qquad k \geq L+1, \tag{119a}$$

where L is the MA order and M is the AR order of the ARMA time-series (52). It is also shown in exercise 19 that another part of the Yule-Walker equations, (8b), applies equally well:

$$\tilde{R}_x(0) = b_0\sigma_w^2 - \sum_{p=1}^{M} a_p \tilde{R}_x(-p). \tag{119b}$$

However, the remaining part of the Yule-Walker equations, (8a) for $1 \leq k \leq L$, must be modified in order to apply to an ARMA time-series. Specifically, it is

[6] See [Dugré et al. 1981; Kaveh and Bruzzone 1983; Friedlander 1983a; Kay 1987] for a multitude of references.

[7] Most of these methods are reported on in [Walker 1962; Hsia and Landgrebe 1967; Gersh 1970; Graupe et al. 1975; Sakai and Arase 1979; Kaveh 1979; Kay 1980; Bruzzone and Kaveh 1980; Cadzow 1980, 1982, 1983; Friedlander 1983a, 1983b; Kaveh and Bruzzone 1983; Friedlander and Porat 1984a, 1984b; Moses et al. 1985]. See also references in [Kay 1987].

shown in exercise 19 that these L equations contain an extra sum of terms so that the modified equations are given by

$$\tilde{R}_x(k) = \sigma_w^2 \sum_{q=k}^{L} b_q h_{q-k} - \sum_{p=1}^{M} a_p \tilde{R}_x(k-p), \qquad k = 1, 2, 3, \ldots, L, \tag{119c}$$

where $\{h_k : k = 0, 1, 2, 3, \ldots\}$ is the impulse-response sequence of the ARMA model (52) and is given by the inverse FST of the transfer function

$$\tilde{H}(f) = \frac{\sum_{q=0}^{L} b_q e^{-i2\pi fq}}{1 + \sum_{p=1}^{M} a_p e^{-i2\pi fp}}, \tag{120}$$

$$h_k = \int_{-1/2}^{1/2} \tilde{H}(f) e^{i2\pi fk}\, df. \tag{121}$$

It can be shown (exercise 19) that

$$h_k = 0, \qquad k < 0, \tag{122a}$$

$$h_0 = b_0, \tag{122b}$$

and if $M = 0$ (in which case the ARMA model degenerates to an MA model), then

$$h_k = \begin{cases} b_k, & k = 1, 2, 3, \ldots, L \\ 0, & k > L. \end{cases} \tag{122c}$$

Otherwise, h_k is a complicated nonlinear function, (120)–(121), of both $\{a_p\}_1^M$ and $\{b_q\}_0^L$.

Because of the highly nonlinear character of the *modified Yule-Walker equations* (119c), they will not be used here directly as a basis for estimating the ARMA parameters $\{a_p\}_1^M$ and $\{b_q\}_0^L$. However, the linear equations (119a) will indeed be used. The general approach to be described in the next two parts of this section is to use (119a) as a basis for estimating the AR parameters $\{a_p\}_1^M$ from autocorrelation estimates and then to use these estimated parameters together with the data and/or autocorrelation estimates to estimate the MA parameters $\{b_q\}_0^L$. Since equations (119a) are valid only for the lag parameter k extended beyond L, they are typically referred to as the *extended Yule-Walker equations*.

2. Estimation of the AR Parameters

Since the extended Yule-Walker equations (119a) are valid for ARMA time-series as well as AR time-series, then all methods for estimating the AR parameters $\{a_p\}_1^M$ in an AR model that are based on the Yule-Walker equations (8a) can be used to estimate the AR parameters $\{a_p\}_1^M$ in an ARMA model provided only that the lag values, k, used are appropriately extended so that (8a) is used as a basis only for $k \geq L + 1$ as in (119a). For example, the YW and ODNE methods can be used if the equations (86) used as a basis are replaced by the equations

$$\begin{bmatrix} \tilde{R}_x(L) & \tilde{R}_x(L-1) & \dots & \tilde{R}_x(L-M+1) \\ \tilde{R}_x(L+1) & \tilde{R}_x(L) & \dots & \tilde{R}_x(L-M+2) \\ \tilde{R}_x(L+2) & \tilde{R}_x(L+1) & \dots & \tilde{R}_x(L-M+3) \\ \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\ \tilde{R}_x(L+Q-1) & \tilde{R}_x(L+Q-2) & \dots & \tilde{R}_x(L+Q-M) \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} a_1 \\ a_2 \\ a_3 \\ \vdots \\ a_M \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} -\tilde{R}_x(L+1) \\ -\tilde{R}_x(L+2) \\ -\tilde{R}_x(L+3) \\ \vdots \\ -\tilde{R}_x(L+Q) \end{bmatrix} \tag{123}$$

in which the lag values have been extended by L. For $Q = M$, with $\tilde{R}_x(k)$ replaced by its estimate $R_x(k)_K$, (123) is an adaptation of the Yule-Walker autocorrelation method from AR modeling to ARMA modeling. Similarly, for $Q > M$, (123) can be used as the basis for an adaptation of the ODNE method. The estimates for this adapted method are given by (90), with $\boldsymbol{R}_x$ there given by the $Q \times M$ matrix of autocorrelation estimates corresponding to the ideal matrix in (123). Similarly, the SVD method for AR model-order determination and parameter estimation can be adapted simply by replacement of the matrix (103) of autocorrelation estimates with the matrix

$$\boldsymbol{R}_x \triangleq \begin{bmatrix} R_x(L+1)_K & R_x(L)_K & \dots & R_x(L-Q+1)_K \\ R_x(L+2)_K & R_x(L+1)_K & \dots & R_x(L-Q+2)_K \\ R_x(L+3)_K & R_x(L+2)_K & \dots & R_x(L-Q+3)_K \\ \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\ R_x(L+Q+1)_K & R_x(L+Q)_K & \dots & R_x(L+1)_K \end{bmatrix} \tag{124}$$

in which the lag values have been extended by L. The rest of the procedure is the same: $\boldsymbol{R}_x$ is approximated by a rank-M_0 matrix, $\boldsymbol{R}_{(M_0)}$, which is then used in the formula (108)–(109). It should be mentioned that the approach of finding the best rank M_0 with which to approximate the rank of the $(Q+1) \times (Q+1)$ matrix (124) is motivated by the fact that the extended Yule-Walker equations (119a) reveal that the rank of the ideal correlation matrix corresponding to (124) is precisely M for an ARMA time-series of AR order M and MA order less than or equal to L (just as for an AR time-series). However, for ARMA model fitting, there is the practical problem of selecting an appropriate value for the MA order L (the lag-extension parameter) in (124) or in (123). As long as L exceeds the true MA order of an ARMA time-series, the preceding reasoning applies and the method is therefore appropriate. Thus, in practice, one should attempt to select a sufficiently large value for L. An approach to determining if the value selected is large enough is described in the next part of this section.

3. Estimation of the MA Parameters

In some applications of parametric spectral analysis, the primary objective is to detect and/or locate any sharp peaks (e.g., due to additive sine wave components in the data). Although an ARMA model might be required for a good fit to the data, only the AR part of the model is especially relevant to spectral-peak analysis. In such cases, the only reason for estimating the MA parameters after having estimated the AR parameters is to obtain a means for checking on the

value of the MA order (lag extension) parameter L used to estimate the AR parameters. However, in other applications where all features of the spectrum (e.g., valleys, notches, and plateaus as well as peaks) are of interest, the effects of the MA part of the model on the spectrum also must be determined. Nevertheless, this does not necessarily require obtaining explicit estimates of the MA parameters $\{b_q\}_0^L$. This can be seen as follows. The limit spectrum for an ARMA time-series is given by (53), which can be expressed as

$$\bar{S}_x(f) = \frac{|B(f)|^2}{|A(f)|^2}, \tag{125a}$$

where

$$B(f) \triangleq \sigma_w \sum_{q=0}^{L} b_q e^{-i2\pi fq} \tag{125b}$$

$$A(f) \triangleq 1 + \sum_{p=1}^{M} a_p e^{-i2\pi fp}. \tag{125c}$$

If the time-series is filtered using the transfer function

$$\bar{G}(f) = A(f), \tag{126}$$

then the limit spectrum of the filtered time-series

$$y_n = x_n \otimes g_n \tag{127}$$

is given by

$$\bar{S}_y(f) = |\bar{G}(f)|^2 \bar{S}_x(f) = |B(f)|^2. \tag{128}$$

Consequently, the MA part of the spectrum for x_n is simply the spectrum of the filtered time-series y_n. Consequently, if the estimate of the AR parameters is sufficiently accurate, then one can estimate the MA part of the spectrum simply by estimating the spectrum of the time-series $\hat{y}_n$ obtained by filtering x_n using the transfer function

$$\hat{G}(f) = \hat{A}(f) \tag{129}$$

obtained from (125c) with $\{a_p\}$ replaced by their estimates $\{\hat{a}_p\}$. Thus, if the estimate of $\bar{S}_y(f)$ is denoted by $|\hat{B}(f)|^2$, then the composite ARMA spectrum estimate of $\bar{S}_x(f)$ is given by

$$S_x(f)_{\text{ARMA}} = \frac{|\hat{B}(f)|^2}{|\hat{A}(f)|^2}. \tag{130}$$

Furthermore, if the estimate $|\hat{A}(f)|^2$ is sufficiently accurate, then the filtered time-series $\hat{y}_n$ is closely approximated by an MA model with spectrum (128). Thus, direct spectral analysis methods can be appropriate for this second stage of estimation. For example, since the limit autocorrelation of an MA time-series of order L is zero for lags exceeding L (exercise 20),

$$\bar{R}_y(k) = \begin{cases} \sigma_w^2 \sum_{q=0}^{L-|k|} b_q b_{q+|k|}, & |k| = 0, 1, 2, \ldots, L \\ 0, & |k| > L, \end{cases} \tag{131}$$

then a Blackman-Tukey type of spectrum estimate with correlogram window width equal to L should be appropriate. This follows from the fact that the above autocorrelation is invariant to multiplication by a rectangle window of width L,

$$\tilde{R}_y(k)w(k) = \tilde{R}_y(k), \qquad -\infty < k < \infty \tag{132a}$$

$$w_k \triangleq \begin{cases} 1, & |k| \leq L \\ 0, & |k| > L, \end{cases} \tag{132b}$$

and therefore the spectrum is invariant to convolution (smoothing) with a sinc window

$$\tilde{S}_y(f) \otimes W(f) = \tilde{S}_y(f), \qquad -\infty < f < \infty \tag{133a}$$

$$W(f) \triangleq \frac{\sin(2\pi Lf)}{\sin \pi f}. \tag{133b}$$

Thus, the usual leakage effects expected from the Blackman-Tukey method with a rectangle correlogram-tapering window need not be as problematic here.

It follows from the finiteness of the extent of the autocorrelation of an MA time-series that the appropriateness of the value for L used in estimating the AR part of the spectrum can be assessed by inspecting the correlogram of the filtered time-series $\hat{y}_n$. If this correlogram does not become particularly small for lags exceeding L, then the value used for L is too small (or the estimate of the AR part of the spectrum is poor.) On the other hand, if the correlogram becomes particularly small for lags exceeding $L_0 < L$, then the first stage of spectrum estimation can be repeated with L replaced by L_0. This could improve the AR spectrum estimate.

It is especially interesting that this approach to ARMA spectral analysis can be interpreted as nothing more than the prewhitening approach described in Chapter 4, Section C, which was proposed as a means for minimizing the effects of spectral leakage.

There is an approach to estimating the MA part of the spectrum that is based on the preceding filtering concept but does not actually require filtering the time-series x_n to obtain $\hat{y}_n$ and then estimating the autocorrelation for $\hat{y}_n$. Specifically, it follows from (128) that the limit autocorrelation for the filtered time-series y_n is given by the convolution

$$\tilde{R}_y(k) = r_g(k) \otimes \tilde{R}_x(k), \tag{134a}$$

where

$$r_g(k) \triangleq g_k \otimes g_{-k}, \tag{134b}$$

and it follows from (131) that

$$\tilde{R}_y(k) = 0, \qquad |k| > L.$$

Thus, the limit spectrum for y_n is given by

$$\tilde{S}_y(f) = \sum_{k=-L}^{L} [r_g(k) \otimes \tilde{R}_x(k)]e^{-i2\pi fk} = [|\tilde{G}(f)|^2 \tilde{S}_x(f)] \otimes W(f), \tag{135}$$

where $W(f)$ is given by (133b). Consequently, an estimate of the MA part of the spectrum (128) can be obtained by replacing $\bar{R}_x(k)$ in (135) with the autocorrelation estimates $R_x(k)_K$ and using the estimated filter $\hat{g}_k$ from (129) in place of the ideal filter g_k in (134b) to obtain $\hat{r}_g(k)$. This requires only two convolutions to obtain $\hat{r}_g(k)$ and then $\hat{r}_g(k) \otimes R_x(k)_K$, and an FST (or DFT) corresponding to (135)

$$S_y(f)_{\text{MA}} = 2\,\text{Re}\left\{\sum_{k=0}^{L} [\hat{r}_g(k) \otimes R_x(k)_K] e^{-i2\pi fk}\right\} - [\hat{r}_g(k) \otimes R_x(k)_K]_{k=0}$$

$$\triangleq |\hat{B}(f)|^2. \tag{136}$$

As an alternative, an estimate of the MA part of the spectrum (128) can be obtained by replacing $\bar{S}_x(f)$ in (135) with the FST of $R_x(k)_K$, and using the estimated filter $\hat{G}(f)$ in place of the ideal filter $\bar{G}(f)$. For example, if $R_x(k)_K$ is taken to be the correlogram, $R_{x_N}(k)$, then its FST is the periodogram, $S_{x_N}(f)$, and the estimate is given by (using (129))

$$S_y(f)_{\text{MA}} = [|\hat{A}(f)|^2 S_{x_N}(f)] \otimes W(f) = |\hat{B}(f)|^2. \tag{137}$$

Thus, the composite ARMA spectrum estimate is given by (using (130))

$$S_x(f)_{\text{ARMA}} = \frac{[|\hat{A}(f)|^2 S_{x_N}(f)] \otimes W(f)}{|\hat{A}(f)|^2}. \tag{138}$$

A variation on this method that is intended to improve the estimates $\hat{r}_g(k) \otimes R_x(k)_K$ of the autocorrelation $\bar{R}_y(k)$ is based on the fact that this limit autocorrelation is the same whether x_n is filtered in the forward direction,

$$\hat{y}_n = \sum_{p=0}^{M} \hat{a}_p x_{n-p}\,, \tag{139a}$$

or in the backward direction,

$$\check{y}_n = \sum_{p=0}^{M} \hat{a}_p x_{n+p}\,. \tag{139b}$$

Thus, we can obtain additional distinct lag products to average in forming the autocorrelation estimate

$$\mathring{R}_y(k)_K \triangleq \frac{1}{2K} \sum_{n=0}^{N-M-|k|} [\hat{y}_{n+|k|+M}\hat{y}_{n+M} + \check{y}_{n+|k|}\check{y}_n]. \tag{140}$$

This estimate can then be used as in (136),

$$S_y(f)_{\text{MA}} = 2\,\text{Re}\left\{\sum_{k=0}^{L} \mathring{R}_y(k)_K e^{-i2\pi fk}\right\} - \mathring{R}_y(0)_K. \tag{141}$$

There is an alternative to the preceding general approach based on filtering that can reportedly yield better performance [Friedlander 1983a]. This alternative approach is based on a decomposition of the spectrum $\bar{S}_x(f)$ into its causal part,

$$S_+(f) \triangleq \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \bar{R}_x(k) e^{-i2\pi fk}, \tag{142}$$

and its anticausal part, $S_+(-f)$, and is known as Shanks' method [Shanks 1967]. It is easily verified (exercise 21) that

$$\tilde{S}_x(f) = \tilde{R}_x(0) + S_+(f) + S_+(-f), \tag{143}$$

and that for a limit spectrum $\tilde{S}_x(f)$ of the ARMA form (125), $S_+(f)$ is of the form

$$S_+(f) = \frac{C(f)}{A(f)}, \tag{144a}$$

where $A(f)$ is given by (125c) and $C(f)$ is given by

$$C(f) \triangleq \sum_{q=1}^{M} c_q \, e^{-i2\pi fq}, \tag{144b}$$

in which the parameters $\{c_q\}_1^M$ are to be determined. Substitution of (144a) and (125a) into (143) yields (exercise 21) the representation

$$|B(f)|^2 = \tilde{R}_x(0)|A(f)|^2 + A(-f)C(f) + A(f)C(-f) \tag{145}$$

for the MA part of the spectrum. The parameters $\{c_q\}_1^M$ can be obtained by inverse FST using (144a)

$$c_q = \int_{-1/2}^{1/2} S_+(f)A(f)e^{i2\pi fq} \, df. \tag{146}$$

Application of the convolution theorem to (146) yields

$$c_q = \sum_{k=1}^{q} \tilde{R}_x(k)a_{q-k}, \qquad q = 1, 2, 3, \ldots, M. \tag{147}$$

Thus, given estimates of $\{a_p\}_1^M$ and $\{\tilde{R}_x(k)\}_1^M$, we can estimate $\{c_q\}_1^M$ using (147) as a basis. Then, using (144b) to obtain the estimate $\hat{C}(f)$ and using the estimates $\hat{A}(f)$ and $R_x(0)_K$, we can estimate $|B(f)|^2$ using (145) as a basis. However, this approach, like the preceding approach, is limited in performance by the accuracy of the $M + 1$ autocorrelation estimates $\{R_x(k)_K\}_0^M$ used in the counterparts of (147) and (145) (or by the $M + L$ autocorrelation estimates used in (136) in the preceding approach.) But this situation can be improved upon by the same technique used in the ODNE approach to estimation of the AR part of the spectrum. Specifically, rather than solving (144a) for $C(f)$ and $\{c_q\}_1^M$ as in (146)–(147), let us express $\{c_q\}_1^M$ in implicit form analogous to the Yule-Walker equations for $\{a_p\}_1^M$. This is accomplished by introducing the sequence

$$f_k \triangleq \int_{-1/2}^{1/2} \left[\frac{1}{A(f)}\right] e^{i2\pi fk}, \qquad k = 0, 1, 2, \ldots \tag{148}$$

(for which it can be shown that $f_n = 0$ for $n < 0$). It follows from (142), (148), and the convolution theorem applied to (144a) that $\tilde{R}_x(k)$ is given by

$$\tilde{R}_x(k) = f_k \otimes c_k = \sum_{q=1}^{\min\{k,M\}} f_{k-q}c_q, \qquad k = 1, 2, 3, \ldots, \tag{149a}$$

which can be expressed in matrix form as

$$\boldsymbol{F}\boldsymbol{c} = \boldsymbol{r}_x \tag{149b}$$

or (terminating k at $k = P$)

$$\begin{bmatrix} f_0 & & & & \\ f_1 & f_0 & & & \\ f_2 & f_1 & f_0 & & \\ \vdots & \vdots & & \ddots & \\ f_{M-1} & f_{M-2} & \cdots & & f_0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & & & \vdots \\ f_{P-1} & f_{P-2} & \cdots & & f_{P-M} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} c_1 \\ c_2 \\ c_3 \\ \vdots \\ c_M \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \bar{R}_x(1) \\ \bar{R}_x(2) \\ \bar{R}_x(3) \\ \vdots \\ \bar{R}_x(P) \end{bmatrix} \tag{149c}$$

Now, if $x(t)$ is truly an ARMA time-series of order M (or lower) and $L \leq M$, then this overdetermined (for $P > M$) set of equations (149c) will possess a solution that is identical to (147). However, if $\bar{R}_x(k)$ is replaced with estimated values directly in (149) and indirectly in (149) through estimates $\hat{f}_k$ obtained from the counterpart of (148) in which $\hat{A}(f)$ depends on estimates of $\bar{R}_x(k)$, then (149c) will in general be an overdetermined inconsistent set of equations for all $P > M$. Thus, rather than choose $P = M$ to obtain a perfect fit to the minimal subset of equations relating $\hat{f}_k$ to $R_x(k)_K$ (a set that need not be any more appropriate than other subsets of these equations), we can choose $P >> M$ and obtain the closest simultaneous fit to a much larger set of equations (all of which would indeed be satisfied if there were no estimation error). As usual, this is accomplished by the method of least squares, which yields the solution

$$\boldsymbol{c} = [\boldsymbol{F}'\boldsymbol{F}]^{-1}\boldsymbol{F}'\boldsymbol{r}_x. \tag{150}$$

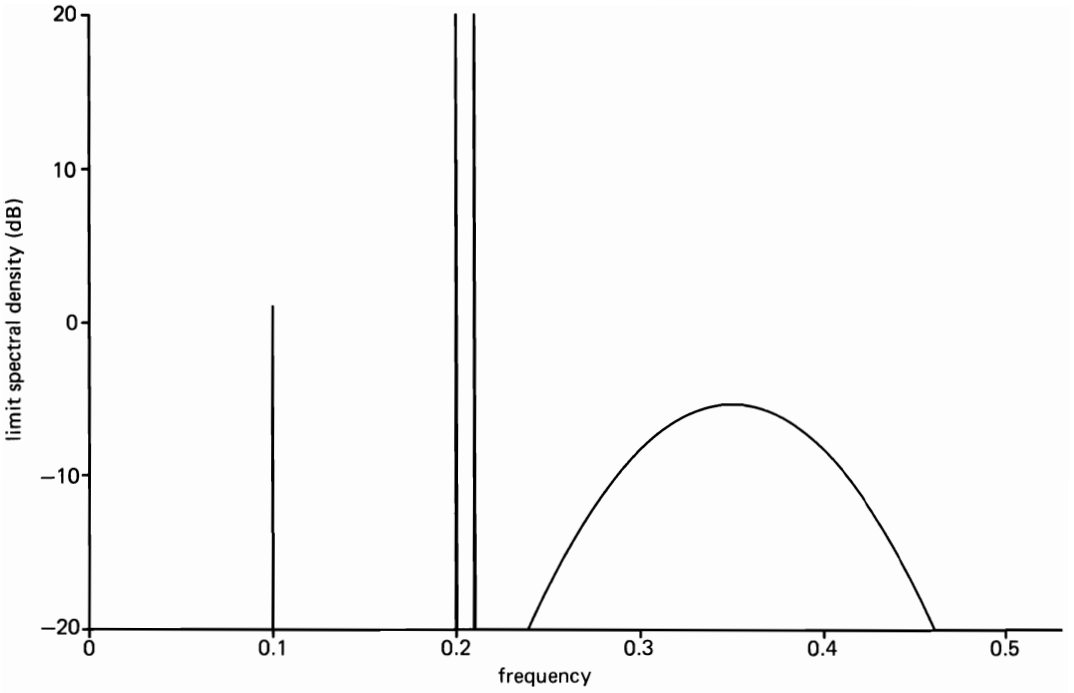
Because of the Toeplitz-like structure of (149c), the solution (150) can be computed efficiently (see [Friedlander, 1983a].)

E. EXPERIMENTAL STUDY

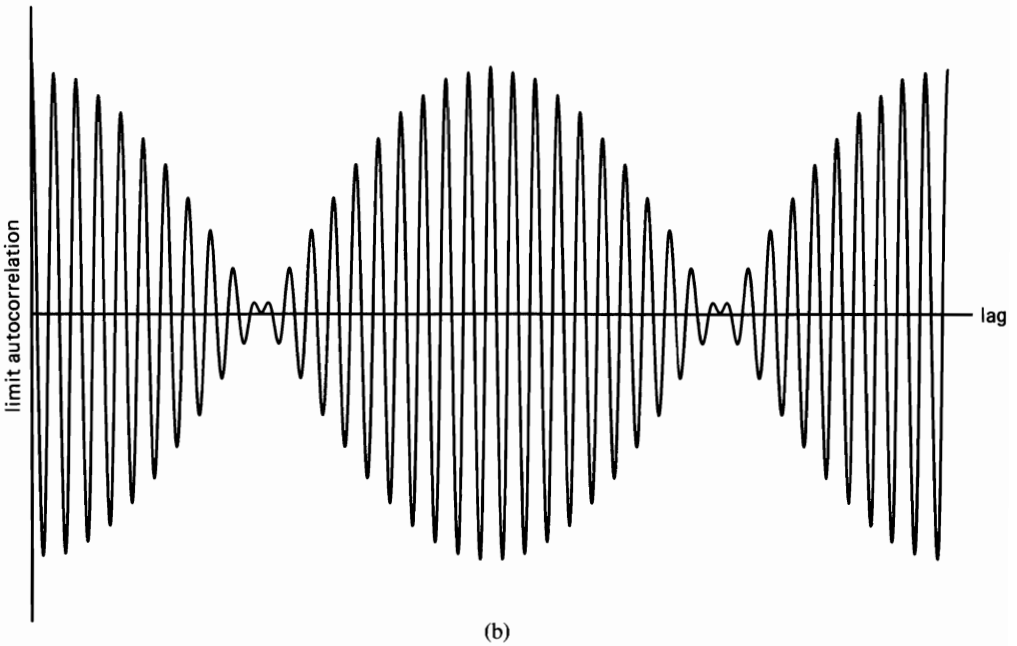
In order to illustrate some of the ways in which the performances of various methods of spectral analysis differ, a summary of the results of an extensive experimental study is presented in this concluding section.[8] The methods compared include the periodogram with zero-padding, with and without data tapering, with and without frequency-smoothing, and with and without sequential sine wave removal and spectral-line reinsertion; the minimum-leakage method with covariance-type correlation matrix; the Yule-Walker, Burg, and forward-backward least squares AR methods; the over-determined-normal-equations AR method with biased and unbiased correlation estimates; and a singular-value-decomposition AR method.

The data was generated using a model that has the limit spectrum and limit autocorrelation shown in Figure 9-4. Appendix 9-1 gives a table of 1024 time samples from this model, and graphs of data segments of lengths 64 and 256 from this data set are shown in Figure 9-5. The data consists of three sine waves in additive highly colored Gaussian noise, with a bandlimited Gaussian-shaped spectrum centered at $0.35/T_s$ Hz. The power of each of the two sine waves at frequencies $0.20/T_s$ Hz and $0.21/T_s$ Hz is -3 dB (relative to unity) and the

[8] The experimental study reported in this section was carried out jointly by Messrs. B. G. Agee, W. A. Brown, C. K. Chen, J. H. Reed, and R. S. Roberts under the author's supervision.

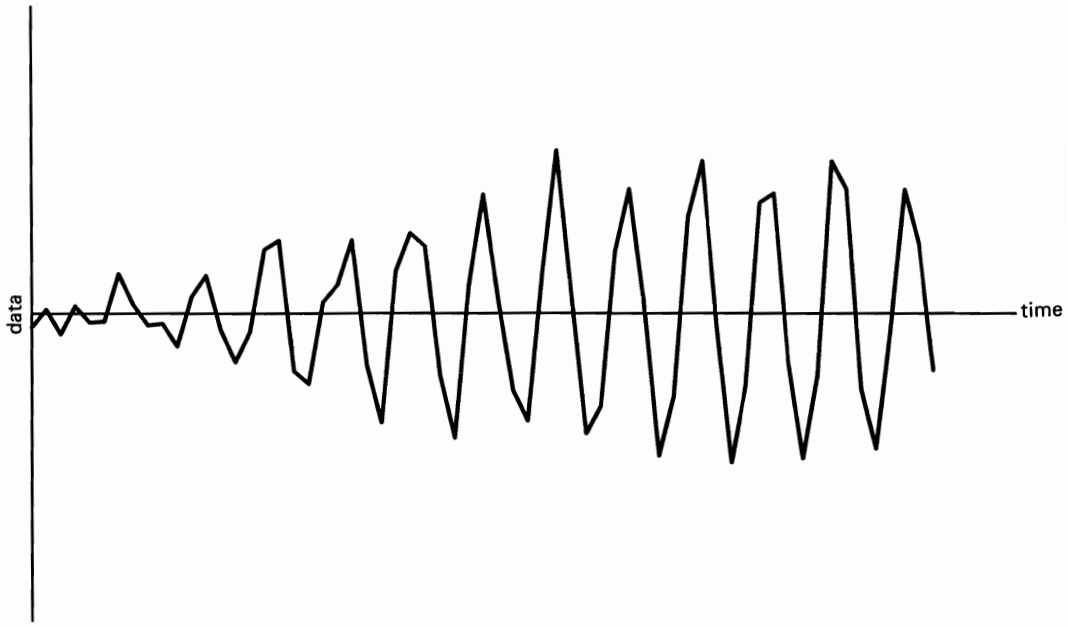


(a)

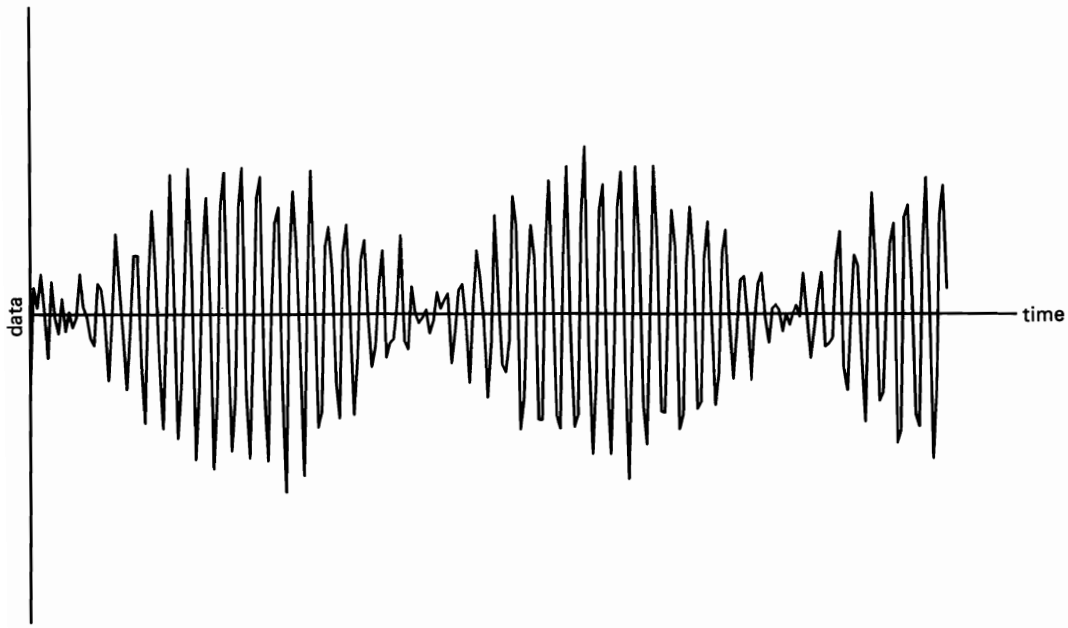


(b)

Figure 9-4 (a) Limit spectrum for data used in experimental study (spectrum smoothed with rectangle window of width 1/256; highest peak is 21 dB). (b) Limit autocorrelation for data used in experimental study (200 lag increments shown).



(a)



(b)

Figure 9-5 (a) Data segment of length 64 from Table 9-1 (starting point is 64). (b) Data segment of length 256 from Table 9-1 (starting point is 256).

phases are 106.2° and 41.5°, respectively. The power of the third sine wave at $0.10/T_s$ Hz is -23 dB and the phase is 32.6°. The power of the colored noise is -15 dB.

For each method and each set of parameter values considered, three samples of spectrum estimates are shown superimposed. Thus, resolution, leakage, and reliability properties are all reflected in these graphical results. All methods are applied to two lengths of data segments, $N = 64$ and $N = 256$. The three statistical samples of data are obtained from Appendix 9-1 using starting points of 64, 128, and 192 for $N = 64$, and 256, 512, and 768 for $N = 256$. For convenience, T_s is taken to be unity in the graphs.

For all the parametric methods considered that require use of a model-order-determining algorithm, the three methods FPE, AIC, and CAT were studied. However, the performances of these methods were usually unacceptable. Trial-and-error experimentation revealed that the order $M = 16$ was typically the best for $N = 64$, and $16 \leq M \leq 32$ (usually $M \cong 32$) was typically the best for $N = 256$. Consequently, results are presented for primarily $M = 16$ and $M = 32$. (Note that M is used to denote both the model order for model-fitting methods and the smoothing parameter for the periodogram.)

1. Periodogram Methods

The first spectrum estimate considered is the periodogram without data tapering, time-averaging, or frequency-smoothing. This raw periodogram was obtained using a DFT algorithm with $K = 8$ zero-padding factor (total points transformed is KN) and is shown in Figure 9-6(a) and Figure 9-7(a) for the two data-segment lengths of $N = 64$ and $N = 256$. It can be seen that the two closely spaced spectral lines are not reliably resolved for $N = 64$ but are for $N = 256$. These periodograms were then modified by use of a raised cosine data-tapering window (with height $a_T(0) = 2$), and the results are shown in Figure 9-6(b) and Figure 9-7(b). All these periodograms were then frequency-smoothed using smoothing parameter $M = 2$ (MK DFT bins are averaged together), and the results are shown in Figure 9-6(c), (d) and Figure 9-7(c), (d). It can be seen that data tapering greatly reduces spectral leakage and that frequency-smoothing improves reliability (although the amount of improvement is small for $M = 2$).

Since Figure 9-6(a)–(b) suggested to us (pretending ignorance of the true model) that there were spectral lines in the vicinities of $f = 0.1/T_s$ and $f = 0.2/T_s$, the next method we studied removed sinewaves from the data as explained in the following and then the preceding methods, corresponding to Figures 9-6(a)–(d) and 9-7(a)–(d), were repeated, except $M = 4$ for $N = 64$ and $M = 8$ for $N = 256$ were used instead of $M = 2$. The sine wave removal was accomplished by using least-squares estimates of the frequency (in the vicinity of the peaks in the raw periodogram), amplitude, and phase of each sine wave, which are obtained directly from the DFT of the data (see exercise 22). Since a substantial spectral peak remained in the periodogram after subtraction of a sinewave with frequency near $0.2/T_s$, the estimation procedure was repeated in this vicinity and a second sine wave was removed. Then the procedure was repeated in the vicinity of $f = 0.1/T_s$ since a spectral peak was clearly evident

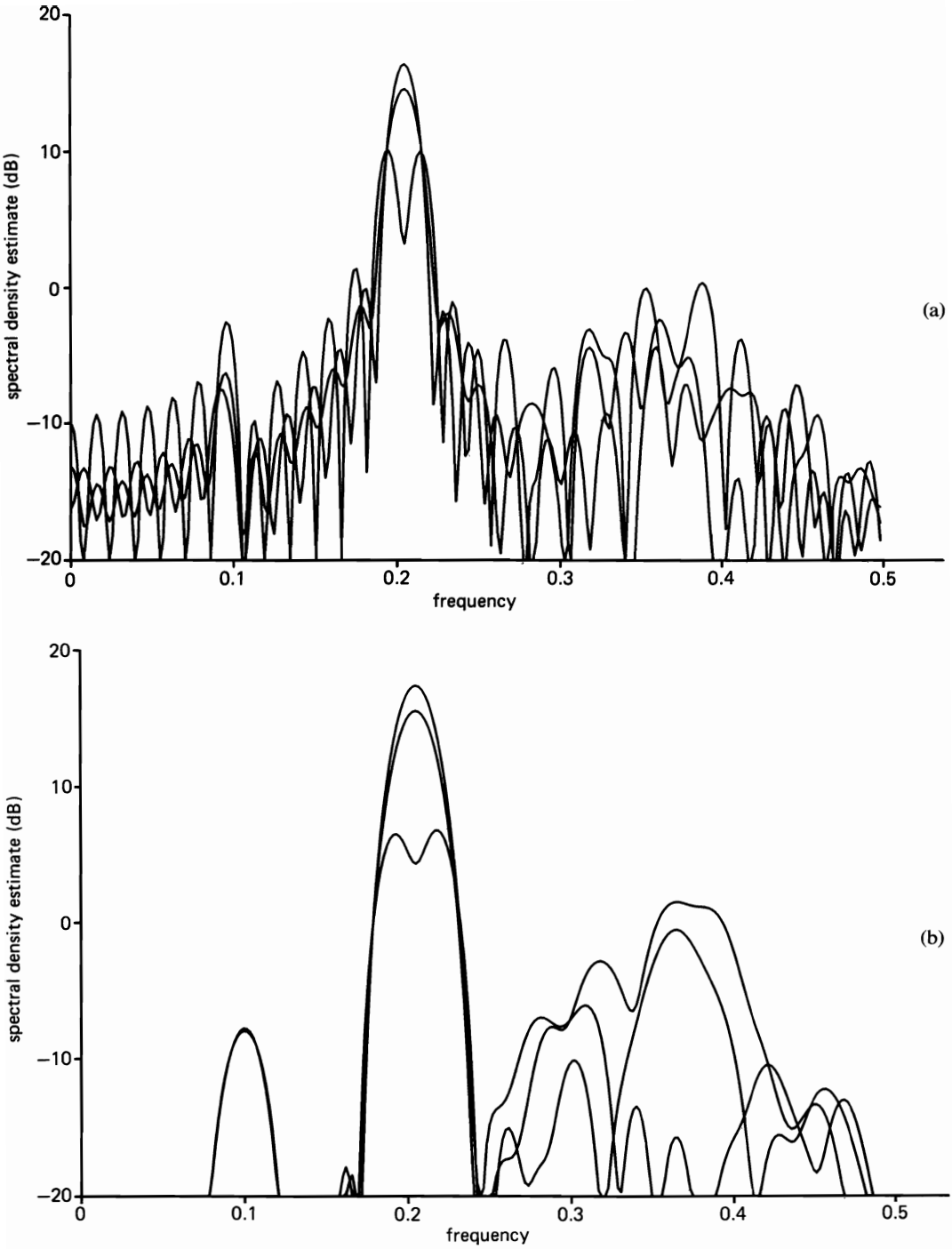
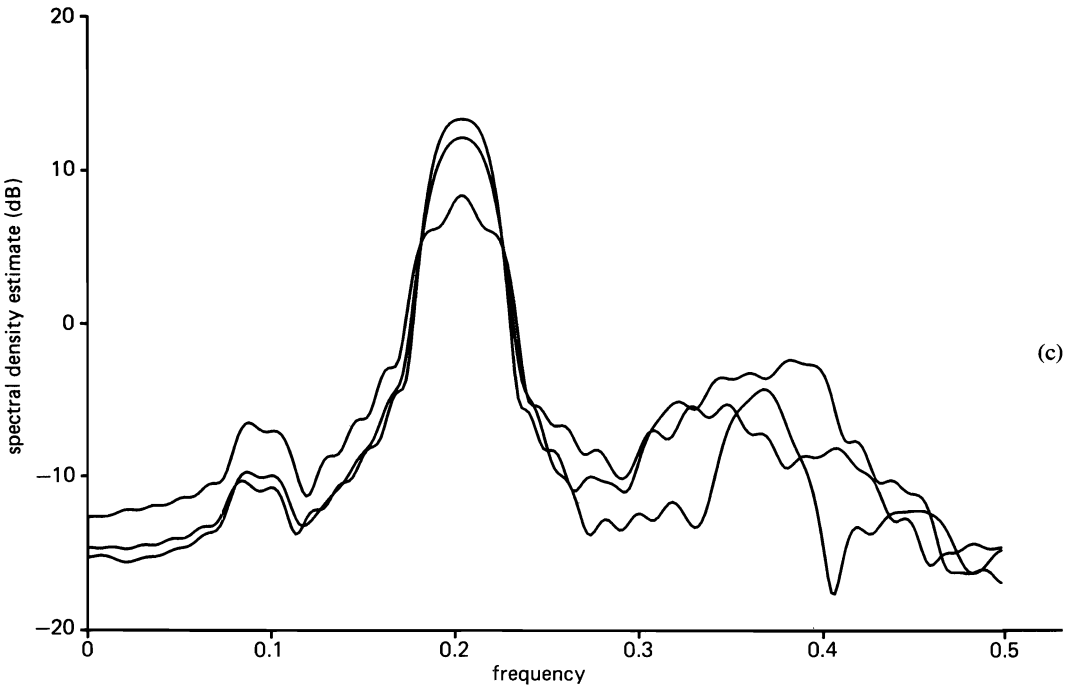
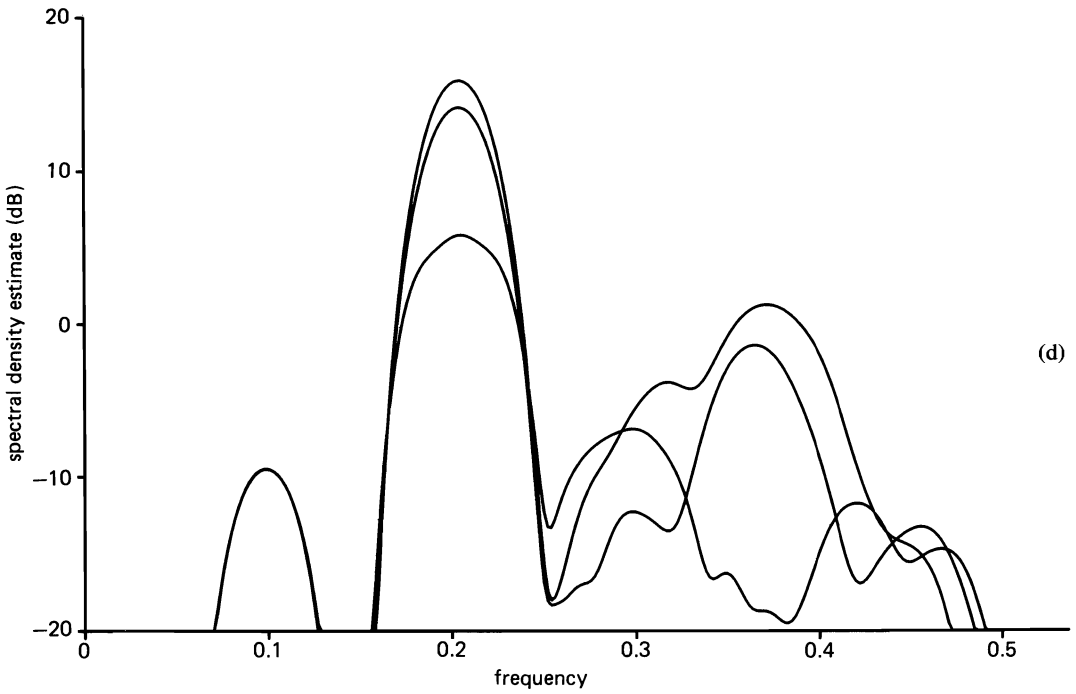


Figure 9-6 (a) Three periodograms for $N = 64$ data points each with $K = 8$ zero-padding factor and no data tapering. (b) Same as (a) but with raised-cosine data tapering.



(c)



(d)

Figure 9-6 (continued) (c) Same as (a) but with frequency smoothing ($M = 2$). (d) Same as (b) but with frequency smoothing ($M = 2$).

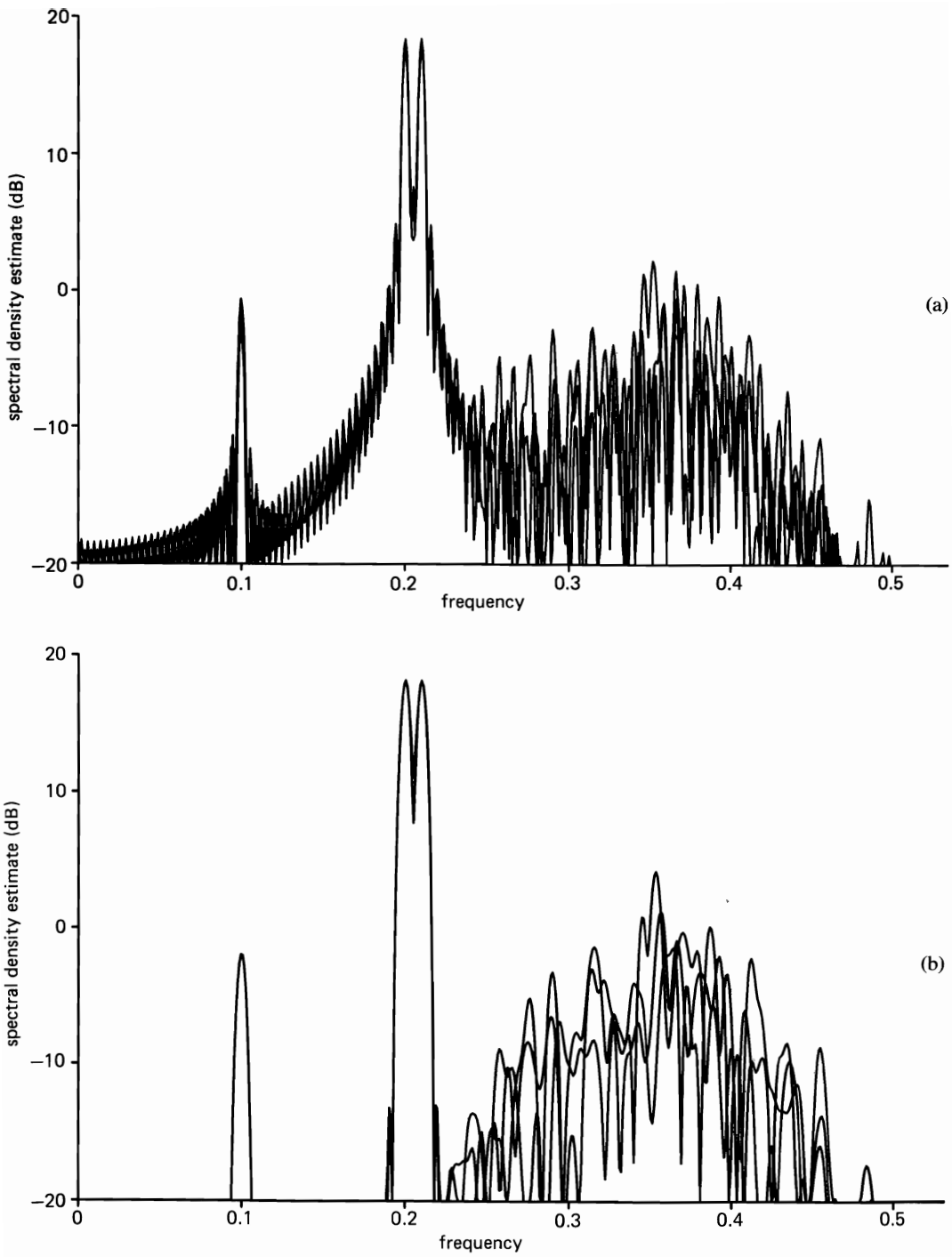


Figure 9-7 (a) Three periodograms for $N = 256$ data points each with $K = 8$ zero-padding factor and no data tapering. (b) Same as (a) but with raised-cosine data tapering.

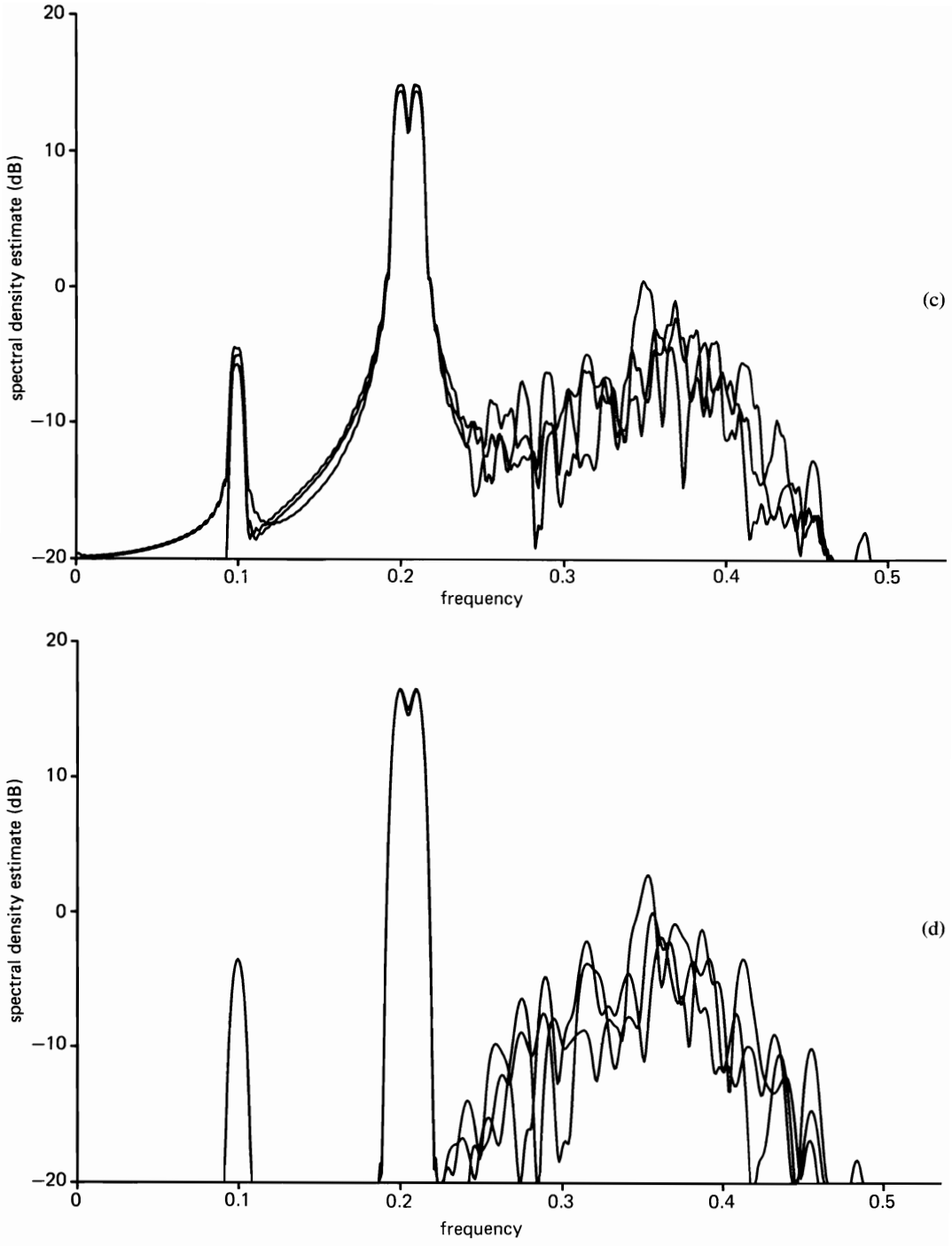


Figure 9-7 (continued) (c) Same as (a) but with frequency smoothing ($M = 2$). (d) Same as (b) but with frequency smoothing ($M = 2$).

with the leakage effects of the two peaks near $f = 0.2/T_s$ largely removed. With the three estimated sine waves subtracted from the data, the periodogram was calculated for the residual time-series. Finally, spectral lines with one DFT bin-width and with magnitude determined by the least squares estimates of the sine wave amplitudes were added to the periodogram. The resultant spectrum estimates, which are shown in Figure 9-8(a)–(d) for $N = 64$ and Figure 9-9(a)–(d) for $N = 256$, exhibit greatly reduced spectral leakage, as would be expected. Although the variability of the pair of spectral lines in the vicinity of $f = 0.2/T_s$ is substantial for $N = 64$, it is very small for $N = 256$. Also the variability of the single weak spectral line at $f = 0.1/T_s$ is quite small even for $N = 64$. The variability of the pair of spectral lines for $N = 64$, as well as the corresponding residual leakage, can be reduced by using a joint least squares estimate or other parametric method as demonstrated in Part 6 of this section.

2. Minimum-leakage Method

The next spectrum estimates considered are those provided by the minimum-leakage (ML) method. Both the modified ((56) in Chapter 6) and unmodified ((52) in Chapter 6) ML estimates were considered, and two versions of each of these were studied. The two versions correspond to use of either the covariance-type data-correlation matrix (which prevents the adaptive filter from running off the ends of the finite segment of data) or the autocorrelation-type matrix (which allows the filter to run completely off both ends of the data segment). The best results were obtained with the unmodified method using the covariance-type matrix and are shown in Figure 9-10(a)–(d). (However, when the autocorrelation-type matrix was used, the modified method gave the best results.) For $N = 64$ it can be seen that both resolution and reliability performances for $M = 24$ are definitely better than that provided by the periodogram (both with and without sine wave removal). However, this superior performance for $N = 64$ is obtained with the unfair advantage of knowing that the filter order $M = 24$ yields the best results. If the limit spectrum were not known in advance, then the choice $M = 24$ would not necessarily have been made. The ML spectrum estimates for $M < 20$ were too smooth and those for $M > 24$ exhibited spurious peaks. For $N = 256$, the best ML estimate, which is shown in Figure 9-10(c), does not approximate the limit spectrum as accurately as does the periodogram method (with sine wave removal) shown in Figure 9-9(c)–(d).

3. Yule-Walker, Burg, and Forward-Backward Least-Squares AR Methods

The least-squares autoregressive spectrum estimates provided by the methods of Yule-Walker (YW), or maximum-entropy, Burg, and forward-backward (FB) linear-prediction are presented in Figures 9-11(a)–(c), 9-12(a)–(c), and 9-13(a)–(c) for $N = 64$ with $M = 16$ and for $N = 256$ with $M = 16$ and $M = 32$. It can be seen that the YW method is consistently inferior to the ML method shown in Figure 9-10(a)–(d) except in the accuracy of the overall level of the spectrum

estimate. For $N = 64$, it barely resolves the peak at $f = 0.1/T_s$ and does not resolve the pair of peaks near $f = 0.2/T_s$, nor does it produce as accurate an estimate of the continuous part of the spectrum centered at $f = 0.35/T_s$. For $N = 256$, both resolution and variability are poorer than they are for both the ML method (Figure 9-10d) and the periodogram method (Figure 9-9(c)–(d)). The Burg method is also consistently inferior to the ML method (except for the accuracy of the overall level and the relative heights of the weak and strong spectral lines) because of its higher variability. However, the Burg method is superior to the periodogram method for $N = 64$ (Figure 9-9(c)–(d)). The FB method clearly does the best job of resolving the three spectral lines for $N = 64$, and it is clearly the best in terms of low variability in the locations of the spectral lines. However, the Burg method is superior in terms of the accuracy of estimating the relative heights of the weak and strong spectral lines. For $N = 256$, the same conclusions apply in comparing the Burg and FB methods. However these two methods are inferior to the periodogram methods (and the ML method in Figure 9-10(d) except for the accuracy of the overall level) for $N = 256$. Comparison of Figures 9-12(b)–(c) and 9-13(b)–(c) with Figure 9-9(c)–(d) reveals that the periodogram method provides considerably more accurate estimates of the limit spectrum.

The superiority of the Burg and FB methods relative to the periodogram method for $N = 64$ must be tempered by the fact that these two parametric methods were given the unfair advantage of having the best model orders specified. When this advantage is removed by using the estimated orders produced by the model-order-determining methods of Part 3 in Section C, both parametric methods become inferior to the periodogram method because the estimated order is too high for $N = 64$, resulting in spurious peaks and high variability.

Although all three order-determining-methods, FPE, AIC, and CAT, produced comparable order estimates for each spectrum estimation method, these estimates were too low for the YW method ($5 \leqslant M \leqslant 11$ for $N = 64$ and $12 \leqslant M \leqslant 22$ for $N = 256$) and too high for the Burg method ($M \geqslant 48$ for $N = 64$ and $M \geqslant 84$ for $N = 256$) and for the FB method, except for $N = 256$ ($M \cong 24$ for $N = 64$, $M \cong 32$ for $N = 256$). Unfortunately, in practice where there is only one data segment to analyze, there is apparently no way to determine from these parametric methods which peaks are correct and which are spurious. Sample spectrum estimates with estimated orders are shown in Figures 9-14, 9-15, and 9-16.

4. Overdetermined-Normal-Equations AR Method

The spectrum estimates provided by the overdetermined-normal-equations (ODNE) AR method specified by (90) and (69) are shown in Figures 9-17(a)–(c) and 9-18(a)–(c) for the parameter Q, which specifies the number of normal equations, given by $Q = 48$. The cases included are $N = 64$ with $M = 16$ and $N = 256$ with $M = 16$ and $M = 32$. The results shown in Figure 9-17(a)–(c) were obtained using the biased correlation estimates from the autocorrelation method of least squares, whereas the results shown in Figure 18(a)–(c) were

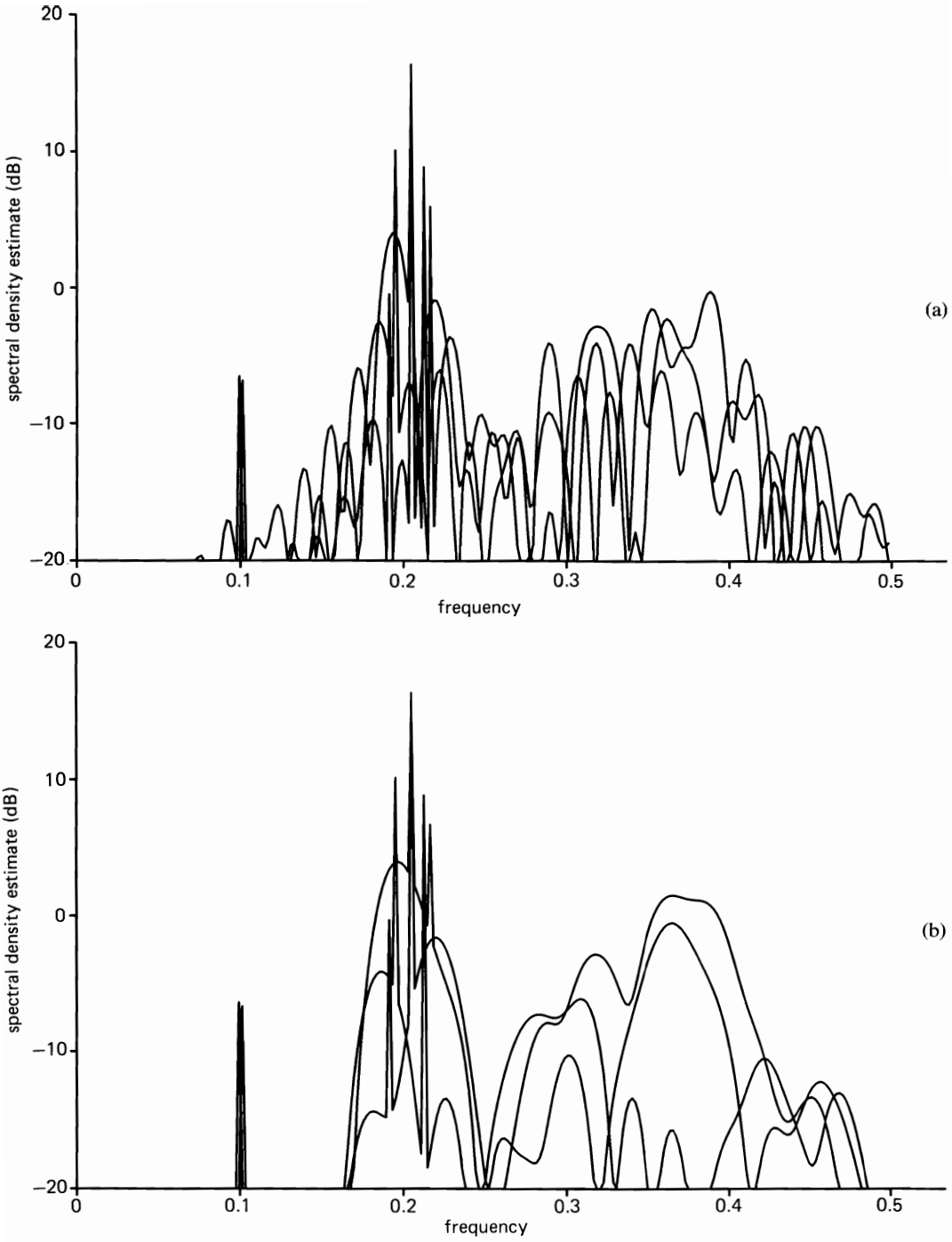
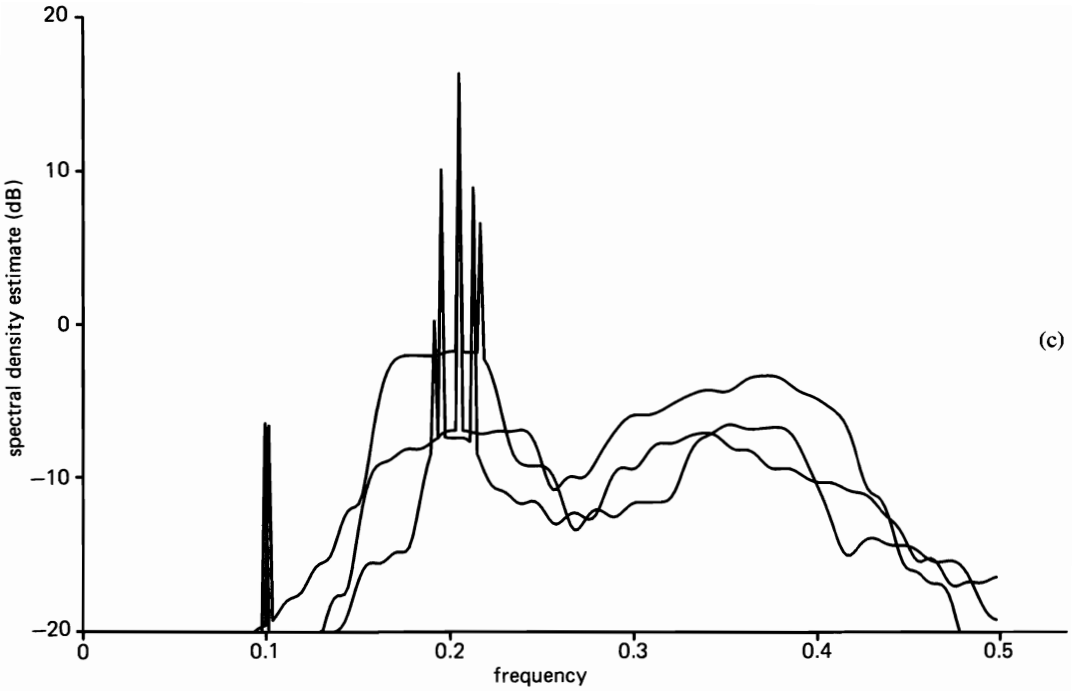
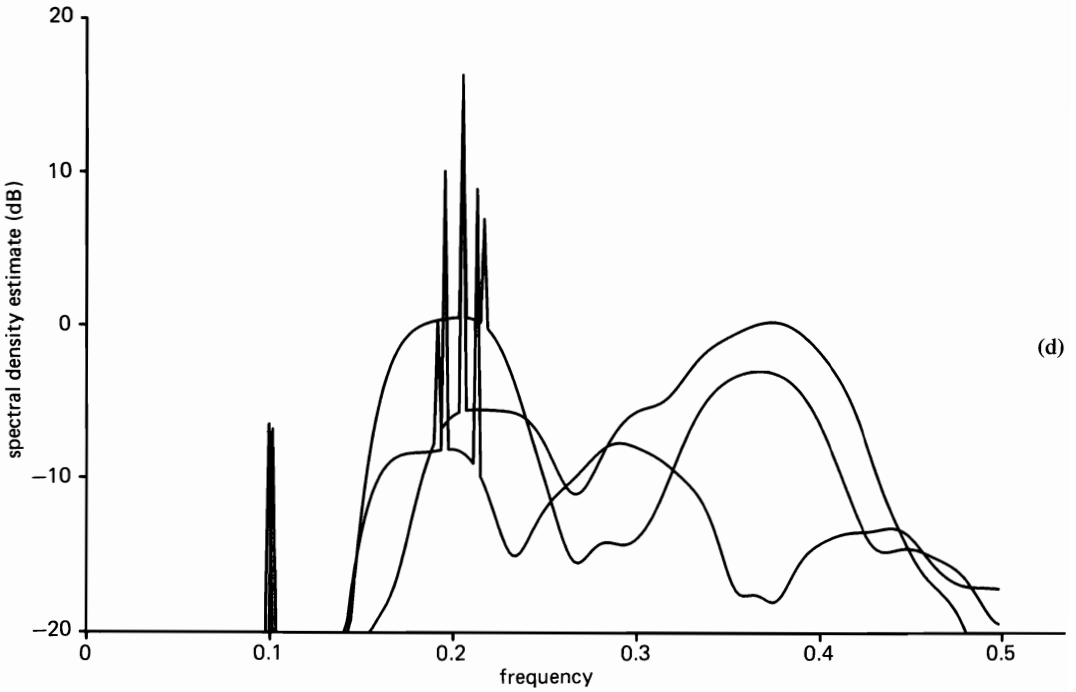


Figure 9-8 (a) Three periodograms with sine-wave removal and spectral line reinsertion for $N = 64$ data points each, and with $K = 8$ zero-padding factor and no data tapering. (b) Same as (a) but with raised-cosine data tapering.



(c)



(d)

Figure 9-8 (continued) (c) Same as (a) but with frequency smoothing ($M = 4$). (d) Same as (b) but with frequency smoothing ($M = 4$).

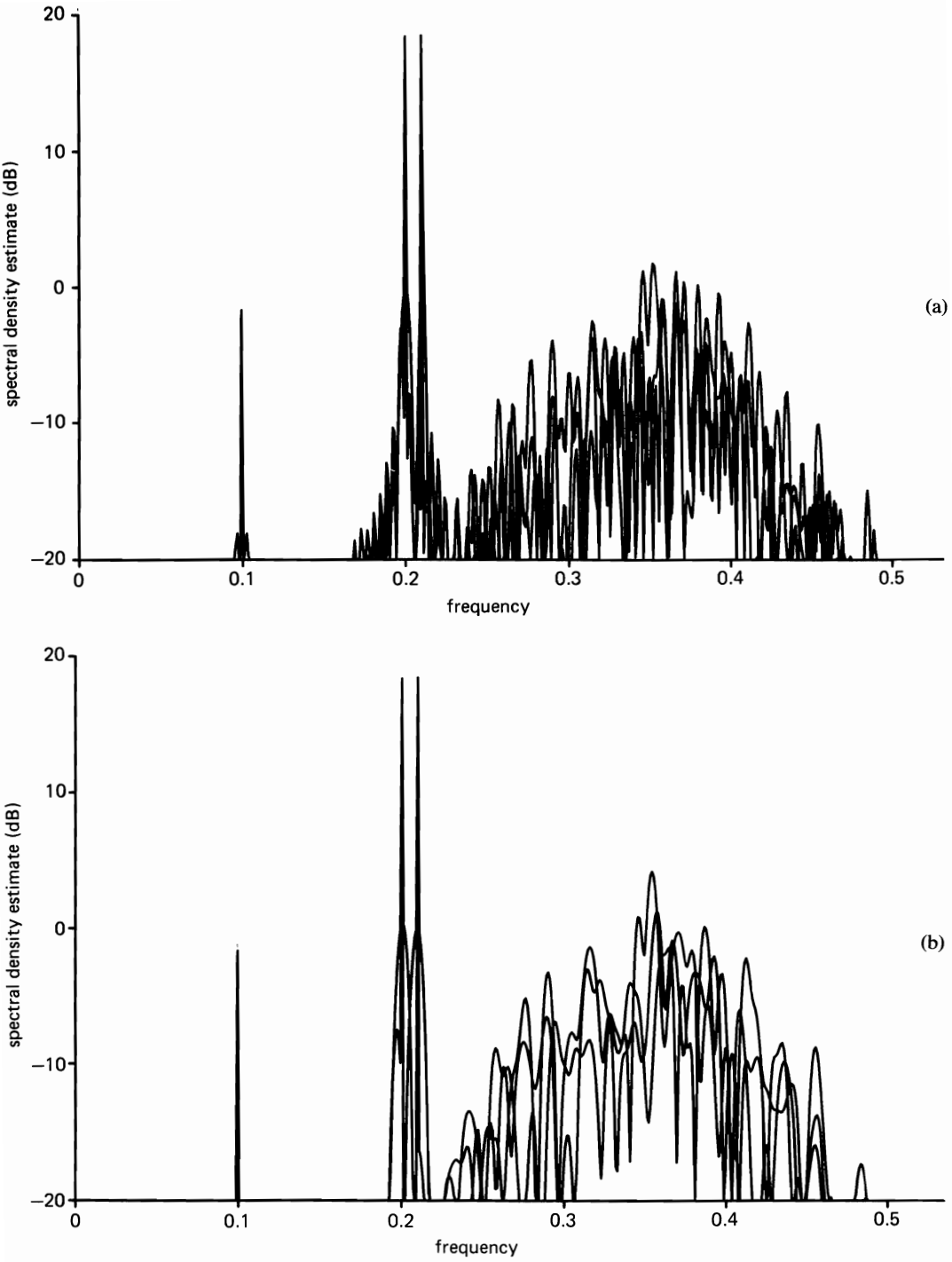


Figure 9-9 (a) Three periodograms with sine-wave removal and spectral line reinsertion for $N = 256$ data points each, and with $K = 8$ zero-padding factor and no data tapering. (b) Same as (a) but with raised-cosine data tapering.

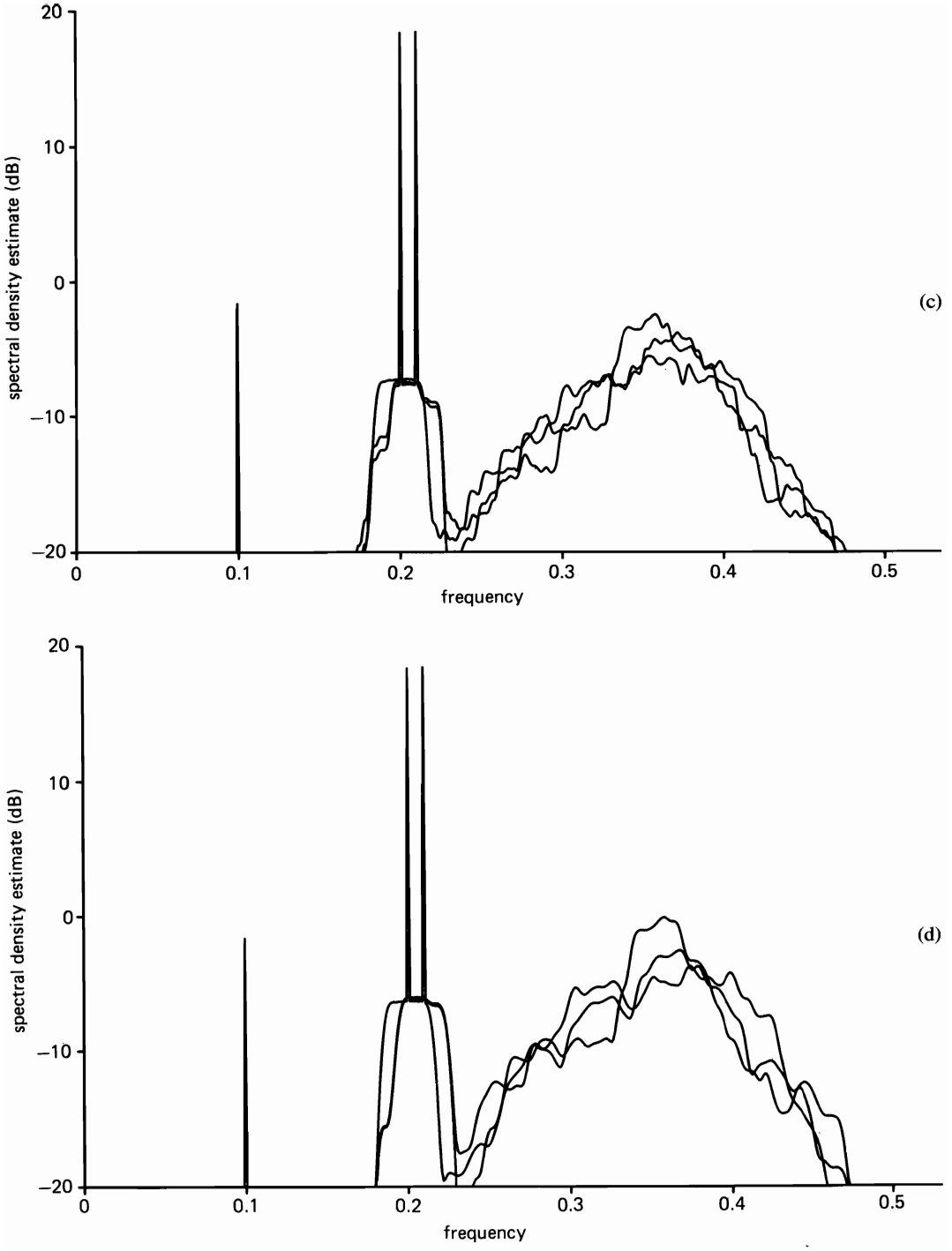


Figure 9-9 (continued) (c) Same as (a) but with frequency smoothing ($M = 8$). (d) Same as (b) but with frequency smoothing ($M = 8$).

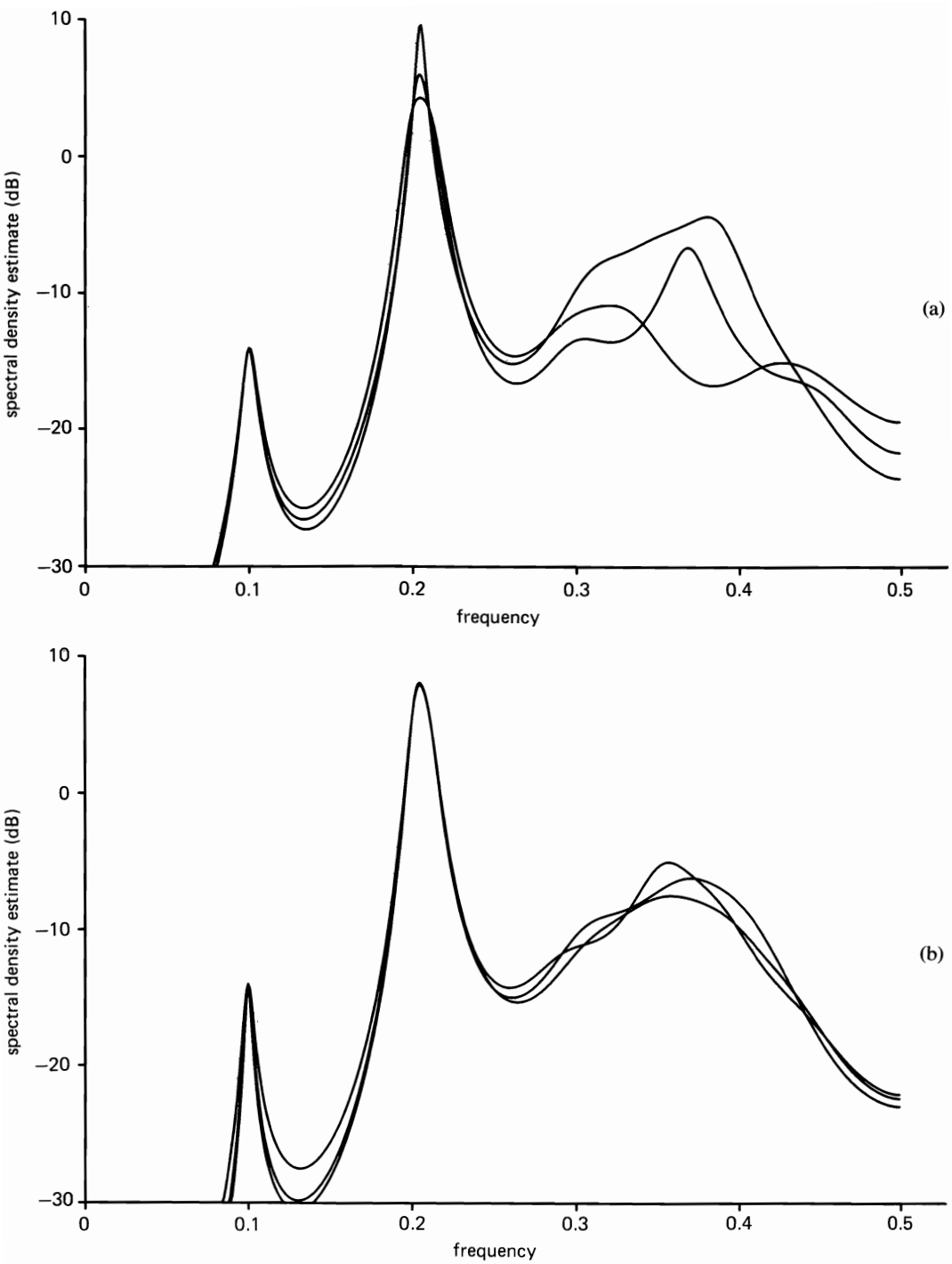


Figure 9-10 (a) Three minimum-leakage spectrum estimates with $N = 64$, $M = 16$. (b) Same as (a) but with $N = 256$, $M = 16$.

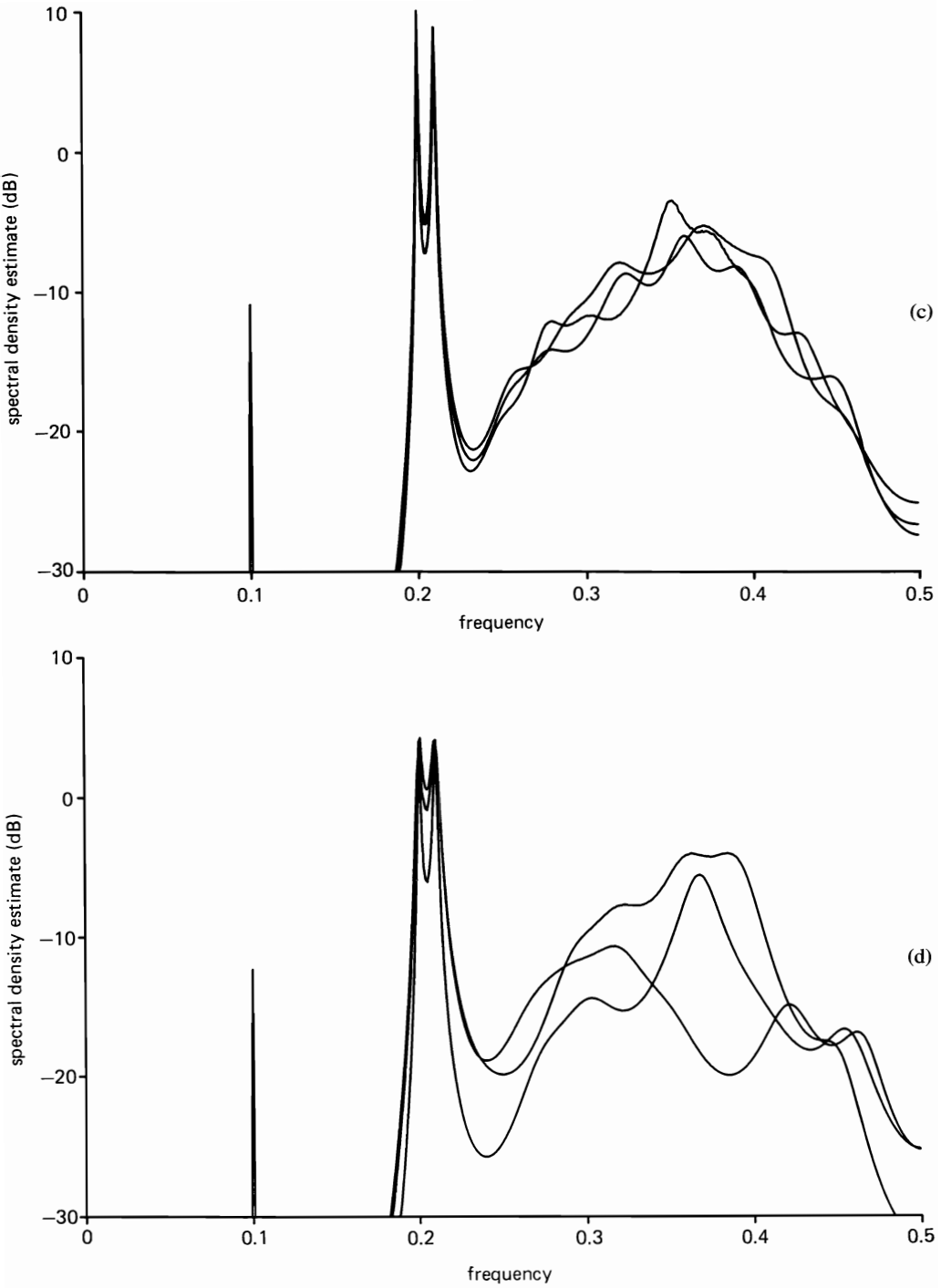


Figure 9-10 (continued) (c) Same as (a) but with $N = 256$, $M = 32$. (d) Same as (a) but with $M = 24$.

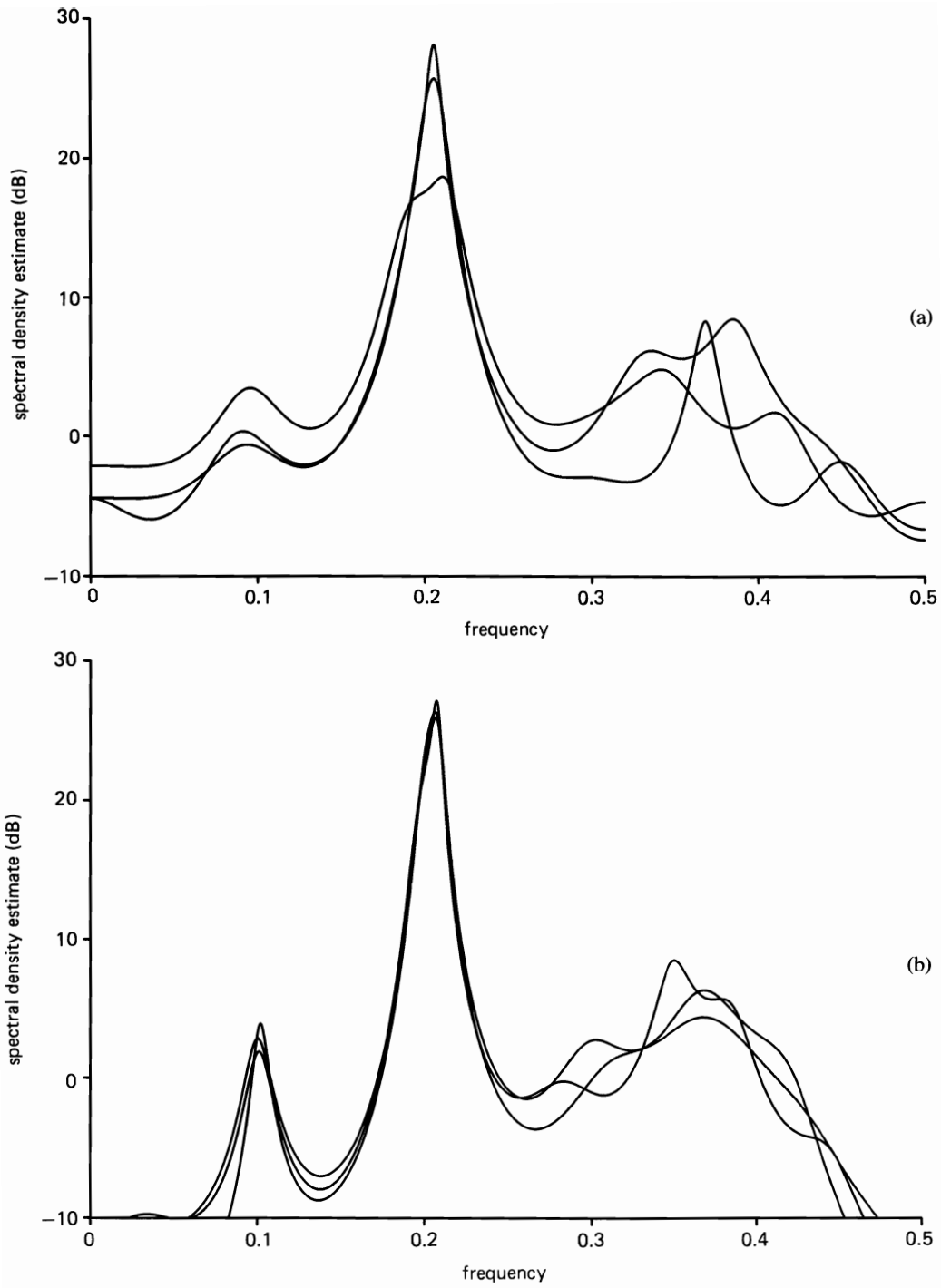


Figure 9-11 (a) Three Yule-Walker AR spectrum estimates with $N = 64$, $M = 16$. (b) Same as (a) but with $N = 256$, $M = 16$.

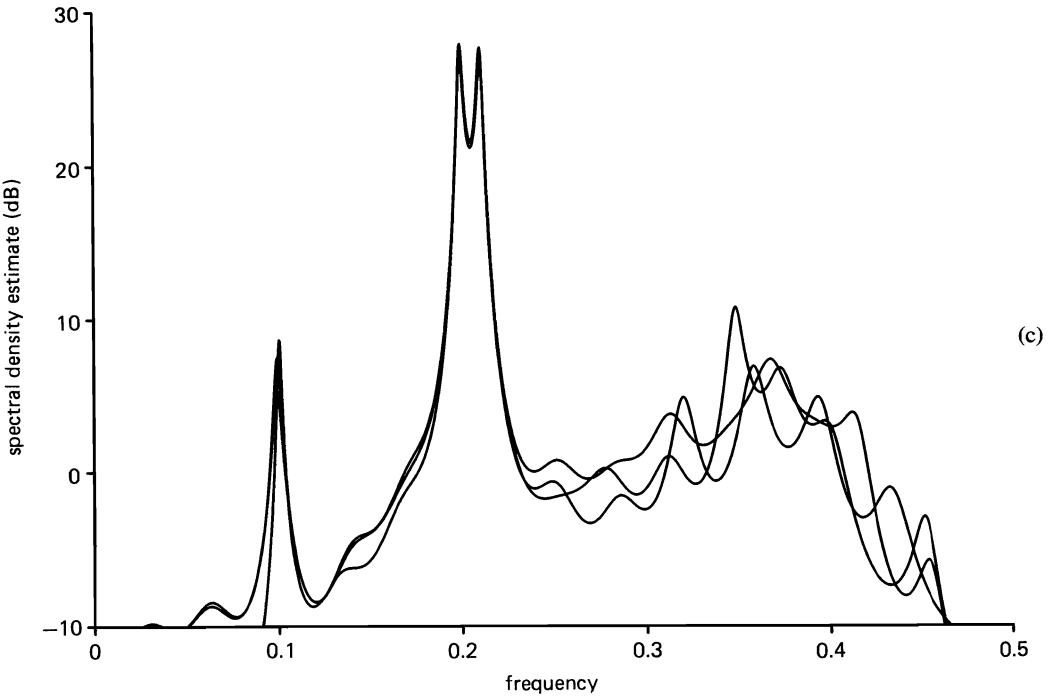


Figure 9-11 (continued) (c) Same as (a) but with $N = 256$, $M = 32$.

obtained using the corresponding unbiased estimates (see exercise 12). As expected, the method that uses the unbiased estimates provides better resolution but the increase in variability is surprisingly small. For $N = 64$, the overall performance of the unbiased ODNE method is slightly inferior to that of the Burg method and is strongly inferior to that of the FB method. For $N = 256$, the performance of the unbiased ODNE method is comparable to that of the Burg and FB methods and is, therefore, inferior to that of both the ML method (Figure 9-10(d)) and the periodogram method (Figure 9-9(c)–(d)). Also, the accuracy of the overall level of the spectrum estimate provided by both ODNE methods is poor.

5. Singular-Value-Decomposition AR Method

The spectrum estimates provided by the singular-value-decomposition (SVD) method specified by (102) and (69) are shown in Figure 9-19(a)–(d). Since the data is not from an AR model and does not consist of simply strong sinewaves in a white noise background, the eigenvalues do not partition into one set of relatively large values corresponding to spectral features of interest and a remaining set of negligible values or a set of small values corresponding to a flat spectrum. As a consequence, the procedure of using the test (96) to determine a best rank M_0 cannot be expected to perform well, particularly since there will be no obvious way to set the threshold ratio ρ in (96). Therefore, M_0 was just chosen to be

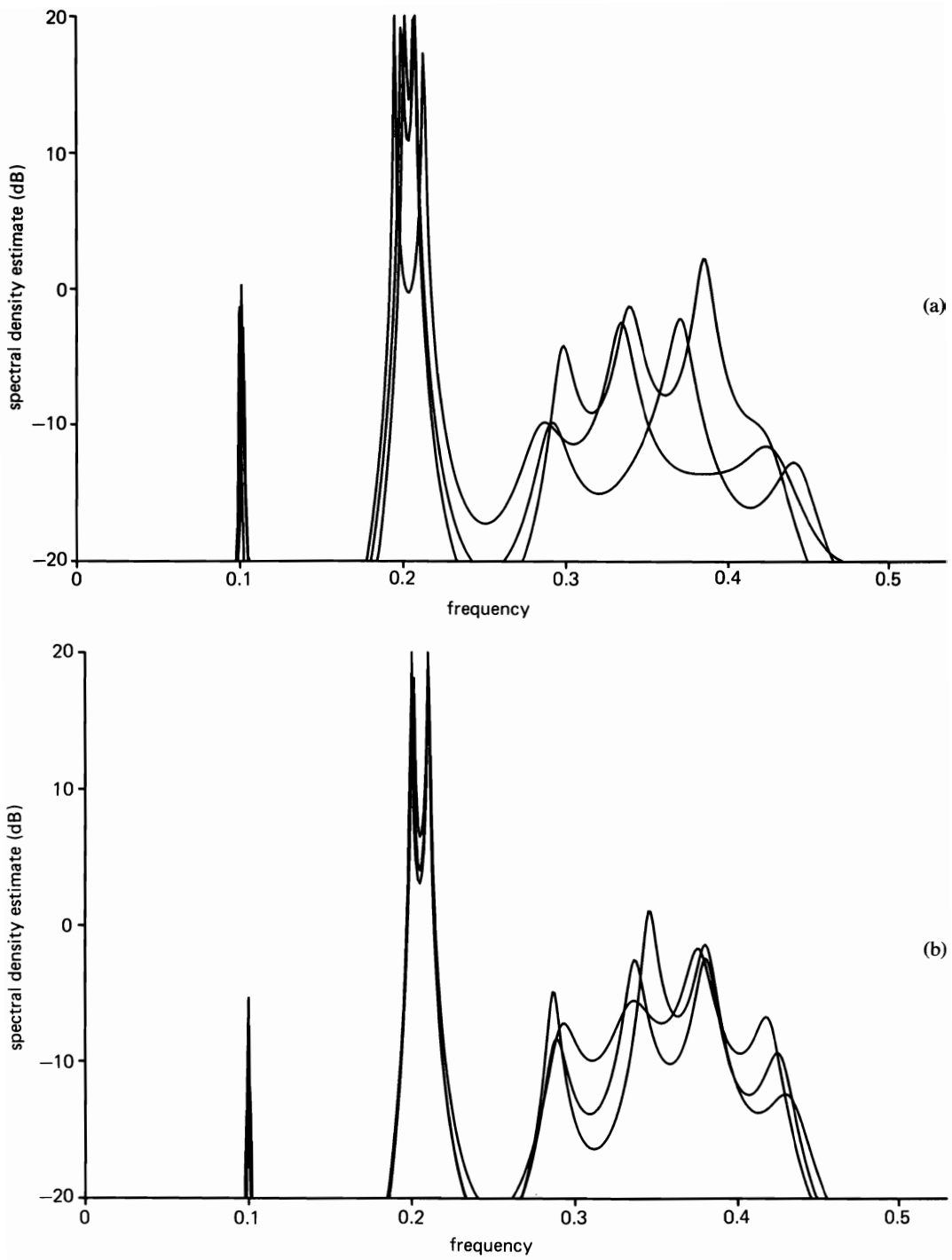


Figure 9-12 (a) Three Burg AR spectrum estimates with $N = 64$, $M = 16$ (highest peak is 33 dB). (b) Same as (a) but with $N = 256$, $M = 16$ (highest peak = 34 dB).

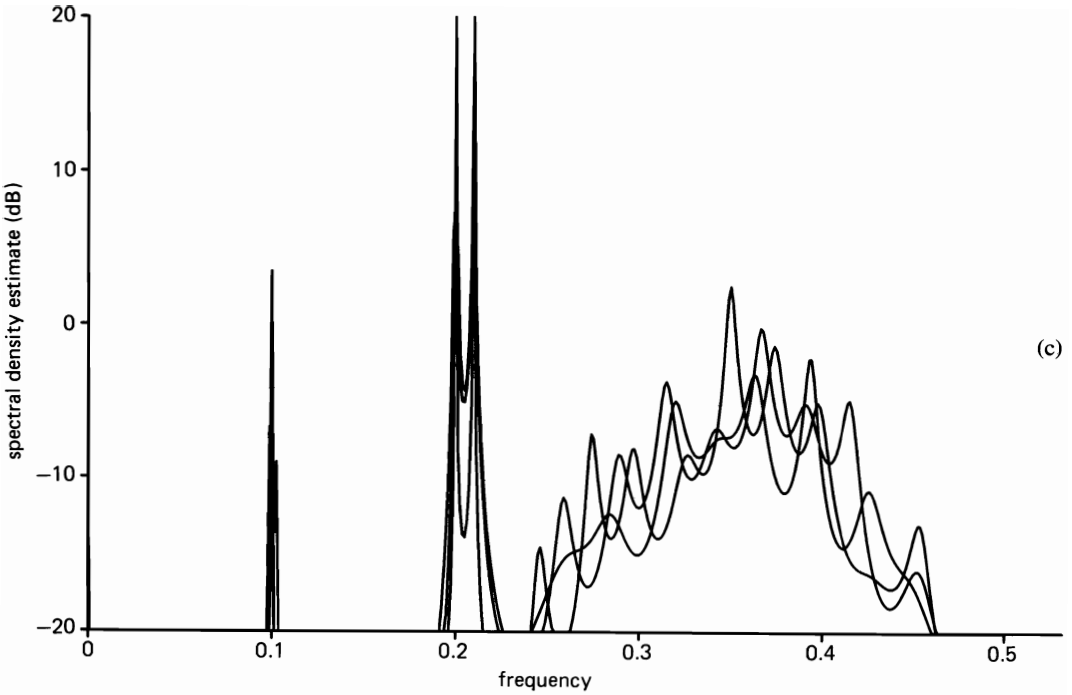


Figure 9-12 (continued) (c) Same as (a) but with $N = 256$, $M = 32$ (highest peak = 35 dB).

$M_0 = 16$ and $M_0 = 32$, and the corresponding ratio ρ was calculated (as an aside). For $M_0 = 16$, $\rho \cong 0.96$ for $N = 64$ and $\rho \cong 0.97$ for $N = 256$. For $M_0 = 32$, $\rho \cong 0.99$ for $N = 64$ and $N = 256$. It can be seen from Figure 9-19(a)–(d), that for both $N = 64$ and $N = 256$ the performance is inferior to that of all other parametric methods as well as the ML method and the periodogram method (Figures 9-8(c)–(d) and 9-9(c)–(d)). As with all parametric methods, experimentation with the order M_0 showed that the best results were obtained with $M_0 \cong 16$ for $N = 64$ and with $M_0 \cong 32$ for $N = 256$.

6. Hybrid Method

It can be seen from the preceding results that the best possible spectrum estimate can be obtained by exploiting the strong points of each of several methods. To illustrate the quality of spectrum estimates obtainable with such hybrid methods, the FB method was used to detect and estimate the frequencies of spectral lines, and the DFT (with $K = 8$ zero-padding factor) was then used to estimate the amplitudes and phases of the three corresponding sinewaves; after subtraction of these estimated sinewaves from the data, the 32-point smoothed periodogram ($M = 4$ and $K = 8$) was computed. The results are shown in Figure 9-20. This is clearly the most accurate of all the spectrum estimates considered for short data segments ($N = 64$).

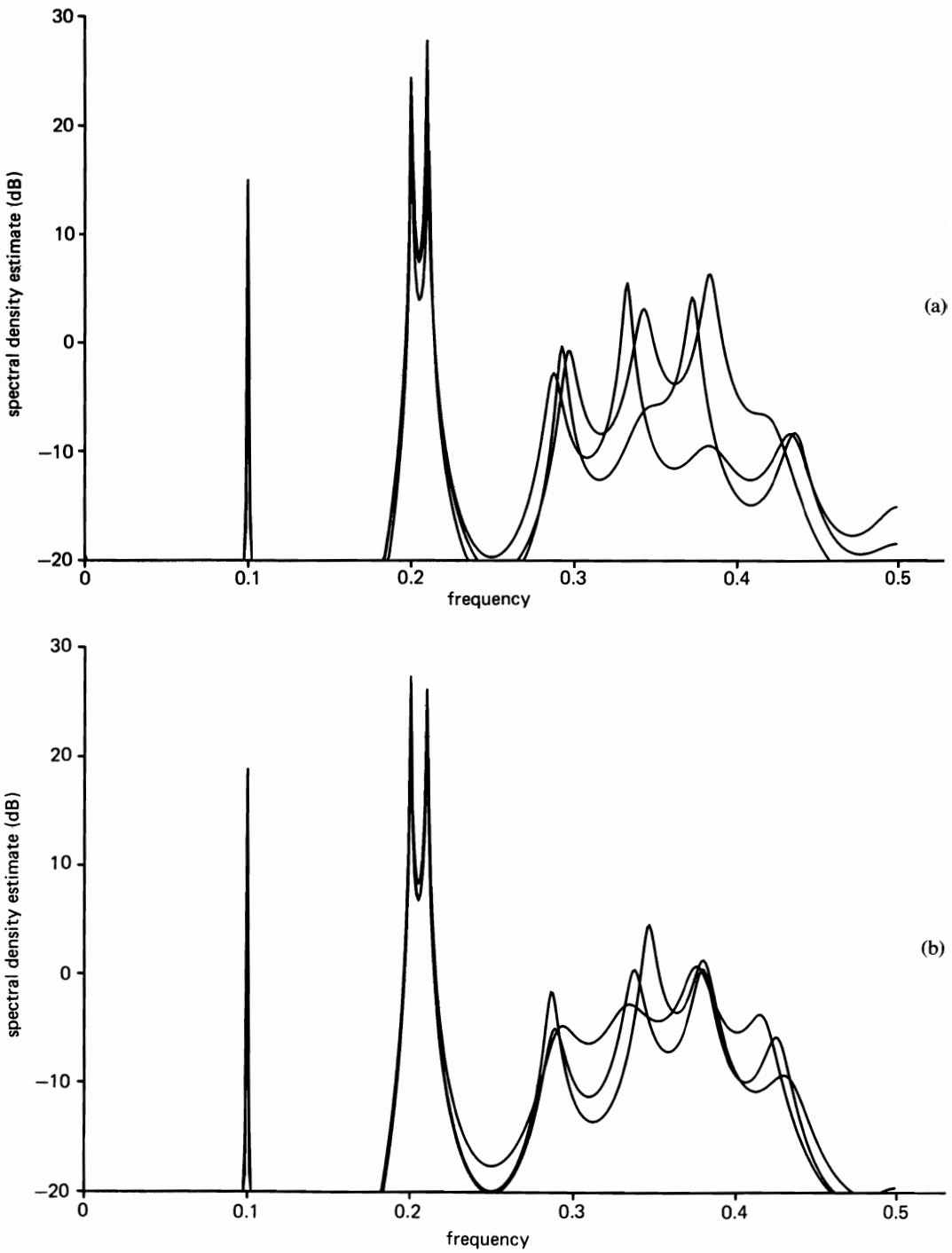


Figure 9-13 (a) Three forward-backward linear-prediction AR spectrum estimates with $N = 64$, $M = 16$. (b) Same as (a) but with $N = 256$, $M = 16$.

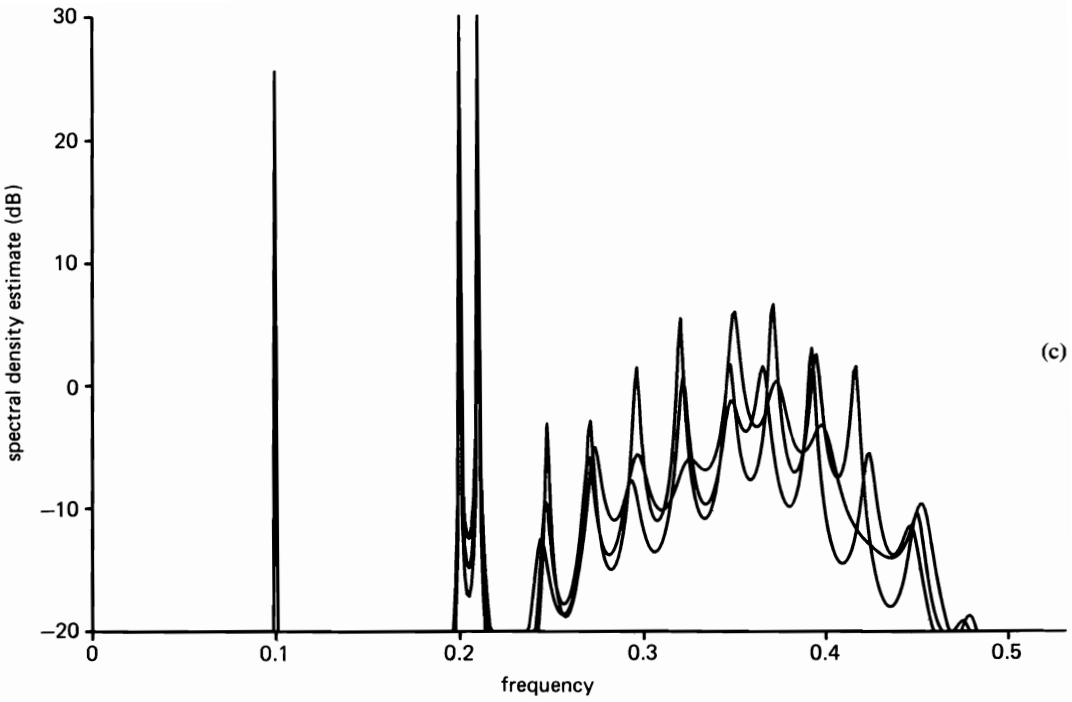


Figure 9-13 (continued) (c) Same as (a) but with $N = 256$, $M = 32$ (highest peak is 39 dB).

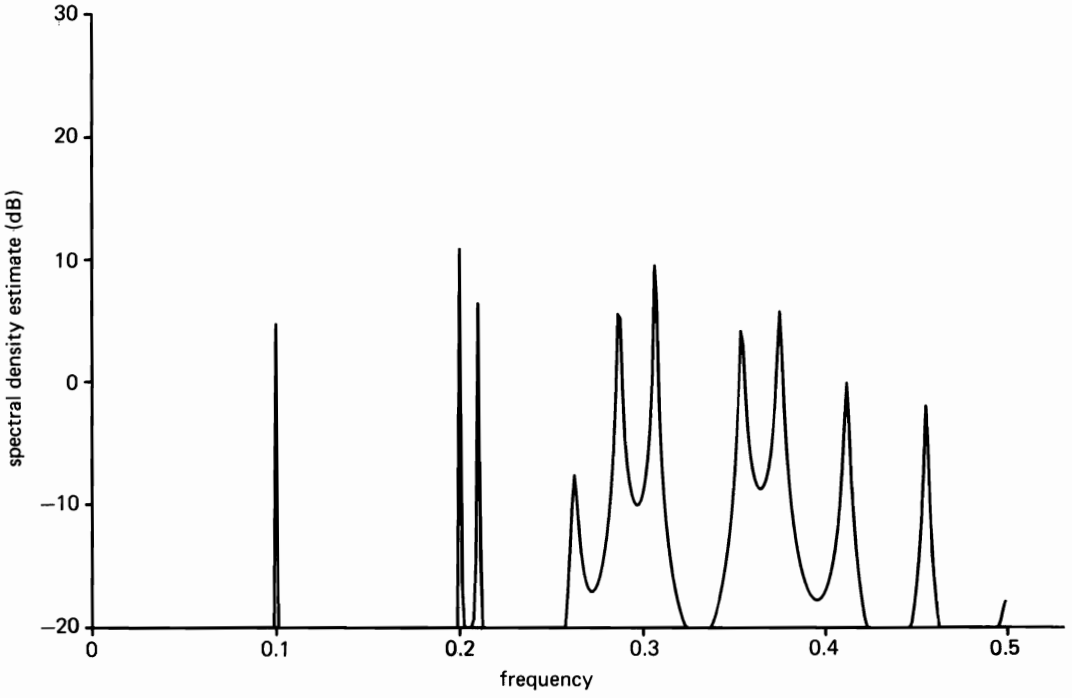


Figure 9-14 Sample of a poor spectrum estimate obtained with the forward-backward linear-prediction method with too high an order ($M = 24$) for $N = 64$.

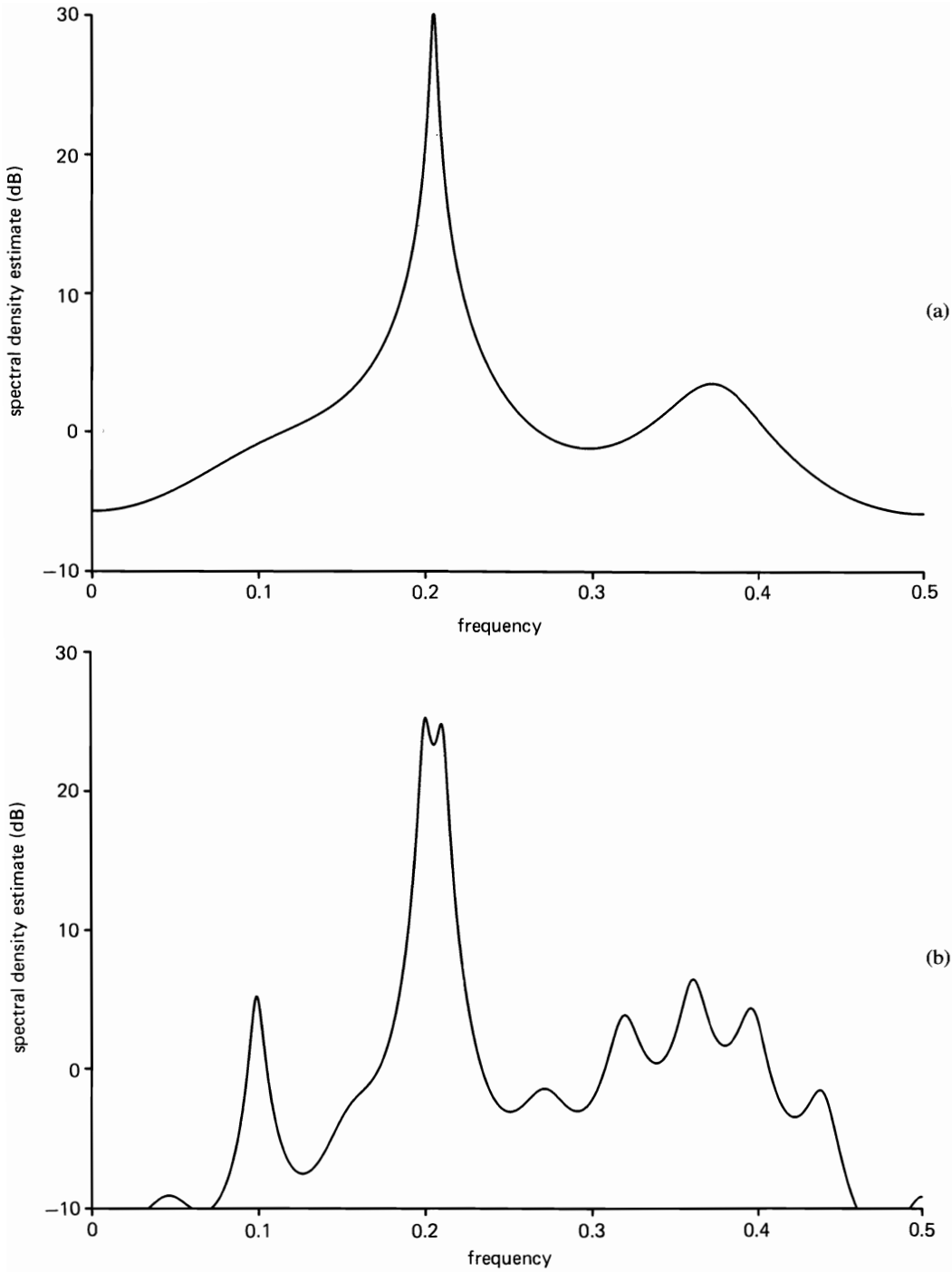


Figure 9-15 (a) Sample of poor spectrum estimates obtained with the Yule-Walker AR method with too low an order ($M = 7$) for $N = 64$. (b) Same as (a) but with $M = 22$, $N = 256$.

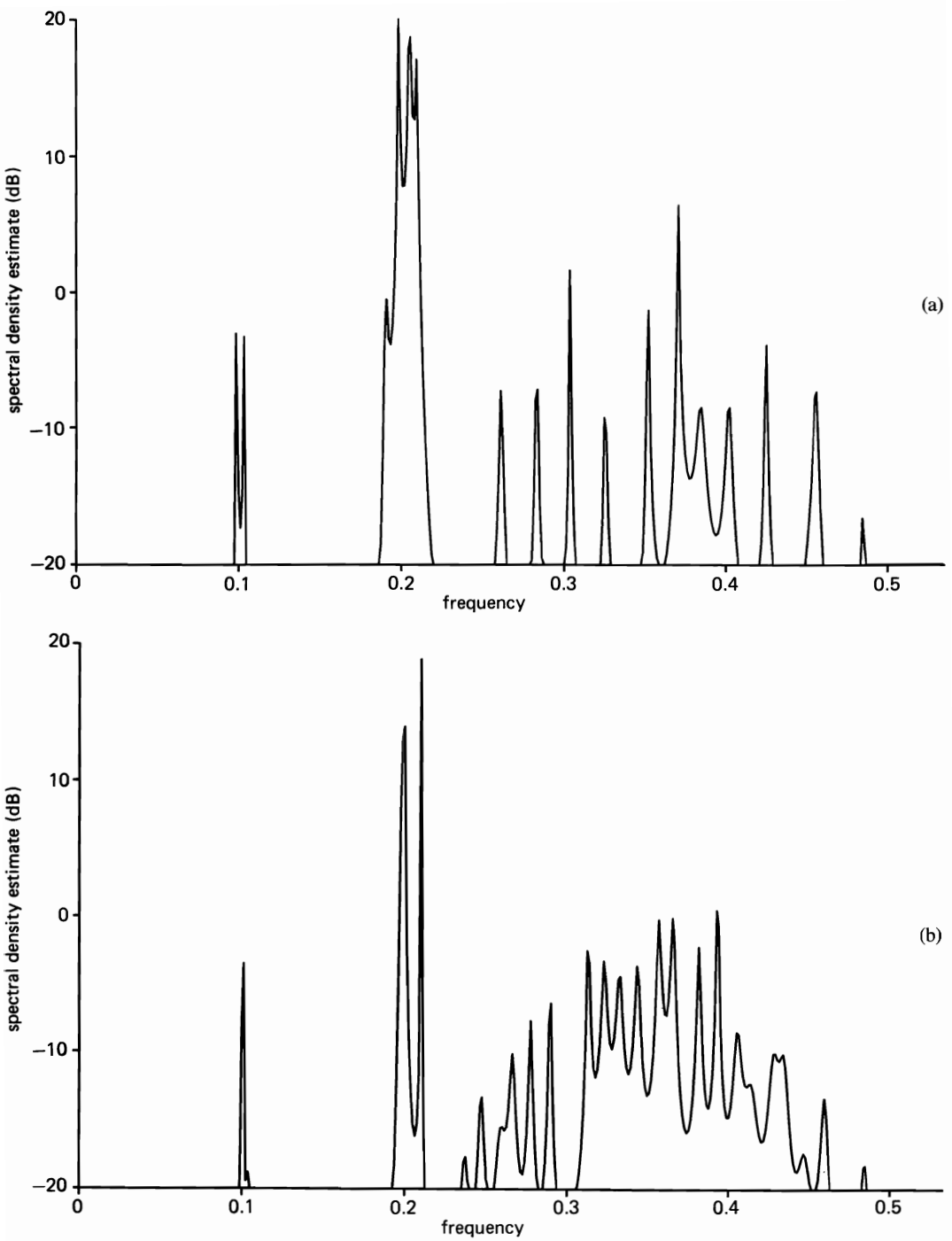


Figure 9-16 (a) Sample of poor spectrum estimates obtained with the Burg AR method with too high an order ($M = 48$) for $N = 64$. (b) Same as (a) but with $M = 90$, $N = 256$.

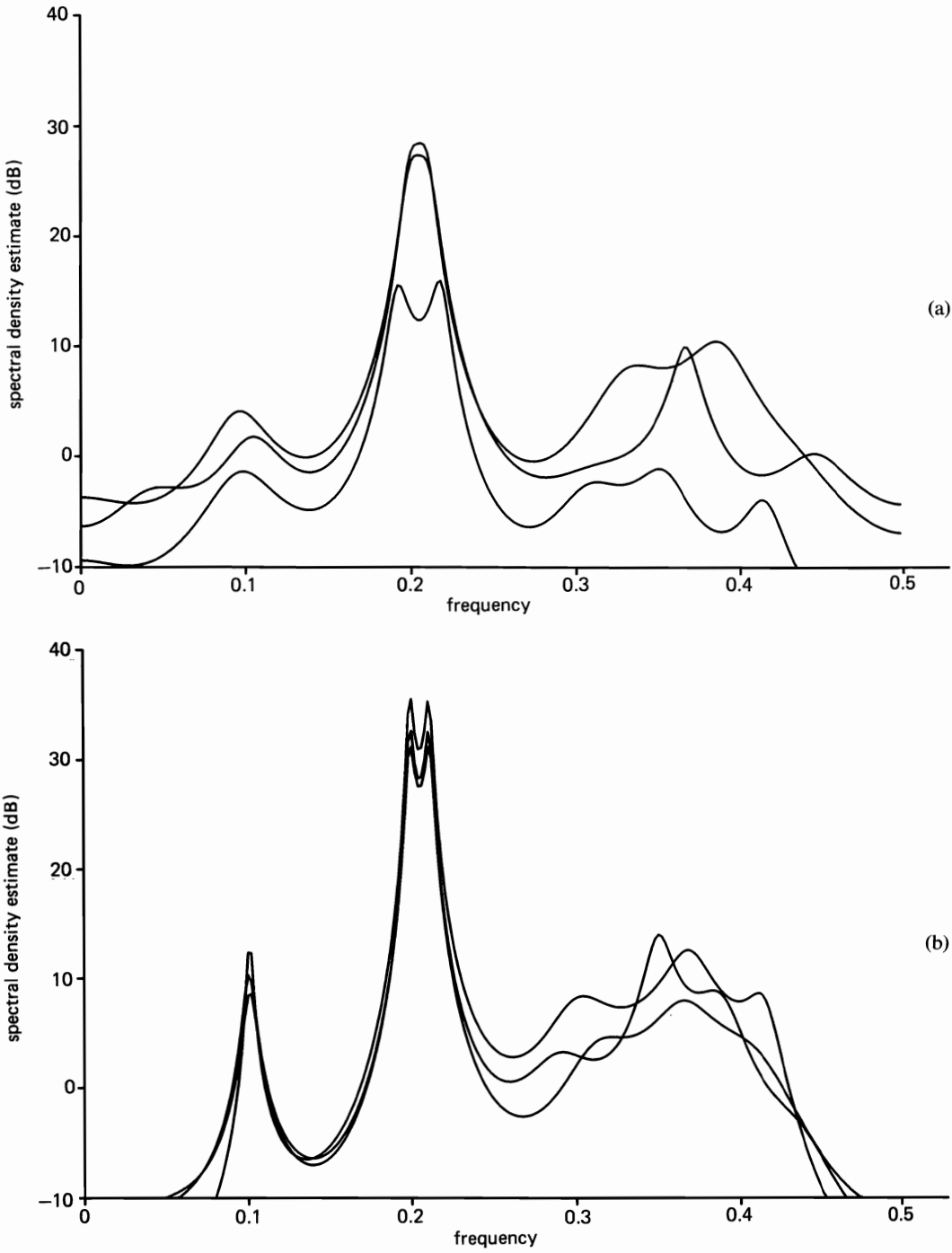


Figure 9-17 (a) Three overdetermined-normal-equations AR spectrum estimates obtained using biased autocorrelation estimates and $Q = 48$ normal equations with $N = 64$, $M = 16$. (b) Same as (a) but with $N = 256$, $M = 16$.

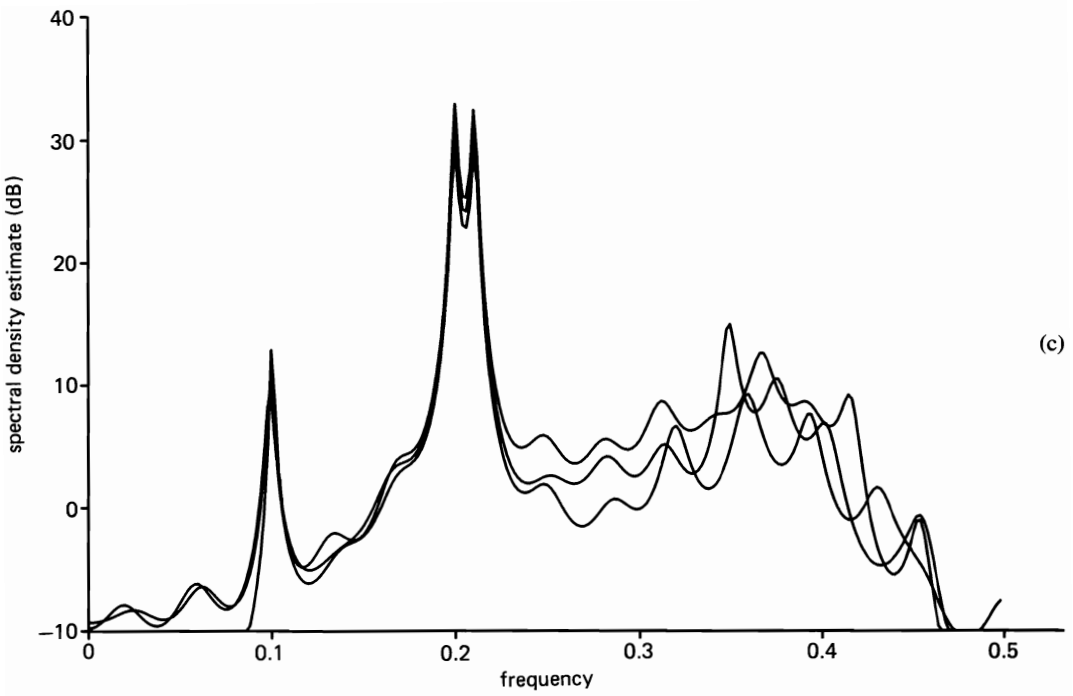


Figure 9-17 (continued) (c) Same as (a) but with $N = 256$, $M = 32$.

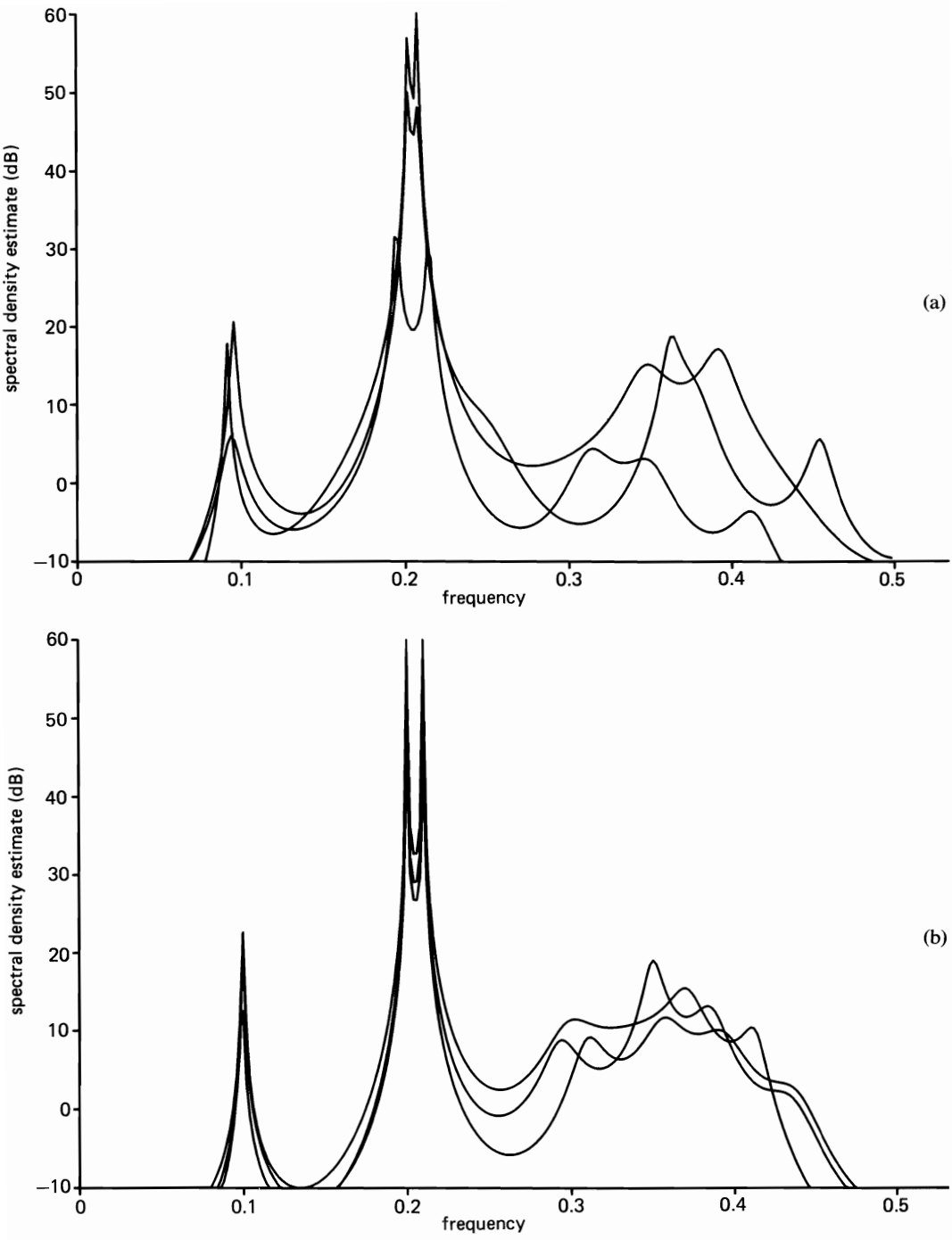


Figure 9-18 (a) Three overdetermined-normal-equations AR spectrum estimates obtained using unbiased autocorrelation estimates and $Q = 48$ normal equations with $N = 64$, $M = 16$. (b) Same as (a) but with $N = 256$, $M = 16$ (highest peak is 64 dB).

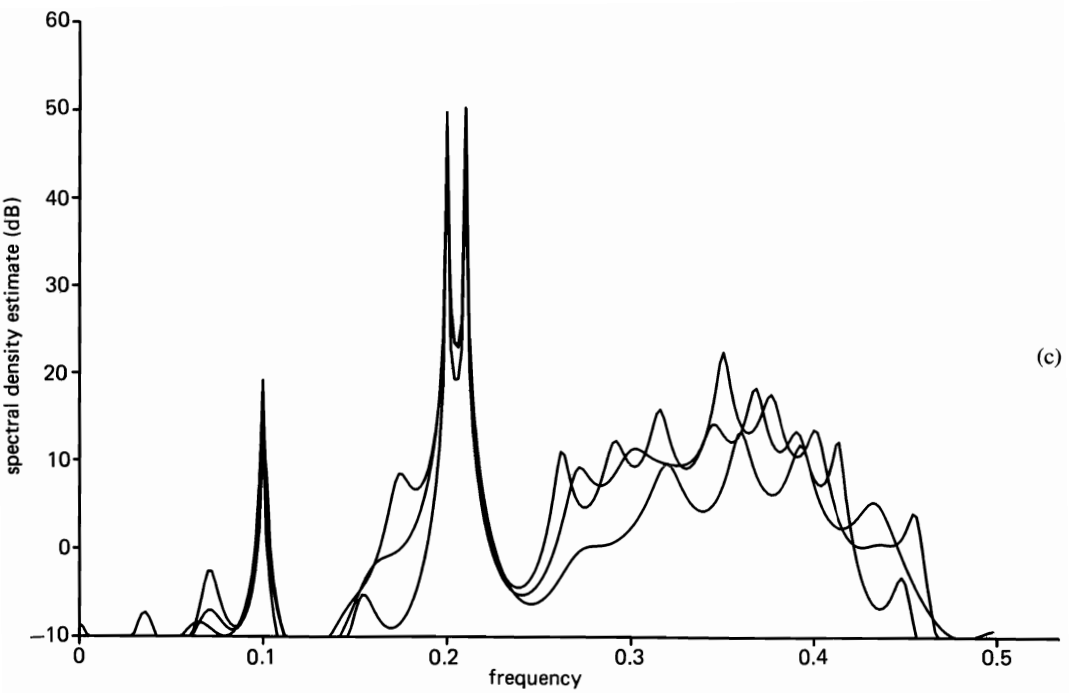


Figure 9-18 (continued) (c) Same as (a) but with $N = 256$, $M = 32$.

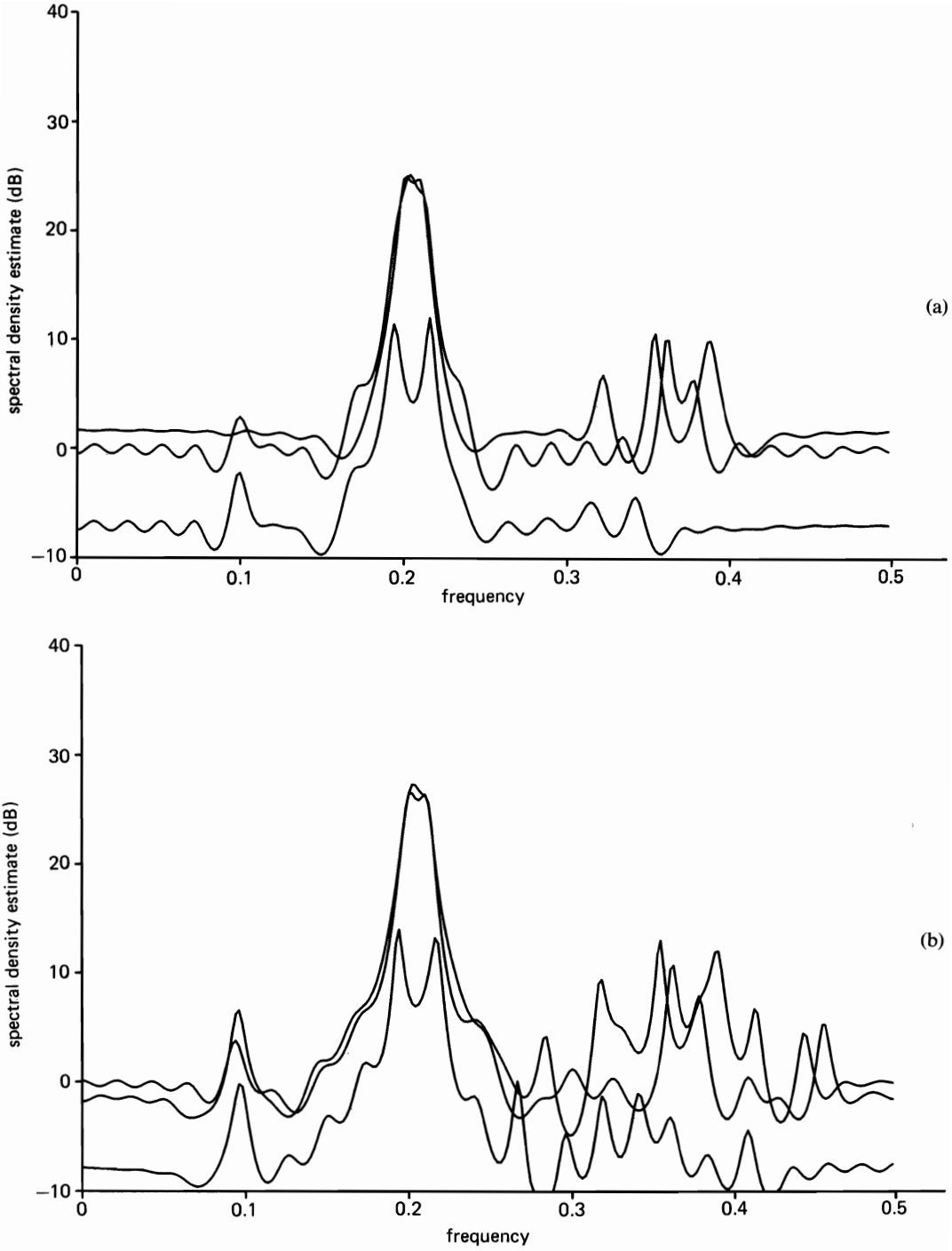
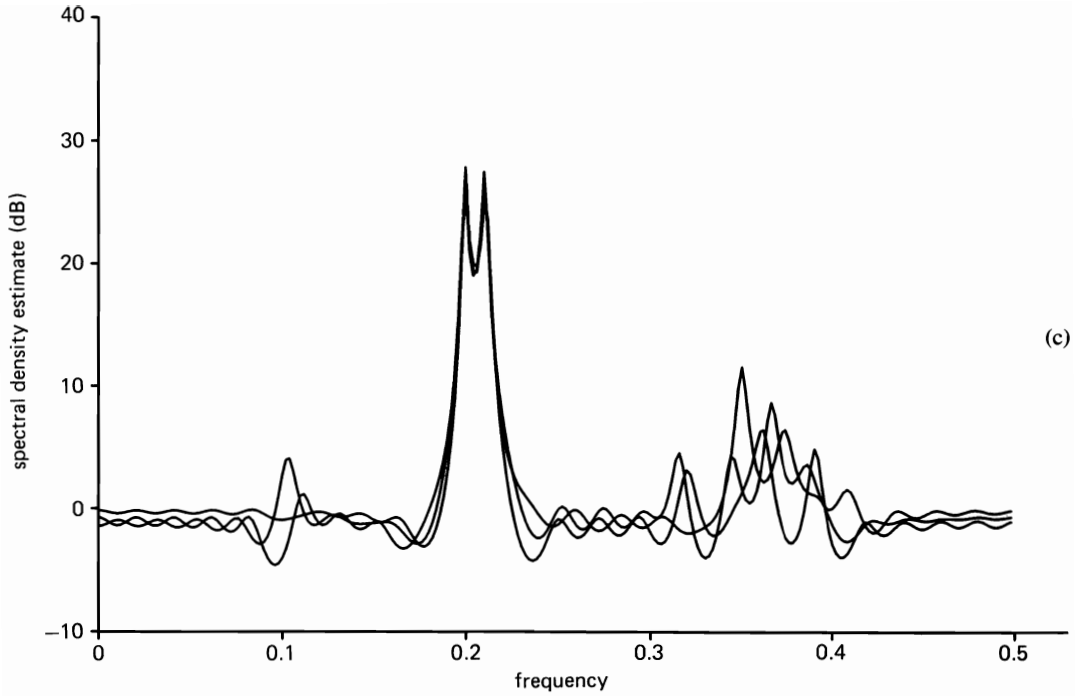


Figure 9-19 (a) Three singular-value-decomposition spectrum estimates obtained using $Q = 48$, $N = 64$, $M_0 = 16$. (b) Same as (a) but with $M_0 = 32$.



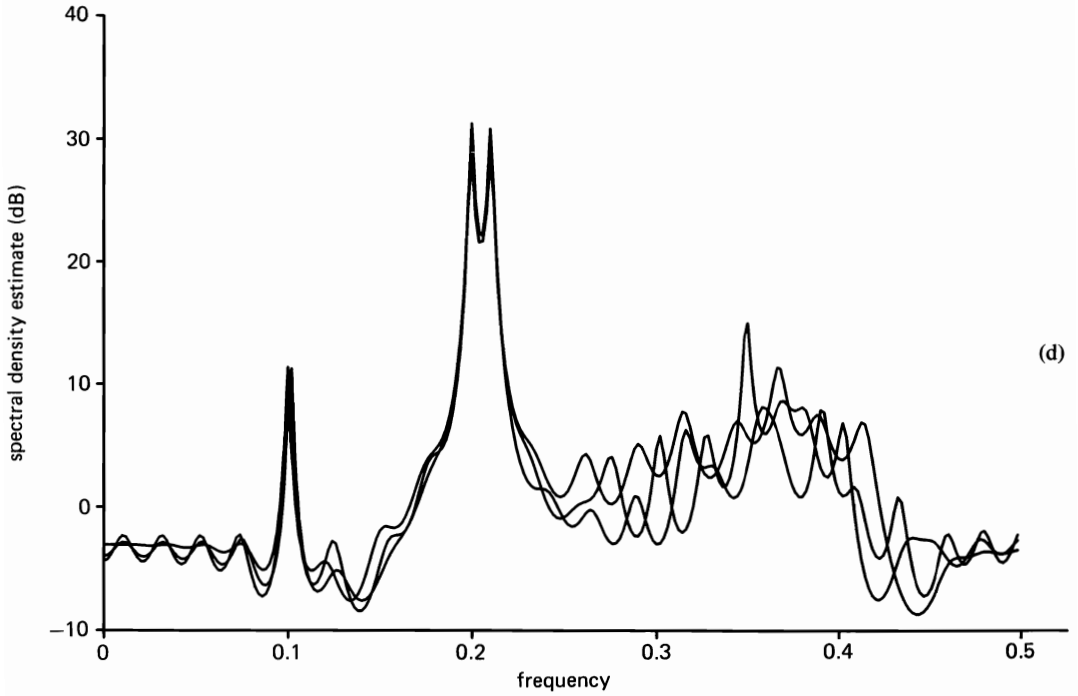


Figure 9-19 (continued) (c) Same as (a) but with $N = 256$, $M_0 = 16$. (d) Same as (a) but with $N = 256$, $M_0 = 32$.

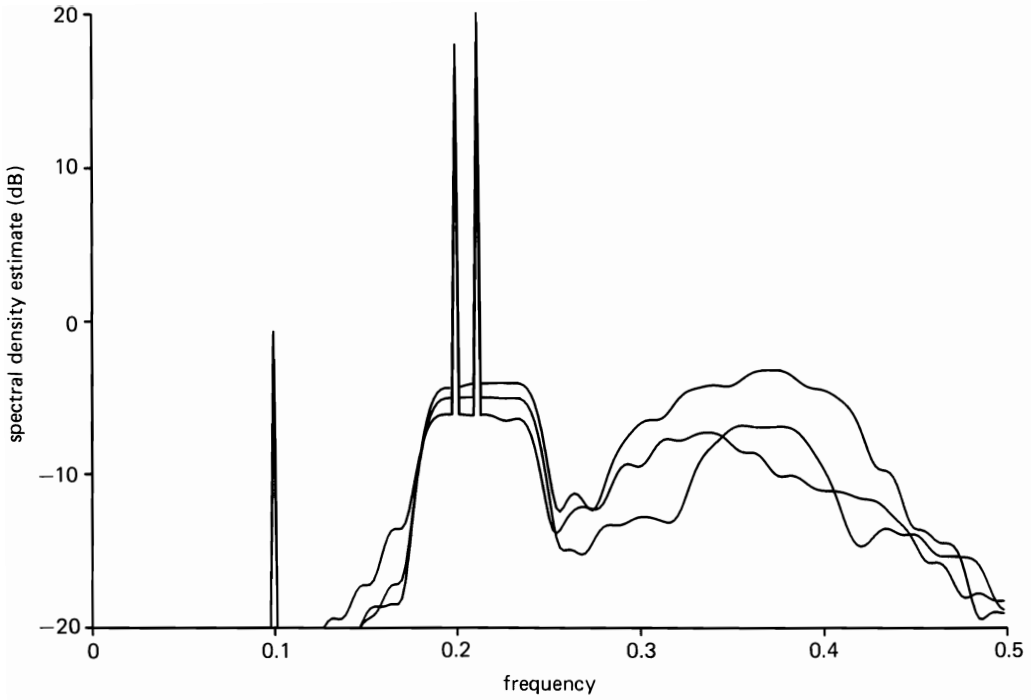


Figure 9-20 Three spectrum estimates obtained using the hybrid method described in Part 6 of Section E with $N = 64$.

F. SUMMARY

In Section B, the theory of autoregressive modeling of time-series, which underlies many of the parametric methods of spectral analysis, is presented in a concise but thorough form. This includes the topics of Yule-Walker equations, Levinson-Durbin algorithm, linear prediction, Wold-Cramér decomposition, maximum-entropy model, Lattice filter, and Cholesky factorization. Then in Section C, after a general discussion of the relative merits of AR, MA, and ARMA modeling, the theory of autoregressive modeling is exploited in a step-by-step development of the most popular AR model-fitting methods for spectral analysis. These include 1) the Yule-Walker (or autocorrelation type of least squares linear predictive) method and its interpretations in terms of maximum-entropy and autocorrelation extrapolation; 2) the covariance type of least squares method and its improved forward-backward linear predictive version, and 3) the lattice-constrained variant of this, known as the Burg method; 4) the overdetermined-normal-equations variation on the least squares linear predictive methods (autocorrelation and autocovariance types), and 5) two modifications based on singular value decomposition of the data-correlation matrix; and 6) the maximum-likelihood approach. Also, four model-order-determining methods, known as final prediction error, information criterion, autoregressive transfer-function criterion, and singular-

value-decomposition, are described. The subsection on AR model fitting concludes with a comparative discussion of the relative merits of these various methods. In Section D, the many methods for ARMA model fitting are classified into three primary groups. The group that includes the most computationally attractive methods is then focused on, and the extended and modified Yule-Walker equations, which form the basis for these methods, are derived. It is explained that most of the AR methods can be simply adapted to the task of estimating the AR parameters in the ARMA model, and an adaptation of the ODNE-SVD method is described. Then a variety of methods for utilizing the AR estimates, together with the autocorrelation estimates or the data, to estimate the MA parameters are described. These include (1) direct methods preceded by an inverse AR filtering operation on the data, (2) a variation on the Blackman-Tukey and Wiener-Daniell versions of this approach that circumvents the data-filtering operation, (3) another variation that utilizes forward-backward filtering, (4) Shanks' method, which is based on a decomposition of the spectrum into causal and anticausal parts, and (5) a variation on this that uses the overdetermined-equations technique. The chapter concludes with an extensive experimental study that compares and contrasts the performances of many of the methods described herein.

EXERCISES

1. **(a)** Use the AR model (1) to verify (5) and (7).
   (b) Derive the Yule-Walker equations (8a) from (13) and the orthogonality condition (14).
   (c) Verify that for $M = 2$ the Levinson-Durbin algorithm yields the solution to the Yule-Walker equations.
2. In order to show that the model-error time-series bz_n becomes white in the limit as the model order approaches infinity, $M \to \infty$, proceed as follows. Substitute (12) and (13) into the necessary and sufficient orthogonality condition (14) to show that

$$\langle z_n x_{n-p} \rangle = 0, \qquad p = 1, 2, 3, \ldots, M, \tag{151}$$

and therefore

$$\langle z_n z_{n-p} \rangle = \frac{-1}{b(M)} \sum_{q=1}^{M} a_q(M) \langle z_n x_{n-p-q} \rangle, \qquad p = 1, 2, 3, \ldots, M. \tag{152}$$

Then use (151) in (152) to obtain

$$\bar{R}_z(p) = \frac{-1}{b(M)} \sum_{q=M-p+1}^{M} a_q(M) \bar{R}_{zx}(p + q), \qquad p = 1, 2, 3, \ldots, M. \tag{153}$$

Finally, since the sum in (153) contains only p terms, then as long as $\bar{R}_{zx}(q)$ is bounded, $1/b(M)$ is bounded, and $a_q(M) \to 0$ as $q \to \infty$ (and $M \to \infty$), this sum must converge to zero for fixed p as $M \to \infty$, and therefore $\bar{R}_z(p) = 0$ for all $p \neq 0$ in the limit $M \to \infty$. Since $\langle [x_n - \hat{x}_n]^2 \rangle \leq \langle x_n^2 \rangle$ and $\langle z_n x_n \rangle^2 \leq \langle z_n^2 \rangle \langle x_n^2 \rangle$, then

$$|\bar{R}_{zx}(q)|^2 \leq \bar{R}_z(0)\bar{R}_x(0) \leq \frac{1}{b^2(M)} \bar{R}_x^2(0), \tag{154}$$

and it is therefore sufficient for $\bar{R}_z(p) = 0$ if $1/b(M)$ is bounded and $a_q(M)$ converges to zero as $q \to \infty$ (and $M \to \infty$). As explained in Part 4 of Section B, this will be

so if x_n is a regular time-series, because then $b^2(M) > b^2(\infty) > 0$ and a stable model exists, and $a_q \to 0$ as $q \to \infty$ for a stable model. (More generally, it can be shown that z_n is white in the limit $M \to \infty$ as long as x_n is not a singular time-series.)

3. To derive formula (22) for the gain in entropy rate due to passage through a filter, proceed as follows:

(a) Consider the *relative entropy* of the n-vector

$$\boldsymbol{x}_n(L) \triangleq [x_{n+1}, x_{n+2}, \ldots, x_{n+L}]',$$

defined by

$$H[\boldsymbol{x}_n(L)] \triangleq \left\langle \ln\left\{\frac{1}{f_{x(L)}[\boldsymbol{x}_n(L)]}\right\}\right\rangle, \tag{155}$$

and show that the relative entropy of the linearly transformed vector

$$\boldsymbol{y}_n(L) \triangleq \boldsymbol{A}\boldsymbol{x}_n(L) \tag{156}$$

(where $\boldsymbol{A}$ is a time-invariant $L \times L$ matrix) is given by

$$H[\boldsymbol{y}_n] = H[\boldsymbol{x}_n] + \ln(|\boldsymbol{A}|), \tag{157}$$

in which $|\boldsymbol{A}|$ is the absolute value of the determinant of $\boldsymbol{A}$. *Hint:* Use the fact that

$$f_{y(L)}(\boldsymbol{z}) = \frac{f_{x(L)}(\boldsymbol{A}^{-1}\boldsymbol{z})}{|\boldsymbol{A}|}. \tag{158}$$

(b) Consider the lower triangular matrix

$$\boldsymbol{A} = \begin{bmatrix} g_0 & & & & \\ g_1 & g_0 & & & \\ g_2 & g_1 & g_0 & & \\ \vdots & \vdots & & \ddots & \\ g_{L-1} & g_{L-2} & & \cdots & g_0 \end{bmatrix}$$

corresponding to a causal time-invariant filter with discrete-impulse response sequence g_n and show that

$$\ln(|\boldsymbol{A}|) = (L)\ln[g_0].$$

(c) Use the results of (a) and (b) to show that the relative entropy rate (20) for the time-series defined by

$$\boldsymbol{y}_n \triangleq [y_0, y_1, y_2, \ldots, y_{n-1}]'$$

with $n \to \infty$ is given by

$$\overline{H}_y = \overline{H}_x + \ln[g_0]. \tag{159}$$

(d) It can be shown [Doob 1953] that for a minimum-phase linear time-invariant transformation, with transfer function $\tilde{G}(f)$, we have

$$\ln[g_0] = \int_{-1/2}^{1/2} \ln|\tilde{G}(f)|\, df. \tag{160}$$

Use (159) and (160) to prove that

$$\overline{H}_y - \overline{H}_x = \tfrac{1}{2}\int_{-1/2}^{1/2} \ln|\tilde{G}(f)|^2\, df. \tag{161}$$

4. To show that the solution to the problem of maximizing (29) subject to the constraint (30) is of the form (4), proceed as follows. Substitute the FST formula

$$\tilde{S}_x(f) = \sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} \tilde{R}_x(k)e^{-i2\pi kf} \tag{162}$$

into (29), and then use the fact that the integral (29) is maximum, subject to the constraint (30), only if the partial derivatives are zero,

$$\frac{\partial I}{\partial \tilde{R}_x(k)} = 0, \qquad |k| > M,$$

to show that a necessary condition is

$$\int_{-1/2}^{1/2} \left[\frac{1}{\tilde{S}_x(f)}\right] e^{-i2\pi kf}\, df = 0, \qquad |k| > M. \tag{163}$$

This reveals that the Fourier series coefficients of the function $1/\tilde{S}_x(f)$ are zero for $|k| > M$, and therefore its Fourier series expansion contains only $2M + 1$ terms, say

$$\frac{1}{\tilde{S}_x(f)} = \sum_{k=-M}^{M} c_k e^{i2\pi kf}. \tag{164}$$

The canonical spectral factorization (see Part 4 of Section B) of $\tilde{S}_x(f)$, as specified by (164), yields (4).

5. Derive the backward-prediction-error recursion (37) by analogy with (35)–(36).

6. **(a)** To verify formula (44), first show that the Yule-Walker equations (8) of orders $m = 0, 1, 2, \ldots, M$ can be jointly expressed in the matrix form

$$\tilde{\boldsymbol{R}}_x \boldsymbol{A} = \boldsymbol{C}, \tag{165}$$

where $\boldsymbol{C}$ is an upper triangular $(M + 1) \times (M + 1)$ matrix with diagonal elements (from top to bottom) $b^2(M), b^2(M - 1), \ldots, b^2(0)$ (the other nonzero elements in $\boldsymbol{C}$ are unimportant here), $\boldsymbol{A}$ is the lower triangular matrix defined by (42), and $\tilde{\boldsymbol{R}}_x$ is the $(M + 1) \times (M + 1)$ limit-autocorrelation matrix with pqth element $\tilde{R}_x(p - q)$, and with $p, q = 0, 1, 2, \ldots, M$, (41). Use (165) to show that

$$\boldsymbol{A}' \tilde{\boldsymbol{R}}_x \boldsymbol{A} = \boldsymbol{B}^2, \tag{166}$$

where $\boldsymbol{B}^2$ is the diagonal matrix with elements $b^2(M), b^2(M - 1), \ldots, b^2(0)$. (Note that because $\tilde{\boldsymbol{R}}_x = \tilde{\boldsymbol{R}}_x'$ and $\boldsymbol{A}'$ and $\tilde{\boldsymbol{R}}_x \boldsymbol{A}$ are upper triangular, then $\boldsymbol{B}$ is upper triangular and $\boldsymbol{B} = \boldsymbol{B}'$, and therefore $\boldsymbol{B}$ is diagonal; thus only the diagonal elements in (166) need to be checked.) Taking the inverse of (166) yields the desired result (44). As an aside, it is mentioned that the matrix $\boldsymbol{A}' \tilde{\boldsymbol{R}}_x \boldsymbol{A}$ is the limit autocorrelation matrix of the prediction-error vector $[e_n(M), e_n(M - 1), \ldots, e_n(0)]' = \boldsymbol{A}'[x_n, x_{n-1}, \ldots, x_{n-M}]'$ (see (31)).

(b) Use (166) to show that the determinant of $\tilde{\boldsymbol{R}}_x$ is given by

$$|\tilde{\boldsymbol{R}}_x| = b^2(0)b^2(1)b^2(2) \cdots b^2(M).$$

7. There is an interesting relationship between the MLM spectrum of order M (from (52) in Chapter 6),

$$\tilde{S}^M_{MLM}(f) = \frac{1}{\boldsymbol{s}'(f)\tilde{\boldsymbol{R}}_x^{-1}\boldsymbol{s}^*(f)}, \tag{167}$$

where $\tilde{\boldsymbol{R}}_x$ is the $(M + 1) \times (M + 1)$ limit-autocorrelation matrix, and the maximum-entropy method (MEM) spectra of orders $m = 0, 1, 2, 3, \ldots, M$,

$$\tilde{S}^m_{MEM}(f) = \frac{-b^2(m)}{\left|1 + \sum_{p=1}^{m} a_p(m) e^{-i2\pi pf}\right|^2}. \tag{168}$$

Specifically, it is shown in this exercise that [Burg 1972]

$$\frac{1}{\tilde{S}^M_{MLM}(f)} = \sum_{m=0}^{M} \frac{1}{\tilde{S}^m_{MEM}(f)}. \tag{169}$$

To verify (169), simply substitute the formula (44) into (167) to obtain

$$\frac{1}{\tilde{S}^M_{MEM}(f)} = [\boldsymbol{A}'\boldsymbol{s}(f)]^T \boldsymbol{B}^{-1} [\boldsymbol{A}'\boldsymbol{s}(f)], \tag{170}$$

where the superscript T denotes transpose conjugate. Now use (42) and (170) to verify (169). (Another revealing relationship between MLM and MEM is given in [Musicus 1985].)

8. **(a)** Consider the MA spectrum (50),

$$\tilde{S}_x(f) = \sigma_w^2 |\mathcal{H}(e^{-i2\pi f})|^2, \tag{171}$$

in its factored form (using $z = e^{i2\pi f}$)

$$z^L \mathcal{H}(z) = (z - z_1)(z - z_2) \cdots (z - z_L). \tag{172}$$

If there are complex roots, then these exist in conjugate pairs $z_j = z_i^*$, where

$$z_i = |z_i| \exp(i \underline{/z_i}).$$

Show that as the magnitude of a root approaches unity, $|z_i| \to 1$, $\tilde{S}_x(f)$ approaches zero at $f = \dfrac{1}{2\pi} \underline{/z_i}$.

(b) Consider the AR spectrum (51),

$$\tilde{S}_x(f) = \sigma_w^2 |\mathcal{H}(e^{i2\pi f})|^2 \tag{173}$$

in its factored form

$$z^{-M} \mathcal{H}(z) = \frac{1}{(z - z_1)(z - z_2) \cdots (z - z_M)}. \tag{174}$$

Show that as the magnitude of a root approaches unity, $|z_i| \to 1$, $\tilde{S}_x(f)$ approaches infinity at $f = (1/2\pi) \underline{/z_i}$.

(c) Consider the partial fraction expansion of (174)

$$z^{-M} \mathcal{H}(z) = \frac{A_1}{z - z_1} + \frac{A_2}{z - z_2} + \cdots + \frac{A_M}{z - z_M}, \tag{175}$$

where it is assumed that no roots are repeated: $z_i \neq z_j$ for $i \neq j$. Show that when $z \to z_i$, then

$$z^{-M} \mathcal{H}(z) \to \frac{A_i}{z - z_i}, \tag{176}$$

and therefore

$$\tilde{S}_x(f) \cong \frac{\sigma_w^2 |A_i|^2}{|\exp(i2\pi f) - |z_i| \exp(\underline{/z_i})|^2} \tag{177}$$

for $f \cong (1/2\pi) \underline{/z_i}$ and $|z_i| \cong 1$. Thus, for a root near the unit circle, $z = e^{i2\pi f}$, the height of the corresponding peak in the spectrum is closely approximated by

$$\tilde{S}_x(f) \cong \frac{\sigma_w^2 |A_i|^2}{(1 - |z_i|)^2}, \qquad f = \frac{1}{2\pi} \underline{/z_i}. \tag{178}$$

(d) Use the result of (c) to show that for a root near the unit circle, the depth of the

corresponding notch in the MA spectrum is closely approximated by

$$\tilde{S}_x(f) \cong \frac{\sigma_w^2(1 - |z_i|^2)}{|A_i|^2}. \tag{179}$$

(e) Use (177) to show that the 3-dB bandwidth of the peak of $\tilde{S}_x(f)$ centered at $f = (1/2\pi)\underline{/z_i}$ is approximately $(1/\pi)(1 - |z_i|)$ for $|z_i| \cong 1$. That is, show that

$$\tilde{S}_x\left[\frac{1}{2\pi}\underline{/z_i} \pm \frac{1}{2\pi}(1 - |z_i|)\right] \cong \frac{1}{2}\tilde{S}_x\left(\frac{1}{2\pi}\underline{/z_i}\right). \tag{180}$$

Hint: Reduce the problem to that of solving for $\theta \triangleq \underline{/z_i} - 2\pi f$ in

$$|1 - \gamma e^{i\theta}|^2 = 2|1 - \gamma|^2,$$

where $\gamma \triangleq |z_i|$. Then show that this equation is equivalent to

$$\sin^2\left(\frac{\theta}{2}\right) = \frac{1}{4}\left(\gamma + \frac{1}{\gamma} - 2\right).$$

Finally, make the approximations

$$\frac{1}{1 - \epsilon} \cong 1 + \epsilon + \epsilon^2, \qquad \epsilon << 1,$$

for $\gamma = 1 - \epsilon$, and

$$\sin^2\left(\frac{\theta}{2}\right) \cong \left(\frac{\theta}{2}\right)^2, \qquad \theta << 1,$$

and show that the resultant approximate solution is

$$\theta \cong 1 - \gamma.$$

9. To see that additive sine waves in a time-series can be thought of as corresponding to roots on the unit circle in the z-plane for the AR part of an ARMA spectrum, consider the time-series

$$s_n = \sin(\omega_0 n). \tag{181}$$

(a) Use the standard trigonometric identity

$$\sin(\theta) = 2\cos(\phi)\sin(\theta - \phi) - \sin(\theta - 2\phi) \tag{182}$$

to show that s_n satisfies the homogeneous autoregression

$$s_n = 2\cos(\omega_0)s_{n-1} - s_{n-2}, \tag{183}$$

which reveals that s_n is perfectly predictable.

(b) The corresponding characteristic polynomial for (183) is

$$\mathcal{G}(z) = 1 + a_1 z^{-1} + a_2 z^{-2} = z^{-2}(z - z_1)(z - z_2), \tag{184a}$$

where

$$a_1 = -2\cos(\omega_0) \tag{184b}$$

$$a_2 = 1.$$

Show that the roots are given by (184c)

$$z_1 = z_2^* = e^{i\omega_0}.$$

(c) Now consider a sine wave in additive white noise y_n,

$$x_n = \sin(\omega_0 n) + y_n. \tag{185}$$

Use (183) to show that

$$x_n - 2\cos(\omega_0)x_{n-1} + x_{n-2} = y_n - 2\cos(\omega_0)y_{n-1} + y_{n-2}, \tag{186}$$

which reveals that x_n is *like* an ARMA time-series with its AR parameters identical to its MA parameters. However, the fact that the roots are on the unit circle means that this is an unstable model. Observe that the ARMA spectrum formula (53) for (186) is simply $\bar{S}_x(f) = \sigma_w^2$, which is certainly not correct for a sine wave in noise. Formula (53) for $\bar{S}_x(f)$ is valid only for a stable model.

(Observe that once the coefficients in (186)—the parameters a_1 and a_2 in (184)—have been estimated, an estimate of the frequency, $\omega_0/2\pi$, of the sine wave can be obtained by solving for the roots of the polynomial (184a). This is true also for multiple sine waves in noise and is the basis for a method of sine wave frequency estimation [Pisarenko 1973].)

10. **(a)** Show that a time-averaged periodogram yields an MA type of spectrum estimate with MA order T, where $T = N - 1$ and N is the length of data segment used to obtain the periodogram before time-averaging. Specifically, show that

$$S_{x_T}(t, f)_{\Delta t} = \sum_{n=-T}^{T} \beta_n(t) e^{-i2\pi nf}, \tag{187}$$

which is potentially factorable into the form

$$S_{x_T}(t, f)_{\Delta t} = \left| \sum_{q=0}^{T} b_q(t) e^{-i2\pi qf} \right|^2, \tag{188}$$

where $\{\beta_n(t)\}$ are given by quadratic transformations of the data $x(t)$

$$\beta_n(t) = \sum_u \sum_v k_n(u, v) x(t-u) x(t-v). \tag{189}$$

(b) Show that a frequency-smoothed periodogram yields an MA type of spectrum estimate with MA order closely approximated by $T = 1/\Delta f$, where Δf is the width of the spectral smoothing window. Specifically, show that

$$S_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, f)_{\Delta f} = \sum_{n=-\Delta t}^{\Delta t} \beta_n(t) e^{-i2\pi nf} \cong \sum_{n=-T}^{T} \beta_n(t) e^{-i2\pi nf}, \tag{190}$$

where

$$\beta_n(t) \triangleq \frac{1}{N} \sum_{v=0}^{\Delta t - |n|} x(t + v + |n|) x(t + v) \frac{T}{KN} \sum_{w=-(KN/T-1)/2}^{(KN/T-1)/2} e^{-i2\pi nw/KN}. \tag{191}$$

11. **(a)** Derive the orthogonality condition (62) by equating to zero the derivatives of (60a) with respect to each of the a_p.

(b) Show that (62) can be reexpressed as (64).

(c) Use (62) to show that the minimized sum of squared errors can be expressed as in (69). *Hint:* Use the form

$$\sum_{n=0}^{K-1} w_n \hat{x}_n = 0 \tag{192}$$

of the orthogonality condition (62) to verify (68). Then substitute (60c) into (60b) and the result into (68) to obtain the desired result, (69).

12. **(a)** Show that (65) with $K \geq N + M$ reduces to (67). *Hint:* Show that since $x_n = 0$ for $n < 0$ and for $n > N - 1$, then

$$x_{n-p} x_{n-q} = 0 \qquad \text{for } n < \max\{p, q\} \quad \text{and} \quad \text{for } n > N - 1 + \min\{p, q\}.$$

Use this in (65), together with a change of index of summation, to show that

$$R_x(p, q)_K = \frac{1}{K} \sum_{m=\max\{p,q\}-q}^{N-1+\min\{p,q\}-q} x_{m+q-p} x_m.$$

Now, consider the two cases $p \geq q$ and $p \leq q$ separately to obtain (67).

(b) Use a similar approach to show that (72) reduces to (73).

(c) Prove that the temporal mean of the correlation estimate (67) is given by

$$\langle R_x(p-q)_K \rangle = \frac{N - |p-q|}{K} \tilde{R}_x(p-q), \tag{193}$$

and therefore this estimate is biased. How can you modify it to make it unbiased? Does this modified estimate have smaller or larger variance than the unmodified estimate? (It is generally accepted that the biased estimate (67) has smaller mean-squared error than its unbiased counterpart for most time-series of interest; see [Jenkins and Watts 1968].)

13. (a) Derive the forward-backward least squares prediction equations (71) by equating to zero the partial derivatives of $\hat{b}^2$ in (70) with respect to each of the M parameters $\{a_p\}_1^M$.

(b) Use (71) to show that

$$\sum_{n=0}^{K-1} [w_n \hat{x}_n + \breve{w}_n \breve{x}_{n-M}] = 0, \tag{194}$$

which is a type of orthogonality condition. Then expand the squares in (70a) and use this orthogonality condition to verify (75).

14. (a) Equate to zero the derivative of $\hat{b}^2(M)$ in (81) with respect to $\hat{a}_M(M)$, and show that $\hat{a}_M(M)$ must satisfy

$$\hat{a}_M(M) \sum_{n=M}^{N-1} [w_n^2(M-1) + \breve{w}_{n-1}^2(M-1)] + 2 \sum_{n=M}^{N-1} w_n(M-1)\breve{w}_{n-1}(M-1) = 0, \tag{195}$$

which yields (82).

(b) Derive (83) from definition (78).

(c) Expand the squares in (81) and use (195) to show that

$$\hat{b}^2(M) = [1 - \hat{a}_M^2(M)] \frac{1}{2(N-M)} \sum_{n=M}^{N-1} [w_n^2(M-1) + \breve{w}_{n-1}^2(M-1)]. \tag{196}$$

Then use (196) to obtain (85) and use (196) together with (83) to obtain (84).

15. (a) Show that for the Burg method

$$\hat{a}_1(1) = \frac{-\sum_{n=1}^{N-1} x_n x_{n-1}}{\sum_{n=1}^{N-2} x_n^2 + \frac{1}{2}x_0^2 + \frac{1}{2}x_{N-1}^2}, \tag{197}$$

whereas for the Yule-Walker method

$$\hat{a}_1(1) = \frac{-\sum_{n=1}^{N-1} x_n x_{n-1}}{\sum_{n=0}^{N-1} x_n^2}. \tag{198}$$

Hint: For the Yule-Walker method, use the Levinson-Durbin algorithm (9) with $\tilde{R}_x(q)$ replaced by $R_x(q)_K$ from (67).

(b) As an extension of (a), compare the formulas for each of $\hat{a}_1(2)$ and $\hat{a}_2(2)$ obtained from the Burg and Yule-Walker methods.

16. In order to characterize the solution to the linear least squares approximation problem in terms of the pseudo-inverse matrix, we reexpress the sum of squared errors (60a) to be minimized as (using $K = N + M$)

$$\sum_{n=0}^{K-1} (x_n - \hat{x}_n)^2 = \|\boldsymbol{x} + \boldsymbol{X}\,\hat{\boldsymbol{a}}\|^2, \tag{199}$$

where $\boldsymbol{x}$ is the K-vector

$$[x_0, x_1, x_2, x_3, \ldots, x_{N-1}, 0, 0, 0, \ldots, 0]',$$

$\boldsymbol{X}$ is the $K \times M$ matrix shown in (66), and $\hat{\boldsymbol{a}}$ is the M-vector

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{a}} = [\hat{a}_1, \hat{a}_2, \hat{a}_3, \ldots, \hat{a}_M]'.$$

As indicated by (64), the solution is specified implicitly by the M linear equations

$$\sum_{p=1}^{M} \left[\sum_{n=0}^{K-1} x_{n-q}x_{n-p}\right]\hat{a}_p = -\sum_{n=0}^{K-1} x_{n-q}x_n, \qquad q = 1, 2, 3, \ldots, M. \tag{200}$$

(a) Show that these M equations can be expressed as

$$\boldsymbol{X}'\boldsymbol{X}\,\hat{\boldsymbol{a}} = -\boldsymbol{X}'\boldsymbol{x}. \tag{201}$$

Thus, in terms of the inverse of the $M \times M$ matrix $\boldsymbol{X}'\boldsymbol{X} = \boldsymbol{R}_x$, we have

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{a}} = -[\boldsymbol{X}'\boldsymbol{X}]^{-1}\boldsymbol{X}'\boldsymbol{x}. \tag{202}$$

The $M \times K$ matrix

$$\boldsymbol{X}^{(-1)} \triangleq [\boldsymbol{X}'\boldsymbol{X}]^{-1}\boldsymbol{X}' \tag{203}$$

is called the *pseudo-inverse* of the $K \times M$ matrix $\boldsymbol{X}$. In most cases of practical interest, $K \geq M$. If at least M of the K rows of $\boldsymbol{X}$ are linearly independent, then the rank of $\boldsymbol{X}'\boldsymbol{X}$ is full, and this matrix is indeed invertible. (Observe that by comparison of (89) with (199), the solution (202) yields the result (90) for the ODNE approach to AR parameter estimation.)

(b) If only fewer than M of the K equations are linearly independent, then the solution to (201) is nonunique. A particularly useful solution in many applications is the one that has the smallest norm. If the rank of $\boldsymbol{X}'\boldsymbol{X} = \boldsymbol{R}_x$ is $M_0 < M$, then the minimum-norm solution to (201) is a linear combination of the M_0 eigenvectors of $\boldsymbol{R}_x$ corresponding to the M_0 nonzero eigenvalues of $\boldsymbol{R}_x$. (This is a result of the fact that the remaining $M - M_0$ eigenvectors are in the null space of $\boldsymbol{R}_x$ and their unnecessary presence in $\hat{\boldsymbol{a}}$ can only increase the norm of $\hat{\boldsymbol{a}}$.) Show that the solution must then be given by

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{a}} = -[\boldsymbol{W}\,\boldsymbol{\Lambda}_{(M_0)}^{-1}\boldsymbol{W}']\boldsymbol{X}'\boldsymbol{x}, \tag{204}$$

where $\boldsymbol{\Lambda}_{(M_0)}^{-1}$ is a diagonal matrix with the first M_0 elements on the diagonal given by the reciprocals of the nonzero eigenvalues (assumed to be unique) of $\boldsymbol{R}_x$ and the remaining $M - M_0$ elements equal to zero, and the columns of $\boldsymbol{W}$ are the corresponding eigenvectors in the same order as the eigenvalues (except that the ordering of the last $M - M_0$ columns is irrelevant.) *Hint:* Substitute the singular value decomposition

$$\boldsymbol{X}'\boldsymbol{X} = \boldsymbol{W}\,\boldsymbol{\Lambda}\,\boldsymbol{W}' \tag{205}$$

into (201).

17. Consider the problem of minimizing the sum of weighted squared norms

$$f(\hat{\boldsymbol{\alpha}}) \triangleq \sum_p c_p \|\boldsymbol{R}_{(M_0)}(p)\hat{\boldsymbol{\alpha}}\|^2 \tag{206}$$

subject to the constraint

$$g(\hat{\boldsymbol{a}}) \triangleq \sum_{m=0}^{M_0} e_m \hat{\alpha}_m = 1 \tag{207}$$

on the inner product of $\hat{\boldsymbol{\alpha}}$ and the unit vector

$$\boldsymbol{e} \triangleq [1, 0, 0, 0, \ldots, 0]'. \tag{208}$$

The theory of Lagrange multipliers establishes that a necessary and (in this particular case) sufficient condition for $\hat{\boldsymbol{\alpha}}$ to minimize $f(\hat{\boldsymbol{\alpha}})$ subject to $g(\hat{\boldsymbol{\alpha}}) = 1$ is that it satisfy the linear equations

$$\frac{\partial f(\hat{\boldsymbol{\alpha}})}{\partial a_p} + \lambda \frac{\partial g(\hat{\boldsymbol{\alpha}})}{\partial a_p} = 0, \qquad p = 0, 1, 2, \ldots, M_0, \tag{209}$$

where λ is chosen to yield a solution $\hat{\boldsymbol{\alpha}}$ that satisfies the constraint (207). Show that these M_0 linear equations can be put into the explicit form (108).

18. **(a)** Maximize the likelihood function (110) for an AR time-series with respect to the innovations variance, σ_w^2, and show that the resultant maximum-likelihood estimate is given by (113) and the corresponding maximized likelihood function is given by (114). *Hint:* Substitute (115) into (110), and then equate to zero the derivative of the natural logarithm of the result. (Since the logarithm is monotonic, this is a necessary and, in this particular case, sufficient condition for maximization.)

(b) To show that for sufficiently large N, the maximum-likelihood estimates of the AR parameters $\boldsymbol{a}$ are approximated by the least squares prediction parameters specified by the Yule-Walker equations, proceed as follows. Let $\boldsymbol{w}_{N\setminus M} \triangleq [w_M, w_{M+1}, \ldots, w_{N-1}]'$ and define $\boldsymbol{x}_{N\setminus M}$ similarly; let $\boldsymbol{x}_M \triangleq [x_0, x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_{M-1}]'$. Then it follows from the AR time-series expression (49), together with (59b), that

$$\boldsymbol{w}_{N\setminus M} = \boldsymbol{C}\boldsymbol{x}_{N\setminus M} + \boldsymbol{D}\boldsymbol{x}_M = \boldsymbol{x}_{N\setminus M} - \hat{\boldsymbol{x}}_{N\setminus M},$$

where the $(N - M) \times (N - M)$ matrix $\boldsymbol{C}$ depends only on $\boldsymbol{a}$ and has determinant equal to unity, and the $(N - M) \times M$ matrix $\boldsymbol{D}$ depends only on $\boldsymbol{a}$. It follows that (see [Gardner 1985])

$$\begin{aligned} f_{\boldsymbol{x}_{N\setminus M}|\boldsymbol{x}_M}(\boldsymbol{x}_{N\setminus M} \mid \boldsymbol{x}_M, \boldsymbol{a}, \sigma_w) &= f_{\boldsymbol{w}_{N\setminus M}}(\boldsymbol{C}\boldsymbol{x}_{N\setminus M} + \boldsymbol{D}\boldsymbol{x}_M \mid \boldsymbol{a}, \sigma_w) \\ &= f_{\boldsymbol{w}_{N\setminus M}}(\boldsymbol{x}_{N\setminus M} - \hat{\boldsymbol{x}}_{N\setminus M} \mid \boldsymbol{a}, \sigma_w), \end{aligned}$$

and therefore Bayes' law of conditional probability,

$$f_{\boldsymbol{x}_{N\setminus M}|\boldsymbol{x}_M} f_{\boldsymbol{x}_M} = f_{\boldsymbol{x}_{N\setminus M}, \boldsymbol{x}_M} \equiv f_{\boldsymbol{x}_N},$$

yields the expression

$$f_{\boldsymbol{x}_N}(\boldsymbol{x}_N \mid \boldsymbol{a}, \sigma_w) = f_{\boldsymbol{w}_{N\setminus M}}(\boldsymbol{x}_{N\setminus M} - \hat{\boldsymbol{x}}_{N\setminus M} \mid \boldsymbol{a}, \sigma_w) f_{\boldsymbol{x}_M}(\boldsymbol{x}_M \mid \boldsymbol{a}, \sigma_w) \tag{210}$$

for the likelihood function (110). Now, it follows from (210) and the white noise property of w_n that

$$f_{\boldsymbol{x}_N}(\boldsymbol{x}_N \mid \boldsymbol{a}, \sigma_w) = [2\pi\sigma_w^2]^{-(N-M)/2} \exp\left\{ -\frac{1}{2\sigma_w^2} \sum_{n=M}^{N-1} (x_n - \hat{x}_n)^2 \right\} f_{\boldsymbol{x}_M}(\boldsymbol{x}_M \mid \boldsymbol{a}, \sigma_w), \tag{211}$$

where $\hat{x}_n$ is the predictor given by (59b). It is shown in (c) that for sufficiently large N the influence of the last factor in (211) on the maximum with respect to $\boldsymbol{a}$ is negligible. Show that in this case the maximum is given by the solution to

$$\min_{\boldsymbol{a}} \sum_{n=M}^{N-1} (x_n - \hat{x}_n)^2. \tag{212}$$

(c) Substitute (110) for both $z = x_N$ and $z = x_M$ into (211) and take the natural logarithm of the result to verify the identity

$$\left[\frac{1}{\sigma_w^2} S_0^N - x_N' \tilde{R}_{x_N}^{-1} x_N - \ln|\tilde{R}_{x_N}|\right] = \left[\frac{1}{\sigma_w^2} S_0^M - x_M' \tilde{R}_{x_M}^{-1} x_M - \ln|\tilde{R}_{x_M}|\right], \tag{213}$$

where

$$S_0^N \triangleq \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} (x_n - \hat{x}_n)^2. \tag{214}$$

It is shown in (d) that for sufficiently large N the terms in the right member of (213) are negligible compared with those in the left member and, therefore, (combining S_0^M with S_0^N)

$$x_N' \tilde{R}_{x_N}^{-1} x_N + \ln|\tilde{R}_{x_N}| \cong \frac{1}{\sigma_w^2} \sum_{n=M}^{N-1} (x_n - \hat{x}_n)^2. \tag{215}$$

Substitute (215) into the logarithm of (110) with $z = x_N$ to verify that

$$\ln\{f_x(x_N \mid a, \sigma_w)\} \cong c - \frac{1}{2\sigma_w^2} \sum_{n=M}^{N-1} (x_n - \hat{x}_n)^2, \tag{216}$$

where c is a constant, independent of a and σ_w. Thus, maximization of the likelihood function with respect to a is approximately equivalent to minimization of the sum of squared prediction errors, as in (212). (We cannot use (216) to maximize with respect to σ_w because large σ_w violates the approximation (215).)

(d) It can be shown that

$$\lim_{N\to\infty} \frac{2}{N} \ln|\tilde{R}_{x_N}| = \int_{-1/2}^{1/2} \ln[\tilde{S}_x(f)]\, df. \tag{217}$$

Thus, for large N, $\ln|\tilde{R}_{x_N}|$ is proportional to N. Show that the temporal mean of $x_N' \tilde{R}_{x_N}^{-1} x_N$ is equal to N for a in $\tilde{R}_{x_N}$ equal to the correct values for the time-series x_N, and that the temporal mean of S_0^N is $N\sigma_w^2$ for a in $\hat{x}_N$ equal to the correct values for the time-series x_N. Consequently, all terms in the left member of (213) are proportional to N, but none of those in the right member are. However, the term $\ln|\tilde{R}_{x_M}|$ can be quite large when the roots of (55) are close to the unit circle. This is suggested by (217), since $\hat{S}_x(f) \to \infty$ as a root approaches the unit circle (see (177)). Also, the term $x_M' \tilde{R}_{x_M}^{-1} x_M$ can be quite large if $\tilde{R}_{x_M}$ is ill-conditioned. But regardless of how large these terms are, if they are finite, then there is a value of N large enough to validate the approximation (215).

A heuristic approach to explaining (217) follows. Since $\tilde{R}_x$ is a Toeplitz matrix, $\tilde{R}_x(p, q) = \tilde{R}_x(p - q)$, the characteristic equation

$$\tilde{R}_{x_N} v = \lambda v \tag{218}$$

approaches the convolution

$$\tilde{R}_x(n) \otimes v_n \cong \lambda v_n \tag{219}$$

as N increases. Fourier-series transformation of (219) yields

$$\tilde{S}_x(f)\tilde{V}(f) \cong \lambda \tilde{V}(f). \tag{220}$$

Thus, for large N the eigenvalues are closely approximated by

$$\lambda_n \cong \tilde{S}_x(f_n), \tag{221}$$

and it can be shown that the values of f_n are approximately equally spaced throughout the interval $[0, \frac{1}{2}]$. Consequently, the determinant identity

$$\ln|\tilde{\boldsymbol{R}}_{x_N}| = \ln[\lambda_1\lambda_2\lambda_3 \cdots \lambda_N] \tag{222}$$

can be approximated by

$$\begin{aligned} \ln|\tilde{\boldsymbol{R}}_{x_N}| &\cong \ln\left[\tilde{S}_x(0)\tilde{S}_x\left(\frac{1}{2N}\right)\tilde{S}_x\left(\frac{2}{2N}\right) \cdots \tilde{S}_x\left(\frac{N-1}{2N}\right)\right] \\ &= \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} \ln\left[\tilde{S}_x\left(\frac{n}{2N}\right)\right] \cong N\int_0^{1/2} \ln[\tilde{S}_x(f)]\, df, \end{aligned} \tag{223}$$

from which (217) follows.

19. To derive the extended and modified Yule-Walker equations (119) for an ARMA time-series, proceed as follows.

(a) Multiply both sides of (52), with n replaced by $n + k$, by x_n, and show that the limit time-average of this product is given by

$$\begin{aligned} \tilde{R}_x(k) = &-a_1\tilde{R}_x(k-1) - a_2\tilde{R}_x(k-2) - \cdots - a_M\tilde{R}_x(k-M) \\ &+ b_0\tilde{R}_{wx}(k) + b_1\tilde{R}_{wx}(k-1) + \cdots + b_L\tilde{R}_{wx}(k-L). \end{aligned} \tag{224}$$

Then use (52) to argue that x_n depends only on w_n, w_{n-1}, w_{n-2}, . . ., and therefore

$$R_{wx}(n) = 0, \qquad n \geqslant 1,$$

from which (224) yields (119a).

(b) Let $\{h_n\}$ denote the discrete-impulse response sequence of the ARMA model (52),

$$x_n = \sum_{m=0}^{\infty} h_{n-m}w_m. \tag{225}$$

Use (225) to show that

$$R_{wx}(k) = \sigma_w^2 h_{-k}. \tag{226}$$

Then use (224) and (226) to derive (119b) and (119c).

(c) Use (52) to argue that (122a) must be valid. Then use the initial value theorem,

$$h_0 = \lim_{z\to\infty} \mathcal{H}(z), \tag{227}$$

where $\mathcal{H}(z)$ is the transfer function of the ARMA model (52) (which is the ratio of (54) to (55)), to verify (122b).

20. Derive formula (131) for the limit autocorrelation of an MA time-series y_n. *Hint:* First show that

$$\tilde{R}_y(k) = \sum_{\substack{p,q=0 \\ q-p=k}}^{L} b_p b_q. \tag{228}$$

Then consider $k > 0$ and $k < 0$ separately.

21. **(a)** Use definition (142) to verify (143).

(b) Show that (125a), (143), and (144a) yield (145).

22. The maximum-likelihood estimates of the amplitude, phase, and frequency parameters a, ϕ, and f of a sine wave in additive white Gaussian noise are obtained by maximizing the *likelihood function* for the time-series

$$x(t) = a\cos(2\pi ft + \phi) + n(t). \tag{229}$$

It can be shown using the periodically time-variant fraction-of-time distribution for

a Gaussian time-series (Part II) that this is equivalent to minimizing the function

$$\int_{t-T/2}^{t+T/2} [x(u) - a\cos(2\pi fu + \phi)]^2 \, du, \tag{230}$$

which is the continuous-time counterpart of a least squares fit of $x(t)$ to a sine wave. Use the approximation

$$\int_{t-T/2}^{t+T/2} [\cos(2\pi ft - \phi)]^2 \, dt \cong \frac{T}{2}, \qquad T >> \frac{1}{f} \tag{231}$$

to show that the maximum-likelihood estimate of a is given by

$$\hat{a} = \frac{2}{T} \int_{t-T/2}^{t+T/2} x(u)\cos(2\pi \hat{f} u - \hat{\theta}) \, du, \tag{232}$$

and then use (230) and (232) to show that the maximum-likelihood estimate of ϕ is given by

$$\hat{\phi} = -\tan^{-1}\left[\frac{\displaystyle\int_{t-T/2}^{t+T/2} x(u)\sin(2\pi \hat{f} u) \, du}{\displaystyle\int_{t-T/2}^{t+T/2} x(v)\cos(2\pi \hat{f} v) \, dv}\right]. \tag{233}$$

Then use (230) and (233) to show that the maximum-likelihood estimate of f is obtained from the periodogram by the maximization

$$\max_{\hat{f}} S_{x_T}(t, \hat{f}). \tag{234}$$

Finally, substitute (233) into (232) to show that the estimate $\hat{a}$ also is obtainable directly from the periodogram,

$$\hat{a} = 2\left[\frac{1}{T} S_{x_T}(t, \hat{f})\right]^{1/2}. \tag{235}$$

Unfortunately, the simplicity of this solution does not extend to time-series containing more than one sine wave, unless the number of such sine waves is known and the separation between their frequencies greatly exceeds $1/T$ [Walker 1971].

23. Consider a linear array of N equally spaced sensors (hydrophones, electromagnetic antennas, seismometers, etc.) in a homogeneous medium with a sinusoidal wavefront of energy impinging on the array at an angle of θ radians measured from the normal to the linear array, as shown in Figure 9-21. Show that the intensity at the nth sensor is given by

$$x_n(t) = \sin[\omega n + \alpha t + \phi],$$

where

$$\omega = \frac{2\pi d}{\lambda}\cos\theta$$

$$\alpha = \frac{2\pi c}{\lambda},$$

λ is the wavelength, c is the speed of the wavefront, and d is the distance between sensors (preferably, $d = \lambda/2$). Thus, if there are M sources of energy arriving at angles $\{\theta_i\}_1^M$, all with the same wavelength and speed, and there is additive measurement noise present, then

$$x_n(t) = \sum_{i=1}^{M} A_i \sin[\omega_i n + \alpha t + \phi_i] + z_n(t), \qquad n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots, N-1,$$

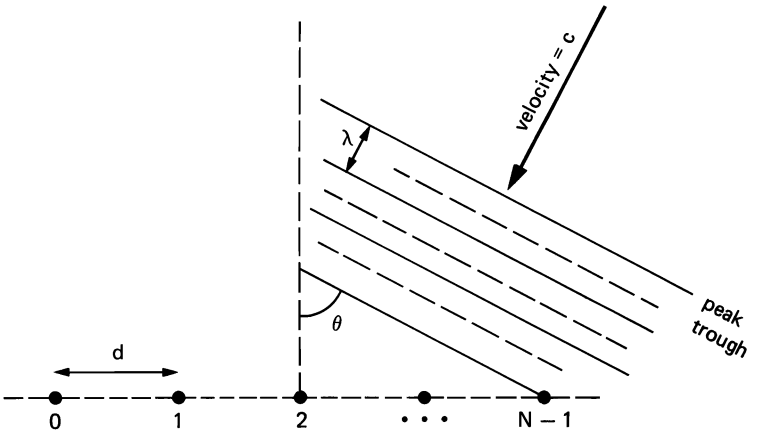


Figure 9-21 Linear array of sensors with impinging sine wave (e.g., acoustical wave or electromagnetic wave).

where A_i represents the strength of the ith energy source. Consequently, we have a set of discrete spatial series consisting of M sine waves in noise, and the set is indexed by time t. Therefore, t indexes an ensemble over which we can average in order to obtain a statistical spectrum of this spatial series. Hence, we can obtain relatively accurate estimates of the $N \times N$ correlation matrix, even for very small values of the spatial segment length N. Discuss the potential relative merits of direct methods versus parametric methods for detecting the presence of narrow-band energy sources and estimating their directions of arrival $\{\theta_i\}_1^M$ by detecting spectral peaks and estimating their locations in the spectrum.

24. (a) Consider the problem of estimating the range r of an energy-reflecting object by transmitting a pulse of energy and measuring the elapsed time $\tau = 2r/c$ until the reflected pulse is received (c is the speed of propagation). If the energy is electromagnetic (radio frequency), this is called radar range estimation. If the energy is acoustical (sound frequency), this is called sonar range estimation. In order to obtain a strong echo, the transmitted pulse energy must be large. However, because of limitations on dynamic range, sufficiently strong pulses often cannot be obtained simply by choosing a sufficiently large amplitude. Instead, the length of the pulse must be made long. However, in order to obtain good range resolution, the pulse cannot be a simple function; it must be a sophisticated function (Chapter 2, Section B) having bandwidth greatly exceeding the reciprocal of its duration, so that its autocorrelation width is much narrower than its duration. This requirement results from the technique of correlating the echo with the transmitted pulse and estimating the elapsed time to be the lag at which this cross correlation peaks. The width of this peak determines the resolution capability. One useful type of sophisticated function is a binary valued waveform obtained from a pseudonoise sequence. Another is the chirp pulse

$$x(t) = \sin(\beta t^2), \qquad 0 \leq t \leq T.$$

(The limit autocorrelation for an infinitely long chirp pulse has zero width; see (c).) A particularly attractive way to estimate the elapsed time from a chirp pulse is based on the fact that the product of a chirp and a delayed replica is given by

$$y(t) = x(t)x(t - \tau_0) = \tfrac{1}{2}\cos(\omega_0 t - \theta_0) - \tfrac{1}{2}\cos(\omega_0 t - \theta_0 - 2\beta t^2),$$

where

$$\omega_0 = 2\beta\tau_0$$

$$\theta_0 = \beta\tau_0^2.$$

(Verify this equation.) Thus, $y(t)$ consists of a sine wave of power $\frac{1}{4}$ at frequency $f_0 = \omega_0/2\pi$ plus a broadband chirp waveform of total power $\frac{1}{4}$ with bandwidth $2\beta T$ centered at f_0. Thus, the delay τ_0 can be estimated by estimating the frequency ω_0 of the sine wave. Show that if the transmitted waveform is band-pass with center frequency f_* rather than low-pass,

$$x(t) = \sin(\omega_* t + \beta t^2), \qquad \frac{-T}{2} \leq t \leq \frac{T}{2},$$

then the preceding result is essentially the same.

(b) Consider the situation where there are M closely spaced reflecting objects and generalize the preceding result for the product,

$$y(t) = x(t) \sum_{i=1}^{M} A_i x(t - \tau_i),$$

of the transmitted chirp and the multichirp echo. Based on the result obtained, discuss the conditions on the ranges $\{\tau_i\}_1^M$ under which parametric methods of spectral analysis for sine waves in noise would be potentially attractive alternatives to direct methods for determining the number of objects present and estimating their ranges.

(c) Prove that for the infinite-duration chirp pulse

$$x(t) = \sin(\beta t^2),$$

we have

$$\hat{R}_x(\tau) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{2}, & \tau = 0 \\ 0, & \tau \neq 0. \end{cases}$$

Consequently, $\hat{S}_x(f) \equiv 0$ (see Part 1 of Section D in Chapter 3). Use this result to prove that the limit spectrum for the lag product

$$y(t) = x(t)x(t - \tau_0)$$

is

$$\hat{S}_y(f) = \frac{1}{16}\delta(f - f_0) + \frac{1}{16}\delta(f + f_0),$$

where

$$f_0 = \beta\tau_0/\pi.$$

Consequently, as the chirp pulse length T increases, the time-averaged spectral level of the broadband component in the lag product waveform decreases and approaches zero as $T \to \infty$.

25. Describe explicitly the dependence of the likelihood function for an ARMA time-series on the ARMA parameters $\{a_p\}_1^M$, $\{b_q\}_0^M$, σ_w^2. *Hint:* Start with the right member of (110), which applies to all Gaussian time-series.

APPENDIX 9-1

Table of Data

Table 9-1 gives 1024 time-samples (to be read from left to right row by row) of the data from the model described in Section E.

TABLE 9-1

0.00989467	0.47066602	-1.66263008	-1.78078222
1.18934727	1.26660621	-0.05475710	-1.33262658
-1.93302858	1.73388422	2.04036522	-0.67830479
-1.64459324	-0.93910670	1.23355663	1.72615504
-0.85771930	-1.85365641	-0.47445878	1.46380532
1.66554165	-0.64587522	-1.91202867	-0.48383012
1.52981234	1.60666537	-1.42246079	-2.09197235
0.54738969	1.59065068	0.97594762	-0.96875572
-1.72903991	0.40846398	1.43511045	0.55858260
-1.24234414	-1.44095004	0.52835649	1.58514965
0.56194425	-1.30087161	-1.06548071	0.82452542
0.97909558	0.06155277	-1.23497915	-0.77335042
0.96602440	0.65923274	0.18045935	-0.61700827
-0.77711344	0.73577768	0.58546716	-0.32241979
-0.67927831	-0.29661053	0.50183791	0.44684607
0.06312220	-0.56402493	0.18906890	0.17972668
-0.18405706	0.05294806	-0.27240932	0.09693766
-0.11907823	-0.10593307	0.52050275	0.11349303
-0.15389548	-0.13421668	-0.43226638	0.22034766
0.49486834	-0.21594425	-0.63640934	-0.24419123
0.83267790	0.95045793	-0.75375658	-0.92138052
0.14598009	0.37124115	0.95389342	-0.67324245
-1.43391752	0.54527307	1.04393721	0.87417459
-0.80683929	-1.62603939	0.36184257	1.55070817
0.18105885	-1.00967431	-1.40773022	0.50987321

2.11659908	0.24561240	-1.57378197	-1.21545935
0.80001318	1.61949885	0.12247355	-1.86168289
-1.08506441	1.25613236	1.98362255	-0.17193082
-1.94848490	-0.93780088	1.44293725	1.56664670
-0.63341725	-1.89331603	-0.81087393	1.98884320
1.62737727	-0.99341142	-1.77045119	-0.23626266
1.61977887	0.90159482	-0.74496484	-1.86632705
-0.41661590	2.47470951	0.86994332	-1.56665027
-0.91025400	-0.07215878	1.45068896	0.86183846
-1.55978084	-1.27706647	0.57122493	1.60811079
0.26133722	-0.90134531	-1.08681595	0.47056708
1.32154703	-0.02799010	-1.24941945	-0.64831990
0.59689081	1.16156161	0.02287040	-0.94934183
-0.32289553	0.53619295	0.69257432	-0.52618361
-0.53709096	-0.20704909	0.42677480	0.37349665
0.05061902	-0.22629777	-0.27051449	0.36870632
0.10481635	-0.42505479	-0.04939518	0.18605588
-0.14062071	-0.22356817	0.45155683	0.44802842
-0.31036723	-0.35683948	-0.17447409	0.23390719
0.38029143	-0.10348507	-0.88746721	0.06537250
0.89127040	0.41487792	-0.15280832	-1.07465315
-0.22387981	0.91088992	0.67582768	-0.78029740
-1.05458391	0.13797870	1.22683895	1.01258278
-1.10371995	-1.31093955	0.09990557	1.62745082
0.39126277	-1.29759967	-1.28045380	0.45863643
2.30136633	0.06020172	-1.65184593	-0.89287043
0.50012767	1.77421772	0.06583742	-1.85610318
-1.00417292	1.12768805	2.03833222	-0.09020993
-2.04935956	-0.93365484	1.52076817	1.58373833
-0.90034574	-1.55351651	-0.68814939	1.20739222
2.50909567	-1.25253773	-2.15994930	0.30321151
1.18128896	1.38401806	-1.14522088	-2.02610779
0.39358082	1.65138459	1.02267063	-0.94141173

-1.85220110	0.56364280	1.50316155	0.26405174
-0.89749241	-1.61176372	0.51902723	1.85294116
0.14279099	-1.08431649	-0.74307430	0.28843161
1.20753419	0.19168653	-1.25211275	-0.93816119
0.88315535	1.32422447	-0.66637599	-0.27179009
-0.32436839	-0.11948197	1.34067154	-0.60821933
-0.98065126	0.34588343	0.08386099	0.52331549
0.05263614	-0.57616812	0.42724749	-0.04353508
-0.25179759	0.20493132	-0.22050004	0.03190622
-0.17481466	-0.04754228	0.52862239	0.09800903
-0.03329744	-0.31563684	-0.40868542	0.40208378
0.32651937	-0.06595480	-0.86409789	-0.07711802
1.04684877	0.38305545	-0.24009816	-0.98084062
-0.19441466	0.76658762	0.76550364	-0.62798619
-1.42423844	0.41776288	1.35711730	0.54483396
-0.65647143	-1.49259019	0.00948523	1.82630467
0.38880929	-1.61831570	-0.94150436	0.49052840
1.90332961	0.52405602	-1.89336920	-0.96287811
0.75030357	1.51985610	0.29357699	-2.01467013
-1.06389451	1.39755166	1.85286939	-0.19403085
-1.78470266	-1.08292103	1.38514519	1.91156304
-1.01607120	-1.87811327	-0.38047165	1.52559960
1.79558885	-0.92569667	-1.91247022	0.02034395
1.18785596	1.39534414	-0.93660367	-2.32114792
0.59551233	1.60261905	0.83643401	-0.53839588
-2.10501671	0.34339333	1.87545335	0.37837425
-1.47918499	-1.27588475	0.87475014	1.13953769
0.57027948	-0.88686442	-1.36022115	0.78808022
1.16711164	0.00391186	-1.31260443	-0.57605112
0.70074350	0.96364307	-0.00138638	-0.69326276
-0.42626938	0.38099983	0.82950836	-0.56975806
-0.38250321	-0.33043435	0.12640843	1.02616501
-0.35188589	-0.46181330	0.35520667	0.00231043

-0.11499865	-0.04912664	0.05565976	-0.25171509
-0.09279706	0.28718045	0.06890260	0.18335207
0.26888511	-0.63983792	-0.23090076	0.31129968
0.38834029	-0.10599802	-0.89842469	0.09481911
0.82973397	0.45460993	-0.11878752	-1.09166121
-0.37538633	1.28883553	0.26672110	-0.66132617
-0.76020503	-0.34493980	1.53579509	1.12678087
-1.50854683	-1.08246410	0.34381741	1.15590894
0.71047169	-1.38235283	-1.38286996	0.83678991
1.73577988	0.34547088	-1.32456970	-1.49536145
0.80273879	1.92218029	-0.29574385	-1.47611713
-1.31648123	1.26851308	2.17973423	-0.41441604
-1.82842064	-0.89560574	1.35495377	1.68940020
-0.82235086	-1.82750297	-0.44730937	1.39264762
1.85175705	-0.63714361	-2.15799975	-0.31784296
1.92199492	0.98764378	-1.18792665	-1.70116997
0.00355045	1.93176353	1.00233662	-1.27260828
-1.28443420	0.17097998	1.35542405	0.86104989
-1.50260544	-1.30687344	0.59986156	1.39792204
0.70822805	-1.23706257	-1.14627421	0.73282593
1.20528769	-0.06092146	-1.19002640	-0.76724780
0.79077107	1.09755254	-0.10919152	-0.84689230
-0.22609560	0.44522178	0.48973900	-0.07562224
-0.86466652	-0.14384893	0.39637986	0.53104228
-0.04940809	-0.37567785	0.07323413	0.11969802
0.04894442	-0.22703098	0.00608917	-0.14307624
0.01303943	0.11366390	-0.03742670	0.53419530
0.00286324	-0.57328683	-0.20241551	0.23833463
0.54356593	-0.42674652	-0.38759243	-0.31377128
0.70477772	1.07781827	-0.69242001	-0.99094605
-0.03145984	0.76939559	0.63079798	-0.53163499
-1.40295160	0.25344759	1.58209121	0.58327347
-1.13344777	-1.02523243	0.22836515	0.93708652

1.18215513	-1.68364716	-1.52851546	1.26065135
1.42427421	0.40851137	-1.30902851	-1.46862793
0.80928499	1.77762485	0.01579019	-1.89182460
-0.97820771	1.28099263	1.67314744	0.32982832
-2.27275157	-1.03216898	1.87059557	1.13534999
-0.46053439	-1.78868544	-0.94167936	1.98846233
1.67714846	-0.99231148	-1.72992969	-0.32438996
1.60275531	1.12582123	-1.02782202	-1.77685392
-0.10888250	1.87459803	1.24930561	-1.17198610
-1.86411273	0.55829644	1.60432923	0.41491351
-1.33992267	-1.36089742	0.79119885	1.31553042
0.43332779	-0.84530073	-1.30793464	0.70564067
1.19357324	-0.01407840	-1.12780273	-0.93103164
1.00870562	0.85902274	-0.10570607	-0.39358059
-0.78103715	0.47184876	1.12161672	-0.88613707
-0.44618186	0.01356686	-0.04249382	0.84121776
-0.08582666	-0.49519831	0.11924164	0.35712144
-0.37545303	-0.05554857	0.28773856	-0.48122436
0.03819137	0.19529033	0.04938660	0.45573223
-0.08834249	-0.58299208	0.10161082	-0.01845008
0.30951828	0.25236896	-0.98882771	-0.31632027
1.34176290	0.37454072	-0.54495084	-0.53037995
-0.66788739	1.20655632	0.55822760	-0.95197457
-0.56994683	-0.41587213	1.51807296	1.12854815
-1.37774777	-1.30279815	0.47832301	1.23184228
0.40326554	-0.92850035	-1.67275178	0.60383290
2.39225769	-0.10971744	-1.56511188	-0.72118229
0.16201931	1.83874452	0.48501876	-2.28927588
-1.07110977	1.56063879	1.70712101	0.05709532
-2.19564295	-0.82609606	1.64758086	1.26491225
-0.58360893	-1.72516561	-0.77571613	1.62583637
1.96581542	-0.98417199	-1.94990337	-0.17996417
1.60397506	1.20603037	-1.21981883	-1.76017559

0.04872841	1.98568821	0.77104294	-0.91153038
-1.48487759	-0.07582133	1.93832374	0.36659560
-1.34181297	-1.20095491	0.33764446	1.73802233
0.53062558	-1.49460006	-0.59319824	0.43467844
0.94396490	0.44158950	-1.45750475	-0.81582302
0.99860811	0.82328779	0.06116966	-0.62997520
-0.78905433	0.84960878	0.65091658	-0.58944583
-0.51329565	-0.21485108	0.45306733	0.48538437
-0.29059848	0.05310697	-0.03903188	-0.23279761
0.45115018	-0.33695576	-0.12139898	0.10836344
-0.26418439	0.13274188	0.35670155	0.09102994
0.08320970	-0.35061601	-0.53751743	0.67671853
0.11108527	-0.19561671	-0.43290073	-0.36169568
0.89447123	0.75398695	-0.44452825	-0.94433707
-0.34636664	1.07373917	0.63868570	-0.92691487
-0.85553581	-0.02544751	1.40113842	0.92887187
-1.29552627	-0.92325765	-0.10716692	1.40486312
0.95329535	-1.83379388	-1.15835321	0.91406524
1.51476347	0.64853901	-1.60065162	-1.49652719
1.12293196	1.58439100	-0.14720525	-1.56601524
-1.10866368	1.02421808	2.25651145	-0.27334657
-2.09441829	-0.53625786	0.97507566	1.77345121
-0.36782685	-2.45046663	-0.33980682	1.90595651
1.32106376	-0.54778230	-1.97316790	-0.42627051
1.91222680	0.96047395	-1.06015527	-1.85898876
0.14388950	1.78031552	1.11371207	-1.12355137
-1.74604988	0.58031374	1.36670017	0.53412318
-1.20252645	-1.41680694	0.55373734	1.49212909
0.70289189	-1.30447781	-1.23182225	1.05798590
0.95011437	-0.19589843	-0.80190295	-1.03138363
0.89063102	0.95709693	-0.03489304	-0.52535522
-0.84590065	0.79393476	0.79402906	-0.77135110
-0.36597764	-0.17681867	0.18282267	0.74866778

-0.30527681	-0.04977918	-0.08572344	-0.06430395
0.33757097	-0.26609075	-0.18778515	0.00100350
0.06079780	0.01792109	-0.10987693	0.73601115
-0.00559090	-0.90628982	0.19092350	0.12966906
0.29604611	0.08788905	-0.96258277	-0.05245698
1.02167177	0.39129880	-0.19067617	-0.91495216
-0.53674948	1.17978311	0.67857409	-0.97705919
-0.84802473	-0.05003564	1.37432969	1.11956894
-1.46738529	-1.08718717	0.29409033	1.24802721
0.69160432	-1.52658176	-1.16544104	0.66652465
1.90248764	0.17300750	-1.31749499	-1.23465419
0.44447055	2.11245060	-0.15680119	-1.88676572
-0.89424044	1.03845215	2.26981449	-0.42978680
-1.98209405	-0.54279447	0.99689591	1.85544252
-0.79794437	-1.90640843	-0.36513922	1.24391329
2.07029676	-0.78982705	-2.19215703	-0.10006033
1.65841138	1.11982822	-1.15418279	-1.72729278
-0.09901761	2.03076100	1.07466042	-1.40577781
-1.26015091	0.12310471	1.58148801	0.73125648
-1.75697374	-0.93933988	0.53029549	1.28866601
0.69704080	-1.22104394	-0.92472172	0.43412766
1.24706733	0.20260289	-1.57340372	-0.43975216
0.74134773	0.71835178	0.44072035	-1.09639430
-0.38018504	0.74441922	0.23386805	0.11481632
-0.87734067	-0.48348355	0.97110552	0.16555774
-0.14629835	-0.05620362	-0.09812734	0.13266820
-0.04903803	0.00106594	-0.16136439	-0.08319708
-0.03633336	0.07214603	0.25145799	0.15949211
0.13272828	-0.41939634	-0.36928630	0.19338162
0.76346564	-0.50314677	-0.75318700	0.29663232
0.43367890	0.82018483	-0.37433451	-0.88665074
-0.45667896	1.00798559	0.91974258	-1.23783278
-0.70950377	0.08691405	1.06560779	1.22557557

-1.17137635	-1.48207355	0.35686913	1.47425437
0.55443543	-1.52944100	-1.28135622	0.89344126
1.77531660	0.24639781	-1.46559227	-1.15440500
0.60418141	1.83162916	0.01065734	-1.92255521
-0.83283132	1.03156149	1.90419817	0.17796962
-2.14525223	-1.08575249	1.66076469	1.62048578
-0.89569378	-1.71540380	-0.69414937	1.69461107
1.81481135	-0.94904959	-1.77944398	-0.46411583
1.76586294	1.35380685	-1.62582600	-1.33781219
-0.04101141	1.46376002	1.66328990	-1.36484528
-1.93226790	0.71910048	1.60190105	0.21991397
-1.15709031	-1.33547735	0.57124925	1.54298782
0.40495509	-1.03800833	-1.08131182	0.60360152
1.22732878	-0.09709682	-1.02385712	-0.87670147
0.64147276	1.41521549	-0.39344946	-0.68416154
-0.23900048	0.36985072	0.50963169	-0.02945622
-0.75230902	-0.61748111	1.08098197	0.17655972
-0.42776245	0.42806140	-0.42596340	0.07357124
0.24931222	-0.28319728	0.03752279	-0.27996045
0.17595196	0.06544803	-0.19266245	0.86223119
-0.23791657	-0.70485198	0.22936273	-0.09003901
0.44966742	0.12701115	-1.13961565	0.10689779
1.00272405	0.34723064	-0.19222593	-0.97835404
-0.33960921	1.10530686	0.40177047	-0.50612211
-1.20292056	-0.00601722	1.75960994	0.38894460
-0.81250185	-1.29786825	0.14285851	1.50929189
0.37297407	-1.20434928	-1.21125233	0.31220761
2.21709728	0.44985262	-2.01727653	-0.86892068
0.80843729	1.33820748	0.46532896	-1.97574437
-1.41248333	1.92197156	1.49856710	-0.22506003
-1.58482563	-1.10138047	1.35255384	1.60786664
-0.49550813	-2.03772044	-0.70851380	1.79729080
2.00170112	-1.34762788	-1.75051439	0.19660220

Part II

PERIODIC PHENOMENA

INTRODUCTION

The subject of Part II is the statistical spectral analysis of empirical time-series from periodic phenomena. The term *empirical* indicates that the time-series represents data from a physical phenomenon; the term *spectral analysis* denotes decomposition of the time-series into sine wave components; and the term *statistical* indicates that averaging is used to reduce random effects in the data that mask the spectral characteristics of the phenomenon under study: in particular, products of pairs of sine wave components are averaged to produce spectral correlations. The purpose of Part II is to introduce a comprehensive theory and methodology for statistical spectral correlation analysis of empirical time-series from periodic phenomena. The motivation for this is to foster better understanding of special concepts and special time-series-analysis methods for random data from periodic phenomena. In the approach taken here, the unnecessary abstraction of a probabilistic framework is avoided by extending to periodic phenomena the deterministic approach developed in Part I for constant phenomena. The reason for this is that for many applications, the conceptual gap between practice and the deterministic theory presented herein is narrower and thus easier to bridge than is the conceptual gap between practice and the more abstract probabilistic theory. Nevertheless, a means for obtaining probabilistic interpretations of the deterministic theory, analogous to that in Part I, is developed in terms of periodically time-variant fraction-of-time distributions.

Because of the novelty of the material to be presented, a brief preview is given here. By definition, a phenomenon or the time-series it produces is said

to exhibit *second-order periodicity* if and only if there exists some quadratic time-invariant transformation of the time-series that gives rise to finite additive periodic components (spectral lines). In Part II, a comprehensive theory of statistical spectral analysis of time-series from phenomena that exhibit second-order periodicity that does not rely on probabilistic concepts is developed. It is shown that second-order periodicity in the time-series is characterized by spectral correlation, and that the *degree of spectral coherence* of such a time-series is properly characterized by a spectral correlation coefficient, the *spectral autocoherence function*. A fundamental relationship between superposed epoch analysis (synchronized averaging) of lag products, and spectral correlation, which is based on the *cyclic autocorrelation* and its Fourier transform, the *cyclic spectrum*, is revealed by a synchronized averaging identity. It is shown that the cyclic spectrum is a spectral correlation function. Relationships to the ambiguity function and the Wigner-Ville distribution are also explained. It is shown that the deterministic theory can be given a probabilistic interpretation in terms of fraction-of-time distributions obtained from synchronized time averages. Several fundamental properties of the cyclic spectrum are derived. These include the effects of time-sampling, modulation, and periodically time-variant filtering, and the spectral correlation properties of Rice's representation for band-pass time-series. The specific spectral correlation properties of various modulation types, including amplitude and quadrature-amplitude modulation, pulse modulation, phase and frequency modulation, and phase- and frequency-shift keying are derived. The basics of cyclic spectrum estimation, including temporal, spectral, and cycle resolution, spectral and cycle leakage, and reliability, are described, and the relationships among a variety of measurement methods are explained. Applications of the cyclic spectrum concept to problems of signal detection, signal extraction, system identification, parameter estimation and synchronization are presented. Finally, an approach to probabilistic analysis of cyclic spectrum estimates based on fraction-of-time distributions obtained from synchronized time averages is introduced.

It is emphasized that the fundamental results of the theory of cyclic spectral analysis presented in Part II are generalizations of results from the conventional theory of spectral analysis presented in Part I, in the sense that the latter are included as the special case of the former, for which the cycle frequency α is zero (or the period T_0 is infinite) or the time-series is purely stationary. For example, the *cyclic periodogram-correlogram relation*, the equivalence between time-averaged and spectrally smoothed cyclic spectra, the *cyclic Wiener relation*, the *periodic Wiener relation*, the *cyclic autocorrelation* and *cyclic spectrum relations* for linear periodically time-variant transformations and for Rice's representation, the *cyclic spectrum aliasing formula* for time-sampling, the *cyclic spectrum convolution formula* for products of independent time-series, and the specific formulas for cyclic spectra of various modulation types, are all generalizations of results from the conventional theory of spectral analysis, and reduce to the conventional results for $\alpha = 0$ (or $T_0 = \infty$) or purely stationary time-series. Similarly, the results on applications to signal detection, signal

extraction, and system identification are all generalizations of results for the more conventional problems involving stationary signals and time-invariant systems. Also, the cyclostationary fraction-of-time distributions obtained from synchronized time averages include the stationary fraction-of-time distributions as a special case, and the isomorphism between a single time-series and an almost cyclostationary stochastic process includes Wold's isomorphism as a special case.

10

INTRODUCTION TO SECOND-ORDER PERIODICITY

This introductory chapter sets the stage for the in-depth study of spectral-correlation analysis taken up in the following chapters by providing motivation for and an overview of the subject, mentioning a variety of application areas, and introducing the fundamental statistical parameters of the theory.

A. MOTIVATION AND OVERVIEW

Let us begin by considering the following question: Do we really need a special theory for periodic phenomena that is distinct from the well-known probabilistic theory of stationary stochastic processes and the analogous deterministic theory presented in Part I for constant phenomena? On the surface, the answer to this question appears to be no, because when we consider physical sources of periodicity, we find that *periodic phenomena* are only *locally periodic;* in the long run, they are appropriately modeled as narrow-band stationary random processes. For example, the spectral lines that characterize the atoms of matter have long been recognized to have finite width because of thermal motion. The sine waves associated with such spectral lines have fluctuations in both amplitude and phase, so that when considered over time intervals greatly exceeding the *coherence time* (the time over which the amplitude and especially the phase are approximately constant), these time-series are accurately modeled as stationary random processes, with bandwidths determined by the bandwidths of the amplitude and phase fluctuations. As another example, *coherent light* produced by a laser exhibits coherence times that are much longer than the coherence times of *incoherent light*, such as incandescent radiation, because the resonance phenomenon of the

laser phase-locks wave packets (photons) over time intervals greatly exceeding the lengths of the individual packets; but these longer coherence times are still finite. Therefore, the corresponding spectral lines still have finite width, and the time-series are accurately modeled as stationary random processes over time intervals greatly exceeding the coherence times. Similarly, at lower frequencies, electrical oscillators produce sine waves with phases that fluctuate as diffusion processes due to thermal noise, and as a consequence these time-series are accurately modeled as stationary processes over time intervals that are sufficiently long relative to the reciprocal of the diffusion coefficient.

Nevertheless, we know perfectly well from experience that when such stationary processes are sufficiently narrow-band, it is indeed appropriate to model these processes as ideal sine waves with constant amplitude and phase. Specifically, a narrow-band stationary process is appropriately modeled as a precisely periodic phenomenon if integration times of interest (for detection, measurement, processing, etc.) do not exceed the coherence time, which is the reciprocal of the bandwidth of the process. But, such precisely periodic models that give rise to spectral lines with infinitesimal width can apparently be incorporated into the conventional theory for constant phenomena. For example, in the probabilistic theory, one can introduce a time-invariant random phase variable that converts a precisely periodic time-series into a stationary random process (all of whose random samples are precisely periodic) [Gardner 1978].

In spite of the preceding discussion, if we look beneath the surface, we shall find that the answer to our question is yes, we do need a special theory for periodic phenomena. Specifically, let us consider more subtle forms of local periodicity. For example, if a very narrow-band stationary process, with bandwidth Δ_1, is multiplied (amplitude modulated) by a broadband stationary process with bandwidth $\Delta_2 >> \Delta_1$ and with zero mean value, then the narrow spectral line is spread out over the broader band. Therefore, for integration times of interest, say T, that greatly exceed the coherence time, $T >> 1/\Delta_2$, this process should apparently be modeled as stationary. But the narrow-band locally periodic factor is indeed present and produces local behavior for $T < 1/\Delta_1$ that is not predicted by the stationary model, even if $T >> 1/\Delta_2$. More specifically, it can be demonstrated that pairs of frequency components of this broadband process, with frequencies that are separated by an amount equal to twice the center frequency of the narrow-band factor, exhibit a correlation coefficient that is very close to unity when measured over time-intervals of length T satisfying the condition $1/\Delta_1 > T >> 1/\Delta_2$ ($T >> 1/\Delta_2$ guarantees statistical reliability). This contradicts the fact that a mathematical property of a stationary random process is that all frequency components are uncorrelated (Part I, Chapter 1, Section B).

In conclusion, even though all periodic phenomena are appropriately modeled as stationary random processes over sufficiently long time intervals, the stationary process model is unable to predict local properties exhibited by narrow-band factors and other narrow-band influences. However, it is shown in Part II that by modeling the narrow-band influences as precisely periodic (and not introducing a time-invariant random phase to obtain a stationary probabilistic model), the reliably measurable local properties exhibited by the narrow-band influences of

the phenomenon under study are correctly predicted by the resultant nonstationary mathematical model.

The answer to our question is, then, yes, we do indeed need a special theory for periodic phenomena, because the stationary process theory is unable to predict some reliably measurable local properties associated with periodic phenomena.

This conclusion, which provides the basic motivation for Part II, should be seen in historical perspective. At the turn of the century, Schuster (references in Part I) introduced the periodogram for detection of hidden periodicities in oscillatory random data. Several decades of work with the periodogram revealed that (without some form of averaging) it is suitable for only hidden periodicity that consists of *additive* periodic components. To circumvent the problems associated with the apparently inappropriate hypothesis of additive periodic components for many oscillatory phenomena of interest, Yule [Yule 1927] introduced a *linear regression* model, which accounts for slow variation in the amplitude and phase of an otherwise sinusoidal process and which he referred to as a *disturbed harmonic*. Another decade later Wold [Wold 1938] adopted Yule's model of a disturbed harmonic for oscillatory phenomena and put it on a firm mathematical foundation by developing the probabilistic theory of stationary processes of linear regression type (see Chapter 9, Section B in Part I). With the passage of two more decades, which saw considerable development of theory and methodology for time-series analysis, Blackman and Tukey [Blackman and Tukey 1958] reaffirmed the preference for stationary random process models over models of precise periodicity (additive or otherwise) by arguing that no phenomenon is precisely periodic and the theory and methodology that has been developed for stationary processes appears to be adequate. But since that time, a number of authors have claimed that many phenomena are indeed appropriately modeled as precisely periodic and have contributed to the development of probabilistic models and methods of analysis for random data from periodic phenomena, often called *cyclostationary stochastic processes*. The major ideas, results, and references are reported in [Gardner and Franks 1975; Gardner 1978; Boyles and Gardner 1983; Gardner 1985] and references therein. Extensive studies are presented in [Brelsford 1967; Hurd 1969; Gardner 1972].

In contrast to this preceding work, Part II takes an entirely different approach and presents a *nonprobabilistic* theory of random data from periodic phenomena. The justification for this departure from the tradition of the preceding half-century is that the author has found the nonprobabilistic approach to be more amenable to the development of an intuitively satisfying as well as comprehensive theory. It avoids conceptual complications due to the unnecessary abstractions associated with the probabilistic approach (see [Boyles and Gardner 1983]). Moreover, all the justification given in Part I for adopting the nonprobabilistic approach for random data from constant phenomena applies as well for random data from periodic phenomena. Nevertheless, for the sake of completeness and the possibility of advantage for some applications, the probabilistic counterpart to some of the theory presented herein has been developed simultaneously with the preparation of this book and appears as a chapter in [Gardner 1985].

Before proceeding, let us briefly consider some of the areas of study in which periodic phenomena are of interest. Examples of periodic phenomena that give rise to random data abound in engineering and science. For example, in mechanical vibrations monitoring and diagnosis for machinery, periodicity arises from rotation, revolution, and reciprocation of gears, belts, chains, shafts, propellers, bearings, pistons, and so on; in atmospheric science—for instance, for weather forecasting—periodicity arises from seasons caused primarily by rotation and revolution of the earth; in radio astronomy, periodicity arises from revolution of the moon, rotation and pulsation of the sun, rotation of Jupiter and revolution of its satellite, Io, and so on, and can cause strong periodicities in time-series—for example, pulsar signals; in biology, periodicity in the form of biorhythms arises from both internal and external sources—for example, circadean rhythms; in communications, telemetry, radar, and sonar, periodicity arises from sampling, scanning, modulating, multiplexing, and coding operations, and it can also be caused by rotating reflectors such as helicopter blades, and aircraft and watercraft propellers. Thus, the potential applications of the theory presented in Part II are diverse. Specific types of applications are described in Chapter 14.

In the remainder of this introductory chapter, the fundamental statistical parameters of the theory presented in the following chapters are derived from first principles. These parameters appear as solutions to problems that arise naturally from a fundamental inquiry into the nature of random data from periodic phenomena. These parameters, called the *limit cyclic autocorrelation, limit periodic autocorrelation, limit cyclic spectrum*, and *limit periodic spectrum*, are generalizations of the conventional limit autocorrelation and limit spectrum, which are the fundamental statistical parameters in the theory of random data from constant phenomena (Part I). It is shown that sine wave components arise as elements of the fundamental statistical parameters and can be indirectly interpreted as *principal components*—a generalization of the role played by sine wave components in the theory for constant phenomena. A brief discussion of the link between the nonprobabilistic model consisting of an individual time-series from a periodic phenomenon and a cyclostationary stochastic process is given, and the chapter concludes with an explanation of how the limit periodic autocorrelation and limit periodic spectrum are generalized for phenomena with multiple incommensurate periodicities.

In Chapter 11, the statistical theory of cyclic spectral analysis is presented. The development parallels that for conventional spectral analysis, presented in Part I. This parallel results from the fact that cyclic spectral analysis is actually a special type of cross-spectral analysis (Part I, Chapter 7). After discussion of the cyclic periodogram and cyclic correlogram, the resolution and reliability properties of statistical cyclic spectra obtained from temporally or spectrally smoothing the cyclic periodogram are briefly described. The limit cyclic spectrum is then derived as a limiting form of the statistical cyclic spectrum, and a variety of its properties are derived and illustrated with examples. These include the effects on the limit cyclic spectrum of frequency conversion, time sampling,

filtering, and related operations. In Chapter 12, a wide variety of specific models for cyclostationary time-series are considered, and their cyclic spectra are derived and discussed. The focus is on commonly used communication signals, which are periodic pulse-trains and sine wave carriers with various types of random modulations. In Chapter 13, several empirical methods for cyclic spectral analysis are derived. These are simultaneously generalizations of methods used for conventional spectral analysis and specializations of methods used for conventional cross-spectral analysis (which are described in Part I, Chapters 4 and 7). In Chapter 14, a number of novel applications of the theory and methodology are briefly described. These include applications to optimum and adaptive detection of modulated random signals hidden in noise and masked by interference, optimum synchronization to hidden periodicity in random data, optimum identification of periodically time-variant linear systems subject to random excitation, optimum and adaptive periodically time-variant waveform estimation, for example, of modulated random signals in noise and interference, optimum estimation of parameters of modulated signals buried in noise, and classification of corrupted signals according to modulation type. It is shown that the cyclic spectrum provides spectral characterizations of the solutions to a variety of optimization problems in statistical inference and decision. Finally, in Chapter 15, the probabilistic analysis of random time-series from periodic phenomena, based on periodically time-variant fraction-of-time distributions, is introduced, and the resolution, leakage, and reliability properties of measured cyclic spectra are studied.

B. DERIVATION OF FUNDAMENTAL STATISTICAL PARAMETERS

1. Generation of Spectral Lines from Second-Order Periodicity

A time-series $x(t)$ contains a *finite additive sine wave component* with frequency α, say

$$a \cos(2\pi\alpha t + \theta), \qquad \alpha \neq 0, \tag{1}$$

if and only if the parameter

$$\hat{M}_x^\alpha \triangleq \lim_{T\to\infty} \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x(t) e^{-i2\pi\alpha t}\, dt \tag{2}$$

exists and is not zero, in which case

$$\hat{M}_x^\alpha = \left(\frac{a}{2}\right) e^{i\theta}.$$

In this case, the limit spectrum of $x(t)$ exhibits a spectral line at $f = \alpha$ and its image $f = -\alpha$. That is, the limit spectrum contains the additive component (exercise 1)

$$|\hat{M}_x^\alpha|^2 [\delta(f - \alpha) + \delta(f + \alpha)], \tag{3}$$

where $\delta(\cdot)$ is the Dirac delta or impulse function (see Part I, Chapter 3, Section D). For convenience in the sequel, such a time-series shall be said to contain *first-order periodicity* with frequency α.

Let $x(t)$ be decomposed into the sum of its finite sine wave component with frequency α and its residual, say $n(t)$,

$$x(t) = a\cos(2\pi\alpha t + \theta) + n(t), \tag{4}$$

and assume that $n(t)$ is random (erratic). If the strength of the sine wave is weak relative to the random residual, then it is not evident from visual inspection of the time-series that $x(t)$ contains periodicity. Hence, it is said to contain *hidden periodicity*. However, because of the associated spectral lines, hidden periodicity can be detected and otherwise exploited through techniques of spectral analysis.

In this Part II, we are concerned with time-series that contain more subtle types of hidden periodicity, which do not give rise to spectral lines but which can be converted into spectral lines with a nonlinear time-invariant transformation of the time-series. In particular, we shall focus on the type of hidden periodicity that can be converted into spectral lines with a *quadratic time-invariant* (QTI) transformation.

A transformation of a time-series $x(t)$ into another time-series $y(t)$ is QTI if and only if there exists a function $k(\cdot, \cdot)$, called the *kernel*, such that $y(t)$ can be expressed in terms of $k(\cdot, \cdot)$ and $x(t)$ by

$$y(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} k(t-u, t-v)x(u)x(v)\,du\,dv, \tag{5a}$$

which is equivalent (by a change of variables of integration) to

$$y(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} k(u, v)x(t-u)x(t-v)\,du\,dv. \tag{5b}$$

A QTI transformation is said to be *stable* if and only if the kernel is absolutely integrable,

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |k(u, v)|\,du\,dv < \infty. \tag{6}$$

By restricting attention to only those quadratic transformations that are *time-invariant* (as reflected in the dependence of k in (5a) on the three variables t, u, v through only the differences $t-u$ and $t-v$) and stable, we rule out periodically time-variant and oscillating unstable time-invariant transformations, both of which introduce periodicity into $y(t)$ that is foreign to $x(t)$.

Before proceeding, several examples of stable QTI transformations are considered.

1. Let

$$y(t) = x^2(t).$$

Then (5) applies with

$$k(u, v) = \delta(u)\delta(v).$$

2. Let

$$y(t) = x(t)[x(t) \otimes h(t)]$$

for which $\otimes$ denotes *convolution*,

$$x(t) \otimes h(t) \triangleq \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} h(t - u)x(u)\, du.$$

Then (5) applies with

$$k(u, v) = \delta(v)h(u),$$

and stability requires that $h(\cdot)$ be absolutely integrable.

3. Let

$$y(t) = [h(t) \otimes x(t)][g(t) \otimes x(t)].$$

Then (5) applies with

$$k(u, v) = h(u)g(v),$$

and stability requires that $h(\cdot)$ and $g(\cdot)$ be absolutely integrable.

4. Let

$$y(t) = k(t) \otimes \{[h(t) \otimes x(t)][g(t) \otimes x(t)]\}.$$

Then (5) applies with

$$k(u, v) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} k(-t)\, h(t - u)g(t - v)\, dt,$$

and stability requires that $k(\cdot)$, $h(\cdot)$, and $g(\cdot)$ be absolutely integrable. In addition to these examples, any linear combination of these QTI transformations is another QTI transformation.

We shall say that a time-series $x(t)$ contains *second-order periodicity* with frequency α if and only if there exists some stable QTI transformation of $x(t)$ into $y(t)$ such that $y(t)$ contains first-order periodicity with frequency α; that is, $y(t)$ exhibits a spectral line at $f = \pm\alpha$. By substitution of (5) into (2), it can be shown (exercise 1) that $x(t)$ contains second-order periodicity with frequency $\alpha \neq 0$ if and only if the parameter

$$\hat{R}_x^{\alpha}(\tau) \triangleq \lim_{T\to\infty} \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right)x\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right)e^{-i2\pi\alpha t}\, dt \tag{7}$$

exists and is not identically zero as a function of τ. Consequently, we focus our attention in this Part II on the class of time-series for which the function $\hat{R}_x^{\alpha}$ exists and is not identically zero for some nonzero values of α. Also, in order to avoid anomalous time-series, as discussed in Part I, Chapter 3, Section D, it is assumed that $\hat{R}_x^{\alpha}(\tau)$ is a continuous function of τ (see exercise 1). For $\alpha = 0$, $\hat{R}_x^{\alpha}$ is the conventional limit autocorrelation, denoted by $\hat{R}_x$, which plays a fundamental role in the theory of conventional spectral analysis (Part I). For $\alpha \neq 0$, $\hat{R}_x^{\alpha}$ is a generalization of the limit autocorrelation that incorporates a cyclic (sinusoidal) weighting function, and $\hat{R}_x^{\alpha}$ is therefore referred to as the *limit cyclic autocorrelation* (sometimes abbreviated to *cyclic autocorrelation*[1]). Whereas $\hat{R}_x(\tau)$ for fixed τ is the constant (*dc*) component of the lag-product time-series

$$z(t) \triangleq x\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right)x\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right),$$

[1] The term *cyclic autocorrelation* as used here should not be confused with the term *circular autocorrelation* (see Chapter 6), which some authors call *cyclic autocorrelation*.

$\hat{R}_x^{\alpha}(\tau)$ is the strength of the sine wave (*ac*) component, with frequency α, of the time-series $z(t)$. This interpretation is expanded upon in the next part of this section.

By comparing (2) and (7), it can be seen that a time-series $x(t)$ contains second-order periodicity if and only if the lag product time-series $z(t)$ contains first-order periodicity for some lag values τ.

2. Synchronized Averaging

The limit cyclic autocorrelation (7) can be derived by an alternative means that emphasizes its relationship to the oldest known technique for extracting periodicity from random data,[2] the technique of *synchronized averaging*, which is also referred to as *superposed epoch analysis* [Chapman and Bartels 1940]. This technique applied directly to $x(t)$ can be viewed graphically as follows. If the period, T_0, of periodicity which is hidden in the data is known, the data can be partitioned into disjoint adjacent segments of length T_0, and these horizontally arranged segments can be stacked up vertically, as shown in Figure 10-1. Then for each point within a period, say t within the first period, an average can be obtained to reduce undesired random effects by adding the time-samples along the vertical line intersecting the points $t, t \pm T_0, t \pm 2T_0, t \pm 3T_0, \ldots, t \pm NT_0$, as shown in Figure 10-1. In this way, the *time-variant mean*

$$M_x(t)_T \triangleq \frac{1}{2N+1} \sum_{n=-N}^{N} x(t + nT_0), \tag{8}$$

based on a total data-segment length of

$$T = (2N + 1)T_0, \tag{9}$$

is obtained.

As an alternative approach to implementation, this time-variant mean can be obtained by using a particular linear time-invariant (LTI) transformation, called a *comb filter*, which is equivalent to a sum of band-pass filters (BPFs) with center frequencies equal to the harmonic frequencies, $\pm 1/T_0, \pm 2/T_0, \pm 3/T_0, \ldots$, of the periodicity of interest. To establish this equivalence, we proceed as follows. The time-variant mean (8) can be reexpressed as the convolution

$$M_x(t)_T = g(t) \otimes x(t), \tag{10}$$

where the impulse-response function g is

$$g(t) = \frac{1}{2N+1} \sum_{n=-N}^{N} \delta(t - nT_0), \tag{11}$$

which can be reexpressed as the product of a finite-width rectangle and an infinite train of impulses,

$$g(t) = Tu_T(t) \frac{1}{2N+1} \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(t - nT_0). \tag{12}$$

[2] Carried out with discrete-time data arranged in tabular form, this technique was evidently first used in 1847 by C. H. D. Buys-Ballot [Buys-Ballot 1847] (see also [H. O. A. Wold 1938, Chapter 1]) on meteorological data.

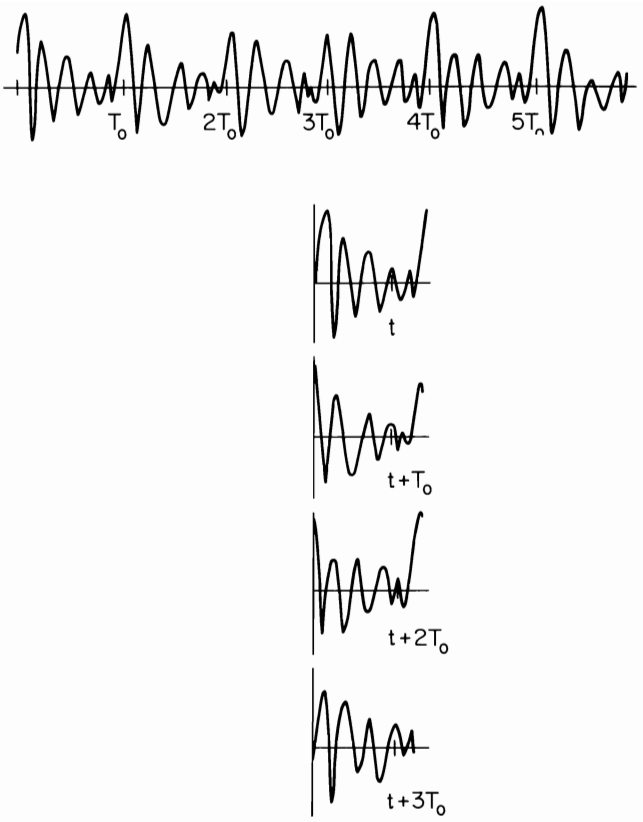


Figure 10-1 Illustration of superposed epoch, or synchronized, averaging.

Application of the convolution theorem for Fourier transforms yields (exercise 2)

$$G(f) = \sum_{m=-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{1}{T} w_{1/T}\left(f - \frac{m}{T_0}\right), \tag{13}$$

which is the transfer function of a comb filter. (In (12) and (13), u_T and $w_{1/T}$ are the unit-area rectangle and sinc windows, with width parameters T and $1/T$, respectively, as defined in Part I, Chapter 2.) The filter described by (13) has passbands at all the harmonic frequencies $\{m/T_0\}$, and each passband has width $1/T$ and unity attenuation at band center.

In the limit, as the number of time-samples averaged in (8) approaches infinity, $N \to \infty$ (and therefore $T \to \infty$), the limit time-variant mean

$$\hat{M}_x(t) \triangleq \lim_{T\to\infty} M_x(t)_T \tag{14}$$

is obtained. In this limit, the bandwidths of the comb filter (13) become infinitesimal so that the filter response $\hat{M}_x(t)$ can contain only frequency components at the discrete frequencies $\{m/T_0\}$. Hence $\hat{M}_x(t)$ is periodic with period T_0,

$$\hat{M}_x(t + T_0) = \hat{M}_x(t), \tag{15}$$

and is therefore referred to as the *limit periodic mean*. The individual sine wave components of this periodic function $\hat{M}_x(t)$ can be obtained by using the individual *teeth* of the comb filter, that is, by using individual BPFs from the sum of BPFs that comprise the comb filter (13). Thus, to obtain the mth sine wave component, the desired filter transfer function is

$$G_m(f) = \frac{1}{T} w_{1/T}\left(f - \frac{m}{T_0}\right). \tag{16}$$

The corresponding impulse-response function is obtained by inverse Fourier transformation,

$$g_m(t) = u_T(t) e^{i2\pi m t/T_0}. \tag{17}$$

Consequently, the desired averaging operation required to obtain the mth sine wave component is, analogous to (10),

$$g_m(t) \otimes x(t),$$

which, upon substitution of (17), becomes

$$M_x^{\alpha}(t)_T \triangleq \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x(t + u) e^{-i2\pi\alpha u}\, du, \tag{18}$$

where $\alpha = m/T_0$. In the limit $T \to \infty$, this yields the mth sine wave component of the limit periodic mean,

$$\hat{M}_x^{\alpha}(t) \triangleq \lim_{T\to\infty} M_x^{\alpha}(t)_T. \tag{19}$$

Comparison of (18)–(19) with (2) reveals that

$$\hat{M}_x^{\alpha}(t) = \hat{M}_x^{\alpha}\, e^{i2\pi\alpha t}. \tag{20}$$

Summing all the sine wave components yields the limit periodic mean,[3]

$$\hat{M}_x(t) = \sum_{m=-\infty}^{\infty} \hat{M}_x^{m/T_0}\, e^{i2\pi m t/T_0}. \tag{21}$$

Comparison of (8) and (14) with (18), (20), and (21) reveals the *fundamental identity for synchronized averaging*,

$$\begin{aligned} \hat{M}_x(t) &\triangleq \lim_{N\to\infty} \frac{1}{2N+1} \sum_{n=-N}^{N} x(t + nT_0) \\ &= \sum_{m=-\infty}^{\infty} \lim_{T\to\infty} \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x(t + u) e^{-i2\pi m u/T_0}\, du. \end{aligned} \tag{22}$$

Now, for a time-series $x(t)$ that contains second-order periodicity but does not contain first-order periodicity, synchronized averaging applied directly to the time-series is of no use, since

$$\hat{M}_x(t) \equiv \text{constant}.$$

However, synchronized averaging applied to the lag-product time-series

$$z(t) = x\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right) x\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right)$$

[3] All Fourier series in this book are assumed to converge in some appropriate sense.

yields

$$\hat{R}_x(t, \tau) \triangleq \lim_{N\to\infty} \frac{1}{2N+1} \sum_{n=-N}^{N} x\left(t + nT_0 + \frac{\tau}{2}\right) x\left(t + nT_0 - \frac{\tau}{2}\right), \tag{23}$$

from which identity (22) (with x replaced by z) yields

$$\hat{R}_x(t, \tau) = \sum_{m=-\infty}^{\infty} \hat{R}_x^{m/T_0}(\tau) e^{i2\pi mt/T_0}, \tag{24}$$

where

$$\hat{R}_x^{\alpha}(\tau) \triangleq \lim_{T\to\infty} \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right) x\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right) e^{-i2\pi\alpha t}\, dt, \tag{25}$$

which is recognized as the limit cyclic autocorrelation (7) and which is not identically zero if and only if $x(t)$ contains second-order periodicity with frequency $\alpha \neq 0$. By analogy with the terminology for $\hat{M}_x(t)$, the function $\hat{R}_x(t, \tau)$ is referred to as the *limit periodic autocorrelation*. In summary, *the limit cyclic autocorrelation* (25) *can be interpreted as a Fourier coefficient in the Fourier series expansion* (24) *of the limit periodic autocorrelation* (23).

3. Cross-Spectral Analysis

Yet another interpretation of the limit cyclic autocorrelation can be obtained as follows. It is explained in Part I, Chapter 7, Section C, that the generalized limit autocorrelation $\hat{R}_x^{\alpha}$ defined by (7) is actually the conventional cross correlation of the two complex-valued frequency-shifted versions

$$u(t) \triangleq x(t)e^{-i\pi\alpha t} \tag{26a}$$

$$v(t) \triangleq x(t)e^{+i\pi\alpha t} \tag{26b}$$

of $x(t)$, that is,

$$\hat{R}_x^{\alpha}(\tau) \equiv \hat{R}_{uv}(\tau) \triangleq \lim_{T\to\infty} \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} u\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right) v^*\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right) dt. \tag{27}$$

This is easily verified by substitution of (26a) and (26b) into (27). Consequently, $\hat{R}_x^{\alpha}$ is the inverse Fourier transform of the limit cross spectrum $\hat{S}_{uv}$ of $u(t)$ and $v(t)$,

$$\hat{R}_x^{\alpha}(\cdot) = F^{-1}\{\hat{S}_x^{\alpha}(\cdot)\}, \tag{28}$$

for which the notation

$$\hat{S}_x^{\alpha}(f) \triangleq \hat{S}_{uv}(f) \tag{29}$$

is introduced. This special limit cross-spectrum shall be referred to as the *limit cyclic spectrum* of $x(t)$ (sometimes abbreviated to *cyclic spectrum*). It follows from the definition of the conventional limit cross spectrum (Part I, Chapter 7, Section A) that $\hat{S}_x^{\alpha}(f)$ is the *limit correlation* of the two spectral components of $x(t)$, with frequencies $f + \alpha/2$ and $f - \alpha/2$. That is,

$$\hat{S}_x^{\alpha}(f) = \lim_{T\to\infty} \lim_{\Delta t\to\infty} S_{uv_T}(t, f)_{\Delta t}, \tag{30}$$

where $S_{uv_T}(t, f)_{\Delta t}$ is the correlation of

$$\frac{1}{\sqrt{T}} U_T(t, f) \triangleq \frac{1}{\sqrt{T}} X_T\left(t, f + \frac{\alpha}{2}\right)$$

and

$$\frac{1}{\sqrt{T}} V_T(t, f) \triangleq \frac{1}{\sqrt{T}} X_T\left(t, f - \frac{\alpha}{2}\right), \tag{31}$$

and $X_T(t, f)$ is the time-variant finite-time complex spectrum of $x(t)$,

$$X_T(t, f) \triangleq \int_{t-T/2}^{t+T/2} x(u) e^{-i2\pi fu}\, du. \tag{32}$$

The correlation referred to here is

$$S_{uv_T}(t, f)_{\Delta t} \triangleq \frac{1}{\Delta t} \int_{-\Delta t/2}^{\Delta t/2} \frac{1}{T} U_T(t, f) V_T^*(t, f)\, dt. \tag{33}$$

Equations (30)–(33) reveal the fundamental result that since any comprehensive statistical theory of second-order periodicity must be based on the limit cyclic autocorrelation (as explained in the two preceding subsections), then such a theory must also be based on cross-spectral analysis of frequency-translated versions of the time-series of interest. In fact, we have just discovered that a time-series $x(t)$ contains second-order periodicity with frequency α (as defined in Part 1 of this section) if and only if there exists correlation between spectral components of $x(t)$ with frequencies separated by the amount α, namely, frequencies $f + \alpha/2$ and $f - \alpha/2$ for appropriate values of f.[4]

Moreover, as explained in Part I, Chapter 7, Section C, this *spectral characterization*, (28)–(33), of second-order periodicity leads naturally to a particularly convenient and appropriate *spectrally decomposed measure of the strength of second-order periodicity* contained in a time-series, namely, the *limit correlation coefficient* for the two spectral components with frequencies $f + \alpha/2$ and $f - \alpha/2$. This is given by the *cross coherence* between $u(t)$ and $v(t)$,

$$\hat{C}_{uv}(f) \triangleq \frac{\hat{S}_{uv}(f)}{[\hat{S}_u(f)\hat{S}_v(f)]^{1/2}} \tag{34}$$

$$\equiv \frac{\hat{S}_x^\alpha(f)}{[\hat{S}_x(f + \alpha/2)\hat{S}_x(f - \alpha/2)]^{1/2}} \triangleq \hat{C}_x^\alpha(f). \tag{35}$$

This special cross-coherence shall be referred to as the *spectral autocoherence* (often abbreviated to just *autocoherence*[5]) of $x(t)$ at *cycle frequency* α and *spectrum frequency* f. (It should be noted that α is the *separation* and f is the *location*

[4] It follows that a phenomenon can be constant in the sense that $\hat{R}_x \not\equiv 0$ and $\hat{R}_x^\alpha \equiv 0$ for $\alpha \neq 0$, as discussed in Part I, Chapter 7, Section C, only if there is no spectral correlation.

[5] When necessary to avoid ambiguity and by analogy with the terminology described in Part I, Chapter 7, Section B, the term *complex autocoherence* (or *autocoherency*) can be used for the complex-valued function $\hat{C}_x^\alpha(f)$, and the term *autocoherence* (or *magnitude autocoherence*) can be used for the magnitude $|\hat{C}_x^\alpha(f)|$.

of the pair of frequencies $f + \alpha/2$ and $f - \alpha/2$ in the autocoherence.) It follows from a fundamental property of the cross coherence (the correlation coefficient) that the autocoherence has an upper bound of unity,

$$|\hat{C}_x^\alpha(f)| \leq 1, \tag{36}$$

for all time-series containing second-order periodicity. Consequently, $x(t)$ is said to be *completely coherent* (contain the maximum amount of second-order periodicity), with cycle frequency α and spectrum frequency f, if and only if the autocoherence is unity in magnitude,

$$|\hat{C}_x^\alpha(f)| = 1. \tag{37}$$

Furthermore, $x(t)$ is said to be *completely incoherent*[6] (contain no second-order periodicity) with cycle frequency α and spectrum frequency f if and only if the autocoherence is zero,

$$\hat{C}_x^\alpha(f) = 0. \tag{38}$$

In addition to possessing the *normalization property*, (36), the autocoherence magnitude also is appropriately invariant to LTI transformations of the time-series. That is, it can be shown (exercise 3) that if $y(t)$ is a filtered version of $x(t)$,

$$y(t) = h(t) \otimes x(t), \tag{39}$$

and the filter transfer function is nonzero,

$$H(f) \triangleq \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} h(t)e^{-i2\pi ft}\, dt \neq 0, \tag{40}$$

for all frequencies f, then the autocoherence magnitude of $y(t)$ is identical to the autocoherence magnitude of $x(t)$,

$$|\hat{C}_y^\alpha(f)| \equiv |\hat{C}_x^\alpha(f)|. \tag{41}$$

This *invariance property* reveals that the strength of second-order periodicity contained in a time-series is unaffected by LTI transformation, provided that frequency components are not annihilated because the transfer function equals zero at some frequencies.

4. Optimum Generation of Spectral Lines

According to the definition in Part 1 of this section, for any time-series containing second-order periodicity, there exists a generally nonunique QTI transformation that converts the second-order periodicity into first-order periodicity, that is, that generates spectral lines. However, we do not as yet know what particular QTI transformations are appropriate for this task. As we shall see, the limit cyclic spectrum, which is a spectral characterization of second-order periodicity, provides a convenient spectral characterization of the *optimum* QTI transformation for generation of maximal-strength spectral lines.

[6] A time-series that is completely incoherent for all α and f can contain periodicity of order higher than the second but this is not likely to happen with empirical time-series, except by design (see Chapter 12, Section E, Part 2).

Specifically, let us consider the problem of determining the particular QTI transformation that maximizes the power in the spectral line at frequency α, which it generates from a time-series $x(t)$ containing second-order periodicity with frequency α (but containing no first-order periodicity). It can be shown (exercise 5) using (2) and (5) and Parseval's relation for Fourier transforms that the power in the generated spectral line is given by

$$\begin{aligned} P^{\alpha} \triangleq \frac{1}{2}|\hat{M}_y^{\alpha}|^2 &= \frac{1}{2}\left|\int_{-\infty}^{\infty}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} k(u, v)\hat{R}_x^{\alpha}(u - v)e^{-i\pi\alpha(u+v)}\,du\,dv\right|^2 \\ &= \frac{1}{2}\left|\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} K\left(f + \frac{\alpha}{2}, f - \frac{\alpha}{2}\right)\hat{S}_x^{\alpha}(f)\,df\right|^2, \qquad \alpha \neq 0, \end{aligned} \tag{42}$$

for which $K(\cdot, \cdot)$ is the double Fourier transform of the kernel $k(\cdot, \cdot)$ that defines the QTI transformation,

$$K(f, \nu) \triangleq \int_{-\infty}^{\infty}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} k(u, v)e^{-i2\pi(fu - \nu v)}\,du\,dv. \tag{43}$$

The power P^{α} will possess no upper bound and, therefore, no maximum unless there is some constraint on the QTI transformation. A constraint that arises naturally in the context of optimum detection of second-order periodicity masked by additive noise (as explained in Chapter 14) is one that constrains the spectral density level, at frequency $f = \alpha$, of QTI-transformed white Gaussian noise. This constraint is expressed as (exercise 5)

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty}\left|K\left(f + \frac{\alpha}{2}, f - \frac{\alpha}{2}\right)\right|^2 df \leq c', \qquad \alpha \neq 0 \tag{44}$$

for some constant c'. Maximization of (42) subject to (44) yields (exercise 5)

$$K\left(f + \frac{\alpha}{2}, f - \frac{\alpha}{2}\right) = c\,\hat{S}_x^{\alpha}(f)^* \tag{45}$$

and

$$P^{\alpha} = \tfrac{1}{2}\left[c\int_{-\infty}^{\infty}|\hat{S}_x^{\alpha}(f)|^2\,df\right]^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}\left[c\int_{-\infty}^{\infty}|\hat{R}_x^{\alpha}(\tau)|^2\,d\tau\right]^2. \tag{46}$$

Since (45) does not involve the values of $K(f, \nu)$ for $f - \nu \neq \alpha$, then this optimum in nonunique. This is a result of the fact that the design criteria (42) and (44) are independent of the spectral content of the output of the QTI transformation at all frequencies other than $f = \alpha$. This nonunique optimum QTI transformation can be implemented with the dual-filter configuration shown in Figure 10-2, for

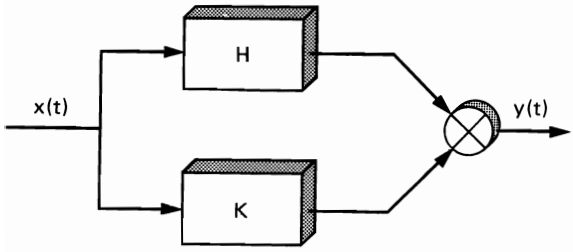


Figure 10-2 An implementation of the optimum QTI transformation for spectral line generation.

which the transfer functions must satisfy the equation

$$H\left(\frac{\alpha}{2}+f\right)K\left(\frac{\alpha}{2}-f\right) = c\hat{S}_x^{\alpha}(f)^*. \tag{47}$$

Furthermore, (35), (36), and (46) reveal that the maximized power is greatest among all time-series with a given spectrum when the time-series is completely coherent at α over the entire spectral band for which $\hat{S}_x^{\alpha}(f)$ need not be zero due to $\hat{S}_x(f \pm \alpha/2)$ being zero. If the filters are normalized so that the maximum product of gains at all frequencies is unity,

$$\max_f \left| H\left(\frac{\alpha}{2}+f\right)K\left(\frac{\alpha}{2}-f\right)\right| = 1,$$

then $|c|$ in (45)–(47) is given by

$$|c| = \frac{1}{\max_f |\hat{S}_x^{\alpha}(f)|}. \tag{48}$$

C. RELATIONSHIPS TO WOODWARD RADAR AMBIGUITY AND WIGNER-VILLE DISTRIBUTION

This section explains that although the fundamental statistical parameters, the limit cyclic autocorrelation and the limit cyclic spectrum, bear some resemblance to the well-known Woodward radar ambiguity function and the Wigner-Ville time-frequency energy density, the relationship is limited. Because these more well-known parameters do not involve a limiting time-average, they cannot be fundamental parameters in a statistical theory of random data from periodic phenomena, analogous to the limit autocorrelation and spectral density.

The time-variant spectral density (periodogram) studied in Part I, $S_{x_T}(t, f)$, naturally exhibits limited resolution in both time and frequency ($\Delta t^\circ = T$ and $\Delta f^\circ \cong 1/T$), as dictated by Gabor's time-frequency uncertainty principle (Part I, Chapter 2, Section C). However, another somewhat artificial measure of temporal and spectral density that has unlimited resolution in both time and frequency can be defined for finite-energy functions. Several alternative arguments can be contrived to derive this *temporal and spectral energy density* as the product of the temporal function $x(t)$ and the complex conjugate of its sine wave component, $[X(f)e^{i2\pi ft}]^*$ (see Part I, Chapter 1, Section B), which yields the formula [Rihaczek 1968]

$$E_x'(t, f) \triangleq x(t)X^*(f)e^{-i2\pi ft}. \tag{49}$$

If this definition of energy density is applied to the finite temporal segment of a time-series $x(t)$ on the interval $[t - T/2, t + T/2]$, then $X(f)$ in (49) becomes the finite-time complex spectrum $X_T(t, f)$, which is defined by (32) and has spectral resolution width on the order of $1/T$, and the time-averaged energy density for this temporal segment is

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{1}{T}\int_{t-T/2}^{t+T/2} E_x'(u, f)\, du &= \frac{1}{T}\int_{t-T/2}^{t+T/2} x(u)e^{-i2\pi fu}\, du\, X_T^*(t, f) \\ &= \frac{1}{T}X_T(t, f)X_T^*(t, f) \triangleq S_{x_T}(t, f).\end{aligned} \tag{50}$$

This time average has temporal resolution width of T. Hence, the temporal and spectral resolution widths are increased from their mathematically defined infinitesimal values to T and $1/T$, respectively, and we see that the definition of $E_x'(t, f)$ is at least consistent with $S_{x_T}(t, f)$. Furthermore, there is a limited relationship between the time-frequency energy density and the fundamental statistical parameters of cyclic spectral analysis theory, as explained next. The double Fourier transform of the time-frequency energy density is

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} E_x'(t, f)e^{-i2\pi(\nu t-\tau f)}\,dt\,df = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t)x(t-\tau)e^{-i2\pi\nu t}\,dt \triangleq \rho_x'(\tau, \nu), \tag{51}$$

and the function $\rho_x'(\tau, \nu)$ is the well-known *asymmetric time-frequency* (delay-Doppler) *ambiguity function* (with ν replaced by $-\nu$) from radar theory [Rihaczek 1969, Chapter 3], which is the *finite-crosscorrelation* of $x(t)$ and its time-frequency shifted version, $x(t-\tau)e^{i2\pi\nu t}$. The alternative *symmetric time-frequency ambiguity function* [Rihaczek 1969, Chapter 5] is defined by (with ν replaced by $-\nu$)

$$\rho_x(\tau, \nu) \triangleq \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x\left(t+\frac{\tau}{2}\right)x\left(t-\frac{\tau}{2}\right)e^{-i2\pi\nu t}\,dt. \tag{52}$$

The inverse double Fourier transform of this symmetric ambiguity function,

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \rho_x(\tau, \nu)e^{i2\pi(t\nu-f\tau)}\,d\nu\,d\tau = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x\left(t+\frac{\tau}{2}\right)x\left(t-\frac{\tau}{2}\right)e^{-i2\pi f\tau}\,d\tau \triangleq E_x(t, f), \tag{53}$$

is known as the *Wigner-Ville distribution* (or *energy density*) [Wigner 1932; Ville 1948] (see also [Claasen and Mecklenbräuker 1980]) and is a symmetric version of the time-frequency energy density (49). Analogous to (50), it can be shown (exercise 5) that the time-variant periodogram $S_{x_T}(t, f)$ is a smoothed version of the energy density $E_x(t, f)$,

$$S_{x_T}(t, f) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} E_x(\tau, \nu)w(\tau-t, \nu-f)\,d\tau\,d\nu, \tag{54}$$

for which the smoothing window is the Wigner-Ville energy density,

$$w(t, f) \triangleq \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} Tu_T\left(t+\frac{\tau}{2}\right)Tu_T\left(t-\frac{\tau}{2}\right)e^{-i2\pi f\tau}\,d\tau, \tag{55}$$

of the unity-height rectangle pulse $Tu_T(t)$. (Recall from Part I, Chapter 8, that the Wigner-Ville distribution arises naturally in the study of the probabilistic instantaneous spectrum for certain time-variant phenomena.) An analog of the inverse of the double-Fourier transform relation (53) between the ambiguity function ρ_x and the energy-density function E_x is the Fourier-series-Fourier-transform relation

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty}\frac{1}{T_0}\int_{-T_0/2}^{T_0/2} \hat{S}_x(t, f)e^{-i2\pi(\nu t-\tau f)}\,dt\,df = \hat{R}_x^{\nu}(\tau), \tag{56}$$

for $\nu = n/T_0$, between the limit cyclic autocorrelation

$$\hat{R}_x^{\nu}(\tau) \triangleq \lim_{T\to\infty}\frac{1}{T}\int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x\left(t+\frac{\tau}{2}\right)x\left(t-\frac{\tau}{2}\right)e^{-i2\pi\nu t}\,dt \tag{57}$$

and the *limit periodic spectrum*, which is defined to be the Fourier transform

$$\hat{S}_x(t, \cdot) \triangleq F\{\hat{R}_x(t, \cdot)\} \tag{58}$$

of the limit periodic autocorrelation

$$\hat{R}_x(t, \tau) \triangleq \lim_{N\to\infty} \frac{1}{2N+1} \sum_{n=-N}^{N} x\left(t + nT_0 + \frac{\tau}{2}\right) x\left(t + nT_0 - \frac{\tau}{2}\right). \tag{59}$$

Comparison of (52) and (57) reveals that the symmetric ambiguity function, $\rho_x(\tau, \nu)$, is the counterpart for finite-energy functions $x(t)$ of the limit cyclic autocorrelation $\hat{R}_x^{\nu}(\tau)$, which is for finite-power functions. Similarly, comparison of (56) and the inverse double Fourier transform of (53) reveals that the limit periodic spectrum $\hat{S}_x(t, f)$ is the counterpart for finite-power functions $x(t)$ of the Wigner-Ville distribution $E_x(t, f)$, which is for finite-energy functions. These relationships are pursued further in Chapter 13.

In spite of these relationships, the ambiguity functions ρ_x and ρ_x' and energy densities E_x and E_x', unlike the limit cyclic autocorrelation $\hat{R}_x^{\nu}(\tau)$ and limit periodic spectrum $\hat{S}_x(t, f)$, do not incorporate limiting averages that remove random effects (as discussed in Part I). Consequently, they cannot be fundamental parameters of a statistical theory. Furthermore, since the finite-power version (57) of the ambiguity function (52) vanishes for all $\nu \neq 0$, except when $x(t)$ contains second-order periodicity, the extension from $\rho_x(\tau, \nu)$ to $\hat{R}_x^{\nu}(\tau)$ is inappropriate except for the study of second-order periodicity.[7]

Moreover, attempts to relate long-established concepts and results from ambiguity theory to the emerging theory of second-order periodicity is somewhat complicated by the following breakdown in the analogy. Since radar signals are typically band-pass signals, they are represented by their complex envelopes, and the ambiguity function is redefined for complex envelopes (with ν replaced by $-\nu$) as follows:[8]

$$\rho_\gamma(\tau, \nu) \triangleq \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \gamma\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right) \gamma^*\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right) e^{-i2\pi\nu t}\, dt, \tag{60}$$

for which $\gamma(t)$ is the complex envelope of $x(t)$,

$$\gamma(t) \triangleq [x(t) + i\bar{x}(t)] e^{-i2\pi f_0 t}, \tag{61}$$

where $\bar{x}(t)$ is the Hilbert transform of $x(t)$,

$$x(t) = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{x(u)}{t - u}\, du, \tag{62}$$

and f_0 is typically taken to be the center of the spectral band of the band-pass signal $x(t)$ (see Appendix 3-1). ρ_γ is known as the *Woodward radar ambiguity*

[7] A probabilistic approach [Martin 1982; Martin and Flandrin 1985] to extending the definition of $E_x(t, f)$ to finite-power functions leads to the *probabilistic instantaneous spectrum*, which has limited physical significance except for periodic (or almost periodic) phenomena, as explained in Part I, Chapter 8. In fact, the probabilistic instantaneous spectrum for cyclostationary (or almost cyclostationary) processes [Gardner 1985] is precisely the probabilistic counterpart of the limit periodic (or almost periodic) spectrum (see Chapter 15).

[8] In fact, ρ_x does not appropriately measure Doppler ambiguity—only ρ_γ does (see Appendix 7-3) [Rihaczek 1969].

function [Woodward 1953]. The limit cyclic autocorrelation that is the analog of this ambiguity function is (with $\nu = \alpha$)

$$\hat{R}_{\gamma}^{\alpha}(\tau) \triangleq \lim_{T\to\infty} \frac{1}{T}\int_{-T/2}^{T/2} \gamma\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right)\gamma^*\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right)e^{-i2\pi\alpha t}\,dt. \tag{63}$$

It can be shown (see Chapter 11, Part 2 of Section D) that the corresponding limit cyclic spectrum of the complex envelope $\gamma(t)$ is given by

$$\hat{S}_{\gamma}^{\alpha}(f) = \begin{cases} 0, & f < \dfrac{|\alpha|}{2} - f_0 \\ 4\hat{S}_x^{\alpha}(f + f_0), & f \geqslant \dfrac{|\alpha|}{2} - f_0, \end{cases} \tag{64}$$

which reveals that for some signals of interest this limit cyclic spectrum vanishes, regardless of the second-order periodicity contained in $x(t)$. For example, for the amplitude-modulated sine wave

$$x(t) = a(t)\cos(2\pi f_0 t + \theta),$$

for which $a(t)$ is bandlimited to $|f| < f_0$,

$$\hat{S}_a(f) = 0, \qquad |f| \geqslant f_0,$$

the limit cyclic spectrum for $\gamma(t)$ vanishes for all f and $\alpha \neq 0$,

$$\hat{S}_{\gamma}^{\alpha}(f) \equiv 0, \tag{65}$$

whereas the limit cyclic spectrum for $x(t)$ is given by

$$\hat{S}_x^{\alpha}(f) = \tfrac{1}{4}\,\hat{S}_a(f)e^{\pm i2\theta} \tag{66}$$

for $\alpha = \pm 2f_0$. (In fact, $x(t)$ is completely coherent over its entire spectral band as shown in Chapter 12, Section A.) The reason for (65) is quite obvious, since all the correlation between pairs of frequency components in $x(t)$ occurs for the pairs of frequencies $f + f_0$ and $f - f_0$, at least one of which must be negative since $|f \pm f_0| < 2f_0$; but $\gamma(t)$ is obtained from $x(t)$ by canceling all negative-frequency components (and then shifting the remaining components down by the amount f_0).

Nevertheless, since $x(t)$ can be recovered from $\gamma(t)$, then the limit cyclic spectrum for $x(t)$ can indeed be obtained from $\gamma(t)$. But, in addition to the limit cyclic spectrum of $\gamma(t)$, the *limit cyclic cross-spectrum* of $\gamma(t)$ and $\gamma^*(t)$ is needed,

$$\hat{S}_{\gamma\gamma^*}^{\alpha}(\cdot) \triangleq F\{\hat{R}_{\gamma\gamma^*}^{\alpha}(\cdot)\}, \tag{67}$$

where

$$\hat{R}_{\gamma\gamma^*}^{\alpha}(\tau) \triangleq \lim_{T\to\infty} \frac{1}{T}\int_{-T/2}^{T/2} \gamma\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right)\gamma\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right)e^{-i2\pi\alpha t}\,dt. \tag{68}$$

It can be shown (see Chapter 11, Section D) that

$$\hat{S}_{\gamma\gamma^*}^{\alpha}(f) = \begin{cases} 4\hat{S}_x^{\alpha+2f_0}(f), & \alpha \geqslant -2f_0 \quad \text{and} \quad |f| \leqslant \dfrac{\alpha}{2} + f_0 \\ 0, & \alpha < -2f_0 \quad \text{or} \quad |f| > \dfrac{\alpha}{2} + f_0. \end{cases} \tag{69}$$

It follows from (64) and (69) that

$$\hat{S}_x^\alpha(f) = \tfrac{1}{4}[\hat{S}_\gamma^\alpha(f - f_0) + \hat{S}_{\gamma\gamma*}^{\alpha-2f_0}(f) + \hat{S}_{\gamma*}^\alpha(f + f_0) + \hat{S}_{\gamma*\gamma}^{\alpha+2f_0}(f)] \tag{70}$$

and the four terms in this representation have disjoint support (except for the boundaries of the four regions), as depicted in Figure 10-3.

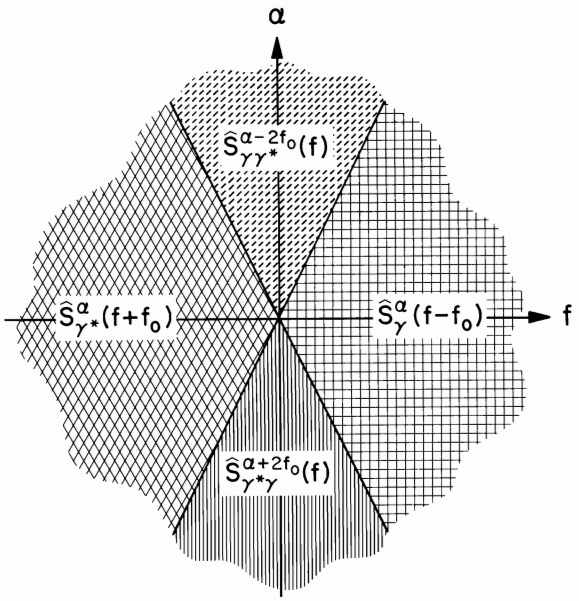


Figure 10-3 Regions of support of the spectral correlation functions in the bifrequency plane for the complex envelope of a time-series.

In conclusion, second-order periodicity in a signal $x(t)$ cannot in general be characterized in terms of the ambiguity function (or the Wigner-Ville distribution) or its limiting form, the limit cyclic autocorrelation (or limit cyclic spectrum) of the complex envelope $\gamma(t)$ of the signal—the cross-ambiguity between $\gamma(t)$ and $\gamma^*(t)$ or its limiting form are needed also.

Before leaving this discussion, it is noted that there is a revealing relationship between the limit periodic spectrum (58) and the limit cyclic spectrum. Specifically, substitution of (24) into (58) and direct use of (28) yields

$$\hat{S}_x(t, f) = \sum_{m=-\infty}^{\infty} \hat{S}_x^{m/T_0}(f) e^{i2\pi mt/T_0}. \tag{71}$$

D. SINE WAVES AND PRINCIPAL COMPONENTS

1. Linear Periodically Time-Variant Transformations

In view of the fundamental role that sine waves and Fourier series play in the analysis of periodic functions, it is not surprising that the derivation in Section B of fundamental statistical parameters of second-order periodicity in random data involves sine waves and Fourier series. However, sine waves cannot be directly interpreted as *principal components* in the study of periodic phenomena,

since it is established in Part I, Chapter 1, Section B that sine waves are principal components only for time-invariant phenomena. Nevertheless, the repetition inherent in periodicity is a type of time-invariance and is responsible for the fact that sine waves can be *indirectly* interpreted as principal components in the study of periodic phenomena, as explained in the following.

An important source of second-order periodicity in random data is the *linear periodically time-variant* (LPTV) transformation. Specifically, let $x(t)$ be a *purely stationary* time-series, in the sense that its limit autocorrelation $\hat{R}_x(\tau)$ is not identically zero and its limit cyclic autocorrelation $\hat{R}_x^\alpha(\tau)$ is identically zero for all $\alpha \neq 0$ (so that $x(t)$ contains no second-order periodicity). Let $y(t)$ be derived from $x(t)$ by an LPTV transformation with period T_0:

$$y(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} h(t, u)x(u)\, du, \tag{72}$$

where

$$h(t + T_0, u + T_0) = h(t, u). \tag{73}$$

It can be shown (Chapter 11, Section D) that $y(t)$ contains second-order periodicity with frequencies $\alpha = n/T_0$ for some integers n.

Now, to show that sine waves can be indirectly interpreted as principal components of an LPTV transformation, we consider a Fourier series representation of the impulse-response function $h(t, u)$. Let $g(t, v)$ be defined by

$$g(t, v) \triangleq h(t, t - v), \tag{74a}$$

from which it follows that

$$h(t, u) = g(t, t - u). \tag{74b}$$

It follows from (73) and (74a) that $g(t, v)$ is periodic in its first argument,

$$g(t + T_0, v) = g(t, v) \tag{75}$$

for all v, and can therefore be represented by the Fourier series

$$g(t, v) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} h_n(v)e^{i2\pi nt/T_0}, \tag{76a}$$

for which the Fourier coefficient functions are given by

$$h_n(v) \triangleq \frac{1}{T_0}\int_{-T_0/2}^{T_0/2} g(t, v)e^{-i2\pi nt/T_0}\, dt. \tag{76b}$$

Similarly, the system function defined by the Fourier transformation (see Chapter 8, Section A, Part 2)

$$G(t, \cdot) \triangleq F\{g(t, \cdot)\} \tag{77}$$

has the Fourier series representation

$$G(t, f) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} H_n(f)e^{i2\pi nt/T_0}, \tag{78a}$$

for which the Fourier coefficient functions are given by

$$H_n(f) \triangleq \frac{1}{T_0}\int_{-T_0/2}^{T_0/2} G(t, f)e^{-i2\pi nt/T_0}\, dt \tag{78b}$$

and are equal to the Fourier transforms of $\{h_n(\cdot)\}$. Substitution of (76a) into (74b) and the result into (72) yields

$$y(t) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} y_n(t)e^{i2\pi nt/T_0}, \tag{79a}$$

where

$$y_n(t) \triangleq \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} h_n(t - u)x(u)\, du. \tag{79b}$$

Consequently, for each integer n, $x(t)$ is transformed by the LTI transformation (79b) with impulse-response function $h_n(t)$, and the result $y_n(t)$ is frequency-shifted by the amount n/T_0; these component responses indexed by n are then summed to obtain the response $y(t)$ as in (79a). Thus, the LPTV transformation is characterized by LTI transformations and frequency shifts. Hence, sine wave analysis of $x(t)$ and $y_n(t)$ (and, as we are about to see, $y(t)$) is equivalent to principal-component analysis (as explained in Part I, Chapter 1, Section B): The sine wave components[9] of $y_n(t)$ are obtained from those of $x(t)$ by simply scaling,

$$Y_n(f) = H_n(f)X(f), \tag{80}$$

and the sine wave components of $y(t)$ are then obtained by simply shifting and adding,

$$Y(f) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} Y_n\left(f - \frac{n}{T_0}\right). \tag{81}$$

2. Cyclostationary Stochastic Processes

As explained in Part I, Chapter 1, Section B, the important property of principal components, of being mutually uncorrelated over time, generalizes for stochastic processes to the property of being mutually uncorrelated over an ensemble of time-series from a given phenomenon if and only if the probabilistic (ensemble-average) autocorrelation is time-invariant, in which case the stochastic process is stationary (in the wide sense). However, a probabilistic phenomenon with second-order periodicity is appropriately modeled as a *cyclostationary* stochastic process, and the probabilistic autocorrelation must be periodically time-variant. That is, the probabilistic instantaneous autocorrelation function obtained from the ensemble average (Part I, Chapter 8),

$$\mathcal{R}_x(t, \tau) \triangleq E\left\{x\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right)x\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right)\right\}, \tag{82}$$

must be periodic in the location variable t,

$$\mathcal{R}_x(t + T_0, \tau) = \mathcal{R}_x(t, \tau). \tag{83}$$

Thus, $\mathcal{R}_x(t, \tau)$ can be represented by the Fourier series

$$\mathcal{R}_x(t, \tau) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \mathcal{R}_x^{n/T_0}(\tau)e^{i2\pi nt/T_0}, \tag{84a}$$

[9] If $x(t)$ is absolutely integrable, then $X(f)$ is the usual Fourier transform; but if $x(t)$ is a stationary time-series (which does not die out as $|t| \to \infty$), then (80) must be reexpressed in terms of the *generalized Fourier transform* [Wiener 1930] (see [Gardner 1985]).

for which the Fourier coefficient functions are given by

$$\mathscr{R}_x^{n/T_0}(\tau) \triangleq \frac{1}{T_0}\int_{-T_0/2}^{T_0/2} \mathscr{R}_x(t, \tau)e^{-i2\pi nt/T_0}\, dt. \tag{84b}$$

Substitution of (84a) into the zero-correlation condition for sine wave components $x_f(t)$ and $x_\nu(t)$ (see Part I, Chapter 1, Section B, equation (25)),

$$|E\{x_f(t)x_\nu^*(t)\}| = \left|\int_{-\infty}^{\infty}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \mathscr{R}_x\left(\frac{u+v}{2}, u-v\right) e^{-i2\pi(fu-\nu v)}\, du\, dv\right| = 0, \tag{85}$$

yields the equivalent condition

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \mathscr{R}_x^{n/T_0}(u-v)\exp\{-i2\pi[(f+n/2T_0)u-(\nu-n/2T_0)v]\}\, du\, dv = 0 \tag{86}$$

for all integers n. It can be shown (exercise 6) that (86) is satisfied if and only if

$$f-\nu \neq \frac{n}{T_0} \tag{87}$$

for all integers n for which $\mathscr{R}_x^{n/T_0}(\tau) \not\equiv 0$. Thus, we see that sine wave components of a cyclostationary stochastic process are, in general, uncorrelated over the ensemble if and only if the two frequencies of the sine waves differ by an amount other than some integer multiple of the fundamental frequency $1/T_0$ of periodicity. This is analogous to our finding in Part 3 of Section B that a time-series can contain second-order periodicity with frequency α if and only if some pairs of spectral components, whose frequencies differ by α, are correlated over time.

E. THE LINK BETWEEN DETERMINISTIC AND PROBABILISTIC THEORIES

Let us further pursue this link between a cyclostationary stochastic process and an individual time-series with second-order periodicity. An ensemble of time-series is said to have arisen from a *wide-sense cyclostationary process* if and only if the autocorrelation of the ensemble is periodic, (83), in which case it is invariant only to translations that are integer multiples of the period T_0. However, the ultimate in periodicity of a stochastic process is characterized by an ensemble that is itself invariant to such translations, which is an ensemble that satisfies the identity

$$x(t+nT_0, s) = x(t, s') \tag{88}$$

for all ensemble indices s and all integers n; that is, each translation by nT_0, for example, of each ensemble member, say $x(t, s)$, yields another ensemble member, $x(t, s')$, for instance. This periodicity property (88) is more than sufficient for wide-sense cyclostationarity. An ensemble that exhibits property (88) shall be said to have arisen from a *strict-sense cyclostationary process*. For many applications, a natural way that an ensemble with the periodicity property (88) would arise as a mathematical model is if the ensemble that is actually generated by the physical phenomenon is artificially supplemented with all translated versions

(for which the translations are integer multiple of the period) of the members of the actual ensemble. In many situations, the most intuitively pleasing actual ensemble consists of one and only one time-series $x(t)$, which shall be called the *ensemble generator*. In this case, the supplemented ensemble is defined by

$$x(t, s) = x(t + sT_0) \tag{89}$$

for integer (only) values of s. This most intuitively pleasing ensemble with the periodicity property (88) shall be said to have arisen from a *cycloergodic cyclostationary process*. It is easy to see, at least heuristically, that the defining cycloergodic property (89) is the natural extension of Herman O. A. Wold's isomorphism (Part I, Chapter 1, Section B and Chapter 5, Section B) from stationary processes to cyclostationary processes. This isomorphism between a cyclostationary stochastic process and an individual time-series with second-order periodicity guarantees that synchronized time-averages, such as those discussed in Part 2 of Section B, will be identical to ensemble averages—for example,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{R}_x(t, \tau) &\triangleq E\left\{x\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right)x\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right)\right\} \\ &\equiv \lim_{N\to\infty} \frac{1}{2N + 1} \sum_{n=-N}^{N} x\left(t + nT_0 + \frac{\tau}{2}\right)x\left(t + nT_0 - \frac{\tau}{2}\right) \triangleq \hat{R}_x(t, \tau). \end{aligned} \tag{90}$$

Consequently, the deterministic theory developed in Part II can be given probabilistic interpretations by means analogous to those described in Part I, Chapter 5, Section B. This is further developed in terms of periodically time-variant fraction-of-time distributions in Chapter 15.

An important point to be made before leaving this topic of stochastic processes is that when a random-phase variable is introduced into a stochastic process model in order to render it stationary rather than cyclostationary, as is commonly done (see [Gardner 1978]), cycloergodicity is forfeited, and synchronized time averages therefore do not equal ensemble averages. Hence, such stationarized stochastic processes are inappropriate for studies of second-order periodicity (see [Gardner 1987a]). Moreover, any phase-randomization, regardless of the probability distribution of the random-phase variable (and therefore regardless of whether or not the process is stationarized), forfeits the property of cycloergodicity. This can be seen as follows. If the cycloergodic cyclostationary stochastic process $x(t)$ is phase-randomized to obtain

$$w(t) = x(t + \theta), \tag{91}$$

for which θ is a random-phase variable with characteristic function

$$\Psi_\theta(f) \triangleq E\{e^{i2\pi f\theta}\}, \tag{92}$$

then it can be shown (exercise 7) that the empirical limit cyclic autocorrelation (7) is given by

$$\hat{R}_w^\alpha(\tau) = \hat{R}_x^\alpha(\tau)e^{i2\pi\alpha\theta} \tag{93}$$

and the probabilistic cyclic autocorrelation (84b) is given by

$$\mathcal{R}_w^\alpha(\tau) = \hat{R}_x^\alpha(\tau)\Psi_\theta(\alpha), \tag{94}$$

for which

$$|\Psi_\theta(\alpha)| \leq 1. \tag{95}$$

Therefore, the empirical (time-average) and probabilistic (ensemble-average) parameters are, in general, unequal,[10]

$$\mathscr{R}_w^\alpha(\tau) \neq \hat{R}_w^\alpha(\tau), \tag{96}$$

and the latter is generally weaker,

$$|\mathscr{R}_w^\alpha(\tau)| \leq |\hat{R}_w^\alpha(\tau)|. \tag{97}$$

F. MULTIPLE PERIODICITIES

In the event that a phenomenon involves more than a single periodicity and some of these multiple periodicities are incommensurate in the sense that there is no fundamental period of which all periods are integral divisors, then the definitions of the limit periodic autocorrelation and limit periodic spectrum must be generalized. Specifically, we can associate more than one autocorrelation function with a given time-series that exhibits multiple periodicities. There is the conventional limit autocorrelation,

$$\hat{R}_x(\tau) \triangleq \lim_{T\to\infty} \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right) x\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right) dt, \tag{98}$$

and the limit periodic autocorrelations,

$$\hat{R}_x(t, \tau; T_0) \triangleq \lim_{N\to\infty} \frac{1}{2N+1} \sum_{n=-N}^{N} x\left(t + nT_0 + \frac{\tau}{2}\right) x\left(t + nT_0 - \frac{\tau}{2}\right), \tag{99}$$

for all incommensurate periods T_0 for which this limit average is not identical to (98). In order to obtain a unique autocorrelation function that contains all autocorrelation information contained in the time-series, we combine (98) and (99) to obtain a composite autocorrelation function

$$\hat{R}_x(t, \tau) \triangleq \hat{R}_x^0(\tau) + \sum_{T_0} [\hat{R}_x(t, \tau; T_0) - \hat{R}_x^0(\tau)], \tag{100}$$

where the sum is over all incommensurate periods T_0 for which $\hat{R}_x(t, \tau; T_0) \not\equiv \hat{R}_x^0(\tau)$. Notice that since each $\hat{R}_x(t, \tau; T_0)$ contains $\hat{R}_x^0(\tau)$ as its time-averaged value,

$$\hat{R}_x^0(\tau) = \frac{1}{T_0} \int_{-T_0/2}^{T_0/2} \hat{R}_x(t, \tau; T_0)\, dt, \tag{101}$$

then this function must be subtracted out of each term in the sum in (100). It is explained in Chapter 15 that (98) and (99) can be interpreted as autocorrelations based on marginal fraction-of-time distributions, whereas (100) can be interpreted as an autocorrelation based on a joint fraction-of-time distribution. Substitution

[10] The only exception to this is the distribution that has all its mass at integer multiples of the period T_0. In this case $e^{i2\pi\alpha\theta} = \Psi_\theta(\alpha) = 1$ for $\alpha = 1/T_0$ in (93) and (94).

of the Fourier series (see (24))

$$\hat{R}_x(t, \tau; T_0) = \sum_{m=-\infty}^{\infty} \hat{R}_x^{m/T_0}(\tau) e^{i2\pi mt/T_0} \tag{102}$$

into (100) yields the generalized Fourier series

$$\hat{R}_x(t, \tau) = \sum_{\alpha} \hat{R}_x^{\alpha}(\tau) e^{i2\pi\alpha t}, \tag{103}$$

where the sum is over all $\alpha = m/T_0$ for all integers m and all T_0 that occur in the sum in (100); or, more simply, the sum in (103) is over all α for which $\hat{R}_x^{\alpha}(\tau) \not\equiv 0$. The limit cyclic autocorrelations in (103) can be recovered from $\hat{R}_x(t, \tau)$ by the limit average (exercise 8)

$$\hat{R}_x^{\alpha}(\tau) = \lim_{T\to\infty} \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} \hat{R}_x(t, \tau) e^{-i2\pi\alpha t}\, dt, \tag{104}$$

which is a generalization of

$$\hat{R}_x^{m/T_0}(\tau) = \frac{1}{T_0} \int_{-T_0/2}^{T_0/2} \hat{R}_x(t, \tau; T_0) e^{-i2\pi mt/T_0}\, dt. \tag{105}$$

Since $\hat{R}_x(t, \tau)$ is an *almost periodic function* (in the mathematical sense [Corduneanu 1961]), it is called the *limit almost periodic autocorrelation*. Its Fourier transform,

$$\hat{S}_x(t, \cdot) \triangleq F\{\hat{R}_x(t, \cdot)\}, \tag{106}$$

is called the *limit almost periodic spectrum*, and it follows from (103) that

$$\hat{S}_x(t, f) = \sum_{\alpha} \hat{S}_x^{\alpha}(f) e^{i2\pi\alpha t}, \tag{107}$$

where, as before,

$$\hat{S}_x^{\alpha}(\cdot) = F\{\hat{R}_x^{\alpha}(\cdot)\}. \tag{108}$$

Since the definitions and relations introduced in this section apply regardless of whether there is a single periodicity (one value of T_0) or multiple periodicities, then this distinction will not be made in the following chapters unless it is particularly relevant. Consequently, any sum over the cycle frequency parameter α should be taken to include all nonzero terms that exist, unless otherwise specified.

Example: ***Superposed AM Signals***

A time-series that illustrates the statistical parameters introduced in this and previous sections is the sum of two amplitude-modulated sine waves with incommensurate periods,

$$x(t) = a(t)\cos\left(\frac{2\pi t}{T_1} + \phi_1\right) + b(t)\cos\left(\frac{2\pi t}{T_2} + \phi_2\right), \tag{109}$$

where $a(t)$ and $b(t)$ are uncorrelated and exhibit no periodicity, that is,

$$\hat{R}_{ab}^{\alpha}(\tau) \triangleq \lim_{T\to\infty} \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} a\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right) b\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right) e^{-i2\pi\alpha t}\, dt \equiv 0 \tag{110a}$$

for all α, and

$$\hat{R}_a^{\alpha}(\tau) \equiv \hat{R}_b^{\alpha}(\tau) \equiv 0 \tag{110b}$$

for all $\alpha \neq 0$. It can be shown with only a little calculation (exercise 9) that

$$\hat{R}_x(\tau) = \tfrac{1}{2}\hat{R}_a(\tau)\cos\left(\frac{2\pi\tau}{T_1}\right) + \tfrac{1}{2}\hat{R}_b(\tau)\cos\left(\frac{2\pi\tau}{T_2}\right) \tag{111a}$$

$$\hat{R}_x(t, \tau; T_1) = \hat{R}_x(\tau) + \tfrac{1}{2}\hat{R}_a(\tau)\cos\left(\frac{4\pi t}{T_1} + 2\phi_1\right) \tag{111b}$$

$$\hat{R}_x(t, \tau; T_2) = \hat{R}_x(\tau) + \tfrac{1}{2}\hat{R}_b(\tau)\cos\left(\frac{4\pi t}{T_2} + 2\phi_2\right) \tag{111c}$$

$$\hat{R}_x(t, \tau; T_0) = \hat{R}_x(\tau), \qquad T_0 \neq T_1, T_2 \tag{111d}$$

$$\hat{R}_x^{\alpha}(\tau) = \begin{cases} \tfrac{1}{4}\hat{R}_a(\tau)e^{\pm i2\phi_1}, & \alpha = \pm 2/T_1 \\ \tfrac{1}{4}\hat{R}_b(\tau)e^{\pm i2\phi_2}, & \alpha = \pm 2/T_2 \end{cases} \tag{111e}$$

$$\hat{R}_x^{\alpha}(\tau) \equiv 0, \qquad \alpha \neq 0, \pm 2/T_1, \pm 2/T_2. \tag{111f}$$

It is easily verified using (111) that (100)–(105) are indeed satisfied for this example.

The link between probabilistic and deterministic theories that is explained in Section E by extending Wold's isomorphism for periodic phenomena can be generalized for almost periodic phenomena that exhibit multiple periodicities by generalizing Wold's isomorphism. This is explained in Chapter 15.

G. SUMMARY

In this chapter, the concept of second-order periodicity is introduced. By definition, a phenomenon or the time-series it produces is said to exhibit second-order periodicity if and only if there exists a stable quadratic time-invariant transformation of the time-series that gives rise to finite additive periodic components, or spectral lines. It is shown that second-order periodicity is characterized by spectral correlation in the time-series and that the degree of spectral coherence of such a time-series is properly characterized by a spectral correlation coefficient, the spectral autocoherence function. A fundamental relationship between superposed epoch analysis, or synchronized averaging, of lag products of a time-series and spectral correlation, which is based on the cyclic autocorrelation and its Fourier transform, the cyclic spectrum, is revealed by a synchronized averaging identity. It is shown that the cyclic spectrum is a spectral correlation function. Relationships to the Woodward radar ambiguity function and the Wigner-Ville time-frequency energy density are also explained. It is shown that the role of sine waves as principal components for constant phenomena, which is explained in Part I, Chapter 1, can be extended (indirectly) for periodic phenomena. The link between the deterministic theory, developed in this Part II, and the probabilistic theory of cyclostationary stochastic processes is briefly explained in terms of an extension of Wold's isomorphism. Finally, the limit periodic autocorrelation and limit periodic spectrum are generalized to accommodate time-series with multiple periodicities, and an illustrative example is described.

EXERCISES

1. **(a)** Consider the time-series

$$x(t) = a\cos(2\pi\alpha t + \theta) + n(t),$$

where

$$\hat{M}_x^\alpha \triangleq \lim_{T\to\infty} \frac{1}{T}\int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x(t)e^{-i2\pi\alpha t}\,dt = \left(\frac{a}{2}\right)e^{i\theta}.$$

Show that

$$\lim_{T\to\infty} \frac{1}{T}\int_{-T/2}^{T/2} n(t)\cos(2\pi\alpha t + \theta)\,dt = 0$$

and use this to show that

$$\hat{R}_x(\tau) = \frac{a^2}{2}\cos(2\pi\alpha\tau) + \hat{R}_n(\tau).$$

It is shown in Chapter 15, exercise 6, that as long as the parameter $\hat{M}_x^\alpha$ exists as a temporal mean-square limit, then $\hat{R}_n(\tau)$ cannot contain a finite additive sine wave component with frequency α,

$$\lim_{Z\to\infty} \frac{1}{Z}\int_{-Z/2}^{Z/2} \hat{R}_n(\tau)e^{-i2\pi\alpha\tau}\,d\tau = 0.$$

Thus, the Fourier transform of $\hat{R}_n(\tau)$ cannot exhibit a spectral line at $f = \alpha$. Use this fact to show that the spectral line at α (and at $-\alpha$) in $\hat{S}_x(f)$ is given by (3).

(b) Use (5b) and (2) (with $x(t)$ replaced by $y(t)$) to show that $\hat{M}_y^\alpha \neq 0$ for some $\mathscr{k}(\cdot, \cdot)$ if and only if $\hat{R}_x^\alpha(\tau) \not\equiv 0$.

(c) To gain some insight into the type of time-series that can exhibit discontinuities in the limit cyclic autocorrelation, consider the infinitely long chirp signal

$$x(t) = \sin(\beta t^2).$$

Verify the identity

$$x\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right)x\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right) = \tfrac{1}{2}\cos(2\beta\tau t) - \tfrac{1}{2}\cos\left(2\beta t^2 + \frac{\beta\tau^2}{2}\right).$$

Then show that

$$\hat{R}_x^\alpha(\tau) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{2}, & \alpha = 0, \tau = 0 \\ \frac{1}{4}, & \alpha = \pm 2\beta\tau/\pi, \tau \neq 0 \\ 0, & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

Thus, for each value of α, $\hat{R}_x^\alpha(\tau)$ is simply a null function, being zero everywhere except at the single point $\tau = \pm\pi\alpha/2\beta$. *Hint*: Use the fact that

$$\langle\cos(\gamma t^2 + \theta)e^{-i2\pi\alpha t}\rangle = 0, \qquad \gamma \neq 0$$

for all α.

2. Derive the comb-filter transfer function (13) by applying the convolution theorem to (12).

3. Verify the invariance property (41) for (39). *Hint*: Show that

$$\hat{S}_y^\alpha(f) = H\left(f + \frac{\alpha}{2}\right)H^*\left(f - \frac{\alpha}{2}\right)\hat{S}_x^\alpha(f)$$

by first showing that

$$\hat{R}_y^\alpha(\tau) = \hat{R}_x^\alpha(\tau) \otimes r_h^\alpha(\tau),$$

where

$$r_h^\alpha(\tau) \triangleq \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} h\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right) h\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right) e^{-i2\pi\alpha t}\, dt,$$

and then applying the convolution theorem.

4. **(a)** Assume that

$$\langle x(t) e^{-i2\pi\alpha t} \rangle = 0$$

for all α, and show that $\hat{R}_x^\alpha(\tau)/\hat{R}_x(0)$ is a temporal correlation coefficient (ratio of temporal covariance to geometric mean of temporal variances). *Hint:* Consider the two time-series defined by (26).

(b) Using the same assumption as in (a), show that $\hat{C}_x^\alpha(f)$ defined by (35) is a correlation coefficient. *Hint:* Use (34) and consult the end of Section A of Chapter 7 in Part I.

5. **(a)** Use (2) and (5) to derive formula (42) for the spectral-line power at the output of a QTI transformation.

(b) Show that the PSD of QTI-transformed white Gaussian noise is given by

$$\hat{S}_y(\alpha) = 2N_0^2 \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \left| K\left(f + \frac{\alpha}{2}, f - \frac{\alpha}{2}\right) \right|^2 df, \qquad \alpha \neq 0.$$

Hint: Use (46), (47), and (60) in Chapter 5, Part I, with $f = 0$, and show that

$$M(\nu, \mu) = K_0\left(\mu + \frac{\nu}{2}, \mu - \frac{\nu}{2}\right).$$

Also, assume (without loss of generality) that $k(u, v) = k(v, u)$, so that

$$M(\nu, -\mu) = M(\nu, \mu).$$

(c) Use the Cauchy-Schwarz inequality,

$$\left| \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} A(f) B^*(f)\, df \right|^2 \leq \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |A(f)|^2\, df \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |B(f)|^2\, df,$$

for which equality holds if and only if $A(f) = c_0 B(f)$ for any constant c_0, to show that (45) maximizes the spectral-line power (42) subject to the constraint (44). Then verify that the maximum power is given by (46).

6. Show that the zero-correlation condition (86) is satisfied if and only if (87) holds. *Hint:* Consult exercise 6 in Chapter 1, Part I.

7. Derive (93) from (91) by introducing a change of variables of integration in (25), with $x(t)$ replaced by $w(t)$.

8. Verify (104) by substitution of (103).

9. **(a)** Derive (111a)–(111f) from (109) and (110).

(b) Verify that (111) satisfies (100)–(105).

10. **(a)** Evaluate the optimum QTI kernel (45) and maximum spectral-line power (46) for the amplitude-modulated time-series

$$x(t) = a(t)\cos(2\pi f_0 t + \theta)$$

with $\alpha = 2f_0$. *Hint:* Use the results of the example in Section F.

(b) Show that this optimum QTI transformation can be implemented as the product of two filtered waveforms (see Figure 10-2)

$$y(t) = [h(t) \otimes x(t)][k(t) \otimes x(t)],$$

where

$$H\left(\frac{\alpha}{2}+f\right)K\left(\frac{\alpha}{2}-f\right) = \hat{S}_a(f).$$

Then show that

$$H(f) = K(f) = \left[\hat{S}_a\left(f-\frac{\alpha}{2}\right)\right]^{1/2}$$

is one solution, and that as long as

$$\hat{S}_a(f) = 0, \qquad |f| \geqslant f_0,$$

then another solution is

$$H(f) = K(f) = \left[\hat{S}_a\left(f+\frac{\alpha}{2}\right)\right]^{1/2} + \left[\hat{S}_a\left(f-\frac{\alpha}{2}\right)\right]^{1/2}.$$

In either case, we have

$$y(t) = [h(t) \otimes x(t)]^2.$$

11

CYCLIC SPECTRAL ANALYSIS

This chapter introduces the basic elements of cyclic spectral analysis, namely, the *time-variant cyclic periodogram* and the *time-variant cyclic correlogram,* and establishes the fact that these two functions are a Fourier transform pair. The temporal, spectral, and cycle resolution capability of temporally and spectrally smoothed cyclic periodograms, which are statistical cyclic spectra, are determined and the modified Grenander's uncertainty condition (studied in Part I), regarding the reliability of statistical cross spectra, is reviewed. The limit cyclic spectrum is derived as a limiting form of both the temporally smoothed and spectrally smoothed cyclic periodograms, and it is established that the limit cyclic spectrum and the limit cyclic autocorrelation are a Fourier transform pair. It is also established that the limit cyclic spectrum is a spectral density of temporal correlation, in the same sense that the limit spectrum is a spectral density of temporal mean square. Several fundamental properties of the limit cyclic spectrum, including the effects of periodic and random time-sampling, periodic and random product-modulation, and periodically time-variant and time-invariant linear filtering, are derived. Also, the spectral correlation properties of Rice's representation for band-pass time-series are derived.

A. CYCLIC PERIODOGRAM AND CYCLIC CORRELOGRAM

As explained in Part 3 of Section B, Chapter 10, a defining characteristic of second-order periodicity is the existence of nonzero temporal correlation between some spectral components of the time-series. Consequently, a natural approach

to measuring the parameters of second-order periodicity in a time-series $x(t)$ is to measure this *spectral correlation,* which is given by

$$S_{x_T}^{\alpha}(t,f)_{\Delta t} \triangleq \frac{1}{\Delta t}\int_{t-\Delta t/2}^{t+\Delta t/2}\frac{1}{T}X_T\left(w,f+\frac{\alpha}{2}\right)X_T^*\left(w,f-\frac{\alpha}{2}\right)dw, \tag{1}$$

where

$$X_T(t,f) \triangleq \int_{t-T/2}^{t+T/2} x(w)e^{-i2\pi fw}\,dw, \tag{2}$$

for all values of the *spectral location parameter*

$$f = \frac{1}{2}\left[\left(f+\frac{\alpha}{2}\right)+\left(f-\frac{\alpha}{2}\right)\right] \tag{3}$$

and the *spectral separation parameter*

$$\alpha = \left(f+\frac{\alpha}{2}\right)-\left(f-\frac{\alpha}{2}\right) \tag{4}$$

of interest. Since α is the frequency of second-order periodicity, as explained in Chapter 10 (Parts 1 and 3 of Section B), it is referred to as the *cycle frequency*. As also explained in Chapter 10 (Part 3 of Section B), the spectral correlation (1) is identical to the statistical (time-smoothed) cross-spectrum

$$S_{x_T}^{\alpha}(t,f)_{\Delta t} \equiv S_{uv_T}(t,f)_{\Delta t} \triangleq \frac{1}{\Delta t}\int_{t-\Delta t/2}^{t+\Delta t/2}\frac{1}{T}U_T(w,f)V_T^*(w,f)\,dw, \tag{5}$$

for which $U_T(t,f)$ and $V_T(t,f)$ are the time-variant finite-time complex spectra

$$\begin{aligned} U_T(t,f) &\triangleq \int_{t-T/2}^{t+T/2} u(w)e^{-i2\pi fw}\,dw \\ V_T(t,f) &\triangleq \int_{t-T/2}^{t+T/2} v(w)e^{-i2\pi fw}\,dw \end{aligned} \tag{6}$$

of the frequency-translated versions

$$\begin{aligned} u(t) &\triangleq x(t)e^{-i\pi\alpha t} \\ v(t) &\triangleq x(t)e^{+i\pi\alpha t} \end{aligned} \tag{7}$$

of $x(t)$. Therefore, the parameter f is referred to as the *spectrum frequency*.

The special time-variant cross periodogram

$$S_{uv_T}(t,f) \triangleq \frac{1}{T}U_T(t,f)V_T^*(t,f) \equiv \frac{1}{T}X_T\left(t,f+\frac{\alpha}{2}\right)X_T^*\left(t,f-\frac{\alpha}{2}\right) \triangleq S_{x_T}^{\alpha}(t,f) \tag{8}$$

that is time-smoothed to obtain the spectral correlation (1) is referred to as the *time-variant cyclic periodogram* (or the *time-variant finite-time cyclic spectrum*). It follows from the cross-periodogram-cross-correlogram relation (Part I, Chapter 7),

$$S_{uv_T}(t,\cdot) = F\{R_{uv_T}(t,\cdot)\}, \tag{9}$$

for which

$$R_{uv_T}(t,\tau) \triangleq \frac{1}{T}\int_{t-(T-|\tau|)/2}^{t+(T-|\tau|)/2} u\left(w+\frac{\tau}{2}\right)v^*\left(w-\frac{\tau}{2}\right)dw, \tag{10}$$

that the cyclic periodogram is the Fourier transform,

$$S^{\alpha}_{x_T}(t, \cdot) = F\{R^{\alpha}_{x_T}(t, \cdot)\}, \tag{11}$$

of the function

$$R^{\alpha}_{x_T}(t, \tau) \triangleq \frac{1}{T}\int_{t-(T-|\tau|)/2}^{t+(T-|\tau|)/2} x\left(w + \frac{\tau}{2}\right)x\left(w - \frac{\tau}{2}\right)e^{-i2\pi\alpha w}\, dw, \tag{12}$$

which is called the *time-variant cyclic correlogram*. Equation (11) is therefore called the *cyclic-periodogram-cyclic-correlogram relation*.

B. TEMPORAL AND SPECTRAL SMOOTHING, RESOLUTION, AND RELIABILITY

In order to develop a statistical theory of cyclic spectral analysis (a theory of spectral correlation), we must focus our attention on the class of time-series models for which the limit as $T \to \infty$ of the cyclic correlogram exists for all τ and α,

$$\lim_{T\to\infty} R^{\alpha}_{x_T}(t, \tau) = \hat{R}^{\alpha}_{x}(\tau), \tag{13}$$

and is independent of t and continuous[1] in τ. For all such time-series models, the same limit is obtained from the *finite-average cyclic autocorrelation,* defined by

$$R^{\alpha}_{x}(t, \tau)_T \triangleq \frac{1}{T}\int_{t-T/2}^{t+T/2} x\left(w + \frac{\tau}{2}\right)x\left(w - \frac{\tau}{2}\right)e^{-i2\pi\alpha w}\, dw\, [2Tu_{2T}(\tau)]. \tag{14}$$

That is,

$$\lim_{T\to\infty} R^{\alpha}_{x}(t, \tau)_T = \hat{R}^{\alpha}_{x}(\tau) \tag{15}$$

and this limit is the same as the limit cyclic autocorrelation defined by (7) in Chapter 10.

Since the spectral correlation (1) is a time-smoothed version of the time-variant finite-time cyclic spectrum (8),

$$S^{\alpha}_{x_T}(t, f)_{\Delta t} = \frac{1}{\Delta t}\int_{t-\Delta t/2}^{t+\Delta t/2} S^{\alpha}_{x_T}(w, f)\, dw, \tag{16}$$

it is called a *statistical cyclic spectrum* (following the convention for terminology used in Part I). As explained in Part I, Chapters 3 and 7, temporal smoothing is approximately equivalent to spectral smoothing, provided that the amount of smoothing is substantial,

$$\Delta t \gg T. \tag{17}$$

[1] Excluding discontinuous limit cyclic autocorrelations avoids anomalous time-series, as explained in Part I, Chapter 3, Section D. It can be shown [Brown 1987] that the limit (13) is indeed independent of t provided that this limit exists for $t = 0$ and for $\alpha \neq 0$ as well as $\alpha = 0$.

To illustrate the application of this equivalence to statistical cyclic spectra, we proceed as follows:

$$S_{x_T}^{\alpha}(t,f)_{\Delta t} \triangleq \frac{1}{\Delta t}\int_{t-\Delta t/2}^{t+\Delta t/2}\frac{1}{T}X_T\left(w, f+\frac{\alpha}{2}\right)X_T^{*}\left(w, f-\frac{\alpha}{2}\right)dw \tag{18}$$

$$= \frac{1}{\Delta t}\int_{t-\Delta t/2}^{t+\Delta t/2}\int_{w-T/2}^{w+T/2} x(u)e^{-i2\pi(f+\alpha/2)u}\,du \int_{w-T/2}^{w+T/2} x(v)e^{i2\pi(f-\alpha/2)v}\,dv\,dw \tag{19}$$

$$= \frac{1}{T}\int_{-T/2}^{T/2}\int_{-T/2}^{T/2}\frac{1}{\Delta t}\int_{t+[u+v]/2-\Delta t/2}^{t+[u+v]/2+\Delta t/2} x\left(w+\frac{u-v}{2}\right)x\left(w-\frac{u-v}{2}\right) \times e^{-i2\pi\alpha w}\,dw\,e^{-i2\pi f(u-v)}\,du\,dv \tag{20}$$

$$= \frac{1}{T}\int_{-T/2}^{T/2}\int_{-T/2}^{T/2} R_x^{\alpha}\left(t+\frac{u+v}{2}, u-v\right)_{\Delta t} e^{-i2\pi f(u-v)}\,du\,dv \tag{21}$$

$$\cong \frac{1}{T}\int_{-T/2}^{T/2}\int_{-T/2}^{T/2} R_{x_{\Delta t}}^{\alpha}(t, u-v)e^{-i2\pi f(u-v)}\,du\,dv, \qquad \Delta t \gg T \tag{22}$$

$$= \int_{-T}^{T}(1-|\tau|/T)R_{x_{\Delta t}}^{\alpha}(t,\tau)e^{-i2\pi f\tau}\,d\tau \tag{23}$$

$$= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} Tv_T(\tau)R_{x_{\Delta t}}^{\alpha}(t,\tau)e^{-i2\pi f\tau}\,d\tau \tag{24}$$

$$= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} z_{1/T}(\nu)S_{x_{\Delta t}}^{\alpha}(t, f-\nu)\,d\nu. \tag{25}$$

Equation (19) follows from substitution of (2) into (18). Equation (20) follows from a change of variables of integration. Equation (21) then follows from definition (14). The approximation (22) follows from the approximations described in Part I, Chapter 2, Section E (extended from autocorrelations to cross correlations and assuming only that the limit cyclic autocorrelation $\hat{R}_x^{\alpha}(\tau)$ exists). Equation (23) follows from a change of variables of integration, and (24) follows from the definition of the unit-area triangle window v_T. Equation (25) follows from application of the convolution theorem, the relation (11), and the definition of the unit-area squared-sinc window $z_{1/T}$. The approximate equivalence (18)–(25) is summarized by

$$S_{x_T}^{\alpha}(t,f)_{\Delta t} \triangleq S_{x_T}^{\alpha}(t,f) \otimes u_{\Delta t}(t) \cong S_{x_{\Delta t}}^{\alpha}(t,f) \otimes z_{1/T}(f) \triangleq S_{x_{\Delta t}}^{\alpha}(t,f)_{1/T}, \qquad \Delta t \gg T. \tag{26}$$

This type of equivalence is discussed in detail in Part I, Chapter 3, Section B. In addition, this particular equivalence reveals that the spectral correlation $S_{x_T}^{\alpha}(t, f)_{\Delta t}$, which is the *temporal cross correlation* (with temporal separation $\tau = 0$) of the time-functions

$$\frac{1}{\sqrt{T}}X_T\left(\cdot, f+\frac{\alpha}{2}\right) \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{1}{\sqrt{T}}X_T\left(\cdot, f-\frac{\alpha}{2}\right), \tag{27}$$

can be reinterpreted (approximately) as the *spectral autocorrelation* (with spectral separation α) of the frequency function

$$\frac{1}{\sqrt{T}} X_{\Delta t}(t, \cdot), \tag{28}$$

namely,[2]

$$S^{\alpha}_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, f)_{\Delta f} \cong \frac{1}{\Delta f} \int_{f-\Delta f/2}^{f+\Delta f/2} \frac{1}{\Delta t} X_{\Delta t}\left(t, \nu + \frac{\alpha}{2}\right) X^{*}_{\Delta t}\left(t, \nu - \frac{\alpha}{2}\right) d\nu, \tag{29}$$

for which $\Delta f = 1/T$. However, in order to idealize these spectral correlation measurements, it is required that $\Delta t \to \infty$, whereas $\Delta f \to 0$ (see Section C).

As explained in Part I, the two statistical cross spectra in (26) both have *temporal* and *spectral resolutions* given by Δt and

$$\Delta f \cong \frac{1}{T}, \tag{30}$$

respectively. Furthermore, these two statistical cyclic spectra have a *cycle resolution* given by the reciprocal of the temporal resolution,

$$\Delta \alpha \cong \frac{1}{\Delta t}. \tag{31}$$

That is, the statistical cyclic spectra in (26) can resolve second-order periodicity at two cycle frequencies, say α_1 and α_2, if and only if these two cycle frequencies are separated by more than the cycle resolution (31),

$$|\alpha_1 - \alpha_2| > \Delta \alpha. \tag{32}$$

Hence, cycle resolution is tied to the temporal resolution Δt of a statistical cyclic spectrum but not to its spectral resolution Δf. This can be seen from the right member of (26) with (11) and (12) (with T replaced by Δt) substituted in, since the cycle resolution is determined by the integration time Δt in $R^{\alpha}_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, \tau)$. (This is studied further in Chapter 15.)

As explained in Part I, Chapter 7, Section E, a statistical cross spectrum such as (5) is, in general, a *reliable measurement* of the limit cross spectrum $\hat{S}^{\alpha}_{x}(f)$ if and only if the *modified Grenander's uncertainty condition*

$$\Delta t \Delta f >> \frac{1}{|\hat{C}^{\alpha}_{x}(f)|^2} \tag{33}$$

is satisfied, and it follows from (26) and (30) that this requires a substantial amount of either temporal smoothing,

$$\Delta t >> T \cong \frac{1}{\Delta f}, \tag{34a}$$

or spectral smoothing

$$\Delta f \cong \frac{1}{T} >> \frac{1}{\Delta t}. \tag{34b}$$

[2] Approximation (29) is obtained from the right member of (26) by replacing $z_{1/T}$ with $u_{1/T}$.

Moreover, it follows from (31) that this requires the cycle resolution to be much finer than the spectral resolution,

$$\Delta\alpha \ll \Delta f. \tag{35}$$

It is also explained in Part I, Chapter 5, Section C, that *reliability* means that the statistical spectrum is very nearly independent of the time t at which it is measured. In fact, by considering the idealized measurement for which $\Delta t \to \infty$, we obtain a completely reliable spectrum in which all random fluctuation with t vanishes. This leads to the empirical approach to defining the concept of the limit cyclic spectrum, as explained subsequently. The reliability of cyclic spectra is discussed in more detail in Chapter 15, where it is explained that although (33) often applies, it can require modification in some cases.[3]

C. THE LIMIT CYCLIC SPECTRUM

1. Derivation

In the limit as $\Delta t \to \infty$, the approximation (22) becomes exact (as explained in Part I, Chapter 2, Section E, extended from autocorrelations to cross correlations and assuming only that the limit cross correlation $\hat{R}_x^\alpha(\tau)$ exists), and therefore the approximate equivalence (26) becomes exact,

$$\lim_{\Delta t\to\infty} S^\alpha_{x_{1/\Delta f}}(t,f)_{\Delta t} = \lim_{\Delta t\to\infty} S^\alpha_{x_{\Delta t}}(t,f)_{\Delta f} \tag{36}$$

$$= \frac{1}{\Delta f}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} v_{1/\Delta f}(\tau)\hat{R}_x^\alpha(\tau)e^{-i2\pi f\tau}\,d\tau \tag{37}$$

$$= \hat{S}_x^\alpha(f) \otimes z_{1/\Delta f}(f), \tag{38}$$

where

$$\hat{S}_x^\alpha(\cdot) \triangleq F\{\hat{R}_x^\alpha(\cdot)\}. \tag{39}$$

Equation (37) follows from (24), and (38) follows from application of the convolution theorem to (37). Since the limit cyclic autocorrelation $\hat{R}_x^\alpha(\tau)$ is independent of the *time location* t of the measurement, then the function $\hat{S}_x^\alpha(f)$, which is called the *limit cyclic spectrum,* is also independent of the time location t. However, it should be clarified that when $x(t)$ is translated to $x(t + t')$, for example, then these limit statistics do indeed change, and the variation with t' is sinusoidal. That is (exercise 1),

$$\lim_{\Delta t\to\infty} \frac{1}{\Delta t}\int_{t-\Delta t/2}^{t+\Delta t/2} x\left(t' + w + \frac{\tau}{2}\right)x\left(t' + w - \frac{\tau}{2}\right)e^{-i2\pi\alpha w}\,dw = \hat{R}_x^\alpha(\tau)e^{i2\pi\alpha t'} \triangleq \hat{R}_x^\alpha(t',\tau). \tag{40}$$

This sinusoidal variation with the *time origin* t' of the time-series is consistent with the synchronized averaging identity ((24) in Chapter 10) for the *limit periodic*

[3] Recall that the derivation of (33) with $\hat{C}_x^\alpha(f) = \hat{C}_{uv}(f)$ in Part I required that $u(t)$ and $v(t)$ be purely stationary, which certainly does not apply here.

autocorrelation, which is reexpressed here:

$$\hat{R}_x(t + t', \tau) \triangleq \lim_{N\to\infty} \frac{1}{2N + 1} \sum_{n=-N}^{N} x\left(t + t' + nT_0 + \frac{\tau}{2}\right) x\left(t + t' + nT_0 - \frac{\tau}{2}\right)$$

$$= \sum_{m=-\infty}^{\infty} \hat{R}_x^{m/T_0}(\tau) e^{i2\pi m(t+t')/T_0} \tag{41}$$

$$= \sum_{m=-\infty}^{\infty} \hat{R}_x^{m/T_0}(t', \tau) e^{i2\pi mt/T_0}.$$

Since the limit of the unit-area smoothing window in (38) is the Dirac delta,

$$\lim_{\Delta f\to 0} z_{1/\Delta f}(f) = \delta(f), \tag{42}$$

then (36)–(38) yield the limit cyclic spectrum identities

$$\hat{S}_x^{\alpha}(f) = \lim_{\Delta f\to 0} \lim_{\Delta t\to\infty} S^{\alpha}_{x_{1/\Delta f}}(t, f)_{\Delta t} \tag{43a}$$

$$= \lim_{\Delta f\to 0} \lim_{\Delta t\to\infty} S^{\alpha}_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, f)_{\Delta f}. \tag{43b}$$

The identity (43a) reveals the interpretation of the limit cyclic spectrum (39) as an idealized version of the spectral correlation measurement (1). The identity (43b) reveals an alternative interpretation as an idealized version of a spectrally smoothed cross-spectrum. Furthermore, identities (41) (with $t' = 0$) and (43) reveal the interpretation of the *limit periodic spectrum,* defined by

$$\hat{S}_x(t, \cdot) \triangleq F\{\hat{R}_x(t, \cdot)\}, \tag{44}$$

as a Fourier series of these idealized spectral correlation measurements,

$$\hat{S}_x(t, f) = \sum_{m=-\infty}^{\infty} \hat{S}_x^{m/T_0}(f) e^{i2\pi mt/T_0}. \tag{45}$$

If we adopt the empirical point of view developed in Part I, then we take (43a) or (43b) as the *definition* of the limit cyclic spectrum, in which case (39) becomes a *result* (rather than a definition). In this case, (39) is a generalization, from $\alpha = 0$, of the *Wiener relation* (Part I, Chapter 3, Section C) and is called the *cyclic Wiener relation.* Similarly, if (45) together with (43) are taken to be the definition of the limit periodic spectrum, then (44) is a result which is called the *periodic Wiener relation.*

In summary, the statistical cyclic spectra obtained by either temporally smoothing or spectrally smoothing the cyclic periodogram can be interpreted as estimates of the ideal limit cyclic spectrum. In the remainder of this chapter, properties of the limit cyclic spectrum are studied.

2. Spectrum Types and Bandwidths

For mathematical models of time-series that are *persistent* and *stable* in a physical sense, it is appropriate to require that the derived time-series

$$z(t) \triangleq x\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right) x\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right) \tag{46a}$$

have finite power,

$$\lim_{T\to\infty} \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} z^2(t)\, dt < \infty. \tag{46b}$$

This is guaranteed if $x(t)$ has a finite fourth moment, $\langle x^4 \rangle < \infty$. It follows from (46b) that $z(t)$ can contain at most a denumerable set of finite additive sine wave components.[4] This can be seen as follows. Let us denote the frequencies of the finite (nonzero) components by $\{\alpha\}$. Then it follows (exercise 1) that

$$\sum_{\alpha} |\hat{R}_x^{\alpha}(\tau)|^2 \leq \lim_{T\to\infty} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} z^2(t)\, dt < \infty \tag{47}$$

as a result of the fact that the total power in $z(t)$ cannot be less than the power in all its sine wave components. It follows that the sum in (47) can contain at most a denumerable set of finite terms. In general, $z(t)$ can be represented by the sum of its additive sine wave components (including zero frequency, $\alpha = 0$) and its residual, say $n(t)$,

$$z(t) = \sum_{\alpha} \hat{R}_x^{\alpha}(\tau) e^{i2\pi\alpha t} + n(t), \tag{48}$$

and $n(t)$ is uncorrelated with all sine waves (because otherwise it would contain finite additive sine wave components). Therefore, (48) reveals that equality holds in (47) if and only if the residual $n(t)$ has zero power, in which case $z(t)$ and, therefore, $x(t)$ are almost periodic functions in the temporal mean-square sense.

It would appear that since $n(t)$ contains no finite additive sine wave components, then its limit spectrum must contain no Dirac deltas. Unfortunately, this is not true in general for any finite-power waveform $n(t)$. For example, $n(t) \triangleq \text{sign}(t)$ has zero mean, and yet $\hat{R}_n^0(\tau) \equiv 1$ and, therefore, $\hat{S}_n^0(f) = \delta(f)$. The reason for this strange behavior is that for this example the finite-time mean

$$M_n^0(t)_T \triangleq \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} n(t + u)\, du$$

does not converge in temporal mean square (exercise 2), although it does converge to zero pointwise, that is, for each t. In order to avoid such anomalous behavior, it is assumed throughout Part II that the cyclic correlogram $R_{x_T}^{\alpha}(t, \tau)$ converges in temporal mean square to $\hat{R}_x^{\alpha}(\tau)$ for all α (not just pointwise convergence, as previously assumed). Then $\hat{S}_n(f)$ for $n(t)$ in (48) will indeed contain no Dirac deltas (see exercise 6 in Chapter 15). Although examples like $n(t) = \text{sign}(t)$ may not appear to be so strange as to be disallowed from the theory being developed here, they do not properly reflect the behavior of a periodic (or in this special case, a constant) phenomenon, because of the sudden change at $t = 0$ from one periodic (constant $= -1$) phenomenon to another periodic (constant $= +1$) phenomenon.

[4] When these discrete sets for each value of τ are combined for all values of τ, a nondenumerable set of frequencies α might conceivably be obtained. However, it is conjectured that only a denumerable set can occur.

We can refer to the discrete set of cycle frequencies $\{\alpha\}$ as the *cycle spectrum*. If $\{\alpha\} = \{0\}$, then the time-series $x(t)$ is said to be *purely stationary*. If $\{\alpha\} = \{m/T_0 : m \in I\}$, for some T_0 and for $I \neq \{0\}$ a set of integers, then $x(t)$ is said to be *purely cyclostationary* with period T_0. Otherwise, $x(t)$ is said to be *almost cyclostationary* [Gardner 1978; Boyles and Gardner 1983; Gardner 1985] by analogy with the fact that the Fourier series in (48) is called an almost periodic function. We see then that all finite-fourth-moment time-series for which $\hat{R}_x^\alpha(\tau)$ exists (as a temporal mean-square limit) for all τ and α are almost cyclostationary, purely cyclostationary, or purely stationary. That is, this is an exhaustive classification. Moreover, we see that the cyclic spectrum $\hat{S}_x^\alpha(f)$ must be a *discrete function* of the cycle frequency α, whereas it is a *continuous function* of the spectrum frequency f for all time-series containing randomness (i.e., time-series for which the residual $n(t)$ in (48) has nonzero power) and containing no first-order periodicity. That is, if $x(t)$ does not contain (temporal mean-square convergent) first-order periodicity, then it follows from the inequality ((36) in Chapter 10)

$$|\hat{S}_x^\alpha(f)|^2 \leq \hat{S}_x\left(f + \frac{\alpha}{2}\right)\hat{S}_x\left(f - \frac{\alpha}{2}\right) \tag{49}$$

and the fact that $\hat{S}_x(f)$ contains no Dirac deltas that $\hat{S}_x^\alpha(f)$ contains no Dirac deltas in f. On the other hand, if $x(t)$ does contain first-order periodicity, then $\hat{S}_x^\alpha(f)$ as well as $\hat{S}_x(f)$ must contain Dirac deltas in f. This is consistent with the fact that the cyclic spectrum $\hat{S}_x^\alpha(f)$ is a spectral *density* of temporal correlation, in the same sense that the limit spectrum $\hat{S}_x(f)$ is a spectral density of temporal mean square (spectral density of time-averaged power).

Example

To illustrate the continuous-in-f and discrete-in-α nature of the cyclic spectrum, the magnitude $|\hat{S}_x^\alpha(f)|$ is shown in Figures 11-1 and 11-2 as the height of a surface above the *bifrequency* (f, α) *plane* for two examples: an amplitude-modulated sine wave and a pulse-amplitude-modulated pulse train (see Chapter 12, Section A).

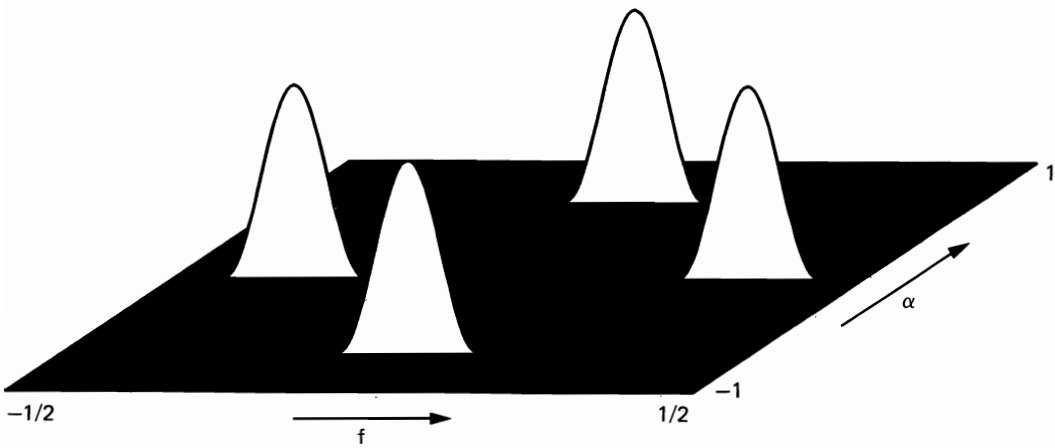


Figure 11-1 Spectral correlation magnitude surface for an amplitude-modulated sine wave.

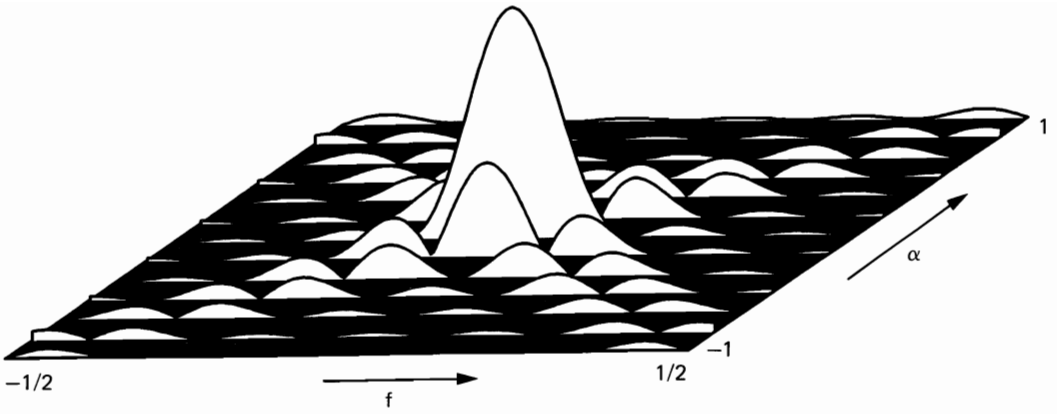


Figure 11-2 Spectral correlation magnitude surface for a pulse-amplitude-modulated pulse train.

If the time-series $x(t)$ is low-pass bandlimited such that

$$\hat{S}_x(f) = 0, \qquad |f| \geq B, \tag{50}$$

then it follows from (49) that the limit correlation $\hat{S}_x^\alpha(f)$ between spectral components with frequencies $f + \alpha/2$ and $f - \alpha/2$ must vanish for $|f + \alpha/2| \geq B$ and also for $|f - \alpha/2| \geq$ B. Therefore, we have (exercise 3)

$$\hat{S}_x^\alpha(f) = 0, \qquad |f| + |\alpha|/2 \geq B. \tag{51}$$

It follows that the region of potential support in the bifrequency plane for the cyclic spectra is the diamond region shown in Figure 11-3(a). Similarly, if the time-series is high-pass bandlimited such that

$$\hat{S}_x(f) = 0, \qquad |f| \leq b, \tag{52}$$

then (exercise 3)

$$\hat{S}_x^\alpha(f) = 0, \qquad ||f| - |\alpha|/2| \leq b. \tag{53}$$

It follows that the region of potential support is as shown in Figure 11-3(b). If the time-series is band-pass bandlimited such that both (50) and (52) hold, then both (51) and (53) hold, and the region of potential support consists of the four diamond regions shown in Figure 11-3(c).

3. Symmetries and Parseval Relations

It follows from the definition of the limit cyclic autocorrelation of a real, scalar-valued time-series[5] that it is an even symmetric function of τ and a Hermitian symmetric function of α (exercise 4):

$$\hat{R}_x^\alpha(-\tau) = \hat{R}_x^\alpha(\tau) \tag{54a}$$

$$\hat{R}_x^{-\alpha}(\tau) = \hat{R}_x^\alpha(\tau)^*. \tag{54b}$$

[5] These symmetries must be generalized for complex and/or vector-valued time-series.

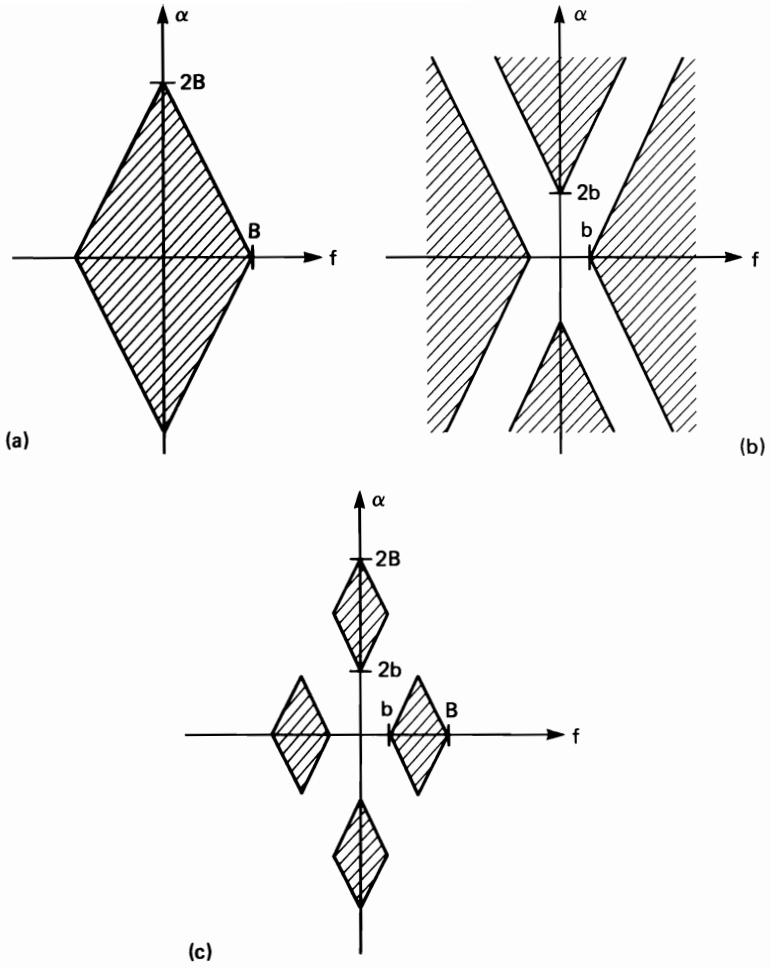


Figure 11-3 Regions of support of the spectral correlation function in the bi-frequency plane for bandlimited time-series. (a) Low-pass time-series. (b) High-pass time-series. (c) Band-pass time-series.

Consequently, its Fourier transform, the limit cyclic spectrum, is an even symmetric function of f and a Hermitian symmetric function of α (exercise 4):

$$\hat{S}_x^{\alpha}(-f) = \hat{S}_x^{\alpha}(f) \tag{54c}$$

$$\hat{S}_x^{-\alpha}(f) = \hat{S}_x^{\alpha}(f)^*. \tag{54d}$$

Also, it follows from the fact that the limit cyclic autocorrelation (and limit cyclic spectrum) is sinusoidal in the time-origin variable, (40), that the asymmetric version

$$\hat{R}_x^{\alpha}(\tau)' \triangleq \lim_{T\to\infty} \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x(t+\tau)x(t)e^{-i2\pi\alpha t}\, dt \tag{55}$$

differs from the symmetric version

$$\hat{R}_x^\alpha(\tau) \triangleq \lim_{T\to\infty} \frac{1}{T}\int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x\left(t+\frac{\tau}{2}\right)x\left(t-\frac{\tau}{2}\right)e^{-i2\pi\alpha t}\,dt \tag{56}$$

by a sinusoidal factor (exercise 4),

$$\hat{R}_x^\alpha(\tau)' = \hat{R}_x^\alpha(\tau)e^{i\pi\alpha\tau}, \tag{57}$$

and therefore the corresponding limit cyclic spectra differ by a frequency shift,

$$\hat{S}_x^\alpha(f)' = \hat{S}_x^\alpha\left(f-\frac{\alpha}{2}\right). \tag{58}$$

The real and imaginary parts of $\hat{R}_x^\alpha(\tau)$, which are denoted by $\hat{R}_x^\alpha(\tau)_r$ and $\hat{R}_x^\alpha(\tau)_i$, respectively, can be expressed in terms of the correlations of the two real time-series

$$\begin{aligned} c(t) &\triangleq x(t)\cos(\pi\alpha t) \\ s(t) &\triangleq x(t)\sin(\pi\alpha t) \end{aligned} \tag{59}$$

as follows (exercise 5):

$$\hat{R}_x^\alpha(\tau)_r = \hat{R}_c(\tau) - \hat{R}_s(\tau) \tag{60a}$$

$$\hat{R}_x^\alpha(\tau)_i = -\hat{R}_{cs}(\tau) - \hat{R}_{sc}(\tau). \tag{60b}$$

It follows from the Fourier series (41) and (45) that the limit statistics satisfy the Parseval relations (exercise 6)

$$\frac{1}{T_0}\int_{-T_0/2}^{T_0/2} |\hat{S}_x(t,f)|^2\,dt = \sum_m |\hat{S}_x^{m/T_0}(f)|^2 \tag{61a}$$

$$\frac{1}{T_0}\int_{-T_0/2}^{T_0/2} |\hat{R}_x(t,\tau)|^2\,dt = \sum_m |\hat{R}_x^{m/T_0}(\tau)|^2 \tag{61b}$$

for a purely cyclostationary time-series, and it follows from the generalized Fourier series (103) and (107) in Chapter 10 that

$$\lim_{T\to\infty}\frac{1}{T}\int_{-T/2}^{T/2} |\hat{S}_x(t,f)|^2\,dt = \sum_\alpha |\hat{S}_x^\alpha(f)|^2 \tag{61c}$$

$$\lim_{T\to\infty}\frac{1}{T}\int_{-T/2}^{T/2} |\hat{R}_x(t,\tau)|^2\,dt = \sum_\alpha |\hat{R}_x^\alpha(\tau)|^2 \tag{61d}$$

for an almost cyclostationary time-series. Also, it follows from the Fourier transforms (106) and (108) in Chapter 10 that the limit statistics satisfy the additional Parseval relations (exercise 6)

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |\hat{R}_x(t,\tau)|^2\,d\tau = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |\hat{S}_x(t,f)|^2\,df \tag{62a}$$

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |\hat{R}_x^\alpha(\tau)|^2\,d\tau = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |\hat{S}_x^\alpha(f)|^2\,df, \tag{62b}$$

for all time-series containing no first-order periodicity. It is assumed in (62) that $x(t)$ contains no first-order periodicity so that the limit statistics contain no Dirac deltas and can therefore be square-integrable.

4. Cyclic Cross Spectra

By analogy with (43), the *limit cyclic cross spectrum* for two time-series $x(t)$ and $y(t)$ is defined by

$$\hat{S}_{xy}^{\alpha}(f) \triangleq \lim_{\Delta f \to 0} \lim_{\Delta t \to \infty} S_{xy_{1/\Delta f}}^{\alpha}(t, f)_{\Delta t} \tag{63a}$$

$$\triangleq \lim_{\Delta f \to 0} \lim_{\Delta t \to \infty} S_{xy_{\Delta t}}^{\alpha}(t, f)_{\Delta f}, \tag{63b}$$

for which the quantities

$$S_{xy_T}^{\alpha}(t, f)_{\Delta t} \triangleq S_{xy_T}^{\alpha}(t, f) \otimes u_T(t) \tag{64a}$$

$$S_{xy_{\Delta t}}^{\alpha}(t, f)_{\Delta f} \triangleq S_{xy_{\Delta t}}^{\alpha}(t, f) \otimes z_{\Delta f}(f) \tag{64b}$$

are *statistical* (time-smoothed and frequency-smoothed, respectively) *cyclic cross spectra,* and

$$S_{xy_T}^{\alpha}(t, f) \triangleq \frac{1}{T} X_T\left(t, f + \frac{\alpha}{2}\right) Y_T^*\left(t, f - \frac{\alpha}{2}\right) \tag{65}$$

is the *time-variant cyclic cross periodogram* (or *cyclic finite-time cross spectrum*). By analogy with (11), $S_{xy_T}^{\alpha}(t, f)$ can be characterized by the Fourier transform

$$S_{xy_T}^{\alpha}(t, \cdot) = F\{R_{xy_T}^{\alpha}(t, \cdot)\}, \tag{66}$$

for which the function

$$R_{xy_T}^{\alpha}(t, \tau) \triangleq \frac{1}{T} \int_{t-(T-|\tau|)/2}^{t+(T-|\tau|)/2} x\left(w + \frac{\tau}{2}\right) y\left(w - \frac{\tau}{2}\right) e^{-i2\pi\alpha w}\, dw \tag{67}$$

is the *time-variant cyclic cross correlogram.* Also, by analogy with (39), we have

$$\hat{S}_{xy}^{\alpha}(\cdot) = F\{\hat{R}_{xy}^{\alpha}(\cdot)\}, \tag{68}$$

for which the function

$$\hat{R}_{xy}^{\alpha}(\tau) \triangleq \lim_{T \to \infty} R_{xy_T}^{\alpha}(t, \tau) \tag{69}$$

is the *limit cyclic cross correlation.* The limit statistics exhibit the symmetries (exercise 4)

$$\hat{R}_{xy}^{\alpha}(-\tau) = \hat{R}_{yx}^{\alpha}(\tau) \tag{70a}$$

$$\hat{R}_{xy}^{-\alpha}(\tau) = \hat{R}_{xy}^{\alpha}(\tau)^* \tag{70b}$$

$$\hat{S}_{xy}^{\alpha}(-f) = \hat{S}_{yx}^{\alpha}(f) \tag{70c}$$

$$\hat{S}_{xy}^{-\alpha}(f) = \hat{S}_{yx}^{\alpha}(f)^*. \tag{70d}$$

5. Spectral Autocoherence

The limit cyclic spectrum $\hat{S}_x^{\alpha}(f)$ in (43a) is the limit as spectral resolution becomes infinitesimal, $\Delta f \to 0$, of the temporal correlation

$$\lim_{\Delta t \to \infty} \frac{1}{\Delta t} \int_{-\Delta t/2}^{\Delta t/2} \Delta f X_{1/\Delta f}\left(t, f + \frac{\alpha}{2}\right) X_{1/\Delta f}^*\left(t, f - \frac{\alpha}{2}\right) dt \tag{71}$$

of the two spectral components

$$\sqrt{\Delta f}\, X_{1/\Delta f}\left(t, f + \frac{\alpha}{2}\right) \quad \text{and} \quad \sqrt{\Delta f}\, X_{1/\Delta f}\left(t, f - \frac{\alpha}{2}\right). \tag{72}$$

In fact, since the mean of each of these frequency components is zero,

$$\lim_{\Delta t \to \infty} \frac{1}{\Delta t} \int_{-\Delta t/2}^{\Delta t/2} X_{1/\Delta f}\left(t, f \pm \frac{\alpha}{2}\right) dt = 0, \tag{73}$$

assuming only that either $f \pm \alpha/2 \neq 0$ or $x(t)$ contains no first-order periodicity with frequencies $f \pm \alpha/2$ (Part I, Chapter 5, Section C), then $\hat{S}_x^\alpha(f)$ is actually the limit, as $\Delta f \to 0$, of the temporal *covariance* of the two spectral components (72). Normalization of this temporal covariance by the geometric mean of the two temporal variances

$$\lim_{\Delta t \to \infty} \frac{1}{\Delta t} \int_{-\Delta t/2}^{\Delta t/2} \Delta f \left| X_{1/\Delta f}\left(t, f \pm \frac{\alpha}{2}\right) \right|^2 dt \tag{74}$$

yields the temporal *correlation coefficient* of the two spectral components (72). But, the limit as $\Delta f \to 0$ of these two temporal variances yields the two limit spectra

$$\hat{S}_x\left(f \pm \frac{\alpha}{2}\right) = \lim_{\Delta f \to 0} \lim_{\Delta t \to \infty} \frac{1}{\Delta t} \int_{-\Delta t/2}^{\Delta t/2} \Delta f \left| X_{1/\Delta f}\left(t, f \pm \frac{\alpha}{2}\right) \right|^2 dt. \tag{75}$$

Consequently, the limit as $\Delta f \to 0$ of the temporal correlation coefficient of the two spectral components (72) is given by

$$\hat{C}_x^\alpha(f) \triangleq \frac{\hat{S}_x^\alpha(f)}{[\hat{S}_x(f + \alpha/2)\hat{S}_x(f - \alpha/2)]^{1/2}}, \tag{76}$$

which is called the *spectral autocoherence* (abbreviated to just *autocoherence*) of $x(t)$ at cycle frequency α and spectrum frequency f.

Since the correlation coefficient cannot exceed unity in magnitude, then

$$|\hat{C}_x^\alpha(f)| \leq 1. \tag{77}$$

Moreover, since the correlation coefficient magnitude can equal unity if and only if the two variables (time-series) are linearly dependent, then the autocoherence magnitude can equal unity at some values of f and α,

$$|\hat{C}_x^\alpha(f)| = 1, \tag{78}$$

if and only if the two time-series (72) are linearly dependent (in the mean square sense) in the limit $\Delta f \to 0$ for these values of f and α. In fact, as explained in Part I, Chapter 7, Section B, the autocoherence (being a particular cross coherence) is a frequency-decomposed measure of the degree to which the two time-series

$$\begin{aligned} u(t) &= x(t)e^{-i\pi\alpha t} \\ v(t) &= x(t)e^{+i\pi\alpha t} \end{aligned} \tag{79}$$

are related (in the mean-square sense) by an LTI transformation.

Example

An example of a time-series that is *completely coherent,* in the sense of (78), at a given cycle frequency α over as broad a spectral band of f as desired can be

constructed as follows. Let $a(t)$ be any time-series with limit spectrum satisfying

$$\hat{S}_a(f)\begin{cases} > 0, & |f| \leq |\alpha|/2 \\ = 0, & |f| > |\alpha|/2, \end{cases} \tag{80}$$

and form another time-series $x(t)$ by adding frequency-translated versions of $a(t)$ to itself, using the specific set $\{n\alpha : n = \pm 1, \pm 2, \pm 3, \ldots, \pm N\}$ of translation frequencies,

$$x(t) = a(t) \sum_{n=-N}^{N} \gamma_n \cos(2\pi n\alpha t + \theta_n), \tag{81}$$

for any θ_n and nonzero γ_n. Then it is shown in Chapter 12, Section A, that

$$|\hat{C}_x^{\alpha}(f)| = \begin{cases} 1, & |f| \leq B - |\alpha|/2 \\ 0, & |f| > B - |\alpha|/2, \end{cases} \tag{82}$$

where $B = (N + \frac{1}{2})|\alpha|$. This time-series is a particular type of *spread spectrum* signal that is referred to as an *amplitude-modulated stacked carrier* signal.[6]

6. Filtering and Product Modulation

Two especially important operations to which time-series are often subjected are *filtering*,

$$y(t) = x(t) \otimes h(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} h(t - u)x(u)\, du, \tag{83}$$

and *product modulation*,

$$y(t) = w(t)x(t). \tag{84}$$

In order to preserve the finite-power property of the time-series $x(t)$, $h(t)$ must be a finite-energy function and $w(t)$ must be a finite-power function. The function $h(t)$ can be interpreted as the impulse-response function of a filter, and $w(t)$ can be interpreted as one of two inputs to a multiplier. If $w(t)$ is simply a sine wave, then (84) followed by an appropriate filter is a frequency converter (frequency-shifting device); or if $w(t)$ is a random or periodic train of narrow pulses, (84) is a sampling device. Or $w(t)$ can simply be another time-series; for example, $y(t)$ in (84) might be a signal-cross-noise term in the output of a quadratic device (e.g., a spectral line generator) with signal plus additive noise at the input. We want to determine a general formula relating the spectral correlation functions (cyclic spectra) of the input $x(t)$ and output $y(t)$ for each of (83) and (84).

Consider two filtered time-series

$$\begin{aligned} u'(t) &= g_1(t) \otimes u(t) \\ v'(t) &= g_2(t) \otimes v(t). \end{aligned} \tag{85}$$

[6] Among all time-series with the same spectrum, $\hat{S}_x(f)$, this time-series yields the maximum-power spectral line with frequency α, when transformed with the optimum QTI transformation described in Part 4 of Section B, Chapter 10.

It is shown in Part I, Chapter 7, that the limit cross spectra are related by

$$\hat{S}_{u'v'}(f) = G_1(f)G_2^*(f)\hat{S}_{uv}(f). \tag{86}$$

If we let

$$u(t) = x(t)e^{-i\pi\alpha t} \qquad v(t) = x(t)e^{+i\pi\alpha t} \tag{87a}$$

$$g_1(t) = h(t)e^{-i\pi\alpha t} \qquad g_2(t) = h(t)e^{+i\pi\alpha t} \tag{87b}$$

then it is easily verified that

$$u'(t) = y(t)e^{-i\pi\alpha t} \qquad v'(t) = y(t)e^{+i\pi\alpha t} \tag{88}$$

with $y(t)$ given by (83). Thus, we have

$$\hat{S}_{uv}(f) = \hat{S}_x^\alpha(f) \qquad \hat{S}_{u'v'}(f) = \hat{S}_y^\alpha(f) \tag{89a}$$

$$G_1(f) = H\left(f + \frac{\alpha}{2}\right) \qquad G_2(f) = H\left(f - \frac{\alpha}{2}\right), \tag{89b}$$

and therefore (86) yields the following *input-output spectral correlation relation for filters,*

$$\hat{S}_y^\alpha(f) = H\left(f + \frac{\alpha}{2}\right)H^*\left(f - \frac{\alpha}{2}\right)\hat{S}_x^\alpha(f). \tag{90}$$

It follows directly from (90) and the definition of the autocoherence that

$$\hat{C}_y^\alpha(f) = \hat{C}_x^\alpha(f)\exp\left[i\arg\left\{H\left(f + \frac{\alpha}{2}\right)\right\} - i\arg\left\{H\left(f - \frac{\alpha}{2}\right)\right\}\right] \tag{91}$$

(provided that $H(f \pm \alpha/2) \neq 0$), which reveals that the magnitude of the autocoherence is preserved by filtering, but the phase is indeed affected.

Example: ***Time Delay***

If $x(t)$ undergoes a delay of t' seconds, then the choice $h(t) = \delta(t - t')$ in (83) yields $y(t) = x(t - t')$, and (90) with $H(f) = e^{-i2\pi ft'}$ yields

$$\hat{S}_y^\alpha(f) = \hat{S}_x^\alpha(f)e^{-i2\pi\alpha t'}. \tag{92}$$

Example: ***Multipath Propagation***

If $x(t)$ undergoes multipath propagation to yield

$$y(t) = \sum_n \gamma_n x(t - t_n), \tag{93}$$

then (83) applies with

$$h(t) = \sum_n \gamma_n \delta(t - t_n).$$

Thus (90) applies with

$$H(f) = \sum_n \gamma_n e^{-i2\pi ft_n}$$

to yield

$$\hat{S}_y^\alpha(f) = \hat{S}_x^\alpha(f) \sum_{n,m} \gamma_n \gamma_m^* e^{-i2\pi f(t_n - t_m)} e^{-i\pi\alpha(t_n + t_m)}. \tag{94}$$

Example: ***System Identification***

It can be shown using the same technique as that used to derive (90) that

$$\hat{S}_{yx}^\alpha(f) = H\left(f + \frac{\alpha}{2}\right)\hat{S}_x^\alpha(f). \tag{95}$$

Thus, the transfer function of the system with cyclostationary input $x(t)$ and resultant output $y(t)$ can be identified (estimated) by measurement of cyclic spectra, since (95) yields

$$H(f) = \frac{\hat{S}_{yx}^{\alpha}(f - \alpha/2)}{\hat{S}_{x}^{\alpha}(f - \alpha/2)} \tag{96}$$

for all f and α for which $\hat{S}_{x}^{\alpha}(f - \alpha/2) \neq 0$. This approach has a distinct advantage over the conventional approach, which is based on (96) with $\alpha = 0$, provided that the system excitation is indeed cyclostationary. Specifically, even if measurements of excitation and response are contaminated with noise or interference,

$$y'(t) = y(t) + m(t)$$
$$x'(t) = x(t) + n(t),$$

formula (96) still applies for $\alpha \neq 0$ (exercise 18),

$$H(f) = \frac{\hat{S}_{y'x'}^{\alpha}(f - \alpha/2)}{\hat{S}_{x'}^{\alpha}(f - \alpha/2)}, \qquad \alpha \neq 0, \tag{97}$$

provided only that $n(t)$ and $m(t)$ exhibit no cyclostationarity with cycle frequency α; whereas (96) does not still apply for $\alpha = 0$ (see exercise 6 in Chapter 7 of Part I). Thus, this approach provides immunity to contamination in the measurements. This can be particularly useful, for example, in the TDOA estimation problem described in Appendix 7-3 of Part I. This is pursued further in Chapter 14.

Example: ***Band-pass Filtering***

For a band-pass filter with transfer function given by

$$H(f) = \begin{cases} 1, & b < |f| < B \\ 0, & \text{otherwise,} \end{cases}$$

(90) yields

$$\hat{S}_{y}^{\alpha}(f) = \begin{cases} 0, & ||f| - |\alpha|/2| \leq b \quad \text{or} \quad |f| + |\alpha|/2 \geq B \\ \hat{S}_{x}^{\alpha}(f), & \text{otherwise,} \end{cases}$$

which reveals that this band-pass filter limits the spectral correlation to the diamond regions of support in the bifrequency plane shown in Figure 11-3(c).

We shall assume that $x(t)$ and $w(t)$ in (84) are statistically independent (see Chapter 15). In this case, the limit almost periodic autocorrelation of the product of $x(t)$ and $w(t)$ is the product of limit almost periodic autocorrelations:

$$\hat{R}_{y}(t, \tau) = \hat{R}_{x}(t, \tau)\hat{R}_{w}(t, \tau). \tag{98}$$

Substitution of the generalized Fourier series

$$\hat{R}_{x}(t, \tau) = \sum_{\gamma} \hat{R}_{x}^{\gamma}(\tau)e^{i2\pi\gamma t}$$
$$\hat{R}_{w}(t, \tau) = \sum_{\beta} \hat{R}_{w}^{\beta}(\tau)e^{i2\pi\beta t}$$

into (98) and use of the formula

$$\hat{R}_{y}^{\alpha}(\tau) = \lim_{T\to\infty} \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} \hat{R}_{y}(t, \tau)e^{-i2\pi\alpha t}\, dt \tag{99}$$

yields (exercise 7) the discrete convolution in cycle frequency

$$\hat{R}_y^{\alpha}(\tau) = \sum_{\beta} \hat{R}_x^{\alpha-\beta}(\tau)\hat{R}_w^{\beta}(\tau). \tag{100}$$

Fourier transformation of (100) yields the double (discrete and continuous) convolution

$$\hat{S}_y^{\alpha}(f) = \sum_{\beta} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \hat{S}_x^{\alpha-\beta}(f - \nu)\hat{S}_w^{\beta}(\nu)\, d\nu. \tag{101}$$

This *spectral correlation convolution relation for product modulation* has many interesting applications. For example, consider the almost periodic time-series

$$w(t) = \sum_{\nu} W_\nu e^{i2\pi\nu t}. \tag{102a}$$

It can be shown (exercise 8) that

$$\hat{R}_w^{\alpha}(\tau) = \sum_{\nu} W_\nu W_{\alpha-\nu} e^{i\pi(2\nu-\alpha)\tau} \tag{102b}$$

and therefore

$$\hat{S}_w^{\alpha}(f) = \sum_{\nu} W_\nu W_{\alpha-\nu}\, \delta\left(f - \nu + \frac{\alpha}{2}\right). \tag{102c}$$

Since every almost periodic time-series is statistically independent of every other time-series (see Chapter 15), then (101) applies to (84) and in this case reduces to

$$\hat{S}_y^{\alpha}(f) = \sum_{\nu,\beta} W_\nu W_{\beta-\nu}\, \hat{S}_x^{\alpha-\beta}\left(f - \nu + \frac{\beta}{2}\right). \tag{103}$$

Example: ***Frequency Conversion***

Let $w(t)$ be a sine wave,

$$w(t) = \cos(2\pi\nu_0 t + \theta). \tag{104}$$

Then only $W_{\pm\nu_0} = \frac{1}{2} e^{\pm i\theta}$ are nonzero in (102) and (103), and therefore we have

$$\hat{S}_y^{\alpha}(f) = \tfrac{1}{4}[\hat{S}_x^{\alpha}(f - \nu_0) + \hat{S}_x^{\alpha}(f + \nu_0) + \hat{S}_x^{\alpha-2\nu_0}(f)e^{i2\theta} + \hat{S}_x^{\alpha+2\nu_0}(f)e^{-i2\theta}], \tag{105}$$

which is called the *frequency-conversion formula for spectral correlation*. (As a specific example, the cyclic spectra $\hat{S}_x^{\alpha}(f)$ and $\hat{S}_y^{\alpha}(f)$, for $x(t)$ equal to a pulse-amplitude-modulated signal, are shown in Figures 11-2 and 11-4.) If $x(t)$ is bandlimited such that $\hat{S}_x(f) = 0$ for $|f| \leq b$ or $|f| \geq B$ and the product (84) is high-pass filtered such that $\hat{S}_y(f) = 0$ for $|f| < f_0$, then this is a frequency up-converter (assuming $-b < f_0 - \nu_0 < b$ and $f_0 < B - \nu_0$), and the diamond array of four diamond support regions in the bifrequency plane shown in Figure 11-3(c) is simply expanded in the sense that the centers of the four diamonds at $(f, \alpha) = (\pm(b + B)/2, 0)$ and $(f, \alpha) = (0, \pm(b + B))$ get shifted up to $(f, \alpha) = (\pm[\nu_0 + (b + B)/2], 0)$ and $(f, \alpha) = (0, \pm[2\nu_0 + b + B])$. Similarly, if the product (84) is low-pass filtered such that $\hat{S}_y(f) = 0$ for $|f| > f_0$, then this is a frequency down-converter (assuming $b + \nu_0 > f_0 > B - \nu_0$) and the centers of the four diamonds are shifted to $(f, \alpha) = (\pm[-\nu_0 + (b + B)/2], 0)$ and $(f, \alpha) = (0, \pm[-2\nu_0 + b + B])$. For $\alpha = 0$, the frequency-conversion formula (105) reduces to

$$\hat{S}_y(f) = \tfrac{1}{4}[\hat{S}_x(f - \nu_0) + \hat{S}_x(f + \nu_0)] + [\hat{S}_x^{2\nu_0}(f)e^{-i2\theta} + \hat{S}_x^{-2\nu_0}(f)e^{i2\theta}]. \tag{106a}$$

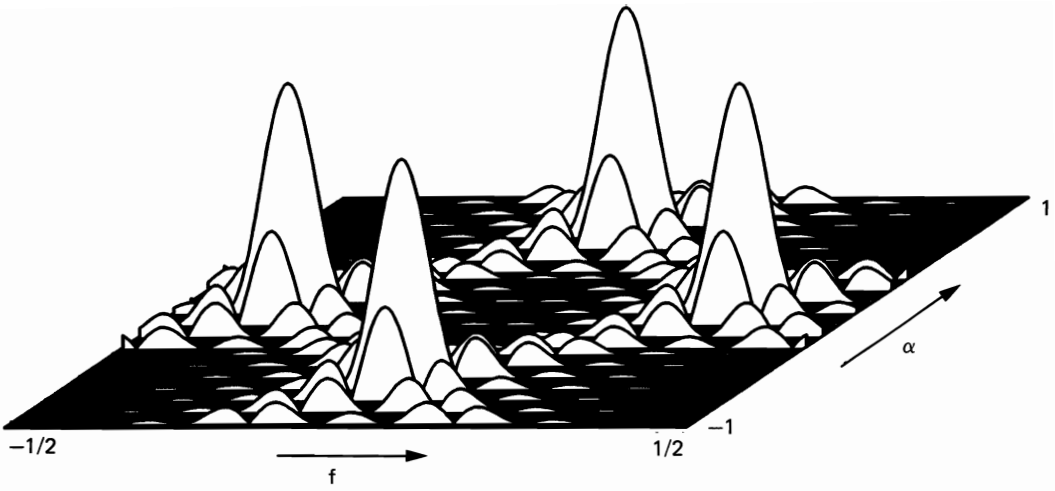


Figure 11-4 Spectral correlation magnitude surface for up-converted pulse-amplitude-modulated time-series.

The second bracketed term in (106a) is often unrecognized in probabilistic treatments because of inappropriate use of phase-randomization. Only in the case for which $x(t)$ is purely stationary do we obtain the known formula

$$\hat{S}_y(f) = \tfrac{1}{4}[\hat{S}_x(f - \nu_0) + \hat{S}_x(f + \nu_0)]. \tag{106b}$$

It is not uncommon in probabilistic treatments of frequency conversion to use (106b) erroneously when (106a) is the correct formula. Examples of the error incurred with (106b) are described in [Gardner 1987a].

Example: ***Periodic Sampling***

Let $w(t)$ be a periodic train of impulses,

$$w(t) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(t - nT_0) = \frac{1}{T_0} \sum_{m=-\infty}^{\infty} e^{i2\pi mt/T_0}.$$

Then (84) yields the periodic impulse-sampled time-series

$$y(t) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(nT_0)\, \delta(t - nT_0). \tag{107}$$

It follows directly from (103), with $W_\nu = 1/T_0$ for $\nu = n/T_0$ for all integers n, that

$$\hat{S}_y^\alpha(f) = \frac{1}{T_0^2} \sum_{n,m=-\infty}^{\infty} \hat{S}_x^{\alpha + m/T_0}\left(f - \frac{m}{2T_0} - \frac{n}{T_0}\right). \tag{108}$$

This reveals that periodic sampling creates aliasing in both the f and α parameters. There is another approach to obtaining an equivalent of this spectral correlation aliasing formula that avoids the use of the idealized impulses in (107). Specifically, consider the discrete-time-series $\{x(nT_0) : n = 0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \pm 3, \ldots\}$ that is obtained by periodically sampling the continuous time-series $x(t)$, and let us determine the relationship between the cyclic spectra of $x(t)$ and $\{x(nT_0)\}$. Since the definition of the symmetric version of the limit cyclic autocorrelation, (56), cannot be directly extended to discrete time-series (because the data $\{x(kT_0/2)\}$ does not exist for odd integers k), then the asymmetric version, (55), is extended, and the sinusoidal factor

$e^{-i\pi\alpha kT_0}$ suggested by (57) is introduced to obtain a discrete-time counterpart (an indirect extension) to the symmetric version. That is, the *limit cyclic autocorrelation* for a discrete time-series $\{x(nT_0)\}$ is defined by

$$\tilde{R}_x^\alpha(kT_0) \triangleq \lim_{N\to\infty} \frac{1}{2N+1} \sum_{n=-N}^{N} x(nT_0 + kT_0)x(nT_0)e^{-i2\pi\alpha(n+k/2)T_0}. \tag{109}$$

Motivated by the cyclic Wiener relation, (39), the *limit cyclic spectrum* for $\{x(nT_0)\}$ is defined by

$$\tilde{S}_x^\alpha(f) \triangleq \sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} \tilde{R}_x^\alpha(kT_0)e^{-i2\pi kT_0 f}. \tag{110}$$

In order to determine the relationship between the limit cyclic autocorrelations for $x(t)$ and $\{x(nT_0)\}$, we apply the synchronized averaging identity, (22) in Chapter 10, to definition (109) to obtain (exercise 9)

$$\tilde{R}_x^\alpha(kT_0) = \sum_{m=-\infty}^{\infty} \hat{R}_x^{\alpha+m/T_0}(kT_0)e^{i\pi mk}. \tag{111}$$

Substitution of relation (111) into definition (110) yields the *spectral correlation aliasing formula for periodic time-sampling:*

$$\tilde{S}_x^\alpha(f) = \frac{1}{T_0} \sum_{n,m=-\infty}^{\infty} \hat{S}_x^{\alpha+m/T_0}\left(f - \frac{m}{2T_0} - \frac{n}{T_0}\right), \tag{112}$$

which is equivalent to (108). It follows from (112) that $\tilde{S}_x^\alpha(f)$ exhibits the periodicity properties

$$\tilde{S}_x^\alpha\left(f + \frac{1}{T_0}\right) = \tilde{S}_x^\alpha(f) \tag{113a}$$

$$\tilde{S}_x^{\alpha+1/T_0}\left(f - \frac{1}{2T_0}\right) = \tilde{S}_x^\alpha(f) \tag{113b}$$

$$\tilde{S}_x^{\alpha+2/T_0}(f) = \tilde{S}_x^\alpha(f) \tag{113c}$$

in addition to the symmetry properties (54c)–(54d). Also, we see from (112) that the cyclic spectrum of $x(t)$ is, in general, not obtainable from the cyclic spectrum of $\{x(nT_0)\}$ due to *aliasing effects* in both α and f. However, if $x(t)$ is bandlimited to the *Nyquist bandwidth,*

$$\hat{S}_x(f) = 0, \qquad |f| \geq B < 1/2T_0, \tag{114}$$

then the bandwidth properties (50)–(53) applied to (112) reveal that the support, in the bifrequency plane, of each of the terms in (112) is disjoint from the support of all other terms, as shown in Figure 11-5. Therefore, aliasing does not prevent recovery of $\hat{S}_x^\alpha$ from $\tilde{S}_x^\alpha$, that is,

$$\hat{S}_x^\alpha(f) = T_0\tilde{S}_x^\alpha(f), \qquad |f| < \frac{1}{2T_0} - \frac{|\alpha|}{2} \tag{115a}$$

and

$$\hat{S}_x^\alpha(f) = 0, \qquad |f| \geq \frac{1}{2T_0} - \frac{|\alpha|}{2}. \tag{115b}$$

It should be clarified that even if $x(t)$ is bandlimited to the Nyquist bandwidth, (114), the limit cyclic autocorrelation of $x(t)$ cannot be obtained simply by inverse

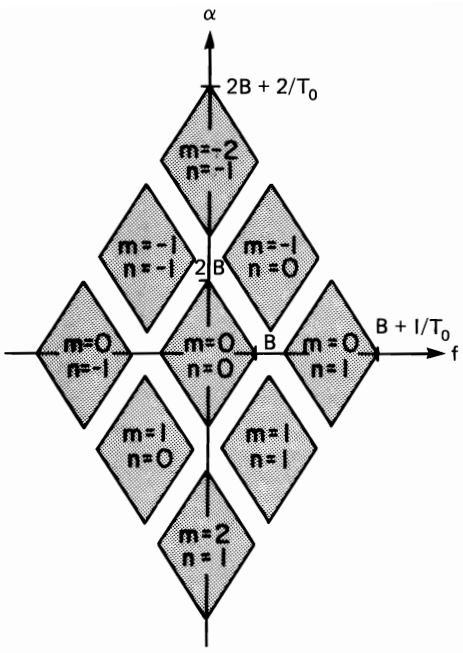


Figure 11-5 Regions of support of the spectral correlation function in the bi-frequency plane for a time-sampled bandlimited time-series.

Fourier transformation of the limit cyclic spectrum for $\{x(nT_0)\}$, because although (115a) holds, (115b) and (113) reveal that aliasing results in the inequality

$$\hat{S}_x^\alpha(f) \neq T_0 \bar{S}_x^\alpha(f), \qquad |f| \geq \frac{1}{2T_0} - \frac{|\alpha|}{2} \tag{115c}$$

in general. Thus, $\hat{S}_x^\alpha(f)$ does not equal $T_0\bar{S}_x^\alpha(f)$ for all $|f| < 1/2T_0$ and $|\alpha| < 1/T_0$. Hence the inversion formula needed (exercise 10) is

$$\hat{R}_x^\alpha(\tau) = T_0 \int_{-B+|\alpha|/2}^{B-|\alpha|/2} \bar{S}_x^\alpha(f) e^{i2\pi f\tau}\, df \tag{116}$$

for $B \leq 1/2T_0$. On the other hand, if $x(t)$ is bandlimited to half the Nyquist bandwidth, $B \leq 1/4T_0$, then $\hat{R}_x^\alpha$ can be recovered from $\bar{S}_x^\alpha$ by inverse Fourier transformation over the fixed band $[-B, B]$. This is easily seen from Figure 11-5. If $x(t)$ is not bandlimited, even the conventional spectrum is affected by aliasing in α as well as f,

$$\bar{S}_x(f) = \frac{1}{T_0} \sum_{n,m=-\infty}^{\infty} \hat{S}_x^{m/T_0}\left(f - \frac{m}{2T_0} - \frac{n}{T_0}\right). \tag{117}$$

This is often unrecognized in probabilistic treatments because of inappropriate use of phase randomization. Only in the case for which $x(t)$ is purely stationary do we obtain the known relationship

$$\bar{S}_x(f) = \frac{1}{T_0} \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \hat{S}_x\left(f - \frac{n}{T_0}\right). \tag{118}$$

In contrast to the above examples, in which $w(t)$ is almost periodic, if $w(t)$ is a purely stationary time-series, then (101) reduces to the continuous convolution

$$\hat{S}_y^\alpha(f) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \hat{S}_x^\alpha(f - \nu)\hat{S}_w(\nu)\, d\nu. \tag{119}$$

Example: ***Random Sampling***

Let $w(t)$ be the purely stationary random pulse train

$$w(t) = \sum_n p(t - t_n), \tag{120}$$

for which

$$\hat{R}_w(\tau) = \lambda r_p(\tau) + \left[\lambda \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} p(t)\, dt\right]^2, \tag{121}$$

where λ is the average rate of occurrence of epochs t_n. This is a time-series from a *Poisson process* [Gardner 1985]). It follows from (121) that

$$\hat{S}_w(f) = \lambda|P(f)|^2 + [\lambda P(0)]^2\, \delta(f). \tag{122}$$

Substitution of (122) into (101) yields the result

$$\hat{S}_y^\alpha(f) = \lambda \hat{S}_x^\alpha(f) \otimes |P(f)|^2 + [\lambda P(0)]^2 \hat{S}_x^\alpha(f). \tag{123}$$

If $p(t)$ is a very narrow pulse—an impulse $p(t) = \delta(t)$, for example—then $y(t)$ is the randomly sampled time-series

$$y(t) = w(t)x(t) = \sum_n x(t_n)\, \delta(t - t_n) \tag{124}$$

and (123) reduces to the *spectral correlation formula for random sampling:*

$$\hat{S}_y^\alpha(f) = \lambda^2 \hat{S}_x^\alpha(f) + \lambda \hat{R}_x^\alpha(0). \tag{125}$$

Thus, the spectral correlation is preserved, except for an additive constant for each α, by random Poisson sampling. Also, the higher the average sampling rate λ is, the more negligible the additive constant is.

The filtering and product modulation operations (83) and (84) can be combined to form any desired periodically (or almost periodically) time-variant linear transformation, since the output of any such transformation can be expressed as

$$y(t) = \sum_\alpha [x(t) \otimes g_\alpha(t)]e^{i2\pi\alpha t} \tag{126}$$

as explained in Chapter 10, Section D. Consequently, the approach developed in this section can be applied to determine the relationship between the cyclic spectra at the input and output of such a transformation. This is the topic of the next section.

D. LINEAR PERIODICALLY TIME-VARIANT TRANSFORMATIONS

1. General Input-Output Relations

A particularly common situation in which second-order periodicity arises is that for which a purely stationary time-series $x(t)$ is subjected to a *linear (almost) periodically time-variant transformation* (LPTV transformation). For example, many modulation systems can be modeled as the scalar response of a multi-input LPTV transformation with purely stationary excitation. This includes am-

plitude modulation (double sideband, single sideband, vestigial sideband, and with or without suppressed carrier), phase and frequency modulation, quadrature-amplitude modulation, pulse-amplitude modulation, pulse-position modulation, all synchronous digital modulations such as phase-shift keying, frequency-shift keying, and so on (most of these examples are described in Chapter 12). Consequently, the study of second-order periodicity is facilitated by general formulas that describe limit cyclic spectra in terms of the parameters of LPTV transformations. This includes limit cyclic spectra *generated* by LPTV transformations of purely stationary time-series as well as limit cyclic spectra that are transformed by LPTV transformations of cyclostationary time-series.

Let us consider the LPTV transformation

$$y(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \boldsymbol{h}(t, u)\boldsymbol{x}(u)\, du, \tag{127}$$

for which $\boldsymbol{x}(t)$ is a column-vector excitation, $y(t)$ is a scalar response, and $\boldsymbol{h}(t, u) = \boldsymbol{h}(t + T_0, u + T_0)$ is the periodically time-variant row-vector of impulse-response functions that specify the transformation. The function $\boldsymbol{h}(t + \tau, t)$ is periodic in t for each τ and can therefore be represented by the Fourier series

$$\boldsymbol{h}(t + \tau, t) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \boldsymbol{g}_n(\tau)e^{i2\pi nt/T_0}, \tag{128a}$$

where

$$\boldsymbol{g}_n(\tau) \triangleq \frac{1}{T_0}\int_{-T_0/2}^{T_0/2} \boldsymbol{h}(t + \tau, t)e^{-i2\pi nt/T_0}\, dt. \tag{128b}$$

The system function, which is defined to be the Fourier transform (see Chapter 8, Section A, Part 2)

$$\boldsymbol{G}(t, f) \triangleq \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \boldsymbol{h}(t, t - \tau)e^{-i2\pi f\tau}\, d\tau, \tag{129}$$

can therefore also be represented by a Fourier series (exercise 11),

$$\boldsymbol{G}(t; f) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \boldsymbol{G}_n\left(f + \frac{n}{T_0}\right)e^{i2\pi nt/T_0}, \tag{130a}$$

where

$$\boldsymbol{G}_n(f) \triangleq \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \boldsymbol{g}_n(\tau)e^{-i2\pi f\tau}\, d\tau. \tag{130b}$$

This Fourier-series representation can be generalized to accommodate almost periodically time-variant linear transformation as follows:

$$\boldsymbol{h}(t + \tau, t) = \sum_{\beta} \boldsymbol{g}_\beta(\tau)e^{i2\pi\beta t} \tag{131a}$$

$$\boldsymbol{g}_\beta(\tau) = \lim_{T\to\infty} \frac{1}{T}\int_{-T/2}^{T/2} \boldsymbol{h}(t + \tau, t)e^{-i2\pi\beta t}\, dt \tag{131b}$$

$$\boldsymbol{G}(t, f) = \sum_{\beta} \boldsymbol{G}_\beta(f + \beta)e^{i2\pi\beta t} \tag{131c}$$

$$\boldsymbol{G}_\beta(f) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \boldsymbol{g}_\beta(\tau)e^{-i2\pi f\tau}\, d\tau. \tag{131d}$$

The sums in (131a) and (131c) contain all terms for which $g_\beta(\tau) \not\equiv 0$. This generalization accommodates linear time-variant transformations that exhibit multiple (incommensurate) periodicities.

By substitution of (131a) into (127) and the result into the definition of the limit cyclic autocorrelation, it can be shown (exercise 12) that[7]

$$\hat{R}_y^\alpha(\tau) = \sum_{\beta,\nu} \operatorname{tr}\{[\hat{\boldsymbol{R}}_x^{\alpha-\beta+\nu}(\tau)e^{-i\pi(\beta+\nu)\tau}] \otimes \boldsymbol{r}_{\beta\nu}^\alpha(-\tau)\}, \tag{132}$$

where $\hat{\boldsymbol{R}}_x^\alpha$ is the matrix of limit cyclic cross correlations of the elements of the vector $\boldsymbol{x}(t)$,

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{R}}_x^\alpha(\tau) \triangleq \lim_{T\to\infty} \frac{1}{T}\int_{-T/2}^{T/2} \boldsymbol{x}\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right)\boldsymbol{x}'\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right)e^{-i2\pi\alpha t}\,dt, \tag{133}$$

and $\boldsymbol{r}_{\beta\nu}^\alpha$ is the matrix of *finite cyclic cross correlations*

$$\boldsymbol{r}_{\beta\nu}^\alpha(\tau) \triangleq \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \boldsymbol{g}_\beta'\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right)\boldsymbol{g}_\nu^*\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right)e^{-i2\pi\alpha t}\,dt. \tag{134}$$

Fourier transformation of (132) and application of the convolution theorem yields (exercise 12)

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{S}}_y^\alpha(f) = \sum_{\beta,\nu} \boldsymbol{G}_\beta\left(f + \frac{\alpha}{2}\right)\hat{\boldsymbol{S}}_x^{\alpha-\beta+\nu}\left(f - \frac{\beta+\nu}{2}\right)\boldsymbol{G}_\nu'\left(f - \frac{\alpha}{2}\right)^*. \tag{135}$$

Formulas (132)–(135) are called the *input-output cyclic autocorrelation and cyclic spectrum relations for (almost) periodic systems*. These formulas reveal that the set of limit cyclic autocorrelations and the set of limit cyclic spectra are each *self-determinant characteristics* under an LPTV transformation, in the sense that the only features of the excitation that determine the limit cyclic autocorrelations (spectra) of the response are the limit cyclic autocorrelations (spectra) of the excitation.

In the special case of an LTI transformation,

$$\boldsymbol{h}(t, u) = \boldsymbol{h}(t - u), \tag{136}$$

formulas (132)–(135) reduce to

$$\hat{R}_y^\alpha(\tau) = \operatorname{tr}\{\hat{\boldsymbol{R}}_x^\alpha(\tau) \otimes \boldsymbol{r}_{\boldsymbol{h}}^\alpha(-\tau)\} \tag{137a}$$

and

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{S}}_y^\alpha(f) = \boldsymbol{H}\left(f + \frac{\alpha}{2}\right)\hat{\boldsymbol{S}}_x^\alpha(f)\boldsymbol{H}'\left(f - \frac{\alpha}{2}\right)^*, \tag{138a}$$

where $\boldsymbol{r}_{\boldsymbol{h}}^\alpha$ is the matrix of finite cyclic cross correlations

$$\boldsymbol{r}_{\boldsymbol{h}}^\alpha(\tau) \triangleq \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \boldsymbol{h}'\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right)\boldsymbol{h}\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right)e^{-i2\pi\alpha t}\,dt, \tag{137b}$$

and $\boldsymbol{H}(f)$ is given by

$$\boldsymbol{H}(f) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \boldsymbol{h}(\tau)e^{-i2\pi f\tau}\,d\tau. \tag{138b}$$

[7] In (132), $\operatorname{tr}\{\cdot\}$ is the *matrix trace operation*.

(Relation (138a) is a generalization of the input-output spectral correlation relation (90) from single-input to multiple-input filters.) Also, in the special case for which the excitation $\boldsymbol{x}(t)$ is purely stationary, (132)–(135) reduce to (exercise 13)

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{R}}_y^{\alpha}(\tau) = \sum_{\beta} \operatorname{tr}\{[\hat{\boldsymbol{R}}_x(\tau)e^{-i\pi(2\beta-\alpha)\tau}] \otimes \boldsymbol{r}_{\beta(\beta-\alpha)}^{\alpha}(-\tau)\} \tag{139}$$

and

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{S}}_y^{\alpha}(f) = \sum_{\beta} \boldsymbol{G}_{\beta}\left(f + \frac{\alpha}{2}\right)\hat{\boldsymbol{S}}_x\left(f + \frac{\alpha}{2} - \beta\right)\boldsymbol{G}'_{\beta-\alpha}\left(f - \frac{\alpha}{2}\right)^*. \tag{140}$$

This result reveals that if the transformation is periodic ($\beta = n/T_0$), then $y(t)$ is purely cyclostationary with period T_0.

By substitution of (131a) into (127) and the result into the definition of the limit cyclic cross correlation, it can be shown (exercise 14) that

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{R}}_{xy}^{\alpha}(\tau) = \sum_{\beta} [\hat{\boldsymbol{R}}_x^{\alpha+\beta}(\tau)e^{i\pi\beta\tau}] \otimes [\boldsymbol{g}'_{\beta}(-\tau)^* e^{i\pi\alpha\tau}]. \tag{141}$$

Fourier transformation of (141) and application of the convolution theorem yields

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{S}}_{xy}^{\alpha}(f) = \sum_{\beta} \hat{\boldsymbol{S}}_x^{\alpha+\beta}\left(\mathrm{f} - \frac{\beta}{2}\right)\boldsymbol{G}'_{\beta}\left(f - \frac{\alpha}{2}\right)^*. \tag{142}$$

In the special case of an LTI transformation, formulas (141)–(142) reduce to

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{R}}_{xy}^{\alpha}(\tau) = \hat{\boldsymbol{R}}_x^{\alpha}(\tau) \otimes [\boldsymbol{h}'(-\tau)e^{i\pi\alpha\tau}] \tag{143}$$

and

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{S}}_{xy}^{\alpha}(f) = \hat{\boldsymbol{S}}_x^{\alpha}(f)\boldsymbol{H}'\left(f - \frac{\alpha}{2}\right)^* \tag{144}$$

(which is a generalization of the time-invariant system identification formula (95) from single-input to multiple-input systems). Also, in the special case for which the excitation $\boldsymbol{x}(t)$ is purely stationary, (141)–(142) reduce to (exercise 14)

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{R}}_{xy}^{\alpha}(\tau) = [\hat{\boldsymbol{R}}_x(\tau)e^{-i\pi\alpha\tau}] \otimes [\boldsymbol{g}'_{\alpha}(-\tau)e^{i\pi\alpha\tau}] \tag{145}$$

and

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{S}}_{xy}^{\alpha}(f) = \hat{\boldsymbol{S}}_x\left(f + \frac{\alpha}{2}\right)\boldsymbol{G}'_{\alpha}\left(-f + \frac{\alpha}{2}\right). \tag{146}$$

Example: ***System Identification***

It is commonly believed that spectral measurement methods of identification of time-variant systems (estimation of their system functions) are useful only for sufficiently slow time variations in the system function (see Chapter 7, Section B, and Chapter 8 in Part I). Nevertheless, the relation (146), reexpressed as

$$\boldsymbol{G}'_{\beta}(f) = [\hat{\boldsymbol{S}}_x(\beta - f)]^{-1}\,\hat{\boldsymbol{S}}_{xy}^{\beta}\left(\frac{\beta}{2} - f\right) \tag{147}$$

and substituted into (131c), yields the *almost periodically time-variant system identification formula:*

$$\boldsymbol{G}(t, f) = \sum_{\beta} [\hat{\boldsymbol{S}}_x(-f)]^{-1}\,\hat{\boldsymbol{S}}_{xy}^{\beta}\left(-f - \frac{\beta}{2}\right)e^{i2\pi\beta t}. \tag{148}$$

Thus, almost periodically time-variant linear systems can in principle be identified, regardless of how fast the time-variations in the system function are, by using spectral correlation measurement methods. This is pursued in Chapter 14, Section C.

Example: ***Noise in Periodic Circuits***

A number of modern signal-processing systems employ periodically switched and modulated linear circuits. An important problem in the case of all electrical circuits for signal processing is the analysis and control of noise at the output of the circuit due to thermal noise from the circuit elements. Typically, each internal noise source is independent of all other internal noise sources in the circuit. Consequently, the linearity of the circuit results in the spectral density of the total output noise being the sum of spectral densities of the individual output-noise components corresponding to each internal noise source. In order to determine the output-noise spectral density due to a particular internal noise source, we need only the system function that specifies the input-output relation for the particular noise source. If the noise source $x(t)$ is stationary, then the output-noise spectral density is, from (140), given by

$$\hat{S}_y(f) = \sum_\alpha |G_\alpha(f)|^2 \, \hat{S}_x(f - \alpha), \tag{149}$$

and if the noise source produces white noise (e.g., thermal noise), then (149) reduces to

$$\hat{S}_y(f) = N_0 \sum_\alpha |G_\alpha(f)|^2. \tag{150}$$

The output-noise variance in this case is given by the integral of (150),

$$\text{var}\{y(t)\} = N_0 \sum_\alpha \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |G_\alpha(f)|^2 \, df \tag{151a}$$

$$= N_0 \sum_\alpha \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |g_\alpha(\tau)|^2 \, d\tau. \tag{151b}$$

Alternative equivalent formulas for output-noise variance are given by (using (131))

$$\text{var}\{y(t)\} = N_0 \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \langle |G(t, f)|^2 \rangle \, df \tag{152a}$$

$$= N_0 \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \langle |h(t + \tau, t)|^2 \rangle \, d\tau, \tag{152b}$$

where $\langle \cdot \rangle$ denotes average over all t for an almost periodic circuit or simply average over one period for a periodic circuit. These four different methods for calculation, (151)–(152), are called the *output-noise variance formulas for (almost) periodic systems*.

2. Rice's Representation

It is well known that *any* time-series $x(t)$ can be expressed in the *quadrature-amplitude modulation* (QAM) form

$$x(t) = c(t)\cos(2\pi f_0 t) - s(t)\sin(2\pi f_0 t) \tag{153}$$

for *any* value of f_0, provided that $c(t)$ and $s(t)$ are given by

$$c(t) = x(t)\cos(2\pi f_0 t) + \overline{x}(t)\sin(2\pi f_0 t) \tag{154a}$$

$$s(t) = \overline{x}(t)\cos(2\pi f_0 t) - x(t)\sin(2\pi f_0 t) \tag{154b}$$

for *any* auxiliary time-series $\bar{x}(t)$. This is shown in Appendix 3-1 in Part I, where it is explained that the QAM representation is particularly useful when $x(t)$ is a band-pass time-series, with spectrum concentrated near $f = f_0$, because then $c(t)$ and $s(t)$ can both be made low-pass time-series, with spectra concentrated around $f = 0$, by appropriate choice of $\bar{x}(t)$. It is shown that an especially appropriate choice of $\bar{x}(t)$ is the Hilbert transform of $x(t)$,

$$\bar{x}(t) = h(t) \otimes x(t), \tag{155a}$$

for which

$$h(t) = \frac{1}{\pi t} \tag{155b}$$

and

$$H(f) = \begin{cases} -i, & f > 0 \\ +i, & f < 0, \end{cases} \tag{155c}$$

because in this case, if $x(t)$ is bandlimited to $f \in [f_0 - B, f_0 + B]$ (and the image band $f \in [-f_0 - B, -f_0 + B]$), then $c(t)$ and $s(t)$ are bandlimited to $f \in [-B, B]$. Furthermore, given *any* time-series in the form of (153), with $c(t)$ and $s(t)$ bandlimited to $f \in [-B, B]$ for $B < f_0$, it is shown that $c(t)$ and $s(t)$ are *uniquely* determined by $x(t)$ and are given by (154), with $\bar{x}(t)$ defined by (155). Moreover, it can be shown that for *any* time-series $x(t)$, (153)–(155) yield a *unique* definition of *envelope*. Specifically, (153) can be reexpressed as

$$x(t) = a(t)\cos[2\pi f_0 t + \phi(t)], \tag{156}$$

for which

$$a(t) = [c^2(t) + s^2(t)]^{1/2} \tag{157a}$$

$$\phi(t) = \tan^{-1}\left[\frac{s(t)}{c(t)}\right]. \tag{157b}$$

Using the characterizations

$$c(t) = \mathrm{Re}\{[x(t) + i\bar{x}(t)]e^{-i2\pi f_0 t}\} \tag{158a}$$

$$s(t) = \mathrm{Im}\{[x(t) + i\bar{x}(t)]e^{-i2\pi f_0 t}\} \tag{158b}$$

from (154), it easily follows that

$$a(t) = |x(t) + i\bar{x}(t)| \tag{159}$$

$$\phi(t) = \arg\{x(t) + i\bar{x}(t)\} - 2\pi f_0 t. \tag{160}$$

Therefore, the envelope $a(t)$ in (156) is independent of the arbitrary choice for f_0. It is determined solely by $x(t)$.

This QAM representation, (153)–(155), is often called *Rice's representation* because of Stephen O. Rice's pioneering work [Rice 1944, 1945, 1948]. It is valid regardless of the statistical properties of $x(t)$. That is, $x(t)$ can be a finite-energy function or it can be a finite-power time-series that is purely stationary, purely cyclostationary, or almost cyclostationary. However, the statistical properties of $x(t)$, $c(t)$, and $s(t)$ have evidently been studied only within the probabilistic framework of stationary stochastic processes (see [Davenport and Root 1958]

and [Papoulis 1984]), which masks statistical properties associated with second-order periodicity, as explained subsequently.

A complete study of the second-order statistical properties, including the limit cyclic correlations and limit cyclic spectra for $x(t)$ and its *in-phase* and *quadrature* components, $c(t)$ and $s(t)$, as well as their conventional limit correlations and spectra, can be based on one general formula for QAM time-series. Specifically, let us consider a time-series, say $y(t)$, in the QAM form:

$$y(t) = z(t)\cos(2\pi f_0 t) + w(t)\sin(2\pi f_0 t). \tag{161}$$

This is a particular LPTV transformation of the two-dimensional vector of time-series $[z(t), w(t)]'$ for which the vector of impulse-response functions is

$$\boldsymbol{h}(t, u) = [\cos(2\pi f_0 t)\,\delta(t-u), \sin(2\pi f_0 t)\,\delta(t-u)] \tag{162}$$

and the vector of corresponding system functions is

$$\boldsymbol{G}(t, f) = [\cos(2\pi f_0 t), \sin(2\pi f_0 t)]. \tag{163}$$

Application of formula (132) yields (exercise 15)

$$\begin{aligned}\hat{R}_y^\alpha(\tau) = {} & \tfrac{1}{2}[\hat{R}_z^\alpha(\tau) + \hat{R}_w^\alpha(\tau)]\cos(2\pi f_0\tau) + \tfrac{1}{2}[\hat{R}_{wz}^\alpha(\tau) - \hat{R}_{zw}^\alpha(\tau)]\sin(2\pi f_0\tau) \\ & + \tfrac{1}{4}\sum_{n=-1,1}\{[\hat{R}_z^{\alpha+2nf_0}(\tau) - \hat{R}_w^{\alpha+2nf_0}(\tau)] + ni[\hat{R}_{wz}^{\alpha+2nf_0}(\tau) + \hat{R}_{zw}^{\alpha+2nf_0}(\tau)]\}\end{aligned} \tag{164}$$

and application of formula (135) yields

$$\begin{aligned}\hat{S}_y^\alpha(f) = {} & \tfrac{1}{4}\sum_{n=-1,1}\{[\hat{S}_w^\alpha(f+nf_0) + \hat{S}_z^\alpha(f+nf_0)] + ni[\hat{S}_{wz}^\alpha(f+nf_0) - \hat{S}_{zw}^\alpha(f+nf_0)]\} \\ & + \tfrac{1}{4}\sum_{n=-1,1}\{[\hat{S}_z^{\alpha+2nf_0}(f) - \hat{S}_w^{\alpha+2nf_0}(f)] + ni[\hat{S}_{wz}^{\alpha+2nf_0}(f) + \hat{S}_{zw}^{\alpha+2nf_0}(f)]\}.\end{aligned} \tag{165}$$

From formula (164) and its Fourier transform (165), we can determine all cyclic correlations and cyclic spectra for $x(t)$, $c(t)$, and $s(t)$, since each of the three representations (153), (154a), and (154b) is of the form (161). For example, with the use of $y = x$, $z = c$, and $w = -s$, and selection of $\alpha = 0$, (164) yields

$$\begin{aligned}\hat{R}_x(\tau) = {} & \tfrac{1}{2}[\hat{R}_c(\tau) + \hat{R}_s(\tau)]\cos(2\pi f_0\tau) + \tfrac{1}{2}[\hat{R}_{cs}(\tau) - \hat{R}_{sc}(\tau)]\sin(2\pi f_0\tau) \\ & + \tfrac{1}{4}\sum_{n=-1,1}\{[\hat{R}_c^{2nf_0}(\tau) - \hat{R}_s^{2nf_0}(\tau)] - ni[\hat{R}_{cs}^{2nf_0}(\tau) + \hat{R}_{sc}^{2nf_0}(\tau)]\}.\end{aligned} \tag{166}$$

This result reveals that the conventional formula (e.g., [Papoulis 1984]), which omits the terms in the sum over $n = -1,1$, is correct only if $c(t)$ and $s(t)$ contain no second-order periodicity with frequency $\alpha = \pm 2f_0$ (e.g., if $c(t)$ and $s(t)$ are bandlimited to $f \in [-f_0, f_0]$) or the second-order periodicity is *balanced* in the sense that

$$\hat{R}_c^{\pm 2f_0}(\tau) \equiv \hat{R}_s^{\pm 2f_0}(\tau) \tag{167a}$$

$$\hat{R}_{cs}^{\pm 2f_0}(\tau) \equiv -\hat{R}_{cs}^{\pm 2f_0}(-\tau). \tag{167b}$$

As another example, with the use of $y = x$, $z = c$, and $w = -s$, and selection of $\alpha = 2f_0$, and assuming that $c(t)$ and $s(t)$ are jointly purely stationary, (164)

yields

$$\hat{R}_x^{\pm 2f_0}(\tau) = \tfrac{1}{4}[\hat{R}_c(\tau) - \hat{R}_s(\tau)] \mp \tfrac{1}{4}i[\hat{R}_{cs}(\tau) + \hat{R}_{sc}(\tau)] \tag{168a}$$

and also, for other values of α,

$$\hat{R}_x^{\alpha}(\tau) \equiv 0, \qquad |\alpha| \neq 2f_0, 0. \tag{168b}$$

This result reveals that $x(t)$ is purely stationary if and only if $c(t)$ and $s(t)$ are not only purely stationary but also have correlations that are *balanced* in the sense that

$$\hat{R}_c(\tau) \equiv \hat{R}_s(\tau) \tag{169a}$$

$$\hat{R}_{cs}(\tau) \equiv -\hat{R}_{cs}(-\tau). \tag{169b}$$

Otherwise, $x(t)$ is purely cyclostationary with period $1/2f_0$. Similarly, it can be shown (see (178a)–(178b)) through use of $y = c$, $z = x$, and $w = \bar{x}$, and also $y = s$, $z = \bar{x}$, and $w = -x$ in (165) that if $x(t)$ is purely cyclostationary with period $1/2f_0$, then $c(t)$ and $s(t)$ are purely stationary if and only if the cyclic spectrum of $x(t)$ is bandlimited,

$$\hat{S}_x^{\pm 2f_0}(f) = 0, \qquad |f| \geq f_0. \tag{170}$$

(However, if $x(t)$ is purely stationary, then as previously stated $c(t)$ and $s(t)$ must be purely stationary [see (178)].) This necessary and sufficient condition is satisfied if and only if either $x(t)$ is bandlimited such that

$$\hat{S}_x(f) = 0, \qquad |f| \geq 2f_0 \tag{171}$$

or $c(t)$ and $s(t)$ are *balanced out of band* in the sense that

$$\hat{S}_c(f) = \hat{S}_s(f), \qquad |f| > f_0 \tag{172a}$$

$$\hat{S}_{sc}(f) = -\hat{S}_{sc}(-f), \qquad |f| > f_0. \tag{172b}$$

Moreover, it can be shown that the second-order periodicity of $x(t)$ at cycle frequency α depends on the second-order periodicity of $c(t)$ and $s(t)$ at *only* the cycle frequency α if and only if the cyclic correlations are balanced in the sense that

$$\hat{R}_c^{\alpha \pm 2f_0}(\tau) \equiv \hat{R}_s^{\alpha \pm 2f_0}(\tau) \tag{173a}$$

$$\hat{R}_{cs}^{\alpha \pm 2f_0}(\tau) \equiv -\hat{R}_{cs}^{\alpha \pm 2f_0}(-\tau). \tag{173b}$$

Otherwise, there is dependence on the second-order periodicity of $c(t)$ and $s(t)$ at the cycle frequencies $\alpha \pm 2f_0$ as well as at α.

The only relations needed in addition to formula (165) to determine completely the cyclic spectra of $c(t)$ and $s(t)$ in terms of the cyclic spectra of $x(t)$ are the following cyclic spectra for Hilbert transforms (which follow from (138a) and (144)):

$$\hat{S}_{\bar{x}}^{\alpha}(f) = \begin{cases} -\hat{S}_x^{\alpha}(f), & |f| < |\alpha|/2 \\ +\hat{S}_x^{\alpha}(f), & |f| > |\alpha|/2 \end{cases} \tag{174a}$$

$$\hat{S}_{x\bar{x}}^{\alpha}(f) = \hat{S}_{\bar{x}x}^{\alpha}(-f) = \begin{cases} -i\hat{S}_x^{\alpha}(f), & f < \alpha/2 \\ +i\hat{S}_x^{\alpha}(f), & f > \alpha/2. \end{cases} \tag{174b}$$

An alternative to the approach based on the general QAM formula (165) for determining explicit formulas for the cyclic spectra of x in terms of c and s, and vice versa, is based on the complex envelope

$$\gamma(t) \triangleq [x(t) + i\,\overline{x}(t)]e^{-i2\pi f_0 t} \tag{175a}$$

$$= c(t) + is(t). \tag{175b}$$

This equation is easily solved to obtain

$$x(t) = \tfrac{1}{2}\gamma(t)e^{i2\pi f_0 t} + \tfrac{1}{2}\gamma^*(t)e^{-i2\pi f_0 t} \tag{176a}$$

$$c(t) = \tfrac{1}{2}\gamma(t) + \tfrac{1}{2}\gamma^*(t) \tag{176b}$$

$$s(t) = -\tfrac{1}{2}i\gamma(t) + \tfrac{1}{2}i\gamma^*(t). \tag{176c}$$

Now, it can be shown (exercise 16) that

$$\hat{S}_x^\alpha(f) = \tfrac{1}{4}[\hat{S}_\gamma^\alpha(f - f_0) + \hat{S}_{\gamma^*}^\alpha(f + f_0) + \hat{S}_{\gamma\gamma^*}^{\alpha - 2f_0}(f) + \hat{S}_{\gamma^*\gamma}^{\alpha + 2f_0}(f)] \tag{177a}$$

$$\hat{S}_\gamma^\alpha(f) = 4\hat{S}_x^\alpha(f + f_0)U(f + f_0 - |\alpha|/2) = \hat{S}_{\gamma^*}^\alpha(-f) \tag{177b}$$

$$\hat{S}_{\gamma\gamma^*}^\alpha(f) = 4\hat{S}_x^{\alpha + 2f_0}(f)U(f_0 - |f| + \alpha/2) \tag{177c}$$

$$\hat{S}_c^\alpha(f) = \tfrac{1}{4}[\hat{S}_\gamma^\alpha(f) + \hat{S}_{\gamma^*}^\alpha(f) + \hat{S}_{\gamma\gamma^*}^\alpha(f) + \hat{S}_{\gamma^*\gamma}^\alpha(f)] \tag{177d}$$

$$\hat{S}_s^\alpha(f) = \tfrac{1}{4}[\hat{S}_\gamma^\alpha(f) + \hat{S}_{\gamma^*}^\alpha(f) - \hat{S}_{\gamma\gamma^*}^\alpha(f) - \hat{S}_{\gamma^*\gamma}^\alpha(f)] \tag{177e}$$

$$\hat{S}_{cs}^\alpha(f) = \tfrac{1}{4}i[\hat{S}_\gamma^\alpha(f) - \hat{S}_{\gamma^*}^\alpha(f) - \hat{S}_{\gamma\gamma^*}^\alpha(f) + \hat{S}_{\gamma^*\gamma}^\alpha(f)], \tag{177f}$$

where U is the unit step function. It follows from (177b)–(177c) that the supports in the bifrequency plane of the four terms in (177a) are disjoint, as shown in Figure 10-3. Substitution of (177b)–(177c) into (177d)–(177f) yields (exercise 16)

$$\begin{aligned}\hat{S}_c^\alpha(f) = {} & \hat{S}_x^\alpha(f + f_0)U(f + f_0 - |\alpha|/2) + \hat{S}_x^\alpha(f - f_0)U(-f + f_0 - |\alpha|/2) \\ & + \hat{S}_x^{\alpha + 2f_0}(f)U(f_0 - |f| + \alpha/2) + \hat{S}_x^{\alpha - 2f_0}(f)U(f_0 - |f| - \alpha/2)\end{aligned} \tag{178a}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\hat{S}_s^\alpha(f) = {} & \hat{S}_x^\alpha(f + f_0)U(f + f_0 - |\alpha|/2) + \hat{S}_x^\alpha(f - f_0)U(-f + f_0 - |\alpha|/2) \\ & - \hat{S}_x^{\alpha + 2f_0}(f)U(f_0 - |f| + \alpha/2) - \hat{S}_x^{\alpha - 2f_0}(f)U(f_0 - |f| - \alpha/2)\end{aligned} \tag{178b}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\hat{S}_{cs}^\alpha(f) = {} & i[\hat{S}_x^\alpha(f + f_0)U(f + f_0 - |\alpha|/2) - \hat{S}_x^\alpha(f - f_0)U(-f + f_0 - |\alpha|/2) \\ & - \hat{S}_x^{\alpha + 2f_0}(f)U(f_0 - |f| + \alpha/2) + \hat{S}_x^{\alpha - 2f_0}(f_0 - |f| - \alpha/2)].\end{aligned} \tag{178c}$$

It follows from (178) that if $x(t)$ is purely stationary, then $c(t)$ and $s(t)$ are jointly purely stationary.

Equations (164), (165), and (178) are called the *cyclic autocorrelation and cyclic spectrum formulas for Rice's representation*. These formulas are easily modified to accommodate the generalization of Rice's representation, in which an arbitrary carrier phase is included so that (153) becomes

$$x(t) = c(t)\cos(2\pi f_0 t + \phi_0) - s(t)\sin(2\pi f_0 t + \phi_0). \tag{179}$$

The modification is described in exercise 17.

Example: ***Modulated Signals***

Nearly all modulated signals are cyclostationary (purely or almost), and many of these are band-pass time-series. Therefore, the preceding formulas are applicable

whenever it is desired to represent such signals by their low-pass components. For example, if $x(t)$ is a binary phase-shift-keyed signal (Chapter 12, Section E) with carrier frequency f_0, then $c(t)$ is a binary-valued pulse-amplitude modulated signal, which is cyclostationary at α equal to all the harmonics of the keying rate, and $s(t) \equiv 0$. If the carrier frequency is an integer multiple of half the keying rate, then the additional terms (the sum over $n = -1, 1$), whose presence is often not recognized in the formula (166) for the limit autocorrelation, are indeed nonzero. They are, however, nonnegligible in magnitude only when the ratio of carrier frequency to keying rate is not large [Gardner 1987a].

E. SUMMARY

In this chapter, the statistical theory of cyclic spectral analysis is presented. The topics covered are described in the introductory paragraph and are not reiterated here. However, it should be emphasized that the fundamental results of cyclic spectral analysis are generalizations of results from the theory of conventional spectral analysis, in the sense that the latter are included as the special case of the former, for which the cycle frequency α is zero, the period T_0 is infinite, or the time-series is purely stationary. For example the *cyclic periodogram-correlogram relation,* (11), the *equivalence between temporally and spectrally smoothed cyclic spectra,* (26) and (43), the *cyclic Wiener relation,* (39), the *periodic Wiener relation,* (44), the *input-output spectral correlation relation for filters,* (90), the *spectral correlation convolution relation for product modulation* (101), the *frequency-conversion formula for spectral correlation,* (105), the *spectral correlation aliasing formula for periodic time-sampling,* (112), the *spectral correlation formula for random sampling,* (125), the *input-output cyclic autocorrelation and cyclic spectrum relations for (almost) periodically time-variant transformations,* (132) and (135), the *almost periodically time-variant system identification formula,* (148), the *output-noise variance formulas for (almost) periodic systems,* (151)–(152), and the *cyclic autocorrelation and cyclic spectrum formulas for Rice's representation,* (164), (165), and (178), are all generalizations of results from the conventional theory and reduce to the conventional results for $\alpha = 0$ or $T_0 = \infty$ or purely stationary time-series.

EXERCISES

1. **(a)** Verify (40), which establishes that the limit cyclic autocorrelation is sinusoidal in the time-origin parameter. *Hint:* Use the change of variables $t' + w = u$ and the fact that the limit cyclic autocorrelation is independent of the time-location parameter t in (15).

(b) To show that the cycle spectrum $\{\alpha\}$ is denumerable, proceed as follows. Use (48) and the fact that

$$\langle n(t)e^{i2\pi\alpha t}\rangle = 0$$

to show that

$$\langle z^2(t)\rangle = \sum_{\alpha} |\hat{R}_x^{\alpha}(\tau)|^2 + \langle n^2(t)\rangle.$$

Thus, since $\langle z^2(t)\rangle < \infty$, then (47) is satisfied, and therefore the number of finite terms in the sum over α must be denumerable; otherwise the value of the sum could not be finite.

2. To show that the finite-time mean

$$M_n^0(t)_T = \frac{1}{T}\int_{-T/2}^{T/2} n(t+u)\,du$$

for $n(t) = \text{sign}(t)$ does not converge in the temporal mean-square sense, proceed as follows. Show that

$$M_n^0(t)_T = \begin{cases} -1, & t \leqslant -T/2 \\ 2t/T, & |t| < T/2 \\ +1, & t \geqslant +T/2 \end{cases}$$

and therefore that the pointwise limit (the limit for each fixed time point t) is zero,

$$\hat{M}_n^0 = 0.$$

Then show that

$$\lim_{S\to\infty} \frac{1}{S}\int_{-S/2}^{S/2} [M_n^0(t)_T - \hat{M}_n^0]^2\,dt = 1 \neq 0$$

for all T, and therefore that $M_n^0(t)_T$ does not converge in temporal mean square.

3. **(a)** Use (49) and (50) to verify (51) for the region of potential support for the cyclic spectra of a low-pass time-series.
   (b) Use (49) and (52) to verify (53) for the region of potential support for the cyclic spectra of a high-pass time-series.
4. **(a)** Verify the symmetry properties (54a)–(54d) for a real time-series.
   (b) Verify the symmetry properties (70a)–(70d) for a pair of real time-series.
   (c) Use the sinusoidal property (40) to show that the asymmetric limit cyclic autocorrelation (55) is related to the symmetric limit cyclic autocorrelation (56) by (57). *Hint:* Let $t' = \tau/2$ in (40).
5. Verify (60) for the real and imaginary parts of the limit cyclic autocorrelation.
6. **(a)** Verify the Parseval relations (61a)–(61b).
   (b) Verify the Parseval relations (61c)–(61d).
   (c) Verify the Parseval relations (62a)–(62b).
7. Derive the discrete-convolution relation (100) from (98). *Hint:* Simply apply the convolution theorem for the Fourier-series transform.
8. Derive the limit cyclic autocorrelation (102b) for the almost periodic time-series (102a).
9. Use the synchronized averaging identity (22) in Chapter 10 to derive the relation (111) for time sampling from the definition (109).
10. Verify the inversion formula (116) for time sampling using (112) with the aid of Figure 11-5.
11. Use (128) and (129) to verify the representation (130) for the system function of an LPTV transformation.
12. **(a)** Use (127) and (131a) to derive the input-output cyclic autocorrelation relation (132) for an LPTV transformation.
    (b) Use (132) to derive the input-output spectral correlation relation (135) for an LPTV transformation.
13. **(a)** Show that the input-output relations (132)–(135) reduce to (137)–(138) for an LTI transformation.

(b) Show that the input-output relations (132)–(135) reduce to (139)–(140) for a purely stationary excitation.

14. (a) Use (127) and (131a) to derive the input-output cyclic cross-correlation relation (141) for an LPTV transformation.

(b) Use (141) to derive the input-output cross–spectral correlation relation (142) for an LPTV transformation.

(c) Show that the input-output relations (141)–(142) reduce to (143)–(144) for an LTI transformation.

(d) Show that the input-output relations (141)–(142) reduce to (145)–(146) for a purely stationary excitation.

15. (a) Use (128b), (162), and (132)–(134) to derive (164) for the limit cyclic autocorrelation for the QAM time–series (153).

(b) Use (128b), (130b), (162), and (135) to derive (165) for the limit cyclic spectral density for the QAM time-series (153).

(c) Determine the Fourier transform of (166) for Rice's representation by using (165).

16. (a) For Rice's representation, use (176a) to derive (177a).

(b) Use (174) and (175a) to derive (177b) and (177c).

(c) Use (176b) and (176c) to derive (177d)–(177f).

(d) Substitute (177b) and (177c) into (177d) and (177f) to derive (178a)–(178c).

17. In order to generalize the spectral-correlation relations for Rice's representation to accommodate an arbitrary carrier phase as in (179), proceed as follows. Show that for

$$x'(t) = c'(t)\cos(2\pi f_0 t + \phi_0) - s'(t)\sin(2\pi f_0 t + \phi_0)$$

and

$$x(t) = c(t)\cos(2\pi f_0 t) - s(t)\sin(2\pi f_0 t)$$

we can make $x(t) = x'(t - t_0)$ by making $c'(t - t_0) = c(t)$ and $s'(t - t_0) = s(t)$ for $t_0 = \phi_0/2\pi f_0$. Then use the relation

$$\hat{S}_{x'}^{\alpha}(f)e^{-i2\pi\alpha t_0} = \hat{S}_{x}^{\alpha}(f)$$

and analogous relations for $\hat{S}_{c'}^{\alpha}(f)$, $\hat{S}_{s'}^{\alpha}(f)$, and $\hat{S}_{s'c'}^{\alpha}(f)$ to express $\hat{S}_{x'}^{\alpha}(f)$ in terms of $\hat{S}_{c'}^{\alpha}(f)$, $\hat{S}_{s'}^{\alpha}(f)$, and $\hat{S}_{s'c'}^{\alpha}(f)$ by using (165) with $y = x$, $z = c$, $w = -s$. Then use the same approach with (178) to express $\hat{S}_{c'}^{\alpha}(f)$, $\hat{S}_{s'}^{\alpha}(f)$, and $\hat{S}_{s'c'}^{\alpha}(f)$ in terms of $\hat{S}_{x'}^{\alpha}(f)$.

18. (a) Consider the contaminated measurements

$$y'(t) = y(t) + m(t)$$
$$x'(t) = x(t) + n(t)$$

of the excitation and response of a linear time-invariant system

$$y(t) = h(t) \otimes x(t).$$

Show that the transfer function can be obtained from spectral correlation measurements according to (97), provided that $n(t)$ and $m(t)$ exhibit no cyclostationarity with cycle frequency α but that $x(t)$ does exhibit such cyclostationarity.

(b) Consider an amplitude-modulated sine wave

$$x(t) = a(t)\cos(2\pi f_0 t + \theta)$$

as the system excitation. Then, as shown in Chapter 12,

$$\hat{S}_{x}^{\alpha}(f) = \tfrac{1}{4}\hat{S}_{a}(f)e^{i2\theta}, \qquad \alpha = 2f_0.$$

If $H(f)$ is to be measured over the spectral band $[b, B]$ using (97), then what must the spectral support of $\hat{S}_a(f)$ be and what values of f_0 are acceptable?

19. The PSD for the product of two periodic waveforms cannot be obtained from the PSDs of the two individual waveforms. Verify this, and obtain an explicit formula for the PSD of the product waveform by using (101).

20. **(a)** Explain heuristically why

$$|\hat{C}_x^{\alpha}(f)| = 1, \qquad \alpha = 2f_0, \qquad |f| < f_0$$

for $x(t) = a(t)\cos(2\pi f_0 t + \theta)$, assuming that $\hat{S}_a(f) = 0, \qquad |f| \geq f_0$.

Hint: Treat $a(t)$ and $x(t)$ as Fourier-transformable functions, and describe the relationship between the spectral components of $x(t)$ at frequencies $f + f_0$ and $f - f_0$.

(b) Explain heuristically why

$$|\hat{C}_y^{\alpha}(f)| \equiv |\hat{C}_x^{\alpha}(f)|$$

for $y(t) = x(t) \otimes h(t)$, assuming $H(f) \neq 0$ for all f. *Hint:* Treat $x(t)$ and $y(t)$ as Fourier transformable functions, and describe the relationship between the spectral components of $x(t)$ and $y(t)$ at frequency f.

21. **(a)** Consider the sine wave time-series

$$x(t) = \cos(2\pi f_0 t)$$
$$y(t) = \cos(2\pi f_1 t + \theta_1) + \sin(2\pi f_2 t + \theta_2),$$

and derive their limit cyclic autocorrelation functions and their limit cyclic spectra. Draw graphs of the limit cyclic spectra as surfaces above the bifrequency (f, α) plane.

(b) Consider the two complex sinewaves

$$x(t) = e^{i2\pi f_1 t}$$
$$y(t) = e^{i2\pi f_2 t},$$

and calculate their finite-time complex spectra, $X_T(t, f)$ and $Y_T(t, f)$. Then evaluate their normalized correlation

$$\frac{1}{T}\left\langle X_T\left(t, f + \frac{\alpha}{2}\right) Y_T^*\left(t, f - \frac{\alpha}{2}\right)\right\rangle,$$

and finally let $T \to \infty$ to obtain the spectral cross-correlation function

$$\hat{S}_{xy}^{\alpha}(f) = \delta_{\alpha-(f_1-f_2)}\, \delta\left(f - \frac{f_1 + f_2}{2}\right). \tag{180}$$

(c) It would appear from the derivation in (b) that the spectral cross-coherence function for $x(t)$ and $y(t)$ should be given by

$$\hat{C}_{xy}^{\alpha}(f) = \begin{cases} 1, & \alpha = f_1 - f_2, \quad f = \dfrac{f_1 + f_2}{2} \\ 0, & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

Show that substitution into the definition

$$\hat{C}_{xy}^{\alpha}(f) \triangleq \frac{\hat{S}_{xy}^{\alpha}(f)}{[\hat{S}_x(f + \alpha/2)\hat{S}_y(f - \alpha/2)]^{1/2}} \tag{181}$$

yields a ratio of impulses which is undefined. In order to justify the heuristic approach of simply canceling like impulsive factors in numerator and denominator, show that the same result is obtained if the limit $T \to \infty$ is taken after the ratio

is formed, rather than before:

$$\hat{C}_{xy}^{\alpha}(f) \triangleq \lim_{T\to\infty} \frac{\frac{1}{T}\left\langle X_T(t, f+\alpha/2)Y_T^*(t, f-\alpha/2)\right\rangle}{\left[\frac{1}{T}\left\langle |X_T(t,f)|^2\right\rangle \frac{1}{T}\left\langle |Y_T(t,f)|^2\right\rangle\right]^{1/2}}. \tag{182}$$

(d) Apply the results of (b) and (c) to determine the spectral autocoherence function for $x(t)$ in (a).

(e) Show that the mean $\langle X_T(t,f)\rangle$ for $x(t) = e^{i2\pi f_1 t}$ is not zero at $f = f_1$. Consequently, the coherence function calculated in (a)–(d) is equal to the ratio of a correlation to the geometric mean of the mean squares, rather than the ratio of a covariance to the geometric mean of the variances. Thus, it is not a correlation coefficient. Nevertheless, it can be interpreted as a correlation coefficient as follows. Let

$$x(t) = a(t)e^{i2\pi f_1 t}$$
$$y(t) = a(t)e^{i2\pi f_2 t},$$

where $a(t)$ is purely stationary and has limit spectral density

$$\hat{S}_a(f) = \begin{cases} 1/\Delta, & |f| \leq \Delta/2 \\ 0, & |f| > \Delta/2. \end{cases}$$

Show that $\hat{C}_{xy}^{\alpha}(f)$ defined by (181) is indeed a correlation coefficient and that in the limit $\Delta \to 0$ it is equal to $\hat{C}_{xy}^{\alpha}(f)$ obtained in (c). Since $a(t) \to 1$ (in temporal mean square) as $\Delta \to 0$, then we see that $\hat{C}_{xy}^{\alpha}(f)$ can indeed be interpreted as a correlation coefficient for pure sine wave time-series.

12

EXAMPLES OF CYCLIC SPECTRA

It is established in the preceding two chapters that modulated signals, by virtue of their cyclostationarity, exhibit spectral correlation. There are various ways that the spectral correlation properties that are characteristic of modulated signals can be exploited in practice. Specific problem areas where spectral correlation has been used or proposed for use include detection of spread spectrum signals masked by broadband noise and multiple narrow-band interference, classification and identification of modulation type for signals hidden in noise, synchronization to pulse-train timing and sine wave carrier phase, extraction of modulated and multiplexed transmitted signals from received signals that are corrupted by noise, interference, and channel dispersion, estimation of time difference of arrival of modulated signals masked by noise and interference, and identification of time-invariant systems subjected to cyclostationary excitation using contaminated measurements. These application areas are described in Chapter 14. In this chapter, the general theory presented in the preceding two chapters is used to derive formulas for the spectral correlation functions (cyclic spectral density functions) from mathematical models of a variety of modulation types, including pulse and carrier amplitude modulation, quadrature-carrier amplitude modulation, phase and frequency carrier modulation, phase- and frequency-shift keying, digital pulse modulation, and spread-spectrum modulation. The magnitudes and phases of the resultant spectral correlation functions are graphed as surfaces above the bifrequency plane. This greatly facilitates comparing and contrasting the spectral correlation characteristics of different modulation types.

A. PULSE AND CARRIER AMPLITUDE MODULATION

In this section, we study conventional amplitude-modulated sine wave carriers with and without carrier phase fluctuation, conventional amplitude-modulated pulse trains with and without pulse-timing jitter, and other more specialized amplitude-modulation types such as stacked-carrier spread spectrum and pulsed-noise signals. All these signals can be derived from product modulation and filtering operations on unmodulated signals.

Consider the generalized *amplitude modulation* (AM) waveform

$$x(t) = a(t)p(t), \tag{1a}$$

for which $p(t)$ is a periodic (or almost periodic) carrier with Fourier series

$$p(t) = \sum_{\beta} P_\beta \, e^{i2\pi\beta t}. \tag{1b}$$

Examples of this type of modulation are conventional AM signals, stacked carrier spread-spectrum signals and pulsed-noise signals. Equation (1) is an LPTV transformation of $a(t)$ for which the Fourier coefficient functions $g_\beta(\tau)$ of the impulse-response function are given by

$$g_\beta(\tau) = P_\beta \, \delta(\tau), \tag{2a}$$

where

$$P_\beta \triangleq \lim_{T\to\infty} \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} p(t) e^{-i2\pi\beta t} \, dt. \tag{2b}$$

Therefore, formula (132) in Chapter 11 can be applied (exercise 1) to obtain the limit cyclic autocorrelation

$$\hat{R}_x^\alpha(\tau) = \sum_{\beta,\nu} P_\nu P_{\beta-\nu} \, \hat{R}_a^{\alpha-\beta}(\tau) e^{-i\pi(\beta-2\nu)\tau}. \tag{3}$$

Fourier transformation of (3) yields the limit cyclic spectrum

$$\hat{S}_x^\alpha(f) = \sum_{\beta,\nu} P_\nu P_{\beta-\nu} \hat{S}_a^{\alpha-\beta}\left(f - \nu + \frac{\beta}{2}\right). \tag{4}$$

Observe that this agrees with formula (103) in Chapter 11, obtained from the spectral correlation convolution relation (101).

For the special case in which $a(t)$ is purely stationary, (4) reduces to

$$\hat{S}_x^\alpha(f) = \sum_{\nu} P_\nu P_{\alpha-\nu} \hat{S}_a\left(f - \nu + \frac{\alpha}{2}\right). \tag{5}$$

If $a(t)$ is white, then it follows from (5) that the autocoherence magnitude is given by (exercise 1)

$$|\hat{C}_x^\alpha(f)| = \frac{\left|\sum_\nu P_\nu P_{\alpha-\nu}\right|}{\sum_\nu |P_\nu|^2}, \tag{6}$$

where $P_{-\nu} = P_\nu^*$. Equation (6) is a kind of correlation-coefficient sequence for the sequence of Fourier coefficients $\{P_\nu\}$. As an example of (6), if $x(t)$ is a pulsed

white-noise signal, then $\{P_\beta\}$ are the Fourier coefficients of an on-off square wave, with period T_0 and duty cycle of say 100η percent,

$$P_\beta = \frac{1}{T_0}\int_0^{\eta T_0} e^{-i2\pi\beta t}\,dt = e^{-i\pi\eta\beta T_0}\frac{\sin(\pi\eta\beta T_0)}{\pi\beta T_0}.$$

As an example of (5), if $x(t)$ is a stacked carrier AM signal, then P_β is a constant for a finite set of values of β, such as $\beta = f_0 + n\Delta f$ for $n = 0, 1, 2, 3, \ldots, N - 1$, and P_β is zero for all other values of β. Let us consider some other examples in more detail.

Example: ***Amplitude Modulation***

If $p(t)$ is given by

$$p(t) = \cos(2\pi f_0 t + \phi_0), \tag{7}$$

then we have conventional AM and (3) and (4) reduce to

$$\hat{R}_x^\alpha(\tau) = \tfrac{1}{2}\hat{R}_a^\alpha(\tau)\cos(2\pi f_0\tau) + \tfrac{1}{4}\hat{R}_a^{\alpha+2f_0}(\tau)e^{-i2\phi_0} + \tfrac{1}{4}\hat{R}_a^{\alpha-2f_0}(\tau)e^{i2\phi_0} \tag{8}$$

and

$$\hat{S}_x^\alpha(f) = \tfrac{1}{4}[\hat{S}_a^\alpha(f + f_0) + \hat{S}_a^\alpha(f - f_0) + \hat{S}_a^{\alpha+2f_0}(f)e^{-i2\phi_0} + \hat{S}_a^{\alpha-2f_0}(f)e^{i2\phi_0}]. \tag{9}$$

This result can be used to obtain the cyclic spectra for other types of modulation that involve an amplitude-modulated carrier. Examples for which $a(t)$ is cyclostationary are binary phase-shift keying and amplitude-shift keying, which are treated in Section E. For the special case in which the amplitude $a(t)$ is purely stationary, $x(t)$ is purely cyclostationary with period $T_0 = 1/2f_0$, and (9) reduces to

$$\hat{S}_x^\alpha(f) = \begin{cases} \tfrac{1}{4}\hat{S}_a(f + f_0) + \tfrac{1}{4}\hat{S}_a(f - f_0), & \alpha = 0 \\ \tfrac{1}{4}\hat{S}_a(f)e^{\pm i2\phi_0}, & \alpha = \pm 2f_0 \\ 0, & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases} \tag{10}$$

A typical graph of the spectral correlation magnitude surface $|\hat{S}_x^\alpha(f)|$ is shown in Figure 12-1. It follows from (10) that the magnitude of the autocoherence of $x(t)$

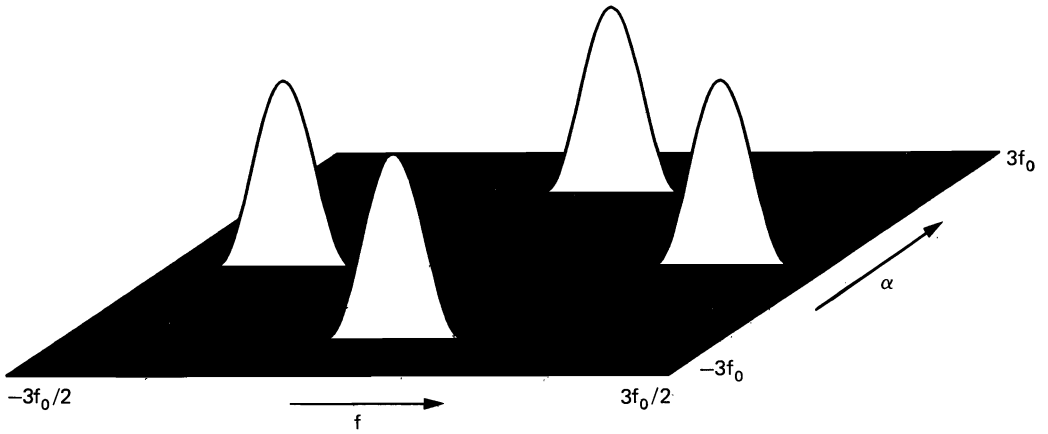


Figure 12-1 Spectral correlation magnitude surface for an amplitude-modulated sine wave.

is given by (exercise 1)

$$|\hat{C}_x^\alpha(f)| = \frac{\hat{S}_a(f)}{[\hat{S}_a(f)^2 + \hat{S}_a(f+\alpha)\hat{S}_a(f) + \hat{S}_a(f-\alpha)\hat{S}_a(f) + \hat{S}_a(f+\alpha)\hat{S}_a(f-\alpha)]^{1/2}} \tag{11}$$

for $\alpha = \pm 2f_0$. Consequently, if $a(t)$ is bandlimited such that $\hat{S}_a(f) = 0$ for $|f| \geq B$ and $\hat{S}_a(f) \neq 0$ for $|f| < B$, with $B < f_0$, then

$$|\hat{C}_x^\alpha(f)| = \begin{cases} 1, & |f| < B \text{ and } |\alpha| = 2f_0 \\ 0, & |f| \geq B \text{ or } |\alpha| \neq 2f_0 \end{cases} \tag{12}$$

and $x(t)$ is completely coherent for $\alpha = \pm 2f_0$ and all frequencies f for which it is not completely incoherent because there is no power density. But if $B > f_0$, then $|\hat{C}_x^\alpha(f)| < 1$ for $|f| > 2f_0 - B$. For example, if $a(t)$ is white ($\hat{S}_a(f) = A_0$ for $-\infty < f < \infty$), then $|\hat{C}_x^\alpha(f)| = \frac{1}{2}$ for $-\infty < f < \infty$ and $|\alpha| = 2f_0$.

Example: ***Pulse-Amplitude Modulation***

If $p(t)$ is given by

$$p(t) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(t - nT_0), \tag{13}$$

then $P_\beta = 1/T_0$ for $\beta = m/T_0$ for all integers m, and therefore (4) yields

$$\hat{S}_x^\alpha(f) = \frac{1}{T_0^2} \sum_{n,m=-\infty}^{\infty} \hat{S}_a^{\alpha - m/T_0}\left(f - \frac{n}{T_0} + \frac{m}{2T_0}\right). \tag{14}$$

If the product time-series (1) and (13) is filtered using an impulse-response function $q(t)$, then $y(t) = x(t) \otimes q(t)$ is the *pulse-amplitude modulation* (PAM) signal

$$y(t) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} a(nT_0)q(t - nT_0). \tag{15}$$

Application of the input-output spectral correlation relation for filters, (90) in Chapter 11, to (14) yields

$$\hat{S}_y^\alpha(f) = \frac{1}{T_0^2} Q\left(f + \frac{\alpha}{2}\right) Q^*\left(f - \frac{\alpha}{2}\right) \sum_{n,m=-\infty}^{\infty} \hat{S}_a^{\alpha - m/T_0}\left(f - \frac{n}{T_0} + \frac{m}{2T_0}\right) \tag{16}$$

for this PAM signal. The spectral correlation aliasing formula (112) in Chapter 11 (with $x(t)$ there replaced by $a(t)$) applied to (16) yields the alternative formula for PAM

$$\hat{S}_y^\alpha(f) = \frac{1}{T_0} Q\left(f + \frac{\alpha}{2}\right) Q^*\left(f - \frac{\alpha}{2}\right) \tilde{S}_a^\alpha(f). \tag{17}$$

If $a(t)$ is purely stationary, then (recall that $\tilde{S}_a^{\alpha + k/T_0}(f) = \tilde{S}_a^\alpha(f + k/2T_0)$) (17) reduces to

$$\hat{S}_y^\alpha(f) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{T_0} Q(f + \alpha/2)Q^*(f - \alpha/2)\tilde{S}_a(f + \alpha/2), & \alpha = k/T_0 \\ 0, & \alpha \neq k/T_0 \end{cases} \tag{18}$$

for all integers k. It follows from (18) that the autocoherence magnitude is given by (exercise 2)

$$|\hat{C}_y^\alpha(f)| = 1, \qquad \alpha = \frac{k}{T_0} \tag{19}$$

for all f for which $\hat{S}_y(f \pm \alpha/2) \neq 0$. Therefore, the PAM signal is completely coherent at $\alpha = k/T_0$ for all integers k and all f for which the signal is not completely incoherent because there is no power density. Graphs of the spectral correlation magnitude and phase surfaces for $\hat{S}_y^{\alpha}(f)$ for a white amplitude sequence $\{a(nT_0)\}$ and a rectangle pulse $q(t)$ of width T_0 are shown in Figure 12-2.

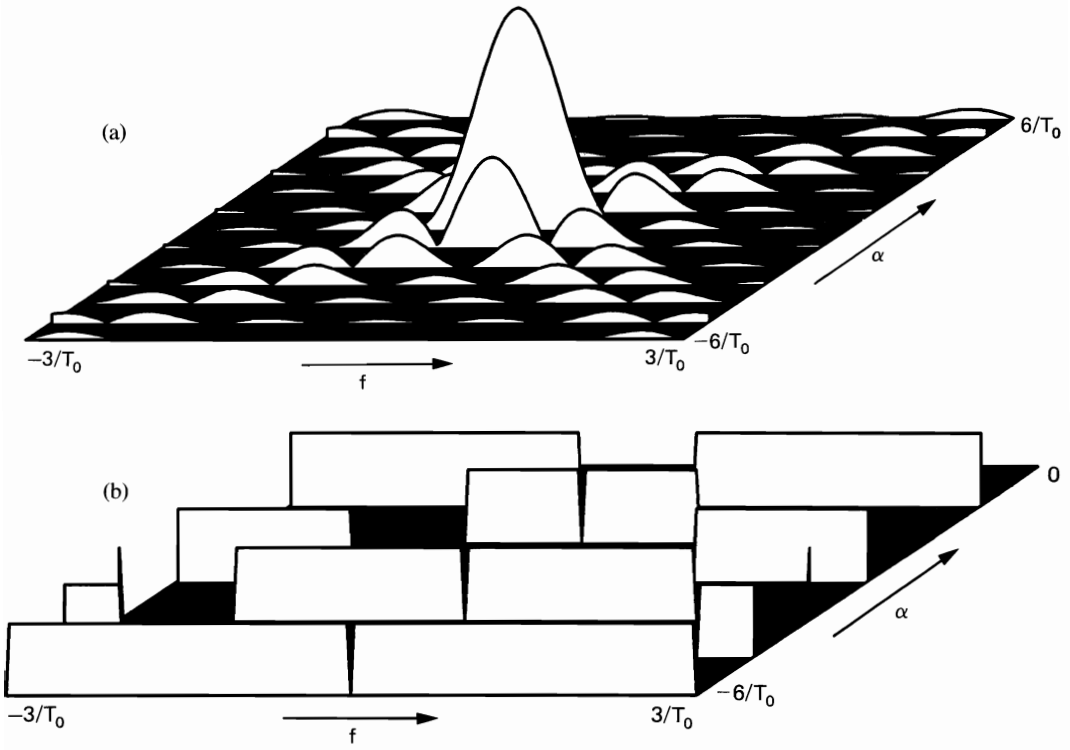


Figure 12-2 Spectral correlation surface for a pulse-amplitude-modulated pulse train. (a) Magnitude. (b) Phase (range: 0—π).

Example: ***Jittered PAM***

The more realistic model of PAM that incorporates pulse-timing jitter

$$y(t) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} a_n \, q(t - nT_0 - \epsilon_n) \tag{20}$$

can be reexpressed as

$$y(t) = [a(t)w(t)] \otimes q(t), \tag{21}$$

where $w(t)$ is the jittered impulse train

$$w(t) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(t - nT_0 - \epsilon_n) \tag{22}$$

and $a_n = a(nT_0 - \epsilon_n)$. This model is appropriate for either jitter that occurs in the process of forming the PAM signal or jitter that occurs after the PAM signal has been formed, provided in this latter case that $a(t)$ is sufficiently narrow band (low-

pass) or broadband that the statistics of $\{a_n\}$ are independent of the jitter. The general formulas (90) and (101) in Chapter 11 applied to (21) (assuming $\{\epsilon_n\}$ and $a(t)$ are statistically independent) yield

$$\hat{S}_y^\alpha(f) = Q\left(f + \frac{\alpha}{2}\right)Q^*\left(f - \frac{\alpha}{2}\right) \sum_\beta \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \hat{S}_a^{\alpha-\beta}(f - v)\hat{S}_w^\beta(v)\, dv, \tag{23}$$

and for a purely stationary amplitude time-series $a(t)$ this reduces to

$$\hat{S}_y^\alpha(f) = Q\left(f + \frac{\alpha}{2}\right)Q^*\left(f - \frac{\alpha}{2}\right)[\hat{S}_a(f) \otimes \hat{S}_w^\alpha(f)]. \tag{24}$$

If the jitter sequence $\{\epsilon_n\}$ is purely stationary, then $w(t)$ is purely cyclostationary with period T_0, and $y(t)$ is therefore also purely cyclostationary with period T_0. However, the strength of spectral correlation at $\alpha = k/T_0$ will be attenuated by the convolution in (24). On the other hand, if $\{\epsilon_n\}$ is an independent-increment sequence (in the fraction-of-time sense) [Gardner 1985], then $w(t)$ will be purely stationary and so too will $y(t)$ be. Nevertheless, $y(t)$ can still exhibit reliably measurable spectral correlation locally in time. The former (purely stationary) model is appropriate for jitter relative to a tracking clock synchronized (imperfectly) to $y(t)$, whereas the latter (independent-increment) model is appropriate for absolute jitter and drift. It can be shown that for an independent sequence of jitter variables $\{\epsilon_n\}$, the spectral correlation function is given by (exercise 3)

$$\begin{aligned}\hat{S}_w^\alpha(f) = {} & \frac{1}{T_0^2} \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \Psi_\epsilon\left(\frac{2\pi n}{T_0}\right)\Psi_\epsilon^*\left(\frac{2\pi[n + k]}{T_0}\right) \delta\left(f + \frac{n}{T_0} + \frac{k}{2T_0}\right) \\ & + \frac{1}{T_0}\left[\Psi_\epsilon^*\left(\frac{2\pi k}{T_0}\right) - \Psi_\epsilon^*\left(2\pi\left[f + \frac{k}{2T_0}\right]\right)\Psi_\epsilon\left(2\pi\left[f - \frac{k}{2T_0}\right]\right)\right], \qquad \alpha = \frac{k}{T_0}\end{aligned} \tag{25}$$

for all integers k and is zero for all other values of α. The function Ψ_ϵ is the characteristic function for the sequence $\{\epsilon_n\}$, defined by

$$\Psi_\epsilon(\omega) \triangleq \lim_{N\to\infty} \frac{1}{2N + 1} \sum_{n=-N}^{N} \exp\{i\omega\epsilon_n\}. \tag{26}$$

In general, the larger the variance of $\{\epsilon_n\}$ is, the narrower Ψ_ϵ will be, and the more the spectral correlation in $y(t)$ will be attenuated. As an example, if ϵ_n has Gaussian fraction-of-time density with zero mean and variance σ_ϵ^2, then (see exercise 18, Chapter 5, Part I)

$$\Psi_\epsilon(\omega) = \exp\{-\tfrac{1}{2}\sigma_\epsilon^2\, \omega^2\}. \tag{27}$$

Example: ***Phase-Deviated AM***

The more realistic model for AM that incorporates carrier phase deviation

$$x(t) = a(t)\cos[2\pi f_0 t + \phi(t)] \tag{28}$$

is still an example of product modulation, and therefore formula (101) in Chapter 11 applies (assuming that $\phi(t)$ and $a(t)$ are statistically independent) to yield

$$\hat{S}_x^\alpha(f) = \sum_\beta \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \hat{S}_a^{\alpha-\beta}(f - v)\hat{S}_w^\beta(v)\, dv, \tag{29}$$

where

$$w(t) = \cos[2\pi f_0 t + \phi(t)]. \tag{30}$$

As explained in Section C, the spectral correlation function for the phase-modulated sine wave (30) is given by the Fourier transform of the cyclic autocorrelation function

$$\hat{R}_w^\alpha(\tau) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{2}\mathrm{Re}\{\Psi_\tau(1, -1)\exp(i2\pi f_0\tau)\}, & \alpha = 0 \\ \frac{1}{4}\Psi_\tau(1, 1), & \alpha = 2f_0 \\ \frac{1}{4}\Psi_\tau(1, 1)^*, & \alpha = -2f_0 \\ 0, & \alpha \neq \pm 2f_0, 0, \end{cases} \tag{31}$$

where the function Ψ_τ is the joint characteristic function for $\phi(t + \tau/2)$ and $\phi(t - \tau/2)$,

$$\Psi_\tau(\omega_1, \omega_2) \triangleq \lim_{T\to\infty} \frac{1}{T}\int_{-T/2}^{T/2} \exp\left\{i\left[\phi\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right)\omega_1 + \phi\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right)\omega_2\right]\right\} dt. \tag{32}$$

In general, the larger the variance of $\phi(t)$ is, the smaller $\Psi_\tau(1, 1)$ will be in magnitude, and the more the spectral correlation in $x(t)$ will be attenuated. For example, if $\phi(t)$ is a purely stationary Gaussian time-series with zero mean, then (see exercise 18, Chapter 5, Part I)

$$\Psi_\tau(1, 1) = \exp\{-[\hat{R}_\phi(0) + \hat{R}_\phi(\tau)]\}. \tag{33}$$

For the case of small mean-square phase jitter, $\hat{R}_\phi(0) \ll 1$, the linear approximation

$$\Psi_\tau(1, 1) \cong 1 - \hat{R}_\phi(0) - \hat{R}_\phi(\tau)$$

can be used in (31) and (29) to obtain a simple explicit formula for $\hat{S}_x^\alpha(f)$ in terms of $\hat{S}_\phi(f)$ (exercise 3).

B. QUADRATURE-CARRIER AMPLITUDE MODULATION

Consider the quadrature-carrier amplitude-modulation (QAM) time-series

$$x(t) = c(t)\cos(2\pi f_0 t) - s(t)\sin(2\pi f_0 t) \tag{34a}$$

$$= a(t)\cos[2\pi f_0 t + \phi(t)], \tag{34b}$$

for which

$$a(t) = \sqrt{c(t)^2 + s(t)^2} \tag{34c}$$

$$\phi(t) = \tan^{-1}\left[\frac{s(t)}{c(t)}\right] \tag{34d}$$

$$c(t) = a(t)\cos[\phi(t)] \tag{34e}$$

$$s(t) = a(t)\sin[\phi(t)]. \tag{34f}$$

This is a particular LPTV transformation of the two-dimensional vector of time-series $[c(t), s(t)]'$, for which the vector of impulse-response functions is

$$\boldsymbol{h}(t, u) = [\cos(2\pi f_0 t)\,\delta(t - u), -\sin(2\pi f_0 t)\,\delta(t - u)]$$

and the vector of corresponding system functions is

$$\boldsymbol{G}(t, f) = [\cos(2\pi f_0 t), -\sin(2\pi f_0 t)].$$

As discussed in Chapter 11, Section D, application of formula (132) yields

$$\begin{aligned} \hat{R}_x^\alpha(\tau) = {} & \tfrac{1}{2}[\hat{R}_c^\alpha(\tau) + \hat{R}_s^\alpha(\tau)]\cos(2\pi f_0\tau) - \tfrac{1}{2}[\hat{R}_{sc}^\alpha(\tau) - \hat{R}_{cs}^\alpha(\tau)]\sin(2\pi f_0\tau) \\ & + \tfrac{1}{4}\sum_{n=-1,1} [\hat{R}_c^{\alpha+2nf_0}(\tau) - \hat{R}_s^{\alpha+2nf_0}(\tau)] - ni[\hat{R}_{sc}^{\alpha+2nf_0}(\tau) + \hat{R}_{cs}^{\alpha+2nf_0}(\tau)] \end{aligned} \tag{35}$$

and application of formula (135) yields

$$\hat{S}_x^{\alpha}(f) = \tfrac{1}{4} \sum_{n=-1,1} [\hat{S}_c^{\alpha}(f + nf_0) + \hat{S}_s^{\alpha}(f + nf_0)] - ni[\hat{S}_{sc}^{\alpha}(f + nf_0) - \hat{S}_{cs}^{\alpha}(f + nf_0)]$$
$$+ \tfrac{1}{4} \sum_{n=-1,1} [\hat{S}_c^{\alpha+2nf_0}(f) - \hat{S}_s^{\alpha+2nf_0}(f)] - ni[\hat{S}_{sc}^{\alpha+2nf_0}(f) + \hat{S}_{cs}^{\alpha+2nf_0}(f)]. \tag{36}$$

Examples for which $c(t)$ and $s(t)$ are cyclostationary are quaternary-phase-shift keying and some types of amplitude-phase-shift keying, which are treated in Section E.

For the special case in which the in-phase and quadrature components $c(t)$ and $s(t)$ are jointly purely stationary, $x(t)$ is purely cyclostationary with period $T_0 = 1/2f_0$, and we have

$$\hat{S}_x(f) = \tfrac{1}{4}[\hat{S}_c(f + f_0) + \hat{S}_c(f - f_0) + \hat{S}_s(f + f_0) + \hat{S}_s(f - f_0)] - \tfrac{1}{2}[\hat{S}_{cs}(f + f_0)_i - \hat{S}_{cs}(f - f_0)_i] \tag{37}$$

and

$$\hat{S}_x^{\alpha}(f) = \tfrac{1}{4}[\hat{S}_c(f) - \hat{S}_s(f)] \pm \tfrac{1}{2}i\hat{S}_{cs}(f)_r, \qquad \alpha = \pm 2f_0, \tag{38}$$

with $\hat{S}_x^{\alpha} = 0$ for $\alpha \neq 0$ and $\alpha \neq \pm 2f_0$. (In these formulas, the subscripts r and i denote the real and imaginary parts, respectively.) Thus, the cyclic spectrum of QAM is of the same general form as that shown in Figure 12-1 for AM, except that the full symmetry shown there is typically not exhibited by QAM. Only symmetry about the f-axis and symmetry about the α-axis is always exhibited by QAM. Moreover, it follows from the autocoherence inequality

$$|\hat{S}_x^{\alpha}(f)|^2 \leq \hat{S}_x(f + \alpha/2)\hat{S}_x(f - \alpha/2) \tag{39}$$

that the heights of the surfaces centered at $(f, \alpha) = (0, \pm 2f_0)$ are lower than or equal to the heights at $(f, \alpha) = (\pm f_0, 0)$. If $c(t)$ and $s(t)$ are bandlimited such that $\hat{S}_c(f) = \hat{S}_s(f) = 0$ for $|f| \geq f_0$, then (37)–(38) yield (exercise 4)

$$|\hat{C}_x^{\alpha}(f)|^2 = \frac{[\hat{S}_c(f) - \hat{S}_s(f)]^2 + 4[\hat{S}_{cs}(f)_r]^2}{[\hat{S}_c(f) + \hat{S}_s(f)]^2 - 4[\hat{S}_{cs}(f)_i]^2}, \qquad \alpha = \pm 2f_0 \tag{40a}$$

for the autocoherence magnitude of $x(t)$. Moreover, it is shown in Appendix 3-1 in Part I that *any* time-series $x(t)$ that is purely cyclostationary with period $1/2f_0$ and is bandlimited to $f \in (-2f_0, 2f_0)$ can be represented in the form of (34) (Rice's representation), for which $c(t)$ and $s(t)$ are purely stationary and bandlimited to $f \in (-f_0, f_0)$. This includes many bandlimited analog-modulated sine wave carriers, with purely stationary modulating signals, used in conventional communications systems and essentially all modulated periodic pulse-trains with *excess bandwidth* (beyond the *Nyquist bandwidth*) of 100% or less and purely stationary modulating signals. Thus, for all such signals the autocoherence magnitude is given by (40a). Furthermore, (40a) can be reexpressed as (exercise 4)

$$|\hat{C}_x^{\alpha}(f)|^2 = 1 - \frac{4(1 - |\hat{C}_{cs}(f)|^2)\hat{S}_c(f)\hat{S}_s(f)}{[\hat{S}_c(f) + \hat{S}_s(f)]^2 - 4[\hat{S}_{cs}(f)_i]^2}, \qquad \alpha = \pm 2f_0, \tag{40b}$$

and the denominator can be reexpressed as (exercise 4)

$$[\hat{S}_c(f) + \hat{S}_s(f)]^2 - 4[\hat{S}_{cs}(f)_i]^2 = 16[\hat{S}_x(f - f_0)_e^2 - \hat{S}_x(f - f_0)_o^2], \qquad |f| < f_0, \tag{41}$$

where the subscripts e and o denote the even and odd parts, respectively, of $\hat{S}_x(f)$ about the point $f = f_0$, for $f > 0$. Consequently, for given spectrum $\hat{S}_x$ and spectral product $\hat{S}_c\hat{S}_s$, the autocoherence magnitude of $x(t)$ increases as the magnitude of the cross coherence between $c(t)$ and $s(t)$ increases. Furthermore, for given cross coherence $|\hat{C}_{cs}|$ and spectral product $\hat{S}_c\hat{S}_s$, the autocoherence of $x(t)$ increases as the dominance of the even part (about f_0) of the spectrum $\hat{S}_x$ over the odd part increases (assuming $\hat{S}_c(f)\hat{S}_s(f) \neq 0$).

It follows from (40a) that $x(t)$ is completely incoherent (that is, $\hat{C}_x^\alpha(f) = 0$) at $\alpha = \pm 2f_0$ and at any f if and only if $c(t)$ and $s(t)$ are *balanced at f*, in the sense that

1. $\hat{S}_c(f) = \hat{S}_s(f)$ and
2. $\hat{S}_{cs}(f)_r = 0$.

It also follows from (40b) that $x(t)$ is completely coherent (that is, $|\hat{C}_x^\alpha(f)| = 1$) at $\alpha = \pm 2f_0$ and at any $|f| < f_0$ if and only if either (exercise 4)

3. The supports of $\hat{S}_c$ and $\hat{S}_s$ are disjoint such that $\hat{S}_c(f)\hat{S}_s(f) = 0$, or
4. The time-series $c(t)$ and $s(t)$ are completely cross-coherent at f such that $|\hat{C}_{cs}(f)| = 1$, and either 1 or 2 (or both) is violated.

It follows from (40a) and (41) that for a time-series $x(t)$ that is completely coherent at $|f| < f_0$, the cyclic spectrum magnitude is characterized by the symmetry of the conventional spectrum,

$$|\hat{S}_x^\alpha(f)|^2 = [\hat{S}_x(f - \alpha/2)_e]^2 - [\hat{S}_x(f - \alpha/2)_o]^2, \qquad |f| < |\alpha|/2. \tag{42}$$

When condition 4 holds, $c(t)$ and $s(t)$ are related (at least in the temporal mean square sense) by an LTI transformation, $s(t) = h(t) \otimes c(t)$ (see Chapter 7 in Part I). But there do exist LTI transformations for which neither condition 1 nor 2 is violated, namely, those for which the transfer functions are unity in magnitude and purely imaginary with arbitrary signs at arbitrary frequencies f, that is, $H(f) = \pm i$.

Example: *SSB, DSB, VSB*

Let $s(t)$ be the convolution of $c(t)$ with $h(t)$. The Hilbert transform $h(t)$ (for which $H(f) = +i$ for $f < 0$ and $H(f) = -i$ for $f > 0$), which yields a *single-sideband* (SSB) signal $x(t)$ in (34),

$$\hat{S}_x(f) = 0, \qquad |f| < f_0,$$

results in a time-series that is completely incoherent for all f (exercise 5). In contrast, a transfer function that is a real constant yields a *double-sideband* (DSB) signal $x(t)$ (exercise 5) that is completely coherent for all $|f| < f_0$, as established in Section A. Similarly a *vestigial-sideband* (VSB) signal, which is obtained by subjecting a DSB signal to a low-pass filtering operation with bandwidth, say, $B = f_0 + b$, is completely coherent for $|f| < b$ and completely incoherent (for an ideal low-pass

filter) for $|f| > b$. For the DSB signal there is no phase modulation, $\phi(t)$ = constant. However, if the DSB signal is filtered and the filter transfer function is asymmetric about the point $f = f_0$ (for $f > 0$), and nonzero, then $\phi(t)$ in (34) is no longer constant, but $x(t)$ is still completely coherent for all $|f| < f_0$ (since the autocoherence magnitude is invariant to linear time-invariant transformations, provided that the transfer function does not equal zero).

In order to determine what type of phase modulation annihilates coherence, one can use the fact that the necessary and sufficient condition 1 and 2 for complete incoherence for all f is equivalent to the pair of conditions (exercise 6)

$$\lim_{T\to\infty} \frac{1}{T}\int_{-T/2}^{T/2} a\left(t+\frac{\tau}{2}\right)a\left(t-\frac{\tau}{2}\right)\cos\left[\phi\left(t+\frac{\tau}{2}\right)+\phi\left(t-\frac{\tau}{2}\right)\right]dt \equiv 0 \tag{43a}$$

$$\lim_{T\to\infty} \frac{1}{T}\int_{-T/2}^{T/2} a\left(t+\frac{\tau}{2}\right)a\left(t-\frac{\tau}{2}\right)\sin\left[\phi\left(t+\frac{\tau}{2}\right)+\phi\left(t-\frac{\tau}{2}\right)\right]dt \equiv 0. \tag{43b}$$

It follows from (43) that an equivalent condition is

$$\lim_{T\to\infty} \frac{1}{T}\int_{-T/2}^{T/2} a\left(t+\frac{\tau}{2}\right)a\left(t-\frac{\tau}{2}\right)\exp\left\{i\left[\phi\left(t+\frac{\tau}{2}\right)+\phi\left(t-\frac{\tau}{2}\right)\right]\right\}dt \equiv 0. \tag{44}$$

For example, if $a(t)$ is statistically independent of $\phi(t)$ (e.g., $a(t)$ = constant), then (44) reduces to

$$\Psi_\tau(1, 1) = 0, \qquad -\infty < \tau < \infty, \tag{45}$$

for which Ψ_τ is the joint characteristic function for the variables $\phi(t + \tau/2)$ and $\phi(t - \tau/2)$ defined by (32). But (45) is simply the condition under which the phase-modulated time-series

$$x(t) = \cos[2\pi f_0 t + \phi(t)]$$

is completely incoherent. This is discussed further in the next section.

C. PHASE AND FREQUENCY CARRIER MODULATION

Consider the phase-modulated (PM) sine wave

$$x(t) = \cos[2\pi f_0 t + \phi(t)], \tag{46}$$

for which $\phi(t)$ contains no periodicity (of any order). It can be shown by direct calculation that the limit cyclic autocorrelation for $x(t)$ is given by (exercise 7)

$$\hat{R}_x^\alpha(\tau) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{2}\mathrm{Re}\{\Psi_\tau(1, -1)\exp(i2\pi f_0\tau)\}, & \alpha = 0 \\ \frac{1}{4}\Psi_\tau(1, 1), & \alpha = 2f_0 \\ \frac{1}{4}\Psi_\tau(1, 1)^*, & \alpha = -2f_0 \\ 0, & |\alpha| \neq 2f_0, \alpha \neq 0, \end{cases} \tag{47a}$$

and the limit cyclic mean of $x(t)$,

$$\hat{M}_x^\alpha \triangleq \lim_{T\to\infty} \frac{1}{T}\int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x(t)e^{-i2\pi\alpha t}\,dt,$$

is given by

$$\hat{M}_x^\alpha = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{2}\Psi(1), & \alpha = f_0 \\ \frac{1}{2}\Psi(1)^*, & \alpha = -f_0 \\ 0, & |\alpha| \neq f_0, \end{cases} \tag{48a}$$

where Ψ_τ is the joint characteristic function for $\phi(t + \tau/2)$ and $\phi(t - \tau/2)$,

$$\Psi_\tau(\omega_1, \omega_2) \triangleq \lim_{T\to\infty} \frac{1}{T}\int_{-T/2}^{T/2} \exp\left\{i\left[\phi\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right)\omega_1 + \phi\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right)\omega_2\right]\right\} dt, \qquad (47b)$$

and Ψ is the characteristic function for $\phi(t)$,

$$\Psi(\omega) \triangleq \lim_{T\to\infty} \frac{1}{T}\int_{-T/2}^{T/2} \exp\{i\phi(t)\omega\}\, dt. \qquad (48b)$$

Thus, $x(t)$ is purely cyclostationary with period $1/2f_0$ except when $\Psi_\tau(1, 1) = 0$ for all τ, and $x(t)$ exhibits spectral lines at $\pm f_0$ except when $\Psi(1) = 0$. Neither $\Psi_\tau(1, 1) \equiv 0$ nor $\Psi(1) = 0$ can hold for a purely stationary Gaussian time-series $\phi(t)$ (see exercise 18, Chapter 5, Part I). However, there are *some* time-series $\phi(t)$ that do satisfy $\Psi_\tau(1, 1) \equiv 0$ and $\Psi(1) = 0$. An example is the balanced quaternary-valued time-series

$$\phi(t) = \tan^{-1}\left[\frac{s(t)}{c(t)}\right],$$

for which $c(t)$ and $s(t)$ are statistically identical, uncorrelated, binary-valued (± 1) time-series, with stationary transition times (e.g., Poisson point processes [Gardner 1985]). Another example is the balanced quaternary-valued PAM time-series $\phi(t)$, which yields the QPSK signal discussed in Section E. However, since the transition times in this $\phi(t)$ are periodic with period say T_0, then $x(t)$ is purely cyclostationary with period T_0, even though it is not cyclostationary with period $1/2f_0$ (assuming T_0 and $1/2f_0$ are incommensurate). Furthermore, both $\Psi_\tau(1, 1) \equiv 0$ and $\Psi(1) = 0$ are satisfied by some nonstationary time-series, such as those that arise from *frequency modulation*. Specifically, let $\phi(t)$ be given by[1]

$$\phi(t) = \int_0^t z(u)\, du, \qquad t > 0, \qquad (49a)$$

for which $z(t)$ is a purely stationary time-series. Then

$$z(t) = \frac{d\phi(t)}{dt}, \qquad t > 0, \qquad (49b)$$

and $z(t)$ is the *instantaneous frequency deviation* (in radians per unit of time) of the modulated sine wave (46). If the limit spectrum $\hat{S}_z(f)$ is not high-pass (or band-pass) in the sense that it does not approach zero faster than linearly in f as $f \to 0$, then $\phi(t)$ can satisfy $\Psi_\tau(1, 1) \equiv 0$ and $\Psi(1) = 0$. For example, if $z(t)$ is white ($\hat{S}_z(f) = k$), then $\phi(t)$ is an *independent-increment time-series* (a *diffusion*), for which it is well known that $x(t)$ is stationary and contains no spectral lines [Stratonovich 1967]. Thus, frequency-modulated (FM) sine waves with low-pass (or all-pass) modulation are purely stationary, whereas those with high-pass (or band-pass) modulation can be purely cyclostationary. For example, if $z(t)$ is defined by (49b) for a purely stationary $\phi(t)$, then $x(t)$ can be purely cyclostationary.

[1] For the one-sided ($t \geq 0$) model, all limit averages over $|t| < \infty$ must be multiplied by 2 to produce the appropriate result.

Thus, we see that some FM sine waves are purely stationary, but most PM sine waves of practical interest are purely cyclostationary. Hence, there is a fundamental distinction to be made between the statistical properties of FM sine waves and PM sine waves. This is often not recognized, since it is common practice to use probabilistic models and to introduce a random time-invariant phase variable to render all modulated sine waves stochastically stationary (see [Gardner 1978; 1987a]), and to adopt relatively arbitrary conventions (e.g., [Papoulis 1984]) for distinguishing between phase modulation and frequency modulation. It is emphasized however that even frequency-modulated sine waves that are stationary in the long run can exhibit reliably measurable properties of cyclostationarity locally in time. It is also worth clarifying that the transformation (49a) from $z(t)$ to $\phi(t)$ is only marginally stable and can therefore be an inappropriate model. For example, it can be shown that even though $z(t)$ might have a temporal mean of zero the temporal mean of $\phi(t)$ is not zero. This is easily demonstrated for the simple case $z(t) = \cos(\omega t + \theta)$ (exercise 8). More importantly, even if the temporal covariance, $\hat{R}_z(\tau) - (\hat{M}_z)^2$, of $z(t)$ approaches zero as $\tau \to \infty$, the temporal covariance of $\phi(t)$ can approach a positive constant, which can attenuate the spectral correlation in the model of the FM signal $x(t)$ at $\alpha = \pm 2f_0$. For example, $\hat{R}_\phi(\tau)$ in (33), which must be replaced by the covariance $\hat{R}_\phi(\tau) - (\hat{M}_\phi)^2$ when $\hat{M}_\phi \neq 0$, can be expressed as the sum of its constant asymptote

$$c \triangleq \hat{R}_\phi(\infty) - (\hat{M}_\phi)^2 \tag{50}$$

and its residual

$$R(\tau) \triangleq \hat{R}_\phi(\tau) - \hat{R}_\phi(\infty). \tag{51}$$

The exponential in (33) can then be factored to obtain

$$\Psi_\tau(1, 1) = \exp\{-c\}\exp\{-[R(0) + R(\tau)]\} \tag{52}$$

for a purely stationary Gaussian time-series $\phi(t)$. Thus, the asymptote c attenuates the limit cyclic autocorrelation $\hat{R}_x^\alpha(\tau)$ at $\alpha = \pm 2f_0$ (47a). The fact that $c \neq 0$ represents anomalous behavior can be seen from the fact that the strength of the spectral line at $f = 0$ for such a time series is not $(\hat{M}_\phi)^2$ but rather it is $c + (\hat{M}_\phi)^2$ (exercise 9). This nonphysical behavior can be avoided by realizing that the integration operation in any physical frequency modulator must be lossy and therefore should be modeled as

$$\phi(t) = \int_0^t e^{-\gamma(t-u)} z(u)\, du \tag{53}$$

for some appropriately small positive value of γ. Unlike (49a), (53) is indeed a stable transformation, and therefore $\hat{R}_\phi(\infty) = (\hat{M}_\phi)^2$ if $\hat{R}_z(\infty) = (\hat{M}_z)^2$, and $\hat{M}_\phi = 0$ if $\hat{M}_z = 0$.

If (53) is used as the model for FM, then the preceding statements about the distinction between PM and FM need to be modified. Specifically, FM modeled with (53) will, in general, be purely cyclostationary regardless of the low-pass spectral content of $z(t)$. However, the strength of the spectral correlation will be weak when the spectrum of $z(t)$ does not approach zero faster than linearly in f, and the magnitude of the spectral correlation will in fact approach

zero as $\gamma \to 0$ in (53). This can be seen by using (33) and showing that $\hat{R}_\phi(0) \to \infty$ as $\gamma \to 0$ (exercise 9).

Before concluding this discussion, let us consider the relationship between the spectral density and the spectral correlation for PM and FM. It can be shown that the limit autocorrelation for the PM sine wave (46) is given by (exercise 7)

$$\hat{R}_x(\tau) = \tfrac{1}{2}\mathrm{Re}\{\Psi_\tau(1, -1)\exp(i2\pi f_0\tau)\}, \tag{54}$$

where Ψ_τ is given by (47b). For a zero-mean Gaussian time-series $\phi(t)$, Ψ_τ is given explicitly by (see exercise 18, Chapter 5, Part I)

$$\Psi_\tau(1, -1) = \exp\{-[\hat{R}_\phi(0) - \hat{R}_\phi(\tau)]\}. \tag{55}$$

Thus, it follows from (47a), (33), (54), and (55) that $\hat{R}_x^{2f_0}(\tau)$ and $\hat{R}_x(\tau)$ differ by only a cosine factor, a factor of $\frac{1}{2}$, and a sign, for this case of a Gaussian phase time-series. However, this sign difference is very significant.[2] For example, it follows that although $\hat{R}_x(\tau)$ reaches its maximum value of $\frac{1}{2}$ at $\tau = 0$, $\hat{R}_x^{2f_0}(\tau)$ reaches its maximum value (supremum) of

$$\max_\tau \hat{R}_x^{2f_0}(\tau) = \tfrac{1}{4}\exp\{-\hat{R}_\phi(0)\} \tag{56a}$$

at $\tau \to \infty$ for $\hat{R}_\phi(\tau) \geqslant 0$ and $\hat{R}_\phi(\infty) = 0$. Furthermore, if $\hat{R}_\phi(\tau)$ takes on negative values, then

$$\max_\tau \hat{R}_x^{2f_0}(\tau) = \tfrac{1}{4}\exp\{-[\hat{R}_\phi(0) + \min_\tau \hat{R}_\phi(\tau)]\}. \tag{56b}$$

Thus, for a nonoscillatory phase time-series ($\hat{R}_\phi(\tau) \geqslant 0$), we have

$$\max_\tau \hat{R}_x^{2f_0}(\tau) \ll \max_\tau \hat{R}_x(\tau) \tag{57}$$

for $\hat{R}_\phi(0) \gg 1$, but for an oscillatory, or narrow-band, time-series, for which

$$\hat{R}_\phi(0) + \min_\tau \hat{R}_\phi(\tau) \ll \hat{R}_\phi(0),$$

(57) need not hold even if $\hat{R}_\phi(0) \gg 1$. In fact, $\hat{R}_x^{2f_0}(\tau)$ will itself be highly oscillatory in this case, and this can result in a highly oscillatory transform $\hat{S}_x^{2f_0}(f)$. Consequently, even though the area of $\hat{S}_x^{2f_0}(f)$, which is given by

$$\hat{R}_x^{2f_0}(0) = \tfrac{1}{4}\exp\{-2\hat{R}_\phi(0)\},$$

will be very small for $\hat{R}_\phi(0) \gg 1$ compared with the area of $\hat{S}_x(f)$, its peaks can be comparable to the peaks of $\hat{S}_x(f)$.

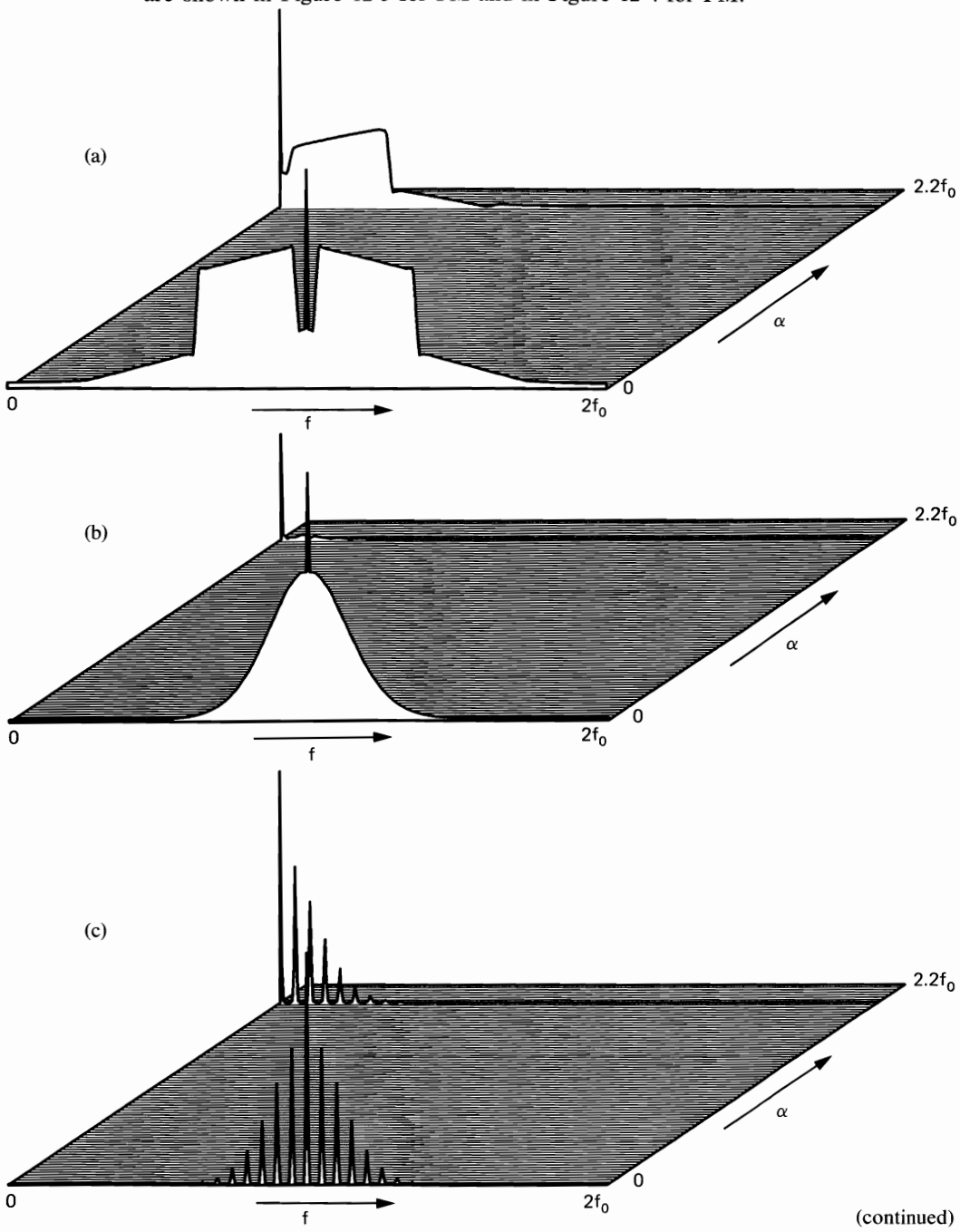
Example: ***FM and PM***

As an example to illustrate the difference between PM and FM and the dependence on mean-square phase deviation and phase bandwidth, we begin by considering a model for the modulating signal $y(t)$ that is typical of speech; namely, $y(t)$ is a zero-mean purely stationary Gaussian time-series with spectral density

$$\hat{S}_y(f) = \begin{cases} S_0, & 300 \leqslant |f| \leqslant 3{,}300 \\ 0, & \text{otherwise,} \end{cases}$$

[2] Because of this sign difference the technique used to develop Woodward's theorem (see [Gardner 1985]) for approximating the spectrum of FM for the case of high modulation index cannot be used to approximate the spectral correlation function.

and we consider a typical value of mean-square phase deviation, $\hat{R}_\phi(0) = (2.5)^2$. We then consider a smaller value, $\hat{R}_\phi(0) = 1$, and a smaller relative bandwidth, $30{,}300 \leq |f| \leq 33{,}300$. For PM, $\phi(t) = y(t)$, and for FM, $\phi(t)$ is given by (53) with $z(t) = y(t)$ and $\gamma \ll 300$. The spectral correlation surfaces for these various cases are shown in Figure 12-3 for PM and in Figure 12-4 for FM.



(continued)

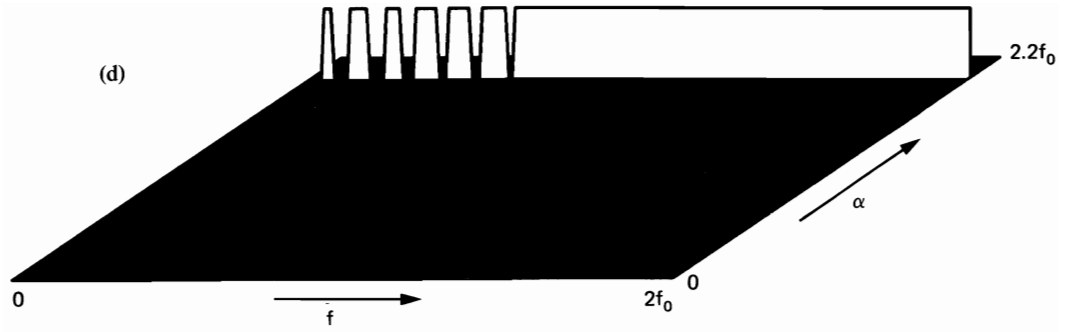
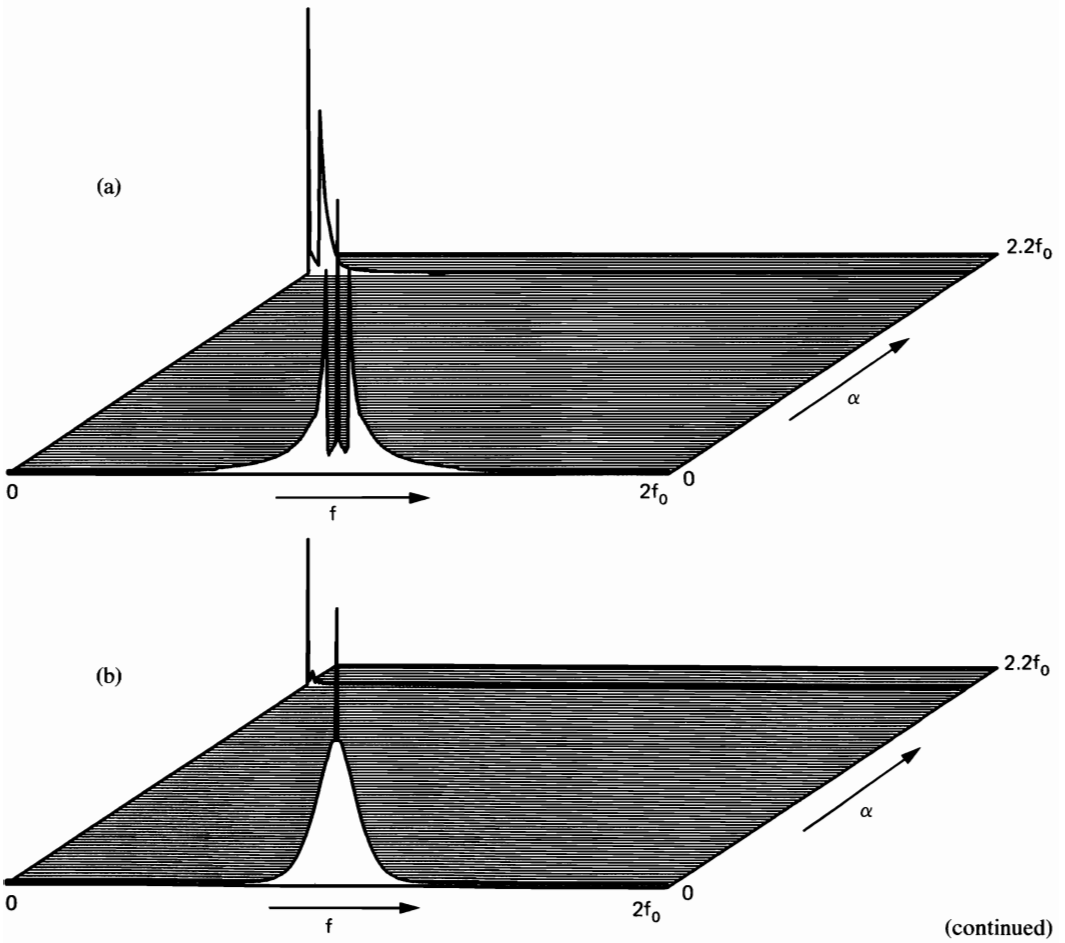


Figure 12-3 Spectral correlation surfaces for a unity-power phase-modulated sine wave. (a) Magnitude surface for f_0 = 9000, modulating-phase passband = [300, 3,300], rms phase = 1. (The spectral-line (pair) power = 0.37.) (b) Magnitude surface for f_0 = 36,000, modulating-phase passband = [300, 3,300], rms phase = 2.5. (The spectral line (pair) power = 0.082.) (c) Magnitude surface for f_0 = 636,000, modulating-phase passband = [30,300, 33,300], rms phase = 2.5. (The spectral line (pair) power = 0.082.) (d) Phase surface for f_0 = 636,000, modulating-phase passband = [30,300, 33,300], rms phase = 2.5 (range: 0—π).



(continued)

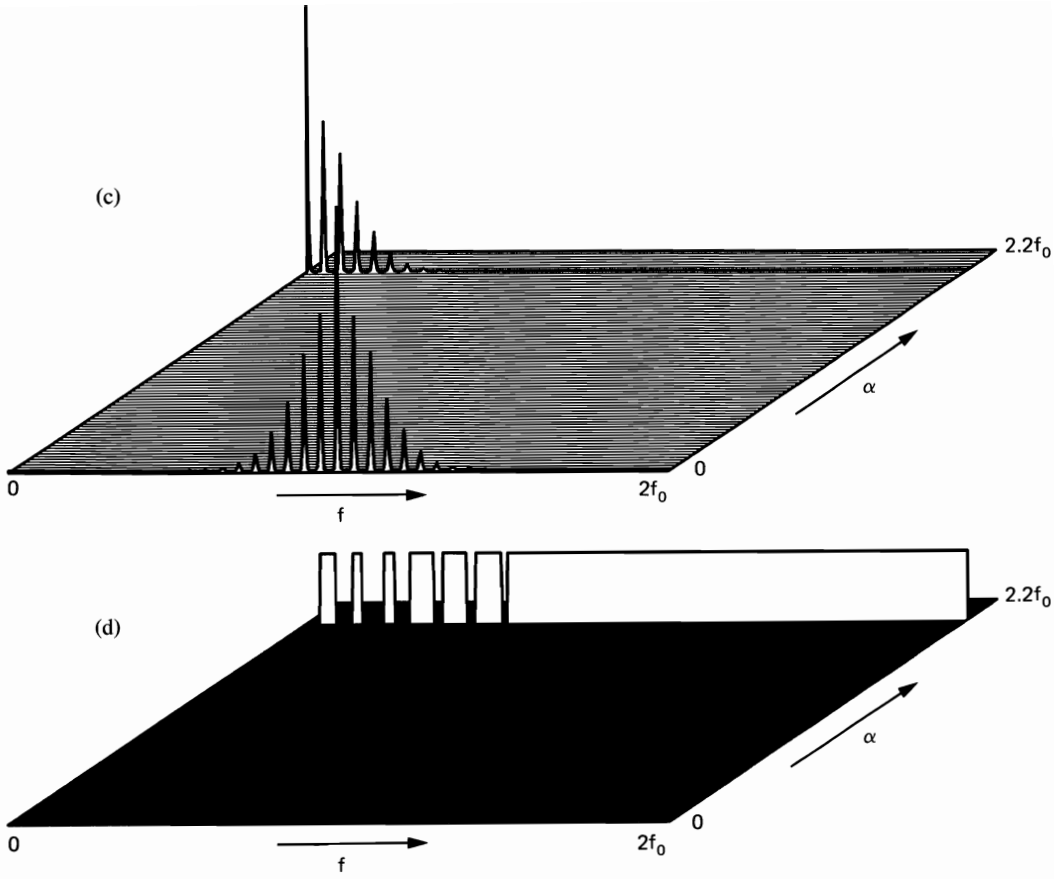


Figure 12-4 Spectral correlation surfaces for a unity-power frequency-modulated sine wave. (a) Magnitude surface for $f_0 = 9000$, modulating-frequency passband = [300, 3,300], rms phase = 1. (The spectral line (pair) power = 0.37.) (b) Magnitude surface for $f_0 = 36{,}000$, modulating-frequency passband = [300, 3,300], rms phase = 2.5. (The spectral line (pair) power = 0.082.) (c) Magnitude surface for $f_0 = 636{,}000$, modulating-frequency passband = [30,300, 33,300], rms phase = 2.5. (The spectral line (pair) power = 0.082.) (d) Phase surface for $f_0 = 636{,}000$, modulating-frequency passband = [30,300, 33,300], rms phase = 2.5 (range: 0—π).

D. DIGITAL PULSE MODULATION

In a digitally modulated pulse train, with digital signaling alphabet size of M, one of M distinct pulse-types, say $\{q_1(t), q_2(t), q_3(t), \ldots, q_M(t)\}$, occurs every T_0 seconds, which can be expressed as

$$y(t) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \sum_{m=1}^{M} \delta_m(n) q_m(t - nT_0), \tag{58}$$

where

$$\boldsymbol{\delta}(n) \triangleq [\delta_1(n), \delta_2(n), \delta_3(n), \ldots, \delta_M(n)]' \tag{59}$$

is an indicator vector (for each value of n) with one element equal to unity and the rest equal to zero. This signal can be interpreted as an M-vector PAM impulse train filtered by an M-vector time-invariant transformation,

$$y(t) = \boldsymbol{q}(t) \otimes \boldsymbol{x}(t), \tag{60a}$$

where

$$\boldsymbol{x}(t) \triangleq \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \boldsymbol{\delta}(n)\, \delta(t - nT_0), \tag{60b}$$

$$\boldsymbol{q}(t) \triangleq [q_1(t), q_2(t), q_3(t), \ldots, q_M(t)]. \tag{60c}$$

Thus, the input-output spectral-correlation relation (138) in Chapter 11 for multiple-input filters applies directly,

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{S}}_y^{\alpha}(f) = \boldsymbol{Q}\left(f + \frac{\alpha}{2}\right)\hat{\boldsymbol{S}}_x^{\alpha}(f)\boldsymbol{Q}'\left(f - \frac{\alpha}{2}\right)^*, \tag{61a}$$

where

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{S}}_x^{\alpha}(f) = \frac{1}{T_0}\tilde{\boldsymbol{S}}_{\boldsymbol{\delta}}^{\alpha}(f), \tag{61b}$$

and $\tilde{\boldsymbol{S}}_{\boldsymbol{\delta}}^{\alpha}(f)$ is the Fourier-series transform of the matrix of discrete-time limit cyclic autocorrelations

$$\tilde{\boldsymbol{R}}_{\boldsymbol{\delta}}^{\alpha}(qT_0) \triangleq \lim_{N\to\infty} \frac{1}{2N+1} \sum_{n=-N}^{N} \boldsymbol{\delta}(n + q)\, \boldsymbol{\delta}'(n) \exp[-i2\pi\alpha(n + q/2)T_0]. \tag{62}$$

Formula (61b) is simply the vector version of (108) and (112) in Chapter 11 for impulse sampled time-series.

For the special case in which $\{\boldsymbol{\delta}(n)\}$ is purely stationary, (61) reduces to

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{S}}_y^{\alpha}(f) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{T_0}\boldsymbol{Q}\left(f + \frac{\alpha}{2}\right)\tilde{\boldsymbol{S}}_{\boldsymbol{\delta}}\left(f + \frac{\alpha}{2}\right)\boldsymbol{Q}'\left(f - \frac{\alpha}{2}\right)^*, & \alpha = k/T_0 \\ 0, & \alpha \neq k/T_0 \end{cases} \tag{63}$$

for all integers k (which is simply a vector version of the PAM formula (18)). Furthermore, if $\{\boldsymbol{\delta}(n)\}$ is an uncorrelated sequence and if the fraction-of-time distribution is uniform, then

$$\tilde{\boldsymbol{R}}_{\boldsymbol{\delta}}^{\alpha}(qT_0) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{M}\boldsymbol{I}, & q = 0,\ \alpha = k/T_0 \\ \frac{1}{M^2}\mathbf{1}e^{-i\pi\alpha qT_0}, & q \neq 0,\ \alpha = k/T_0 \\ 0, & \alpha \neq 0,\ k/T_0 \end{cases} \tag{64}$$

where $\boldsymbol{I}$ is the identity matrix and $\mathbf{1}$ is the matrix having all elements equal to unity. It follows from (64) that (exercise 10)

$$\tilde{\boldsymbol{S}}_{\boldsymbol{\delta}}(f) = \left(\frac{1}{M}\boldsymbol{I} - \frac{1}{M^2}\mathbf{1}\right) + \frac{1}{T_0 M^2}\mathbf{1} \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \delta\left(f - \frac{n}{T_0}\right). \tag{65}$$

Substitution of (65) into (63) yields the explicit formula

$$\hat{S}_y^{\alpha}(f) = \frac{1}{MT_0}\sum_{m=1}^{M} Q_m\left(f+\frac{\alpha}{2}\right)Q_m^*\left(f-\frac{\alpha}{2}\right) - \frac{1}{M^2T_0}\left[\sum_{m=1}^{M} Q_m\left(f+\frac{\alpha}{2}\right)\right]\left[\sum_{n=1}^{M} Q_n^*\left(f-\frac{\alpha}{2}\right)\right]\left[1-\frac{1}{T_0}\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty}\delta\left(f+\frac{\alpha}{2}-\frac{n}{T_0}\right)\right] \qquad \alpha = \frac{k}{T_0}. \tag{66}$$

The cyclic spectra for a variety of digital pulse modulated signals, such as pulse-position, pulse-width, and pulse-frequency modulation, can be obtained simply by substitution of the appropriate pulse transforms $\{Q_m(f)\}_1^M$ into (66) (or more generally into (63) or (61)).

Example: ***Pulse-Position Modulation***

Consider binary *pulse-position modulation (PPM),* for which $M = 2$ and

$$Q_m(f) = Q(f)e^{-i2\pi ft_m}, \qquad m = 1, 2, \tag{67}$$

where $q(t)$ has nominal position zero. The spectral correlation magnitude surface from (66) for this signal is shown in Figure 12-5 for $t_1/T_0 = 0$, $t_2/T_0 = \frac{1}{2}$, and a rectangle pulse starting at $t = 0$ with width $T_0/4$ (in Figure 12-5(a)) and width $T_0/2$ (in Figure 12-5(b)).

Example: ***Pulse-Width Modulation***

Consider binary *pulse-width modulation (PWM)*, for which $M = 2$ and

$$Q_m(f) = w_m Q(w_m f), \qquad m = 1, 2, \tag{68}$$

where $q(t)$ has nominal width of unity. The spectral correlation magnitude surface from (66) for this signal is shown in Figure 12-6 for rectangle pulses starting at $t = 0$ with widths $w_1 = T_0/2$ and $w_2 = T_0$ (in Figure 12-6(a)) and widths $w_1 = T_0/4$ and $w_2 = T_0/2$ (in Figure 12-6(b)).

Example: ***Pulse-Chirp Modulation***

Consider binary *pulse-chirp modulation* for which $M = 2$ and

$$q_m(t) = \begin{cases} \cos(2\pi f_0 t + \pi\beta t^2)u_{T_0}(t), & m = 1 \\ \cos(2\pi f_0 t - \pi\beta t^2)u_{T_0}(t), & m = 2, \end{cases} \tag{69}$$

where β is the chirp rate. Thus, the $m = 1$ pulse is a positive chirp with instantaneous frequency $2\pi(f_0 + \beta t)$ for $|t| \leq T_0/2$, and the $m = 2$ pulse is a negative chirp with instantaneous frequency $2\pi(f_0 - \beta t)$ for $|t| \leq T_0/2$. This is a type of spread-spectrum signal, since the signal bandwidth, which is approximated by βT_0 (for $\beta \gg 1/T_0^2$), is much larger than the pulse rate $1/T_0$ for $\beta \gg 1/T_0^2$. The bandwidth spreading factor is $\gamma \triangleq \beta T_0/(1/T_0) = \beta T_0^2$. The spectral correlation magnitude surface from (66) for this signal is shown in Figure 12-7 for $f_0 = \frac{1}{2}$, $T_0 = 10$, $\gamma = 1$ (in Figure 12-7(a)), $f_0 = 1$, $T_0 = 10$, $\gamma = 10$ (in Figure 12-7(b)), and $f_0 = 10$, $T_0 = 10$, $\gamma = 100$ (in Figure 12-7(c)). To enhance clarity, the continuous and impulsive parts of the surfaces are shown separately for each case. Since the spectral correlation magnitude has the same type of symmetry as that exhibited by amplitude-shift-keyed signals (see Figure 12-8), only the part of the surface for $\alpha < 0$ and $f > 0$ is shown in Figure 12-7.

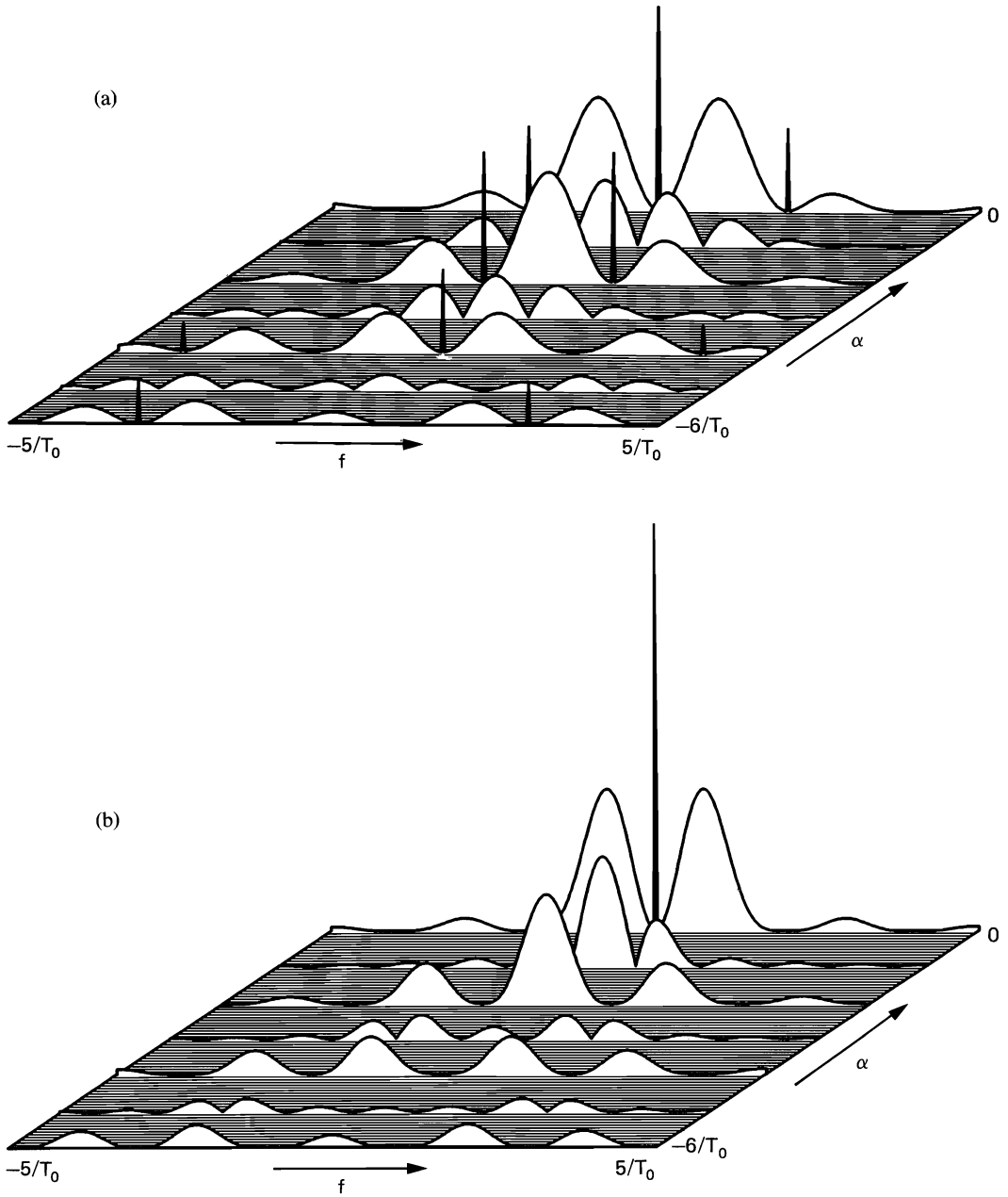


Figure 12-5 Spectral correlation magnitude surfaces for a unity-power binary pulse-position-modulated pulse train. (a) Pulse width = $T_0/4$, pulse positions = 0, $T_0/2$. (The strongest spectral line power = 0.25.) (b) Pulse width = $T_0/2$, pulse positions = 0, $T_0/2$. (The strongest spectral line power = 0.5.)

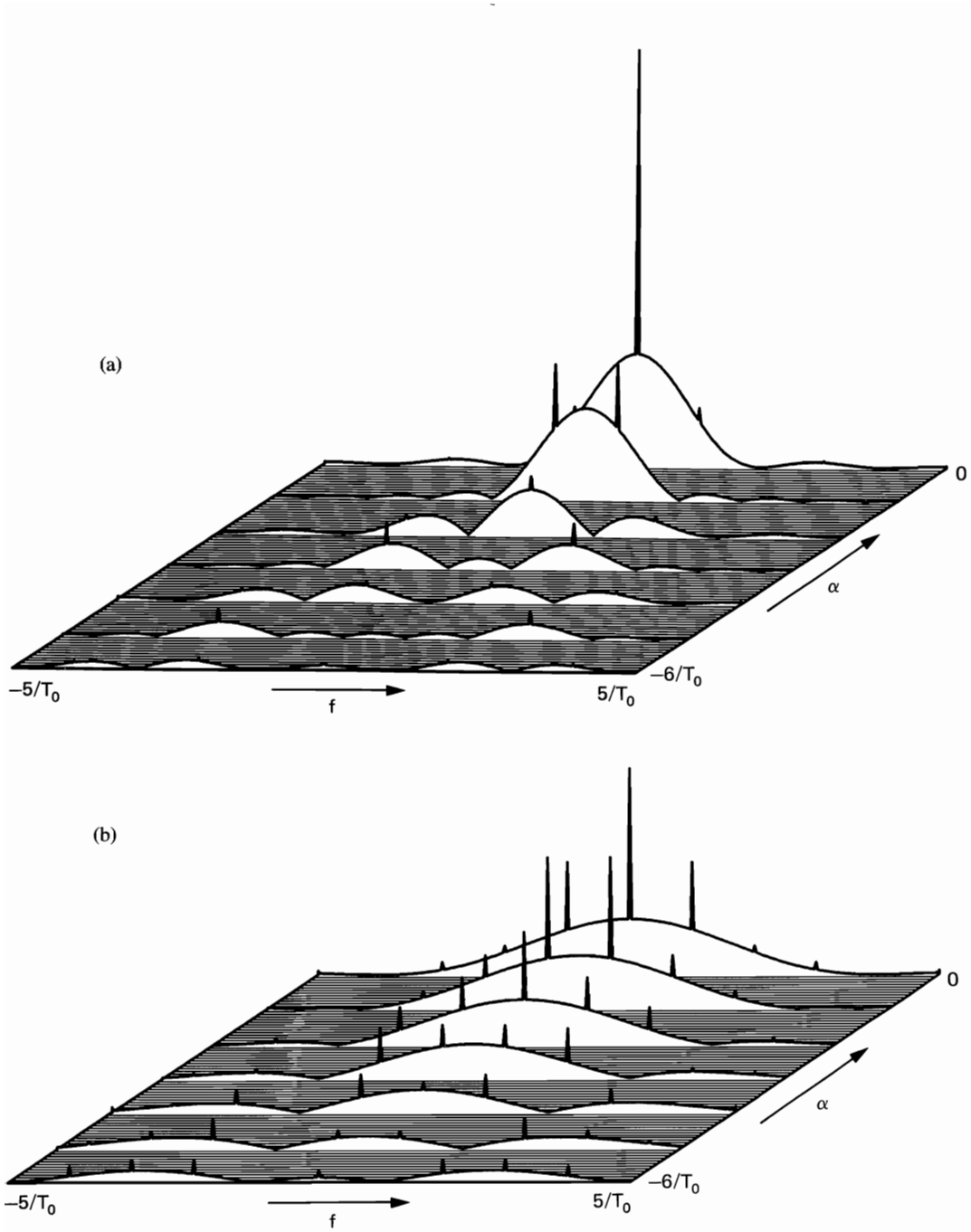
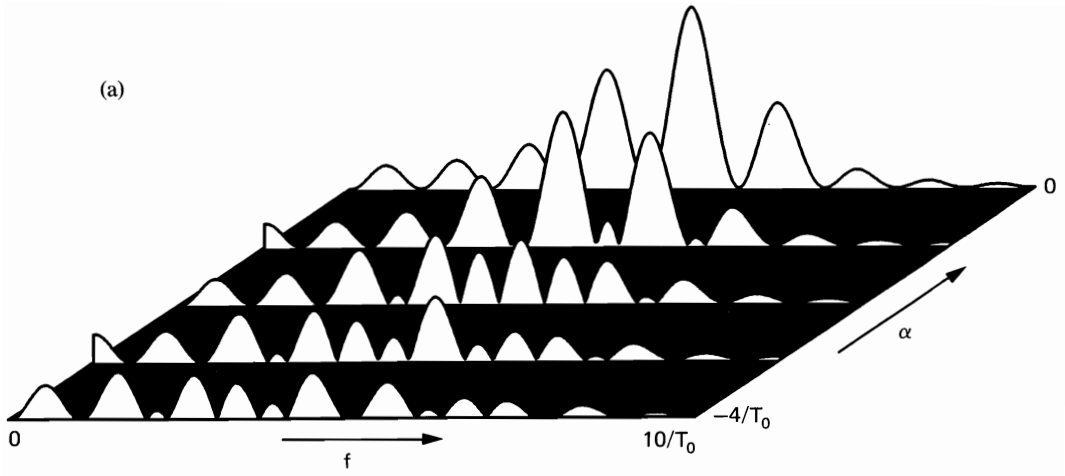
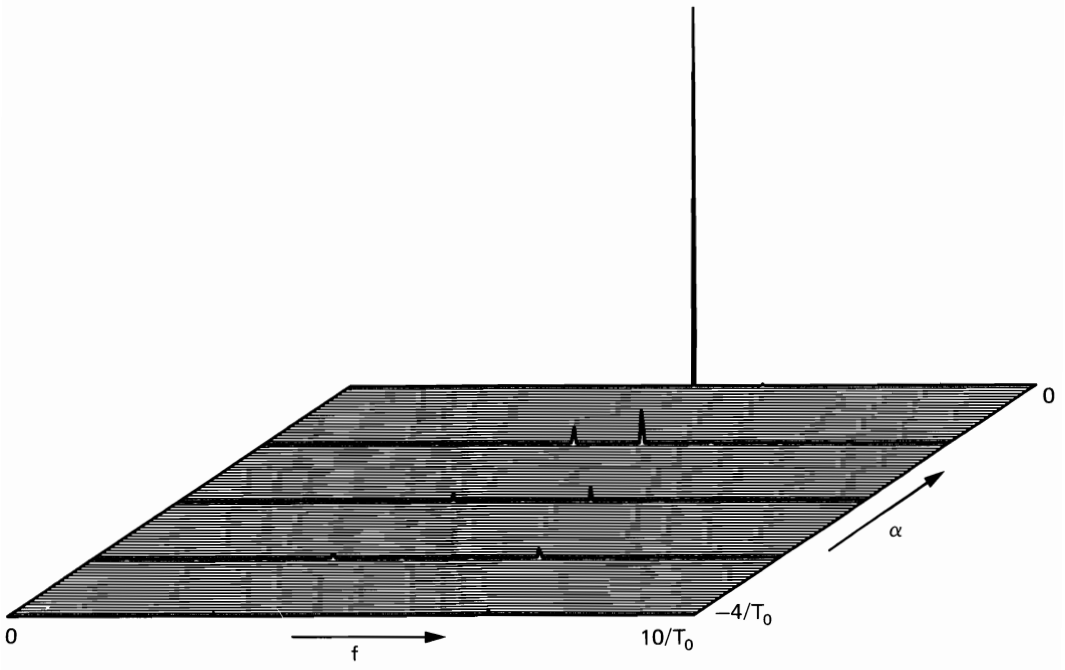


Figure 12-6 Spectral correlation magnitude surfaces for a unity-power binary pulse-width-modulated pulse train. (a) Pulse widths = $T_0/2$, T_0. (The strongest spectral line power = 0.75). (b) Pulse widths = $T_0/4$, $T_0/2$. (The strongest spectral line power = 0.375.)

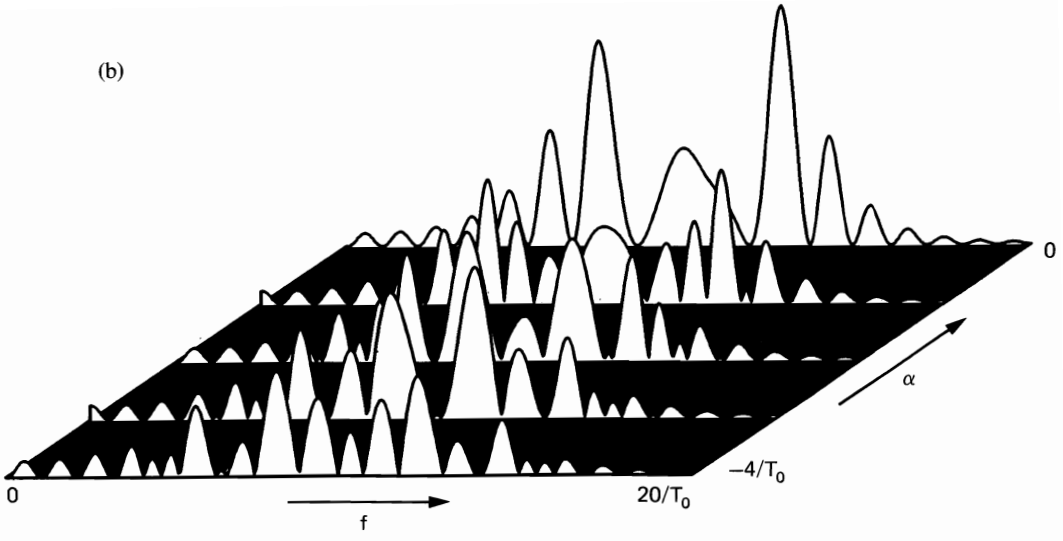


(continuous part)

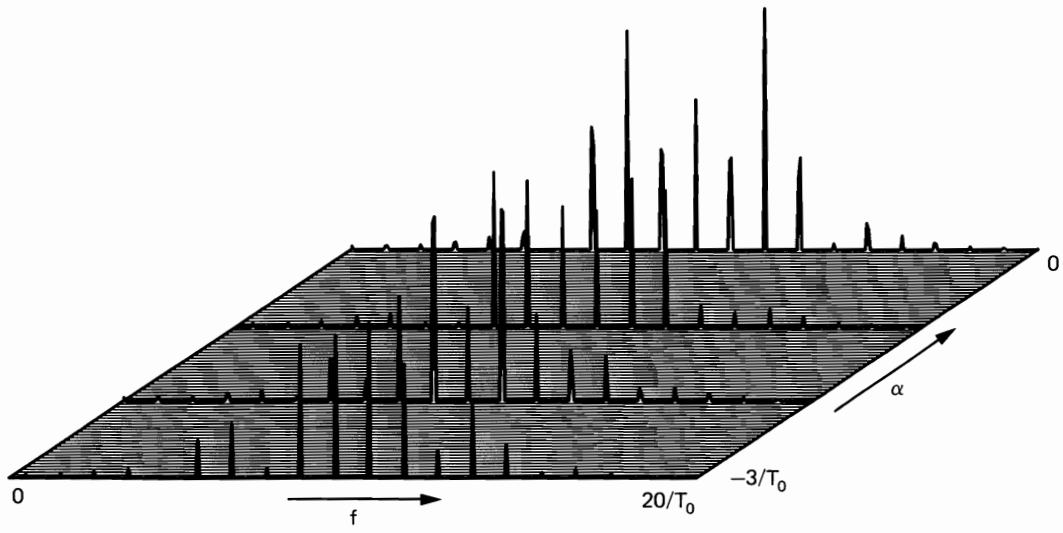


(impulsive part)

Figure 12-7 Spectral correlation magnitude surfaces for unity-power pulse-chirp modulation (continuous and impulsive parts shown separately). (a) Center frequency = $5/T_0$, spreading factor = 1. (The strongest spectral line (pair) power = 2.2×10^{-4}.)

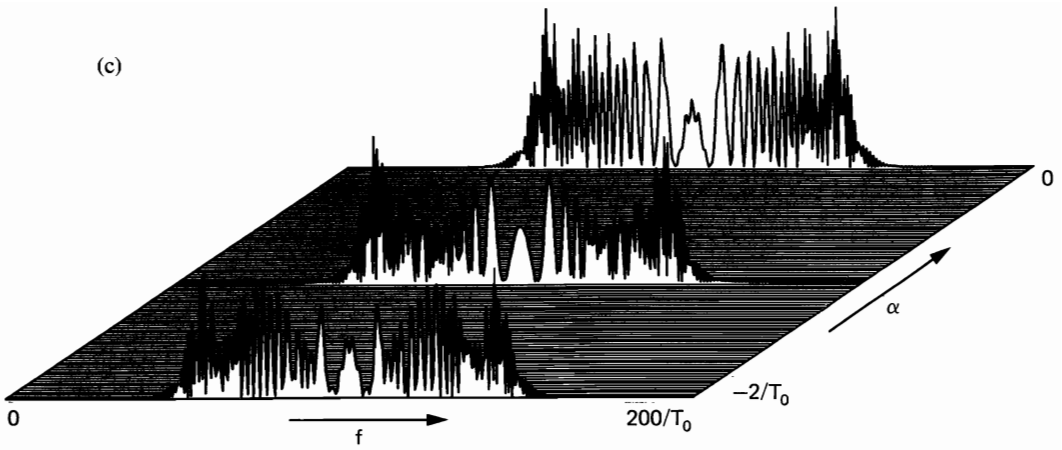


(continuous part)

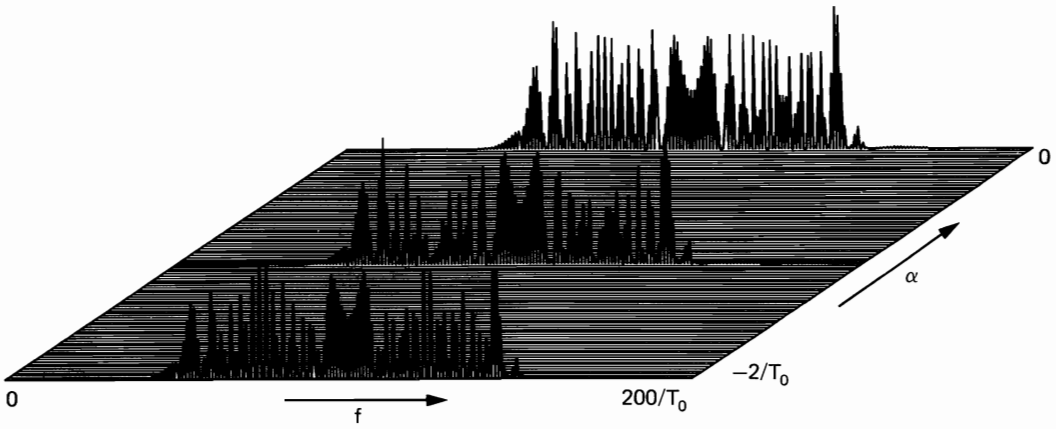


(impulsive part)

Figure 12-7 (continued) (b) Center frequency = $10/T_0$, spreading factor = 10. (The strongest spectral line (pair) power = 3.2×10^{-5}.)



(continuous part)



(impulsive part)

Figure 12-7 (continued) (c) Center frequency = $100/T_0$, spreading factor = 100. (The strongest spectral line (pair) power = 3.1×10^{-8}.)

E. DIGITAL CARRIER MODULATION

Digital carrier-modulated signals can typically be expressed in the form of either PM/FM or QAM time-series in which the amplitude- and/or phase- or frequency-modulating signals are digital pulse modulated. Thus, the formulas from the four preceding sections can be combined to obtain the spectral correlation formulas for these signal types. The most commonly employed digital carrier-modulated signals are either amplitude-shift-keyed (ASK), phase-shift-keyed (PSK), or frequency-shift-keyed (FSK) signals, or combinations of amplitude- and phase-shift keying (APK), or of phase- and frequency-shift keying.

1. Amplitude-Shift Keying

An ASK signal is simply an AM signal,

$$x(t) = a(t)\cos(2\pi f_0 t + \phi_0),$$

in which the amplitude time-series is a digital PAM signal,

$$a(t) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} a_n q(t - nT_0 - t_0).$$

Consequently, the spectral correlation function for an ASK signal is given by (9) with either (16) or (61) substituted for $\hat{S}_a^\alpha(f)$. For any alphabet size M, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned}\hat{S}_x^\alpha(f) = \frac{1}{4T_0}\Big\{&\Big[Q\Big(f + f_0 + \frac{\alpha}{2}\Big)Q^*\Big(f + f_0 - \frac{\alpha}{2}\Big)\bar{S}_a^\alpha(f + f_0) \\ &+ Q\Big(f - f_0 + \frac{\alpha}{2}\Big)Q^*\Big(f - f_0 - \frac{\alpha}{2}\Big)\bar{S}_a^\alpha(f - f_0)\Big]\exp[-i2\pi\alpha t_0] \\ &+ Q\Big(f + \frac{\alpha}{2} + f_0\Big)Q^*\Big(f - \frac{\alpha}{2} - f_0\Big)\bar{S}_a^{\alpha+2f_0}(f)\exp[-i(2\pi[\alpha + 2f_0]t_0 + 2\phi_0)] \\ &+ Q\Big(f + \frac{\alpha}{2} - f_0\Big)Q^*\Big(f - \frac{\alpha}{2} + f_0\Big)\bar{S}_a^{\alpha-2f_0}(f)\exp[-i(2\pi[\alpha - 2f_0]t_0 - 2\phi_0)]\Big\},\end{aligned} \tag{70}$$

and for a full-duty-cycle rectangle pulse, we have

$$q(t) = \begin{cases} 1, & |t| \leq T_0/2 \\ 0, & |t| > T_0/2 \end{cases} \tag{71a}$$

$$Q(f) = \frac{\sin(\pi f T_0)}{\pi f}. \tag{71b}$$

For a white amplitude sequence, we have

$$\bar{S}_a^\alpha(f) = \begin{cases} \bar{R}_a(0), & \alpha = k/T_0 \\ 0, & \alpha \neq k/T_0 \end{cases} \tag{72}$$

for all integers k. The spectral correlation magnitude and phase surfaces specified by (70)–(72) for this ASK signal are shown in Figure 12-8. If $f_0 T_0$ is sufficiently large to render negligible the overlap in the bifrequency plane of the four terms in (70), then ASK is, like PAM and AM, completely coherent for all f and α for which it is not completely incoherent and the power density is nonnegligible.

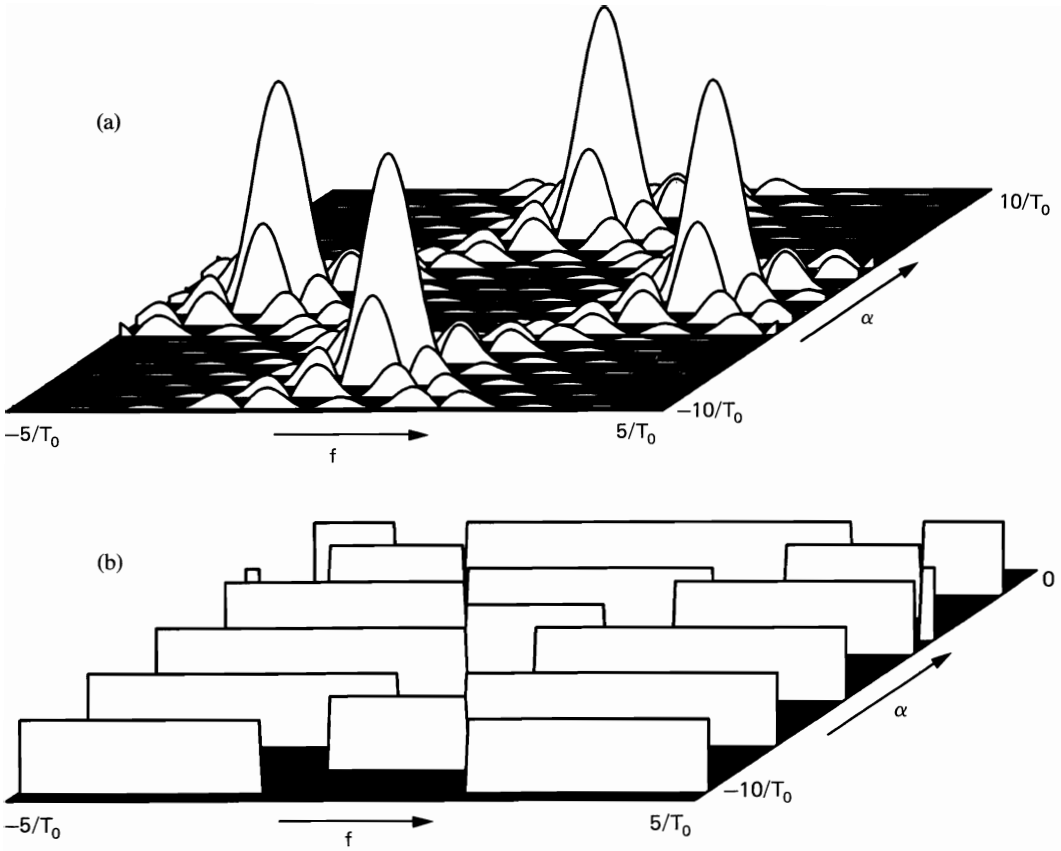


Figure 12-8 Spectral correlation surfaces for amplitude-shift keying (and binary phase-shift keying) with carrier frequency = $3.3/T_0$. (a) Magnitude. (b) Phase (range: 0—π).

2. Phase-Shift Keying

A PSK signal is simply a PM carrier,

$$x(t) = \cos[2\pi f_0 t + \phi(t)],$$

in which the phase time-series is a digital PAM signal,

$$\phi(t) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} a_n q(t - nT_0 - t_0).$$

However, it is simpler to use the fact that a PSK signal is also a binary ASK signal for $M = 2$, and for $M > 2$ it is a QAM signal,

$$x(t) = c(t)\cos(2\pi f_0 t + \phi_0) - s(t)\sin(2\pi f_0 t + \phi_0),$$

with digital PAM in-phase and quadrature components $c(t)$ and $s(t)$. Thus, for binary PSK (BPSK), the spectral correlation function is given by (70)–(71) with $\tilde{R}_a(0) = 1$. For a quaternary PSK (QPSK) signal with phases separated by $\pi/2$ radians and with time-aligned in-phase and quadrature binary digital PAM signals,

$$\begin{aligned} c(t) &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} c_n q(t - nT_0 - t_0) \\ s(t) &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} s_n q(t - nT_0 - t_0), \end{aligned} \tag{73}$$

it can be shown that formula (36) with $\hat{S}_c^\alpha$ and $\hat{S}_s^\alpha$ each specified by (16) or (61) reduces to (exercise 11)

$$\begin{aligned} \hat{S}_x^\alpha(f) = \frac{1}{2T_0} \Big[& Q\Big(f + \frac{\alpha}{2} + f_0\Big) Q^*\Big(f - \frac{\alpha}{2} + f_0\Big) \tilde{S}_c^\alpha(f + f_0) \\ & + Q\Big(f + \frac{\alpha}{2} - f_0\Big) Q^*\Big(f - \frac{\alpha}{2} - f_0\Big) \tilde{S}_c^\alpha(f - f_0) \Big] \exp(-i2\pi\alpha t_0), \end{aligned} \tag{74}$$

where $\tilde{R}_c(0) = \tilde{R}_s(0) = 1$ and for which it has been assumed that the in-phase and quadrature components are balanced in the sense that

$$\tilde{S}_c^\alpha(f) - \tilde{S}_s^\alpha(f) \equiv [\tilde{S}_{cs}^\alpha(f)]_r \equiv 0, \tag{75}$$

where $[\cdot]_r$ denotes the real part.

As a matter of fact, (74) applies to all APK signals that exhibit balanced amplitude-phase constellations. Specifically, if for every pair of amplitude and phase values, (a_m, θ_m), there are the three additional pairs $(a_m, \theta_m + \pi/2)$, $(a_m, \theta_m + \pi)$, $(a_m, \theta_m - \pi/2)$, and if (for example) the sequence of amplitude-phase pairs is an uncorrelated purely stationary sequence with uniform fraction-of-time distribution, then (74)–(75) applies with

$$\tilde{S}_c^\alpha(f) = \begin{cases} \tilde{R}_c(0), & \alpha = k/T_0 \\ 0, & \alpha \neq k/T_0. \end{cases} \tag{76}$$

The spectral correlation magnitude and phase surfaces for this class of balanced APK signals are shown in Figure 12-9. Notice that in this class of APK signals, any number of amplitude values is allowed in the alphabet of amplitude-phase pairs; however, the number of phases must be an integer multiple of 4. If $f_0 T_0$ is sufficiently large to render negligible the overlap in the bifrequency plane of the two terms in (74), then these APK signals are completely coherent for all f and α for which they are not completely incoherent and the power density is nonnegligible. This includes only values of α that are integer multiples of the keying rate $1/T_0$. In contrast to the result for BPSK shown in Figure 12-8, there is no spectral correlation associated with the carrier frequency f_0 (i.e., at $\alpha = \pm 2f_0 + k/T_0$) for balanced APK: It is balanced out between the in-phase and quadrature components. Also unlike BPSK, there is no dependence of the spectral correlation on the carrier phase ϕ_0.

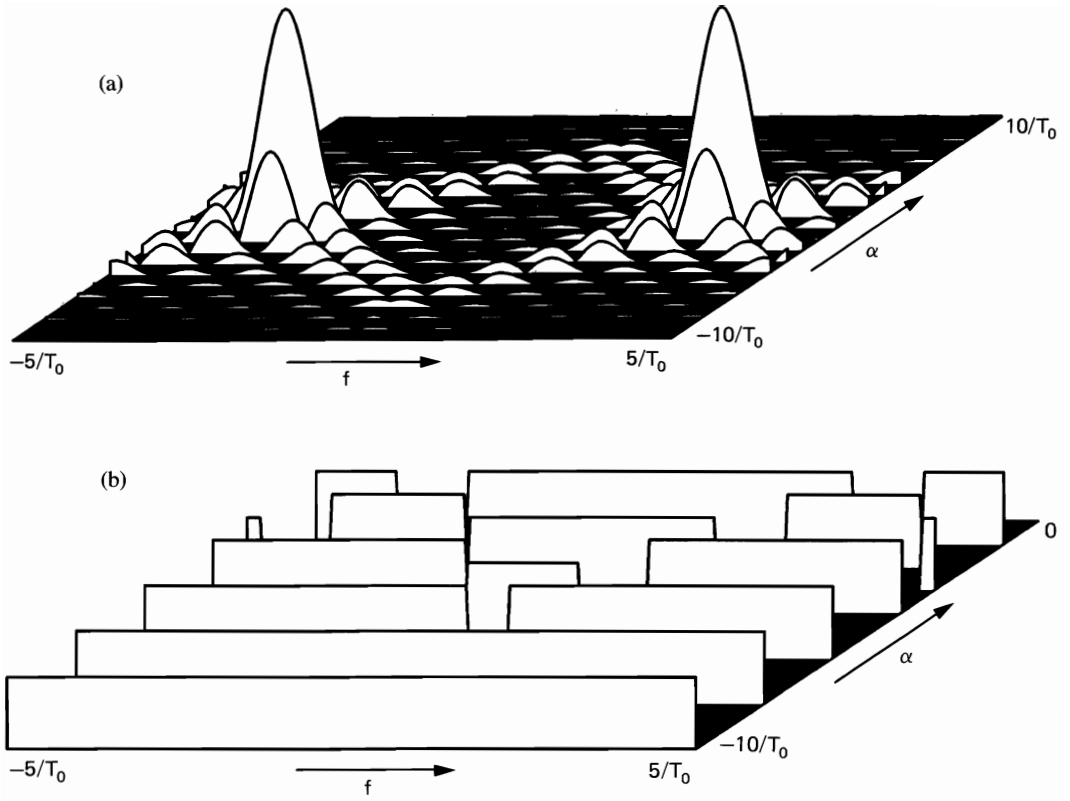


Figure 12-9 Spectral correlation surfaces for balanced amplitude-phase-shift keying (and quaternary phase-shift keying) with carrier frequency = $3.3/T_0$. (a) Magnitude. (b) Phase (range: 0—π).

There are other types of PSK for which (74) does not apply because the in-phase and quadrature PAM signals are 50% staggered in time,

$$\begin{aligned} c(t) &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} c_n q\left(t - nT_0 - t_0 - \frac{T_0}{2}\right) \\ s(t) &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} s_n q(t - nT_0 - t_0). \end{aligned} \tag{77}$$

If it is assumed that $\{c_n\}$ and $\{s_n\}$ are statistically independent binary sequences with

$$\tilde{S}_{cs}^{\alpha}(f) \equiv 0,$$

then it can be shown using (36) and either (16) or (61) (for each of $c(t)$ and $s(t)$) that (exercise 12)

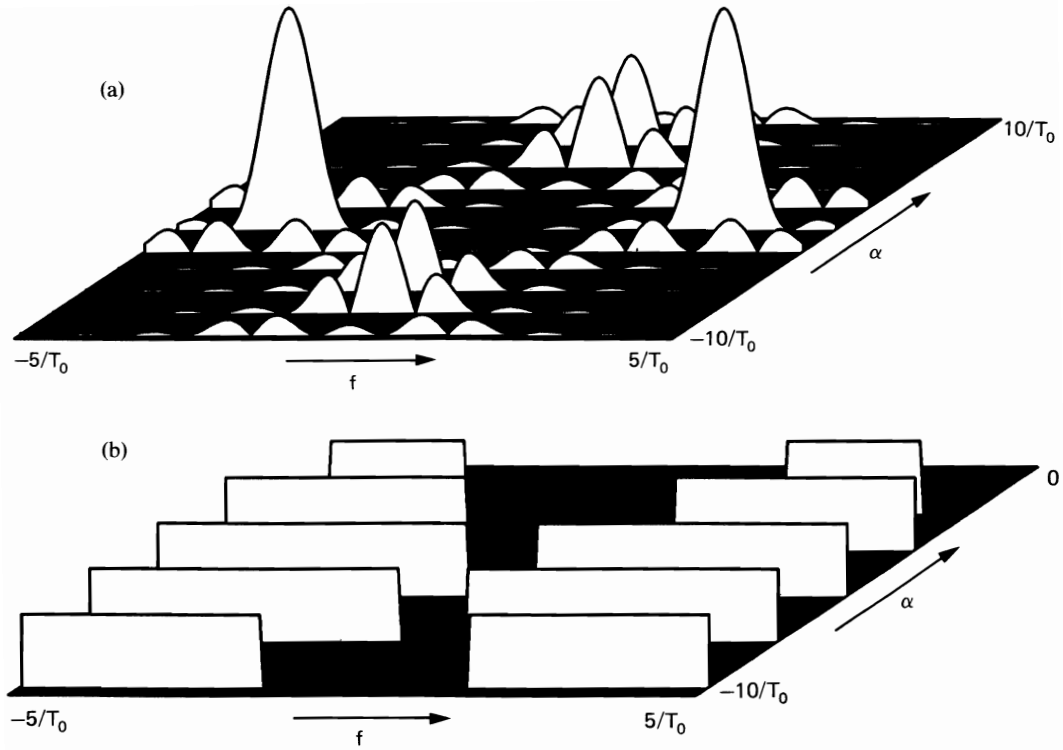


Figure 12-10 Spectral correlation surfaces for staggered quaternary phase-shift keying with carrier frequency = $3.3/T_0$. (a) Magnitude. (b) Phase (range: 0—π).

$$\begin{aligned}\hat{S}_x^{\alpha}(f) = \frac{1}{4T_0}\Big\{ & Q\Big(f + f_0 + \frac{\alpha}{2}\Big)Q^*\Big(f + f_0 - \frac{\alpha}{2}\Big)[\tilde{S}_c^{\alpha}(f + f_0)e^{-i\pi\alpha T_0} + \tilde{S}_s^{\alpha}(f + f_0)]e^{-i2\pi\alpha t_0} \\ & + Q\Big(f - f_0 + \frac{\alpha}{2}\Big)Q^*\Big(f - f_0 - \frac{\alpha}{2}\Big)[\tilde{S}_c^{\alpha}(f - f_0)e^{-i\pi\alpha T_0} + \tilde{S}_s^{\alpha}(f - f_0)]e^{-i2\pi\alpha t_0} \\ & + Q\Big(f + \frac{\alpha}{2} + f_0\Big)Q^*\Big(f - \frac{\alpha}{2} - f_0\Big)[\tilde{S}_c^{\alpha+2f_0}(f)e^{-i\pi(\alpha+2f_0)T_0} - \tilde{S}_s^{\alpha+2f_0}(f)] \\ & \qquad \times \exp[-i(2\pi[\alpha + 2f_0]t_0 + 2\phi_0)] \\ & + Q\Big(f + \frac{\alpha}{2} - f_0\Big)Q^*\Big(f - \frac{\alpha}{2} + f_0\Big)[\tilde{S}_c^{\alpha-2f_0}(f)e^{-i\pi(\alpha-2f_0)T_0} - \tilde{S}_s^{\alpha-2f_0}(f)] \\ & \qquad \times \exp[-i(2\pi[\alpha - 2f_0]t_0 - 2\phi_0)]\Big\}. \end{aligned} \tag{78}$$

If $\{c_n\}$ and $\{s_n\}$ are statistically identical, purely stationary, uncorrelated sequences with zero means, then

$$\tilde{S}_c^{\alpha}(f) = \tilde{S}_s^{\alpha}(f) = \begin{cases} \tilde{R}_c(0), & \alpha = k/T_0 \\ 0, & \alpha \neq k/T_0, \end{cases}$$

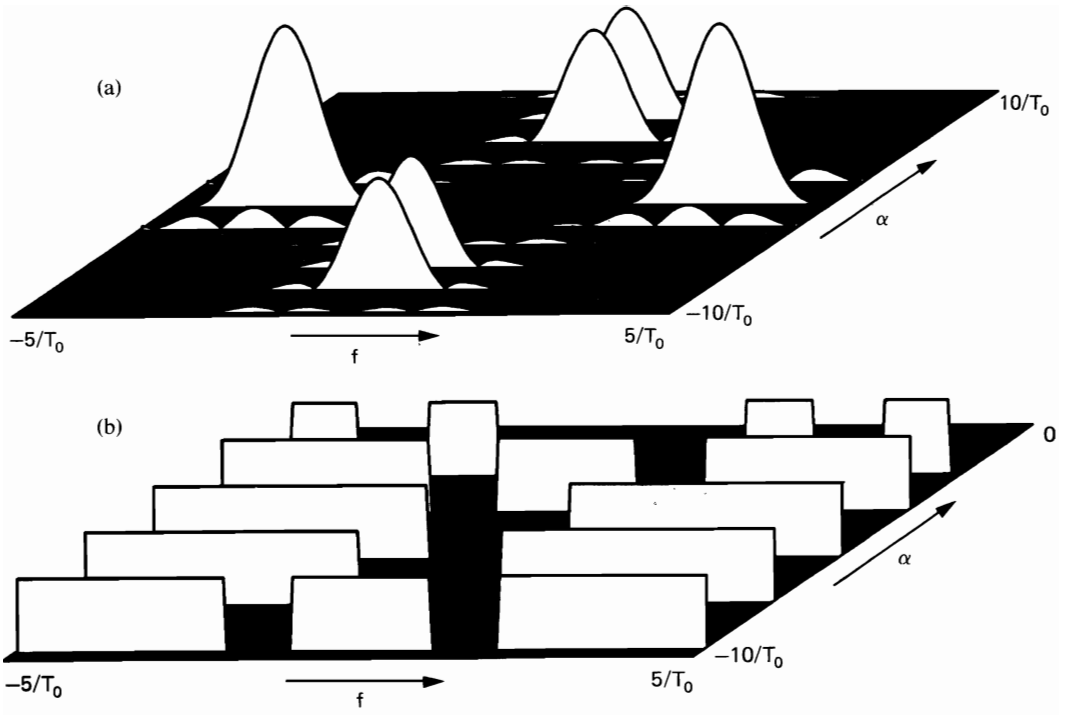


Figure 12-11 Spectral correlation surfaces for minimum-shift keying with carrier frequency $= 3.3/T_0$. (a) Magnitude. (b) Phase (range: 0—π).

and (78) reduces to

$$\hat{S}_x^{\alpha}(f) = \frac{\tilde{R}_c(0)}{2T_0}\left[Q\left(f+\frac{\alpha}{2}+f_0\right)Q^*\left(f-\frac{\alpha}{2}+f_0\right) + Q\left(f+\frac{\alpha}{2}-f_0\right)Q^*\left(f-\frac{\alpha}{2}-f_0\right)\right]e^{-i2\pi\alpha t_0}, \qquad \alpha = \frac{m}{T_0},\ m \text{ even},$$

$$\hat{S}_x^{\alpha}(f) = -\frac{\tilde{R}_c(0)}{2T_0}\left[Q\left(f+\frac{\alpha}{2}+f_0\right)Q^*\left(f-\frac{\alpha}{2}-f_0\right)\exp\{-i(2\pi[\alpha+2f_0]t_0+2\phi_0)\} + Q\left(f+\frac{\alpha}{2}-f_0\right)Q^*\left(f-\frac{\alpha}{2}+f_0\right)\exp\{-i(2\pi[\alpha-2f_0]t_0-2\phi_0)\}\right], \qquad \alpha = \pm 2f_0 + \frac{m}{T_0},\ m \text{ odd} \qquad (79)$$

for this *staggered* QPSK (SQPSK) signal. Graphs of the spectral correlation magnitude and phase surfaces specified by (79) with $Q(f)$ given by (71) are shown in Figure 12-10. It can be seen by comparison with Figures 12-8 and 12-9 that SQPSK is similar to both BPSK and QPSK, yet distinct. Like BPSK, it does exhibit spectral correlation at *some* frequencies associated with the carrier frequency, $\alpha = \pm 2f_0 + k/T_0$, but only for odd values of k. Like both BPSK

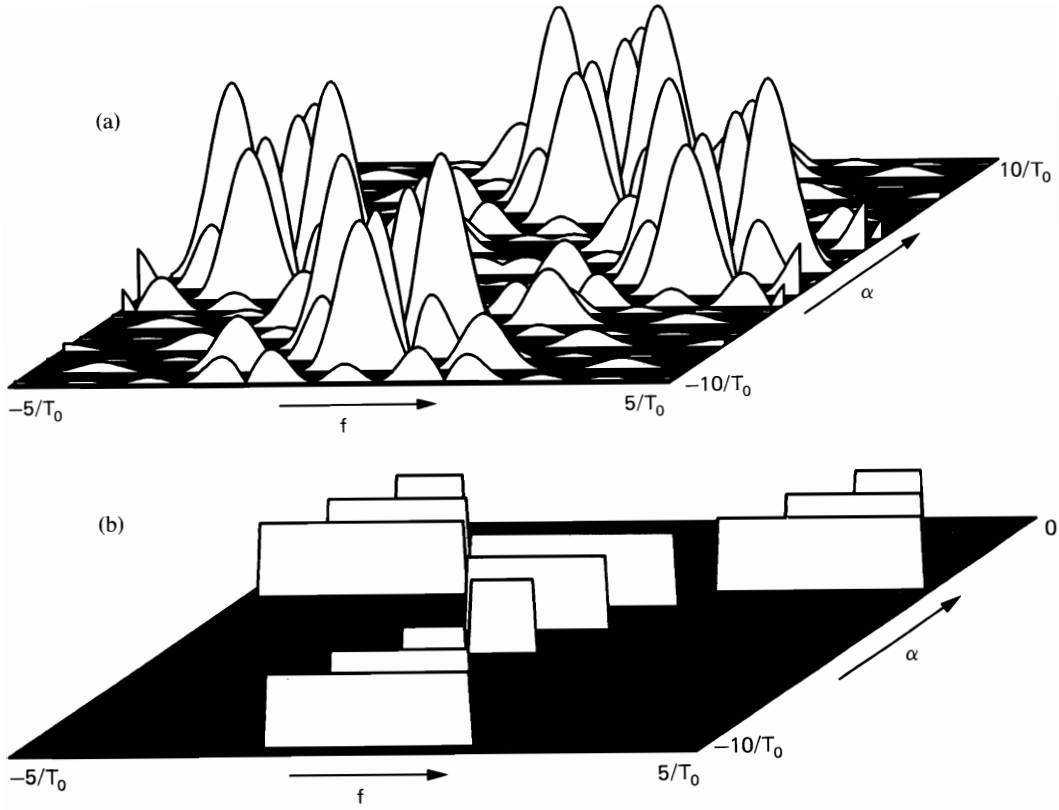


Figure 12-12 Spectral correlation surfaces for Manchester encoded binary phase-shift keying with carrier frequency = $3.3/T_0$. (a) Magnitude. (b) Phase (range: 0—π).

and QPSK, it also exhibits spectral correlation at *some* frequencies associated with the pulse rate alone, $\alpha = k/T_0$, but only for even values of k. Also like BPSK, but unlike QPSK, there is some dependence on the carrier phase ϕ_0.

If the rectangle pulse shape $q(t)$ used in the SQPSK signal is modified to half a cycle of a sine wave,

$$q(t) = \begin{cases} \cos(\pi t/T_0), & |t| \leq T_0/2 \\ 0, & |t| > T_0/2, \end{cases} \tag{80}$$

then this is called a *minimum-shift-keyed* (MSK) signal. Formulas (78) and (79) still apply, but with

$$Q(f) = \frac{1}{2}\left[Q_0\left(f + \frac{1}{2T_0}\right) + Q_0\left(f - \frac{1}{2T_0}\right)\right], \tag{81}$$

where $Q_0(f)$ is given by $Q(f)$ in (71). A graph of the spectral correlation magnitude and phase surfaces specified by (79) and (81) are shown in Figure 12-11.

As another illustration of the effect of a modification to the pulse shape used for PSK, we consider a BPSK signal with a bipolar pulse

$$q(t) = \begin{cases} 1, & \dfrac{-T_0}{2} < t \leq 0 \\ -1, & 0 \leq t < \dfrac{T_0}{2}. \end{cases} \tag{82}$$

This is sometimes called *Manchester encoded* BPSK, whereas BPSK with the unipolar rectangle pulse (71) is called *nonreturn-to-zero* (NRZ) *encoded* BPSK. The spectral correlation magnitude and phase surfaces for BPSK with pulse shape (82) are shown in Figure 12-12.

3. Frequency-Shift Keying

One type of FSK signal is simply an FM carrier,

$$x(t) = \cos\left(2\pi f_0 t + \int_0^t z(u)\, du\right), \tag{83a}$$

in which the instantaneous frequency-deviation time-series is a digital PAM signal with, say, M levels,

$$z(t) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n q(t - nT_0). \tag{83b}$$

Since the instantaneous phase of this signal is a continuous function of t (assuming that $q(t)$ contains no impulses), this is called *continuous-phase* FSK (CPFSK). The spectral correlation function for CPFSK can be obtained from (47) for $\alpha = \pm 2f_0$, and its character (such as existence of impulses) depends on the relationship between the M frequencies and T_0.

Another type of FSK, in which the phase is not necessarily continuous, can be expressed as

$$x(t) = \cos\left\{2\pi f_0 t + \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \sum_{m=1}^{M} \delta_m(n)[2\pi f_m(t - nT_0) + \theta_m(n)]q(t - nT_0)\right\}. \tag{84}$$

If this signal is obtained by keying off and on M continuously running oscillators with frequencies $\{f_0 + f_m\}_1^M$, then

$$\theta_m(n) = 2\pi f_m n T_0 + \phi_m \tag{85a}$$

and (84) reduces to

$$x(t) = \cos\left\{2\pi \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \sum_{m=1}^{M} \delta_m(n)[(f_0 + f_m)t + \phi_m]q(t - nT_0)\right\}, \tag{85b}$$

which is called *carrier-phase-coherent* FSK. As an alternative, if the signal (84) is obtained by exciting M narrow-band filters with impulses every T_0 units of time, and if the filters are returned to the same initial state T_0 units of time after excitation, then

$$\theta_m(n) = \phi_m \tag{86}$$

in (84), and $x(t)$ is called *clock-phase coherent* FSK. In this case, each of the

M possible carrier bursts of length T_0 always starts off with the same phase ϕ_m. If there are an integer number of carrier cycles per keying interval ($[f_0 + f_m]T_0$ = integer), then clock-phase coherence and carrier-phase coherence are equivalent. Also, if all M phases $\{\phi_m\}$ are equal and $[f_0 + f_m]T_0$ = integer, then (84) is a CPFSK signal (although CPFSK as generated in (83) does not require either clock-phase coherence or carrier-phase coherence unless $[f_0 + f_m]T_0$ = integer and $\{\phi_m\}$ are all equal). One other possibility is phase-incoherent FSK, in which the phase sequence

$$\theta_m(n) = \theta_n \tag{87}$$

fluctuates randomly with n (and independently of $\delta_m(n)$).

Example: ***Clock-Phase Coherent FSK***

Use of (86) in (84) yields the alternative but equivalent expression for the clock-phase coherent FSK signal (exercise 13):

$$x(t) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \sum_{m=1}^{M} \delta_m(n)\cos[2\pi(f_0 + f_m)(t - nT_0) + \phi_m]q(t - nT_0), \tag{88}$$

where $q(t)$ is the rectangle pulse (71). This is a digital pulse-modulated signal (58) with

$$q_m(t) = \cos[2\pi(f_0 + f_m)t + \phi_m]q(t). \tag{89}$$

Therefore, the spectral correlation function for this FSK signal is given by (63) (assuming the data $\{\boldsymbol{\delta}(n)\}$ is purely stationary) with

$$Q_m(f) = \frac{\sin[\pi(f - f_0 - f_m)T_0]e^{i\phi_m}}{2\pi(f - f_0 - f_m)} + \frac{\sin[\pi(f + f_0 + f_m)T_0]e^{-i\phi_m}}{2\pi(f + f_0 + f_m)}. \tag{90}$$

If the data $\{\boldsymbol{\delta}(n)\}$ is uncorrelated and has uniform fraction-of-time distribution, then (63) reduces to (66). It follows that $|\hat{S}_x^{\alpha}(f)|$ has its maximum values at $\alpha = 0$ and $f = \pm(f_0 + f_m)$, and if $(f_0 + f_m)T_0$ are integers, then there are additional maxima at $\alpha = \pm 2(f_0 + f_m)$ and $f = 0$. There are also secondary maxima (down by the factor $M - 1$ from the primary maxima) at $\pm\alpha = (f_0 + f_m) \pm (f_0 + f_n)$ and $\pm f = [(f_0 + f_m) \mp (f_0 + f_n)]/2$.

Example: ***Phase-Incoherent FSK***

The phase-incoherent FSK signal can be expressed in the alternative but equivalent form

$$x(t) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n(t)q(t - nT_0), \tag{91a}$$

where

$$a_n(t) \triangleq \cos(2\pi[f_0 + f(n)]t + \theta_n) \tag{91b}$$

and

$$f(n) \triangleq \sum_{m=1}^{M} \delta_m(n)f_m. \tag{91c}$$

If $\{\theta_n\}$ is an independent sequence, has uniform fraction-of-time distribution on the interval $[-\pi, \pi]$, and is statistically independent of $\{f(n)\}$, then it can be shown (exercise 14) that the limit cyclic autocorrelation for this phase-incoherent FSK signal is given by the product

$$\hat{R}_x^{\alpha}(\tau) = \frac{1}{2T_0} r_q^{\alpha}(\tau) \tilde{M}_y^{\alpha}(\tau), \tag{92a}$$

where

$$r_q^{\alpha}(\tau) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} q\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right) q\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right) e^{-i2\pi\alpha t}\, dt \tag{92b}$$

and

$$\tilde{M}_y^{\alpha}(\tau) \triangleq \lim_{N\to\infty} \frac{1}{2N+1} \sum_{n=-N}^{N} y_n(\tau) e^{-i2\pi n\alpha T_0}, \tag{92c}$$

for which

$$y_n(\tau) \triangleq \cos(2\pi[f_0 + f(n)]\tau). \tag{93}$$

Thus, the spectral correlation function is given by the convolution (in the variable f)

$$\hat{S}_x^{\alpha}(f) = \frac{1}{2T_0}\left[Q\left(f + \frac{\alpha}{2}\right) Q^*\left(f - \frac{\alpha}{2}\right)\right] \otimes \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \tilde{M}_y^{\alpha}(\tau) e^{-i2\pi f\tau}\, d\tau. \tag{94}$$

If $\{f(n)\}$ is purely stationary and has discrete M-ary fraction-of-time distribution $\{P_m\}_1^M$, then it can be shown (exercise 14) that

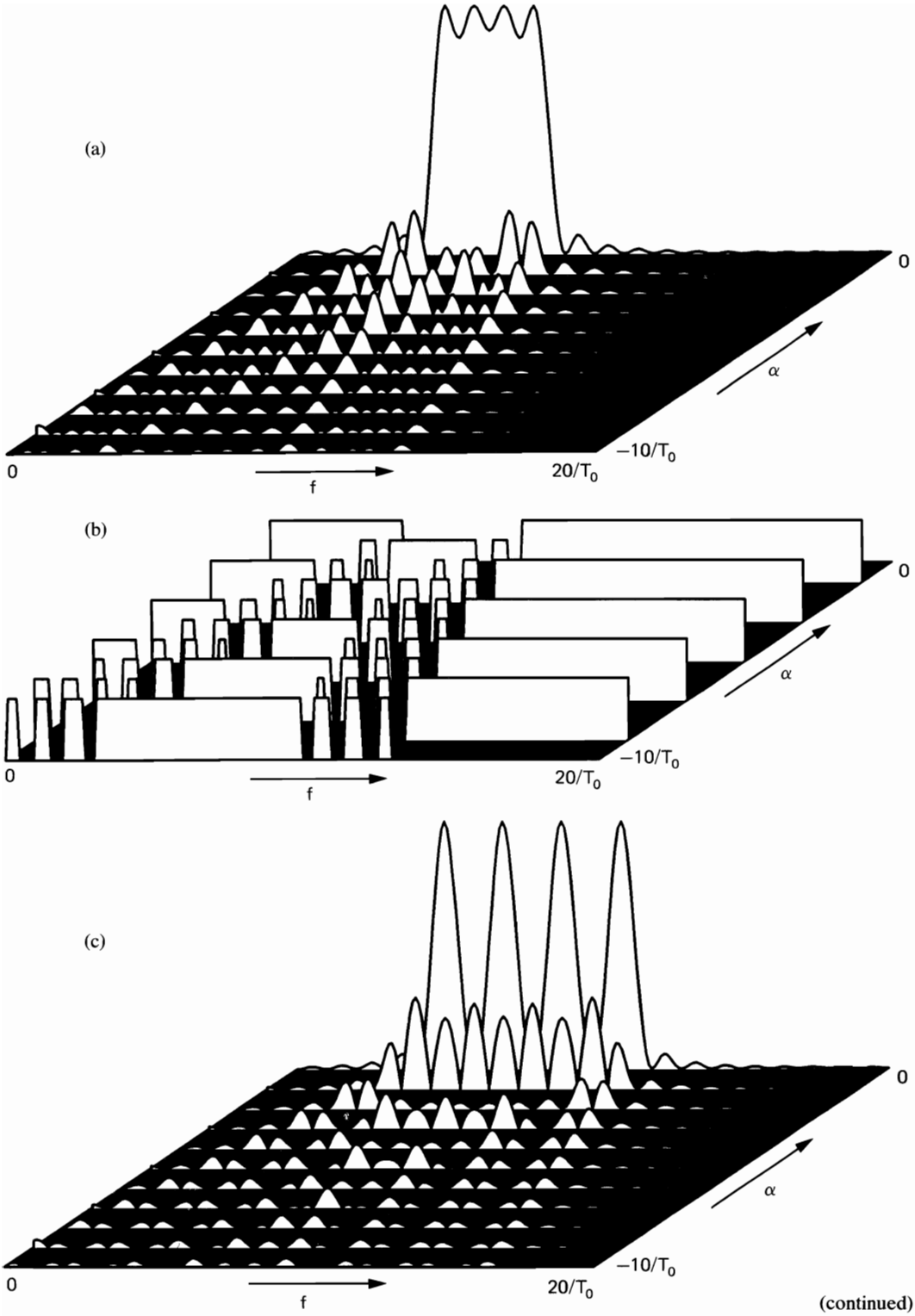
$$\tilde{M}_y^{\alpha}(\tau) = \sum_{m=1}^{M} P_m \cos[2\pi(f_0 + f_m)\tau], \qquad \alpha = \frac{k}{T_0}. \tag{95}$$

It follows from (94) and (95) that

$$\begin{aligned} \hat{S}_x^{\alpha}(f) = \frac{1}{4T_0} \sum_{m=1}^{M} P_m \Big[& Q\left(f + f_0 + f_m + \frac{\alpha}{2}\right) Q^*\left(f + f_0 + f_m - \frac{\alpha}{2}\right) \\ & + Q\left(f - f_0 - f_m + \frac{\alpha}{2}\right) Q^*\left(f - f_0 - f_m - \frac{\alpha}{2}\right)\Big], \qquad \alpha = \frac{k}{T_0}. \end{aligned} \tag{96}$$

Comparison of (66) (with (90) substituted in) with (96) reveals that some terms present in (66) are absent in (96), and as a result there are no impulses in $\hat{S}_x^{\alpha}(f)$ for phase-incoherent FSK, unlike clock-phase coherent FSK, and there are no peaks at $\alpha = \pm 2(f_0 + f_m)$. In fact, if $2(f_0 + f_m)T_0$ is not an integer, there is no contribution at all at $\alpha = \pm 2(f_0 + f_m)$. However, if the products $\{(f_0 + f_m)T_0\}$ are sufficiently large to render negligible the overlap, in the bifrequency plane, of the $2M$ terms in (96), then the incoherent-phase FSK signal (i.e., incoherent at the frequencies of the carrier bursts) is, to a close approximation, completely coherent (i.e., coherent at the clock rate and its harmonics) for all f and α for which any one of these $2M$ terms is nonnegligible. This includes only values of α that are integer multiples of the keying rate $1/T_0$. However, $\{(f_0 + f_m)T_0\}$ are usually not very large in practice.

Two graphs of the spectral correlation magnitude and phase surfaces specified by (96), corresponding to the two sets of frequencies $\{(f_0 + f_m)T_0\} = \{5, 6, 7, 8\}$ and $\{(f_0 + f_m)T_0\} = \{5, 7, 9, 11\}$ and a uniform distribution $P_m = \frac{1}{4}$, are shown in Figure 12-13.



(continued)

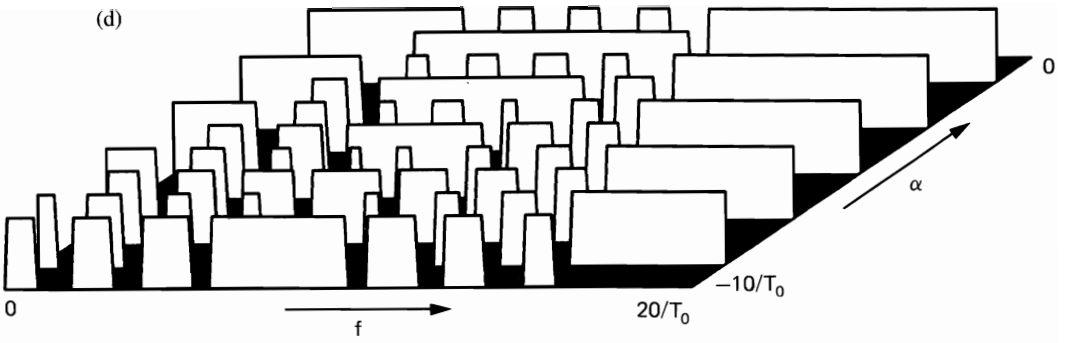


Figure 12-13 Spectral correlation surfaces for phase-incoherent quaternary FSK. (a) Magnitude surface for $\{(f_0 + f_m)T_0\} = \{5,6,7,8\}$. (b) Phase surface corresponding to (a) (range: 0—π). (c) Magnitude surface for $\{(f_0 + f_m)T_0\} = \{5,7,9,11\}$. (d) Phase surface corresponding to (c) (range: 0—π).

F. SPREAD-SPECTRUM MODULATION

As discussed in connection with the digital pulse-chirp modulated signal in Section D, a modulated signal that has a bandwidth that greatly exceeds the bandwidth of the unmodulated data (e.g., the digital data rate $1/T_0$) is called a *spread-spectrum signal*. Two of the most commonly used classes of spread-spectrum signals are based on PSK and FSK digital carrier modulation.

1. Direct Sequence PSK

One type of spread-spectrum signal is a direct sequence QPSK (DS-QPSK) signal, which is a conventional QPSK signal that is again PSK-modulated by multiplication with a periodically repeated binary PAM code signal with pulse rate (called the *chip rate*) $1/T_c$ given by a large integer multiple of the data rate $1/T_0$,

$$\frac{T_0}{T_c} = S >> 1. \tag{97}$$

That is,

$$y(t) = p(t)x(t), \tag{98a}$$

where

$$x(t) = \cos(2\pi f_0 t + \phi_0) \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} c_n q(t - nT_0)$$

$$- \sin(2\pi f_0 t + \phi_0) \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} s_n q(t - nT_0) \tag{98b}$$

and

$$p(t) = \sum_{m=-\infty}^{\infty} b_m q[(t - mT_c)S], \tag{98c}$$

in which $q(t)$ is the rectangle pulse (71). A common choice for the period of the spreading code signal $p(t)$ is some integer multiple, say N, of the data symbol interval T_0. In this case b_m repeats every NS code digits:

$$b_{m+NS} = b_m. \tag{99}$$

The bandwidth of $y(t)$ is approximately $2/T_c$, whereas the bandwidth of $x(t)$ is approximately $2/T_0$. Thus, S as given by (97) is the bandwidth spreading factor. The spectral correlation function for this DS-QPSK signal (98) follows directly from formulas (4) (with $a(t)$ and $x(t)$ replaced by $x(t)$ and $y(t)$, respectively) and (74), and if the data sequences $\{c_n\}$ and $\{s_n\}$ are white, then (76) applies to (74) to yield

$$\hat{S}_y^\alpha(f) = \frac{\tilde{R}_c(0)}{2T_0} \sum_{p,q=-\infty}^{\infty} P_p P_{p-k+qN}^* \left[Q\left(f - f_0 + \frac{k/2 - p}{NT_0}\right) Q^*\left(f - f_0 + \frac{k/2 - p - qN}{NT_0}\right) \right.$$

$$\left. + Q\left(f + f_0 + \frac{k/2 - p}{NT_0}\right) Q^*\left(f + f_0 + \frac{k/2 - p - qN}{NT_0}\right) \right],$$

$$\alpha = \frac{k}{NT_0}, \tag{100}$$

where $Q(f)$ is given by (71), and

$$P_p \triangleq \frac{1}{NT_0} \int_{-NT_0/2}^{NT_0/2} \sum_m b_m q(St - mT_0) e^{-i2\pi pt/NT_0}\, dt = B_p \frac{\sin(\pi p/NS)}{\pi p}, \tag{101a}$$

where

$$B_p \triangleq \sum_{m=0}^{NS-1} b_m e^{-i2\pi pm/NS}. \tag{101b}$$

For the special case $N = 1$, (100) reduces to

$$\hat{S}_y^\alpha(f) = \frac{\tilde{R}_c(0)}{4T_0} \left[\sum_{p=-\infty}^{\infty} P_p Q\left(f - f_0 + \frac{k - 2p}{2T_0}\right) \sum_{q=-\infty}^{\infty} P_q^* Q^*\left(f - f_0 - \frac{k + 2q}{2T_0}\right) \right.$$

$$\left. + \sum_{p=-\infty}^{\infty} P_p Q\left(f + f_0 + \frac{k - 2p}{2T_0}\right) \sum_{q=-\infty}^{\infty} P_q^* Q^*\left(f + f_0 - \frac{k + 2q}{2T_0}\right) \right], \qquad \alpha = \frac{k}{T_0}. \tag{102}$$

The spectral correlation magnitude and phase surfaces specified by (101)–(102), with $\{b_m\}$ given by a maximal length pseudonoise sequence [Golomb 1967] with period $S = 127$ is shown in Figure 12-14.

2. Frequency-Hopped FSK

Another type of spread-spectrum signal is a frequency hopped M-ary FSK (FH-FSK) signal, which is a conventional M-ary FSK signal that is again FSK-modulated with a much larger alphabet of frequencies, say S, extending over a much broader spectral band. This type of signal can be expressed in the same form, (91), as a conventional FSK signal but with an alphabet size of SM instead

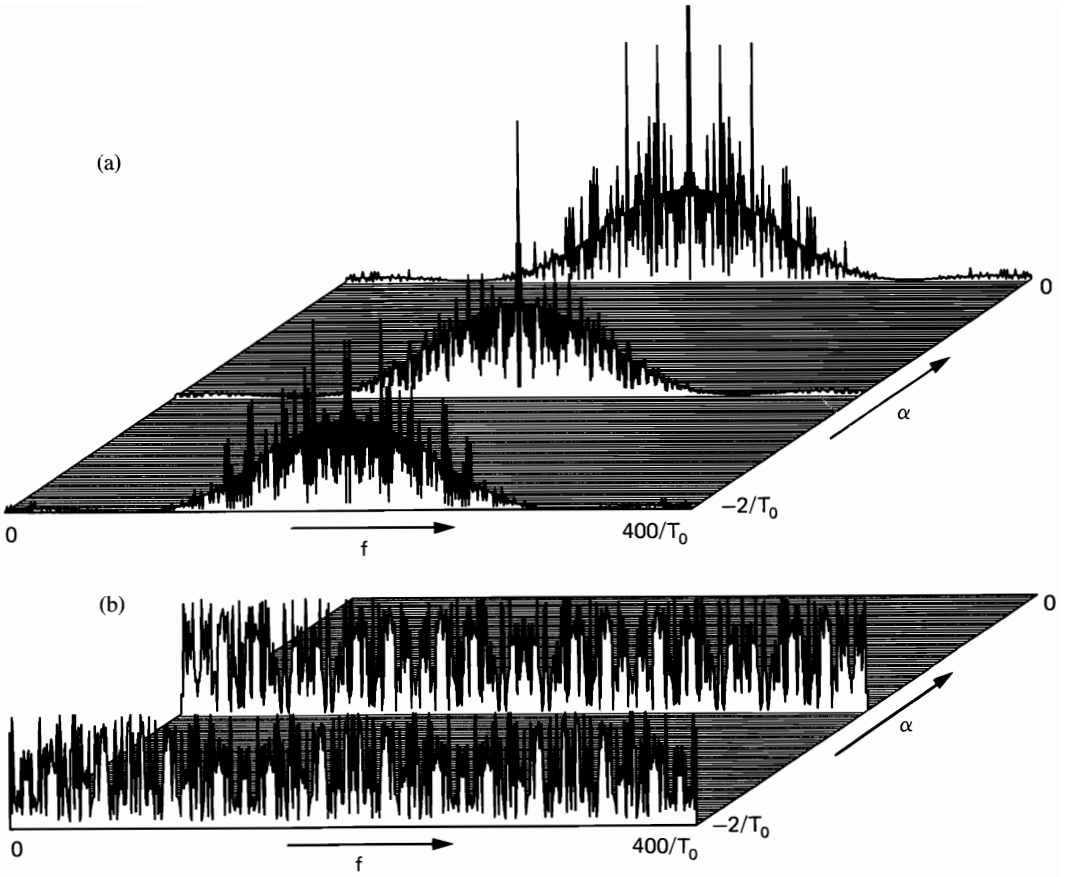


Figure 12-14 Spectral correlation surfaces for direct sequence spread-spectrum quaternary phase-shift keying with periodic code sequence: code period = baud length = 127 (maximal length pn code) and carrier frequency = $200/T_0$. (a) Magnitude. (b) Phase (range: 0—π).

of M. Furthermore, the sequence of frequencies $\{f_0 + f(n)\}$ can be decomposed into the sum of two components,

$$f_0 + f(n) = f_0(n) + f_*(n),$$

where $f_0(n)$ is the S-ary sequence of hop frequencies and $f_*(n)$ is the M-ary sequence of data-symbol frequencies. Since $\{f_0(n)\}$ and $\{f_*(n)\}$ are statistically independent, the factor $\tilde{M}_y^\alpha(\tau)$ in formula (92), which applies to all phase-incoherent FSK signals, can be decomposed. As a specific example, let us assume that the hop sequence is periodic with period P. Then it can be shown (exercise 14) that

$$\tilde{M}_y^\alpha(\tau) = \frac{1}{MP} \sum_{p=1}^{P} \sum_{m=1}^{M} \cos[2\pi(f_m + g_p)\tau] e^{-i2\pi\alpha p T_0}, \qquad \alpha = \frac{k}{PT_0}, \tag{103}$$

where

$$g_p \triangleq f_0(p)$$

and $\{f_m\}$ are the M frequencies in the data-symbol alphabet. Substitution of (103) into (94) yields the spectral correlation function for periodically hopped FSK:

$$\hat{S}_x^\alpha(f) = \frac{1}{4PMT_0} \sum_{p=1}^{P} \sum_{m=1}^{M} \left[Q\left(f - f_m - g_p + \frac{\alpha}{2}\right) Q^*\left(f - f_m - g_p - \frac{\alpha}{2}\right) + Q\left(f + f_m + g_p + \frac{\alpha}{2}\right) Q^*\left(f + f_m + g_p - \frac{\alpha}{2}\right) \right] e^{-i2\pi\alpha p T_0},$$

$$\alpha = \frac{k}{PT_0}. \qquad (104)$$

The spectral correlation magnitude and phase surfaces specified by (104) for $P = S = 4$ and $M = 2$, corresponding to the two sets of frequencies $\{f_m T_0\} = \{\frac{1}{2}, -\frac{1}{2}\}$ and $\{g_p T_0\} = \{8, 10, 12, 14\}$, are shown in Figure 12-15.

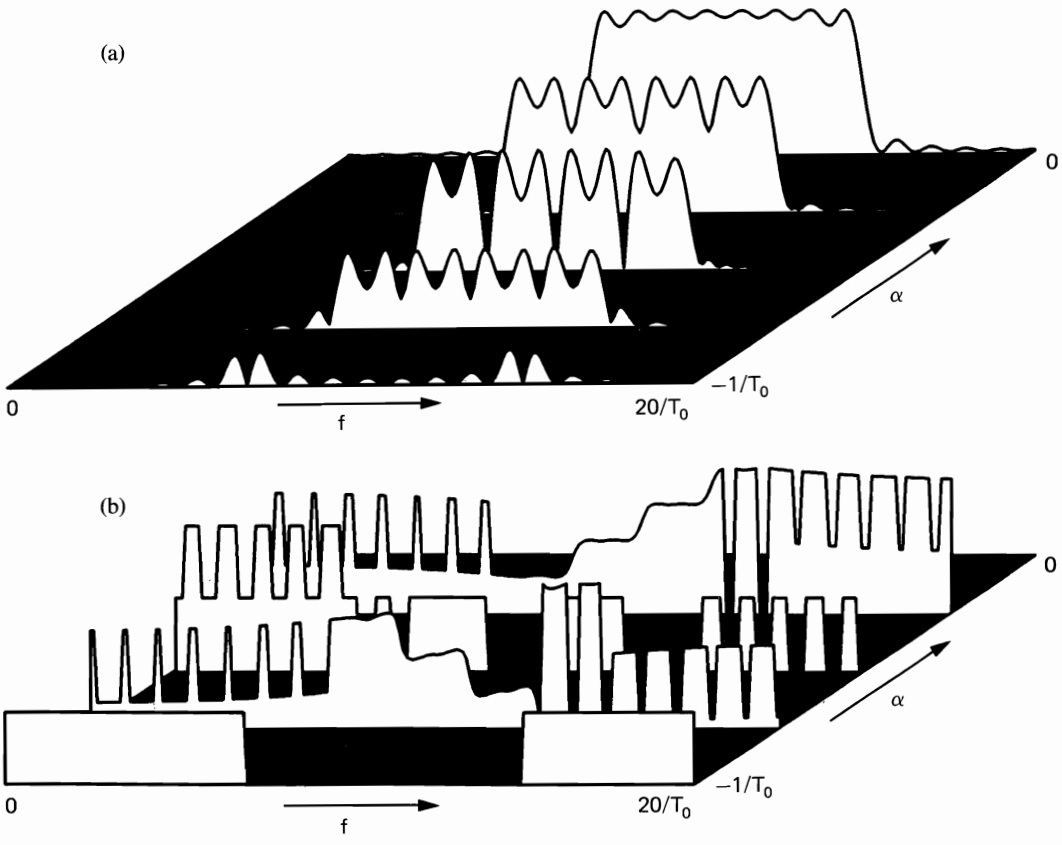


Figure 12-15 Spectral correlation surfaces for frequency-hopped frequency-shift keying with periodic hop sequence period = number of hop frequencies = 4 ($\{g_p T_0\} = \{8,10,12,14\}$), and binary data ($\{f_m T_0\} = \{1/2, -1/2\}$). (a) Magnitude. (b) Phase (range: 0—π).

G. SUMMARY

A new characteristic of modulated signals, the spectral correlation function, is calculated for a wide variety of modulation types, including both analog and digital types, and both carrier and pulse modulation, and the results are graphed as surfaces above the bifrequency plane. These results clarify the ways in which cyclostationarity is exhibited by different types of modulated signals. It is emphasized that the majority of specific formulas for spectral correlation functions that are derived are essentially direct applications of either of two general formulas: the spectral correlation convolution formula for products of independent time-series ((101) in Chapter 11) and the spectral correlation input-output relation for linear periodically (or almost periodically) time-variant transformations ((135) in Chapter 11). It is also pointed out that the specific formulas for spectral correlation functions that are derived in this chapter are generalizations of conventional formulas for power spectral density functions, in the sense that the latter are included as the special case of the former for which the cycle frequency parameter α is zero.

The specific modulation types considered and various applications of the results are described in the introductory paragraph and are not reiterated here. However, in addition to the applications mentioned at the beginning of this chapter, in which spectral correlation can be exploited, there are also applications in which spectral correlation is an undesirable property whose effects need to be minimized. For example, nonlinearities in transmission systems, such as traveling-wave tube amplifiers and noise limiters, can inadvertently generate spectral lines from cyclostationary signals, and these spectral lines can cause severe interference effects. For nonlinearities in which the quadratic part is dominant, the results of this chapter can be used to predict the strength of interfering spectral lines that will be generated from specific types of modulated signals.

EXERCISES

1. **(a)** Use (132) and (134) in Chapter 11 together with (2a) to derive (3) for the limit cyclic autocorrelation of generalized AM.

(b) Use (5) with $\hat{S}_a(f) = A_0$ to derive (6) for the autocoherence magnitude for generalized AM with a white amplitude time-series.

(c) Use (10) to derive (11) for the autocoherence magnitude for AM.

2. Use (18) to derive (19) for the autocoherence magnitude for PAM.

3. **(a)** In order to derive formula (25) for the jittered impulse sequence (22), proceed as follows. Consider a discrete-valued jitter variable ϵ_n, with M values $\{e_m\}_1^M$ and corresponding fraction-of-time probabilities $\{P_m\}_1^M$. The jittered impulse sequence (22) can be expressed as

$$w(t) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \sum_{m=1}^{M} \delta_m(n) q_m(t - nT_0),$$

where

$$q_m(t) \triangleq \delta(t - e_m)$$

and $\boldsymbol{\delta}(n) \triangleq [\delta_1(n), \delta_2(n), \delta_3(n), \ldots, \delta_M(n)]'$ is an indicator vector (for each value of n) with one element equal to unity and the rest equal to zero. It is shown in Section D that the spectral correlation function for such a time-series is given by (63) for the case in which ϵ_n is purely stationary. Show that the pulse transforms in (63) are given by

$$Q_m(f) = e^{-i2\pi e_m f}$$

and the mn-th element of the limit correlation matrix for $\boldsymbol{\delta}(n)$, (62) with $\alpha = 0$, is given by

$$[\bar{\boldsymbol{R}}_{\boldsymbol{\delta}}(qT_0)]_{mn} = \begin{cases} P_m P_n, & q \neq 0 \\ P_m \delta_{m-n}, & q = 0 \end{cases}$$

for the case in which $\{\epsilon_n\}$ is an independent sequence. Then evaluate $\bar{S}_{\boldsymbol{\delta}}(f)$ and substitute it and $Q_m(f)$ into (63) to obtain (25), where

$$\Psi_\epsilon(2\pi\nu) \triangleq \sum_{m=1}^{M} P_m e^{i2\pi e_m \nu}.$$

Finally, let $e_m = [m - (M + 1)/2]\Delta$, $P_m = f_\epsilon(m\Delta)\Delta$, and explain why

$$\lim_{M\to\infty} \Psi_\epsilon(2\pi\nu) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f_\epsilon(\gamma) e^{i2\pi\gamma\nu}\, d\gamma.$$

This limiting procedure renders the result (25) valid for a continuous jitter variable with fraction-of-time probability density $f_\epsilon(e)$. (It is shown in exercise 7 of Chapter 15 that Ψ_ϵ defined here is identical to Ψ_ϵ defined by (26).)

(b) Use the fact that a PPM time-series can be expressed as

$$x(t) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} q(t - nT - \epsilon_n) = q(t) \otimes \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(t - nT - \epsilon_n)$$

to derive the limit cyclic spectrum for PPM from (25).

(c) Use the fact that the characteristic function can be characterized by the Fourier transform (see exercise 7 in Chapter 15)

$$\Psi_\epsilon(\omega) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f_\epsilon(\gamma) e^{i\omega\gamma}\, d\gamma$$

to show that

$$\left.\frac{d\Psi_\epsilon(\omega)}{d\omega}\right|_{\omega=0} = i\hat{M}_\epsilon$$

and

$$\left.\frac{d^2\Psi_\epsilon(\omega)}{d\omega^2}\right|_{\omega=0} = -(\hat{\sigma}_\epsilon^2 + \hat{M}_\epsilon^2).$$

Then use a Taylor series approximation to obtain

$$\Psi_\epsilon(\omega) \cong 1 + i\hat{M}_\epsilon\,\omega - \tfrac{1}{2}(\hat{\sigma}_\epsilon^2 + \hat{M}_\epsilon^2)\omega^2$$

as an accurate approximation for sufficiently small ω. Finally, use this approximation with $\hat{M}_\epsilon = 0$ in (25) to show that the limit cyclic spectrum for jittered PAM can be expressed only in terms of $Q(f)$, T_0, and $\hat{\sigma}_\epsilon^2$ for small jitter.

(d) Use the small-phase-deviation approximation

$$\Psi_\tau(1, 1) \cong 1 - \hat{R}_\phi(0) - \hat{R}_\phi(\tau)$$

of (31) in (29) to show that the limit cyclic spectrum for AM with small Gaussian phase deviation can be approximated by

$$\hat{S}_x^\alpha(f) \cong \tfrac{1}{4}[1 - \hat{R}_\phi(0)][\hat{S}_a^\alpha(f - f_0) + \hat{S}_a^\alpha(f + f_0) + \hat{S}_a^{\alpha+2f_0}(f) + \hat{S}_a^{\alpha-2f_0}(f)]$$
$$+\tfrac{1}{4}\hat{S}_\phi(f) \otimes [\hat{S}_a^\alpha(f - f_0) + \hat{S}_a^\alpha(f + f_0) - \hat{S}_a^{\alpha+2f_0}(f) - \hat{S}_a^{\alpha-2f_0}(f)].$$

Then let $z(t)$ denote $x(t)$ in (28) with $\phi(t) = 0$ and let $\bar{z}(t)$ denote $x(t)$ in (28) with $\phi(t) = \pi/2$, and show that

$$\hat{S}_x^\alpha(f) \cong [1 - \hat{R}_\phi(0)]\hat{S}_z^\alpha(f) + \hat{S}_\phi(f) \otimes \hat{S}_{\bar{z}}^\alpha(f).$$

Hint: First show that

$$\hat{S}_w(f) \cong \tfrac{1}{4}[1 - \hat{R}_\phi(0)][\delta(f - f_0) + \delta(f + f_0)] + \tfrac{1}{4}[\hat{S}_\phi(f - f_0) + \hat{S}_\phi(f + f_0)]$$

and

$$\hat{S}_w^{\pm 2f_0}(f) \cong \tfrac{1}{4}[1 - \hat{R}_\phi(0)]\delta(f) - \tfrac{1}{4}\hat{S}_\phi(f).$$

4. **(a)** Use (37) and (38) to derive (40a) for the autocoherence magnitude for bandlimited QAM.

(b) Verify (40b) by showing that it can be reexpressed as (40a).

(c) Use (37) to verify (41).

(d) Show that $|\hat{C}_x^\alpha(f)| = 1$ if and only if

$$[\hat{S}_{cs}(f)_r]^2 = \hat{S}_c(f)\hat{S}_s(f) - [\hat{S}_{cs}(f)_i]^2,$$

and that this is equivalent to

$$|\hat{S}_{cs}(f)|^2 = \hat{S}_c(f)\hat{S}_s(f).$$

5. Consider QAM with

$$s(t) = h(t) \otimes c(t).$$

(a) Show that if

$$H(f) = \begin{cases} -i, & f > 0 \\ +i, & f < 0, \end{cases}$$

then (37) yields

$$\hat{S}_x(f) = 0, \qquad |f| < f_0$$

for this SSB signal and (40) yields

$$\hat{C}_x^\alpha(f) \equiv 0.$$

(b) Show that if $H(f) = 1$, then (37) yields

$$\hat{S}_x(f) = \tfrac{1}{2}\hat{S}_c(f + f_0) + \tfrac{1}{2}\hat{S}_c(f - f_0)$$

for this DSB signal and (40) yields

$$\hat{C}_x^\alpha(f) = 1, \qquad |f| < f_0.$$

6. Use (34e) and (34f) to show that

$$\hat{R}_c(\tau) \equiv \hat{R}_s(\tau) \qquad \text{and} \qquad \hat{R}_{cs}(\tau)_e \equiv 0$$

are equivalent to (43).

7. Derive (47) and (48) for the PM time-series (46). *Hint:* Use Euler's identity,

$$\cos\theta = \tfrac{1}{2}e^{i\theta} + \tfrac{1}{2}e^{-i\theta},$$

in (46).

8. Consider (49) with

$$z(t) = \cos(\omega_0 t + \theta).$$

Show that $\hat{M}_z = 0$ but

$$\hat{M}_\phi = -\frac{1}{\omega_0}\sin\theta.$$

(Use average over $t > 0$ since $\phi(t)$ is defined only for $t > 0$.)

9. **(a)** The strength of a spectral line in $\phi(t)$ at $f = 0$ is given by

$$\lim_{T\to\infty}\frac{1}{T}\int_{-T/2}^{T/2}\hat{R}_\phi(\tau)\,d\tau = \hat{R}_\phi(\infty)$$

provided that $\hat{R}_\phi(\tau)$ does approach a constant asymptote $\hat{R}_\phi(\infty)$. Use this together with (50) to show that the spectral-line strength at $f = 0$ is not $\hat{M}_\phi^2$ unless $c = 0$. (It is shown in exercise 6 in Chapter 15 that $c = 0$ if and only if the finite-time mean $M_\phi(t)_T$ converges in the temporal mean square sense.)

(b) Use (53) to show that

$$\hat{S}_\phi(f) = \frac{1}{\gamma^2 + (2\pi f)^2}\hat{S}_z(f).$$

Then assume that $\hat{S}_z(f)$ is sufficiently differentiable at $f = 0$, and show that for sufficiently small ϵ,

$$\hat{R}_\phi(0) > \int_{-\epsilon}^{\epsilon}\frac{\hat{S}_z(0) + \hat{S}_z'(0)f + \frac{1}{2}\hat{S}_z''(0)f^2}{\gamma + (2\pi f)^2}\,df,$$

where the primes denote differentiation. Use this to show that as $\gamma \to 0$, $\hat{R}_\phi(0) \to \infty$ unless $\hat{S}_z(0) = \hat{S}_z'(0) = 0$. Similarly, if $\hat{S}_z(f) \to Kf^a$ as $f \to 0$, then $\hat{R}_\phi(0) \to \infty$ as $\gamma \to 0$ unless $a > 1$ (a need not be an integer). As a consequence of this, (33) and (47a) reveal that for $\alpha = \pm 2f_0$ $\hat{R}_x^\alpha(\tau) \to 0$ as $\gamma \to 0$ if $\hat{S}_z(f)$ does not approach zero faster than linearly in f.

10. Use (64) to verify (65). *Hint:* Use the identity

$$\sum_{m=-\infty}^{\infty} e^{i2\pi m f T_0} = \frac{1}{T_0}\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty}\delta\left(f - \frac{n}{T_0}\right).$$

11. Use (36), (16) or (61), and (75) to derive (74) for the limit cyclic spectral density of QPSK.

12. Use (36), (16) or (61), and the assumption $\hat{S}_{cs}^\alpha(f) \equiv 0$ to derive (78) for the limit cyclic spectral density of SQPSK.

13. Use (86) to show that (84) can be reexpressed as (88) for clock-phase coherent FSK.

14. **(a)** To derive the formula (92) for the limit cyclic autocorrelation for phase-incoherent FSK, proceed as follows. In the definition

$$\hat{R}_x^\alpha(\tau) = \lim_{T\to\infty}\frac{1}{T}\int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right)x\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right)e^{-i2\pi\alpha t}dt,$$

choose $T = (2N + 1)T_0$, with $N = 1, 2, 3, \ldots$, and reexpress the limit as

$$\hat{R}_x^\alpha(\tau) = \frac{1}{T_0}\lim_{N\to\infty}\frac{1}{2N+1}\sum_{k=-N}^{N}\int_{-T_0/2}^{T_0/2}\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} a_n\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2} + kT_0\right)q\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2} + kT_0 - nT_0\right)$$
$$\times \sum_{m=-\infty}^{\infty} a_m\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2} + kT_0\right)q\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2} + kT_0 - mT_0\right)e^{-i2\pi\alpha(t+kT_0)}\,dt.$$

Use the change of variables $k - n = r$ and $k - m = s$ to obtain

$$\hat{R}_x^{\alpha}(\tau) = \frac{1}{T_0} \sum_{r,s=-\infty}^{\infty} \int_{-T_0/2}^{T_0/2} q\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2} + rT_0\right) q\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2} + sT_0\right) \times$$

$$\left\{ \lim_{N\to\infty} \frac{1}{2N+1} \sum_{k=-N}^{N} a_{k-r}\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2} + kT_0\right) a_{k-s}\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2} + kT_0\right) e^{-i2\pi\alpha kT_0} \right\} e^{-i2\pi\alpha t}\, dt.$$

Substitute (91b) and use the statistical independence of $\{f(k)\}$ and $\{\theta_k\}$ and the fact that $\{\theta_k\}$ is a statistically independent sequence of uniformly distributed variables to show that the factor in braces is given by

$$h \triangleq \lim_{N\to\infty} \frac{1}{2N+1} \sum_{k=-N}^{N} \tfrac{1}{2}\cos(2\pi[f_0 + f(k-r)]\tau) e^{-i2\pi\alpha kT_0}\, \delta_{r-s} \triangleq \tfrac{1}{2}\tilde{M}_y^{\alpha}(\tau)\delta_{r-s}.$$

Hint: Because of the independence of $\{\theta_k\}$ from $\{f(k)\}$, and the sinusoidal variation in t, the time average can be carried out over $\{\theta_k\}$ with $\{f(k)\}$ and kT_0 fixed and then over $\{f(k)\}$ and kT_0 (see Chapter 15). Use the fundamental theorem of expectation (Chapter 15) to express the discrete average over $\{\theta_k\}$,

$$g = \langle \cos(\gamma_k + \theta_{k-r})\cos(\mu_k + \theta_{k-s}) e^{-i2\pi\alpha kT_0} \rangle$$

with γ_k and μ_k fixed, as

$$g = \left\langle \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} \cos(\gamma_k + \theta)\, d\theta \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} \cos(\mu_k + \phi) d\phi e^{-i2\pi\alpha kT_0} \right\rangle = 0$$

for $r \neq s$ and as

$$g = \left\langle \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} \cos(\gamma_k + \theta)\cos(\mu_k + \theta) d\theta e^{-i2\pi\alpha kT_0} \right\rangle$$

for $r = s$, where $\gamma_k \triangleq 2\pi[f_0 + f(k - r)](t + \tau/2 + kT_0)$ and $\mu_k \triangleq 2\pi[f_0 + f(k - s)](t - \tau/2 + kT_0)$.

Obtain the desired result (92) by substitution of h into the derived expression for $\hat{R}_x^{\alpha}(\tau)$, and use of the fact that $\tilde{M}_y^{\alpha}(\tau)$ is independent of r (see (b)).

(b) Use (92c) and (93) together with the assumption that $\{f(n)\}$ is purely stationary and has discrete M-ary fraction-of-time distribution $\{P_m\}_1^M$ to derive (95). *Hint:* Since $\{y_n(\tau)\}$ is a purely stationary sequence, then

$$\tilde{M}_y^{\alpha}(\tau) \triangleq \lim_{N\to\infty} \frac{1}{2N+1} \sum_{n=-N}^{N} y_n(\tau) e^{-i2\pi n\alpha T_0} = 0, \qquad \alpha \neq \frac{k}{T_0}$$

and

$$\tilde{M}_y^{\alpha}(\tau) = \lim_{N\to\infty} \frac{1}{2N+1} \sum_{n=-N}^{N} y_n(\tau), \qquad \alpha = \frac{k}{T_0}.$$

Application of the fundamental theorem of expectation (see Chapter 15) yields

$$\tilde{M}_y^{\alpha}(\tau) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} g(\nu) f_f(\nu)\, d\nu, \qquad \alpha = \frac{k}{T_0},$$

where

$$g(\nu) \triangleq \cos[2\pi(f_0 + \nu)\tau] \qquad \text{and} \qquad f_f(\nu) \triangleq \sum_{m=1}^{M} P_m \delta(\nu - f_m).$$

(c) To show that (92c) reduces to (103) for a periodic hop sequence, proceed as follows. Substitute $f_0 + f(n) = f_0(n) + f_*(n)$ into (93) and the result into (92c), and use the fact that $\{f_0(n)\}$ is periodic to represent it in terms of a Fourier series.

13

MEASUREMENT METHODS

In Chapter 11 it is established that the limit cyclic spectrum, or spectral correlation function, can be defined as the limiting form of a temporally smoothed cyclic periodogram or a spectrally smoothed cyclic periodogram, and it can also be defined as the conventional cross spectral density of complex-valued frequency-shifted versions of the original time-series. Corresponding to these alternative equivalent definitions are a variety of measurement methods, some of which are amenable to digital hardware or software implementations, others of which are amenable to analog electrical implementation or optical implementation. Although there are many similarities between spectral correlation measurement and conventional spectral density measurement (Part I, Chapters 4, 6, and 7), especially cross-spectral density measurement, there are some unique problems that arise for spectral correlation measurement. One of these problems is computational complexity that far exceeds that for conventional spectral analysis. Another problem is a cycle leakage phenomenon that has no counterpart in conventional spectral analysis of stationary time-series. A third problem is the added conceptual complexity of dealing with three interacting resolutions, temporal, spectral, and cycle (rather than just temporal and spectral), and associated reliability.

In this chapter, a variety of methods for measurement of spectral correlation are described, and some of the novel problems associated with spectral correlation analysis are briefly discussed.

A. TEMPORAL AND SPECTRAL SMOOTHING

By analogy with the arguments in Part I, Chapter 7, Section D, on cross-spectral analysis, it can be shown that approximately the same statistical cyclic spectra

are obtained for $\Delta t \Delta f >> 1$ by using any of the four temporal and spectral smoothing methods based on the time-variant finite-time cyclic spectrum, or time-variant cyclic periodogram,

$$S_{x_T}^{\alpha}(t, \cdot) = F\{R_{x_T}^{\alpha}(t, \cdot)\}, \tag{1}$$

where

$$S_{x_T}^{\alpha}(t, f) \triangleq \frac{1}{T} X_T\left(t, f + \frac{\alpha}{2}\right) X_T^*\left(t, f - \frac{\alpha}{2}\right), \tag{2a}$$

in which

$$X_T(t, f) \triangleq \int_{t-T/2}^{t+T/2} x(u) e^{-i2\pi f u}\, du, \tag{2b}$$

or based on the time-variant cyclic pseudospectrum (see (14) in Chapter 11),

$$S_x^{\alpha}(t, \cdot)_T \triangleq F\{R_x^{\alpha}(t, \cdot)_T\}. \tag{3}$$

These four methods yield (using $T = 1/\Delta f$) the four cyclic spectrum estimates

$$S_{x_{1/\Delta f}}^{\alpha}(t, f)_{\Delta t} \triangleq S_{x_{1/\Delta f}}^{\alpha}(t, f) \otimes g_{\Delta t}(t) \tag{4a}$$

$$S_{x_{\Delta t}}^{\alpha}(t, f)_{\Delta f} \triangleq S_{x_{\Delta t}}^{\alpha}(t, f) \otimes H_{\Delta f}(f) \tag{4b}$$

$$S_x^{\alpha}(t, f)_{1/\Delta f, \Delta t} \triangleq S_x^{\alpha}(t, f)_{1/\Delta f} \otimes g_{\Delta t}(t) \tag{4c}$$

$$S_x^{\alpha}(t, f)_{\Delta t, \Delta f} \triangleq S_x^{\alpha}(t, f)_{\Delta t} \otimes H_{\Delta f}(f), \tag{4d}$$

in which $g_{\Delta t}$ and $H_{\Delta f}$ are temporal and spectral smoothing windows, respectively. The estimates (4a) and (4b) can be generalized by allowing for a data-tapering window, in which case (2b) is generalized to

$$X_T(t, f) \triangleq \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} a_T(t - u) x(u) e^{-i2\pi f u}\, du = a_T(t) \otimes [x(t) e^{-i2\pi f t}]. \tag{2c}$$

Depending on the type of implementation to be used—for example, digital or analog—some of these four methods can be considerably more attractive than others. For digital implementations, computational complexity can be a crucial issue, especially when a full cyclic spectral analysis over a broad range of both f and α is desired. The development of computationally efficient algorithms for cyclic spectral analysis is a current topic of research. Only the two most straightforward smoothing methods are mentioned here. The discrete frequency-smoothing method, which is analogous to the Wiener-Daniell method (Chapter 6, Part I), is given by

$$\tilde{S}_{x_{\Delta t}}^{\alpha}(t, f)_{\Delta f} = \frac{1}{M} \sum_{v=-(M-1)/2}^{(M-1)/2} \frac{1}{\Delta t} \tilde{X}_{\Delta t}\left(t, f + \frac{\alpha}{2} + vF_s\right) \tilde{X}_{\Delta t}^*\left(t, f - \frac{\alpha}{2} + vF_s\right), \tag{5}$$

where

$$\tilde{X}_{\Delta t}(t, f) \triangleq \sum_{k=0}^{N-1} x(t - kT_s) e^{-i2\pi f(t - kT_s)},$$

which is the down-converted output of a sliding DFT, and where $\Delta f = MF_s$ is the width of the spectral smoothing interval, $F_s = 1/NT_s$ is the frequency-sampling increment, T_s is the time-sampling increment, and N is the number of

time-samples in the data segment of length Δt, which is Fourier transformed by the DFT, $N = \Delta t/T_s + 1$. Thus, the resolution product is $\Delta t \Delta f = M(N - 1)/N \cong M$. The discrete time-averaging method, which is analogous to the Bartlett-Welch method (Chapter 6, Part I), is given by

$$\tilde{S}^{\alpha}_{x_{1/\Delta f}}(t,f)_{\Delta t} = \frac{1}{JM} \sum_{u=0}^{JM-1} \Delta f \tilde{X}_{1/\Delta f}\left(t - \frac{u}{J\Delta f}, f + \frac{\alpha}{2}\right) \tilde{X}^{*}_{1/\Delta f}\left(t - \frac{u}{J\Delta f}, f - \frac{\alpha}{2}\right), \tag{6}$$

where $\tilde{X}_{1/\Delta f}(t, f)$ is the down-converted output of a sliding DFT and where $\Delta t = [(1 + M - 1/J)N - 1]T_s$ is the total time-span of data used, $\Delta f = 1/NT_s$ is the spectral resolution width, and N is the number of time-samples in each of the data segments of length $1/\Delta f$, which are Fourier transformed by the DFT. Thus, the resolution product is $\Delta t \Delta f = [(1 + M - 1/J)N - 1]/N \cong M$. Because of a *cycle leakage* phenomenon that does not occur for conventional spectral analysis of stationary data, the block-overlap parameter J often cannot be taken as small (e.g., $J = 1$ or $J = 2$) as it is for the conventional hopping-FFT method of spectral analysis. Typically, the minimum tolerable value when properly designed data-tapering apertures are used is $J = 4$. This is clarified in the following paragraph. Another phenomenon that does not occur for conventional spectral analysis is the decrease in cycle resolution width, $\Delta\alpha = 1/\Delta t$, with an increase in the number JM of blocks averaged. In fact, $\Delta\alpha = \Delta f N/([1 + M - 1/J]N - 1) \cong \Delta f/M$ is inversely proportional to the effective number M of nonoverlapping blocks. However, the frequency sampling increment provided by the DFT used to transform each block is $F_s = 1/NT_s = \Delta f$, which does not decrease as $\Delta\alpha$ decreases. Thus, adjacent cycle frequency samples are separated by $F_s/\Delta\alpha \cong M$ cycle resolution widths. Consequently, the density of cycle frequency samples is $1/M$ times what it should be in order not to miss parts of the cyclic spectrum. This is especially problematic because the cyclic spectrum is, by nature, discrete in α. An obvious but computationally burdensome remedy is to zero-pad the blocks of length N out to length MN to obtain a frequency sampling increment of $F_s = \Delta f/M$. More sophisticated remedies that are substantially more computationally efficient for long data segments are currently being developed [Brown 1987].

Cycle leakage

The discrete time-averaging (hopping-FFT) method of cyclic spectral analysis effectively employs an output comb filter rather than an output low-pass filter, and this can result in cycle leakage. Unfortunately, as the amount of overlap between adjacent blocks is decreased (by decreasing J) to improve computational efficiency, the effects of the cycle leakage phenomenon worsen. This can be illustrated for continuous time as well as for discrete time. For example, the statistical cyclic spectrum

$$S^{\alpha}_{x_T}(t,f)_{\Delta t} \triangleq \frac{1}{Q} \sum_{u=-(Q-1)/2}^{(Q-1)/2} S^{\alpha}_{x_T}\left(t + \frac{uT}{J}, f\right) \tag{7}$$

obtained by advancing the temporal index by integer multiples of T/J, to cover a total time span of approximately $\Delta t = QT/J$, can be reexpressed as (exercise 1)

$$S_{x_T}^{\alpha}(t,f)_{\Delta t} = \sum_{\beta}\left\{\hat{S}_x^{\beta}(f) \otimes \left[\frac{1}{T}A_{1/T}\left(f + \frac{\beta-\alpha}{2}\right)A_{1/T}^{*}\left(f - \frac{\beta-\alpha}{2}\right)\right]\right\} \times \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} G_{1/\Delta t}\left(\beta - \alpha - \frac{nJ}{T}\right)e^{i2\pi(\beta-\alpha)t} + \text{residual} \tag{8a}$$

and the residual converges to zero as $Q \to \infty$. In (8), $G_{1/\Delta t}$ is the window

$$G_{1/\Delta t}(\gamma) = \frac{\sin(\pi\gamma QT/J)}{\pi\gamma QT/J}, \tag{8b}$$

$A_{1/T}$ is the Fourier transform of the data-tapering aperture a_T used in $S_{x_T}^{\alpha}(t,f)$, and the sum is over all β for which $\hat{S}_x^{\beta}(f) \not\equiv 0$. It follows from (8) that in addition to the desired cyclic line that shows up if $\alpha = \beta$ (or $|\alpha - \beta| < \Delta\alpha$) for some cycle frequency β contained in $x(t)$, a false line at α shows up due to other cycle frequencies $\beta \neq \alpha$ (including $\beta = 0$) contained in $x(t)$, for which the *cycle smoothing comb-window*,

$$\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} G_{1/\Delta t}\left(\beta - \alpha - \frac{nJ}{T}\right),$$

and the *spectral smoothing product-window*,

$$\frac{1}{T}A_{1/T}\left(f + \frac{\beta-\alpha}{2}\right)A_{1/T}^{*}\left(f - \frac{\beta-\alpha}{2}\right),$$

are both sufficiently large to pass the cyclic contribution from $\hat{S}_x^{\beta}(f)$. These undesired contributions that leak through the windows can be made as small as desired by selecting J sufficiently large to render the separation between cycles passed by adjacent teeth of the comb-window sufficiently large, designing the data-tapering aperture to render the sidelobes of the product-window sufficiently low, and choosing QT sufficiently large. This can be seen from the fact that the comb-window has teeth, with width parameter J/QT, separated by integer multiples of J/T. Thus, J must be large enough to render the window product

$$\frac{1}{T}A_{1/T}\left(f + \frac{mJ}{2T}\right)A_{1/T}^{*}\left(f - \frac{mJ}{2T}\right)$$

that coincides with the mth tooth of the comb-window sufficiently small for all nonzero integers m. Of course, leakage will occur only if there are cycles present at appropriate frequencies; that is, potential leakage requires $|\beta - \alpha - mJ/T| < J/QT$ for those values of β for which $\hat{S}_x^{\beta}(f) \not\equiv 0$.

Example

To illustrate spectral correlation measurement, a QPSK signal was simulated using a white data sequence, a carrier frequency of $f_0 = 1/4T_s$, and a keying rate of $1/T_0 = 1/8T_s$. The frequency-smoothing method (5) was used, and two segments were analyzed: one with $N = 128$ points using $M = 4$ for the smoothing parameter ($\Delta f = 4/128T_s = 1/4T_0$) and one with $N = 32{,}768$ points with $M = 1024$ ($\Delta f = 1024/32{,}768T_s = 1/4T_0$). As shown in Figure 13-1, the measurement with $M = 4$ exhibits large variance, and is highly unreliable, whereas the measurement with $M = 1024$ yields an excellent estimate of the limit cyclic spectrum, which is shown in Figure 12-9. The fact that the variance is especially large in the vicinity of $(f, \alpha) = (0, \pm 2f_0)$ is a result of the fact that the majority of the power in this signal

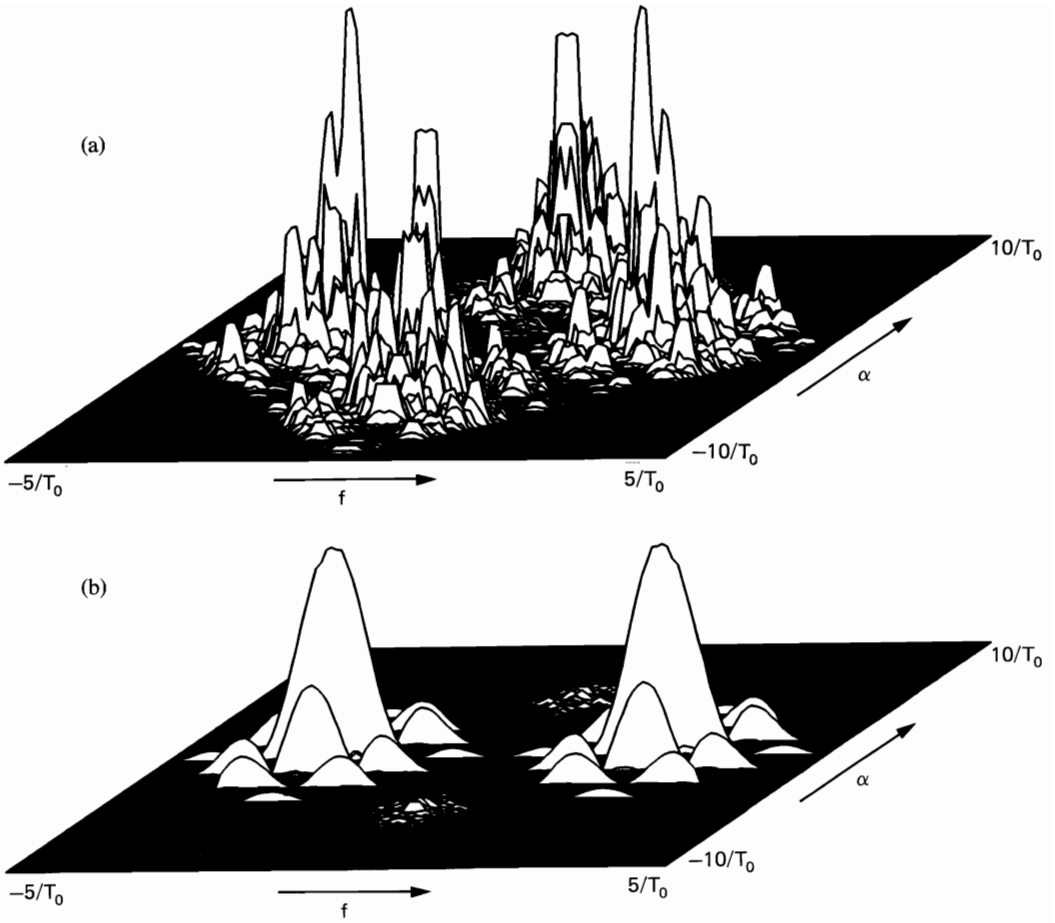


Figure 13-1 Spectral correlation magnitude surface for simulated QPSK signal computed using the spectrally smoothed cyclic periodogram method. (a) $N = 128$ time-series points, $\Delta t \Delta f = 4$ frequency points averaged. (b) $N = 32{,}768$ time-series points, $\Delta t \Delta f = 1024$ frequency points averaged.

is in the vicinity of the two frequencies $f \pm \alpha/2 = \pm f_0$. This is explained further in Chapter 15.

B. FOURIER TRANSFORMATION OF TAPERED CYCLIC AUTOCORRELATION OR AMBIGUITY FUNCTION

Substitution of (1) and (3) into (4b) and (4d), respectively, and application of the convolution theorem reveals that spectrally smoothed cyclic spectra can be obtained by Fourier transformation of tapered cyclic autocorrelations,

$$S^{\alpha}_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, \cdot)_{\Delta f} = F\{R^{\alpha}_{x_{\Delta t}}(t, \cdot) h_{1/\Delta f}(\cdot)\} \tag{9a}$$

$$S^{\alpha}_{x}(t, \cdot)_{\Delta t, \Delta f} = F\{R^{\alpha}_{x}(t, \cdot)_{\Delta t} h_{1/\Delta f}(\cdot)\}, \tag{9b}$$

where

$$h_{1/\Delta f}(\cdot) \triangleq F^{-1}\{H_{\Delta f}(\cdot)\}.$$

Since considerable effort has gone into the development of methods for measurement/computation of radar ambiguity functions, it should be mentioned that the cyclic autocorrelations in (9) can be reinterpreted as ambiguity functions (see Chapter 10, Section C), and therefore some knowledge and methods (e.g., for optical implementations [Berg and Lee 1983]) can be transferred from the radar ambiguity analysis area to the cyclic spectral analysis area.

If analog implementations are to be used, then an implementation of the finite-average cyclic autocorrelation in terms of filters can be obtained as follows. It can be shown that

$$R_x^\alpha(t, \tau)_{\Delta t} \triangleq \left\{\left[x\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right)x\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right)\right]e^{-i2\pi\alpha t}\right\} \otimes g_{\Delta t}(t) \tag{10a}$$

$$= \left\{\left[x\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right)x\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right)\right] \otimes g_{\Delta t}^\alpha(t)\right\}e^{-i2\pi\alpha t}, \tag{10b}$$

where

$$g_{\Delta t}^\alpha(t) \triangleq g_{\Delta t}(t)e^{i2\pi\alpha t} \tag{11a}$$

and $g_{\Delta t}$ is a smoothing window with width Δt. We can interpret $g_{\Delta t}^\alpha$ in (10b) as the impulse-response function of a filter with transfer function

$$G_{1/\Delta t}^\alpha(\nu) = G_{1/\Delta t}(\nu - \alpha), \tag{11b}$$

where

$$G_{1/\Delta t}(\cdot) \triangleq F\{g_{\Delta t}(\cdot)\}. \tag{11c}$$

$G_{1/\Delta t}^\alpha$ is the transfer function of a one-sided (complex) band-pass filter (BPF) with center frequency α and bandwidth $1/\Delta t$. Therefore, (10b) reveals the implementation shown in Figure 13-2(a), in which t has been replaced with $t - \tau/2$ to avoid the need for a time advance by $\tau/2$. A real implementation can be obtained by substitution of the representation

$$x(t)e^{\pm i\pi\alpha t} = c(t) \pm i\, s(t), \tag{12a}$$

for which

$$\begin{aligned} c(t) &\triangleq x(t)\cos(\pi\alpha t) \\ s(t) &\triangleq x(t)\sin(\pi\alpha t), \end{aligned} \tag{12b}$$

into (10a) to obtain (exercise 2)

$$[R_x^\alpha(t, \tau)_{\Delta t}]_r = R_c(t, \tau)_{\Delta t} - R_s(t, \tau)_{\Delta t} \tag{13a}$$

$$[R_x^\alpha(t, \tau)_{\Delta t}]_i = -R_{cs}(t, \tau)_{\Delta t} - R_{sc}(t, \tau)_{\Delta t}. \tag{13b}$$

The terms in the right members of (13) are conventional correlations such as

$$R_{cs}(t, \tau)_{\Delta t} = \left[c\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right)s\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right)\right] \otimes g_{\Delta t}(t), \tag{14}$$

and can be implemented using real low-pass filters (LPFs) on the lag products.

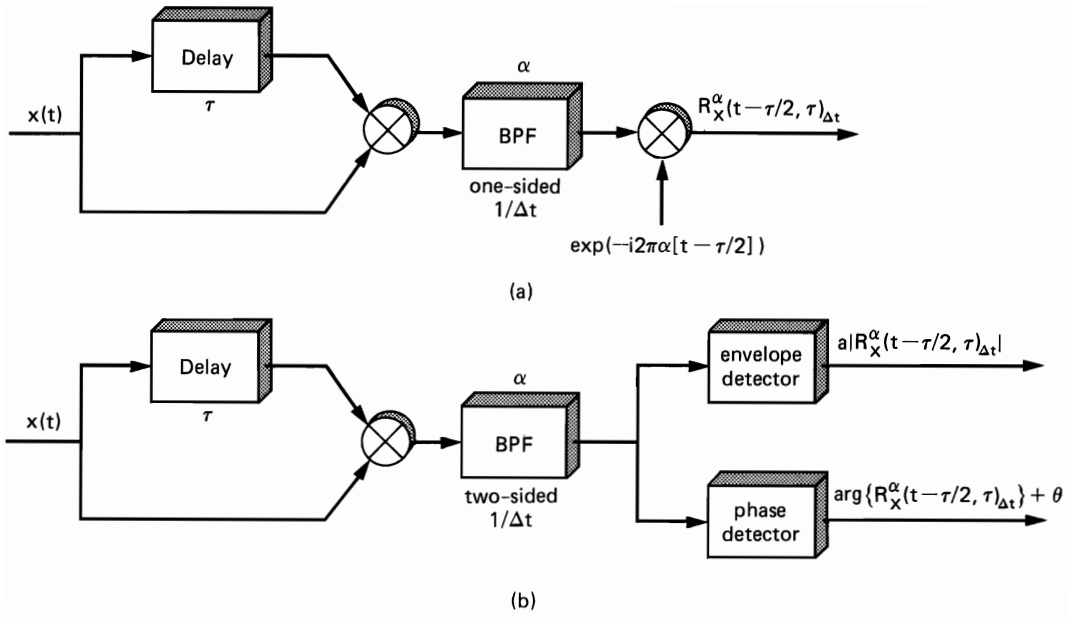


Figure 13-2 (a) Implementation of cyclic autocorrelator based on a complex (one-sided) BPF. (b) Implementation of cyclic autocorrelator based on a real (two-sided) BPF.

Another approach to obtaining a real implementation is to simply replace the one-sided BPF in Figure 13-2(a) with a two-sided BPF,

$$g_{\Delta t}^{\alpha}(t) = c_{\Delta t}(t)\cos(2\pi\alpha t) - s_{\Delta t}(t)\sin(2\pi\alpha t),$$

and then to try to determine how to recover $R_x^\alpha(t, \tau)_{\Delta t}$ from the resultant waveform,

$$y(t) \triangleq \left[x\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right)x\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right)\right] \otimes [c_{\Delta t}(t)\cos(2\pi\alpha t) - s_{\Delta t}(t)\sin(2\pi\alpha t)]. \tag{15}$$

Comparison of (15) with (10b) reveals that

$$y(t) \cong c[R_x^\alpha(t, \tau)_{\Delta t}e^{i2\pi\alpha t}]_r - s[R_x^\alpha(t, \tau)_{\Delta t}e^{i2\pi\alpha t}]_i, \tag{16}$$

where c and s denote the effective transmission coefficients of the LPFs with impulse-response functions $c_{\Delta t}(t)$ and $s_{\Delta t}(t)$, respectively. It follows (exercise 3) from (16) that the magnitude and phase of $R_x^\alpha(t, \tau)_{\Delta t}$ can be recovered from $y(t)$ with an envelope detector and a phase detector, as shown in Figure 13-2(b):

$$\text{env}\{y(t)\} \cong a|R_x^\alpha(t, \tau)_{\Delta t}| \tag{17a}$$

$$\text{phase}\{y(t)\} \cong \arg\{R_x^\alpha(t, \tau)_{\Delta t}\} + \theta, \tag{17b}$$

where

$$a \triangleq \sqrt{c^2 + s^2} \tag{18a}$$

$$\theta \triangleq \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{s}{c}\right). \tag{18b}$$

C. FOURIER TRANSFORMATION OF SPECTRALLY SMOOTHED WIGNER-VILLE DISTRIBUTION

It follows (exercise 4) from (53) in Chapter 10 and (11)–(12) in Chapter 11, that the cyclic periodogram is the normalized (by Δt) Fourier transform of the Wigner-Ville distribution of the finite data segment of length Δt:

$$y(t) \triangleq x(t)[\Delta t\, u_{\Delta t}(t' - t)].$$

That is,

$$S^{\alpha}_{x_{\Delta t}}(t', f) = \frac{1}{\Delta t}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} E_y(t, f)e^{-i2\pi\alpha t}\, dt, \tag{19}$$

in which the dependence of the Wigner-Ville distribution $E_y(t, f)$ on the location t' of the segment y of x is suppressed in the notation

$$E_y(t, f) \triangleq \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} y\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right)y\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right)e^{-i2\pi f\tau}\, d\tau. \tag{20}$$

Therefore, the spectrally smoothed cyclic spectrum can be obtained from the spectrally smoothed Wigner-Ville distribution by Fourier transformation,

$$S^{\alpha}_{x_{\Delta t}}(t', f) \otimes H_{\Delta f}(f) = \frac{1}{\Delta t}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} [E_y(t, f) \otimes H_{\Delta f}(f)]e^{-i2\pi\alpha t}\, dt. \tag{21}$$

Furthermore, the spectrally smoothed Wigner-Ville distribution can be obtained by lag-product tapering,

$$E_y(t, f) \otimes H_{\Delta f}(f) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} y\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right)y\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right)h_{1/\Delta f}(\tau)e^{-i2\pi f\tau}\, d\tau. \tag{22}$$

It follows from (21)–(22) that methods of implementation such as optical methods for broadband analysis, which have been developed for measurement of the Wigner-Ville distribution, are potentially useful for measurement of the cyclic spectrum.

D. CYCLIC WAVE ANALYSIS

Substitution of (2c) into (2a) and the result into (4a) yields the following expression for the temporally smoothed cyclic periodogram (exercise 5):

$$S^{\alpha}_{x_{1/\Delta f}}(t, f)_{\Delta t} = \Delta f\{[x(t)e^{-i\pi\alpha t} \otimes a^{f}_{1/\Delta f}(t)]\, [x(t)e^{i\pi\alpha t} \otimes a^{f}_{1/\Delta f}(t)]^*\} \otimes g_{\Delta t}(t), \tag{23}$$

in which

$$a^{f}_{1/\Delta f}(t) \triangleq a_{1/\Delta f}(t)e^{i2\pi ft}, \tag{24}$$

where $a_{1/\Delta f}$ is the data-tapering aperture. Formula (23) can be reexpressed as (exercise 5)

$$S^{\alpha}_{x_{1/\Delta f}}(t, f)_{\Delta t} = \Delta f[\{[x(t) \otimes a^{\alpha/2+f}_{1/\Delta f}(t)]\, [x(t) \otimes a^{\alpha/2-f}_{1/\Delta f}(t)]\} \otimes g^{\alpha}_{\Delta t}(t)]e^{-i2\pi\alpha t}, \tag{25}$$

in which

$$\begin{aligned} a^{\alpha/2\pm f}_{1/\Delta f}(t) &\triangleq a_{1/\Delta f}(t)e^{i2\pi(\alpha/2\pm f)t} \\ g^{\alpha}_{\Delta t}(t) &\triangleq g_{\Delta t}(t)e^{i2\pi\alpha t}. \end{aligned} \tag{26}$$

The smoothing functions defined by (26) can be interpreted as the impulse-response functions of filters with transfer functions

$$\begin{aligned} A_{\Delta f}^{\alpha/2 \pm f}(\nu) &= A_{\Delta f}\left(\nu - \frac{\alpha}{2} \mp f\right) \\ G_{1/\Delta t}^{\alpha}(\nu) &= G_{1/\Delta t}(\nu - \alpha), \end{aligned} \tag{27a}$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} A_{\Delta f}(\cdot) &\triangleq F\{a_{1/\Delta f}(\cdot)\} \\ G_{1/\Delta t}(\cdot) &\triangleq F\{g_{\Delta t}(\cdot)\}. \end{aligned} \tag{27b}$$

Thus, $A_{\Delta f}^{\alpha/2 \pm f}$ and $G_{1/\Delta t}^{\alpha}$ are the transfer functions of one-sided BPFs with center frequencies $\alpha/2 \pm f$ and α, respectively, and with bandwidths Δf and $1/\Delta t$, respectively. Formula (25) therefore reveals that the temporally smoothed cyclic spectrum $S_{x_{1/\Delta f}}^{\alpha}(t, f)_{\Delta t}$ can be obtained by filtering $x(t)$ with two complex BPFs, multiplying the results, filtering the product with a complex BPF, and then frequency-shifting the result down by α to the vicinity of zero frequency, as depicted in Figure 13-3(a). By analogy with the terminology for conventional spectral analysis, this method for statistical cyclic spectral analysis will be called *cyclic wave analysis*.

In order to obtain a real implementation, the real part of $S_{x_{1/\Delta f}}^{\alpha}(t, f)_{\Delta t} e^{i2\pi\alpha t}$, from (25), is taken to obtain the formula (exercise 5)

$$[S_{x_{1/\Delta f}}^{\alpha}(t,f)_{\Delta t} e^{i2\pi\alpha t}]_r = |S_{x_{1/\Delta f}}^{\alpha}(t,f)_{\Delta t}| \cos(2\pi\alpha t + \arg\{S_{x_{1/\Delta f}}^{\alpha}(t,f)_{\Delta t}\})$$

$$\begin{aligned} &= \left(\left\{x(t) \otimes \left[a_{1/\Delta f}(t)\cos\left(2\pi\left[\frac{\alpha}{2} + f\right]t\right)\right]\right\}\right. \\ &\qquad \times \left\{x(t) \otimes \left[a_{1/\Delta f}(t)\cos\left(2\pi\left[\frac{\alpha}{2} - f\right]t\right)\right]\right\} \\ &\quad - \left\{x(t) \otimes \left[a_{1/\Delta f}(t)\sin\left(2\pi\left[\frac{\alpha}{2} + f\right]t\right)\right]\right\} \\ &\qquad \left.\times \left\{x(t) \otimes \left[a_{1/\Delta f}(t)\sin\left(2\pi\left[\frac{\alpha}{2} - f\right]t\right)\right]\right\}\right) \otimes [g_{\Delta t}(t)\cos(2\pi\alpha t)] \\ &\quad - \left(\left\{x(t) \otimes \left[a_{1/\Delta f}(t)\cos\left(2\pi\left[\frac{\alpha}{2} + f\right]t\right)\right]\right\}\right. \\ &\qquad \times \left\{x(t) \otimes \left[a_{1/\Delta f}(t)\sin\left(2\pi\left[\frac{\alpha}{2} - f\right]t\right)\right]\right\} \\ &\quad + \left\{x(t) \otimes \left[a_{1/\Delta f}(t)\cos\left(2\pi\left\{\frac{\alpha}{2} - f\right]t\right)\right]\right\} \\ &\qquad \left.\times \left\{x(t) \otimes \left[a_{1/\Delta f}(t)\sin\left(2\pi\left[\frac{\alpha}{2} + f\right]t\right)\right]\right\}\right) \otimes [g_{\Delta t}(t)\sin(2\pi\alpha t)]. \end{aligned} \tag{28}$$

Formula (28) can be implemented as shown in Figure 13-3(b). Thus, a real implementation of the cyclic wave analyzer is quite complicated, since it requires six special BPFs with in-phase and quadrature symmetries, four multipliers, and three summing devices. It is mentioned at this point that a quadrature BPF (Q-BPF) with impulse response

$$a(t)\sin(2\pi\nu t)$$

can be obtained from an in-phase BPF (I-BPF) with impulse response

$$a(t)\cos(2\pi\nu t)$$

by following (or preceding) the I-BPF with a Hilbert transforming filter. This equivalence is exact as long as $a(t)$ is bandlimited to $f \in (-\nu, \nu)$.

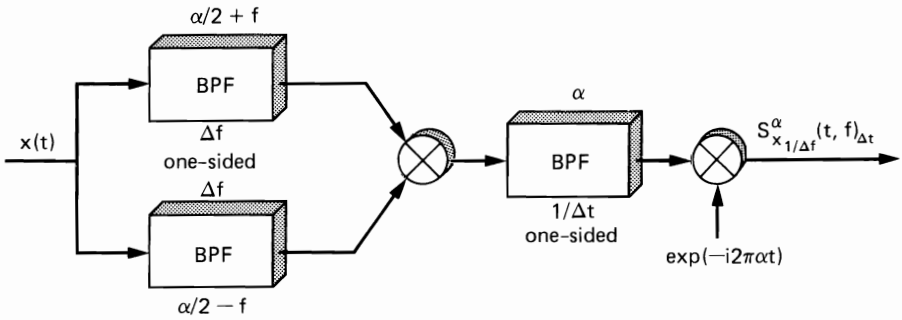


Figure 13-3 (a) Implementation of cyclic wave analyzer based on a pair of complex (one-sided) input BPFs, and a complex output BPF.

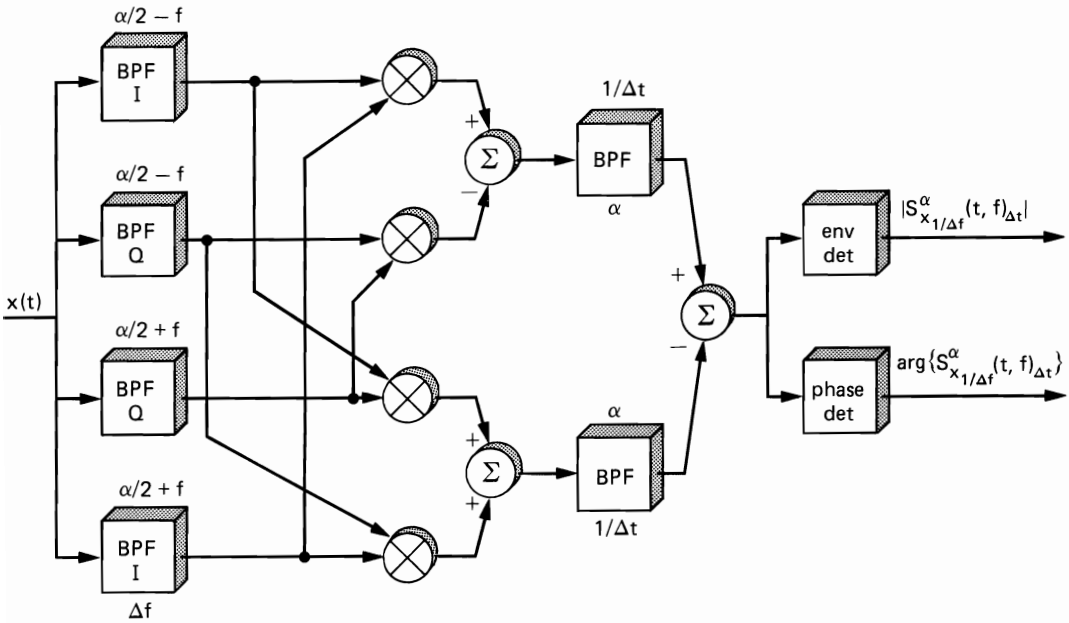


Figure 13-3 (continued) (b) Real implementation number 1 of cyclic wave analyzer based on two pairs of real (two-sided) in-phase and quadrature matching input BPFs, and two real output BPFs.

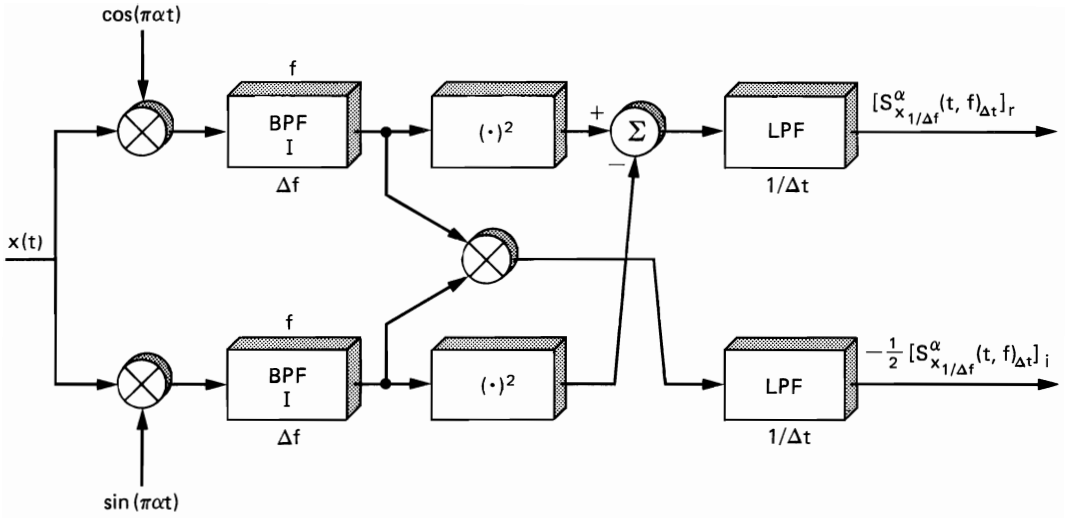
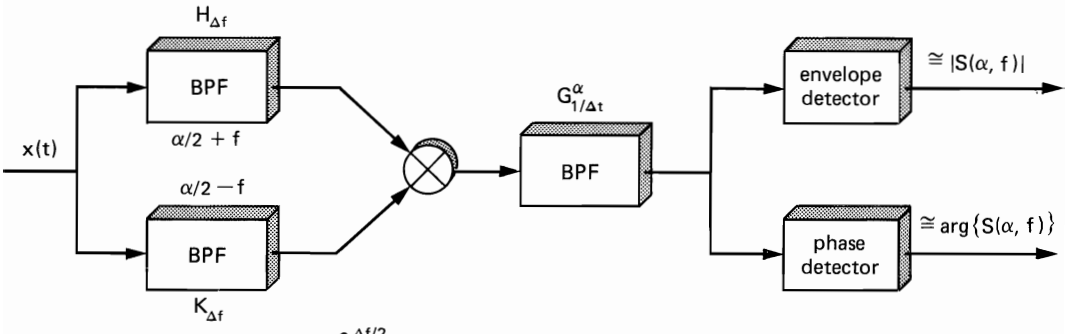
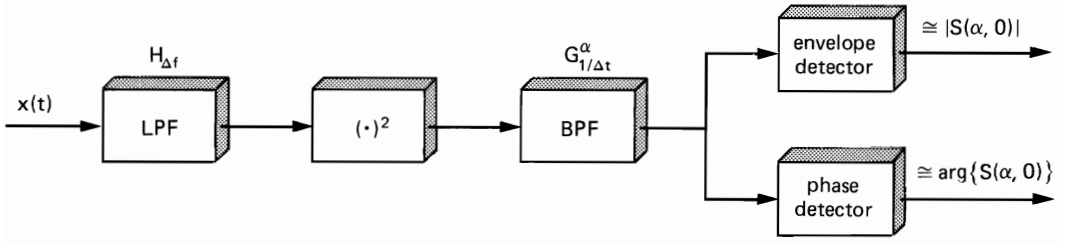


Figure 13-3 (continued) (c) Real implementation number 2 of cyclic wave analyzer based on auto- and cross-spectrum wave analysis of in-phase and quadrature modulated time-series.



$$S(\alpha, f) \triangleq 2 \int_{-\Delta f/2}^{\Delta f/2} H_{\Delta f}(\nu + \alpha/2 + f)\, K^{*}_{\Delta f}(\nu - \alpha/2 + f)\, \hat{S}^{\alpha}_{X}(\nu + f)\, d\nu\, G^{\alpha}_{1/\Delta t}(\alpha)$$

Figure 13-3 (continued) (d) Real implementation number 3 of cyclic wave analyzer based on a pair of real input BPFs with complementary phase-symmetry, and a real output BPF.



$$S(\alpha, 0) \triangleq 2 \int_{-(\Delta f - |\alpha|)/2}^{(\Delta f - |\alpha|)/2} H_{\Delta f}(\nu + \alpha/2) H^{*}_{\Delta f}(\nu - \alpha/2) \hat{S}^{\alpha}_{X}(\nu)\, d\nu\, G^{\alpha}_{1/\Delta t}(\alpha)$$

Figure 13-3 (continued) (e) Real implementation number 4 of cyclic wave analyzer based on a real input LPF and a real output BPF (for low-frequency cycles only).

Another approach to obtaining a real implementation is to substitute the representation (12) into (23) to obtain the formulas (exercise 5)

$$[S^{\alpha}_{x_{1/\Delta f}}(t,f)_{\Delta t}]_r = S_{c_{1/\Delta f}}(t,f)_{\Delta t} - S_{s_{1/\Delta f}}(t,f)_{\Delta t} \tag{29a}$$

$$[S^{\alpha}_{x_{1/\Delta f}}(t,f)_{\Delta t}]_i = -S_{cs_{1/\Delta f}}(t,f)_{\Delta t} - S_{sc_{1/\Delta f}}(t,f)_{\Delta t} = -2[S_{cs_{1/\Delta f}}(t,f)_{\Delta t}]_r, \tag{29b}$$

in which the terms in the right members are conventional statistical spectra such as

$$S_{cs_{1/\Delta f}}(t,f)_{\Delta t} = \Delta f\{[c(t) \otimes a^{f}_{1/\Delta f}(t)][s(t) \otimes a^{f}_{1/\Delta f}(t)]^*\} \otimes g_{\Delta t}(t). \tag{30}$$

As explained in Part I, Chapter 7, Section D (Figure 7-2(b)), the wave-analysis method of cross-spectral analysis requires special symmetric filters. Thus, this alternative real implementation is still somewhat complicated, as shown in Figure 13-3(c), but simpler than that shown in Figure 13-3(b).

The characterization (29) of the statistical cyclic spectrum is revealing. In particular, it is typically assumed for conventional spectral analysis that both (29a) and (29b) are negligible compared with $S_{x_{1/\Delta f}}(t,f)_{\Delta t}$ for $\Delta t \Delta f >> 1$ (see Part I, Chapter 4, Section F). It is quite clear from (29) that this assumption is valid (for $\Delta t \Delta f >> 1$) for all α if and only if $x(t)$ is purely stationary.

Yet another approach to obtaining real implementations is based on the representation (exercise 6)

$$S^{\alpha}_{x_{1/\Delta f}}(t,f)'_{\Delta t} \triangleq \{[x(t) \otimes h_{1/\Delta f}(t)][x(t) \otimes k_{1/\Delta f}(t)]\} \otimes g^{\alpha}_{\Delta t}(t) \tag{31a}$$

$$= \mathrm{Re}\left\{\left[\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} H_{\Delta f}\left(\frac{\alpha}{2} + \nu\right) K_{\Delta f}\left(\frac{\alpha}{2} - \nu\right) \hat{S}^{\alpha}_{x}(\nu)\, d\nu\right] G^{\alpha}_{1/\Delta t}(\alpha) e^{i2\pi\alpha t}\right\} + \text{residual}, \tag{31b}$$

in which the residual becomes increasingly negligible as $\Delta t \Delta f \to \infty$ for any fixed Δf. In (31b), $H_{\Delta f}$ and $K_{\Delta f}$ are the transfer functions of two arbitrary real filters with bandwidths of Δf,

$$\begin{aligned} H_{\Delta f}(\cdot) &= F\{h_{1/\Delta f}(\cdot)\} \\ K_{\Delta f}(\cdot) &= F\{k_{1/\Delta f}(\cdot)\}, \end{aligned} \tag{32}$$

and $G^{\alpha}_{1/\Delta t}$ is the transfer function of a real BPF with center frequency α and bandwidth $1/\Delta t$,

$$G^{\alpha}_{1/\Delta t}(\cdot) = F\{g^{\alpha}_{\Delta t}(\cdot)\}. \tag{33}$$

(It is noted that (26) does not apply here.) There are two cases of interest identified by the relative magnitudes of the smoothing bandwidth Δf and the frequencies $f \pm \alpha/2$.

Case 1. It can be shown (exercise 7) that if $H_{\Delta f}$ is a BPF with center frequency $\alpha/2 + f$ and $K_{\Delta f}$ is a BPF with center frequency $\alpha/2 - f$, and if

$$\left| f \pm \frac{\alpha}{2} \right| > \frac{\Delta f}{2}, \tag{34}$$

then (31) reduces to

$$S^{\alpha}_{x_{1/\Delta f}}(t,f)'_{\Delta t} = |S(\alpha,f)| \cos(2\pi\alpha t + \arg\{S(\alpha,f)\}) + \text{residual}, \tag{35}$$

in which

$$S(\alpha, f) \triangleq 2 \int_{-\Delta f/2}^{\Delta f/2} H_{\Delta f}\left(\nu + \frac{\alpha}{2} + f\right) K_{\Delta f}\left(-\nu + \frac{\alpha}{2} - f\right) \hat{S}_x^{\alpha}(\nu + f)\, d\nu\, G_{1/\Delta t}^{\alpha}(\alpha). \tag{36}$$

Thus, an envelope detector at the output of the real quadratic time-invariant device represented by (31a) yields the magnitude of the spectrally smoothed cyclic spectrum (36), as depicted in Figure 13-3(d). The difficulty with this approach, however, is the problem of designing tunable BPFs $H_{\Delta f}$ and $K_{\Delta f}$ with appropriate phase characteristics. For example, to obtain an appropriately smoothed cyclic spectrum, these filters must be *phase-complementary* in the sense that the phase of the product

$$H_{\Delta f}\left(\nu + \frac{\alpha}{2} + f\right) K_{\Delta f}\left(-\nu + \frac{\alpha}{2} - f\right) \tag{37}$$

must be approximately invariant within the passband $\nu \in [-\Delta f/2, \Delta f/2]$. An alternative approach in which the design problem is transferred from phase-complementary filters to phase-locked (in-phase and quadrature) demodulators is described in Section E.

Case 2. It can be shown (exercise 7) that if $H_{\Delta f}$ and $K_{\Delta f}$ are identical LPFs and if

$$|\alpha| < \Delta f, \tag{38}$$

then (31) reduces to (35) with $f = 0$ in which

$$S(\alpha, 0) \triangleq 2 \int_{-(\Delta f - |\alpha|)/2}^{(\Delta f - |\alpha|)/2} H_{\Delta f}\left(\frac{\alpha}{2} + \nu\right) H_{\Delta f}\left(\frac{\alpha}{2} - \nu\right) \hat{S}_x^{\alpha}(\nu)\, d\nu\, G_{1/\Delta t}^{\alpha}(\alpha). \tag{39}$$

Thus, an envelope detector at the output of an LPF-(square-law)-BPF device yields the magnitude of the spectrally smoothed cyclic spectrum (39), as depicted in Figure 13-3(e). But to obtain an appropriately smoothed cyclic spectrum, the LPF $H_{\Delta f}$ must exhibit appropriate phase symmetry about the frequency $\alpha/2$, such that the phase of the product

$$H\left(\nu + \frac{\alpha}{2}\right) H\left(-\nu + \frac{\alpha}{2}\right) \tag{40}$$

is approximately invariant within the passband $\nu \in [-(\Delta f - |\alpha|)/2, (\Delta f - |\alpha|)/2]$.

E. CYCLIC DEMODULATION

The temporally smoothed cyclic periodogram of tapered data can be expressed as (exercise 5)

$$\begin{aligned} S_{x_{1/\Delta f}}^{\alpha}(t, f)_{\Delta t} = {} & \Delta f(\{[x(t)e^{-i2\pi(\alpha/2 + f)t}] \otimes a_{1/\Delta f}(t)\} \\ & \times \{[x(t)e^{-i2\pi(\alpha/2 - f)t}] \otimes a_{1/\Delta f}(t)\}) \otimes g_{\Delta t}(t). \end{aligned} \tag{41}$$

By interpreting $a_{1/\Delta f}$ and $g_{\Delta t}$ as the impulse-response functions of LPFs, the implementation shown in Figure 13-4(a), which consists of two demodulation

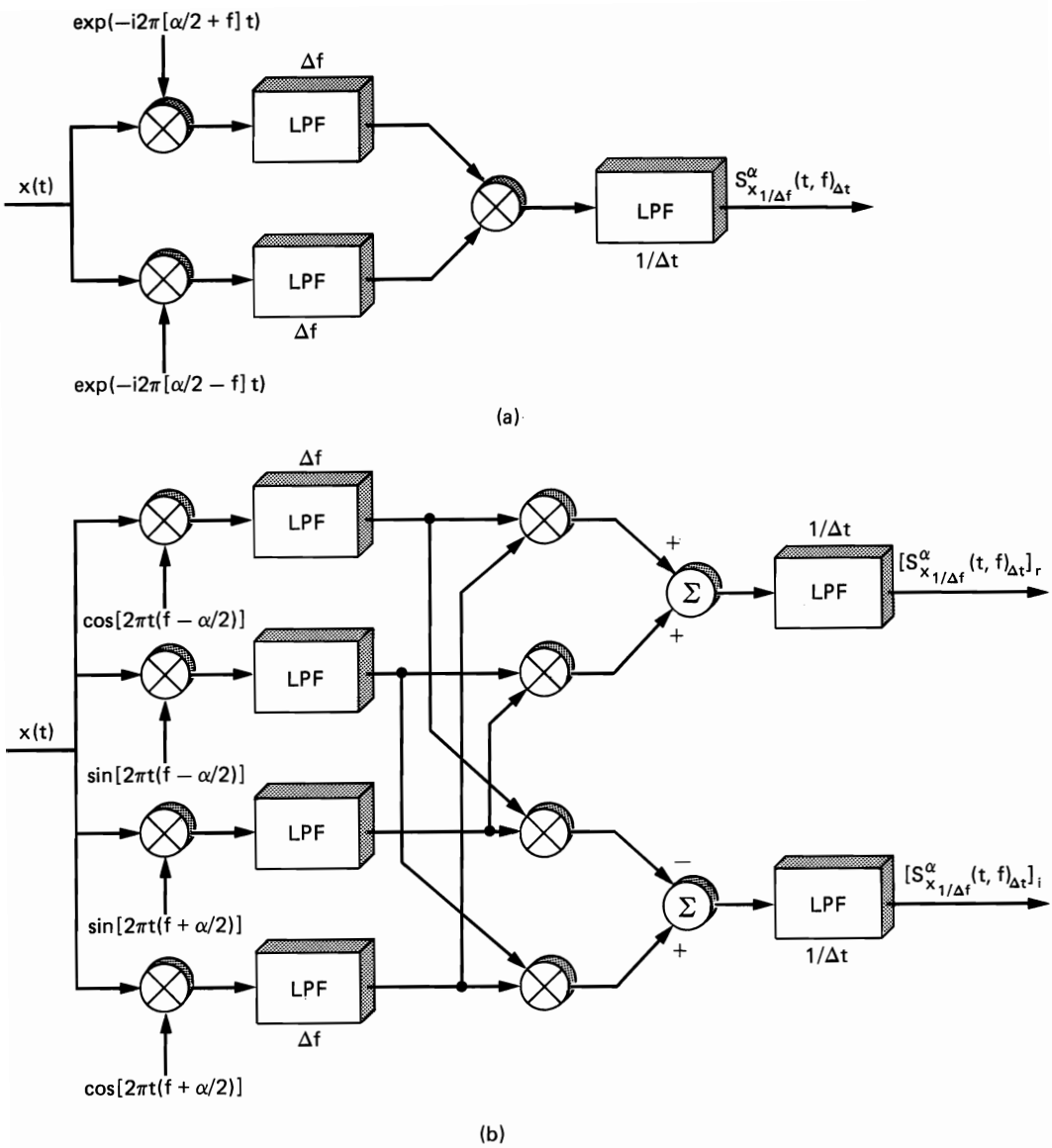


Figure 13-4 (a) Complex demodulation method for cyclic spectral analysis. (b) Real implementation of demodulation method for cyclic spectral analysis.

(down-conversion) operations followed by a product and an LPF operation, is obtained. By analogy with the terminology for conventional spectral analysis, this method will be called *cyclic demodulation*.

In order to obtain a real implementation of the cyclic demodulation method, we consider the decomposition of (41) into its real and imaginary parts:

$$[S^{\alpha}_{x_{1/\Delta f}}(t,f)_{\Delta t}]_r = \Delta f\Bigg[\left\{\left(x(t)\cos\left[2\pi\left(f+\frac{\alpha}{2}\right)t\right]\right)\otimes a_{1/\Delta f}(t)\right\} \times \left\{\left(x(t)\cos\left[2\pi\left(f-\frac{\alpha}{2}\right)t\right]\right)\otimes a_{1/\Delta f}(t)\right\} + \left\{\left(x(t)\sin\left[2\pi\left(f+\frac{\alpha}{2}\right)t\right]\right)\otimes a_{1/\Delta f}(t)\right\} \times \left\{\left(x(t)\sin\left[2\pi\left(f-\frac{\alpha}{2}\right)t\right]\right)\otimes a_{1/\Delta f}(t)\right\}\Bigg]\otimes g_{\Delta t}(t), \quad (42a)$$

$$[S^{\alpha}_{x_{1/\Delta f}}(t,f)_{\Delta t}]_i = \Delta f\Bigg[\left\{\left(x(t)\cos\left[2\pi\left(f+\frac{\alpha}{2}\right)t\right]\right)\otimes a_{1/\Delta f}(t)\right\} \times \left\{\left(x(t)\sin\left[2\pi\left(f-\frac{\alpha}{2}\right)t\right]\right)\otimes a_{1/\Delta f}(t)\right\} - \left\{\left(x(t)\sin\left[2\pi\left(f+\frac{\alpha}{2}\right)t\right]\right)\otimes a_{1/\Delta f}(t)\right\} \times \left\{\left(x(t)\cos\left[2\pi\left(f-\frac{\alpha}{2}\right)t\right]\right)\otimes a_{1/\Delta f}(t)\right\}\Bigg]\otimes g_{\Delta t}(t). \quad (42b)$$

An implementation of formula (42) is shown in Figure 13-4(b). Although quite complicated, in that it requires four phase-locked demodulators, four multipliers, and two LPFs, it is practical for analog implementation.

F. SUMMARY

In this chapter, various methods for measurement of the spectral correlation function are described. Although some of the general principles are the same as for measurement of the cross-spectral density function, as described in Chapter 7 of Part I, there are some additional principles that are specific to spectral correlation measurement because of the underlying cyclostationarity of the data and also because of the need for measurement of a possibly large multiplicity of spectral correlation functions corresponding to a range of values for the cycle frequency parameter α. Consequently, spectral correlation measurement gives rise to various problems, such as computational complexity, cycle phasing, cycle leakage and aliasing, and cycle resolution, that either do not arise or are not as problematic in the measurement of conventional cross-spectral density functions for stationary data. The methods described in this chapter include temporal and spectral smoothing of cyclic periodograms and cyclic pseudospectra, Fourier transformation of tapered cyclic correlograms and cyclic finite-average autocorrelations (or ambiguity functions), Fourier transformation of the spectrally smoothed Wigner-Ville distribution, cyclic wave analysis, and cyclic demodulation. Other methods also are possible. For example, the time-compressive method of spectral analysis described in Chapter 4 of Part I can be adapted to cyclic spectral analysis. Also, efficient digital implementations that have been developed for sonar Doppler

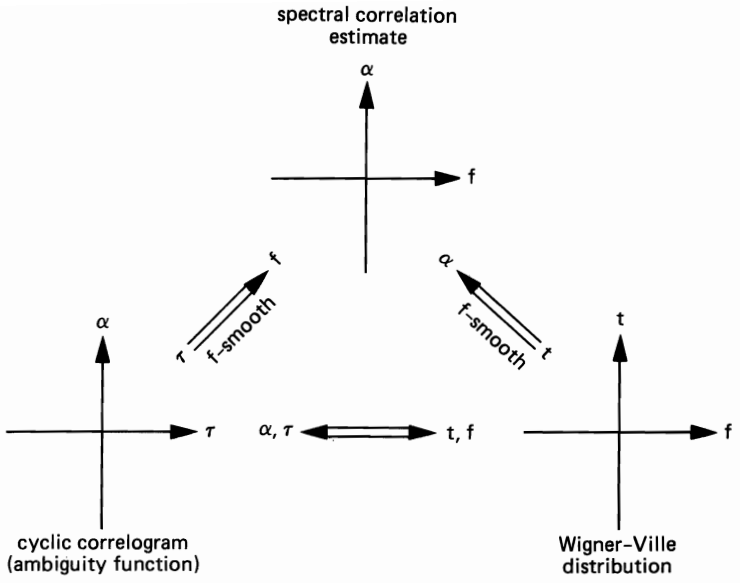


Figure 13-5 Mappings among three two-dimensional functions. (One-way arrow represents noninvertible transformation.)

processing can be adapted to cyclic spectral analysis [Brown 1987]. To clarify the relationships among the methods of measurement of the spectral correlation function, ambiguity function, and Wigner-Ville distribution, a diagram illustrating the mappings among these three two-dimensional functions, each visualized as a surface above a plane, is shown in Figure 13-5.

EXERCISES

1. In order to verify formula (8) for describing the cycle aliasing phenomenon, proceed as follows. Use the cyclic-periodogram-cyclic-correlogram relation to express (7) as

$$S_{x_T}^{\alpha}(t,f)_{\Delta t} = \frac{1}{Q}\sum_{u=-(Q-1)/2}^{(Q-1)/2} F\left\{\frac{1}{T}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} a_T\left(v+\frac{\tau}{2}\right)a_T\left(v-\frac{\tau}{2}\right) \times x\left(t+\frac{uT}{J}-v-\frac{\tau}{2}\right)x\left(t+\frac{uT}{J}-v+\frac{\tau}{2}\right)\exp\left[-i2\pi\alpha\left(t+\frac{uT}{J}-v\right)\right]dv\right\},$$

where $F\{\cdot\}$ denotes Fourier transformation in the variable τ. It is explained in Chapter 15 that the lag product can be expressed as the sum of its almost periodic component and a residual,

$$x\left(t+\frac{uT}{J}-v-\frac{\tau}{2}\right)x\left(t+\frac{uT}{J}-v+\frac{\tau}{2}\right) = \sum_{\beta}\hat{R}_x^{\beta}(\tau)\exp\left[i2\pi\beta\left(t+\frac{uT}{J}-v\right)\right]+z\left(t+\frac{uT}{J}-v\right).$$

Substitute this representation into the preceding equation to obtain

$$S_{x_T}^{\alpha}(t,f)_{\Delta t} = F\left\{\sum_{\beta} \hat{R}_x^{\beta}(\tau)\frac{1}{T}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} a_T\left(v+\frac{\tau}{2}\right)a_T\left(v-\frac{\tau}{2}\right)e^{-i2\pi(\beta-\alpha)v}\,dv\right\}$$
$$\times \frac{1}{Q}\sum_{u=-(Q-1)/2}^{(Q-1)/2} \exp\left[i2\pi(\beta-\alpha)\left(t-\frac{uT}{J}\right)\right] + \text{residual},$$

in which the residual approaches zero as $Q \to \infty$ because $z(t)$ contains no periodic (or constant) components. Apply the convolution theorem, together with the Fourier transform

$$F\left\{\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} a_T\left(v+\frac{\tau}{2}\right)a_T\left(v-\frac{\tau}{2}\right)e^{-i2\pi(\beta-\alpha)v}\,dv\right\} = A_{1/T}\left(f+\frac{\beta-\alpha}{2}\right)A_{1/T}^{*}\left(f-\frac{\beta-\alpha}{2}\right),$$

to obtain the result

$$S_{x_T}^{\alpha}(t,f)_{\Delta t} = \sum_{\beta}\left\{\hat{S}_x^{\beta}(f) \otimes \left[\frac{1}{T}A_{1/T}\left(f+\frac{\beta-\alpha}{2}\right)A_{1/T}^{*}\left(f-\frac{\beta-\alpha}{2}\right)\right]\right\}$$
$$\times \left\{\frac{1}{Q}\sum_{u=-(Q-1)/2}^{(Q-1)/2} e^{i2\pi(\beta-\alpha)uT/J}\right\}e^{i2\pi(\beta-\alpha)t} + \text{residual}.$$

Finally, show that the sum in braces can be expressed as

$$\frac{1}{Q}\sum_{u=-(Q-1)/2}^{(Q-1)/2} e^{i2\pi\gamma uT/J} = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} G_{1/\Delta t}\left(\gamma-\frac{nJ}{T}\right),$$

where $G_{1/\Delta t}(\gamma)$ is the sinc function given by (8b), which yields the desired result (8a). *Hint:* For the last step, use the representation

$$\sum_{u=-(Q-1)/2}^{(Q-1)/2} e^{i2\pi\gamma uT/J} = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \Delta t\; u_{\Delta t}(t)\sum_{u=-\infty}^{\infty}\delta\left(t-\frac{uT}{J}\right)e^{i2\pi\gamma t}\,dt$$

(where $\Delta t = QT/J$) and the identity

$$\sum_{u=-\infty}^{\infty}\delta\left(t-\frac{uT}{J}\right) = \frac{J}{T}\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} e^{i2\pi ntJ/T}.$$

2. Derive the real representation (13) for the finite-average cyclic autocorrelation (10) by using the time-series representation (12).
3. Show that the envelope and phase of the narrow-band time-series (16) are given by (17)–(18). *Hint:* Substitute the polar representation

$$R_x^{\alpha}(t,\tau) \triangleq R = |R|e^{i(\arg\{R\})}$$

into (16), and manipulate it into the form

$$y(t) \cong a|R|[\cos(\theta)\cos(2\pi\alpha t + \arg\{R\}) - \sin(\theta)\sin(2\pi\alpha t + \arg\{R\})],$$

where a and θ are defined by (18). Then use a trigonometric identity to obtain

$$y(t) \cong a|R|\cos(2\pi\alpha t + \arg\{R\} + \theta),$$

from which (17) follows directly.
4. Use definition (11)–(12) in Chapter 11 and definition (20) to show that the cyclic periodogram and Wigner-Ville distribution are related by (19).
5. **(a)** Substitute (2c) into (2a) and the result into (4a) to show that the temporally smoothed cyclic periodogram can be expressed as in (23)–(24).
   (b) Show that (23)–(24) can be reexpressed as (25)–(26).
   (c) Show that either (23)–(24) or (25)–(26) can be reexpressed as (41).
   (d) Show that the real part of the up-converted version of the statistical cyclic spectrum measurement (25) can be expressed as (28).

(e) Use the representation (12) in (23) to show that the real and imaginary parts of the statistical cyclic spectral measurement (23) are given by (29)–(30).

6. The representation (31b) for the measurement (31a) can be obtained by observing that the first term in the right member of (31b) is the sine wave component (with frequency α) of (31a), and the second term approaches zero in temporal mean square as $\Delta t \to \infty$. The latter is proved in Chapter 15. The former can be established as follows. The complex sine wave component with frequency α of

$$y(t) \otimes g^{\alpha}_{\Delta t}(t)$$

is simply

$$G^{\alpha}_{1/\Delta t}(\alpha) y_{\alpha}(t),$$

where $y_{\alpha}(t)$ is the sine wave component of $y(t)$, which is

$$\langle y(t) e^{-i2\pi\alpha t} \rangle e^{i2\pi\alpha t}.$$

Thus, we need show only that

$$\langle y(t) e^{-i2\pi\alpha t} \rangle = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} H_{\Delta f}\left(\frac{\alpha}{2} + \nu\right) K_{\Delta f}\left(\frac{\alpha}{2} - \nu\right) \hat{S}^{\alpha}_{x}(\nu)\, d\nu$$

when

$$y(t) = [x(t) \otimes h_{1/\Delta f}(t)][x(t) \otimes k_{1/\Delta f}(t)].$$

Then the desired result (the first term in (31b)) is obtained from

$$\mathrm{Re}\{G^{\alpha}_{1/\Delta t}(\alpha) y_{\alpha}(t)\}.$$

To verify this formula for $\langle y(t) e^{-i2\pi\alpha t} \rangle$, express $y(t)$ as

$$y(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} k(u, v) x(t - u) x(t - v)\, du\, dv,$$

where

$$k(u, v) = h(u) k(v),$$

and then proceed as in exercise 5(a) in Chapter 10 (i.e., use Parseval's relation for the double Fourier transform).

7. **(a)** Show that (31b) reduces to (35)–(36) when $H_{\Delta f}$ and $K_{\Delta f}$ satisfy

$$H_{\Delta f}(\nu) = 0, \qquad \left| |\nu| - \left| \frac{\alpha}{2} - f \right| \right| > \frac{\Delta f}{2}$$

$$K_{\Delta f}(\nu) = 0, \qquad \left| |\nu| - \left| \frac{\alpha}{2} + f \right| \right| > \frac{\Delta f}{2}$$

and $|\alpha/2 \pm f| > \Delta f/2$.

(b) Show that (31b) reduces to (35) and (39) when

$$H_{\Delta f}(\nu) = K_{\Delta f}(\nu) = 0, \qquad |\nu| > \frac{\Delta f}{2}$$

and $|\alpha| < \Delta f$.

14

APPLICATIONS

The spectral correlation theory of time-series that exhibit cyclostationarity has the potential for useful application in any field in which random data from periodic phenomena are analyzed, processed, or utilized. For applications in which the periodicity itself is an object of study or is to be used for some purpose, the theory can be essential. The growing awareness of the usefulness of the concept of cyclostationarity is illustrated by work in the field of communication systems, including synchronization [Bennett 1958; Franks and Bubrouski 1974; Mengali and Pezzani 1978; Franks 1980; Moeneclaey 1982a, 1982b, 1983, 1984; Pupolin and Tomasi 1984; O'Reilly 1984; Gardner 1986], crosstalk interference and modulation transfer noise [Campbell et al. 1983; Albuquerque et al. 1984], transmitter and receiver filter design [Gardner and Franks 1975; Mesiya et al. 1978; Ericson 1981; Graef 1983], and coding [Cariolaro et al. 1983; Monti and Pierobon 1985; French and Gardner 1986], and by work in the fields of digital signal-processing algorithms [Pelkowitz 1981; Ferrara 1985], queueing [Kaplan 1983; Ackroyd 1984], noise in circuits [Strom and Signell 1977; Furrer and Guggenbuhl 1981], geophysics, hydrology, meteorology and climatology [Chapman and Bartels 1940; Monin 1963; Willis 1964; Jones and Brelsford 1967; Hasselman and Barnett 1981; Ortiz and Ruiz de Elvira 1985; Vecchia 1985], biomedical engineering [Rhyne 1969; Johnson 1981; Eisenstein and Cerrato 1978], and economics [Parzen and Pagano 1979]. In this chapter, the potential for useful application of the theory of spectral correlation is illustrated by further development of the theory for specific types of statistical inference and decision problems. These include problems of detecting the presence of random signals buried in noise and further masked by interference; classifying such corrupted signals according to modulation type; estimating pa-

rameters of corrupted signals, such as time-difference of arrival, pulse rate and phase, keying rate and phase, and carrier frequency and phase; extracting signals from corrupted measurements; and identifying systems involving periodicity from corrupted input-output measurements. Many of the methods proposed are derived as the solutions to specified optimization problems; others are practical adaptations of optimum but impractical solutions; and a few methods can be considered to be ad hoc. A theme that unifies these otherwise diverse methods is that spectral correlation is exploited to obtain tolerance to noise and interference or to otherwise obtain performance improvements relative to more conventional methods that exploit only stationarity, not cyclostationarity.

It is clarified at the outset that in spite of the title of this chapter, the remarks in the Preface still apply: This is not a book on applications—the focus is on fundamental concepts and associated theory and methodology. Consequently, discussions of applications in this chapter are admittedly terse. Although some additional details and discussion can be found in the references, the ideas presented here are relatively new and have not yet received much development or application. In fact, it is this state of affairs that has provided the primary motivation for writing Part II, which is to foster such development and application.

A. OPTIMUM CYCLIC FILTERING

We consider the problem of determining the possibly time-variant linear transformation of a time-series $x(t)$ that produces a transformed time-series

$$\hat{y}(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} h(t, u)x(u)\, du \tag{1}$$

that best approximates another time-series $y(t)$. For example, if $x(t)$ is a corrupted measurement of an unobservable time-series $y(t)$, then the transformation can be used to do the best job of removing the corruption in order to recover $y(t)$. For example, the corruption might consist of linear distortion and additive noise and interference. As a measure of estimation performance, we consider time-averaged squared error,

$$e \triangleq \langle [y(t) - \hat{y}(t)]^2 \rangle = \lim_{T\to\infty} \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} [y(t) - \hat{y}(t)]^2\, dt. \tag{2}$$

If the time-series $x(t)$ and $y(t)$ are jointly purely stationary, it can be shown that the transformation that minimizes e is time-invariant,

$$h(t, u) = h(t - u),$$

and has transfer function specified by

$$H(f) = \frac{\hat{S}_{yx}(f)}{\hat{S}_x(f)}, \tag{3}$$

which is known as the *Wiener filter* in honor of Norbert Wiener's pioneering work (see [Gardner 1985]). However if either $x(t)$ or $y(t)$ exhibits any cyclostationarity, then although (3) is still the best time-invariant filter, there are time-variant filters, which are periodic or almost periodic, that can yield smaller values

for e, and there is a particular filter that yields the smallest possible value for e. Specifically, let the transformation (1) be almost periodic with Fourier series representation

$$h(t, u) = \sum_{\beta} g_{\beta}(t - u)e^{i2\pi\beta u}, \tag{4a}$$

$$g_{\beta}(\tau) \triangleq \langle h(t + \tau, t)e^{-i2\pi\beta t}\rangle. \tag{4b}$$

We want to determine the values of β and the functions $\{g_{\beta}(\tau)\}$ that minimize the time-averaged squared error (2), with (4a) substituted into (1) and the result substituted into (2). Substitution of (4a) into (1) yields

$$\hat{y}(t) = \sum_{\beta} g_{\beta}(t) \otimes [x(t)e^{i2\pi\beta t}], \tag{5}$$

which indicates that $\hat{y}(t)$ is a sum of linear time-invariant filtered versions of the time-series

$$x_{\beta}(t) \triangleq x(t)e^{i2\pi\beta t}. \tag{6}$$

In order to derive the set of filters $\{g_{\beta}(\tau)\}$ that minimize the estimation error (2), we invoke the necessary and sufficient orthogonality condition [Gardner 1985]:

$$\langle [y(t) - \hat{y}(t)]x(t - u)e^{-i2\pi\alpha(t-u)}\rangle = 0 \tag{7}$$

for all u and all α of interest. That is, the error $y(t) - \hat{y}(t)$ must be orthogonal (zero correlation) to all the variables $x(t - u)e^{i2\pi\alpha(t-u)}$ that are linearly combined to form the estimate $\hat{y}(t)$ (compare with (14) in Chapter 9, Part I). Substitution of (5) into (7) and evaluation of the time average yields (exercise 1)

$$\hat{R}_{yx}^{\alpha}(u)e^{i\pi\alpha u} - \sum_{\beta} g_{\beta}(u) \otimes [\hat{R}_{x}^{\alpha-\beta}(u)e^{i\pi(\alpha+\beta)u}] = 0 \tag{8}$$

for all u and all α of interest. Fourier transformation of (8) yields the following necessary and sufficient condition on the transfer functions $\{G_{\beta}(f)\}$:

$$\sum_{\beta} G_{\beta}(f)\hat{S}_{x}^{\alpha-\beta}\left(f - \frac{\alpha + \beta}{2}\right) = \hat{S}_{yx}^{\alpha}\left(f - \frac{\alpha}{2}\right) \tag{9}$$

for all f and all α of interest. The set of values of β in the sum in (4a) and (9) is arbitrary, but the set of values of α for which (9) must be satisfied must be the same as the set of values of β. If an optimum periodically time-variant filter with period T_0 is desired, then the set of values of β (and the set of values of α) consists of all integer multiples of $1/T_0$. If the smallest attainable estimation error is desired, then the set of values of β (and the set of values of α) should consist of all values for which the spectral correlation functions in (9) are not identically zero. If $x(t)$ and $y(t)$ are jointly purely cyclostationary, this set will contain only the integer multiples of the reciprocal of the period; but if $x(t)$ and/or $y(t)$ are almost cyclostationary, then the set will contain more than just integer multiples of a single fundamental frequency. If an optimum time-invariant filter is desired, then only $\beta = \alpha = 0$ applies, and (9) reduces to the formula (3) for the Wiener filter.

In order to determine the minimized value of the estimation error, condition (7) can be used to show that the minimum value of (2) is given by

$$e_{\min} = \langle y^2(t)\rangle - \langle y(t)\hat{y}(t)\rangle. \tag{10}$$

Substitution of (5) into (10) and evaluation of the time averages yields (exercise 1)

$$e_{\min} = \hat{R}_y(0) - \sum_{\beta} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} g_\beta(u)[\hat{R}_{yx}^{\beta}(u)e^{i\pi\beta u}]^* \, du. \tag{11}$$

Application of Parseval's relation for Fourier transforms yields the alternative formula

$$e_{\min} = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \left[\hat{S}_y(f) - \sum_{\beta} G_\beta(f)\hat{S}_{yx}^{\beta}\left(f - \frac{\beta}{2}\right)^* \right] df. \tag{12}$$

The time-domain equivalents to (9) and (12) are also useful. By using the Fourier-series-Fourier-transform relationship

$$\hat{R}_{xy}(t, \tau) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \sum_{\alpha} \hat{S}_{xy}^{\alpha}(f)e^{i2\pi\alpha t}e^{i2\pi f\tau} \, df \tag{13}$$

and its counterpart for $\hat{R}_x(t, \tau)$, (9) and (12) can be reexpressed as (exercise 2)

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} h(t, u)\hat{R}_x\left(\frac{u + v}{2}, u - v\right) du = \hat{R}_{yx}\left(\frac{t + v}{2}, t - v\right) \tag{14}$$

for all t and v, and

$$e_{\min} = \left\langle \hat{R}_y(t, 0) - \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} h(t, u)\hat{R}_{xy}\left(\frac{u + t}{2}, u - t\right) du \right\rangle. \tag{15}$$

Equations (14) and (15) are exactly analogous to the well-known equations for minimum-mean-squared-error estimation formulated within the probabilistic framework of nonstationary stochastic processes [Gardner 1985]. However, here they have meaning only for periodic or almost periodic variation in t.

The design equation (14) and performance formula (15) for optimum (almost) periodically time-variant filters have been applied to a number of types of modulated and multiplexed signals corrupted by linear time-invariant distortion and additive stationary noise [Gardner 1972, 1973; Gardner and Franks, 1975]. One important result of this application is proof of the fact that for various types of modulated and multiplexed signals in additive white noise, the optimum performance is obtained not by direct time-invariant filtering but rather by first demodulating and/or demultiplexing the corrupted signals (which requires periodically time-variant transformation), then performing optimum time-invariant filtering, and finally, if desired (e.g., for transmission repeaters), remodulating and/or re-multiplexing. As an example, relative to direct optimum time-invariant filtering of the modulated signal, this can yield a 3-dB increase in performance for amplitude modulation and considerably more than 3 dB for high-SNR full-duty-cycle pulse-amplitude modulation. For less than full-duty-cycle pulse-modulated (e.g., PAM, PPM, PWM) signals, the performance improvement can be even greater for low SNR as well as high SNR—it can exceed improvement by a factor equal to the reciprocal of the duty-cycle fraction for pulse-amplitude modulation.

Another situation where optimum periodically time-variant filtering can provide substantial improvements in performance relative to optimum time-invariant filtering is for signals corrupted by bandlimited interferences. Whereas the time-

invariant filter essentially removes all components of the signal in those spectral bands where strong interference resides, the time-variant filter is able to replace these signal components using correlated components from other spectral bands where there is no interference (or at least less interference). For example, for an amplitude-modulated signal, $y(t) = a(t)\cos(2\pi f_0 t + \phi_0)$, with strong narrowband interference at $f = f_*$ (for instance, sine wave interference) and with weak broadband noise (negligible noise, for example), the design equation (9) yields (exercise 10)

$$G_0(f_*) = 0 \qquad \text{and} \qquad G_\beta(f_*) = e^{i2\phi_0}, \qquad \beta = \pm 2f_0.$$

Consequently, the filter rejects the interference and the signal component at $f = f_*$ and then replaces the rejected signal component with an identical component obtained by frequency-shifting and phase-shifting the completely correlated component at either $f = f_* + 2f_0$ or $f = f_* - 2f_0$, whichever is nonzero. Although it is easy to see that this type of interference rejection without signal-component rejection is possible for amplitude-modulated signals because of the redundancy between the upper and lower sidebands of the signal, it is not nearly as apparent that the same can be accomplished for other signals with completely correlated spectral components such as ASK, PAM, BPSK, QPSK, SQPSK, and APK (see Chapter 12). Furthermore, although perfect replacement of rejected signal components is not possible for signals with spectral components that are not completely correlated, imperfect but useful replacement is possible using incompletely correlated spectral components. The optimum weighting and phase-shifting as well as the frequencies of the correlated spectral components that can be exploited are specified by the design equation (9) for any cyclostationary signal and any type of interference and noise. In fact, (9) has been used in [Brown 1987] to show that two interfering signals with arbitrary spectral overlap, each of which is AM or BPSK, or ASK, can be perfectly extracted from each other, provided only that they do not share both the same carrier frequency and phase. Also, it is shown that the presence of independent low level noise only results in a mean square extraction error that is on the order of the mean square noise level. Thus, unusually large improvements in signal extraction performance for severely interfering signals can be obtained when correlation in frequency as well as correlation in time is taken advantage of.

Since the essence of (almost) periodically time-variant filtering, also called *cyclic filtering,* is the inclusion of the FREquency SHifting (FRESH) operation in addition to the frequency weighting operation, this approach to optimum filtering is called the *FRESH approach.* Also cyclic filtering is called *FRESH filtering* or, more accurately, *FRESHing and filtering.*

B. ADAPTIVE CYCLIC FILTERING

In applications where the spectral correlation characteristics or, equivalently, the (almost) periodically time-variant limit correlation functions for the time-series of interest are not known, the optimum filter specified by (9) or (14) cannot be directly implemented. In some cases, an appropriate alternative is an approach

based on the concept of adaptation, whereby the filter automatically learns the periods or cycle frequencies and/or (in effect) the spectral correlation characteristics present in (9). If there is a single known period (i.e., if $x(t)$ is purely cyclostationary), then the time-series $x(t)$ and a training time-series $y(t)$ can be decomposed into jointly purely stationary time-series by frequency channelization or time-sampling (see [Gardner 1985]), and conventional methods for multivariate adaptive filtering can be directly applied [Haykin 1986]. Or if $x(t)$ and/or $y(t)$ are almost cyclostationary with known cycle frequencies, then multivariate adaptive filtering techniques can be used to estimate $y(t)$ by filtering the set of time-series (6), as in (5). For example, an estimated gradient descent algorithm for adaptation can be developed as follows. We envision $\{g_\alpha(\tau)\}$, for all values of α and τ of interest, as a vector whose elements are jointly indexed by α and τ, and we evaluate the gradient of the error (2) to be minimized, with respect to this vector. It can be shown (exercise 3) that this gradient vector is given by

$$\nabla_\alpha(\tau) = -2\langle[y(t) - \hat{y}(t)]x(t - \tau)e^{-i2\pi\alpha(t-\tau)}\rangle \tag{16}$$

for all α and τ. Thus, we see that the orthogonality condition (7) simply insures that the gradient vector is zero. If a training signal $y(t)$ is available in addition to the observations $x(t)$, then a gradient estimate can be iteratively updated by replacing the limit average $\langle\cdot\rangle$ with either a finite sliding average of length T, denoted by $\langle\cdot\rangle_T$, or a sliding instantaneous sample. Thus, we can iteratively move the filter vector $\{g_\alpha(\tau)\}$ in the direction of the negative of the estimated gradient by the following algorithm:

$$g_\alpha^{n+1}(\tau) = g_\alpha^n(\tau) + \mu\langle[y(t + nT) - \hat{y}(t + nT)]x(t + nT - \tau)e^{-i2\pi\alpha(t+nT-\tau)}\rangle_T, \tag{17}$$

where $\hat{y}(t)$ is given by (5) with $\{g_\beta\}$ replaced by $\{g_\beta^n\}$, μ is a positive step-size parameter, and n indexes the stages of the iteration. For $\alpha = 0$, this reduces to the conventional estimated-gradient descent algorithm for adaptive time-invariant filtering. For example, for $\alpha = 0$ and $T = T_s$ and t and τ discretized to $t = nT_s$ and $\tau = mT_s$, (17) reduces to the well-known *Widrow-Hoff LMS algorithm*:

$$g_0^{n+1}(mT_s) = g_0^n(mT_s) + \mu[y(nT_s) - \hat{y}(nT_s)]x([n - m]T_s). \tag{18}$$

This algorithm has many applications (see [Widrow and Stearns 1985]), one of which is the cancellation of signal-corrupting noise that is common to both members $x(t)$ and $y(t)$ of a pair of measurements.

If the period or periods are not known, then potentially useful methods can be based on the frequency-domain approach to adaptive filtering. Specifically, the time-series $x(t)$ and a training signal $y(t)$ can each be channelized into appropriately narrow spectral bands, and then multivariate adaptive filtering can be applied to estimate each channel of $y(t)$ using all channels of $x(t)$ initially. When the component filters corresponding to those channel pairs that do not exhibit substantial spectral correlation are recognized as converging toward small values, they can be disabled so that eventually only component filters corresponding to channel pairs with substantial correlation remain. A drawback to this approach is that the only cycle frequencies that can be adaptively identified and exploited are those within $\pm\Delta\alpha/2$ of the differences between the frequencies used by the

down-converters at the outputs of each pair of channelizers for $x(t)$ and $y(t)$ (typically the center frequencies of the channels), and $\Delta\alpha$, which will be on the order of the reciprocal of the memory length of the algorithm, can be quite small. An obvious but complicating remedy is to use a channel width of $\Delta f = \Delta\alpha$, which will require many channels to cover a spectral band of any substantial width. A possibly attractive alternative is to tune adaptively the center frequencies of the down-converters used with a relatively coarse channelization, $\Delta f >> \Delta\alpha$. Other techniques also are attractive for special cases, such as signals that are periodically switched off and on [Gardner and Agee 1980] and signals that are themselves nearly periodic [Holl and Gardner 1985]. In some of these special cases, the need for a training signal $y(t)$ can be circumvented. A particularly striking example of this occurs with adaptive beam and null steering sensor arrays as explained in Section F.

When the cross correlation $\hat{R}_{xy}(t, \tau)$ in (14) is known but the autocorrelation $\hat{R}_x(t, \tau)$ is unknown, then a special adaptation algorithm that requires no training signal can be used. This situation arises, for example, in problems where additive noise and interference is of an unknown or changing character, but the signal of interest has known characteristics. In this case, where $x(t) = y(t) + n(t)$ and $y(t)$ and $n(t)$ are not correlated, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \hat{R}_{xy}(t, \tau) &= \hat{R}_y(t, \tau) \\ \hat{R}_x(t, \tau) &= \hat{R}_y(t, \tau) + \hat{R}_n(t, \tau). \end{aligned} \tag{19}$$

Thus, if $\hat{R}_y(t, \tau)$ is known (including the phases of all periodicities) but $\hat{R}_n(t, \tau)$ is unknown, then an algorithm is needed that uses $\hat{R}_{xy}(t, \tau)$ but must in effect learn $\hat{R}_x(t, \tau)$. Such an algorithm can be derived as follows. The gradient vector (16) can be reexpressed as

$$\nabla_\alpha(\tau) = -2[\hat{R}^\alpha_{yx}(\tau)e^{i\pi\alpha\tau} - \langle \hat{y}(t)x(t - \tau)e^{-i2\pi\alpha(t-\tau)}\rangle], \tag{20}$$

and can be approximated by replacement of $\langle\cdot\rangle$ with $\langle\cdot\rangle_T$. Thus, we have the following estimated-gradient descent algorithm (using (19)):

$$g^{n+1}_\alpha(\tau) = g^n_\alpha(\tau) + \mu[\hat{R}^\alpha_y(\tau)e^{i\pi\alpha\tau} - \langle \hat{y}(t + nT)x(t + nT - \tau)e^{-i2\pi\alpha(t+nT-\tau)}\rangle_T], \tag{21}$$

where $\hat{y}(t)$ is given by (5) with $\{g_\beta\}$ replaced by $\{g^n_\beta\}$. For example, for $\alpha = 0$, $T = T_s$, and t and τ discretized to $t = nT_s$ and $\tau = mT_s$, (21) reduces to the well-known *Griffith's constrained LMS algorithm*:

$$g^{n+1}_0(mT_s) = g^n_0(mT_s) + \mu[\hat{R}_y(mT_s) - \hat{y}(nT_s)x([n - m]T_s)]. \tag{22}$$

One application of this algorithm is to the cancellation of interferers impinging on an antenna array from unknown directions, given knowledge of the direction of arrival of the signal of interest (see Section F).

One potential advantage of the cyclic filtering algorithms (17) and (21), relative to the conventional algorithms (18) and (22), is that the minimum attainable estimation error can be smaller for various reasons if $x(t)$ and/or $y(t)$ do indeed exhibit cyclostationarity, as explained in Section A. Another potential advantage is that the $\alpha \neq 0$ components of these algorithms can be more tolerant to noise

and interference that is common to both $x(t)$ and $y(t)$. An important limitation to the application of algorithm (21) is that knowledge of $\hat{R}_y^{\alpha}(\tau)$ requires knowledge of the time origin (phase) of the cyclostationarity of $y(t)$. Without this knowledge, algorithm (21) will not, in general, converge properly without some form of adaptive phase compensation.

Another situation where cyclostationarity can be exploited to improve adaptive filtering performance is the channel-equalization problem, where a received signal is given by

$$x(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} h_*(t - u)y(u)\,du + m(t), \tag{23}$$

in which the effects of the channel dispersion, with impulse-response function $h_*(t)$, are to be removed. By adaptively filtering $x(t)$ in an attempt to minimize the temporal mean-squared error between the adaptive filter output $\hat{y}(t)$ and a channel-input training signal $y(t)$, the channel distortion can be equalized, assuming the channel noise $m(t)$ is small. However, if $y(t)$ exhibits strong periodic fluctuations in its intensity due to cyclostationarity, then adaptation performance, such as speed of convergence, can be degraded (because of the need for use of an excessively small step size μ). However, if the time-series $x(t)$ is decomposed into, for instance, M time-series by time-sampling M times per period T_0,

$$x_p(n) = x(nT_0 + p\Delta), \qquad p = 1, 2, 3, \ldots, M, \tag{24a}$$

where $\Delta = T_0/M$, then we can use M sets of M filters, each set having one input sequence, say $x_p(n)$, and M output sequences, say

$$\hat{y}_{qp}(n) = \hat{y}_p(nT_0 + q\Delta) = h_{qp}(n) \otimes x_p(n), \qquad q = 1, 2, 3, \ldots, M. \tag{24b}$$

The outputs of the sets of jointly adapted filters are added to produce the estimates

$$\hat{y}(nT_0 + q\Delta) = \sum_{p=1}^{M} \hat{y}_p(nT_0 + q\Delta), \qquad q = 1, 2, 3, \ldots, M. \tag{24c}$$

The inputs to each of these sets of filters indexed by p will have stationary intensities and, therefore, potentially superior adaptation performance. Although the composite filter will converge toward the optimum periodically time-variant filter, its performance will be comparable to the optimum time-invariant equalizer when the noise is weak.

C. CYCLIC SYSTEM IDENTIFICATION

If $x(t)$ and $y(t)$ are the measured input and output, respectively, of an unknown linear time-invariant system,

$$y(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} h_*(t - u)[x(u) - n(u)]\,du + m(t), \tag{25}$$

where $n(t)$ and $m(t)$ are measurement errors due to noise or interference or other causes, then one can attempt to identify the unknown system transfer function $H_*(f)$ as follows. We envision a system model with transfer function $H(f)$, and we consider exciting it with the measured excitation $x(t)$ to produce the response

$$\hat{y}(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} h(t - u)x(u)\, du. \tag{26}$$

We then solve for the particular model that minimizes the time-averaged squared error between the actual system's measured response, $y(t)$, and the model response, $\hat{y}(t)$. The solution is given by (3), where

$$\hat{S}_{yx}(f) = H_*(f)[\hat{S}_x(f) - \hat{S}_{nx}(f)] + \hat{S}_{mx}(f).$$

Therefore, (3) yields the system model

$$H(f) = H_*(f)\left[1 - \frac{\hat{S}_{nx}(f)}{\hat{S}_x(f)}\right] + \frac{\hat{S}_{mx}(f)}{\hat{S}_x(f)}. \tag{27}$$

Consequently, we cannot in general obtain a good estimate of $H_*(f)$ using formula (3) unless the measurement noises are sufficiently small. However, if the measured input $x(t)$ and the output measurement noise $m(t)$ are not correlated, then one source of error in (25) vanishes, because $\hat{S}_{mx}(f) \equiv 0$. However, it is not possible for the other source of error to vanish when $n(t) \not\equiv 0$, because $\hat{S}_{nx}(f) \equiv 0$ is not possible. The reason for this is that if the actual system input is denoted by $z(t)$, then $x(t) = z(t) + n(t)$, and even if $z(t)$ and the measurement noise $n(t)$ are not correlated, we are left with the nonzero term $\hat{S}_{nx}(f) = \hat{S}_n(f)$. Furthermore there are situations in which $\hat{S}_{mx}(f) \not\equiv 0$ because even though $z(t)$ and $m(t)$ might not be correlated, $n(t)$ and $m(t)$ can still be correlated so that $\hat{S}_{mx}(f) = \hat{S}_{mn}(f)$. However, if the system excitation exhibits cyclostationarity with cycle frequency α, then perfect system identification can in principle be obtained, provided only that the measurement errors do not also exhibit cyclostationarity at α. To see this, we simply apply formula (95) in Chapter 11 to the evaluation of the cyclic cross-spectral density for $y(t)$ and $x(t)$ to obtain

$$\hat{S}_{yx}^{\alpha}(f) = H_*\left(f + \frac{\alpha}{2}\right)[\hat{S}_x^{\alpha}(f) - \hat{S}_{nx}^{\alpha}(f)] + \hat{S}_{mx}^{\alpha}(f). \tag{28}$$

Under the preceding assumption, we have

$$\hat{S}_{mx}^{\alpha}(f) \equiv \hat{S}_{nx}^{\alpha}(f) \equiv 0,$$

and therefore

$$H(f) \triangleq \frac{\hat{S}_{yx}^{\alpha}(f - \alpha/2)}{\hat{S}_x^{\alpha}(f - \alpha/2)} = H_*(f). \tag{29}$$

For example, if $x(t)$ is an amplitude-modulated sine wave,

$$x(t) = a(t)\cos(2\pi f_0 t - \theta), \tag{30}$$

with positive-frequency bandwidth of $2f_0$, then we can choose $\alpha = 2f_0$, and (29) becomes

$$H(f) = \frac{\hat{S}_{yx}^{2f_0}(f - f_0)}{\hat{S}_x^{2f_0}(f - f_0)}, \qquad 0 \leq f \leq 2f_0. \tag{31}$$

In applications where the system excitation is under the experimenter's control, the measurement error $n(t)$ will usually be zero and there is, therefore, no advantage

to modulating the excitation (assuming that $S_{mx}(f) \equiv 0$). Thus, the noise and interference tolerance of this spectral correlation method of system identification can be exploited primarily when the system excitation is not under the experimenter's control but happens to exhibit cyclostationarity.

Example: TDOA Estimation

We consider the time-difference-of-arrival (TDOA) estimation problem described in Appendix 7-3 in Part I, except that we here consider multiple signals $\{s_i(t)\}$ masked by noise and other interfering signals $n(t)$ and $m(t)$,

$$\begin{aligned} w(t) &= \sum_i s_i(t - t_i) + n(t) \\ z(t) &= \sum_i s_i(t) + m(t). \end{aligned} \tag{32}$$

In (32) t_i is the TDOA of $s_i(t)$ in the two measurements $w(t)$ and $z(t)$. If $n(t)$ and $m(t)$ are not correlated with each other or with $\{s_i(t)\}$, if $\{s_i(t)\}$ are not correlated with each other, and if the widths of $\{\hat{R}_{s_i}(\tau)\}$ are narrower than the differences $\{t_i - t_j\}$ for $i \neq j$, then the values of $\{t_i\}$ can be estimated from the peaks in the cross correlogram of $w(t)$ and $z(t)$, as suggested by the expression for the limit cross correlation:

$$\hat{R}_{wz}(\tau) = \sum_i \hat{R}_{s_i}(\tau - t_i). \tag{33}$$

However, if $n(t)$ and $m(t)$ are correlated, then we have

$$\hat{R}_{wz}(\tau) = \sum_i \hat{R}_{s_i}(\tau - t_i) + \hat{R}_{nm}(\tau) \tag{34}$$

and the peaks from (33) can be severely masked by the term $\hat{R}_{nm}(\tau)$ (e.g., if $n(t)$ and $m(t)$ contain strong narrow-band components, then $\hat{R}_{nm}(\tau)$ is oscillatory). For example, if $w(t)$ and $z(t)$ are the signals from two spatially separated sensors used for angle-of-arrival estimation via TDOA estimation, then both $n(t)$ and $m(t)$ will typically contain the same interfering signals. Nevertheless, if $\{s_i(t)\}$ exhibit cyclostationarity, then spectral correlation techniques can be used to obtain tolerance to the noise and interference. Specifically, the cyclic cross correlation of $w(t)$ and $z(t)$ is given by

$$\hat{R}^{\alpha}_{wz}(\tau) = \sum_i \hat{R}^{\alpha}_{s_i}(\tau - t_i)e^{-i\pi\alpha t_i} + \hat{R}^{\alpha}_{nm}(\tau). \tag{35a}$$

Thus, if $n(t)$ and $m(t)$ do not exhibit cyclostationarity with cycle frequency α, then $\hat{R}^{\alpha}_{nm}(\tau) \equiv 0$, and the values of $\{t_i\}$ can potentially be estimated from the cyclic cross correlogram provided that $|\hat{R}^{\alpha}_{s_i}(\tau)|$ peaks at $\tau = 0$ (e.g., amplitude-modulated signals), or that the locations of the peaks are known (e.g., $\tau = \pm T_0/2$ for pulse-amplitude-modulated signals with full-duty-cycle rectangle pulses of width T_0). An alternative approach can be based on the Fourier transform of (35a),

$$\hat{S}^{\alpha}_{wz}(f) = \sum_i \hat{S}^{\alpha}_{s_i}(f)e^{-i2\pi(f+\alpha/2)t_i} + \hat{S}^{\alpha}_{nm}(f). \tag{35b}$$

It follows from (35b) that if $n(t)$ and $m(t)$ exhibit no cyclostationarity at α, then

$$\hat{S}^{\alpha}_{wz}(f) = \sum_i \hat{S}^{\alpha}_{s_i}(f)e^{-i2\pi(f+\alpha/2)t_i} \tag{36}$$

and also, from (32),

$$\hat{S}^{\alpha}_{z}(f) = \sum_i \hat{S}^{\alpha}_{s_i}(f).$$

Let us consider two special cases. If each signal $s_i(t)$ exhibits cyclostationarity at a cycle frequency α_i different from the cycle frequencies of the other signals $s_j(t)$ for $j \neq i$, then (36) yields the special case of (29)

$$e^{-i2\pi f t_i} = \frac{\hat{S}_{wz}^{\alpha_i}(f - \alpha_i/2)}{\hat{S}_z^{\alpha_i}(f - \alpha_i/2)}, \tag{37}$$

from which t_i can be determined. For example, t_i can be estimated by searching for the location of the peak in the inverse Fourier transform of an estimate of the ratio in (37). In this case, the location of the peak of $|\hat{R}_{s_i}^{\alpha_i}(\tau)|$ is irrelevant since its effect cancels out in the ratio in (37). Simulations of this SPECtral CORrelation (SPECCOR) technique for TDOA estimation have shown drastic improvements in performance over the best generalized crosscorrelation techniques when the signal of interest is severely masked by interference [Gardner and Chen 1987]. In the other case of interest, if all $\hat{S}_{s_i}^{\alpha}(f)$ are identical except for a complex scale factor representing relative delay and strength, then (36) reduces to

$$\hat{S}_{wz}^{\alpha}\left(f - \frac{\alpha}{2}\right) = \left|\hat{S}_s^{\alpha}\left(f - \frac{\alpha}{2}\right)\right| \sum_i c_i e^{-i2\pi f t_i}, \tag{38}$$

where

$$\hat{S}_{s_i}^{\alpha}(f) = c_i \hat{S}_s^{\alpha}(f). \tag{39}$$

The relation (39) could apply, for example, if $\{s_i(t)\}$ are all signals from a multiuser code-division-multiplexed communication system, and α is the chip rate used for the spreading codes. Equation (38) suggests that for sufficiently broadband signals $s_i(t)$, the TDOA values $\{t_i\}$ can be estimated by measuring the frequencies $\{t_i\}$ of the sinusoidal functions of f in noise, obtained from a measurement of $\hat{S}_{wz}^{\alpha}(f - \alpha/2)$. If the signal bandwidth is B, then we can expect to resolve the values of $\{t_i\}$ to within approximately $1/B$, since the factor $|\hat{S}_s^{\alpha}(f - \alpha/2)|$ in (38) will act like a window of width on the order of B. For the code-division-multiplex example, B is roughly twice the chip rate α, and the window in (38) has width of $B/2$ and center at $f = f_0 + \alpha/2$, where f_0 is the carrier frequency of the direct sequence spread spectrum signals $\{s_i(t)\}$ (see Section F, Chapter 12).

Example: Multisensor Source Location

As another example of the preceding type, consider the problem of estimating the directional vector $\boldsymbol{P}$ associated with a narrow-band signal of interest $s(t)$ impinging on an array (not necessarily linear) of sensors, together with impinging noise and interferences $\boldsymbol{n}(t)$. Considering $s(t)$ and $\boldsymbol{n}(t)$ to be vectors of complex envelopes, the complex envelope of the received signal vector is given by

$$\boldsymbol{x}(t) = \boldsymbol{P}s(t) + \boldsymbol{n}(t)$$

to a close approximation for a sufficiently narrow-band signal $s(t)$. It is assumed that there is no correlation between $s(t)$ and $\boldsymbol{n}(t)$. If the signal exhibits cyclostationarity with cycle frequency α but the noise and interferences do not, then we have

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{R}}_{\boldsymbol{x}}^{\alpha}(\tau) = \hat{R}_s^{\alpha}(\tau)\boldsymbol{P}\boldsymbol{P}^T$$

and

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{S}}_{\boldsymbol{x}}^{\alpha}(f) = \hat{S}_s^{\alpha}(f)\boldsymbol{P}\boldsymbol{P}^T,$$

which are both rank-one matrices from which a scaled version of the directional vector can be obtained. (In this equation, $\boldsymbol{P}^T$ denotes the transpose conjugate of $\boldsymbol{P}$.) For example, this can be accomplished by singular-value decomposition to

extract the eigenvector corresponding to the largest eigenvalue of the matrix obtained from an estimate of either $\hat{R}_x^\alpha(\tau)$ for a fixed value of τ or $\hat{S}_x^\alpha(f)$ for a fixed value of f (or an average over a band of f) or more simply by selecting any column of such a matrix estimate.

Another type of system identification problem involves a periodically or almost periodically time-variant system described by

$$y(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} h(t, u)[x(u) - n(u)]\, du + m(t), \tag{40}$$

where $n(t)$ and $m(t)$ represent measurement errors, and $z(t) = x(t) - n(t)$ is the system excitation. It follows from formula (142) in Chapter 11 that

$$\hat{S}_{xy}^\alpha(f) = \sum_\beta \left[\hat{S}_x^{\alpha+\beta}\left(f - \frac{\beta}{2}\right) - \hat{S}_{xn}^{\alpha+\beta}\left(f - \frac{\beta}{2}\right)\right] G_\beta^*\left(f - \frac{\alpha}{2}\right) + \hat{S}_{xm}^\alpha(f), \tag{41}$$

where $\{G_\beta\}$ are the Fourier coefficients of the system function. The simplest case to interpret is that where the excitation $z(t)$ and measurement noises $n(t)$ and $m(t)$ are purely stationary, in which case (41) reduces to

$$\hat{S}_{xy}^\alpha(f) = \left[\hat{S}_x\left(f + \frac{\alpha}{2}\right) - \hat{S}_{xn}\left(f + \frac{\alpha}{2}\right)\right] G_{-\alpha}^*\left(f - \frac{\alpha}{2}\right), \quad \alpha \neq 0, \tag{42}$$

which can be reexpressed as

$$\hat{S}_{yx}^\alpha\left(f - \frac{\alpha}{2}\right) = G_\alpha(f)[\hat{S}_x(f - \alpha) - \hat{S}_{nx}(f - \alpha)], \qquad \alpha \neq 0. \tag{43}$$

Hence, if the input measurement noise is sufficiently small, then the system can be identified. In fact, in applications where the system excitation is under the experimenter's control, $n(t)$ is typically zero and (43) yields the cyclic system identification formula

$$G_\alpha(f) = \frac{\hat{S}_{yx}^\alpha(f - \alpha/2)}{\hat{S}_x(f - \alpha)}, \qquad \alpha \neq 0. \tag{44}$$

This formula is more generally applicable, as explained in the following. In applications where perfect identification as described earlier is not possible (in principle), the time-averaged squared error between the actual system output and the output of a model is minimized by the model specified by (9), and the resultant modeling error is given by (12). If the measured excitation is purely stationary, then (9) yields the formula (44) (including $\alpha = 0$), although the minimum modeling error (12) need not be zero (e.g., due to measurement noise). In fact, for this case in which the excitation is purely stationary, (12) can be simplified by substitution of (44). The result can be expressed as (exercise 4)

$$e_{\min} = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \hat{S}_y(f)\left[1 - \sum_\alpha \left|\hat{C}_{yx}^\alpha\left(f - \frac{\alpha}{2}\right)\right|^2\right] df, \tag{45a}$$

where

$$|\hat{C}_{yx}^\alpha(f)|^2 = \frac{|\hat{S}_{yx}^\alpha(f)|^2}{\hat{S}_y(f + \alpha/2)\hat{S}_x(f - \alpha/2)}. \tag{45b}$$

Thus, for each additional cycle frequency α used in the cyclic system-identification procedure, the amount by which the modeling error is decreased is determined by the closeness of the cyclic cross-coherence magnitude (45b) to unity (together with the power spectral density of the measured response).

It is quite interesting that in the absence of measurement noise, by using the spectral correlation method (44) for system identification there is theoretically no limit to the simultaneous resolvability of temporal and spectral fluctuations in the almost periodically time-variant system function

$$G(t,f) = \sum_{\beta} G_{\beta}(f+\beta)e^{i2\pi\beta t}. \tag{46}$$

This should be contrasted with the conclusions drawn in Chapter 8 of Part I regarding time-variant system identification for time variations that are not almost periodic.

D. CYCLIC PARAMETER ESTIMATION AND SYNCHRONIZATION

It can be surmised from the noise- and interference-tolerance properties of cyclic methods of estimation for filtering and system identification described in the preceding sections that cyclic methods for parameter estimation might also possess such properties of tolerance. In principle, any signal parameter that can be determined from the spectral correlation function for the signal can be estimated with spectral correlation measurements that potentially offer tolerance to noise and interference. This includes various parameters directly associated with periodicity, like pulse rates and phases, keying rates and phases, and carrier frequencies and phases. But this also includes parameters not directly associated with periodicity. For example, it follows from the spectral correlation formula for AM ((10) in Chapter 12),

$$\hat{S}_x^{\alpha}(f) = \tfrac{1}{4}\hat{S}_a(f)e^{i2\phi_0}, \qquad \alpha = 2f_0,$$

that the power spectral density of the amplitude time-series $a(t)$ can be estimated from the measured spectral correlation of the modulated time-series $x(t)$, using the formula

$$\hat{S}_a(f) = 4|\hat{S}_x^{\alpha}(f)|, \qquad \alpha = 2f_0. \tag{49}$$

Moreover, if $x(t)$ is corrupted by statistically independent noise or interference $n(t)$,

$$x(t) = a(t)\cos(2\pi f_0 t + \phi_0) + n(t),$$

that does not exhibit cyclostationarity at $\alpha = 2f_0$, then (49) still applies, since $\hat{S}_n^{\alpha}(f) \equiv 0$. Also, since

$$\hat{S}_x(f) = \tfrac{1}{4}\hat{S}_a(f-f_0) + \tfrac{1}{4}\hat{S}_a(f+f_0) + \hat{S}_n(f), \tag{50}$$

then (49) can be used to estimate the corrupting spectral density

$$\hat{S}_n(f) = \hat{S}_x(f) - [|\hat{S}_x^{\alpha}(f-f_0)| + |\hat{S}_x^{\alpha}(f+f_0)|], \qquad \alpha = 2f_0. \tag{51}$$

If the correct frequency f_0 is not known, it too can be estimated by searching for a peak in $|\hat{S}_x^\alpha(f)|$ at $f = 0$ as a function of α. Once f_0 has been accurately estimated, the phase ϕ_0 also can be estimated. Similar *spectral extraction* techniques apply to other types of modulated signals, such as PAM and ASK.

As another example, a technique based on the finite-average cyclic autocorrelation measurement

$$\frac{1}{T_0}\int_{t-T_0}^{t} x(t - T_0)x(t)e^{-i(4\pi f_0 t - 2\phi_0)}\,dt \tag{52}$$

has been proposed for removing the spectrum-spreading modulation to obtain an estimate (differentially encoded) of the data sequence in a spread-spectrum BPSK signal with carrier frequency f_0 (see Section F, Chapter 12). The method requires that the period of the spreading code be equal to the data symbol interval T_0 but does not require knowledge of the code itself. The method provides substantial tolerance to narrow-band interference [French and Gardner 1986].

Getting back to the general problem of parameter estimation for almost cyclostationary time-series, let us consider the general approach based on the principle of maximum likelihood (see Chapter 9, Part I). Maximization of the fraction-of-time likelihood function for a signal in additive independent noise, with respect to any signal parameter, is equivalent to maximization of any monotonic function of the ratio of the likelihood function for signal plus noise to the likelihood function for noise alone. It is well known that a monotonic function of this likelihood ratio for a weak random signal in white Gaussian noise on the time-interval $[t - T/2, t + T/2]$ is closely approximated by the quadratic form [Gardner 1982]

$$z(t) = \int_{-T/2}^{T/2}\int_{-T/2}^{T/2} \hat{R}_y\left(t - \frac{u+v}{2}, u - v\right)x(t - u)x(t - v)\,du\,dv, \tag{53}$$

where $y(t)$ is the random signal, assumed to be almost cyclostationary, and $x(t)$ is the noise-corrupted measurement of $y(t)$,

$$x(t) = y(t) + n(t).$$

Consequently, the weak-signal maximum-likelihood estimate of any signal parameter on which the limit autocorrelation $\hat{R}_y(t, \tau)$ depends can be determined by maximization of $z(t)$ given by (53) with respect to the parameter of interest. In order to relate this to spectral correlation, we use the fact that (53) can be reexpressed (by use of the Fourier series for $\hat{R}_y(t, \tau)$ and a change of variables of integration; see exercise 17, Chapter 3, Part I) as

$$z(t) = \sum_\alpha \int_{-T}^{T} \hat{R}_y^\alpha(\tau)^* R_{x_T}^\alpha(t, \tau)\,d\tau, \tag{54a}$$

where

$$R_{x_T}^\alpha(t, \tau) = \frac{1}{T}\int_{t-(T-|\tau|)/2}^{t+(T-|\tau|)/2} x\left(u + \frac{\tau}{2}\right)x\left(u - \frac{\tau}{2}\right)e^{-i2\pi\alpha u}\,du, \tag{54b}$$

which is the cyclic correlogram for the measurements. Application of Parseval's

relation to (54a) yields the alternative expression

$$z(t) = \sum_{\alpha} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \hat{S}_y^{\alpha}(f)^* S_{x_T}^{\alpha}(t, f)\, df, \tag{55a}$$

where

$$S_{x_T}^{\alpha}(t, f) = \frac{1}{T} X_T\left(t, f + \frac{\alpha}{2}\right) X_T^*\left(t, f - \frac{\alpha}{2}\right), \tag{55b}$$

which is the cyclic periodogram obtained from the finite-time Fourier transform

$$X_T(t, f) = \int_{t-T/2}^{t+T/2} x(u) e^{-i2\pi f u}\, du. \tag{55c}$$

In applications where the parameter of interest shows up at only one cycle frequency α and its negative (i.e., only one of the $\hat{S}_y^{\alpha}(f)$ and its complex conjugate are dependent on the parameter), maximization of $z(t)$ is equivalent to maximization of $z_{\alpha}(t)$ given by the one corresponding term in (55a) plus its complex conjugate,

$$z_{\alpha}(t) = \mathrm{Re}\left\{ \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \hat{S}_y^{\alpha}(f)^* S_{x_T}^{\alpha}(t, f)\, df \right\}. \tag{56}$$

This occurs, for example, in pulse-timing (frequency and phase) parameter estimation for signals such as PAM (see Section A, Chapter 12) with less than 100% excess bandwidth (bandwidth in excess of the Nyquist bandwidth, which is equal to half the pulse rate). It also occurs, for example, for carrier-phase or -frequency estimation for carrier-modulated signals such as AM and PM (see Sections A and C in Chapter 12). Insight is gained into these weak-signal maximum-likelihood parameter estimates when it is recognized that (56) is the output of a maximum-power spectral-line generator. To see this, we proceed as follows. Let $w(t)$ be a quadratic time-invariant transformation of $x(t)$ with kernel $k(u, v)$,

$$w(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} k(u, v) x(t - u) x(t - v)\, du\, dv. \tag{57}$$

The power in the spectral line in $w(t)$ at frequency α is given by

$$\hat{P}_w^{\alpha} = |\langle w(t) e^{-i2\pi\alpha t} \rangle|^2 = \left| \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} k(u, v) \hat{R}_x^{\alpha}(u - v) e^{-i\pi\alpha(u+v)}\, du\, dv \right|^2. \tag{58}$$

Application of Parseval's relation for the double Fourier transform yields the alternative expression (exercise 5)

$$\hat{P}_w^{\alpha} = \left| \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} K\left(f + \frac{\alpha}{2}, f - \frac{\alpha}{2}\right) \hat{S}_x^{\alpha}(f)\, df \right|^2, \tag{59}$$

where

$$K(\mu, \nu) \triangleq \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} k(u, v) e^{-i2\pi(\mu u - \nu v)}\, du\, dv. \tag{60}$$

The power spectral density of $w(t)$ with $x(t)$ equal to purely stationary Gaussian noise $n(t)$ is given by (exercise 5)

$$\hat{S}_w(\alpha) = 2 \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \left| K\left(f + \frac{\alpha}{2}, f - \frac{\alpha}{2}\right) \right|^2 \hat{S}_n\left(f + \frac{\alpha}{2}\right) \hat{S}_n\left(f - \frac{\alpha}{2}\right) df, \qquad \alpha \neq 0. \tag{61}$$

We want to determine the particular quadratic time-invariant transformation kernel $K(\mu, \nu)$ that maximizes the spectral line power $\hat{P}_w^\alpha$ subject to the constraint

$$\hat{S}_w(\alpha) \leqslant \text{constant} \tag{62}$$

on the spectral density of the output noise. It follows from the Cauchy-Schwarz inequality applied to (59), (61), and (62) (exercise 5) that the necessary and sufficient condition on the optimum spectral line generator is (using $\hat{S}_x^\alpha(f) \equiv \hat{S}_y^\alpha(f)$, since $\hat{S}_n^\alpha(f) \equiv 0$) $K(f + \alpha/2, f - \alpha/2) = K_\alpha(f + \alpha/2, f - \alpha/2)$, where

$$K_\alpha\left(f + \frac{\alpha}{2}, f - \frac{\alpha}{2}\right) \triangleq \frac{c_0 \hat{S}_y^\alpha(f)^*}{\hat{S}_n(f + \alpha/2)\hat{S}_n(f - \alpha/2)} \tag{63}$$

and c_0 is chosen to satisfy (62). For the case of white noise, $\hat{S}_n(f) = N_0$, (63) reduces to

$$K_\alpha\left(f + \frac{\alpha}{2}, f - \frac{\alpha}{2}\right) = c\hat{S}_y^\alpha(f)^*. \tag{64}$$

The power spectral density of the response of the spectral-line generator can be made to vanish at all frequencies except α if its kernel $K_\alpha(\mu, \nu)$ is set equal to zero for all $\mu - \nu \neq \alpha$,

$$K_\alpha(\mu, \nu) = 0, \qquad \mu - \nu \neq \alpha. \tag{65}$$

The two conditions (64) and (65) suggest the solution

$$K_\alpha(\mu, \nu) = c\hat{S}_y^\alpha\left(\mu - \frac{\alpha}{2}\right)^* \delta(\mu - \nu - \alpha), \tag{66a}$$

which can be inverse Fourier transformed to obtain

$$k_\alpha(u, v) = c\hat{R}_y^\alpha(u - v)^* e^{i\pi\alpha(u+v)}. \tag{66b}$$

Although (66) corresponds to an unstable transformation, when used on a finite segment of data this causes no problem. Thus, substitution of (66b) into (57) with the interval of integration reduced from $(-\infty, \infty)$ to $[-T/2, T/2]$ to accommodate the finite segment of $x(t)$ yields the optimum spectral-line generator

$$w_\alpha(t) = c\int_{-T/2}^{T/2}\int_{-T/2}^{T/2} \hat{R}_y^\alpha(u - v)^* e^{i\pi\alpha(u+v)} x(t - u)x(t - v)\, du\, dv, \tag{67}$$

which can be reexpressed (by a change of variables of integration) as

$$w_\alpha(t) = \int_{-T}^{T} \hat{R}_y^\alpha(\tau)^* R_{x_T}^\alpha(t, \tau)\, d\tau\, e^{i2\pi\alpha t}. \tag{68a}$$

Application of Parseval's relation to (68a) yields the alternative expression

$$w_\alpha(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \hat{S}_y^\alpha(f)^* S_{x_T}^\alpha(t, f)\, df\, e^{i2\pi\alpha t}. \tag{68b}$$

Comparison of the weak-signal maximum-likelihood single-cycle parameter estimation statistic (56) with the optimum spectral-line generator (68b) reveals that the former is simply the real part of the complex envelope of the latter. Hence, the maximum-likelihood parameter estimate is simply that value of the unknown parameter in $\hat{S}_y^\alpha(f)$ that maximizes the real part of the complex envelope

of the otherwise maximum-power spectral line. This interpretation is especially relevant to problems of timing parameter estimation for synchronization. In fact, it can be shown [Gardner 1986] that a popular synchronizer used in practice, the prefilter followed by a square-law nonlinearity followed by a band-pass postfilter and a phase-lock loop or similar self-adjusting phase tracker, is an approximate implementation of (56), maximized with respect to the timing phase parameter. Moreover, (56) determines the optimum prefilter. For example, for a PAM signal (as well as an ASK signal), the optimum prefilter, which maximizes the spectral line power, is a matched filter (exercise 6).

More generally, one of the most popular approaches to synchronizer design is to use some form of nonlinear device to regenerate a spectral line that has been annihilated by modulation, with random data, of a sine wave carrier or periodic pulse train, then to band-pass filter the nonlinearity output, and finally to use a phase-lock loop to lock onto the generated sine wave. For this general approach, when the type of nonlinearity is constrained to be quadratic, formula (68) prescribes the optimum quadratic transformation. Thus, spectral correlation plays a central conceptual role in the design and analysis of such synchronizers. Furthermore, it is shown in [Gardner 1986] that the spectral correlation at the input of the phase-lock loop characterizes the mean-square phase-jitter performance of the phase-lock loop in the tracking state.

E. CYCLIC DETECTION

We consider the problem of detecting the presence of a weak random signal of interest masked by noise and interference. We assume that the signal of interest exhibits cyclostationarity but that the noise is stationary and the interference can be modeled as stationary if there is no desire to exploit its cyclostationarity. If the signal is present in the observations $x(t)$, then we have

$$x(t) = y(t) + n(t); \tag{69a}$$

but if the signal is absent, then

$$x(t) = n(t). \tag{69b}$$

We also consider the following sliding threshold test for detection:

$$z(t) \underset{\text{no}}{\overset{\text{yes}}{\gtrless}} \gamma(t), \tag{70}$$

where $\gamma(t)$ is a threshold level, which may or may not change with time, and $z(t)$ is a detection statistic derived from the sliding segment of observations $\{x(u) : |t - u| < T/2\}$. A particularly useful type of detection statistic is that obtained from a quadratic transformation,

$$z(t) = \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} k(t, u, v)x(t - u)x(t - v)\, du\, dv. \tag{71}$$

An especially appropriate kernel for this quadratic transformation is the limit autocorrelation of the signal to be detected,

$$k(t, u, v) = \hat{R}_y\left(t - \frac{u + v}{2}, u - v\right), \tag{72}$$

since this yields an optimum detector according to several criteria [Gardner 1985, 1987b], including maximum SNR for signals in white Gaussian noise and maximum likelihood for weak signals in white Gaussian noise. In fact (71) with the kernel (72) is identical to the maximum-likelihood parameter-estimation statistic (53) and can therefore be reexpressed as either (54) or (55). Furthermore, for nonwhite Gaussian noise and interference, (55) can be generalized to

$$z(t) = \sum_{\alpha} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \left[\frac{\hat{S}_y^{\alpha}(f)^*}{\hat{S}_n(f + \alpha/2)\hat{S}_n(f - \alpha/2)}\right] S_{x_T}^{\alpha}(t, f)\, df. \tag{73}$$

This is an approximation that is close for long observation times (T much greater than the reciprocal of the width of the narrowest peaks or valleys in the noise and interference spectral density $\hat{S}_n(f)$). It can be derived by whitening the noise and interference by filtering $x(t)$ with a transfer function given by $1/\sqrt{\hat{S}_n(f)}$, in which case $\hat{S}_y^{\alpha}(f)$ gets replaced with

$$\hat{S}_y^{\alpha}(f) \longrightarrow \frac{\hat{S}_y^{\alpha}(f)}{[\hat{S}_n(f + \alpha/2)\hat{S}_n(f - \alpha/2)]^{1/2}} \tag{74}$$

and $\hat{S}_{x_T}^{\alpha}(t, f)$ gets replaced (as an approximation; compare with Section F, Chapter 2, Part I) with

$$S_{x_T}^{\alpha}(t, f) \longrightarrow \frac{\hat{S}_{x_T}^{\alpha}(t, f)}{[\hat{S}_n(f + \alpha/2)\hat{S}_n(f - \alpha/2)]^{1/2}}. \tag{75}$$

Comparison of the weak-signal long-observation-time maximum-likelihood detection statistic (73) with the maximum-power spectral-line generator (68b) (generalized for nonwhite noise) reveals that the former is simply a sum of down-converted versions of the latter, where the sum is over all cycle frequencies in the signal to be detected. Thus, the optimum detector generates all possible spectral lines at their maximum power level and then adds their complex envelopes together to form the optimum detection statistic. In practice, this *multicycle detector* requires an adaptive implementation or a search over a signal-phase parameter, since the phases of each term in (73) depend on this parameter. Specifically, if $\overline{S}_y^{\alpha}(f)$ is the spectral correlation function for $\overline{y}(t)$, but

$$y(t) = \overline{y}(t - t_0) \tag{76a}$$

is actually present in the observations, then

$$\overline{S}_y^{\alpha}(f) = \hat{S}_y^{\alpha}(f)e^{i2\pi\alpha t_0} \tag{76b}$$

and use of $\overline{S}_y^{\alpha}(f)$ in (73) can yield a severely suboptimum detection statistic, since the various terms in (73) can add up destructively rather than constructively when the signal is present. Thus, t_0 must be searched over or adaptively adjusted (if possible). When this is not practically feasible, there are two reasonable alternatives. One alternative is to sum the magnitudes of the terms in (73). This

yields an *optimized cyclogram*, which is a generalization of a *harmogram*, which itself is a generalization of the periodogram. The harmogram sums the magnitudes of the periodogram for all integer multiples $\alpha = k/T_0$ of a fundamental frequency $\alpha_0 = 1/T_0$ for all possible values of α_0 and is used for detection of additive wideband periodicity [Hinich 1982]. The cyclogram first generates spectral lines with a quadratic transformation of the data and then sums the squared magnitudes of the complex envelopes of these spectral lines over sets of values of α of interest. A suboptimum cyclogram would simply sum squared magnitudes of spectrally smoothed values of the cyclic periodogram $S^{\alpha}_{x_T}(t, f)_{\Delta f}$ over sets of values of α of interest.

Another reasonable alternative is to retain only the magnitude of a single term in (73) corresponding to some particular value of α. Use of the $\alpha = 0$ term in (73) yields what is called the *optimum radiometer*. This detector is optimum if the signal of interest is modeled as purely stationary, in which case no phase information is needed and no spectral correlation is exploited (see Appendix 3-2 in Part I). Applications where a *single-cycle detector* ($\alpha \neq 0$) can be superior to the optimum radiometer are those where the signal of interest is severely masked by unknown or changing noise and/or interference. The tolerance to noise and interference of spectral correlation measurements that is described in previous sections of this chapter and in the following paragraphs can be important in such applications.

The single-cycle detector can be manipulated into a form that is more convenient for implementation, as follows. The effect of the denominator in (73) can be approximated by spectral prewarping, especially if the signal of interest is weak so that

$$\hat{S}_x(f) \cong \hat{S}_n(f)$$

when the signal is present. Specifically, if a spectrally smoothed periodogram of $x(t)$ is used to approximate $\hat{S}_x(f)$, which either equals (when the signal is absent) or approximates $\hat{S}_n(f)$,

$$S_{x_T}(t, f)_{\Delta f} \cong \hat{S}_n(f),$$

then replacement of $\hat{S}^{\alpha}_y(f)$ with (74) and $S^{\alpha}_{x_T}(t, f)$ with (75) (and use of $\overline{S}^{\alpha}_y(f)$ in place of $\hat{S}^{\alpha}_y(f)$) yields the detection statistic

$$z_{\alpha}(t) \cong \left| \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \overline{S}^{\alpha}_y(f)^* \check{S}^{\alpha}_{x_T}(t, f)\, df \right|, \tag{77a}$$

where

$$\check{S}^{\alpha}_{x_T}(t, f) \triangleq \check{X}_T\left(t, f + \frac{\alpha}{2}\right)\check{X}^*_T\left(t, f - \frac{\alpha}{2}\right) \tag{77b}$$

and $\check{X}_T(t, f)$ is the prewarped finite-time Fourier transform

$$\check{X}_T(t, f) \triangleq \frac{X_T(t, f)}{S_{x_T}(t, f)_{\Delta f}}. \tag{77c}$$

Thus, if $\hat{S}^{\alpha}_y(f)$ is known (except for the phase t_0 in (76)), then (77) can be implemented. Since $\hat{S}^{\alpha}_y(f)$ can, for many types of modulated signals, be approximated

by a rectangle window function,[1] then we see that for such signals the detection statistic is, in essence, a spectrally smoothed cyclic periodogram of the spectrally prewarped observations and potentially offers tolerance to interference and noise that do not exhibit cyclostationarity with cycle frequency α, as explained in the remainder of this section.

A useful measure of detectability performance for the single-cycle detector (77) is the SNR that it maximizes, that is, the ratio of the output spectral-line power with input $x(t) = y(t) + n(t)$, which is given by (59), to the output noise and interference power in a band of width $1/T$ centered at the spectral-line frequency $f = \alpha$ with input $x(t) = n(t)$, which is given by (61) multiplied by $1/T$,

$$\mathrm{SNR}^{\alpha} \triangleq \frac{T\hat{P}_z^{\alpha}}{\hat{S}_z(\alpha)}, \qquad \alpha \neq 0. \tag{78}$$

The maximized value of (78) is obtained by substitution of (63) into (59) and (61); the result is

$$\mathrm{SNR}_{\max}^{\alpha} = \frac{T}{2}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{|\hat{S}_y^{\alpha}(f)|^2}{\hat{S}_n(f + \alpha/2)\hat{S}_n(f - \alpha/2)}\, df, \qquad \alpha \neq 0. \tag{79}$$

A comparable measure of performance for the optimum radiometer can be obtained as follows. The output spectral-line power at $\alpha = 0$ with $x(t) = y(t) + n(t)$ at the input is given by (59) with $\alpha = 0$,

$$\hat{P}_{z|y+n}^{0} = [(\hat{P}_y^0)^{1/2} + (\hat{P}_n^0)^{1/2}]^2, \tag{80a}$$

where

$$\hat{P}_y^0 = \left[\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \hat{S}_y(f)K(f,f)\, df\right]^2 \tag{80b}$$

$$\hat{P}_n^0 = \left[\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \hat{S}_n(f)K(f,f)\, df\right]^2. \tag{80c}$$

The output noise and interference power in a band of width $1/T$ centered at $f = 0$ with input $x(t) = n(t)$ can be obtained from the output spectral density, which is given by (exercise 7)

$$\hat{S}_z(f) = \hat{P}_n^0\delta(f) + S(f), \tag{81a}$$

where

$$S(0) = 2\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} [\hat{S}_n(f)]^2|K(f,f)|^2\, df. \tag{81b}$$

Thus, the output power in the band of width $1/T$ at $f = 0$ is approximated by

$$\hat{P}_{z|n} \cong \hat{P}_n^0 + \frac{1}{T}S(0). \tag{82}$$

[1] For many modulation types, $\hat{S}_y^{\alpha}(f)$ exhibits a main lobe whose phase is independent of f. However, some other modulation types exhibit a multiplicity of adjacent lobes with phases that are independent of f except for the sign of an additive phase term whose magnitude is $\pi/2$ radians. In such cases, doubling the phase of $\check{S}_{x_T}^{\alpha}(t,f)$ after some spectral smoothing but before integration over a broad range of f can enhance the detection statistic.

Unlike the results for $\alpha \neq 0$, there is output spectral-line power due to the noise and interference, whether or not the signal is present. Thus, we cannot give the optimum radiometer the interpretation of being a spectral line detector like the single-cycle ($\alpha \neq 0$) detector. If the noise and interference power $\hat{P}_n^0$ is known, then we can subtract its effect from the detector output and obtain the following measure of SNR:[2]

$$\text{SNR}^0 = \frac{[(\hat{P}^0_{z|y+n})^{1/2} - (\hat{P}^0_n)^{1/2}]^2}{\hat{P}_{z|n} - \hat{P}^0_n} = \frac{T\hat{P}^0_y}{S(0)}. \tag{83}$$

The Cauchy–Schwarz inequality can be used to show that a necessary and sufficient condition for maximization of (83), with (80b) and (81b) substituted in, is $K(f, f) = K_0(f, f)$, where

$$K_0(f,f) \triangleq \frac{c_0 \hat{S}_y(f)}{[\hat{S}_n(f)]^2}, \tag{84}$$

which is simply (63) evaluated at $\alpha = 0$ and is therefore implemented by the optimum radiometer, (73) with $\alpha = 0$ or (77) with $\alpha = 0$. The resultant maximum value of SNR^0 is given by

$$\text{SNR}^0_{\max} = \frac{T}{2}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \left[\frac{\hat{S}_y(f)}{\hat{S}_n(f)}\right]^2 df, \tag{85}$$

which is simply (79) with $\alpha = 0$.

It can be shown using (79), (85), and $|\hat{C}^\alpha_y(f)| \leq 1$ that

$$\text{SNR}^\alpha \leq \text{SNR}^0. \tag{86}$$

Thus, it would appear that the single-cycle detector ($\alpha \neq 0$) can never perform as well as the optimum radiometer. However, this conclusion applies only when the noise and interference power $\hat{P}_n^0$ is known so that its effect can be subtracted out, as reflected in (83). When $\hat{P}_n^0$ is unknown or, worse yet, changes unpredictably, SNR^0 in (83) is no longer an appropriate measure of performance. The problem is that the threshold level in the detection test (70) cannot be properly set when $\hat{P}_n^0$ is unknown or changing. In general, the threshold level should be set somewhere in between the time-averaged values of the detector outputs with signal present and signal absent. To simplify the argument, let us consider the asymptotic ($T \to \infty$) case (in which the time-average operation becomes superfluous). In this case the appropriate threshold level γ_α can be expressed as

$$\gamma_\alpha = \lambda \lim_{T\to\infty} [z_\alpha(t)|\text{yes}] + (1 - \lambda) \lim_{T\to\infty} [z_\alpha(t)|\text{no}], \tag{87a}$$

where $0 < \lambda < 1$. It follows from the single-cycle detection statistic (obtained from (73)),

$$z_\alpha(t) \triangleq \left| \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{\overline{S}^\alpha_y(f)^* S^\alpha_{x_T}(t,f)}{\overline{S}_n(f + \alpha/2)\overline{S}_n(f - \alpha/2)}\, df \right|, \tag{87b}$$

[2] This measure of detector SNR is equivalent to a more general measure known as *deflection* (Appendix 3-2, Part I), which is commonly used for weak-signal detection problems [Gardner 1985]. Deflection has been evaluated for the optimum multicycle detector, optimum radiometer, and several single-cycle detectors for PSK signals in [Gardner and Paura 1987].

that (exercise 8)

$$\lim_{T\to\infty} z_\alpha(t) = \left| \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{\overline{S}_y^\alpha(f)^* \hat{S}_x^\alpha(f)}{\overline{S}_n(f + \alpha/2)\overline{S}_n(f - \alpha/2)}\, df \right|, \tag{88a}$$

where $\overline{S}_n(f)$ is the estimate of the noise and interference spectral density used by the detector and similarly for $\overline{S}_y^\alpha(f)$, which is assumed to be given by (76b). For signal present, $z(t)|$yes, we have

$$\hat{S}_x^\alpha(f) = \overline{S}_y^\alpha(f) e^{-i2\pi\alpha t_0} + \hat{S}_n^\alpha(f), \tag{88b}$$

and for signal absent, $z(t)|$no, we have

$$\hat{S}_x^\alpha(f) = \hat{S}_n^\alpha(f). \tag{88c}$$

Thus, (87) can be expressed as

$$\begin{aligned} \gamma_\alpha = \lambda & \left| \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{|\overline{S}_y^\alpha(f)|^2 e^{-i2\pi\alpha t_0} + \overline{S}_y^\alpha(f)^* \hat{S}_n^\alpha(f)}{\overline{S}_n(f + \alpha/2)\overline{S}_n(f - \alpha/2)}\, df \right| \\ & + (1 - \lambda) \left| \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{\overline{S}_y^\alpha(f)^* \hat{S}_n^\alpha(f)}{\overline{S}_n(f + \alpha/2)\overline{S}_n(f - \alpha/2)}\, df \right|. \end{aligned} \tag{89}$$

For the single-cycle detector, we have

$$\hat{S}_n^\alpha(f) \equiv 0, \qquad \alpha \neq 0,$$

assuming that the noise and interference do not exhibit cyclostationarity at the cycle frequency α of the signal of interest. Consequently, (89) reduces to

$$\gamma_\alpha = \lambda \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{|\overline{S}_y^\alpha(f)|^2}{\overline{S}_n(f + \alpha/2)\overline{S}_n(f - \alpha/2)}\, df, \qquad \alpha \neq 0, \tag{90}$$

which is independent[3] of the unknown and possibly changing power level of $n(t)$, as reflected in $\hat{S}_n(f)$. However, for the optimum radiometer, we have

$$\gamma_0 = \lambda \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \left[\frac{\overline{S}_y(f)}{\overline{S}_n(f)} \right]^2 df + \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{\overline{S}_y(f)\hat{S}_n(f)}{[\overline{S}_n(f)]^2}\, df, \tag{91}$$

which is strongly dependent on $\hat{S}_n(f)$ and therefore on the unknown or changing power level of $n(t)$, especially for weak signals, for which the second term in (91) can dominate.

In conclusion, there is a trade-off in detector design between minimization of variability about the signal-present and signal-absent power levels at the detector output, as measured by SNR, and minimization of variability of the power levels themselves. When the power level of the signal of interest is known but that of the noise and interference is highly variable, the tolerance to this variability offered by the single-cycle detector can be an attractive alternative to the sensitivity to this variability exhibited by the radiometer. It has been shown [Gardner and Paura 1987] that for sufficiently long observation time (depending on the amount

[3] Since $\overline{S}_n$ is an estimate of the unknown and possibly changing $\hat{S}_n(f)$, then it is known to the detector, whereas $\hat{S}_n(f)$ is not. If the estimate is too high (or too low), then its use in (87b) will result in a detection statistic that is too low (or too high), but the formula (90) automatically adjusts the threshold level to accommodate this.

of variability in either broadband noise or narrowband interference), the single-cycle detector will, in principle, outperform the radiometer.

Another approach to illustrating the tolerance of single-cycle detectors to an unknown or changing noise power level is to derive the detector that jointly estimates the noise power level and detects the signal. Using the maximum-likelihood criterion for the case of a weak cyclostationary signal in additive white Gaussian noise yields the same multicycle detector discussed in this section, (71)–(72), except that the $\alpha = 0$ term is modified by subtraction of a term representing the estimated noise power. Thus, the single-cycle detector obtained from one of the $\alpha \neq 0$ terms is the same whether or not the noise power level is unknown and estimated. As a result, it can be shown that for sufficiently broadband signals, the single-cycle detector will, in principle, outperform the radiometer ($\alpha = 0$ term) that uses the maximum-likelihood noise-power estimate.

Example: ***Signal Interception***

A potentially fruitful application of cycle detection is the problem of interception of spread-spectrum signals masked by multiple narrow-band interference and broadband noise [Gardner 1987b]. Detection of signals of interest whose cycle frequencies are known (e.g., signals whose chip rate or hop rate is known) can potentially be accomplished with single-cycle detectors such as (77), whereas detection of signals of interest whose modulation types are known but whose particular cycle frequencies are unknown can potentially be accomplished by measuring the spectrally smoothed spectral correlation function of the observations, possibly preprocessed with a narrowband interference canceller (which can be interpreted as an approximation of (77) in which $\widehat{S}_y^\alpha$ is replaced by a window with variable location f'), over appropriate ranges of the parameters f' and α, and looking for recognizable patterns of spectral correlation. Examples of these patterns are given in Chapter 12 for various types of modulation. The distinct patterns exhibited by certain classes of signal types can be exploited not only for detection but also for signal classification, and these tasks can in principle be performed even when the signals of interest are severely masked by spectrally overlapping interferers and noise, provided that the observation interval is sufficiently long.

F. CYCLIC ARRAY PROCESSING

We consider the problem of adaptively adjusting the magnitudes and phases of a set of narrowband signals received by an array of sensors such that their addition enhances a desired signal impinging on the array while suppressing impinging noise and interfering signals. For this purpose we consider the model

$$\boldsymbol{x}(t) = \boldsymbol{P}s(t) + \boldsymbol{n}(t) \tag{92}$$

for the N-vector of complex envelopes of corrupted signals received by an array of N sensors. The model $\boldsymbol{P}s(t)$ for the desired-signal component of $\boldsymbol{x}(t)$ is an accurate approximation when $s(t)$ has sufficiently narrow relative bandwidth that the directional characteristics of the desired impinging signal and the sensors are nearly independent of frequency throughout the signal band. In this case, these directional characteristics are reflected in the complex directional vector

$\boldsymbol{P}$. The component $\boldsymbol{n}(t)$ in the model represents both additive noise and interfering signals. It is assumed that there is no correlation between $s(t)$ and $\boldsymbol{n}(t)$. The magnitudes and phases of the N received signals $\{x_k\}_1^N$ are adjusted and the resultant signals are added together to form an estimate of $s(t)$,

$$\hat{s}(t) = \boldsymbol{G}\boldsymbol{x}(t) = \sum_{k=1}^{N} G_k x_k(t). \tag{93}$$

The complex N-vector (row) of weights $\boldsymbol{G}$ in this estimate models the magnitude and phase adjustments.

In order to emphasize the relationship between this array processing problem and the filtering problem considered in Sections A and B, we let

$$y(t) = s(t) \tag{94a}$$

$$\hat{y}(t) = \hat{s}(t). \tag{94b}$$

Then the problem of interest is to find the set of weights $\boldsymbol{G}$ that minimizes the time-averaged squared error between the signal and its estimate,

$$e \triangleq \langle |y(t) - \hat{y}(t)|^2 \rangle. \tag{95}$$

It is easily shown (see Chapter 9, for example) that the optimum weight vector $\boldsymbol{G}_0$ is given by

$$\boldsymbol{G}_0' = \hat{\boldsymbol{R}}_{\boldsymbol{x}}^{-}{}'\hat{\boldsymbol{R}}_{y\boldsymbol{x}}, \tag{96}$$

where

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{R}}_{\boldsymbol{x}} = \langle \boldsymbol{x}(t)\boldsymbol{x}^T(t) \rangle \tag{97a}$$

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{R}}_{y\boldsymbol{x}} = \langle y(t)\boldsymbol{x}^*(t) \rangle. \tag{97b}$$

Use of $y(t) = s(t)$ and the model (92) yields

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{R}}_{y\boldsymbol{x}} = \hat{R}_s(0)\boldsymbol{P}^* \tag{98}$$

and therefore

$$\boldsymbol{G}_0' = \hat{R}_s(0)\hat{\boldsymbol{R}}_{\boldsymbol{x}}^{-}{}'\boldsymbol{P}^*. \tag{99}$$

Unfortunately, this optimum weight vector cannot be determined in practice without knowledge of $s(t)$ throughout a training period during which the correlation $\hat{\boldsymbol{R}}_{y\boldsymbol{x}} = \hat{\boldsymbol{R}}_{s\boldsymbol{x}}$ can be measured. Although this problem can be circumvented when the direction of arrival of $s(t)$ is known (in which case the problem is not to steer a beam in the receiving pattern but just to steer nulls in the receiving pattern in the unknown directions of arrival of interfering signals—see [Widrow and Stearns 1985]), there are many situations in which this direction is not known. Nevertheless, if $s(t)$ is cyclostationary with known cycle frequency α, and $\boldsymbol{n}(t)$ is not cyclostationary with the same cycle frequency, then the optimum weight (99) can, in principle, be determined to within a scale factor (which has no effect on the beam and null pattern of the array) even when $s(t)$ and its direction of arrival are unknown. To see this, we replace the training signal $y(t)$ in (94a) with

$$y(t) = x_m(t + \tau)e^{-i2\pi\alpha t}, \tag{100}$$

where $x_m(t)$ is any one of the N received signals. Then we have

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{R}}_{yx} = \hat{\boldsymbol{R}}^{\alpha}_{x_m x}(\tau)e^{i\pi\alpha\tau}. \tag{101}$$

But since $\hat{\boldsymbol{R}}^{\alpha}_{x_m n}(\tau) \equiv \mathbf{0}$, then

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{R}}_{yx} = \hat{R}^{\alpha}_{s}(\tau)e^{i\pi\alpha\tau}\boldsymbol{P}_m\boldsymbol{P}^* \tag{102}$$

and therefore (96) yields

$$\boldsymbol{G}_0' = \hat{R}^{\alpha}_{s}(\tau)e^{i\pi\alpha\tau}\boldsymbol{P}_m\hat{\boldsymbol{R}}_x^{-1}\boldsymbol{P}^*. \tag{103}$$

Comparison of (103) with (99) reveals that use of the appropriately time- and frequency-shifted version of one of the received signals (100) in place of the unavailable desired signal $s(t)$ yields the scaled optimum weight vector. The reason for this is that by appropriate choice of α and τ in

$$y(t) = \boldsymbol{P}_m s(t + \tau)e^{-i2\pi\alpha t} + n_m(t + \tau)e^{-i2\pi\alpha t}, \tag{104}$$

the signal component in $y(t)$ will be correlated with $s(t)$ in $\boldsymbol{x}(t)$, but the noise and interference component in $y(t)$ will be uncorrelated with both $s(t)$ and $\boldsymbol{n}(t)$ in $\boldsymbol{x}(t)$.

Using the same gradient-descent approach as that described in Section B for deriving algorithms for adaptive filtering, we can derive the algorithm

$$\boldsymbol{G}_k^{n+1} = \boldsymbol{G}_k^n + \mu\langle[y(t + nT) - \hat{y}(t)]\boldsymbol{x}_k^*(t + nT)\rangle_T \tag{105}$$

for adaptive array processing, in which $y(t)$ is given by (100) and $\hat{y}(t)$ is given by (93) (with $\boldsymbol{G}$ replaced by $\boldsymbol{G}^n$) and (94b). Because of the strong undesired component $n_m(t + \tau)e^{-i2\pi\alpha t}$ in the training signal $y(t)$ (104), the gradient averaging interval T cannot be made short. For example, the Widrow-Hoff LMS algorithm is not well suited to this application (see [Gardner 1984]).

It should be pointed out that the essence of this approach to adaptive multisensor signal extraction is the same as that for the approach to multisensor source location described in Section C. Specifically, the essence of these approaches is the ability to transform a set of measurements so as to render the undesired components in the transformed set uncorrelated with the undesired (and desired) components in the original set, while maintaining correlation between the desired components in the original and transformed sets. The transformation that accomplishes this is a frequency shift (and possibly a time shift), provided that the desired signal components exhibit cyclostationarity at a cycle frequency at which the undesired components do not exhibit cyclostationarity. As a matter of fact, this is the essence of many of the cyclic signal processing methods described in this chapter.

The effect of minimizing the error (95), in which the training signal replacement $y(t)$ in (100) is used, is to restore the spectral coherence of the array output $\hat{y}(t) = \hat{s}(t)$ in (93), which has been reduced by the corruption of $s(t)$ by the noise and interference $\mathbf{n}(t)$ in (92). Simulations of this Spectral COherence REstoral (SCORE) technique for signal extraction using a recursive least squares algorithm have demonstrated excellent beam and null steering performance for rejection of a single interfering signal using a two-element array [Agee et al. 1987].

G. SUMMARY

In this chapter, the potential for useful application of the theory of spectral correlation is illustrated by further development of the theory for specific types of statistical inference and decision problems. These include the problems of optimal extraction of cyclostationary time-series from corrupted measurements by linear (almost) periodically time-variant filtering and sensor array processing, adaptive extraction using iterative algorithms for adaptation of such filters and sensor arrays, time-invariant and (almost) periodically time-variant system identification with tolerance to corrupted measurements, signal source location and signal-parameter estimation and synchronization for cyclostationary time-series, and detection and classification of modulated signals buried in noise and further masked by interference. For many of these problems, it is seen that the spectral correlation characteristics of time-series that exhibit cyclostationarity can be exploited to obtain tolerance to noise and interference. As in preceding chapters, the avoidance of unnecessarily abstract probabilistic concepts and models in the development of theory in this chapter is unconventional.

EXERCISES

1. **(a)** Verify the necessary and sufficient condition (8) for the optimum cyclic filter. *Hint:* Replace t with $t + u/2$ in the orthogonality condition (7), and substitute (5). Then use the relation

$$\hat{R}_{wz}(\tau) = g_\beta(\tau) \otimes \hat{R}_{vz}(\tau)$$

for $w(t) = g_\beta(t) \otimes v(t)$, where $v(t) = x(t)e^{i2\pi\beta t}$ and $z(t) = x(t)e^{i2\pi\alpha t}$.

(b) Derive the necessary and sufficient condition (9) from (8).

(c) Verify the optimum-performance formula (11). *Hint:* Substitute (5) into (10), and then proceed analogously to the hint in (a).

(d) Derive the optimum-performance formula (12) from (11).

2. **(a)** Verify that (14) is equivalent to the necessary and sufficient condition (9). *Hint:* Substitute (13), its counterpart for $R_x(t, u)$, and

$$h(t, u) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \sum_{\beta} G_\beta(f)e^{i2\pi\beta u}e^{i2\pi f(t-u)}\,df$$

into (14), and simplify the result.

(b) Verify that (15) is equivalent to the optimum-performance formula (12). *Hint:* Proceed analogously to the hint in (a).

3. Show that the gradient of the error (2) is given by (16). *Hint:*

(a) First consider the error function defined by

$$e \triangleq \langle |y(t) - \hat{y}(t)|^2 \rangle,$$

where

$$\hat{y}(t) \triangleq \boldsymbol{W}'\boldsymbol{X}(t),$$

and

$$\boldsymbol{W} = \boldsymbol{A} + i\boldsymbol{B}$$
$$\boldsymbol{X}(t) = \boldsymbol{C} + i\boldsymbol{D}$$

are complex-valued N-vectors. The gradient vector with respect to the complex vector $\boldsymbol{W}$ is defined by

$$\nabla e \triangleq \nabla e_A + i\nabla e_B,$$

where

$$\nabla e_A \triangleq \left\{\frac{\partial e}{\partial A_1}, \frac{\partial e}{\partial A_2}, \cdots, \frac{\partial e}{\partial A_N}\right\}$$

and similarly for ∇e_B. Use this definition to show that

$$\nabla e = 2\langle[y(t) - \hat{y}(t)]\, \boldsymbol{X}^*(t)\rangle.$$

(b) Formally let $\boldsymbol{W}$ and $\boldsymbol{X}(t)$ become infinite dimensional vectors with elements given by

$$\boldsymbol{W} = \{g_\beta(v)\}$$

$$\boldsymbol{X}(t) = \{x(t - v)e^{i2\pi\beta(t-v)}\},$$

which are jointly indexed by the discrete parameter β and the continuous parameter v. Then the inner product defining $\hat{y}(t)$ formally becomes

$$\boldsymbol{W}'\boldsymbol{X}(t) = \sum_\beta \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} g_\beta(v)x(t - v)e^{i2\pi\beta(t-v)}\, dv$$

as desired (see (5)). Use these formal interpretations of $\boldsymbol{W}$ and $\boldsymbol{X}(t)$ to show that the gradient derived in (a), evaluated at $\beta = \alpha$ and $v = \tau$, becomes (16).

4. (a) Derive the optimum-performance formula (45) from (12) by substitution of (44).

(b) Prove that the integrand in (45a) is the spectral density of the system modeling error $e(t) = y(t) - \hat{y}(t)$. *Hint:* Use the general input-output spectral-correlation relations (140) and (142) from Chapter 11 in the expression

$$\hat{S}_e(f) = \hat{S}_y(f) + \hat{S}_{\hat{y}}(f) - \hat{S}_{y\hat{y}}(f) - \hat{S}_{\hat{y}y}(f).$$

5. (a) Derive the spectral-line power formula (59) from (58). *Hint:* Use Parseval's relation

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} k(u, v)h^*(u, v)\, du\, dv = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} K(f, \nu)H^*(f, \nu)\, df\, d\nu$$

and show that for

$$h(u, v) = \hat{R}_x^{-\alpha}(u - v)e^{i\pi\alpha(u+v)}$$

the double Fourier transform (see (60)) is given by

$$H(f, \nu) = \hat{S}_x^{-\alpha}\left(f - \frac{\alpha}{2}\right)\delta(f - \nu - \alpha).$$

(b) Verify the spectral density formula (61). *Hint:* Use (46), (47), and (60) in Chapter 5, Part I, with $f = 0$, and show that

$$M(\nu, \mu) = K_0\left(\mu + \frac{\nu}{2}, \mu - \frac{\nu}{2}\right),$$

and, if $k_0(u, v) = k_0(v, u)$,

$$M(\nu, -\mu) = M(\nu, \mu).$$

(c) Use the Cauchy–Schwarz inequality

$$\left|\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} A(f)B^*(f)\, df\right|^2 \leq \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |A(f)|^2\, df \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |B(f)|^2\, df,$$

for which equality holds if and only if $A(f) = c_0B(f)$ for any constant c_0, to

verify that (63) maximizes (59) subject to the constraint (61)–(62). *Hint:* Define $A(f)$ and $B(f)$ by

$$A(f) \triangleq K\left(f + \frac{\alpha}{2}, f - \frac{\alpha}{2}\right)\left[\hat{S}_n\left(f + \frac{\alpha}{2}\right)\hat{S}_n\left(f - \frac{\alpha}{2}\right)\right]^{1/2}$$

$$B(f) \triangleq \frac{\hat{S}_x^{\alpha}(f)^*}{[\hat{S}_n(f + \alpha/2)\hat{S}_n(f - \alpha/2)]^{1/2}}.$$

(d) Use (c) to evaluate the maximum value of spectral-line power (59), subject to the constraint (62), for constant $= c$.

6. (a) Show that for a PAM signal $y(t)$, for which

$$\hat{S}_y^{\alpha}(f) = Q\left(f + \frac{\alpha}{2}\right)Q^*\left(f - \frac{\alpha}{2}\right)e^{-i2\pi\alpha t_0}$$

(for α equal to integer multiples of the pulse rate $1/T_0$), the output, (68), of the maximal-power spectral-line generator is given by

$$w_{\alpha}(t) = \frac{1}{T}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \{q(-v) \otimes [x(v)Tu_T(t - v)]\}^2 e^{i2\pi\alpha(t + t_0 - v)}\, dv.$$

Hint: Express (68b) as

$$w_{\alpha}(t) = \frac{1}{T}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty}\left[Q^*\left(f + \frac{\alpha}{2}\right)X_T\left(t, f + \frac{\alpha}{2}\right)\right]\left[Q^*\left(f - \frac{\alpha}{2}\right)X_T\left(t, f - \frac{\alpha}{2}\right)\right]^* df\, e^{i2\pi\alpha(t + t_0)}$$

and apply Parseval's relation and the convolution theorem.

(b) Use the result of (a) to show that $w_{\alpha}(t)$ is obtained by band-pass filtering the square of the matched-filtered[4] segment of data $x(v)Tu_T(t - v)$, where the band-pass filter has center frequency α and bandwidth on the order of $1/T$ (assuming T greatly exceeds the width of the pulse $q(t)$).

(c) Show that for the maximum-likelihood estimator (55), the band-pass filter in (b) is replaced with a comb filter (a parallel bank of band-pass filters with center frequencies equal to the integer multiples of the pulse rate and bandwidths on the order of $1/T$).

7. Show that the spectral density in the vicinity of $f = 0$ at the output of a radiometer is given by (81). *Hint:* Use (46), (47), (50), (51), (59), and (60) in Chapter 5, Part I, with $f = 0$ there (analogous to exercise 5b).

8. (a) Verify the limit (88a). *Hint:* Treat the factor multiplying $S_{x_T}^{\alpha}(t, f)$ as a window function and apply the definition (43) in Chapter 11 of the limit cyclic spectral density in terms of a spectrally smoothed periodogram.

(b) Consider an AM signal with rectangular spectral density

$$\hat{S}_y(f) = \begin{cases} S_0, & ||f| - f_0| < B/2 \\ 0, & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

and white noise with spectral density $\hat{S}_n(f) = N_0$. Evaluate the thresholds (90) and (91) for $\overline{S}_n(f) = \overline{N}_0$ using

$$|\hat{S}_y^{\alpha}(f)| = \begin{cases} S_0, & |f| < B/2 \\ 0, & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

[4] The impulse-response function of a matched filter is the time-reversed version of the signal it is matched to, which in this case is $q(t)$.

for $\alpha = 2f_0$. Then let $\lambda = \frac{1}{4}$, $S_0/\overline{N}_0 = \frac{1}{10}$, and let $N_0/\overline{N}_0$ vary from $\frac{1}{2}$ to 2 and evaluate the variation of the desired threshold for the radiometer, (91), and contrast this with the invariance of the desired threshold for the single-cycle detector, (90).

9. **(a)** Let $y_\pm(t) = z(t)e^{\pm i\pi\alpha t}$ and $x_\pm(t) = z(t)e^{\mp i\pi\alpha t}$, and consider the two filtered waveforms

$$\hat{y}_\pm(t) = h_\pm(t) \otimes x_\pm(t).$$

Use (3) to show that the product of optimum-filter transfer functions that minimize the two errors $\langle [y_\pm(t) - \hat{y}_\pm(t)]^2 \rangle$ is given by

$$H_+(f)H_-(f) = \frac{|\hat{S}_x^\alpha(f)|^2}{\hat{S}_x(f + \alpha/2)\hat{S}_x(f - \alpha/2)}.$$

(b) Use the result of (a) to propose a means for making a tracking measurement of the magnitude autocoherence function for $x(t)$ using a pair of adaptive filters, such as (18).

10. **(a)** Use (10) in Chapter 12 to show that for an AM signal in additive stationary noise (9) reduces to the following three simultaneous equations:

$$\begin{aligned}
&\hat{S}_a(f - f_0) + \hat{S}_a(f + f_0) \\
&\quad = G_0(f)[\hat{S}_a(f + f_0) + \hat{S}_a(f - f_0) + 4\hat{S}_n(f)] + G_{2f_0}(f)\hat{S}_a(f - f_0)e^{-i2\phi_0} \\
&\qquad + G_{-2f_0}(f)\hat{S}_a(f + f_0)e^{i2\phi_0} \\
&\hat{S}_a(f \mp f_0)e^{\pm i2\phi_0} \\
&\quad = G_{\pm 2f_0}(f)[\hat{S}_a(f \mp f_0) + \hat{S}_a(f \mp 3f_0) + 4\hat{S}_n(f \mp 2f_0)] \\
&\qquad + G_0(f)\hat{S}_a(f \mp f_0)e^{\pm i2\phi_0}.
\end{aligned}$$

(b) Assume that

$$\hat{S}_a(f) = 0, \qquad |f| \geq f_0$$

and

$$\hat{S}_n(f) = N_0[\delta(f - f_*) + \delta(f + f_*)]$$

and show that for $f_0 < f_* < 2f_0$

$$G_0(f_*) = 0$$

$$G_\beta(f_*) = \begin{cases} e^{i2\phi_0}, & \beta = 2f_0 \\ \text{indeterminate}, & \beta = -2f_0 \end{cases}$$

$$G_\beta(-f_*) = \begin{cases} \text{indeterminate}, & \beta = 2f_0 \\ e^{-i2\phi_0}, & \beta = -2f_0. \end{cases}$$

Then show that the values of $G_{2f_0}(-f_*)$ and $G_{-2f_0}(f_*)$ are irrelevant since the spectral components they multiply are zero.

(c) Generalize (b) for a bandlimited bandpass interference $n(t)$, for which $\hat{S}_n(f)$ is finite but much larger than $\hat{S}_a(f \pm f_0)$ at all frequencies where $\hat{S}_n(f) \neq 0$.

11. Show that for a sufficiently weak signal $y(t)$ in (69a), the formula (79) for the maximized SNR is closely approximated by

$$\text{SNR}_{\max}^\alpha \cong \frac{T}{2}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |\hat{C}_x^\alpha(f)|^2 \, df. \tag{106}$$

15

CYCLIC FRACTION-OF-TIME PROBABILISTIC ANALYSIS

The purpose of this chapter is to introduce the concept of a cyclic fraction-of-time probabilistic model for a time-series from a periodic or almost periodic phenomenon and to develop this concept for the purpose of quantifying the resolution, leakage, and reliability properties of measured cyclic spectra. The approach taken is a generalization, for time-series that exhibit cyclostationarity, of the approach taken in Chapter 5 of Part I for purely stationary time-series. That is, an empirically motivated approach based on temporal measures of bias and variability and underlying fraction-of-time distributions is used to develop formulas for quantitative prediction of resolution, leakage, and reliability effects. Like most of the results in previous chapters of Part II, the results in this chapter are novel in that they involve new concepts not required in the theory for constant phenomena presented in Part I. Furthermore, the conceptual link between the more common probabilistic theory of stochastic processes (see [Gardner 1985]) and the deterministic theory presented here is somewhat weaker for almost periodic phenomena than it is for constant phenomena because the intuitively satisfying Wold's isomorphism between an ensemble of random samples and a single time-series cannot be extended to almost cyclostationary time-series. Although it can be generalized, the generalization is more abstract. Also, the Gaussian stationary fraction-of-time probabilistic model (from Part I) for a time-series that exhibits cyclostationarity is not appropriate. Consequently, the results in Chapters 5 and 7 in Part I are not directly applicable to periodic or almost periodic phenomena. Nevertheless, we shall see that a generalization of the fraction-of-time probabilistic model used in Part I to a Guassian cyclic fraction-of-time probabilistic model, which is indeed appropriate, enables the basic approach taken in Part I to be generalized, and results are similar.

A. CYCLIC FRACTION-OF-TIME PROBABILISTIC MODEL

1. Cyclic Fraction-of-Time Distributions

Let us begin by briefly reviewing the concept of *fraction-of-time distribution* (FOTD) for a time-series from a constant phenomenon. The joint FOTD for the set of variables

$$\boldsymbol{x}(t) \triangleq [x(t + t_1), x(t + t_2), x(t + t_3), \ldots, x(t + t_M)]', \tag{1a}$$

which is denoted by

$$F_{\boldsymbol{x}}^0(\boldsymbol{y}) \equiv \text{probability that } \{x(t + t_1) < y_1 \quad \text{and} \quad x(t + t_2) < y_2 \quad \text{and} \quad \ldots \quad \text{and} \quad x(t + t_M) < y_M\}, \tag{1b}$$

is defined by

$$F_{\boldsymbol{x}}^0(\boldsymbol{y}) \triangleq \lim_{Z\to\infty} \frac{1}{Z} \int_{-Z/2}^{Z/2} U[y_1 - x(t + t_1 + u)]U[y_2 - x(t + t_2 + u)] \cdots U[y_M - x(t + t_M + u)]\, du, \tag{2}$$

in which $U[\cdot]$ is the unit step function, and therefore $U[y - x(t)]$ is the indicator of the event $x(t) < y$,

$$U[y - x(t)] = \begin{cases} 1, & x(t) < y \\ 0, & x(t) \geq y. \end{cases} \tag{3}$$

In (1b), t is interpreted as a random sample of time and (2) is the relative frequency (fraction of time) of occurrence of the joint event $\boldsymbol{x}(t) < \boldsymbol{y}$. It can be shown that $F_{\boldsymbol{x}}^0(\boldsymbol{y})$ is independent of t and is therefore said to be a *stationary probabilistic model*. If $x(t)$ is a time-series from a constant phenomenon that exhibits no periodicity, then the same FOTD is obtained from the discrete-time average

$$F_{\boldsymbol{x}(t);T_0}(\boldsymbol{y}) \triangleq \lim_{N\to\infty} \frac{1}{2N + 1} \sum_{n=-N}^{N} U[y_1 - x(t + t_1 + nT_0)]U[y_2 - x(t + t_2 + nT_0)] \cdots U[y_M - x(t + t_M + nT_0)] \tag{4}$$

for any nonzero value of the sampling period T_0. That is,

$$F_{\boldsymbol{x}(t);T_0}(\boldsymbol{y}) \equiv F_{\boldsymbol{x}}^0(\boldsymbol{y}), \qquad T_0 \neq 0 \tag{5}$$

and $F_{\boldsymbol{x}(t);T_0}(\boldsymbol{y})$ is therefore independent of t for all T_0. Equation (5) follows from (4) and the synchronized averaging identity, (22) in Chapter 10, which yields

$$F_{\boldsymbol{x}(t);T_0}(\boldsymbol{y}) \equiv \sum_{m=-\infty}^{\infty} \lim_{Z\to\infty} \frac{1}{Z} \int_{-Z/2}^{Z/2} U[y_1 - x(t + t_1 + u)]U[y_2 - x(t + t_2 + u)] \cdots U[y_M - x(t + t_M + u)]e^{-i2\pi mu/T_0}\, du. \tag{6}$$

If the phenomenon is constant, then by definition the only nonzero term in (6) is the $m = 0$ term for all T_0, and this one nonzero term is identical to (2). However, if $x(t)$ is from a periodic or almost periodic phenomenon, then some of the $m \neq 0$ terms in (6) will be nonzero for some values of T_0, and the FOTD defined by (4) or (6) will in general be distinct for each distinct value of T_0 that equals one of the fundamental periods of the phenomenon. Only for values of

T_0 that do not equal any period of the phenomenon will (5) be satisfied. Each of the distinct FOTDs given by (4) provides a purely cyclostationary probabilistic model in the sense that the FOTD is periodic in t with period T_0,

$$F_{x(t+T_0);T_0}(y) = F_{x(t);T_0}(y). \tag{7}$$

If the phenomenon is purely periodic, not almost periodic, then there is only one fundamental period, say T_0, for which (4) is distinct from (2). All other periods for which (4) is distinct from (2) are integer multiples or divisors of T_0. In this case the FOTD $F_{x(t);T_0}(y)$ is the one and only probabilistic model that appropriately reflects the periodicity of the phenomenon. On the other hand, if the phenomenon involves more than one fundamental periodicity, that is, if there are incommensurate periods, then the phenomenon is almost periodic, not purely periodic, and (4) is not an appropriate probabilistic model, since it can reflect only one of the fundamental periodicities of the phenomenon. In this case, the one and only probabilistic model that appropriately reflects all periodicities of the phenomenon is specified by the following *composite* FOTD (CFOTD),

$$F_{x(t)}(y) \triangleq F^0_x(y) + \sum_p [F_{x(t);T_p}(y) - F^0_x(y)], \tag{8}$$

where the sum is over all fundamental (incommensurate) periods T_p (for which (5) with $T_0 = T_p$ does not hold).

In order to gain some insight into this fundamental probabilistic model (8), the set $\mathcal{S} = \{\alpha\}$ of all cycle frequencies exhibited by the phenomenon can be decomposed into subsets of the form

$$\mathcal{T}_p = \{\alpha = m/T_p \text{ for all integers } m\} \tag{9a}$$

corresponding to all incommensurate fundamental periods T_p of the phenomenon. These subsets $\{\mathcal{T}_p\}$ all contain one and only one element in common, namely, $\alpha = 0$, and are otherwise mutually disjoint and exhaust the set $\mathcal{S}$. Thus, we have

$$\mathcal{T}_p \cap \mathcal{T}_q = \{0\} \qquad p \neq q \tag{9b}$$

$$\bigcup_p \mathcal{T}_p = \mathcal{S}. \tag{9c}$$

It follows from (9) that these subsets satisfy the property

$$\bigcup_p \mathcal{T}_p = \left(\bigcup_{p \neq q} \mathcal{T}_p\right) \cup \mathcal{T}_q, \tag{10a}$$

where

$$\left(\bigcup_{p \neq q} \mathcal{T}_p\right) \cap \mathcal{T}_q = \{0\} \tag{10b}$$

for $q = 1, 2, 3, \ldots$. If we were to assign probabilities to the Cartesian product of the set $\mathcal{S}$ with any other event set $\mathcal{A}$, then it follows from (10) and the fundamental axioms of probability (see [Gardner 1985]) that

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Prob}[\mathcal{A}, \mathcal{S}] &= \text{Prob}\left[\mathcal{A}, \bigcup_p \mathcal{T}_p\right] \\ &= \text{Prob}\left[\mathcal{A}, \bigcup_{p \neq q} \mathcal{T}_p\right] + \text{Prob}[\mathcal{A}, \mathcal{T}_q] - \text{Prob}[\mathcal{A}, \{0\}] \end{aligned} \tag{11}$$

for $q = 1, 2, 3, \ldots$. Repeated application of (11) to Prob $[\mathscr{A}, \bigcup_p \mathscr{T}_p]$ with one additional set $\mathscr{T}_q$ removed from the union at each step yields, after N steps,

$$\text{Prob}[\mathscr{A}, \mathscr{S}] = \sum_{q=1}^{N} (\text{Prob}[\mathscr{A}, \mathscr{T}_q] - \text{Prob}[\mathscr{A}, \{0\}]) + \text{Prob}\left[\mathscr{A}, \bigcup_{p>N} \mathscr{T}_p\right]. \tag{12}$$

In the limit as $N \to \infty$ we have[1] (with the ordering $T_{p+1} > T_p$)

$$\lim_{N\to\infty} \text{Prob}\left[\mathscr{A}, \bigcup_{p>N} \mathscr{T}_p\right] = \text{Prob}[\mathscr{A}, \{0\}]. \tag{13}$$

Therefore (12) becomes, in the limit,

$$\text{Prob}[\mathscr{A}, \mathscr{S}] = \text{Prob}[\mathscr{A}, \{0\}] + \sum_q (\text{Prob}[\mathscr{A}, \mathscr{T}_q] - \text{Prob}[\mathscr{A}, \{0\}]), \tag{14}$$

which is the desired result. Let us now consider the event

$$\mathscr{A}: \{x(t + t_1) < y_1 \quad \text{and} \quad x(t + t_2) < y_2 \quad \text{and} \quad \cdots \quad \text{and} \quad x(t + t_M) < y_M\}, \tag{15a}$$

and let us interpret the CFOTD (8) and FOTDs (2) and (4) as

$$F_{x(t)}(y) = \text{Prob}[\mathscr{A}, \mathscr{S}] \tag{15b}$$

$$F_x^0(y) = \text{Prob}[\mathscr{A}, \{0\}] \tag{15c}$$

$$F_{x(t);T_p}(y) = \text{Prob}[\mathscr{A}, \mathscr{T}_p]. \tag{15d}$$

That is, $F_{x(t)}(y)$ is the probability that event $\mathscr{A}$ occurs and that $x(t)$ exhibits cyclostationarity at all periodicities of the phenomenon (represented by all periods T_p associated with the sets $\mathscr{T}_p$ making up $\mathscr{S}$); $F_x^0(y)$ is the probability that event $\mathscr{A}$ occurs and that $x(t)$ exhibits no cyclostationarity; and $F_{x(t);T_p}(y)$ is the probability that $\mathscr{A}$ occurs and $x(t)$ exhibits pure cyclostationarity with period T_p. It follows directly from these interpretations (15) and the probabilistic property (14) that these three probability distributions are related by (8). It is clarified that we have used the axioms of probability and the relatively abstract interpretations (15) to prove that the CFOTD *defined* by (8) is indeed a valid probability distribution, because the FOTDs in the right member of (8), as defined by (2) and (4), are valid probability distributions.[2] However, given (8) as a *definition,* we can use it as the basis for a deterministic theory without resorting to the axioms of probability or the abstract concepts of ensembles of random samples of a stochastic process and its underlying probability space. Since the time-series must exhibit all its periodicities, the only appropriate probabilistic model among (15b), (15c), and (15d) is (15b). Thus, the CFOTD (8) is the only appropriate probabilistic model that reflects all the periodicities of the phenomenon. Nevertheless, the other two FOTDs, (2) and (4), can be given realistic interpretations as marginal

[1] This requires that we interpret $\lim_{p\to\infty} \mathscr{T}_p$ as $\{0\}$.

[2] It can be proved that definitions (2) and (4) yield nonincreasing functions that approach unity as $y \to \infty$. Thus, the Mth-order partial derivatives (26) of these functions are nonnegative and the volumes under their surfaces are unity. Furthermore, the Mth-order FOTDs defined by (2) and (4) for $M = 1, 2, 3, \ldots$ are mutually consistent.

FOTDs obtained from the CFOTD by integrating out the dependence on aspects of the time-series $x(t)$ that are not of interest, namely, certain periodicities. This process of removing periodicities from the model can be carried out by time-averaging the CFOTD. Specifically, if only the periodicity with period T_0 (which represents one of the periods $\{T_p\}$ in (8)) is of interest, then the corresponding purely cyclostationary FOTD is obtained from the CFOTD as follows:

$$F_{x(t);T_0}(y) = \lim_{N\to\infty} \frac{1}{2N+1} \sum_{n=-N}^{N} F_{x(t+nT_0)}(y). \tag{16}$$

This can be interpreted as a limiting phase-randomization procedure by interpreting the time phase as a conditioning variable and assigning to it the discrete uniform probability density

$$f_{T_0}(s)_N \triangleq \frac{1}{2N+1} \sum_{n=-N}^{N} \delta(s - nT_0). \tag{17}$$

Then Bayes' law (see [Gardner 1985]) yields the phase-randomized model

$$F_{x(t);T_0}(y) = \lim_{N\to\infty} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} F_{x(t+s)}(y) f_{T_0}(s)_N \, ds. \tag{18}$$

Similarly, if no periodicities are of interest, then they all can be removed to obtain a purely stationary FOTD as follows:

$$F_x^0(y) = \lim_{Z\to\infty} \frac{1}{Z} \int_{-Z/2}^{Z/2} F_{x(t)}(y) \, dt. \tag{19}$$

This can similarly be interpreted as a limiting phase-randomization procedure in terms of the continuous uniform density

$$f_0(s)_Z \triangleq \begin{cases} 1/Z, & |s| \leq Z/2 \\ 0, & |s| > Z/2. \end{cases} \tag{20}$$

That is,

$$F_x^0(y) = \lim_{Z\to\infty} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} F_{x(s)}(y) f_0(s)_Z \, ds. \tag{21}$$

A useful alternative representation for the CFOTD (8) is given by

$$F_{x(t)}(y) = \sum_{\alpha} F_{x(t)}^{\alpha}(y), \tag{22a}$$

in which $F_{x(t)}^{\alpha}(y)$ is the complex-valued (for $\alpha \neq 0$) distribution function (which is not a probability distribution except for $\alpha = 0$) defined by

$$F_{x(t)}^{\alpha}(y) \triangleq \lim_{Z\to\infty} \frac{1}{Z} \int_{-Z/2}^{Z/2} U[y_1 - x(t + t_1 + u)] U[y_2 - x(t + t_2 + u)] \cdots U[y_M - x(t + t_M + u)] e^{-i2\pi\alpha u} \, du. \tag{23}$$

The sum in (22a) ranges over all values of α for which (23) is not identically zero. The representation (22a) follows directly from the definition (8) and the synchronized averaging identity, which yields (6). The complex-valued distribution function $F_{x(t)}^{\alpha}(y)$ takes on values only in the unit disc in the complex plane, and

its magnitude is a nondecreasing function that ranges from zero to unity. It also is sinusoidal in t,

$$F^{\alpha}_{x(t+s)}(y) = F^{\alpha}_{x(t)}(y)e^{i2\pi\alpha s}. \tag{24}$$

Thus, (22a) can be reexpressed as

$$F_{x(t)}(y) = \sum_{\alpha} F^{\alpha}_{x(0)}(y)e^{i2\pi\alpha t}. \tag{22b}$$

Comparison of (2) and (23) reveals that the $\alpha = 0$ term in (22) is the stationary FOTD (2). These cyclic distribution functions can be obtained either from their definition (23) or from the CFOTD (8) using the formula

$$F^{\alpha}_{x(t)}(y) = \lim_{Z\to\infty} \frac{1}{Z} \int_{-Z/2}^{Z/2} F_{x(t+u)}(y)e^{-i2\pi\alpha u}\, du, \tag{25}$$

of which (19) is the special case $\alpha = 0$.

For convenient reference, the terminology for the various distribution functions associated with a single time-series from a periodic or almost periodic phenomenon is summarized here. The FOTD $F^{0}_{x}(y)$ defined by (2) is called the *stationary FOTD*. The FOTD $F_{x(t);T_0}(y)$ defined by (4) is called a *cyclostationary FOTD* (and is not unique for an almost periodic phenomenon). The FOTD $F_{x(t)}(y)$ defined by (8) is called the *almost cyclostationary* FOTD and is also called the *composite FOTD*, or *CFOTD*. Finally, the complex-valued distribution function $F^{\alpha}_{x(t)}(y)$ defined by (23) is called the *cyclic distribution* for $\alpha \neq 0$. If the time-series is purely cyclostationary with period T_0, then $F_{x(t)}(y)$ and $F_{x(t);T_0}(y)$ are one and the same, since only the one term corresponding to $T_p = T_0$ remains in (8). If the time-series is purely stationary, then $F_{x(t)}(y)$, $F_{x(t);T_p}(y)$, and $F^{0}_{x}(y)$ are all one and the same for all T_p, and $F^{\alpha}_{x(t)}(y)$ is identically zero for all $\alpha \neq 0$.

Fraction-of-time probability densities for a time-series $x(t)$ can be obtained from the FOTDs in the usual way by differentiation, as explained in Chapter 5, Part I. For example, the Mth-order composite fraction-of-time density is given by

$$f_{x(t)}(y) \triangleq \frac{\partial^M}{\partial y_1 \partial y_2 \cdots \partial y_M} F_{x(t)}(y), \tag{26}$$

where $F_{x(t)}(y)$ is the Mth-order CFOTD defined by (8).

Example: ***An Almost Cyclostationary Time-Series***

An example of an almost cyclostationary time-series is the product

$$x(t) = a(t)z(t), \tag{27a}$$

where $a(t)$ is the almost periodic function

$$a(t) = a_0 + a_1\cos(2\pi f_1 t + \phi_1) + a_2\cos(2\pi f_2 t + \phi_2) \tag{27b}$$

and $z(t)$ is a purely stationary time-series. This is an example (with only two carriers) of what is called a stacked carrier spread-spectrum signal. To simplify the FOTD model, it is assumed that the joint modulation index for the two carriers is less than 100% so that $|a_1| + |a_2| < |a_0|$, in which case $a(t) \neq 0$ for all t. It can be shown (exercise 1) that the Mth-order CFOTD is given by

$$F_{x(t)}(y) = \frac{1}{|G(t)|} F^{0}_{z}[G^{-1}(t)y], \tag{28a}$$

in which $|\boldsymbol{G}(t)|$ and $\boldsymbol{G}^{-1}(t)$ are the magnitude of the determinant and the inverse of the diagonal matrix with Mth diagonal element given by $G_{mm}(t) = a(t + t_m)$. Thus,

$$\boldsymbol{G}^{-1}(t)\boldsymbol{y} = \left[\frac{y_1}{a(t + t_1)}, \frac{y_2}{a(t + t_2)}, \cdots, \frac{y_M}{a(t + t_M)}\right] \tag{28b}$$

and

$$|\boldsymbol{G}(t)| = |a(t + t_1)a(t + t_2) \cdots a(t + t_M)|. \tag{28c}$$

It follows from (28) that $F_{\boldsymbol{x}(t)}(\boldsymbol{y})$ is a time-invariant function of almost periodic functions, and is therefore itself an almost periodic function. Because of the nonlinear nature of the function of these almost periodic functions, it appears that the Fourier series representation (22) for the CFOTD (28) contains all cycle frequencies of the form

$$\alpha = nf_1 + mf_2 \tag{29}$$

for all integers n and m, and therefore the representation (8) for the CFOTD appears to contain a denumerable infinity of distinct fundamental (incommensurate) frequencies, assuming that f_1 and f_2 are incommensurate (f_1/f_2 is irrational). As a generalization, it follows from exercise 1 that the result (28) is valid for any almost periodic function $a(t)$ that does not equal zero for any t.

Statistical independence of time-series

Two time-series $x(t)$ and $z(t)$ are defined to be *statistically independent* if and only if each of all their Mth-order joint CFOTDs factors into the product of its individual (marginal) CFOTDs for all orders M (see [Gardner 1985]):

$$F_{\boldsymbol{x}(t),\boldsymbol{z}(t)}(\boldsymbol{y}, \boldsymbol{w}) = F_{\boldsymbol{x}(t)}(\boldsymbol{y})F_{\boldsymbol{z}(t)}(\boldsymbol{w}), \tag{30}$$

where

$$\boldsymbol{x}(t) = [x(t + t_1), x(t + t_2), \ldots, x(t + t_N)]'$$
$$\boldsymbol{z}(t) = [z(t + t_{N+1}), z(t + t_{N+2}), \ldots, z(t + t_M)]',$$

in which the times t_i are in no particular order. In (30), we have

$$F_{\boldsymbol{x}(t),\boldsymbol{z}(t)}(\boldsymbol{y}, \boldsymbol{w}) = \sum_{\alpha} F^{\alpha}_{\boldsymbol{x}(0),\boldsymbol{z}(0)}(\boldsymbol{y}, \boldsymbol{w})e^{i2\pi\alpha t}, \tag{31a}$$

for which

$$F^{\alpha}_{\boldsymbol{x}(0),\boldsymbol{z}(0)}(\boldsymbol{y}, \boldsymbol{w}) = \lim_{Z\to\infty} \frac{1}{Z}\int_{-Z/2}^{Z/2} U[\boldsymbol{y} - \boldsymbol{x}(t)]U[\boldsymbol{w} - \boldsymbol{z}(t)]e^{-i2\pi\alpha t}\, dt, \tag{31b}$$

where

$$U[\boldsymbol{y} - \boldsymbol{x}(t)] \triangleq U[y_1 - x(t + t_1)]U[y_2 - x(t + t_2)] \cdots U[y_N - x(t + t_N)].$$

The reason for using the Fourier-series representation (22)–(23) of the CFOTD here in (31) is to emphasize that the CFOTD is simply the almost periodic component of the indicator function $U[\boldsymbol{y} - \boldsymbol{x}(t)]U[\boldsymbol{w} - \boldsymbol{z}(t)]$, that is, the sum of all finite additive sine wave components of this function of t. Thus, it is clear that statistical independence as defined here means simply that the almost periodic component of the product of the two indicator functions for $\boldsymbol{x}(t)$ and $\boldsymbol{z}(t)$ is the

product of almost periodic components of these two indicator functions. As an example, if one of the two time-series, say $x(t)$, is itself an almost periodic function, then so too is its indicator function $U[y - x(t)]$, and the almost periodic component of the product of an almost periodic function and any other function, say $U[w - z(t)]$, is the product of that almost periodic function, $U[y - x(t)]$, and the almost periodic component of the other function, $U[w - z(t)]$ (exercise 2). Consequently every almost periodic time-series is statistically independent of every other time-series, whether it be almost periodic or not.

It should be stressed that statistical independence relative to the CFOTD does not imply statistical independence relative to any of the cyclostationary FOTDs or the stationary FOTD. This is a direct consequence of interpretations (18) and (21) and the fact that conditional statistical independence does not in general imply unconditional statistical independence (see [Gardner 1985]).

2. Cyclic Temporal Expectation

Once we have a probabilistic model for a time-series, that is, an Mth-order fraction-of-time distribution, we can obtain the expected value of essentially any function of M or less time-samples of the time-series, for example, a lag product. Specifically, let $g[\boldsymbol{x}(t)]$ be any (nonpathological) function of any finite number M of time-samples of the time-series $x(t)$,

$$\boldsymbol{x}(t) = [x(t + t_1), x(t + t_2), \ldots, x(t + t_M)]'.$$

The expected value of this function is given by the fundamental theorem of expectation in probability theory (see [Gardner 1985]):

$$\hat{E}\{g[\boldsymbol{x}(t)]\} \triangleq \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} g[\boldsymbol{y}] f_{x(t)}(\boldsymbol{y})\, d\boldsymbol{y}, \tag{32}$$

in which $f_{x(t)}(\boldsymbol{y})$ is the composite fraction-of-time probability density defined by (8) and (26). The circumflex on the expectation operator $\hat{E}\{\cdot\}$ is a reminder that this is really a limiting time-average operator—a *temporal expectation operator*. To make this more explicit, the representation (22)–(23) can be substituted into (26), which can be substituted into (32) to obtain (cf. Part I, Chapter 5, Section B)

$$\hat{E}\{g[\boldsymbol{x}(t)]\} = \sum_{\alpha} \hat{M}_g^{\alpha} e^{i2\pi\alpha t}, \tag{33a}$$

where

$$\hat{M}_g^{\alpha} = \lim_{Z\to\infty} \frac{1}{Z} \int_{-Z/2}^{Z/2} g[\boldsymbol{x}(t)] e^{-i2\pi\alpha t}\, dt \tag{33b}$$

for all α for which $\hat{M}_g^{\alpha} \neq 0$. It can be seen from (33) that $\hat{E}\{\cdot\}$ simply extracts the almost periodic component of its argument, that is, the sum of all finite additive sine wave components of its argument. (The argument is the time-series $g(t) \triangleq g[\boldsymbol{x}(t)]$ in the present discussion.) For example, for $g[\boldsymbol{x}(t)] = x(t)$, (33) reduces to

$$\hat{E}\{x(t)\} = \sum_{\alpha} \hat{M}_x^{\alpha} e^{i2\pi\alpha t} \triangleq \hat{M}_x(t), \tag{34a}$$

in which $\hat{M}_x^\alpha$ is the limit cyclic mean introduced in Chapter 10,

$$\hat{M}_x^\alpha \triangleq \lim_{Z\to\infty} \frac{1}{Z} \int_{-Z/2}^{Z/2} x(t) e^{-i2\pi\alpha t}\, dt, \tag{34b}$$

and $\hat{M}_x(t)$ is the limit almost periodic mean also introduced in Chapter 10. Similarly, for $g[\boldsymbol{x}(t)] = x(t + \tau/2)x(t - \tau/2)$, (33) reduces to

$$\hat{E}\left\{x\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right)x\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right)\right\} = \sum_\alpha \hat{R}_x^\alpha(\tau) e^{i2\pi\alpha t} \triangleq \hat{R}_x(t, \tau), \tag{35a}$$

in which $\hat{R}_x^\alpha(\tau)$ is the limit cyclic autocorrelation introduced in Chapter 10,

$$\hat{R}_x^\alpha(\tau) \triangleq \lim_{Z\to\infty} \frac{1}{Z} \int_{-Z/2}^{Z/2} x\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right)x\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right) e^{-i2\pi\alpha t}\, dt, \tag{35b}$$

and $\hat{R}_x(t, \tau)$ is the limit almost periodic autocorrelation also introduced in Chapter 10.

In contrast to the temporal expectation operator $\hat{E}\{\cdot\}$ introduced here, which is based on the CFOTD (8) and extracts all the sine wave components of its argument, the more conventional temporal expectation operator $E\{\cdot\}$ introduced in Part I, which is based on the stationary FOTD (2), extracts only the *dc* component (the zero-frequency sine wave component) of its argument. There is yet another temporal expectation operator of interest, which is based on the cyclostationary FOTD (4),

$$\hat{E}_{T_0}\{g[\boldsymbol{x}(t)]\} \triangleq \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} g[\boldsymbol{y}] f_{\boldsymbol{x}(t);T_0}(\boldsymbol{y})\, d\boldsymbol{y}. \tag{36}$$

This operator extracts only the periodic component, with period T_0, from its argument. That is, it follows from (36), (4), and (26) that

$$\hat{E}_{T_0}\{g[\boldsymbol{x}(t)]\} = \lim_{N\to\infty} \frac{1}{2N + 1} \sum_{n=-N}^{N} g[\boldsymbol{x}(t + nT_0)]. \tag{37}$$

For example, for $g[\boldsymbol{x}(t)] = x(t + \tau/2)x(t - \tau/2)$, (36) reduces to

$$\hat{E}_{T_0}\left\{x\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right)x\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right)\right\} = \hat{R}_x(t, \tau; T_0), \tag{38}$$

which is the limit periodic autocorrelation introduced in Chapter 10. It follows from the definition (8) of the CFOTD that these three expectation operators are related by

$$\hat{E}\{\cdot\} = \hat{E}^0\{\cdot\} + \sum_p [\hat{E}_{T_p}\{\cdot\} - \hat{E}^0\{\cdot\}], \tag{39}$$

where the sum is over all fundamental (incommensurate) periods T_p, and the notation $\hat{E}^0\{\cdot\}$ is used in place of $E\{\cdot\}$ to emphasize its relation to $F_x^0(\boldsymbol{y})$. Furthermore, $\hat{E}\{\cdot\}$ can also be decomposed into the sum

$$\hat{E}\{\cdot\} = \sum_\alpha \hat{E}^\alpha\{\cdot\}, \tag{40a}$$

where $E^{\alpha}\{\cdot\}$ is the single sine wave extraction operator

$$\hat{E}^{\alpha}\{g[\boldsymbol{x}(t)]\} = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} g[\boldsymbol{y}]\, f^{\alpha}_{\boldsymbol{x}(t)}(\boldsymbol{y})\, d\boldsymbol{y} = \lim_{Z\to\infty} \frac{1}{Z} \int_{-Z/2}^{Z/2} g[\boldsymbol{x}(t)] e^{-i2\pi\alpha t}\, dt, \tag{40b}$$

in which $f^{\alpha}_{\boldsymbol{x}(t)}(\boldsymbol{y})$ is the complex-valued function obtained from $F^{\alpha}_{\boldsymbol{x}(t)}(\boldsymbol{y})$ by differentiation, analogous to (26).

It is very helpful in applications to realize that the various distributions defined in Part 1 of this section can be reinterpreted in terms of the sine wave extraction operators defined here. Specifically, consider the function

$$g[\boldsymbol{x}(t)] = U[y_1 - x(t + t_1)]U[y_2 - x(t + t_2)] \cdots U[y_M - x(t + t_M)]. \tag{41a}$$

It follows directly from (41a) and definition (2) that

$$F^{0}_{\boldsymbol{x}}(\boldsymbol{y}) = \hat{E}^{0}\{g[\boldsymbol{x}(t)]\} \tag{41b}$$

and from definition (4) that

$$F_{\boldsymbol{x}(t);T_0}(\boldsymbol{y}) = \hat{E}_{T_0}\{g[\boldsymbol{x}(t)]\} \tag{41c}$$

and from definition (8) that

$$F_{\boldsymbol{x}(t)}(\boldsymbol{y}) = \hat{E}\{g[\boldsymbol{x}(t)]\} \tag{41d}$$

and, finally, from definition (23) that

$$F^{\alpha}_{\boldsymbol{x}(t)}(\boldsymbol{y}) = \hat{E}^{\alpha}\{g[\boldsymbol{x}(t)]\}. \tag{41e}$$

Consequently, all cyclic fraction-of-time probabilistic analysis can be interpreted in terms of the concrete concept of sine wave extraction.

To help clarify the variety of definitions of distribution functions and expectation operators introduced here, it is recommended that the example in Section F of Chapter 10 be carefully compared with the example in Part 1 of this section, in terms of the various alternative but equivalent ways of calculating the limit cyclic autocorrelation, limit periodic autocorrelation, limit almost periodic autocorrelation, and limit (stationary) autocorrelation, on the basis of the CFOTD (28) and the fundamental theorem of expectation (32), and on the basis of the sine wave extraction operators that were used (except in name) in Chapter 10.

Extension and generalization of Wold's isomorphism

It was seen in Chapter 5 of Part I that Wold's isomorphism between a single time-series and an ergodic stationary stochastic process is a very useful conceptual tool for fraction-of-time probabilistic analysis of time-series from constant phenomena, since it brings to bear the considerable theory that has been developed for stochastic processes. Similarly, we can see from the preceding development in the present chapter that the considerable theory of cyclostationary and almost cyclostationary stochastic processes can be brought to bear on problems of cyclic fraction-of-time probabilistic analysis of time-series from periodic or almost periodic phenomena. For the special case of a purely cyclostationary time-series, this can be explained in terms of the extension of Wold's isomorphism,

from stationary time-series to cyclostationary time-series, that is described in Section E of Chapter 10. However, Wold's isomorphism cannot be extended for almost cyclostationary time-series. Nevertheless, there is a generalization of Wold's isomorphism for almost cyclostationary time-series, as clearly evidenced by the preceding material in this chapter. It is just that this generalized isomorphism cannot be interpreted solely in terms of the concrete mapping between a single time-series and an ensemble of random samples obtained from translates of the time-series. This yields only the stationary and cyclostationary component models making up the composite almost cyclostationary model. The generalized isomorphism requires, in addition, the construction of the CFOTD as in (8). This extension and generalization of Wold's isomorphism is of great conceptual value. It is useful in both directions. Not only does it bring to bear the considerable theory of stochastic processes on problems of cyclic fraction-of-time probabilistic analysis, as demonstrated in Section B, but it also enables one to give the relatively abstract probabilistic theory of almost cyclostationary stochastic processes that are cycloergodic (see [Boyles and Gardner 1983]) concrete interpretations in terms of sine wave extraction. In fact, it suggests an approach to developing a more complete and satisfying theory of cycloergodicity than that currently available (see [Boyles and Gardner 1983]). Specifically, it appears that the probability measure corresponding to the CFOTD (8) cannot be cycloergodic, but that the probability measures corresponding to the component FOTDs, (2) and (4), can be.

Orthogonality, correlation and covariance

Two time-series $x(t)$ and $y(t)$ are said to be *orthogonal* if and only if the temporal expectation of their lag product

$$\hat{R}_{xy}(t, \tau) = \hat{E}\left\{x\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right)y\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right)\right\}, \tag{42}$$

which is the limit almost periodic cross-correlation function, is identically zero:

$$\hat{R}_{xy}(t, \tau) \equiv 0.$$

This of course means only that the lag product time-series $z(t) = x(t + \tau/2)y(t - \tau/2)$ contains no finite additive sine wave (or constant) components.

Two time-series $x(t)$ and $y(t)$ are said to be *uncorrelated* if and only if the temporal expectation of the lag product of their centered versions

$$\hat{K}_{xy}(t, \tau) = \hat{E}\left\{\left[x\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right) - \hat{E}\left\{x\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right)\right\}\right]\left[y\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right) - \hat{E}\left\{y\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right)\right\}\right]\right\}, \tag{43}$$

which is the limit almost periodic crosscovariance function, is identically zero:

$$\hat{K}_{xy}(t, \tau) \equiv 0.$$

Since we have

$$\hat{K}_{xy}(t, \tau) = \hat{R}_{xy}(t, \tau) - \hat{M}_x\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right)\hat{M}_y\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right), \tag{44}$$

where

$$\hat{M}_x(t) = \hat{E}\{x(t)\} \tag{45}$$

is the limit almost periodic mean, and since statistical independence of $x(t)$ and $y(t)$ guarantees

$$\hat{R}_{xy}(t, \tau) = \hat{M}_x\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right)\hat{M}_y\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right),$$

then statistical independence implies uncorrelatedness but not orthogonality unless one of the two time-series contains no finite additive sine wave components, so that its temporal expectation is zero.

There is an important relationship between the spectral correlation functions of a product of two statistically independent time-series and the spectral correlation functions of each of the two individual time-series. Specifically, if $x(t)$ and $y(t)$ are statistically independent and $z(t)$ is given by the product $z(t) = x(t)y(t)$, then it is easily shown using (30), (32), and (42) that

$$\hat{R}_z(t, \tau) = \hat{R}_x(t, \tau)\hat{R}_y(t, \tau). \tag{46a}$$

Substitution of the Fourier-series representation for $\hat{R}_x(t, \tau)$ and $\hat{R}_y(t, \tau)$ into (46a) and the result into the formula

$$\hat{R}_z^\alpha(\tau) = \lim_{Z\to\infty} \frac{1}{Z}\int_{-Z/2}^{Z/2} \hat{R}_z(t, \tau)e^{-i2\pi\alpha t}\, dt$$

yields (see exercise 7 in Chapter 11)

$$\hat{R}_z^\alpha(\tau) = \sum_\beta \hat{R}_x^{\alpha-\beta}(\tau)\hat{R}_y^\beta(\tau). \tag{46b}$$

Fourier transformation of (46b) yields the desired result

$$\hat{S}_z^\alpha(f) = \sum_\beta \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \hat{S}_x^{\alpha-\beta}(f - v)\hat{S}_y^\beta(v)\, dv, \tag{46c}$$

which is a double (discrete and continuous) convolution.

3. Gaussian Almost Cyclostationary Time-Series

As explained in Chapter 5 of Part I, a time-series $x(t)$ is defined to be Gaussian if and only if for every positive integer M and every M time points $t_1, t_2, \ldots, t_M$, every linear combination of the M time-series $x(t + t_1)$, $x(t + t_2)$, $\ldots$, $x(t + t_M)$, say

$$z(t) = \omega_1 x(t + t_1) + \omega_2 x(t + t_2) + \cdots + \omega_M x(t + t_M) \triangleq \boldsymbol{\omega}'\boldsymbol{x}(t), \tag{47}$$

has a Gaussian first-order fraction-of-time density, namely,

$$f_{z(t)}(y) = \frac{1}{\sigma(t)\sqrt{2\pi}} \exp\left\{-\frac{[y - \mu(t)]^2}{2\sigma^2(t)}\right\}. \tag{48a}$$

However, in Part I we considered only constant phenomena, and therefore (48a) was the stationary fraction-of-time density obtained from (2) and (26) with

$M = 1$, and the mean

$$\mu(t) \equiv \hat{E}\{z(t)\} \tag{48b}$$

and variance

$$\sigma^2(t) \equiv \hat{E}\{[z(t) - \hat{E}\{z(t)\}]^2\} \tag{48c}$$

were obtained from this stationary model (using $E\{\cdot\} \equiv \hat{E}^0\{\cdot\}$ rather than $\hat{E}\{\cdot\}$) and were therefore independent of time t. In contrast to this, here we use the almost cyclostationary model given by the CFOTD (8), and the mean and variance (48b) and (48c) are therefore almost periodic functions of time, in general. The defining property (47)–(48) of a Gaussian almost cyclostationary time-series is conveniently reexpressed in terms of the joint characteristic function for the vector $\boldsymbol{x}(t) = [x(t + t_1), x(t + t_2), \ldots, x(t + t_M)]'$, which is defined by

$$\Psi_{\boldsymbol{x}(t)}(\boldsymbol{\omega}) \triangleq \hat{E}\{\exp[i\boldsymbol{\omega}'\mathbf{x}(t)]\}. \tag{49}$$

Specifically, we shall see that (47)–(48) is equivalent to

$$\Psi_{\boldsymbol{x}(t)}(\boldsymbol{\omega}) = \exp\{i\boldsymbol{\omega}'\hat{\boldsymbol{M}}_{\boldsymbol{x}(t)} - \tfrac{1}{2}\boldsymbol{\omega}'\hat{\boldsymbol{K}}_{\boldsymbol{x}(t)}\boldsymbol{\omega}\}, \tag{50a}$$

where the M-vector $\hat{\boldsymbol{M}}_{\boldsymbol{x}(t)}$ has ith element

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{M}}_{\boldsymbol{x}(t)}(i) = \hat{M}_x(t + t_i), \tag{50b}$$

and the $M \times M$ matrix $\hat{\boldsymbol{K}}_{\boldsymbol{x}(t)}$ has ijth element

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{K}}_{\boldsymbol{x}(t)}(i, j) = \hat{K}_x\left(t + \frac{t_i + t_j}{2}, t_i - t_j\right). \tag{50c}$$

To verify that (50) is equivalent to (47)–(48), we use the fact that the first-order characteristic function for $z(t)$,

$$\Psi_{z(t)}(\omega) = \hat{E}\{\exp[i\omega z(t)]\},$$

satisfies (by use of (47))

$$\Psi_{z(t)}(1) = \Psi_{\boldsymbol{x}(t)}(\boldsymbol{\omega}) \tag{51}$$

and (by use of (32))

$$\Psi_{z(t)}(1) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f_{z(t)}(y)\exp\{iy\}\, dy,$$

which yields (after substitution of (48a))

$$\Psi_{z(t)}(1) = \exp\{i\mu(t) - \tfrac{1}{2}\sigma^2(t)\}. \tag{52}$$

Substitution of (47) into (48b) and (48c) yields

$$\mu(t) = \boldsymbol{\omega}'\hat{\boldsymbol{M}}_{\boldsymbol{x}(t)} \tag{53a}$$

and

$$\sigma^2(t) = \boldsymbol{\omega}'\hat{\boldsymbol{K}}_{\boldsymbol{x}(t)}\boldsymbol{\omega}. \tag{53b}$$

The desired result (50) follows directly from (51)–(53).

Example

The time-series (27) is a Gaussian almost cyclostationary time-series if $z(t)$ (not to be confused with $z(t)$ in (47)) is a Gaussian stationary time-series. This follows from (28a), which yields

$$f_{x(t)}(y) = \frac{1}{|G(t)|} f_z^0[G^{-1}(t)y]. \tag{54}$$

The M-dimensional Fourier transform of the Mth-order fraction-of-time probability density yields the Mth-order characteristic function (exercise 7), and use of (54) in this transform results in

$$\Psi_{x(t)}(\omega) = \Psi_z[G'(t)\omega]. \tag{55}$$

Use of the assumed Gaussian form for Ψ_z yields

$$\Psi_{x(t)}(\omega) = \exp\{i\omega' G(t)\hat{M}_z - \tfrac{1}{2}\omega' G(t)\hat{K}_z G'(t)\omega\}, \tag{56a}$$

which is of the desired form (50) with

$$\hat{M}_{x(t)} = G(t)\hat{M}_z \tag{56b}$$

$$\hat{K}_{x(t)} = G(t)\hat{K}_z G'(t). \tag{56c}$$

It is to be stressed that $x(t)$ is not a Gaussian stationary time-series. That is, its stationary probabilistic model (2) does not yield a joint characteristic function of the Gaussian form. This might seem strange, since $x(t)$ is obtained from $z(t)$ by a linear transformation, (27), and in the probabilistic theory of stochastic processes it is a well-known fact that linear transformations preserve the Gaussian property. Nevertheless, in the deterministic theory presented here, it follows directly from the defining property (47)–(48) that the Gaussian property of the stationary fraction-of-time probabilistic model is preserved only by linear *time-invariant* transformations, and (27) is a time-variant linear transformation. This is consistent with the fact that for stochastic processes, although a time-variant linear transformation preserves the Gaussian property, it does not preserve the stationarity property, and if a random phase variable is introduced into the nonstationary model to recover the stationarity property, then the Gaussian property is lost (see [Gardner 1985]).

The preceding example illustrates an important general property of stationary models for cyclostationary or almost cyclostationary time-series. Specifically, if a time-series is not purely stationary, then it cannot have a Gaussian stationary model (as defined by (2)). This is proved in exercise 4, where it is also proved that if a time-series is not purely cyclostationary, it cannot have a Gaussian cyclostationary model (as defined by (4)).

Another important general property that is illustrated by the preceding example is that the joint characteristic function for an M-vector of time samples from any finite-dimensional almost periodic linear transformation of an almost cyclostationary time-series $z(t)$,

$$x(t) = \sum_{n=1}^{N} a(t, s_n)z(t + s_n), \tag{57}$$

which can be expressed as

$$\boldsymbol{x}(t) = \boldsymbol{G}(t)\boldsymbol{z}(t), \tag{58a}$$

is given by[3]

$$\Psi_{x(t)}(\omega) = \Psi_{z(t)}[G'(t)\omega], \tag{59}$$

where $G(t)$ is the $M \times MN$ block diagonal matrix in which the $1 \times N$ block in the m-th diagonal position is given by $[a(t + t_m, s_1), a(t + t_m, s_2), \cdots, a(t + t_m, s_N)]$, $x(t)$ is the M-vector

$$x(t) = [x(t + t_1), x(t + t_2), \ldots, x(t + t_M)]', \tag{58b}$$

and $z(t)$ is the MN-vector obtained by concatenating the M individual N-vectors

$$z_m(t) = [z(t + t_m + s_1), z(t + t_m + s_2), \ldots, z(t + t_M + s_N)]' \tag{58c}$$

for $m = 1, 2, 3, \ldots, M$. It can be shown, using the method of the example, that if $z(t)$ is a Gaussian time-series (either purely stationary, purely cyclostationary, or almost cyclostationary), then $x(t)$ is a Gaussian almost cyclostationary time-series. Presumably, by using a limiting argument, this result can be extended to continuous-time (infinite-dimensional) linear almost periodically time-variant transformations of the type studied in Chapter 11 (that is, (57) with the discrete variable s_n replaced by a continuous variable and the sum replaced by an integral).

Isserlis' formula

An important property of a zero-mean Gaussian almost cyclostationary time-series is *Isserlis' formula* for the fourth joint moment in terms of the second joint moments [Isserlis 1918]. This formula can be derived from (50) (see [Gardner 1985]) and is given by

$$\begin{aligned}\hat{E}\{x(t + t_1)x(t + t_2)x(t + t_3)x(t + t_4)\} = {} & \\ & \hat{E}\{x(t + t_1)x(t + t_2)\}\hat{E}\{x(t + t_3)x(t + t_4)\} \\ & + \hat{E}\{x(t + t_1)x(t + t_3)\}\hat{E}\{x(t + t_2)x(t + t_4)\} \\ & + \hat{E}\{x(t + t_1)x(t + t_4)\}\hat{E}\{x(t + t_2)x(t + t_3)\},\end{aligned} \tag{60}$$

where

$$\hat{E}\{x(t + t_i)x(t + t_j)\} = \hat{K}_x\left(t + \frac{t_i + t_j}{2}, t_i - t_j\right) \tag{61}$$

and $\hat{K}_x(t, \tau)$ is the limit almost periodic autocovariance function. This formula is quite interesting when interpreted as a relation among finite additive sine wave components.

It follows from the fact that a not purely stationary time-series cannot have a Gaussian stationary model that the Isserlis' formula on which the analysis of variability was based in Chapter 5 of Part I cannot be valid for a cyclostationary or almost cyclostationary time-series, and consequently the analysis in Part I does not apply to such time-series. For example, let us evaluate the stationary

[3] This result can be proved [Brown 1987] using the fact that $G(t)$ and $z(t)$ must be statistically independent, since $G(t)$ is almost periodic.

component of (60). Specifically, substitution of the Fourier series representation

$$\hat{K}_x(t, \tau) = \sum_\alpha \hat{K}_x^\alpha(\tau) e^{i2\pi\alpha t}$$

into (61) and the result into (60), and evaluation of the time-average of both members of (60) yields (exercise 3)

$$\begin{aligned}\hat{E}^0\{x(t + t_1)x(t + t_2)x(t + t_3)x(t + t_4)\} = \\ \sum_\alpha \hat{K}_x^\alpha(t_1 - t_2)\hat{K}_x^{-\alpha}(t_3 - t_4)\exp[i\pi\alpha(t_1 + t_2 - t_3 - t_4)] \\ + \sum_\alpha \hat{K}_x^\alpha(t_1 - t_3)\hat{K}_x^{-\alpha}(t_2 - t_4)\exp[i\pi\alpha(t_1 + t_3 - t_2 - t_4)] \\ + \sum_\alpha \hat{K}_x^\alpha(t_1 - t_4)\hat{K}_x^{-\alpha}(t_2 - t_3)\exp[i\pi\alpha(t_1 + t_4 - t_2 - t_3)],\end{aligned} \tag{62}$$

where the expectation operator $\hat{E}^0\{\cdot\}$ is identical to the time-average operator $\langle\cdot\rangle$ in Isserlis' formula (19) in Chapter 5, Part I, for a purely stationary Gaussian time-series. Comparison of this Isserlis' fomula (62) with Isserlis' formula in Part I reveals that the latter contains only the $\alpha = 0$ terms in (62), which is appropriate since it applies only to purely stationary Gaussian time-series.

B. PROBABILISTIC ANALYSIS OF CYCLIC SPECTRUM MEASUREMENTS

A cyclic spectrum estimate is a measurement of spectral correlation, and it can be viewed as a time-series $w(t)$ (for each value of f and α of interest) produced by a cyclic spectrum analyzer operating on the time-series $x(t)$ whose spectral correlation is being measured. The objective of this section is to characterize the time-series $w(t)$ of cyclic spectrum estimates in terms of its temporal mean and variance. As in Part I, we shall see that the mean provides an important characterization of spectral resolution and leakage and that the variance normalized by the squared mean characterizes the variability of the estimate. However, unlike the situation for purely stationary time-series studied in Part I, the time-series $w(t)$ of cyclic spectrum estimates contains finite additive sine wave components even if the cyclostationary (or almost cyclostationary) time-series $x(t)$ whose spectral correlation is being measured contains no such components. This is because the analyzer is a (down-converted) quadratic time-invariant transformation and therefore converts second-order periodicity at its input into first-order periodicity at its output (as explained in Chapter 10). Although the ideal time-series of cyclic spectrum estimates is the mean, or the zero-frequency sine wave component, of the actual time-series $w(t)$ of estimates, the other sine wave components in $w(t)$ must be studied because they represent a novel type of cycle leakage that can affect performance. Thus, in addition to the mean, or stationary expectation, the almost cyclostationary expectation, or almost periodic component, must also be studied. Similarly, the appropriate measure of variability is obtained

from the stationary variance about the almost cyclostationary expectation rather than about the stationary expectation. Otherwise, the sine wave components, which represent a predictable bias, would contribute to the measure of variability. Nevertheless, we shall see that for a properly designed cyclic spectrum analyzer, the cycle leakage is small and the variability is, therefore, nearly the same, whether measured about the zero-frequency sine wave component or the entire almost periodic component.

For the purpose of analyzing variability, the Gaussian almost cyclostationary model is used for $x(t)$. This is motivated by two considerations: 1) The Gaussian model is especially analytically tractable and 2) the Gaussian model is appropriate for at least some time-series of interest in practice, particularly those that arise from an almost periodically time-variant linear transformation of a time-series that is appropriately modeled with the Gaussian stationary model (e.g., thermal noise). Such transformations result from sampling, scanning, modulating, multiplexing, and coding operations, for instance, as discussed at length in Chapters 11 and 12. Also, as discussed in Chapter 5, Part I, results obtained with the Gaussian model can be (but are not necessarily) good approximations for time-series $x(t)$ that are not at all appropriately modeled as Gaussian. This is important because many situations in which cyclostationarity arises, such as communications, radar, sonar, and telemetry, involve digital data which by its discrete nature results in models that are highly non-Gaussian.

1. A General Representation

As described in considerable detail in Chapters 4, 5, and 7 of Part I, most of the various methods of spectral analysis and cross-spectral analysis consist of quadratic time-invariant transformations and, as such, admit a general representation that unifies the study of resolution, leakage, and reliability. The same is true (with one minor modification) for all the methods of cyclic spectral analysis, or spectral correlation measurement, described in Chapter 13. Thus, if $w_f^\alpha(t)$ denotes a time-series of cyclic spectrum estimates, such as

$$w_f^\alpha(t) = S_{x_{\Delta t}}^\alpha(t, f)_{\Delta f},$$

then $w_f^\alpha(t)$ can be represented by

$$w_f^\alpha(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} k_f^\alpha(u, v) x(t - u) y^*(t - v) du\, dv\, e^{-i2\pi\alpha t} \tag{63}$$

for some appropriate kernel $k_f^\alpha(u, v)$. For the sake of generality, (63) is expressed so that it accommodates cyclic cross-spectral analysis between two possibly complex-valued time-series $x(t)$ and $y(t)$. For cyclic spectral analysis of a single real time-series $x(t)$, we simply let $y^*(t) = x(t)$ in the final results to be presented here. The transformation (63) is time-invariant except for the sinusoidal factor $e^{-i2\pi\alpha t}$, which serves only to down-convert the output of the time-invariant transformation from the frequency band centered at α to the corresponding band centered at zero frequency. The kernel is conveniently represented by

$$k_f^\alpha(u, v) = m\left(\frac{u + v}{2}, v - u\right) e^{-i2\pi f(v-u)} e^{i\pi\alpha(u+v)}, \tag{64}$$

where the kernel representor $m(t, \tau)$ is independent of f and α and has width Δt in the variable t and width $1/\Delta f$ in the variable τ. To see that this form of kernel does indeed yield a cyclic spectrum analyzer, we can substitute (64) into (63) and make the change of variables $s = (u + v)/2$ and $\tau = v - u$ to obtain

$$w_f^\alpha(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \left[\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} m(s, \tau) u\left(t - s + \frac{\tau}{2}\right) v^*\left(t - s - \frac{\tau}{2}\right) ds \right] e^{-i2\pi f\tau} \, d\tau, \tag{65a}$$

where

$$u(t) = x(t)e^{-i\pi\alpha t} \qquad \text{and} \qquad v(t) = y(t)e^{+i\pi\alpha t}. \tag{65b}$$

Thus, the inner integral yields an estimate of the cross correlation of $u(t)$ and $v(t)$, and the outer integral transforms a tapered version of this cross correlation to obtain an estimate of the cross spectrum of $u(t)$ and $v(t)$. Recall that it was shown in Chapter 10 (for $y(t) = x(t)$) that the limit cross spectrum of $u(t)$ and $v(t)$ is the limit cyclic cross spectrum of $x(t)$ and $y(t)$. As explained in Chapters 4, 5, and 7 of Part I, the kernel representor is closely approximated by the separable form

$$m(t, \tau) \cong g_{\Delta t}(t) h_{1/\Delta f}(\tau), \qquad \Delta t \Delta f >> 1 \tag{66}$$

for most of the various analyzers that admit the representation (63)–(64). Substitution of (66) into (65a) yields

$$w_f^\alpha(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \left[\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} g_{\Delta t}(s) u\left(t - s + \frac{\tau}{2}\right) v^*\left(t - s - \frac{\tau}{2}\right) ds \right] h_{1/\Delta f}(\tau) e^{-i2\pi f\tau} \, d\tau, \tag{67}$$

which makes even more explicit the fact that $w_f^\alpha(t)$ is indeed an estimate of the cross spectrum of $u(t)$ and $v(t)$, which is obtained by Fourier transformation of a tapered cross correlation.

The specific forms of the kernel representor $m(t, \tau)$ and its double Fourier transform,

$$M(\nu, \mu) \triangleq \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} m(t, \tau) e^{-i2\pi(\nu t - \mu\tau)} \, dt \, d\tau, \tag{68}$$

for all the various continuous-time methods of cyclic spectral analysis described in Chapter 13 are specified in Table 5-1 in Part I.

2. Resolution and Leakage

The temporal expectation of the time-series of cyclic spectrum estimates $w_f^\alpha(t)$ in (63)–(64) is easily shown (exercise 5) to be given by

$$\hat{E}\{w_f^\alpha(t)\} = \sum_\beta \hat{M}_w^\beta e^{i2\pi\beta t}, \tag{69a}$$

where

$$\hat{M}_w^\beta = \hat{S}_{xy}^{\alpha+\beta}(f) \otimes M(\beta, -f), \tag{69b}$$

in which the convolution is with respect to the variable f. With the separable approximation (66), (69b) reduces to

$$\hat{M}_w^\beta \cong G_{1/\Delta t}(\beta) \hat{S}_{xy}^{\alpha+\beta}(f) \otimes H_{\Delta f}(f). \tag{70}$$

The ideal cyclic spectrum estimate consists of only the $\beta = 0$ term in (69). The

$\beta \neq 0$ terms represent *cycle leakage*, that is, sine wave components in the output $w_f^{\alpha}(t)$ due to spectral correlation in the inputs $x(t)$ and $y(t)$ at cycle frequencies $(\alpha + \beta)$ other than that (α) of interest. In order to maintain low cycle leakage, the postdetection bandwidth $1/\Delta t$, or the cycle resolution width $\Delta\alpha = 1/\Delta t$, must be smaller than the spacing between cycle frequencies jointly in $x(t)$ and $y(t)$. But this is not necessarily sufficient, since particularly strong spectral correlation at the cycle frequency $\alpha + \beta$ can still leak through a sidelobe of $G_{1/\Delta t}$ at the frequency β. This cycle leakage phenomenon can be especially troublesome when the cyclic spectrum analyzer employs hopped time-averaging since the $M(\beta, -f)$ in (69b) then represents a comb-filter in β, rather than a low-pass filter, as described in Section A, Chapter 13. (In this case, the separable approximation is not accurate.) Cycle leakage can be even more problematic when digital implementations that utilize subsampling techniques (after frequency channelization and downconversion) for computational efficiency are employed because the subsampling introduces *cycle aliasing* that can magnify the cycle leakage problem (see [Brown 1987]). In addition to this cycle leakage problem represented by the discrete convolution (in α) in (69), there is the usual spectral leakage phenomenon represented by the continuous convolution (in f) with the effective spectral-smoothing window $H_{\Delta f}$ in (70). Its spectral resolution and leakage effects are precisely the same as those described in Chapters 5 and 7 of Part I.

3. Variability

Given a complex-valued time-series $w(t)$ of estimates consisting of a nonrandom additive almost periodic component $\hat{E}\{w(t)\}$ and a random residual

$$z(t) \triangleq w(t) - \hat{E}\{w(t)\}, \tag{71}$$

the *variability* of $w(t)$, which is a measure of its degree of randomness, is defined[4] to be the stationary temporal variance (or equivalently the stationary temporal mean squared magnitude) of the random component $z(t)$, normalized by the squared magnitude of the stationary temporal mean of $w(t)$, and is denoted by r_w:

$$r_w \triangleq \frac{\text{var}\{w(t) - \hat{E}\{w(t)\}\}}{|\text{mean}\{w(t)\}|^2} = \frac{\langle |z(t)|^2 \rangle}{|\langle w(t) \rangle|^2}. \tag{72}$$

We know from the theory in Part I that the variance in (72) can be obtained by integrating the limit spectrum

$$\langle |z(t)|^2 \rangle = \hat{R}_z(0) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \hat{S}_z(f)\, df, \tag{73a}$$

where

$$\hat{R}_z(\tau) = \left\langle z\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right) z^*\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right) \right\rangle. \tag{73b}$$

[4] For some applications, the almost cyclostationary variance, $\hat{E}\{[w(t) - \hat{E}\{w(t)\}]^2\}$, might also be of interest, in which case the almost cyclostationary mean $\hat{E}\{w(t)\}$ should be used for normalization. In (72), only the time averages of these two almost periodic quantities are used.

It would appear from the decomposition (71) that $\hat{S}_z(f)$ is simply the nonimpulsive part of the spectrum $\hat{S}_w(f)$, that is, $\hat{S}_w(f)$ minus its spectral lines. However, as pointed out in Chapter 11 this is true if and only if the cyclic mean estimates

$$M_w^\alpha(t)_T = \frac{1}{T}\int_{-T/2}^{T/2} w(t+u)e^{-i2\pi\alpha(t+u)}\,du \tag{74}$$

are temporal-mean-square convergent as $T \to \infty$. Otherwise, there can be contributions to spectral lines in $w(t)$ from other than the finite additive sine wave components, which are represented by $\hat{E}\{w(t)\}$ (exercise 6). Since failure of $M_w^\alpha(t)_T$ to converge in mean square reflects either pathological behavior or behavior not properly representative of a periodic phenomenon (see Part 2 of Section C in Chapter 11), it is assumed that all cyclic mean estimates such as (74) are indeed mean-square convergent. Therefore, we can obtain the numerator in (72) simply by integrating the nonimpulsive part of the spectrum of $w(t)$.

It follows from (65) that the limit autocorrelation of $w_T^\alpha(t)$ is given by

$$\begin{aligned}\hat{R}_w(\tau) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} m(s_1,\tau_1)m^*(s_2,\tau_2)\Big\langle u\Big(t+\frac{\tau}{2}-s_1+\frac{\tau_1}{2}\Big)\\ \times v^*\Big(t+\frac{\tau}{2}-s_1-\frac{\tau_1}{2}\Big)u\Big(t-\frac{\tau}{2}-s_2+\frac{\tau_2}{2}\Big)\\ \times v^*\Big(t-\frac{\tau}{2}-s_2-\frac{\tau_2}{2}\Big)\Big\rangle ds_1\,ds_2\,e^{-i2\pi f(\tau_1-\tau_2)}\,d\tau_1\,d\tau_2.\end{aligned} \tag{75}$$

If $x(t)$ and $y(t)$ are assumed to be jointly Gaussian almost cyclostationary complex-valued time-series, then so too are $u(t)$ and $v(t)$, and the *generalized Isserlis' formula*[5]

$$\begin{aligned}\hat{E}\{u(t+t_1)v^*(t+t_2)u(t+t_3)v^*(t+t_4)\} =\\ \hat{E}\{u(t+t_1)v^*(t+t_2)\}\hat{E}\{u(t+t_3)v^*(t+t_4)\}\\ +\hat{E}\{u(t+t_1)u(t+t_3)\}\hat{E}\{v^*(t+t_2)v^*(t+t_4)\}\\ +\hat{E}\{u(t+t_1)v^*(t+t_4)\}\hat{E}\{v^*(t+t_2)u(t+t_3)\}\\ -2\hat{E}\{u(t+t_1)\}\hat{E}\{v^*(t+t_2)\}\hat{E}\{u(t+t_3)\}E\{v^*(t+t_4)\}\end{aligned} \tag{76}$$

applies to the fourth joint moment in (75), since the operation $\langle\hat{E}\{\cdot\}\rangle$ is identical to the operation $\langle\cdot\rangle$. Evaluation of the time-average $\langle\cdot\rangle$ of the right member in (76) (analogous to the derivation of (62) from (60)), substitution of the result into (75), and evaluation of the Fourier transform of (75) yields the desired result (after considerable manipulation analogous to that outlined in exercise 7 of Chapter 5 in Part I)[6]:

[5] The definition of a Gaussian almost cyclostationary real time-series given in Section A is generalized to jointly Gaussian jointly almost cyclostationary pairs of complex time-series in [Brown 1987], where the generalization (76) of Isserlis' formula is derived.

[6] Formula (77) was first derived in [Brown 1987].

$$\hat{S}_w(\nu) = \sum_{\beta} |\hat{S}_{xy}^{\alpha+\beta}(\nu) \otimes M(\beta, -\nu)|^2 \delta(\nu - \beta)$$
$$+ \sum_{\beta} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} M\left(\nu, \mu - f + \frac{\beta}{2}\right) M\left(\nu, \mu - f - \frac{\beta}{2}\right)^*$$
$$\times \hat{S}_x^{\beta}\left(\mu + \frac{\nu}{2} + \frac{\alpha}{2}\right) \hat{S}_y^{\beta}\left(\mu - \frac{\nu}{2} - \frac{\alpha}{2}\right)^* d\mu$$
$$+ \sum_{\beta} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} M\left(\nu, \mu - f + \frac{\beta}{2}\right) M\left(\nu, -\mu - f + \frac{\beta}{2}\right)^*$$
$$\times \hat{S}_{xy*}^{\beta}\left(\mu + \frac{\nu}{2} + \frac{\alpha}{2}\right) \hat{S}_{xy*}^{\beta}\left(-\mu + \frac{\nu}{2} + \frac{\alpha}{2}\right)^* d\mu$$
$$- 2 \sum_{\beta} | \hat{S}_{\tilde{x}\tilde{y}}^{\alpha+\beta}(f) \otimes M(\beta, -f)|^2 \delta(\nu - \beta), \tag{77a}$$

where

$$\tilde{x}(t) \triangleq \hat{E}\{x(t)\} \qquad \text{and} \qquad \tilde{y}(t) \triangleq \hat{E}\{y(t)\}. \tag{77b}$$

Although it is not obvious, the impulses that appear explicitly in the last term of (77a) exactly cancel the (implicit) impulses in the middle two terms of (77a). Consequently, the only impulses present are those in the first term, which is recognized (by comparison with (69)) to be due solely to the additive sine wave components in $w_f^{\alpha}(t)$. Thus, the desired variance of the random component of $w_f^{\alpha}(t)$ is given by the integral of (77a) with the first term deleted. Furthermore, if there are no finite additive sine wave components (including constant components) in either $x(t)$ or $y(t)$, then the last term in (77a) vanishes. We shall focus on this special case in the remainder of this section. However, before proceeding it is emphasized that (77) is a very general and, therefore, powerful result. It includes all previous results in this book on the mean, variance, sine wave components, and spectrum of the output of a time-invariant spectrum analyzer (including auto, cross, cyclic auto, and cyclic cross-spectrum analyzers for both real and complex time-series with and without sine wave components). The specific forms for the kernel transform $M(\nu, \mu)$ for all the continuous time time-invariant analyzers (i.e., all analyzers but the swept-frequency and time-compressive types) considered in this book are given in Table 5-1 in Part I.

If $x(t)$ and $y(t)$ have no finite additive sine wave components, then the stationary variance is given by (using (77))

$$\text{var}\{w_f^{\alpha}(t)\} = \sum_{\beta} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \left\{ M\left(\nu, \mu - f + \frac{\beta}{2}\right) M\left(\nu, \mu - f - \frac{\beta}{2}\right)^* \right.$$
$$\times \hat{S}_x^{\beta}\left(\mu + \frac{\nu}{2} + \frac{\alpha}{2}\right) \hat{S}_y^{\beta}\left(\mu - \frac{\nu}{2} - \frac{\alpha}{2}\right)^*$$
$$+ M\left(\nu, \mu - f + \frac{\beta}{2}\right) M\left(\nu, -\mu - f + \frac{\beta}{2}\right)^*$$
$$\left. \times \hat{S}_{xy*}^{\beta}\left(\mu + \frac{\nu}{2} + \frac{\alpha}{2}\right) \hat{S}_{xy*}^{\beta}\left(-\mu + \frac{\nu}{2} + \frac{\alpha}{2}\right)^* \right\} d\mu \, d\nu, \tag{78}$$

where (as a reminder of the notation for complex time-series)

$$\hat{S}_{xy}^{\beta}(f) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \hat{R}_{xy}^{\beta}(\tau) e^{-i2\pi f\tau}\, d\tau, \tag{79a}$$

in which

$$\hat{R}_{xy}^{\beta}(\tau) = \left\langle x\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right) y^*\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right) e^{-i2\pi\beta t} \right\rangle. \tag{79b}$$

If the width $1/\Delta t$ of $M(\nu, \mu)$ in ν is small enough to resolve the fine structure in $\hat{S}_x^{\beta}$, $\hat{S}_y^{\beta}$, and $\hat{S}_{xy*}^{\beta}$, then (78) yields the close approximation

$$\begin{aligned} \operatorname{var}\{w_f^{\alpha}(t)\} \cong \sum_{\beta} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \Bigg[& L^{\beta}(f - \mu)\hat{S}_x^{\beta}\left(\mu + \frac{\alpha}{2}\right)\hat{S}_y^{\beta}\left(\mu - \frac{\alpha}{2}\right)^* \\ & + N^{\beta}(f, \mu)\hat{S}_{xy*}^{\beta}\left(\mu + \frac{\alpha}{2}\right)\hat{S}_{xy*}^{\beta}\left(-\mu + \frac{\alpha}{2}\right)^* \Bigg] d\mu, \qquad \frac{1}{\Delta t} < \Delta f^*, \end{aligned} \tag{80a}$$

where Δf^* is the minimum of the resolution widths of $\hat{S}_x^{\beta}$, $\hat{S}_y^{\beta}$, and $\hat{S}_{xy*}^{\beta}$, and

$$\begin{aligned} L^{\beta}(f - \mu) &\triangleq \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} M\left(\nu, \mu - f + \frac{\beta}{2}\right) M^*\left(\nu, \mu - f - \frac{\beta}{2}\right) d\nu \\ N^{\beta}(f, \mu) &\triangleq \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} M\left(\nu, \mu - f + \frac{\beta}{2}\right) M^*\left(\nu, -\mu - f + \frac{\beta}{2}\right) d\nu. \end{aligned} \tag{80b}$$

If the separable approximation (66) is used, then (80b) reduces to

$$\begin{aligned} L^{\beta}(f - \mu) &\cong \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |G_{1/\Delta t}(\nu)|^2\, d\nu\, H_{\Delta f}\left(f - \mu - \frac{\beta}{2}\right) H_{\Delta f}^*\left(f - \mu + \frac{\beta}{2}\right) \\ N^{\beta}(f, \mu) &\cong \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |G_{1/\Delta t}(\nu)|^2\, d\nu\, H_{\Delta f}\left(f - \mu - \frac{\beta}{2}\right) H_{\Delta f}^*\left(f + \mu - \frac{\beta}{2}\right), \end{aligned} \tag{81}$$

and (80a) can therefore be expressed as

$$\begin{aligned} \operatorname{var}\{w_f^{\alpha}(t)\} \cong \|G_{1/\Delta t}\|^2 \Bigg[& \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |H_{\Delta f}(f - \mu)|^2 \hat{S}_x\left(\mu + \frac{\alpha}{2}\right)\hat{S}_y\left(\mu - \frac{\alpha}{2}\right) d\mu \\ & + \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} H_{\Delta f}(f - \mu) H_{\Delta f}^*(f + \mu)\hat{S}_{xy*}\left(\mu + \frac{\alpha}{2}\right)\hat{S}_{xy*}\left(-\mu + \frac{\alpha}{2}\right)^* d\mu \Bigg] \\ & + C(f, \alpha), \qquad \Delta f \gg \frac{1}{\Delta t} < \Delta f^*, \end{aligned} \tag{82a}$$

where

$$\|G_{1/\Delta t}\|^2 \triangleq \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |G_{1/\Delta t}(\nu)|^2\, d\nu$$

and $C(f, \alpha)$ is a correction term given by

$$\begin{aligned} C(f, \alpha) \triangleq \|G_{1/\Delta t}\|^2 \sum_{\beta \neq 0} \Bigg\{ & \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} H_{\Delta f}\left(f - \mu - \frac{\beta}{2}\right) H_{\Delta f}^*\left(f - \mu + \frac{\beta}{2}\right) \\ & \times \hat{S}_x^{\beta}\left(\mu + \frac{\alpha}{2}\right)\hat{S}_y^{\beta}\left(\mu - \frac{\alpha}{2}\right)^* d\mu \quad \cdots \end{aligned}$$

$$\cdots + \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} H_{\Delta f}\left(f - \mu - \frac{\beta}{2}\right) H_{\Delta f}^{*}\left(f + \mu - \frac{\beta}{2}\right)$$

$$\times \hat{S}_{xy*}^{\beta}\left(\mu + \frac{\alpha}{2}\right) \hat{S}_{xy*}^{\beta}\left(-\mu + \frac{\alpha}{2}\right)^{*} d\mu \Big\}. \tag{82b}$$

The first integral in (82b) is negligible unless the parameters f and α of the analyzer are tuned to values that satisfy

$$\left|\hat{S}_{x}^{\beta}\left(f + \frac{\alpha}{2}\right) \hat{S}_{y}^{\beta}\left(f - \frac{\alpha}{2}\right)\right| \not< \not< \hat{S}_{x}\left(f + \frac{\alpha}{2}\right) \hat{S}_{y}\left(f - \frac{\alpha}{2}\right) + \left|\hat{S}_{xy*}\left(\frac{\alpha}{2}\right)\right|^{2} \tag{83a}$$

for some β satisfying

$$|\beta/2| < \Delta f, \tag{83b}$$

and the second integral in (82b) is negligible unless the parameters f and α satisfy

$$\left|\hat{S}_{xy*}^{\beta}\left(\frac{\alpha}{2}\right)\right|^{2} \not< \not< \hat{S}_{x}\left(f + \frac{\alpha}{2}\right) \hat{S}_{y}\left(f - \frac{\alpha}{2}\right) + \left|\hat{S}_{xy*}\left(\frac{\alpha}{2}\right)\right|^{2} \tag{84a}$$

for some β satisfying

$$|f - \beta/2| < \Delta f. \tag{84b}$$

This correction term reflects the fact that the variance of a sum of spectral components is not equal to the sum of their variances unless they are uncorrelated. If neither (83) nor (84) is satisfied, then the correction term $C(f, \alpha)$ in (82a) can be deleted to obtain a close approximation. Furthermore, if Δf is small enough to resolve the fine structure in $\hat{S}_x$, $\hat{S}_y$, and $\hat{S}_{xy*}$, then (82a) without the correction term yields the close approximation

$$\text{var}\{w_f^{\alpha}(t)\} \cong \|G_{1/\Delta t}\|^2 \|H_{\Delta f}\|^2 \hat{S}_x\left(f + \frac{\alpha}{2}\right) \hat{S}_y\left(f - \frac{\alpha}{2}\right),$$

$$\frac{1}{\Delta t} \ll \Delta f < \Delta f^{*}, \qquad |f| \gg \Delta f, \tag{85}$$

since the second integral in (82a) is negligible for $|f| > \Delta f$.

The stationary mean of $w_f^{\alpha}(t)$ is given by the $\beta = 0$ term in (69) and, under the assumptions made to obtain the approximation (85), is closely approximated by

$$\text{mean}\{w_f^{\alpha}(t)\} \cong G_{1/\Delta t}(0) h_{1/\Delta f}(0) \hat{S}_{xy}^{\alpha}(f). \tag{86}$$

It follows from (85) and (86) that the *coefficient of variation* defined by (72) is closely approximated by (using $w_f^{\alpha} = w$)

$$r_w \cong \frac{\eta}{\Delta t \Delta f} \frac{1}{|\hat{C}_{xy}^{\alpha}(f)|^2}, \qquad \frac{1}{\Delta t} \ll \Delta f < \Delta f^{*}, \qquad |f| \gg \Delta f, \tag{87a}$$

assuming that neither (83) nor (84) is satisfied. Otherwise the coefficient of variation differs by an amount determined by the correction term $C(f, \alpha)$ specified by (82b). In (87a), $|\hat{C}_{xy}^{\alpha}(f)|$ is the magnitude of the cross-coherence function,

$$|\hat{C}_{xy}^{\alpha}(f)|^2 = \frac{|\hat{S}_{xy}^{\alpha}(f)|^2}{\hat{S}_x(f + \alpha/2)\hat{S}_y(f - \alpha/2)}, \tag{87b}$$

and η is the coefficient

$$\eta \triangleq \left[\frac{\Delta t \|G_{1/\Delta t}\|^2}{|G_{1/\Delta t}(0)|^2}\right]\left[\frac{\Delta f \|h_{1/\Delta f}\|^2}{|h_{1/\Delta f}(0)|^2}\right], \tag{87c}$$

which is typically on the order of unity, as explained in Chapter 5, Part I.

In conclusion, as long as the correction term (82b) is negligible, the coefficient of variation for cyclic cross-spectral analysis of Gaussian almost cyclostationary time-series behaves precisely the same way that the coefficient of variation for conventional cross-spectral analysis of Gaussian stationary time-series behaves, and therefore the discussion given in Section E of Chapter 7, Part I on this behavior applies here. The most important features of this behavior are the inverse proportionality of the coefficient of variation to the resolution product $\Delta t \Delta f$ and to the magnitude-squared cross-coherence. Even if $\Delta t \Delta f$ is large, the variability can be particularly high for a pair of strong spectral components with weak correlation, in which case $|\hat{C}_{xy}^{\alpha}(f)| \ll 1$. To illustrate this important problem, we consider an example.

Example: *QPSK*

Let us consider the quaternary phase-shift keyed (QPSK) signal described in Section E of Chapter 12. For this signal, with $\alpha = 2f_0$ and $f = 0$ (where f_0 is the carrier frequency), we have

$$|\hat{S}_x^{\alpha}(f)| = 0,$$

but the product $\hat{S}_x(f + \alpha/2)\hat{S}_x(f - \alpha/2)$ is at its maximum (relative to all other values of f and α). Thus, the coefficient of variation formula (87a) is undefined because of the division by zero. To illustrate how large the variability can be in practice for this signal in the vicinity of $\alpha = 2f_0$ and $f = 0$, Figure 15-1 shows spectral correlation measurements for a simulated QPSK signal, using the spectrally smoothed cyclic periodogram method with resolution products of $\Delta t \Delta f = 4$ and $\Delta t \Delta f = 1024$ obtained using data segments of length $N = 128$ and $N = 32{,}768$.

To illustrate the possibility of increased variability due to spectral correlation, as reflected in the correction term (82b), we consider another example.

Example: *AM*

Let us consider the amplitude-modulated (AM) sine wave described in Section A of Chapter 12. For this signal we have

$$|\hat{S}_x^{2f_0}(0)| = \hat{S}_x(f_0).$$

Thus, the term corresponding to $\beta = 2f_0$ in the second sum in (82b), evaluated at $f = f_0$ and $\alpha = 0$ for a real time-series $x(t) = y(t)$, is equal in magnitude to the first term in (82a), and all other terms in (82a) and (82b) are negligible (assuming $f_0 >> \Delta f$). Consequently, the variance of the conventional spectrum estimate $w_{f_0}^0(t)$ of the spectral density $\hat{S}_x(f_0)$ is doubled by the correction term, which is due to the fact that the variance of the sum of two equal-variance perfectly correlated spectral components is twice that for two equal-variance uncorrelated components.

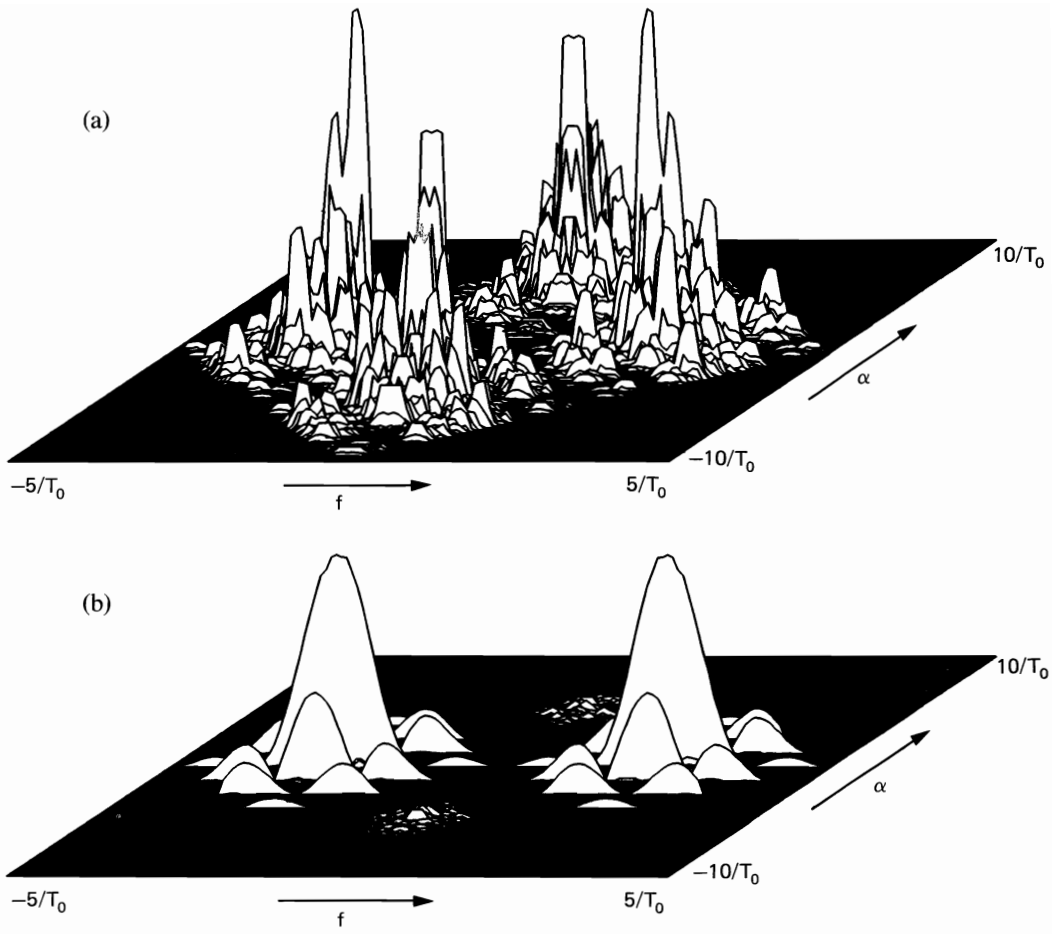


Figure 15-1 Spectral correlation magnitude for simulated QPSK signal, computed using the spectrally smoothed cyclic periodogram method. (a) $N = 128$ time-series points, $\Delta t \Delta f = 4$ frequency points averaged. (b) $N = 32{,}768$ time-series points, $\Delta t \Delta f = 1024$ frequency points averaged.

C. SUMMARY

In Section A of this chapter, the concept of a fraction-of-time probabilistic model, which was introduced in Chapter 5, Part I for constant phenomena, is generalized for periodic and almost periodic phenomena. The generalization is not quite as straightforward as we might like because of the required construction of the composite fraction-of-time distribution (8) from the individual stationary and cyclostationary fraction-of-time distributions (2) and (4). Similarly Wold's isomorphism between a single time-series and a stationary ergodic stochastic process, which was explained in Part I, is generalized to an isomorphism for almost

cyclostationary cycloergodic stochastic processes. Again, the generalization is not as straightforward as we might like, but the added abstraction of the theory is apparently unavoidable. In any case, it is considerably less abstract than the probabilistic theory of cyclostationary and almost cyclostationary stochastic processes. In particular, all probabilistic concepts, such as statistical independence and expectation, obtained from the fraction-of-time model can be directly interpreted in terms of the concrete concept of sine wave extraction. Included in the generalized fraction-of-time theory presented here is the definition of a Gaussian almost cyclostationary time-series and a discussion of some of its most basic properties.

In Section B, the probabilistic model introduced in Section A is used to study the resolution, leakage, and reliability properties of cyclic spectrum measurements. It is explained that, in addition to the usual spectral resolution and leakage problems encountered with conventional spectrum measurements on stationary time-series, the novel problems of cycle resolution and cycle leakage are encountered with cyclic spectrum measurements on (almost) cyclostationary time-series. Cycle leakage can be particularly problematic with digital implementations that use time-hopped DFTs, especially when computational savings are obtained by the technique of subsampling because of the additional cycle aliasing problem it introduces. Also, it is seen that the variability behavior, although quite similar to that of conventional cross-spectrum measurements on stationary time-series, can differ for certain values of the two frequency parameters f and α, as predicted by the correction term (82b) in the formula (82a) for the measurement variance. Aside from these few but important differences, the resolution, leakage, and reliability properties of cyclic spectrum measurements on almost cyclostationary time-series are the same as for spectrum and cross-spectrum measurements on stationary time-series. Consequently, the extensive discussions, descriptions, examples, and general results given in Chapters 5 and 7 of Part I apply here.

EXERCISES

1. In order to derive formula (28) for the CFOTD of the product time-series (27), we can derive the corresponding joint characteristic function.

(a) Use the result of exercise 7 on characteristic functions to show that (28) is equivalent to

$$\Psi_{x(t)}(\boldsymbol{\omega}) = \Psi_{\mathbf{z}}[\boldsymbol{G}'(t)\boldsymbol{\omega}].$$

Hint: Consult exercise 9(a) in Chapter 4, Part I.

(b) To derive the equation in (a), use the formula

$$\Psi_{x(t)}(\boldsymbol{\omega}) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \exp[i\boldsymbol{y}'\boldsymbol{\omega}] f_{x(t)}(\boldsymbol{y})\, d\boldsymbol{y} = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \exp[i(\boldsymbol{H}\boldsymbol{w})'\boldsymbol{\omega}] f_{\boldsymbol{G}(t),\mathbf{z}}(\boldsymbol{H}, \boldsymbol{w})\, d\boldsymbol{H}\, d\boldsymbol{w}$$

and the fact that $a(t)$ and $z(t)$ (and therefore $\boldsymbol{G}(t)$ and $\mathbf{z}(t)$) are statistically independent, in which case

$$f_{\boldsymbol{G}(t),\mathbf{z}} = f_{\boldsymbol{G}(t)} f_{\mathbf{z}},$$

and then carry out the integration with respect to $\boldsymbol{w}$ to obtain

$$\Psi_{x(t)}(\boldsymbol{\omega}) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \Psi_z(\boldsymbol{H}'\boldsymbol{\omega}) f_{G(t)}(\boldsymbol{H})\, d\boldsymbol{H} = \hat{E}\{\Psi_z[\boldsymbol{G}(t)'\boldsymbol{\omega}]\}.$$

Since $\boldsymbol{G}(t)$ is an almost periodic function, then so too is $\Psi_z[\boldsymbol{G}(t)'\boldsymbol{\omega}]$ and the temporal expectation operator (almost periodic component extraction operator) $\hat{E}\{\cdot\}$ is, therefore, superfluous and we obtain the desired result, which is given in (a).

2. Let $p(t)$ be almost periodic and show that the almost periodic component of $y(t) = x(t)p(t)$ is given by the product

$$\hat{E}\{y(t)\} = \hat{E}\{x(t)\}p(t)$$

of $p(t)$ and the almost periodic component of $x(t)$. *Hint:* Substitute

$$p(t) = \sum_{\beta} P_\beta e^{i2\pi\beta t}$$

into the formula

$$\hat{E}\{y(t)\} = \sum_{\alpha} \hat{M}_{xp}^{\alpha} e^{i2\pi\alpha t},$$

where

$$\hat{M}_{xp}^{\alpha} = \langle x(t)p(t)e^{-i2\pi\alpha t}\rangle,$$

to obtain

$$\hat{E}\{y(t)\} = \sum_{\alpha}\sum_{\beta} \hat{M}_x^{\alpha-\beta} P_\beta e^{i2\pi\alpha t} = \sum_{\gamma} \hat{M}_x^{\gamma} e^{i2\pi\gamma t} \sum_{\beta} P_\beta e^{i2\pi\beta t}.$$

3. Derive the stationary fourth-joint-moment formula (62) from (60).

4. **(a)** It is proved in Part 1 of Section C, Chapter 5, Part I, that if $x(t)$ has a stationary Gaussian model, then

$$\lim_{\Delta f\to 0}\lim_{\Delta t\to\infty} S_{x_{1/\Delta f}}^{\alpha}(t,f)_{\Delta t} = 0, \qquad \alpha \neq 0,$$

and it is proved in Chapter 11 that

$$\lim_{\Delta f\to 0}\lim_{\Delta t\to\infty} S_{x_{1/\Delta f}}^{\alpha}(t,f)_{\Delta t} = \hat{S}_x^{\alpha}(f).$$

Use these two results to argue that if $x(t)$ has a stationary Gaussian model, it must be purely stationary.

(b) Use an argument analogous to that in (a) to reason why $x(t)$ must be purely cyclostationary if it has a cyclostationary Gaussian model.

5. Derive formula (69) for the mean of the estimated cyclic spectral density from (63), (64), and (68).

6. To prove that the residual (71), in which all finite additive sinewave components have been removed, exhibits no spectral lines if and only if the cyclic mean estimates (74) converge in mean square, proceed as follows. Assume that $z(t)$ exhibits no spectral lines. Then

$$y \triangleq \lim_{T\to\infty} \frac{1}{T}\int_0^T \hat{R}_z(\tau)e^{-i2\pi\alpha\tau}\, d\tau = 0$$

for all α, in which case (see [Gardner 1985])

$$y' \triangleq \lim_{T\to\infty} \frac{1}{T}\int_{-T}^{T} \left(1 - \frac{|\tau|}{T}\right)\hat{R}_z(\tau)e^{-i2\pi\alpha\tau}\, d\tau = 0,$$

which is equivalent to (see (112) in Chapter 5, Part I)

$$y' = \lim_{T\to\infty} \frac{1}{T^2} \int_0^T \int_0^T \hat{R}_z(u - v) e^{-i2\pi\alpha(u-v)}\, du\, dv = 0.$$

Substitute $\hat{R}_z(u - v) = \langle z(t + u)z(t + v)\rangle$ into this equation and interchange the order of $\langle\cdot\rangle$ and the two integrations to obtain

$$y' = \lim_{T\to\infty} \langle |M_z^\alpha(t)_T|^2 \rangle = 0.$$

Then use (71) to show that

$$M_z^\alpha(t)_T = M_w^\alpha(t)_T - \frac{1}{T} \sum_\beta \hat{M}_w^\beta\, w_{1/T}(\beta - \alpha) e^{i2\pi(\beta-\alpha)t}$$

and therefore that

$$y' = \lim_{T\to\infty} \langle |M_w^\alpha(t)_T - \hat{M}_w^\alpha|^2 \rangle = 0,$$

where $\hat{M}_w^\alpha$ is the pointwise limit

$$\lim_{T\to\infty} M_w^\alpha(t)_T = \hat{M}_w^\alpha.$$

Consequently, $M_w^\alpha(t)_T$ must converge in temporal mean square to its pointwise limit $\hat{M}_w^\alpha$. Furthermore, the same set of steps can be reversed to show that this is sufficient as well as necessary for the residual $z(t)$ to exhibit no spectral lines.

7. Use the fundamental theorem of expectation (32) to prove that the joint characteristic function for the M variables $\boldsymbol{x}(t) = [x(t + t_1), x(t + t_2), \ldots, x(t + t_M)]'$,

$$\Psi_{\boldsymbol{x}(t)}(\boldsymbol{\omega}) \triangleq \hat{E}\{\exp[i\boldsymbol{\omega}'\boldsymbol{x}(t)]\},$$

is given by the M-dimensional Fourier transform of the joint fraction-of-time density,

$$\Psi_{\boldsymbol{x}(t)}(\boldsymbol{\omega}) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f_{\boldsymbol{x}(t)}(\boldsymbol{y}) \exp\{i\boldsymbol{\omega}'\boldsymbol{y}\}\, d\boldsymbol{y}.$$

REFERENCES FOR PART I

AKAIKE, H. 1969a. Fitting autoregressive models for prediction. *Ann. Inst. Statist. Math.* 21:243–47.

AKAIKE, H. 1969b. Power spectrum estimation through autoregression model fitting. *Ann. Inst. Statist. Math.* 21:407–19.

AKAIKE, H. 1970. Statistical predictor identification. *Ann. Inst. Statist. Math.* 22:203–17.

AKAIKE, H. 1974. A new look at the statistical model identification. *IEEE Trans. Automatic Control.* AC-19:716–23.

ALTER, D. 1927. A group or correlation periodogram, with application to the rainfall of the British Isles. *Monthly Weather Review.* 55:263–66.

BAGGEROER, A. B. 1976. Confidence intervals for regression (MEM) spectral estimates. *IEEE Trans. Information Th.* IT-22:534–45.

BARNETT, V. 1973. *Comparative Statistical Inference.* New York: John Wiley & Sons.

BARTLETT, M. S. 1948. Smoothing periodograms from time-series with continuous spectra. *Nature.* 161:686–87.

BARTLETT, M. S. 1950. Periodogram analysis and continuous spectra. *Biometrika.* 37:1–16.

BASS, J. 1962. *Les Fonctions Pseudo-Aleatoires.* Paris: Gauthier-Villars.

BEAMISH, N., and M. B. PRIESTLY. 1981. A study of autoregressive and window spectral estimation. *Appl. Statist.* 30:41–58.

BENDAT, J. S., and A. G. PIERSOL. 1980. *Engineering Applications of Correlation and Spectral Analysis.* New York: John Wiley & Sons.

BENNETT, W. R. 1953. The correlatograph. *Bell System Tech. J.* 32:1173–85.

BERK, K. N. 1974. Consistent autoregressive spectral estimates. *The Annals of Statistics.* 2:489–502.

BLACKMAN, R. B., and J. W. TUKEY. 1958. *The Measurement of Power Spectra.* New York: American Telephone and Telegraph Co. (also New York: Dover, 1959).

BLAHUT, R. E. 1985. *Fast Algorithms for Digital Signal Processing*. Reading, Mass.: Addison-Wesley.

BOYLES, R. A., and W. A. GARDNER. 1983. Cycloergodic properties of discrete-parameter nonstationary stochastic processes, *IEEE Trans. Information Th.* IT-29:105–14.

BRACEWELL, R. N. 1985. *The Hartley Transform*. New York: Oxford University Press.

BRACEWELL, R. N. 1986. *The Fourier Transform and Its Applications*. 2d ed., rev. New York: McGraw-Hill.

BRENNAN, D. G. 1961. Probability theory in communication system engineering. Chapter 2 in *Communication System Theory*. Ed. E. J. Baghdady. New York: McGraw-Hill.

BRILLINGER, D. R. 1975. *Time-Series*. New York: Holt, Rinehart and Winston.

BRILLINGER, D. R. 1976. Some history of the data analysis of time-series in the United States. In *History of Statistics in the United States*. Ed. D. B. Owen. New York: Marcel Dekker, pp. 267–80.

BROWN, W. A. 1987. "On the theory of cyclostationary signals," Ph.D. dissertation, Department of Electrical and Computer Engineering, University of California, Davis, Calif.

BRUZZONE, S. P., and M. KAVEH. 1980. On some suboptimum ARMA spectral estimators. *IEEE Trans. Acoustics, Speech, and Sig. Proc.* ASSP-28:753–55.

BRUZZONE, S. P., and M. KAVEH. 1984. Information tradeoffs in the sample autocorrelation function in ARMA parameter estimation. *IEEE Trans. Acoustics, Speech, and Sig. Proc.* ASSP-32:701–15.

BURG, J. P. 1967. Maximum entropy spectral analysis. *Proc. 37th Meeting Society of Exploration Geophysicists*. Oklahoma City, Okla., October 31.

BURG, J. P. 1968. A new analysis technique for time-series data. *NATO Advanced Study Institute on Signal Processing with Emphasis on Underwater Acoustics*. Enschede, The Netherlands, August 12–23.

BURG, J. P. 1972. The relationship between maximum entropy spectra and maximum likelihood spectra. *Geophysics*. 37:375–76.

BURRUS, C. S., and T. W. PARKS. 1985. *DFT/FFT and Convolution Algorithms*. New York: John Wiley & Sons.

BURSHSTEIN, D., and E. WEINSTEIN. 1985. Some relations between the various criteria for autoregressive model order determination. *IEEE Trans. Acoustics, Speech, and Sig. Proc.* ASSP-33:1017–19.

BUYS-BALLOT, C. H. D. 1847. *Les Changements Périodiques de Température Dépendants de la Nature du Soleil et de la Lune* . . . . Utrecht: Kemink & Fils.

CADZOW, J. A. 1980. High performance spectral estimation—A new ARMA method. *IEEE Trans. Acoustics, Speech, and Sig. Proc.* ASSP-28:524–29.

CADZOW, J. A. 1982. Spectral estimation: An overdetermined rational model equation approach. *Proceedings IEEE*. 70:907–39.

CADZOW, J. A., B. BASEGHI, and T. HSU. 1983. Singular-value decomposition approach to time-series modelling. *IEE Proceedings, Part F*. 130:202–9.

CAPON, J. 1969. High-resolution frequency-wavenumber spectrum analysis. *Proceedings IEEE*. 57:1408–18.

CAPON, J., R. J. GREENFIELD, and R. J. KOLKER. 1967. Multidimensional maximum-likelihood processing of a large-aperture seismic array. *Proceedings IEEE*. 55:192–211.

CARSON, J. R. 1931. The statistical energy-frequency spectrum of random disturbances. *Bell System Tech. J.* 10:374–81.

CHAPMAN, S., and J. BARTELS. 1940. *Geomagnetism, Vol. II, Analysis of the Data and Physical Theories*. London: Oxford University Press (2d ed. 1951).

CIOFFI, J. M., and T. KAILATH. 1984. Fast, recursive-least-squares transversal filters for adaptive filtering. *IEEE Trans. Acoustics, Speech, and Sig. Proc.* ASSP-32:304–37.

CLAASEN, T. A. C. M., and W. F. G. MECKLENBRÄUKER. 1980. The Wigner distribution—a tool for time-frequency signal analysis, Parts I–III. *Phillips J. of Research*. 35:217–50, 276–300, 372–89.

CLAYTON, H. H. 1917. Effect of short period variation of solar radiation on the earth's atmosphere. *Smithsonian Miscellaneous Collections*. 68, no. 3, publ. 2446:19 pp.

CRAMÉR, H. 1940. On the theory of stationary random processes. *Ann. Math.* 41:215–30.

CRAMÉR, H. 1942. On harmonic analysis in certain functional spaces. *Arkiv Math. Astr. Fysik*. 28:1–7.

CROCHIERE, R. E., and L. R. RABINER. 1983. *Multirate Digital Signal Processing*. Englewood Cliffs, N.J.: Prentice-Hall.

D'ANGELO, H. 1970. *Linear Time-Varying Systems: Analysis and Synthesis*. Boston, Mass.: Allyn and Bacon.

DANIELL, P. J. 1946. Discussion of "On the theoretical specification and sampling properties of autocorrelated time-series". *J. Royal Statist. Soc.* 8B, no. 1:27–97 (especially p. 89).

DAVIS, H. T. 1941. *The Analysis of Economic Time Series*. Bloomington, Ind.: The Principia Press.

DICKINSON, B. W., and J. M. TURNER. 1979. Reflection coefficient estimation using Cholesky decomposition. *IEEE Trans. Acoustics, Speech, and Sig. Proc.* ASSP-27:146–49.

DOLPH, C. L. 1946. A current distribution for broadside arrays which optimizes the relationship between width and sidelobe level. *Proceedings IRE*. 34:335–48.

DONATI, F. 1971. Finite-time averaged power-spectra. *IEEE Trans. Information Th.* IT-17:7–16.

DOOB, J. L. 1953. *Stochastic Processes*. New York: John Wiley & Sons.

DUGRÉ, J-P, L. L. SCHARF, and C. GUEGUEN. 1981. Exact likelihood for stationary vector autoregressive moving-average processes. *Proc. of Workshop on Fast Algorithms For Linear Systems*. Aussois, France, September, pp. 9.1–9.24.

DURBIN, J. 1960. The fitting of time series models. *Revue L'Institut Internationale de Statistique*. 28:233–43.

EBERLY, J. H., and K. WODKIEWICZ. 1977. The time-dependent phsyical spectrum of light. *J. Optical Soc. Amer.* 67:1252–61.

ECKART, C., and G. YOUNG. 1936. The approximation of a matrix by another lower rank matrix. *Psychometrika*. 1:211–18.

EINSTEIN, A. 1906. On the theory of the Brownian movement. *Annalen der Physik*. 19:371–81.

EINSTEIN, A. 1914. Méthode pour la détermination de valeurs statistiques d'observations concernant des grandeurs soumises à des fluctuations irrégulières. *Archives des Sciences Physiques et Naturelles*. 37:254–56.

FANO, R. M. 1950. Short-time autocorrelation functions and power spectra. *J. Acoustical Soc. Amer.* 22:546–50.

FINCH, P. D. 1969. Linear least squares prediction in non-stochastic time series. *Adv. Appl. Prob.* 1:111–22.

FRANKS, L. E. 1969. *Signal Theory*. Englewood Cliffs, N.J.: Prentice-Hall.

FRIEDLANDER, B. 1982a. Lattice filters for adaptive proceessing. *Proceedings IEEE*. 70:829–67.

FRIEDLANDER, B. 1982b. Recursive maximum likelihood algorithm for ARMA spectral estimation. *IEEE Trans. Information Th.* IT-28:639–46.

FRIEDLANDER, B. 1983a. Efficient algorithm for ARMA spectral estimation. *IEE Proceedings, Part F.* 130:195–201.

FRIEDLANDER, B. 1983b. Instrumental variable methods for ARMA spectral estimation. *IEEE Trans. Acoustics, Speech, and Sig. Proc.* ASSP-31: 404–15.

FRIEDLANDER, B., and B. PORAT. 1984a. A spectral matching technique for ARMA parameter estimation. *IEEE Trans. Acoustics, Speech, and Sig. Proc.* ASSP-32:338–43.

FRIEDLANDER, B., and B. PORAT. 1984b. The modified Yule-Walker method of ARMA spectral estimation. *IEEE Trans. Aerospace Electronic Systems*. AES-20:158–73.

GABOR, D. 1946. Theory of communication, part III. *Journal IEE*. 93:429–57.

GARDNER, W. A. 1985. *Introduction to Random Processes with Applications to Signals and Systems*. New York: Macmillan.

GARDNER, W. A. 1987a. Common pitfalls in the application of stationary process theory to time-sampled and modulated signals. *IEEE Trans. Communications*. COM-35:529–34.

GARDNER, W. A. 1987b. Rice's representation for cyclostationary processes. *IEEE Trans. Communications*. COM-35:74–8.

GARDNER, W. A. 1987c. Correlation estimation and time-series modeling for nonstationary processes. Signal and Image Processing Lab. Tech. Report No. SIPL-87-3, Department of Electrical and Computer Engineering, University of California, Davis, Calif.

GERSCH, W. 1970. Estimation of the autoregressive parameters of a mixed autoregressive moving-average time series. *IEEE Trans. Automatic Control*. AC-15:583–88.

GOLOMB, S. W. 1967. *Shift Register Sequences*. San Francisco: Holden-Day.

GOLUB, G., and W. KAHAN. 1965. Calculating the singular values and pseudo-inverse of a matrix. *J. SIAM Numerical Analysis* (Ser. B). 2:205–24.

GOUTEREAU, C. (1906) Sur la variabilité de la température. *Annuaire de la Soc. Mét. de France*. 54:122–27.

GRAUPE, D., D. J. KRAUSE, and J. B. MOORE. 1975. Identification of autoregressive and moving-average parameters of time-series. *IEEE Trans. Automatic Control*. AC-20:104–7.

GRENANDER, U. 1951. On empirical spectral analysis of stochastic processes. *Ark. Mat.* 1:503–31.

GRENANDER, U. 1958. Bandwidth and variance in estimation of the spectrum. *J. Royal Statist. Soc.* 20:152–57.

GRENANDER, U., and M. ROSENBLATT. 1953. Statistical spectral analysis of time-series arising from stationary stochastic processes. *Ann. Math. Stat.* 24:537–58.

GRENANDER, U., and M. ROSENBLATT. 1984. *Statistical Analysis of Stationary Time-Series*. 2d [corrected] ed. New York: Chelsea Publishing Co.

HAMMING, R. W. 1983. *Digital Filters*. 2d. ed. Englewood Cliffs, N.J.: Prentice-Hall.

HANNAN, E. J. 1970. *Multiple Time Series*. New York: John Wiley & Sons.

HANNAN, E. J., and B. G. QUINN. 1979. The determination of the order of an autoregression. *J. Royal Statist. Soc.* Ser. B. 41:190–95.

HARRIS, F. J. 1978. On the use of windows for harmonic analysis with the discrete Fourier transform. *Proceedings IEEE.* 66:51–83.

HASSELMANN, K. and T. P. BARNETT. 1981. Techniques of linear prediction for systems with periodic statistics. *J. Atmospheric Sciences.* 38:2275–83.

HELME, B. I., and C. L. NIKIAS. 1985. Improved spectrum performance via a data-adaptive weighted Burg technique. *IEEE Trans. Acoustics, Speech, and Sig. Proc.* ASSP-33:903–10.

HOFSTETTER, E. M. 1964. Random processes. Chapter 3 in *The Mathematics of Physics and Chemistry, Vol. II.* Ed. H. Margenau and G. M. Murphy. Princeton, N.J.: D. Van Nostrand Co.

HONIG, M. L., and D. G. MESSERSCHMITT. 1984. *Adaptive Filters: Structures, Algorithms, and Applications.* Boston: Kluwer Academic Publishers.

HOOKER, R. H. 1901. Correlation of the marriage-rate with trade. *J. Royal Statist. Soc.* 64:485–92.

HOUSEHOLDER, A. S., and G. YOUNG. 1950. Matrix approximation and latent roots. *Amer. Math. Mon.* 45:165–67.

HSIA, T. C., and D. A. LANDGREBE. 1967. On a method for estimating power spectra. *IEEE Trans. Instrumentation and Measurement.* IM-16:255–57.

ISSERLIS, L. 1918. On a formula for the product-moment coefficient of any order of a normal frequency distribution in any number of variables. *Biometrika.* 12:134–39.

JAMES, H. M., N. B. NICHOLS, and R. S. PHILLIPS. 1947. *Theory of Servomechanisms.* New York: McGraw-Hill.

JENKINS, G. M., and D. G. WATTS. 1968. *Spectral Analysis and Its Applications.* San Francisco: Holden-Day.

JONES, R. H., and W. M. BRELSFORD. 1967. Time-series with periodic structure. *Biometrika.* 54:403–7.

KAILATH, T., A. VIEIRA, and M. MORF. 1978. Inverses of Toeplitz operators, innovations, and orthonormal polynomials. *SIAM Rev.* 20:106–19.

KAISER, J. F. 1966. Digital filters. Chapter 7 in *System Analysis by Digital Computer.* Ed. F. F. Kuo and J. F. Kaiser. New York: John Wiley & Sons.

KAMPÉ DE FÉRIET, J. 1954. Introduction to the statistical theory of turbulence, I and II. *J. Soc. Indust. Appl. Math.* 2, nos. 1 and 3:1–9 and 143–74.

KAVEH, M. 1979. High resolution spectral estimation for noisy signals. *IEEE Trans. Acoustics, Speech, and Sig. Proc.* ASSP-27:286–87.

KAVEH, M., and S. P. BRUZZONE. 1981. A comparative overview of ARMA spectral estimation. *Proc. of First ASSP Workshop on Spectral Est.* Hamilton, Ontario, August 17–18, 2.4.1–2.4.8.

KAVEH, M., and S. P. BRUZZONE. 1983. Statistical efficiency of correlation-based methods for ARMA spectral estimation. *IEE Proceedings, Part F.* 130:211–17.

KAVEH, M., and G. A. LIPPERT. 1983. An optimum tapered Burg method for linear prediction and spectral analysis. *IEEE Trans. Acoustics, Speech, and Sig. Proc.* ASSP 31:438–44.

KAY, S. M. 1980. Noise compensation for autoregressive spectral estimates. *IEEE Trans. Acoustics, Speech, and Sig. Proc.* ASSP-28:292–303.

KAY, S. M. 1983. Recursive maximum likelihood estimation of autoregressive processes. *IEEE Trans. Acoustics, Speech, and Sig. Proc.* ASSP-31:56–65.

KAY, S. M. 1987. *Modern Spectral Estimation.* Englewood Cliffs, N.J.: Prentice-Hall.

KAY, S. M., and S. L. MARPLE. 1981. Spectrum analysis—A modern perspective. *Proceedings IEEE.* 69:1380–1419.

KHARKEVICH, A. A. 1960. *Spectra and Analysis.* Trans. from Russian. New York: Consultants Bureau.

KHINCHIN, A. J. 1934. Korrelations theorie der stationären stochastischen Prozesse. *Mathematische Annalen.* 109:604–15.

KLEMA, V. C., and A. J. LAUB. 1980. The singular value decomposition: its computation and some applications. *IEEE Trans. Automatic Control.* AC-25:164–76.

KOENIG, W., H. K. DUNN, and L. Y. LACY. 1946. The sound spectrograph. *J. Acoustical Soc. Amer.* 18:19–49.

KOLMOGOROV, A. N. 1941a. Stationary sequences in Hilbert space. *Bull. Moscow State U. Math.* 2, no. 6. 40 pp.

KOLMOGOROV, A. N. 1941b. Interpolation and extrapolation von stationären zufälligen folgen. *Bull. Acad. Sci. de l'U.R.S.S.* 5:3–14.

KOOPMANS, L. H. 1974. *The Spectral Analysis of Time-Series.* New York: Academic Press.

LACOSS, R. T. 1971. Data adaptive spectral analysis methods. *Geophysics.* 36:661–75.

LAGRANGE, J. L. 1772. Recherches sur la manière de former des tables des planètes d'apres les seules observations. *Oeuvres de Lagrange.* 6:507–627, 1873. Sur les interpolations. *Oeuvres de Lagrange.* 7:535–53, in particular pp. 541 et. seq. 1877.

LAGUNAS-HERNÁNDEZ, M. A., and A. GASULL-LLAMPALLAS. 1984. An improved maximum likelihood method for power spectral density estimation. *IEEE Trans. Acoustics, Speech, and Sig. Proc.* ASSP-32:170–73.

LANNING, J. H., and R. H. BATTIN. 1956. *Random Processes in Automatic Control.* New York: McGraw-Hill.

LARSON, H. J., and B. O. SHUBERT. 1979. *Probabilistic Models in Engineering Sciences.* Vol. II. New York: John Wiley & Sons.

LAWSON, C. L. and R. J. HANSON. 1974. *Solving Least Squares Problems.* Englewood Cliffs, N.J.: Prentice-Hall.

LAWSON, J. L., and G. E. UHLENBECK. 1949. *Threshold Signals.* Massachusetts Inst. of Tech. Radiation Lab. Series. vol. 24, also Boston: Boston Tech. Publ., Inc., 1964.

LEVINSON, N. 1947. The Wiener RMS (root mean square) error criterion in filter design and prediction. *J. Math. Phys.* 25, no. 4:261–78.

LOYNES, R. M. 1968. On the concept of the spectrum for non-stationary processes, *J. Royal Statist. Soc.* Ser. B. 30:1–30.

MARK, W. D. 1970. Spectral analysis of the convolution and filtering of non-stationary stochastic processes. *J. Sound Vib.* 11:19–63.

MARPLE, S. L. 1980. A new autoregressive spectrum analysis algorithm. *IEEE Trans. Acoustics, Speech, and Sig. Proc.* ASSP-28:441–54.

MARPLE, S. L. 1987. *Digital Spectral Analysis with Applications.* Englewood Cliffs, N.J.: Prentice-Hall.

MASANI, P. R. 1979. "Commentary on the memoir on generalized harmonic analysis,"

pp. 333–79 in *Norbert Wiener: Collected Works, Volume II*. Cambridge, Mass.: Massachusetts Institute of Technology.

MEHRA, R. K. 1971. On-line identification of linear dynamical systems with applications to Kalman filtering. *IEEE Trans. Automatic Control*. AC-16:12–22.

MORF, M., B. DICKINSON, T. KAILATH, and A. VIEIRA. 1977. Efficient solution of covariance equations for linear prediction. *IEEE Trans. Acoustics, Speech, and Sig. Proc*. ASSP-25:429–33.

MOSES, R. L., J. A. CADZOW, and A. A. BEEX. 1985. A recursive proccedure for ARMA modeling. *IEEE Trans. Acoustics, Speech, and Sig. Proc*. ASSP 33:1188–96.

MUNK, W. H., F. E. SNODGRASS, and M. J. TUCKER. 1959. "Spectra of low-frequency ocean waves," *Bull. Scripps Inst. Oceanography*. 7:283–362.

MUSICUS, B. R. 1985. Fast MLM spectrum estimation from uniformly spaced correlations. *IEEE Trans. Acoustics, Speech. and Sig. Proc*. ASSP-33:1333–35.

NUSSBAUMER, H. J. 1982. *Fast Fourier Transform and Convolution Algorithms*. Berlin: Springer-Verlag.

NUTTALL, A. H. 1976. Spectral analysis of a univariate process with bad data points, via maximum entropy and linear predictive techniques. *Tech. Report* Tr-5303. Naval Underwater Systems Center, New London, Conn. March 26.

NUTTALL, A. H. 1981. Some windows with very good sidelobe behavior, *IEEE Trans. Acoustics, Speech, and Sig. Proc*. ASSP-29:84–91.

NYQUIST, H. 1928. Certain topics in telegraph transmission theory. *Trans. AIEE*. 47:617–44.

OWSLEY, N. L. 1985. High-resolution spectrum analysis by dominant-mode enhancement. Chapter 4 in *VLSI and Modern Signal Processing*. Ed. S. Y. Kung, H. J. Whitehouse, and T. Kailath. Englewood Cliffs, N.J.: Prentice-Hall.

PALIWAL, K. K. 1985. Further results on tapered and energy-weighted Burg methods. *IEEE Trans. Acoustics, Speech, and Sig. Proc*., ASSP-33:1624–26.

PAPOULIS, A. 1962. *The Fourier Integral and its Applications*. New York: McGraw-Hill.

PAPOULIS, A. 1977. *Signal Analysis*. New York: McGraw-Hill.

PAPOULIS, A. 1984. *Probability, Random Variables, and Stochastic Processes*. 2d ed., rev. New York: McGraw-Hill.

PARZEN, E. 1957a. On consistent estimates of the spectrum of a stationary time series. *Ann. Math. Stat*. 28:329–48.

PARZEN, E. 1957b. On choosing an estimate of the spectral density function of a stationary time series. *Ann. Math. Stat*. 28:921–32.

PARZEN, E. 1974. Some recent advances in time-series modeling. *IEEE Trans. Automatic Control*. AC-19:723–30.

PARZEN, E. 1977. "Multiple time-series: Determining the order of approximating autoregressive schemes." In *Multivariate Analysis IV*. Ed. P. Krishnaiah, Amsterdam: North-Holland, pp. 283–95.

PARZEN, E., and M. PAGANO. 1979. An approach to modeling seasonally stationary time-series, *J. Econometrics*. 9:137–53.

PFAFFELHUBER, E. 1975. Generalized harmonic analysis for distributions. *IEEE Trans. Information Th*. IT-21:605–611.

PISARENKO, V. F. 1973. The retrieval of harmonics from a covariance function, *Geophysical J. Royal Astronomical Soc*. 33:347–66.

POYNTING, J. H. 1884. A comparison of the fluctuations in the price of wheat and in the cotton and silk imports into Great Britain. *J. Royal Statist. Soc.* 47:34–64.

PRIESTLEY, M. B. 1965. Evolutionary spectra and non-stationary processes. *J. Royal Statist. Soc.* Ser. B. 27:204–37.

PRIESTLEY, M. B. 1981. *Spectral Analysis and Time-Series. Vols. 1, 2.* London: Academic Press.

PRIESTLEY, M. B., and H. TONG. 1973. On the analysis of bivariate non-stationary processes. *J. Royal Statist. Soc.* Ser. B. 35:153–88.

QUIRK, M. P., and B. LIU. 1983. Improving resolution for autoregressive spectral estimation by decimation. *IEEE Trans. Acoustics, Speech, and Sig. Proc.* ASSP-31:630–37.

RAO, C. R. 1964. The use and interpretation of principal component analysis in applied research. *Sankhya Ind. J. Statist. A.* 26:329–58.

RAO, C. R. 1973. *Linear Statistical Inference and its Applications.* 2d ed. New York: John Wiley & Sons.

RICE, S. O. 1944. Mathematical analysis of random noise, parts I, II. *Bell System Tech. J.* 23:282–332.

RICE, S. O. 1945. Mathematical analysis of random noise, parts III and IV. *Bell System Tech. J.* 24:46–156.

RICE, S. O. 1948. Statistical properties of a sine wave plus random noise. *Bell System Tech. J.* 27:109–57.

RIHACZEK, A. W. 1969. *Principles of High-Resolution Radar.* New York: McGraw-Hill.

ROBINSON, E. A. 1982. A historical perspective of spectrum estimation. *Proceedings IEEE.* 70:885–907.

SAKAI, H., and M. ARASE. 1979. Recursive parameter estimation of an autoregressive process disturbed by white noise. *Internat. J. Control.* 30:949–66.

SCHROEDER, M. R., and B. S. ATAL. 1962. Generalized short-time power spectra and autocorrelation functions. *J. Acoustical Soc. Amer.*, 34:1679–83.

SCHUSTER, A. 1894. On interference phenomena. *Phil. Mag.* 37:509–45.

SCHUSTER, A. 1897. On lunar and solar periodicities of earthquakes, *Proc. Royal Soc. of London.* 61:455–65.

SCHUSTER, A. 1898. On the investigation of hidden periodicities with application to a supposed 26-day period of meteorological phenomena. *Terr. Magnet.* 3:13–41.

SCHUSTER, A. 1900. The periodogram of magnetic declination as obtained from the records of the Greenwich Observatory during the years 1871–1895. *Trans. Cambridge Phil. Soc.* 18:107–35.

SCHUSTER, A. 1904. *The Theory of Optics.* London: Cambridge University Press.

SCHUSTER, A. 1906a. The periodogram and its optical analogy. *Proc. Royal Soc. of London.* 77A:136–40.

SCHUSTER, A. 1906b. On the periodicity of sunspots. *Phil Trans. Royal Soc. of London.* 206A:69–100.

SCHUSTER, A. 1911. On the periodicity of sunspots. *Proc. Royal Soc. of London.* 85A:50–53.

SHANKS, J. L. 1967. Recursion filters for digital processing. *Geophysics.* 32:33–51.

SHANNON, C. E. and W. WEAVER. 1962. *The Mathematical Theory of Communication.* Urbana, Ill.: The University of Illinois Press.

SLUTSKY, E. E. 1927. The summation of random causes as the source of cyclic processes. *Problems of Economic Conditions*. Ed. Conjuncture Institute, Moscow. 3, no. 1 (reprinted in English in *Econometrica*, 5 (1937):267–98.

SLUTSKY, E. E. 1929. Sur l'extension de la theórie de periodogrammes aux suites des quantités dépendentes. *Comptes Rendues*. 189:722–33.

SLUTSKY, E. E. 1934. Alcuni applicazioni di coefficienti di Fourier al analizo di sequenze eventuali coherenti stazionarii. *Giorn. d. Instituto Italiano degli Atuari*. 5:435–82.

SNYDER, D. L. 1975. *Random Point Processes*. New York: John Wiley & Sons.

SORENSON, H. V., D. L. JONES, C. S. BURRUS, and M. T. HEIDEMAN. 1985. On computing the discrete Hartley transform. *IEEE Trans. Acoustics, Speech, and Sig. Proc.* ASSP-33:1231–38.

STOKES, G. G. 1879. Note on searching for periodicities. *Proc. Royal Soc. of London*. 29:122–23.

STUMPFF, K. 1927. *Analyse periodischer Vorgänge*. Berlin: Gebruder Borntraeger.

SWINGLER, D. N. 1974. A comparison between Burg's maximum entropy method and a nonrecursive technique for the spectral analysis of deterministic signals. *J. Geophysical Research*. 84:674–85.

TAYLOR, G. I. 1920. Diffusion by continuous movements. *Proc. London Math. Soc.* 20:196–212.

TAYLOR, G. I. 1938. The spectrum of turbulence. *Proc. Royal Soc. of London*. 164A:476–90.

THOMSON, D. J. 1982. Spectrum estimation and harmonic analysis. *Proceedings IEEE*. 70:1055–96.

TJØSTHEIM, D. 1976. Spectral generating operators for non-stationary processes. *Adv. Appl. Prob*. 8:831–46.

TUFTS, D. W., and R. KUMARESAN. 1982. Estimation of frequencies of multiple sinusoids: Making linear prediction perform like maximum likelihood. *Proceedings IEEE*. 70:975–89.

TUKEY, J. W. 1949. "The sampling theory of power spectrum estimates," Symposium on Applications of Autocorrelation Analysis to Physical Problems. Woods Hole, Mass. June 1949, pp. 47–67; also, *The Collected Works of John W. Tukey*, Belmont, Calif.: Wadsworth, 1984.

ULRYCH, T. J. and T. N. BISHOP. 1975. Maximum entropy spectral analysis and autoregressive decomposition. *Rev. Geophysics and Space Physics*. 13:183–200.

ULRYCH, T. J., and R. W. CLAYTON. 1976. Time-series modelling and maximum entropy. *Physics of the Earth and Planetary Interiors*. 12:188–200.

URKOWITZ, H. 1983. *Signal Theory and Random Processes*. Dedham, Mass.: Artech House.

VAKMAN, D. E. 1968. *Sophisticated Signals and the Uncertainty Principle in Radar*. Trans. from Russian. New York: Springer-Verlag.

VAN DER POL, B. 1946. Frequency modulation. *J. IEE*. London. 93, Part III:153–8.

VILLE, J. 1948. Theory and application of the notion of the complex signal. *Câbles et Transmission*. 2:67–74. (Trans. to English by I. Selin, Rand Corp. Report T-92, August 1, 1958).

VON SMOLUCHOWSKI, M. 1914. *The Kinetic Theory of Matter and Electricity*. Leipzig and Berlin, Germany: B. G. Teubner.

WALKER, A. M. 1962. Large sample estimation of parameters for autoregressive processes with moving-average residuals. *Biometrika*. 49:117–31.

WALKER, A. M. 1971. On the estimation of a harmonic component in a time series with independent residuals. *Biometrika*. 58:21–36.

WALKER, G. 1931. On periodicity in series of related terms. *Proc. Royal Soc*. 131:518–32.

WELCH, P. D. 1967. The use of fast Fourier transform for the estimation of power spectra: A method based on time averaging over short, modified periodograms. *IEEE Trans. Audio and Electroacoustics*. AU-15:70–73.

WIENER, N. 1923. Differential space. *J. of Math and Physics*. 2:131–74.

WIENER, N. 1930. Generalized harmonic analysis. *Acta Mathematika*. 55:117–258.

WIENER, N. 1938. The historical background of harmonic analysis. *Amer. Math. Soc. Semicentennial Publ*. 2:56–68.

WIENER, N. 1949. *Extrapolation, Interpolation, and Smoothing of Stationary Time-Series*. New York: The Technology Press of MIT and John Wiley & Sons. Originally issued in February, 1942, as a classified National Defense Res. Counsel Report.

WIENER, N., and R. E. A. C. PALEY. 1934. Fourier transforms in the complex domain. *Amer. Math. Soc. Colloquium Publication*. 19.

WIGGINS, R. A., and E. A. ROBINSON. 1965. Recursive solution to the multichannel filtering problem. *J. Geophysics Research*. 70:1885–91.

WIGNER, E. 1932. On the quantum correction for thermodynamic equilibrium. *Phys. Rev*. 40:749–59.

WILKINSON, J. H. 1965. *The Algebraic Eigenvalue Problem*. Oxford, England: Clarendon.

WOLD, H. O. A. 1938. *A Study in the Analysis of Stationary Time Series*. Uppsala: Almqvist and Wiksell. (2d ed., Stockholm, 1954).

WOLD, H. O. A. 1948. On prediction in stationary time series. *Ann. Math. Stat*. 19:558–67.

WOLD, H. O. A., ed. 1965. *Bibliography on Time Series and Stochastic Processes*. Cambridge, Mass.: The M.I.T. Press.

YULE, G. U. 1926. Why do we sometimes get nonsense correlations between time-series?—a study in sampling and the nature of time-series. *J. Royal Statist. Soc*. 89:1–69.

YULE, G. U. 1927. On a method of investigating periodicities in disturbed series, with special reference to Wolfer's sunspot numbers. *Phil. Trans. Royal Soc. London*. A. 226:267–98.

REFERENCES FOR PART II

ACKROYD, M. H. 1984. Stationary and cyclostationary finite buffer behaviour computation via Levinson's Method. *AT&T Bell Laboratories Tech. J.* 63:2159–70.

AGEE, B. G., S. V. SCHELL, and W. A. GARDNER. 1987. Self-coherence restoral: A new approach to blind adaptation of antenna arrays. *Proc. of Twenty First Annual Asilomar Conference on Signals, Systems, and Computers*. Pacific Grove, Calif. Nov. 2–4, 1987.

ALBUQUERQUE, J. P. A., O. SHIMBO, and L. N. NGUGEN. 1984. Modulation transfer noise effects from a continuous digital carrier to FDM/FM carriers in memoryless nonlinear devices. *IEEE Trans. Communications*. COM-32:337–53.

BENNETT, W. R. 1958. Statistics of regenerative digital transmission. *Bell System Tech. J.* 37:1501–42.

BERG, N. J., and J. N. LEE. 1983. *Acousto-Optic Signal Processing*. New York: Marcel Dekker.

BLACKMAN, R. B., and J. W. TUKEY. 1958. *The Measurement of Power Spectra*. New York: American Telephone and Telegraph Co. (also New York: Dover, 1959).

BOYLES, R. A., and W. A. GARDNER. 1983. Cycloergodic properties of discrete-parameter nonstationary stochastic processes. *IEEE Trans. Information Th.* IT-29:105–14.

BRELSFORD, W. M. 1967. "Probability predictions and time series with periodic structure," Ph.D. dissertation, Johns Hopkins University, Baltimore, Maryland.

BROWN, W. A. 1987. "On the theory of cyclostationary signals," Ph.D. dissertation, Department of Electrical and Computer Engineering, University of California, Davis, Calif.

BUYS-BALLOT, C. H. D. 1847. *Les Changements Périodiques de Température Dépendants de la Nature du Soleil et de la Lune . . . .* Utrecht: Kemink & Fils.

CAMPBELL, J. C., A. J. GIBBS, and B. M. SMITH. 1983. The cyclostationary nature of crosstalk interference from digital signals in multipair cable—Part I: Fundamentals. *IEEE Trans. Communications*. COM-31:629–37.

CARIOLARO, G. L., G. L. PIEROBON, and G. P. TRONCA. 1983. Analysis of codes and spectra calculations. *Int. J. Electronics*. 55:35–79.

CHAPMAN, S., and J. BARTELS. 1940. *Geomagnetism, Vol. II, Analysis of the Data and Physical Theories*. London: Oxford University Press (2d ed. 1951).

CLAASEN, T. A. C. M., and W. F. G. MECKLENBRÄUKER. 1980. The Wigner distribution—A tool for time-frequency signal analysis, Parts I–III. *Phillips J. Research*. 35:217–50, 276–300, 372–89.

CORDUNEAUNU, C. 1961. *Almost Periodic Functions*. New York: John Wiley & Sons.

DAVENPORT, W. B., and W. L. ROOT. 1958. *An Introduction to Random Signals and Noise*. New York: McGraw-Hill.

EISENSTEIN, B. A., and L. R. CERRATO. 1978. Statistical deconvolution of electrocardiograms. *IEEE Trans. Biomed. Eng*. BME-25:96–99.

ERICSON, T. H. E. 1981. Modulation by means of linear periodic filtering. *IEEE Trans. Information Th*. IT-27:322–27.

FERRARA, E. 1985. Frequency-domain implementations of periodically time-varying adaptive filters. *IEEE Trans. Acoustics, Speech, and Sig. Proc*. ASSP-33:883–92.

FRANKS, L. E. 1980. Carrier and bit synchronization in data communication—A tutorial review. *IEEE Trans. Communications*. COM-28:1107–21.

FRANKS, L. E., and J. BUBROUSKI. 1974. Statistical properties of timing jitter in a PAM timing recovery scheme. *IEEE Trans. Communications*. COM-22:913–30.

FRENCH, C. A., and W. A. GARDNER. 1986. Despreading spread-spectrum signals without the code. *IEEE Trans. Communications*. COM-34:404–07.

FURRER, B., and W. GUGGENBUHL. 1981. Noise analysis of sampled-data circuits. *AEU Journal*. 35:426–30.

GARDNER, W. A. 1972. "Representation and estimation of cyclostationary processes," Ph.D. dissertation, Department of Electrical and Computer Engineering, University of Massachusetts, Amherst, Mass. Reprinted as Signal and Image Processing Lab. Tech. Rept. No. SIPL-82-1, Department of Electrical and Computer Engineering, University of California, Davis, Calif., 1982.

GARDNER, W. A. 1973. The structure of linear least-mean-square estimators for synchronous M-ary signals. *IEEE Trans. Information Th*. IT-19:240–43.

GARDNER, W. A. 1978. Stationarizable random processes. *IEEE Trans. Information Th*. IT-24:8–22.

GARDNER, W. A. 1982. Structural characterization of locally optimum detectors in terms of locally optimum estimators and correlators. *IEEE Trans. Information Th*. IT-28:924–32.

GARDNER, W. A. 1984. Learning characteristics of stochastic-gradient-descent algorithms: A general study, analysis, and critique. *Signal Processing*. 6:113–33. Errata: *Signal Processing*, 12:211

GARDNER, W. A. 1985. *Introduction to Random Processes with Applications to Signals and Systems*. New York: Macmillan.

GARDNER, W. A. 1986. The role of spectral correlation in design and performance analysis of synchronizers. *IEEE Trans. Communications*. COM-34:1089–95.

GARDNER, W. A. 1987a. Common pitfalls in the application of stationary process theory to time-sampled and modulated signals. *IEEE Trans. Communications*. COM-35:529–34.

GARDNER, W. A. 1987b. Signal interception: A unifying theoretical framework for feature detection. *Proc. of Onzieme Colloque Sur Le Traitement Du Signal Et Des Images*. Nice, France. June 1–5. pp. 69–72.

GARDNER, W. A., and B. G. AGEE. 1980. Two-stage adaptive noise cancellation for intermittent-signal applications. *IEEE Trans. Information Th.* IT-26:746–50.

GARDNER, W. A., and C. K. CHEN. 1987. Interference-tolerant time-difference-of-arrival estimation for modulated signals. Signal and Image Processing Lab. Tech. Report No. SIPL-87-4. Department of Electrical and Computer Engineering, University of California, Davis, Calif.

GARDNER, W. A., and L. E. FRANKS. 1975. Characterization of cyclostationary random signal processes. *IEEE Trans. Information Th.* IT-21:4–14.

GARDNER, W. A., C. M. SPOONER, and L. PAURA. 1987. Performance evaluation of detectors for signal interception. Signal and Image Processing Lab. Tech. Report No. SIPL-87-8. Department of Electrical and Computer Engineering, University of California, Davis, Calif.

GOLOMB, S. W. 1967. *Shift Register Sequences*. San Francisco: Holden-Day.

GRAEF, F. K. 1983. Joint optimization of transmitter and receiver for cyclostationary random signal processes. *Proc. of the Nato Advanced Study Institute on Nonlinear Stochastic Problems*. Algarve, Portugal. May 16–28, 1982. Dordrecht, Netherlands: Reidel. pp. 581–92.

HASSELMAN, K., and T. P. BARNETT. 1981. Techniques of linear prediction for systems with periodic statistics. *J. Atmospheric Science*. 38:2275–83.

HAYKIN, S. 1986. *Adaptive Filter Theory*. Englewood Cliffs, N.J.: Prentice-Hall.

HINICH, M. J. 1982. Detecting a hidden periodic signal when its period is unknown. *IEEE Trans. Acoustics, Speech, and Sig. Proc.* ASSP-30:747–50.

HOLL, J. P., and W. A. GARDNER. 1985. Adaptive extraction of periodic signals from noise: Outperforming coherent averaging. Signal and Image Processing Lab. Tech. Rept. No. SIPL-85-14, Department of Electrical and Computer Engineering, University of California, Davis, Calif.

HURD, H. 1969. "An investigation of periodically correlated stochastic processes," Ph.D. dissertation, Duke University, Durham, No. Carolina.

ISSERLIS, L. 1918. On a formula for the product-moment coefficient of any order of a normal frequency distribution in any number of variables. *Biometrika*. 12:134–39.

JOHNSON, W. K. 1981. The dynamic pneumocardiogram: An application of coherent signal processing to cardiovascular measurement. *IEEE Trans. Biomed. Eng.* BME-28:471–75.

JONES, R. H., and W. M. BRELSFORD. 1967. Time series with periodic structure. *Biometrika*. 54:403–7.

KAPLAN, M. 1983. Single-server queue with cyclostationary arrivals and arithmetic service. *Operations Research*. 31:184–205.

MARTIN, W. 1982. Time-frequency analysis of random signals. *Proc. Intl. Conf. on Acoustics, Speech, and Sig. Proc.* Paris, France. pp. 1325–28.

MARTIN, W., and P. FLANDRIN. 1985. Wigner-Ville spectral analysis of nonstationary processes. *IEEE Trans. Acoustics, Speech, and Sig. Proc.* ASSP-33:1461–70.

MENGALI, U., and E. PEZZANI. 1978. Tracking properties of phase-locked loops in optical communication systems. *IEEE Trans. Communications*. COM-26:1811–18.

MESIYA, M. F., P. J. MCLANE, and L. L. CAMPBELL. 1978. Optimal receiver filters for BPSK transmission over a bandlimited nonlinear channel. *IEEE Trans. Communications*. COM-26:12–22.

MOENECLAEY, M. 1982a. Comment on "Tracking performance of the filter and square bit synchronizer". *IEEE Trans. Communications*. COM-30:407–10.

MOENECLAEY, M. 1982b. Linear phase-locked loop theory for cyclostationary input disturbances. *IEEE Trans. Communications*. COM-30:2253–59.

MOENECLAEY, M. 1983. The optimum closed-loop transfer function of a phase-locked loop used for sychronization purposes. *IEEE Trans. Communications*. COM-31:549–53.

MOENECLAEY, M. 1984. A fundamental lower bound on the performance of practical joint carrier and bit synchronizers. *IEEE Trans. Communications*. COM-32:1007–12.

MONIN, A. S. 1963. Stationary and periodic time series in the general circulation of the atmosphere. *Proc. Symp. Time Series Anal.* Ed. M. Rosenblatt. New York: John Wiley & Sons., pp. 144–51.

MONTI, C. M., and G. L. PIEROBON. 1985. Block codes for linear timing recovery in data transmission systems. *IEEE Trans. Communications*. COM-33:527–34.

O'REILLY, J. J. 1984. Timing extraction for baseband digital transmission. *Problems of Randomness in Communication Engineering*. Ed. K. W. Cattermole and J. J. O'Reilly. London: Plymouth.

ORTIZ, M. J., and A. RUIZ DE ELVIRA. 1985. A cyclo-stationary model of sea surface temperature in the Pacific Ocean. *Tellus*. 37A:14–23.

PAPOULIS, A. 1984. *Probability, Random Variables, and Stochastic Processes*. 2d ed., rev. New York: McGraw-Hill.

PARZEN, E., and M. PAGANO. 1979. An approach to modeling seasonally stationary time-series. *J. Econometrics*. 9:137–53.

PELKOWITZ, L. 1981. Frequency domain analysis of wraparound error in fast convolution algorithms. *IEEE Trans. Acoustics, Speech, and Sig. Proc.* ASSP-29:413–22.

PUPOLIN, S., and C. TOMASI. 1984. Spectral analysis of line regenerator time jitter. *IEEE Trans. Communications*. COM-32:561–66.

RICE, S. O. 1944. Mathematical analysis of random noise, Parts I and II. *Bell System Tech. J.* 23:282–332.

RICE, S. O. 1945. Mathematical analysis of random noise, Parts III and IV. *Bell System Tech. J.* 24:46–156.

RICE, S. O. 1948. Statistical properties of a sine wave plus random noise. *Bell System Tech. J.* 27:109–57.

RIHACZEK, A. W. 1968. Signal and energy distribution in time and frequency. *IEEE Trans. Information Th.* IT-14:369–74.

RIHACZEK, A. W. 1969. *Principles of High-Resolution Radar*. New York: McGraw-Hill.

RHYNE, V. E. 1969. A Comparison of coherent averaging techniques for repetitive biological signals. *Medical Research Engrg.* August–September:22–6.

STRATONOVICH, R. L. 1967. *Topics in the Theory of Random Noise*. Volumes I and II. Revised English edition trans. by R. A. Silverman. New York: Gordon and Breach.

STROM, T., and S. SIGNELL 1977. Analysis of periodically switched linear circuits. *IEEE Trans. Circuits and Systems*. CAS-24:531–41.

VECCHIA, A. V. 1985. Periodic autoregressive-moving average (parma) modeling with applications to water resources. *Water Resour. Bull.* 21:721–30.

VILLE, J. 1948. Theory and application of the notion of the complex signal. *Câbles et Transmission*. 2:67–74. Trans. to English by I. Selin, Rand Corp. Rept. T-92, August 1, 1958.

WIDROW, B., and S. D. STEARNS. 1985. *Adaptive Signal Processing*. Englewood Cliffs, N. J.: Prentice-Hall.

WIENER, N. 1930. Generalized harmonic analysis. *Acta Mathematika*. 55:117–258.

WIENER, N. 1949. *Extrapolation, Interpolation, and Smoothing of Stationary Time Series*. New York: The Technology Press of MIT and John Wiley & Sons. Originally issued in February, 1942, as a classified National Defense Res. Counsel Report.

WIGNER, E. 1932. On the quantum correction for thermodynamic equilibrium. *Phys. Rev.* 40:749–59.

WILLIS, D. M. 1964. The statistics of a particular non-homogeneous Poisson process. *Biometrika*. 51:399–404.

WOLD, H. O. A. 1938. *A Study in the Analysis of Stationary Time Series*. Uppsala: Almqvist and Wiksell. (2d ed., Stockholm, 1954).

WOODWARD, P. M. 1953. *Probability and Information Theory, with Applications to Radar*. New York: Pergamon Press.

YULE, G. U. 1927. On a method of investigating periodicities in disturbed series, with special reference to Wolfer's sunspot numbers. *Phil. Trans. Royal Soc. London*. A, 226:267–98.

AUTHOR INDEX

SUBJECT INDEX

D

E

F

G

H

I

K

L

M

Q

R

S

T

U

V

W